UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
3 1761 00361306 4

UNIV. OF
TORONTO
LIBRARY

I

461

The Brut.

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 131.

1906.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

¶ Here ben endyd the Cronycles of the Reame of Englond with their apperteignaunces. Enprentyd En the Duchye of Braband. in the towne of Andewarpe En the yere of owr lord .M.cccc.xciij. By maistir Gerard de leew. a man of grete wysedom in all maner of kunnyng: whych nowe is come from lyfe onto the deth / which is grete harme for many a poure man. On whos sowle god almyghty for hys hygh grace haue mercy

A M E N

COLOPHON TO "THE CHRONICLES OF ENGLAND," PRINTED BY GERARD LEEW OF ANTWERP, 1493.

PHILOLOGIE nämlich ist jene ehrwürdige Kunst, welche von ihrem Verehrer vor Allem eins heischt, bei Seite gehen, sich zeit lassen, still werden, langsam werden —, als eine Goldschmiedekunst und Kennerschaft des Wortes, die lauter feine vorsichtige Arbeit abzuthun hat und Nichts erreicht, wenn sie es nicht lento erreicht. Gerade damit aber ist sie heute nöthiger als je, gerade dadurch zieht sie und bezaubert sie uns am stärksten, mitten in einem Zeitalter der "Arbeit", will sagen: der Hast, der unanständigen und schwitzenden Eilfertigkeit, das mit Allem gleich "fertig werden" will, auch mit jedem alten und neuen Buche:—sie selbst wird nicht so leicht fertig, sie lehrt *gut* lesen; das heisst langsam, tief, rück und vorsichtig, mit Hintergedanken, mit offen gelassenen Thüren, mit zarten Fingern und Augen lesen.[1]

FRIEDRICH NIETZSCHE.

[1] Philology is that venerable art which demands one thing above all from its worshipper, to go aside, to take one's time, to become silent, to become slow —, as a goldsmith's art and connoisseurship of the word, which has to execute nothing but fine delicate work and which achieves nothing if it does not achieve it lento. Just that it is what makes it more necessary to day than ever, just by this it attracts and charms us most in the midst of an age of "work", *i. e.* of haste, of indecent and sweating hurry which wants "to have done" with everything in a moment, with any old and new book too:—while itself it is not so easily at an end; it teaches to read well; that means to read slowly, deeply, with consideration and carefully, with reservations, with open doors, with delicate fingers and eyes.

The Brut

OR

The Chronicles of England.

EDITED FROM

MS. RAWL. B 171, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, &c.

BY

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE, Ph.D.

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY.

PART I.

131845
9/3/14

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
By KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED,
DRYDEN HOUSE, 43, GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.
1906.

PR
1119
A2
no. 131

Original Series, No. 131.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

VII

To

His Excellency Dr. Karl Schenkel,

GROSSHERZOGL. BAD. STAATSMINISTER,

THIS WORK IS INSCRIBED

BY THE EDITOR.

ERRATA.

p. 92.	The heading must be :		*Edelf, Argentil and Curan.*
p. 121.	,,	,,	*Edmund's* instead of *St. Edmund's.*
p. 122.	,,	,,	*K. Edmund's* instead of *K. Edward's.*
p. 143.	,,	,,	*Maude* instead of *Maud.*
p. 150.	,,	,,	*Leave out the date* A.D. 1172.
p. 154.	,,	,,	,, ,, ,, A.D. 1216.
p. 177, 178, 179.		,,	*Henry III* instead of *Henry II.*

PREFACE.

I PROPOSE to include in a couple of volumes, of which the present is the first, an edition of the work commonly called *The Brut of England*, or *The Chronicles of England.* The entire Chronicle with its continuations embraces a period from the legendary time of Albina and Brutus to A.D. 1479, while the first part which forms the contents of this volume closes with the battle of Halidon Hill in 1333. The first part of our Chronicle is a mere translation of the French *Brut d'Engleterre.* Of this work there are two independent English translations, of which I have chosen the earlier and anonymous one for publication, for reasons which are fully explained in the general Introduction which will form the last volume of this edition.

After 1333 we have a certain number of original English continuations. The first of these, finishing with the death of Edward III in 1377, represents the same version in all MSS. But after that date we have several continuations which are quite independent of each other. Of these the most important ones have been chosen for publication.

Very few of these continuations can with any certainty be ascribed to a known author; most of them exist only in copies of MSS. which have perished or dropt out of sight. But the question of authorship ceases to be of paramount importance, when the information contained in the text can be thoroughly tested by contemporary writers, as is the case in the present Chronicle.—"The value of such portions of the narrative as are incapable of external authentication, depends on the generally faithful character of the context where it has been so proved."

As history, the first part possesses much original value in its later parts after the accession of Edward II; while in several of the continuations the narrative becomes even that of a contemporary.

As literature, the Chronicle is as worthless—except a few

inserted poems—as a mediæval Chronicle possibly can be. But nobody will expect to stop a wedding-guest by reciting mediæval history.

For everything else, the reader of these pages is referred to the final Introduction. This will contain a list, description and classification of 167 MSS. in French, English and Latin, 147 of which I have been able to examine myself; and some remarks about the language of the most important English texts; then a history of the study of the *Brut*, an analysis of the different French versions and their sources, a description of the two English translations, and an examination of the original English continuations and their sources; finally, a list of the 13 printed editions between 1400 and 1528, a description of the Latin versions, and a chapter on the influence of the *Brut* on later writers.[1] Besides that, I shall give a fair number of notes, mostly containing illustrations from contemporary writers, to explain the historical value of the facts related in the *Brut*. A Glossary of the more uncommon words and an Index of Proper Names will form the end.

It now remains to describe the MSS. which have been used for the present volume. They are three in number, designated respectively by the letters R, O and D.

R = MS. Rawl. B. 171 (Bodl.), which forms the text of this volume, represents the oldest English copy of the *Brut* known to me. The hand shows the time of writing to be about 1400. As the MS. wants the first leaves, these have been taken from MS. Douce 323.

O = MS. Douce 323 (Bodl.), a late, but very accurate transcript written in the beginning of the second half of the 15th century. It has been used too for the collation of the whole text, as well as

D = MS. Trin. College, Dublin, 490, which was written in the beginning of the 15th century.

Appendix A which closes this volume contains the poetical description of the battle of Halidon Hill which forms the end of the second translation. The text is printed from the two only existant MSS. of this version, MS. Harley 4690 and MS. Arundel LVIII in the College of Arms in London.

[1] An abstract of this Introduction has appeared in German under the title: *Geschichte und Quellen der mittel englischen Prosachronik The Brute of England oder The Chronicles of England.* Marburg. N. G. Elwert. 1905.

Further details about the MSS. employed will be found in the final Introduction.

In conclusion, I have to record my obligations to those to whom I have been indebted for various acts of kindness and assistance in the course of the whole work. Their number is indeed very great. Among these I will mention in the first place Dr. Frederick J. Furnivall, whose kindness and most valuable experience are always placed so courteously at the service of those who require them. Much attention and help I have besides received from Professor Alois Brandl in Berlin. Nor must I omit publicly to acknowledge the useful hints forwarded to me by Professor Priebsch, Professor Brandin, Dr. Wylie and Dr. Imelmann. For the loan of their MSS., I am highly under obligation to the Earl of Leicester of Holkham, and to Mr. William Wynne of Peniarth (co. Merioneth). To Mr. John Edwards in Glasgow I am indebted for information about the MS. in his possession, and to the Rev. P. Henderson Aitken for information about the MSS. kept in the Hunterian Museum in Glasgow. Finally I have to thank the authorities of the British Museum,—that Mecca of all scholars which has become my second home,—the Bodleian Library, the University Library in Cambridge, various Colleges in Oxford and Cambridge, Trinity College, Dublin, Lambeth Palace, the College of Arms, the Society of Antiquaries, the Inner Temple, Lincoln's Inn, Stadtbibliothek Hamburg, Bibliothèque Nationale, Mazarine and Geneviève in Paris. To Mr. Falconer Madan of the Bodleian, and especially to Mr. John A. Herbert of the British Museum, I am under great obligations for the continuous and ready aid of their great paleographical knowledge.

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE.

Marburg a/L., December 1906.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

The Prolog.

[KING DIOCLICIAN weds his 33 daughters to 33 kings. The daughters despise their husbands. When Dioclician scolds them, they kill their husbands. Albine and her sisters put to sea. They reach Albion, and breed giants by the devil] ... ... pp. 1–4

Chapters 1–10.

Of Eneas, his son Ascanius, and his grandson Sylveyn. Of Brut, Sylveyn's son. His banishment and his success in Greece. Brut wins Gennogen, King Pandras's daughter. He is bidden by Diana to go to the isle of Albion. He conquers Gascony, and builds Castle Tours. Landing at Totness. Cornwall is given to Coryn. Foundation of New-Troy. Albanak gets Scotland, Camber gets Wales. Death of Brut. King Lotryn drives out Humber and marries Guentolen, Coryn's daughter. Lotryn's death. Estrilde is drowned by Guentolen. King Madan. Menpris slays Manlyn, his brother. King Ebrac conquers France. King Brut Greneshal. King Leyl. King Lud Ludibras pp. 5–16

Chapters 11–20.

King Bladud. King Leir and his three daughters. Cordeil becomes Queen of France. Leir's retinue is cut down by Corneil and Rigan. Leir goes to France to see Cordeil. Leir made king again. Cordeil reigns in England. Morgan and Conedag. King Raynolde. King Gorbodian. Porrex is slain by Ferrex. Ferrex is murdered by his mother. Four kings in Britain. Donewall becomes the only king pp. 16–24

Chapters 21–30.

Belyn and Brenne. Brenne gets Norse help to invade Belyn. Belyn defeats King Gutlagh of Denmark. He makes four causeways across the country. He and Brenne invade France. Rome is conquered. King Corinbatrus subdues Denmark. Spaniards settle in Ireland. King Guentolen. King Seisel. His successors Kymor, Howan, Morwith, Grandobodian. The bad King Artogaile becomes good ... pp. 24–29

Chapters 31–40.

King Hesider and his Brothers. Thirty-three kings reign after him, the last being called Ely. King Lud. Origin of the name of London

and of Ludgate. King Cassibalam. He drives Julius Cæsar out of Britain, B.C. 55. The Earl of London calls him back. Cæsar subdues the English. King Androgen. King Kembelyn. Claudius invades Britain, and is beaten, A.D. 41. King Ginder is slain in the battle. Armoger weds Claudius's daughter, and is made king ... pp. 30–35

Chapters 41–50.

King Westmer of Britain. He gives Scotland to Berynger's men. They make a raid into Ireland for women. King Coil. King Lucie. Britain becomes Christian, A.D. 156. Britain a long time without a king. Astlepades chosen king. Coil slays him, and becomes his successor. King Constance. Constantine becomes Emperor of Rome. Octovian is made king. Maximian weds his daughter, and becomes his successor. He gives Little Britain to Conan Meriedok. Conan sends to Cornwall for maidens, in order to people his country. The Eleven Thousand British Virgins. They are driven to Cologne, and martyred by Gowan and Elga ... ... pp. 36–44

Chapters 51–60.

Gowan invades England. Gracian drives him out, and is crowned king after Maximian's death. Gowan comes back, but is slain by Constantine. Constantine made king. Britain turns Christian. Constance made king by Vortiger's help. Vortiger causes Constance to be murdered. Vortiger is made king. Constance's brothers are carried to Little Britain. Engist, Horn, and other Saxons, land in Kent. Engist's Thongcastle. His daughter Ronewenne. Wassail and Drinkhail. Vortiger weds Ronewenne. Vortimer made king by the Britons. Ronewenne causes Vortimer to be poisoned. Vortyger made king again. Engist's treachery, and his conquest of Britain. Britain called Engist's land. Vortiger goes to Wales ... ... pp. 44–56

Chapters 61–70.

Vortiger sends for the child Merlin. Merlin and his mother talk with Vortiger. Merlin explains the signification of the two Dragons under the Castle. His prophecy. Aurilambros and Uter arrive in Britain. Vortiger flees. Vortiger and Engist are slain. King Aurilambros. Merlin moves the Giants' stones from Ireland and makes Stonehenge. Guillomer of Ireland's invasion. Aurilambros poisoned. A star appears after his death. Merlin tells its signification. Uther Pendragon crowned. His two Dragons. Relief of York. The siege of Tintagel ... ... pp. 56–66

Chapters 71–80.

Uther begets Arthur on Igerne, and weds her. He defeats Octa and Ossa. He is poisoned by the Saxons. Arthur is made king. He defeats Cheldrik and Hoel. Their treachery. Arthur beats the Saxons at Bath. Merlin's prophecies. Arthur defeats Guillomer of Ireland,

and grants mercy to the Scots. He weds Gunnore, and conquers all Ireland. Fame of Arthur's Court. The foundation of the Round Table. Arthur fights and kills Frolle, and wins Paris. He divides France among his Knights. Arthur's feast. The Roman Emperor's summons to him ... ... pp. 66–82

Chapters 81–90.

Arthur's defiant answer. The Roman Emperor and he prepare to fight. Arthur's followers. He slays the Spanish Giant who ravished and killed fair Elyne. He beats the Romans, and buries his own slain. Mordred is traitorous, and rebels against Arthur. He fights Arthur at sea, and flees to Cornwall. He is beaten by Arthur and slain. Arthur himself wounded to death. He appoints Constantyne king. Constantyne's war with Mordred's sons ... ... pp. 82–91

Chapters 91–100.

King Adelbright and King Edelf. Argentil married to Curan. King Conan. King Certif. The Saxons ask Gurmond for help. Gurmond and the Saxons drive out the Britons. Chichester taken. "Britain" changed to "England." The seven kingdoms. Pope Gregory and the English children. St. Austin lands in Kent, A.D. 596. Adelbright baptized. St. Austin and the rays' tails. Wales refuses St. Austin and the Pope. It is to be invaded. King Brecyval of Leicester slain. Cadwaladre made King of the Britons. He and Elfrid are friends. Quarrel between Edwyne and Cadwalayn ... ... pp. 91–101

Chapters 101–110.

King Oswold is killed, A.D. 642. Peanda seizes his land. Peanda beaten by Oswy, A.D. 655. Oswyn beaten by Oswy. Ossa becomes chief of all kings of England. King Alfred's Chronicles. King Osbright rapes Buerne's wife. Buerne defies King Osbright, and seeks Danish help. The Danes kill Osbright, and take York. They ravage England, and martyr St. Edmund, A.D. 866. Hubba and Hungar take Reading. At last the Danes are beaten, and pray for peace. Danes at Chippenham, A.D. 877. Alfred defeats the Danes. The Danish king baptized, A.D. 878. Alfred's reign and books. Edward, his son, made king, A.D. 900. The Danes come again to England ... ... pp. 101–112

Chapters 111–120.

The Kings Athelstan, Edmund, Eldred and Edwin fight the Danes. The good King Edgar sole king, A.D. 959. Ethelwold deceives King Edgar about Estrilde. Ethelwold is killed, and Edgar weds Estrilde. Edgar and Archbishop Dunstan. Edgar's death, A.D. 975. Edward the Martyr is murdered at Corfe, A.D. 978. Eldred crowned by Dunstan. Sweyn and the Danes invade England, A.D. 994. Death of Sweyn, A.D. 1014. King Eldred fights Cnut. Cnut and Edmund Ironside share England, A.D. 1016. Edmund is killed, and his murderer drowned.

Cnut sends Edmund's sons to Denmark to be murdered. Edward, Edmund's son, marries the daughter of the King of Hungary. Cnut conquers Norway, A.D. 1028. He tries to stop the Thames. His death, A.D. 1035 ... ... pp. 112–124

Chapters 121–130.

King Harold Harefoot reigns. Hardicanute succeeds him. He recalls his mother to England. His death, A.D. 1042. The English send into Normandy for Alfred and Edward. Godwin has Prince Alfred murdered. Accession of Edward the Confessor, A.D. 1042. He reproaches Godwin for the death of his brother. He forgives Godwin, and weds his daughter. His miraculous sight of King Sweyn. Miraculous appearance of St. John to pilgrims. Their journey to Edward. King Edward's death, A.D. 1066 ... ... pp. 125–134

Chapters 131–140.

Harold is made king. His oath to Duke William. He breaks it. William invades England and slays Harold, A.D. 1066. William crowned King of England. William the Conqueror dies, William the Red succeeds, A.D. 1087. Quarrel with Archbishop Anselm. The Dreams of and about the king. Rufus shot. Henry Beauclerc reigns, A.D. 1100. Henry's church disputes. He conquers Normandy. War with Louis of France, A.D. 1109–1113. Henry's sons drowned, A.D. 1120. His daughter Maud comes to England. Henry I's death. Stephen succeeds him, A.D. 1135. He takes Lincoln, A.D. 1141. The Empress Maude escapes from Oxford. Maude's son Henry gets Normandy, A.D. 1144, and arrives in England, A.D. 1149. King Stephen dies, A.D. 1153 pp. 134–147

Chapters 141–150.

Henry II's coronation, A.D. 1154. He invades Wales. Thomas à Becket made primate, A.D. 1162. Becket quits England, A.D. 1164. War between king and primate, A.D. 1165–1170. Thomas à Becket slain, A.D. 1170. Henry and his sons. Henry II dies, A.D. 1189. The loss of the Holy Land. The Crusade. Richard I and the Crusade. He is imprisoned, A.D. 1192. His return to England. He is wounded to the Death at Castle Gaillard, A.D. 1199. King John, his successor, loses Normandy. Langton becomes Archbishop, A.D. 1207. England interdicted by the Pope's order. Compromise between the Pope and King John. John refuses to restore the Church's goods, and ruins the Cistercians. The Pope's Demands. John's exceptions to them. The Pope's legates declare the Excommunication of England. A clerical coiner is set free by Pandolf. King John gives in to the Pope, A.D. 1213 pp. 147–163

Chapters 151–160.

King John's deed of surrender to the Pope. The exiled papists come back. The King welcomes Archbishop Langton. The seven

years' interdict is ended. The King's misdeeds. He grants Magna Charta, A.D. 1215. The Barons conspire against him. The crown offered to Louis of France. Louis invades England. King John poisoned by a Swineshead monk, A.D. 1216. Henry III succeeds him. Progress of the war. Wales is interdicted. Louis defeated at Lincoln, A.D. 1217. French fleet is destroyed [off Sandwich]. Treaty between Henry III and Louis. Henry confirms King John's Charter, A.D. 1217. Henry marries, A.D. 1236. Granting of new charters. The Barons' war. Battle of Lewes, A.D. 1264. Battle of Evesham, A.D. 1265. Battle of Chesterfield, A.D. 1266. Siege of Kenilworth. The exiled rebels are forgiven, A.D. 1267. Henry III's death, A.D. 1272. Merlin's prophecy of Henry III ... ... pp. 163–178

Chapters 161–170.

Edward I crowned. Coronation festivities. Edward's first campaign against Lewelyn of Wales, A.D. 1277. The second Welsh campaign, A.D. 1278. Bad coinage reformed. Lewelyn's third rebellion, A.D. 1282. Lewelyn is slain. David, Prince of Wales, rebels against Edward. Execution of David, A.D. 1283. Edward subdues Wales. Revolt of Rys ap Meriedok, A.D. 1287. Punishment of bad judges, A.D. 1289. Expulsion of the Jews, A.D. 1290. The claimants to the Scottish throne. Edward declares Balliol King of Scotland, A.D. 1292. The Normans at Dover, A.D. 1293. The defenders of Gascony taken by the French, A.D. 1294. Balliol rebels, A.D. 1295. Turberville's deceit. Siege of Berwick, A.D. 1296. Edward I and his long shanks. Balliol is beaten at Berwick Castle. English victory at Dunbar, A.D. 1296. Mock-song against the Scots. Edward forgives Balliol and the rebel Scots. The Scots choose Wallace their king, A.D. 1297. Wallace's truce with France. He defeats the English at Stirling Bridge. Edward ravages Scotland. He defeats the Scots at Falkirk, A.D. 1298 pp. 179–194

Chapters 171–180.

King Edward marries Margaret of France, A.D. 1299. The third campaign against Scotland, A.D. 1303. Stirling Castle surrenders, A.D. 1304. Ordinance of Trailbaston, A.D. 1305. Edward imprisons his son. Wallace is hanged, A.D. 1305. Robert Bruce claims the crown of Scotland, and repudiates Edward I. Comyn opposes Bruce. Bruce kills Comyn, and is crowned king, A.D. 1306. Edward prepares for a fresh conquest of Scotland ... ... pp. 194–200

Chapters 181–190.

Edward I invades Scotland. Bruce defeated [at Methven], A.D. 1306. Sir Symond Frisell is hanged, and the Earl of Athol taken. Bruce flees to Norway. Edward I prepares for his death, A.D. 1307. Merlin's prophecies about him. Edward II his successor. He weds Princess Isabel of France, and is crowned, A.D. 1308. Piers Gaveston. His

unpopularity and pride. He is sent to Ireland. Gaveston's return condoned by Parliament at Stamford, A.D. 1309. Murder of Gaveston, A.D. 1312. Bruce's return to Scotland. He defeats Edward II at Bannockburn, A.D. 1314. Mock-song of the Scotch maidens. John Tanner. Berwick taken, A.D. 1318. Two Cardinals robbed in England, A.D. 1317. Great Famine in England, A.D. 1315–1317. The Scots plunder Northumberland ... ... pp. 200–210

Chapters 191–200.

Scotland interdicted, A.D. 1318. The younger Hugh le Spenser is made the King's chamberlain. Renewed attack on Scotland. The English defeated in the White Battle at Myton, A.D. 1319. Hugh le Spenser's pride. The harm done by the Spensers. The Spensers exiled, A.D. 1321. The father curses the son. Recall of the Spensers, A.D. 1322. Siege of Leeds, A.D. 1321. Thomas of Lancaster outlawed. Siege of Tickhill Castle raised by the King. Robert Holond's treachery. Thomas of Lancaster and the rebels go to Burbridge, A.D. 1322. Thomas tries to win over Sir Andrew Hercela. Battle of Burbridge. Humphrey de Bohun slain. Thomas of Lancaster taken. Mixt races in England. Thomas imprisoned at Pontefract. He is scandalously treated and beheaded, A.D. 1322. Other rebels executed. The triumph of the Spensers. They advise a renewed attack on the Scots. The English are defeated at Byland, A.D. 1322. Lord Carlisle taken and disgraced for his treachery. His execution, A.D. 1323 ... pp. 210–228

Chapters 201–210.

Miracles for the Martyr, St. Thomas of Lancaster. The pilgrimages to his tomb stopped by the advice of the Spensers. Sir Roger Mortimer escapes from the Tower, A.D. 1323. The King seizes the Queen's lands. He sends his Queen to France to make peace. His son Edward does homage to Charles IV. Edward II exiles his Queen and Prince Edward, A.D. 1325. The Spensers' conspiracy against Queen Isabel and her son. Queen Isabel proposes to invade England. Edward II's preparations against his wife and son, A.D. 1326. Landing of Isabel and Mortimer. Bishop Stapleton and his two Squires are beheaded. King Edward is taken prisoner. The Spensers are hanged, and other traitors beheaded. The Nobles agree to depose Edward II, A.D. 1327. The Nobles, Bishops and Knights disclaim him pp. 228–242

Chapters 211–220.

Prophecies of Merlin about Edward II. Edward III crowned, A.D. 1327. England happy under him. Attempt to set Edward II free. Abortive Scottish campaign. Mock-song of the Scotch. The Scots invade England. A fine army opposes them. Through Mortimer's treachery, the Scots escape at Stanhope Park. Two moons appear. Two Popes elected. Edward II murdered in Corfe Castle, A.D. 1328.

Edward III weds Philippa of Hainault. The shameful peace of Northampton between the English and Scotch. Bruce's son to be King of Scotland. Queen Isabel becomes hated. Robert of Holand is killed. Demands of the objectors to Queen Isabel's doings. Her opponents give in. Henry of Lancaster and his followers exiled. Edward III does homage for Guienne. Mortimer's ambition. Contrast between the King of Folly and King Arthur ... ... pp. 242–262

Chapters 221–223.

Edmund of Woodstock gets leave to seek for Edward II, A.D. 1329. Sir John Daverel betrays him. Isabella appeals to Edward III to kill Edmund of Woodstock. He is arrested, tried for treason, and beheaded, A.D. 1330. Pride and avarice of Roger Mortimer. Edward III's council plan their defence. The secret passage into Nottingham Castle. Mortimer is taken and condemned to death, A.D. 1330. "Sir John Turnetabard." Edward Balliol is imprisoned in France. Preparations to make Edward Balliol King of Scotland. Edward III gives him leave to go to Scotland, A.D. 1332. He lands there, and routs the Earl of Fife. His speech to his men. He beats his Scotch opposers. A coming battle. Balliol routs the Scots. The Fleming pirate Crab. Balliol is crowned King of Scotland, and does homage to Edward III. Attempt to murder him. He and Edward III besiege Berwick, A.D. 1333. The Scots offer to surrender Berwick if help does not come soon. The Scots make ready to fight. The five wards of their army. The English rout them at Halidon Hill, 19 July 1333 ... pp. 263–286

The longer Romance of the Battle of Halidon Hill ... pp. 287–289
A shorter fragmentary version of the same ... ... p. 289

The Brut, a Chronicle of England.

[*MS. Douce* 323, *Bodleian Library.*]

[The Prolog.][1]

[How King Dioclisian wedded his 33 Daughters to 33 Kings whom they afterwards murderd; and how these Widows came to England, & had children by the Giants of the land.]

[2] IN[3] the noble lande of Surrye[4] ther was a noble kyng and myghty, & a man of grete renoun, þat me called Dyoclician, þat wel and worthily hym gouernede, & rewlede thurgh his noble chiualrye, so þat he conquered alle þe landes abowte hym, so that almoste alle þe kynges of þe world to hym were entendaunt. ¶ Hyt befell thus, þat this Dioclician spousede a gentyl damysele þat was wondyr fayr, þat was hys Eemys doughter, Labana; & sche loued hym as reson wolde, so þat he gate vpon here xxxiij doughtres, of þe which þe eldest me called Albyne. And þese[5] Damysels, whan þey comyn in-to[6] Age, bycomen[7] so fayre þat it was wondyr. ¶ Wherfore this Dioclician anon lete make A sompnyng, & comaundid by his lettres þat Alle þe kyngys þat heldyn of hym schulde come at A certayn day, as in his lettres was[8] conteyned, to make A ryal feste. At which day, þedir þey comyn, & brought with hem Amyralles, Prynces & Dukes, & noble Chiualrye. þe feste was ryally Arayd; & þere þey lyved in ioy and merthe y-now, that it was wonder to wete.

¶ And hit befelle þus, þat þis Dioclician þoughte maryen his Doughtres among alle þo knyghtys[9] þat tho were at that solempnite;

[1] *The text to the end of Chapter V is taken from MS. Douce* 323, *as it is wanting (except just the latter part of Chapter V, which is too blurred and indistinct to be copied) in MS. Rawlinson B* 171. *The collation following is of MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin* 490 (*D*). [2] *leaf* 1.

[3] D *has this heading:* Her may a man hure How Engelande was ferst callede Albyon and through whome it hade the name.

[4] Syrrie [5] þis [6] vnto [7] bicome [8] were [9] kynges

and so they speken[1] & dede, that Albyne, his eldest doughter,
& alle here[2] sustres, richely were maryed vnto xxxiij kynges[3] that
wer[4] lordes of gret honour, & Also power, at þis solempnite. And
whanne þ^e^ solempnite was done, eu*er*y kyng nome his wyf, & lad 4
hem into here owne cuntre, and there maad hem quene. ¶ And
hit byfelle þus aftyrward, þat þis dame Albyne bycome so stoute
& so sterne, þ*at* sche told litel prys of her lord, And of hym hadde
scorne and dyspite, and wolde not done his wylle, but wolde haue 8
here owne wyH in diu*er*ses[5] maners. And aH her other sustres,
eche on[6] bere hem so euel a-yens here lordes, þ*at* it was wonder
to wete. ¶ And for-as-mych as hem thought[7] þat here housebondes
were not[8] of so hye p*ar*age comen as here fadyr. ¶ But tho kynges 12
þ*at* were her lordes, wolde haue chastysed[9] with fayr speche &
byhestes, & also for[8] ȝiftes, and warnyd hem in fayr man*er* vpon
aH loue and frenschipe þ*at* þei scholde Amende hir[10] lithir condi-
c*i*ons; but al it was for nouȝt, for they deden her owne wil in aH 16
þyng[11] þ*at* hem lykede & hadde of power. wherfore þo xxxiij
kynges, vpon A tyme, and oftyn-tymes, beten here wyfes, for þey
wende that þei wolde haue Amended here tacches and here wykkyd
thewes; but of such condic*i*ons þei were þ*at*, for fayr speche & 20
warnyng, þei deden the [12]wors, & for betynges [13]eft-sone mych[13]
wors. Wherfore þ^e^ kyng þ*at* hadde wedded Albyne, wrote þ^e^
tacches & þ^e^[8] condic*i*ons of his wyf Albyne, & þ^e^ l*ett*re sent to
Dioclician, her fader. ¶ And whenne þ^e^[8] other kynges herde that 24
Albynes lord had sent l*ett*re to Dioclician, ano*n* þey sente lettres
enseled with here seeles [of] þ^e^ condic*i*ons and þ^e^ tacches of here
wyfes.

¶ Whanne þ^e^ Kyng Dioclician saw & herde so many pleynt*es* 28
of his doughters, he was[8] sore a-schamed, & bycome wonder Angry
& wroth to-ward his doughters, & þought boþ^e^ nyght & day how
he þo myghte amende hit þat þey so mysdede. ¶ And anon sente
his lettres vnto þo xxxiij[14] kynges, þat þey schulde come to hym, 32
& brynge w*ith* hem here wyfes, eu*er*ychon at a certayn day, for he
wolde þere chastise hem of here wikkydnes, if he myghte in eny
maner wyse. So þ*at* þ^e^ kynges comen AH at þe[15] day & tyme þat

[1] spoken [2] her o*þ*ere
[3] knyghtes *struck out, and* kynges *written after it.* [4] weren
[5] diu*er*se [6] eu*er*ycheon [7] þouȝt nouȝt
[8] *om.* [9] chastisede ham [10] her maners þat wer so
[11] þinges [12] *leaf* 1, *back.* [13—13] eftesones michel
[14] xxx^ti^ [15] her

þo was sette bytwen hem; & þ^e Kyng Dioclician hem vndir-fenge[1]
wit̄h mychel honour, & made A solempne feste to aH þ*at* were
vndir his lordschip*e*. And þ^e thrid day of þ*at*[2] solempnyte, þ^e
4 kyng Dioclician sente for[3] his xxxiij doughtres, þ*at* þei schulde
come & speke w*ith* hym in his chambre. & whenne þey were
comen, he spak' vn-to hem of here wikkydnes & of here cruelte,
& dispitously[4] hem reproued' And' vndirnam,[5] & to hem he sayde
8 þ*at*, ȝif þei wolde not be[6] chastised', þei schulde his loue lese for
eu*er*more. ¶ And whanne þ^e ladyes herd[7] al this, þei become*n*[8]
abasshed' & gretly a-schamed'; & to here fadir þey seyd þ*at* þei
wolde make al amendes; & so þey dep*ar*ted' out fro*m* here fadres[9]
12 chambre. and Dame Albyne, þ*at* was þ^e eldest suster, lad hem aH
into her chambre, & þo made voide al þ*at* were þ*er*in, so þ*at* no
lyf was among'[10] hem but sche & here sustres y-fere.[11] þ^o saide
þis Albyne ¶ "My fair sustres, ful weel ȝe[12] knowiþ þat þ^e kyng
16 oure fadir, vs hath reprouyd', schamed & dispised',[13] for encheson)
to make vs obedient vn-to oure housbandes; but certes þ*at* schal y
neu*er*e, whiles þ*at* I lyve, seth̄ þ*at* I [14]am come[14] of a more hyere
kynges blod' þan my[15] housband is." & whan sche had so seyd,
20 aH here sustres seyd þe same. ¶ And þo seyd Albyne: "ful
wel y wot, fayr sustres, þ*at* oure housbandes haue playned' vnto
owre fadir vpon vs, wherfore he hath [16]þus vs[16] foul reproued'
& dispised'. wherfore, sustres, my counseil is þ*at*, þis nyght,
24 when owre housbandes ben abed,[17] aH we wit̄h on assent cutten
here throtes, & þan we mow be in pees of hem, & bett*er* we mowe
do þ*is* þing vndir our fadres power þan elles-where." & anon
AH þ^e ladyes [18]consentid' and gr*a*unted vnto þis counceil. ¶ And
28 whan nyght was comyn, þ^e lordes & ladies wente to bedde, & anon
as here lordes were in[19] slepe, þei cutte[20] aH here housbandes
throtes, & so they slowen hem aH.

¶ whan þ*at* Dioclician[21] her fader herd' of þis þing, [22]he by-
32 come[22] hugely wrot̄h A-ȝens his Doughtres, & anon wolde hem aH
haue brent; but Alle þ^e barou*n*s & lordes of Sirrye conceilyd' hym
not so for-to don suche sternys to his owne doughtres, but onlych̄
schulde voide þ^e land of hem for eu*er*more, so þ*at* þei neuere
36 schulde come aȝen; & so he dede. ¶ And anon Dioclician, þ*at*

[1] vnderfong' [2] þe [3] after [4] despitely [5] vndenam
[6] bene [7] harden [8] bicome [9] fader' [10] amonges [11] infere
[12] we [13] despitede [14—14] comen [15] myn [16—16] vs þus
[17] in bede [18] *leaf* 2. [19] on [20] cotten [21] Dioclician þe kyng'
[22—22] *om.*

was here fadir,[1] commaundid hem to gon in-to schipe, & deliuerydꝑ
to hem vitailles for half a[2] ȝeer. and when þis was don, aꝗ þe
sustryn[3] went in-to Shipe, & saylled fortꝫ in þe See, & be-toke alle
her frendes to Appolyn, þat was her godꝑ. And so long þey sailledꝑ 4
in þe See, til at þe laste þei come[4] & aryuedꝑ in an yle þat was aꝗ
wyldernes. ¶ Andꝑ when dame Albyne was come to þat landꝑ, &
aꝗ her sustres, þis Albyne went ferst [5]owt of þe shipe,[5] & sayde to
here oþer sustres: "for-as-michꝫ," quodꝑ[6] sche, "as I am þe eldest 8
suster of aꝗ þis cumpanye, & ferst þis land haue takyn, & for-as-
meche as myn[7] name is Albyne, y wil þat þis landꝑ be calledꝑ
Albyoñ, after myn owne name;" & anon aꝗ here Sustren[3] her
grauntedꝑ witꝫ a[2] good wylle. 12

¶ Tho wenten owt aꝗ þe Sustres of þe Shippe, & tokyn þe lond
Albyon, as here Suster calledꝑ hit; & þere þei wente vp and doun,
and founde neiþer man ne woman ne childꝑ, but wylde bestes of
diuers[8] kyndes. ¶ And whan here vitaiꝗ[9] were dispendidꝑ, & hem 16
faylledꝑ, þei fedde hem witꝫ erbes & frutes in sesoun of þe ȝeer, &
so þey lyuedꝑ[10] as þei beste myghꝫt. And after þat, þei tokyn flessꝫ
of diuers[8] beestys, and bycomen wondir fatte, and so þei desirid[11]
mannes cumpanye and mannys kynde þat hem faylledꝑ; and for 20
hete they woxen wondir coraious of kynde [5]þat hem faylled,[5] so þat
þey desiridꝑ more mannys cumpanye þan eny other solas or merthe.

¶ Whanne þe Deuyꝗ that perceyuedꝑ and wente by diuers[8]
contres, & nome bodyes of þe eyre & likyng natures shad of men, 24
& come in-to þe land of Albyon and lay by þe[12] wymmen, and
schad tho natures vpon hem, & they conceiuedꝑ, and after þei
broughten[13] fortꝫ Geauntes, of þe whichꝫ on me calledꝑ Gogmagogꝑ,
and anoþer Laugherigan, & so þei were nompnedꝑ by diuers[14] 28
names; & in þis manere they comen fortꝫ, and weren[15] boren
horrible Geauntes in Albion; & þey dwellyd in Cauys & in hulles
at here wiꝗ, & had þe londꝑ of Albyon as hem likedꝑ, vn-to þe
tyme þat Brut Arryved & come to Tottenesse, þat was in þe Ile 32
of Albyon. and þere þis Brut conqueryd & scomfytedꝑ these[16]
[17]geauntes abouseydꝑ.

Here endetꝫ þe prolog of Albyon, þat þo was an Ile. and herkenetꝫ[18] now how Brute was geten, & how he slow, 36

[1] fader anon [2] *om.* [3] sustres [4] comen [5–5] *om.*
[6] quoþ [7] my [8] diuerses [9] vitailes
[10] leueden [11] desirden [12] þo [13] brouȝt [14] diuerseȝ
[15] wer [16] þe [17] *leaf* 2, *back.* [18] herkeþ

ferst his Modir, & Afterwardꝑ his fadir; & how he Conquered Albyon, þat After he nepned Brytaigne, after his[1] name, þat now is y-called[2] Engelondꝑ, After þe name of
4 **Engist of Saxoyne. Capitulo Primo.**

IN the noble Cyte of gret Troye, *þer* was a noble knyght & [3]a myghty, &[3] a man of gret power, *þat* me callyd Eneas. And whan þᵉ Cytee of Troye was lost & dystroyedꝑ thurgh hem of
8 Greekꝑ, þis Eneas, *with* al his mayn[4] fled[5] thens, & come in-to Lumbardye, *þat* þo was lord & gou*er*nour of *þat* landꝑ a kyng *þat* me calledꝑ[6] Latyme, and another kyngꝑ þo was *þat* me calledꝑ[6] Turocelyn, *þat* stronglich[7] werredꝑ vpon þis Kyngꝑ Latyme, *þat*
12 often-tymes ded hym moche[8] sorowe & myche[9] harm. ¶ And whan þis Kyng Latyme herde *þat* Eneas was come,[10] he vndirfonge hym *with* myche[11] honour, and hym withhelde, for-as-myche as he had herdꝑ of hym, and wyst wel *þat* he was a noble knyght, & a
16 worthy of body and of his dedes. ¶ This Eneas helpe Kyng Latyme in his werre; & schortly for-to telle, so weel & worthyly he ded, *þat* he slogh Turocelyn, & descomphytedꝑ al[12] his peple. And whan al this was don, kyng Latyme ȝaf al *þat* land *þat* was
20 Turocelyns, & ȝaf it to Eneas in mariage *with* Lamane, his doughter, the moost fayr creature *þat* eny manne wiste; & so þei louede[13] to-gider in ioy & myrthe aH here lyvys tyme.

¶ Hit bifel thus, *þat* Eneas dide, as God wolde. & whanne
24 thatꝑ he was ded, Asquani*us* his Sone, *þat* come *with* hym fro*m* Troye, vndirfenge[14] þᵉ landꝑ, and helde it al his lyvys tyme. ¶ And aft*er*, he weddid A wyfꝑ, & vpon here[15] begate A Sone *þat* me callyd Sylveyn. And this Sylveyn, whan he conde[16] some resonꝑ
28 of man, vnwetyng his fadir, & aȝens his wyl, aqueyntedꝑ[17] with a damyseH *þat* was Cosyn to Lamane *þat* was Kyng Latymes doughter, the quen *þat* was Eneas wyf, and brought þᵉ damyseH *with* Chylde. ¶ And whan Asquani*us* his[9] fader [18]yt wyste,[18] anon he
32 lete enquere of the [19]wysest maystres,[19] & of þᵉ [20]grettest Clerkys,[20] what child þᵉ damysele schulde bryng forth. & þey Answered & seyde *þat* sche schuld bryng forth a Sone *þat* schuld qwelle boþᵉ fader & moder; & so he dede; for his modir dyde in beryng[21] of

[1] his owen [2] callede [3–3] *om.* [4] meny [5] *MS.* fledde fled
[6] cleped [7] strongly [8] miche [9] *om.* [10] comen [11] michel
[12] and aH [13] loueden [14] vnderfonge [15] her he [16] couþe
[17] acqueynte hi*m* [18–18] wist þ*er*of [19–19] gret clerkes
[20–20] wisest men [21] bryngengꝑ forth

hym. ¶ And whan þis Child was born), his fadir lete calle hym Brut; and þ^e maystres sayd[1] þat þe Child schulde do[2] mych̄ harm & sorowe in many diu*ers*[3] places; & aft*er*, he schulde come to gret[4] hono*ur* and worschip*e*. ¶ This Kyng Asquani*us* deide whan 4
god wolde; & Sylveyn his sone receyued þe land, & made hym wonderlich̄ wel be-louyd̄ among' his puple. [5]And[6] whan Brut, þ*at* was Sylveynes sone, was xv ȝeer olde, he went vpon A day with̄ his fadir to[7] pley & solace; & as this Brut schulde schete[8] 8
vnto an hert, his Arwe mys-happed̄ & glacede; And so there Brut quelled his fader.

How Brut was dryue[9] out of þ^e land̄, &[10] held hy*m* in Greke. Cap*itul*o ij^o. 12

And whan this myschau*n*ce byfalle was, þ^e people of þ^e land̄ made sorowe ynow, & were [11]an-Angryd̄[11]; & for encheson) þ*er*of þei dreven Brut out of þ^e land̄, & wolde not suffre hym among[12] hem. and he Saw þ*at* he moste[13] not Abyde, & went 16
fro thens in-to þ^e[14] Greek'; & þer he fonde vij^M^ men þ*at* were of þ^e lynage & kynrede of Troy, þ*at* [15]weren come[15] of gret blod̄, as þ^e story telleth̄[16] as of men and[14] wo*m*men & childryn, þe wheche weren[17] alł holden in thraldom and bondage [by] ¶ the[18] Kyng 20
Pandras of Greek', for the deth̄ of Achilles, þ*at* was betrayed̄ and slayn at Troye.

This Brut was a wondir fair man, & a strong, & A[19] huge of his Age, & of glad chere and semblaunt, and also worthy of body, & 24
was wel beloued̄ among his puple. This Kyng Pandras herde speke of his goodnesse & his condic*i*ons, & anon made hym dwełł with̄ hym, so þ*at* Brut be-come wondir þryve & mych̄ belouyd̄ w*ith* þ^e kyng, so þ*at* longtyme Brut dwellyd w*ith* þe kyng. ¶ So at[20] last 28
þei of Troy & Brut spoken to-gedre[21] of kynrede & of lynage & of Aqueyntau*n*ce, & þer[14] pleyned̄ hem vnto Brut of her sorowe &[22] her bondeage, & of meny other schames þ*at* þ^e [Kyng] Pandras[23] hem don. & to Brut þei seyde[24] vpon A tyme: "ȝe ben A lord of oure 32

[1] saiden [2] done [3] diu*er*ses [4] miche
[5] *leaf* 3. *In the right hand top corner of this page is written, in a contemporary hand:* 'Bonus es, do*mi*ne, et in bonitate tua Iudicas terram.'
[6] A *sic.* [7] forto [8] shote [9] dryuen [10] And how he
[11—11] sore agreuede [12] amonges [13] miȝt [14] *om.*
[15—15] wer comen [16] telleþ of ham [17] wer [18] *MS.* ¶ The
[19] an [20] at þe [21] to-gederes [22] and of
[23] Pandras hade [24] saiden

lynage, & A st*rang*ᵗ man & a mygħty. [1]be ȝe[1] oure Avowe & oure lordᵈ, & we wyl become ȝoure men, & ȝoure comandeme*n*tes[2] done in alle maner thyng[3]; and brynge ȝe vs outᵗ of this wrechidnes &
4 bondage, & fygħt we witħ þᵉ kyng; for thurgħ þᵉ grace of [4]þᵉ grete[4] godᵈ we schul hym ou*er*come; & we schul make ȝou kyngᵗ of þᵉ landᵈ, & to ȝow done homage, & of ȝow we schullen holde[5] eu*er*-more."

8 Brut hadde þo gret pyte of hir bondage þ*at* þei were brought Inne, And pryvyly[6] went hym from þᵉ kynges Courtᵗ; & aħ þo þ*at* were of Troy went & put hem in-to wodes and Into Mounteynes, and hem helde, & sent to Kyng Pandras þ*at* he schulde ȝeue
12 hem leue safely for-to wende out of þᵉ londe, for þei nolde[7] no lenger dwelle in his bondage. ¶ The Kyng Pandras wax so[8] sore anoyedᵈ, & þo swore that he wolde sle hem echon,[9] & ordeyned a gret power, & wente towardes[10] hem aħ for-to fight. but Brut
16 & his me*n* [11]anon manly[11] hem defended, & fersly fogħten & quelled aħ þe kynges men, þ*at* non[12] of hem Ascapedᵈ, & tookᵗ þᵉ kyng, & hym helden[13] in prysonᵗ, & ordeynedᵈ [14]counceyl betwen hem what þei myght do.[15] Su*m* seyd þ*at* he schuld be put to detħ, &
20 su*m*me seyd þ*at* he schulde be exyledᵈ out of þᵉ landᵈ, & su*m*me seyd þ*at* he schulde be brent.[16] ¶ And þᵒ spak a wyse knyght þat me cleped[17] Menprys, & seyd to Brut & to[18] aħ þo of Troy: "yf Kyng Pandras wold ȝelde hym, & haue his lyf, y counceyl þ*at* he
24 ȝeue vnto Brut, þ*at* is ourᵗ Duke & oure sou*er*ayn, his doughter Gennogen to wyf, & in Mariage *with* here an hundrid Shippes wel arayedᵈ, & al his tresour of goldᵈ & of syluer, of corn,[19] of wyn, & as myche as vs neditħ for[18] to haue of o thing & of o*per*; & þan go[18]
28 we out of þis[20] land, & ordeine we vs land elles-wher; for we, ne no*n* of ourᵗ kynrede þ*at* comen[21] aft*er* vs, schuld[22] neu*er* haue pees in þis landᵈ amonges hem of Grekᵗ; for we haue sleyn so meny of herᵗ knyghtes & of o*per* frendes, þ*at* eu*er*morᵗ werre & contect
32 schuldᵈ be Amonges vs." ¶ Brut þo, & his folk, consentydᵈ wel to þis[23] cou*n*ceyl; & þis þing þei tolden to[24] Kyng Pandras. ¶ And þᵉ kyng, for-to haue his lyf, g*ra*unted as meche as þei axed, & anon ȝaf vn-to Brut, Gennogen his Doughter, to wyf, & þe hundred

[1—1] bene [2] co*m*mandement [3] þinges [4—4] *om.*
[5] holde for [6] p*r*iueliche [7] wolde [8] þo [9] eu*er*chon
[10] towarde [11—11] manliche [12] noman [13] helde
[14] *leaf* 3, *back.* [15] done [16] bracide [17] callede
[18] *om.* [19] corn and [20] his [21] comeþ [22] shul
[23] þat [24] to þe

sheppes, wiħ as myche as hem neded[1] of aħ vitalles, as byfore was ordeyned.

Brut þo toke[2] his wyf, & aħ his men þat forsoke þe lond of Greek, & wenten hem vnto þ^e^ see & hadden wedir at wyħ, & 4 comen þ^e^ þrid day in-to An Ile þat me calleþ[3] Loegers. ¶ Brut anon sent of his men a[4] land, for-to aspye þ^e^ maner of þe[5] Cuntre. & þey founden an olde Cyte al wasted & forlete, þat nas þer-in nor[6] man ne woman, ne no thing dwellynge; & In þ^e^ Myddyl of þis 8 Cytee þey founden an olde Temple of a fayr lady þat me called Diane þ^e^ Goddesse. and þei [7]comen aȝen vnto Brut,[7] & told hym what þei had seyn & founden, & counceyled hym to go & do[8] sacrifice to[9] Dame Diane, for she was wont[10] to ȝeue answere of 12 what þing þat[6] euere men prayed here, & namely vn-to hem þat her honoured with sacrifice. ¶ Brut went to þat ymage, & seyd: "Dyane, noble goddes, lady þat al þing hast in[6] myght & in þy power, wyndes, watres, wodes, feldes, & al thinges of þe world, & 16 al maner bestes þat þer-In ben! to ȝow y make my prayer, þat ȝe me counceyle & telle where & in what place y schal haue a conuenable dwellynge for me & for my peple; & þer y schal make, in[11] honour of ȝow, a wel fayr temple, & a noble, wheryn ȝe schul 20 euermore be honoured." ¶ When he had don þis prayer, Dyane Answered in this manere: "Brut," quod sche, "go euenforth þy wey ouer þ^e^ see in-to Fraunce, toward þ^e^ west, & þer ȝe schul fynde an Ile þat is called [12]Albyon; and þat Ile is bycompassed al with 24 þ^e^ see, & no man may come þer-In but[13] it be by schippes; and in þat lond were wont to be Geauntȝ; but[14] it is not so, but al wyldirnesse; and þat lande to ȝou is destynyed, & ordeigned for ȝow & for ȝoure peple." 28

How Coryn bycome Brutes man, & how Kyng Goffar was discomfited. Capitulo iij°.

Whan Brut herde þis Answere of Dyane þ^e^ Goddes, anon he lete þ^e^ Ancres wynd vp, & sayled in-to þ^e^ hye see. & 32 whan he & his men had sayled xx dayes & more, þei founden fast bysyde[15] a coste of þ^e^ see thre hundred men of þe lynage & kynrede of Troy, & her souerayn & her mayster of aħ, men[16] Called Coryn.

[1] nedeth [2] nome [3] callede [4] on [5] *om.*
[6] neyther [7—7] come vnto brut aȝeyne [8] don [9] vnto
[10] wonede [11] in þe [12] *leaf* 4. [13] but if [14] but now
[15] bisides [16] me

¶ And when Brut wyste whens þei were, he þo vndirfong hem
wiþ̄ mychel ioy in-to his Shepys, & hem lad forþ̄ w*ith* hym. This
Coryn þo bycome Brutes man, & to hym dede fewte & homage.
4 & so long þei sayled forþ̄ þan[1] in þ^e^ See tul they come[2] to Gas-
coign); & anon þei arryued̄ in þ^e^ hauene of Liegers, & *þer* þei
dwellidde viij dayes, hem for-to rest,[3] & her sayles to Amend̄,
þer as [4]nede was.[4]
8 Tydyng sone come to Kyng Goffar, *þat* was lord of þ^e^ land, how
þat myche[5] folk' of *stra*unge land weren Arryued in his land̄ in þ^e^
hauene of Liegiers; wher-fore he was sore Angred̄ & anoyed̄ *þat*
þey comen & aryued in his land w*ith*oute[6] leue. and anon he
12 ordeigned̄ power [7]hem to dryven[7] owt, & to[8] shende; but Kyng
Goffar was discomfyted̄, & al[8] his folk', & hym-self fledde in-to
ffraunce to seche help & soco*ur*. ¶ And in *þat* tyme regned in
Frau*n*ce xij kynges; & þ^e^ elleueneth̄[9] assembled̄ a gret power for-to
16 helpe Goffar for-to fight aȝens Brut. Goffar dwelled wiþ̄ hem of
Fr*a*unce half a[8] ȝere & more. And Brut in þ^e^ mene-tyme, & his
cu*m*panye, destroyed̄ al þ^e^ land̄ of Gascoigne, & lete take al þ^e^
tresour *þat* Kyng Goffar hadde, & lete brynge it in-to his Shippes.
20 And þis Brut fonde in *þat*[10] lond̄ a fayr place & a couenable; & *þer*
Brut[11] made a fayr Casteł & a strong. whan *þat* was don, Kyng
Goffar come fro Fraunce, &[12] xj kynges w*ith* hym, & broughten[13]
xx M^t^ men for-to fight w*ith* Brut & his cu*m*panye. And Brut
24 hadde but vij M^t^ men & thre hundred̄. Netheles, whan þ^e^ to ostes
metten to-gider,[14] Brutes folk'—thurgh̄ help of hym-self,[15] & of
Turyn his Cosyn, & of Coryn *þat* wel & manly[16] hym defended &
fought; so *þat* in litil tyme þei hadde quelled of þ^e^ Frenssh̄-men to
28 M^t^ & mo; & þo *þat* were lyue[17] fledden away. ¶ And in this
batayle Turyn, *þat* was Brutes Cosyn, was sleyn, & Brut lete hym
entere worthyly,[18] [19]whan he had space & leyser, in þ^e^ Casteł *þat*
he had made, & þo lete [calle hit] Castel Tours [20]aft*er* his owne
32 name[20] *þat* þere was entered̄. & ȝit in-to þis day *þer* is a noble
Cytee *þat* is called Tours.

Whan Kyng Goffar wiste *þat* Turyn was ded, he come aȝen wiþ̄
his men, & aft*er* ȝaf a strong battaylle vn-to[21] Brut; but Brut &
36 his[8] men were so wery [22]of fyghtynge[22] *þat* þey myghte no lengere

[1] *om.* [2] comen [3] resten [4–4] was nede [5] michel
[6] wiþoute is [7–7] him to dryue [8] *om.* [9] endeleueþ [10] þe
[11] Brus [12] w[ith] [13] brouȝt [14] togederes [15] ham-self
[16] manliche [17] on lyf [18] worthelich [19] *leaf* 4, *back.*
[20–20] for þe name of Turyne [21] to [22–22] forfouȝten

endure; but maugre hym & al his, Brut & his men went in-to his CasteH *with* aH his men, and made þe ȝates fast for-to saue hem-self, & for-to take counceiH amonges hem what were best to[1] done. ¶ Brut & Coryn nome counceiH, & ordeignedꝑ *þat* Coryn pryuyly 4 shuld gon out [2]at a Posterne of þe CasteH,[2] *with* half his men, & schuld go[3] & bussh̄ hem in A wode til amorowe,[4] so *þat* in þe mornyngꝑ, whan Brut schuldꝑ fyghꝑ with̄ his enemyes, Coryn schulde come *with* hes folkꝑ in *þat* o[5] syde, & sle and do aH þe harme *þat* he 8 myghꝑ. And amorow[6] in þe dawnenge, Brut went out of þe CasteH, & faughꝑ *with* his enemyes, & þey hem fersly defendidꝑ. but *with*-Inne a litil tyme Brut & his folkꝑ hadden[7] slayn viij C of Goffars men; And þo come Coryn fro þe busshement, & smote to *grounde*, 12 he & his Cumpanye, al *þat* wold stande or Abyde, so *þat* Kyng Goffar & his folkꝑ were discomfitedꝑ, & faste they gu*nne* to fle. ¶ And Brut & Coryn, with̄ here companye, fresshly hem pursuedꝑ, & quelled of he*m* mo in[8] fleyng *þan* *þei* dede in[8] batayH. And in 16 *þat* man*er*e Brut hadde þe victorye. And neþeles Brut made myche sorowe for his Cosyn Turyn, *þat* *þer* was slayn, & for o*þer* also *þat* he had lost of his men, [9]*þat* is to seyne,[9] vij C and xv, þe which̄ [10][he] noblich̄[10] lete entere in þe CasteH of Tours, *þer* *þat* he had 20 entered Turyn his Cosyn.

How Brut Aryued at Tottenes in þe Ile of Albyon; & of þe Bataylle *þat*[11] was betwen Coryn & Gogmagog. Capitulo quarto. 24

Whan al *þis* was done, Brut wolde no lengere *þer* dwelle for to[12] fighꝑ, ne mo lese of his peple, for Kyngꝑ Goffarys peple myghꝑ eu*er*y day encrece mo & mo, & Brutes lassen; & therfore he nome aH his men, & went vnto þe See, & hadde wynd & wedir at 28 wille. and þe v day afterwardꝑ they aryuedꝑ in an hauene of Tot-nesse, & comen[13] in-to þe Ile of Albion; & *þer* *þey* founde nei*þer* man ne woma*n*, as þe story telleþ,[14] but Geauntz; & *þey* woned in hulles andꝑ in[15] Caues. Brut saw þe land was fayr, & at his likynge, 32 & good also for hym & for his folkꝑ, as Dyane þe goddes had hym behyghꝑ. *þo* was Brut wonder glad, & lete assemble vpon a day al his folk, to make a solempne sacrifice & a gret feste in honour

[1] for-to [2—2] of the castel at a poster*ne* [3] gone [4] on þe morw [5] on [6] amorn [7] hade [8] in þe [9—9] *om.* [10—10] nobliche he [11] *þai sic* [12] *om.* [13] come [14] telles [15] *om.*

& reu*e*rence of Dyane,[1] þurght whas counceiħ he was come[2] in-to þ*a*t landȩ.

And whan they had her solempnyte maad, as þey[3] vpon a day
4 were[4] at mete, þer come yn vpon hem sodenly xxx Geauntȝ, & quellydȩ [5]of Brutes men xxx. Brut & his men[4] anon stertyn vp, & his men[6] foughten witħ þ^e^ Geauntȝ, & quellyd hem eu*er*ychon but o[7] Geaunt, þ*a*t was Mayster of hem aħ, þat me called Gogmagogʼ,
8 þ*a*t was strengerʼ[8] & heyer þan eny of þ^e^ other Geauntȝ; & Brut kepte hym, & sauyd his lyf, for encheson þ*a*t he schulde wrastle witħ Coryn, for Coryn was grettere & hugere þan eny of Brutes men fro[9] þ^e^ gerdel stede vpwardȩ. ¶ Gogmagogʼ & Coryn vndirtook
12 [10]to wrastelyn[10] y-fere; & so to-gider þey wrasteledȩ long tyme, but at þe last Gogmagog helde Coryn so fast þ*a*t he brak ij rybbys of[11] his syde, wherfore Coryn was sore agreuydȩ, & nome þo Gogmagogʼ betwene his Armes, & cast hym dou*n* vpon a roche, so þ*a*t
16 Gogmagogʼ brak al to peces, & so he dyde in eviħ deth; & þ*er*fore þ^e^ place is called ȝit in-to[12] þis day 'þe sawte of Gogmagogʼ.'

& þo ȝaf Brute al þ*a*t[13] Cuntre to Coryn; & Coryn[14] called [hit][4] aft*er* his[15] name 'Cornewayle'; & his me*n* he called 'Corne-
20 wayles' & [so] schul[16] me*n* of þ*a*t Cuntre be called for eu*er*more. And in þ*a*t Cuntre dwellydȩ Coryn & his men, & made Tounes & houses,[17] & enhabitedȩ[18] þ^e^ landȩ at herʼ[19] wylle.

How Brut made Londoⁿ, & Called þis landȩ Brytaigne, & Scotlandȩ Albyne, & Walys Camber. Capit*u*lo quinto.

24

BRut and his men wenten forth & [20]sought aboute in diu*er*s[20] places wher they myghte fynde a good place & a couenable þ*a*t þey myghte [make] in a Cytee for hym and for his folk, so at þ^e^
28 laste þey come[21] by a fayr Ryuer[22] þ*a*t is[23] calledȩ þ^e^[4] Tamyse; & þer Brut be-gan a fayre Cyte [24]for hym & for his folkʼ,[24] & lete calle it 'þ^e^ new Troye,' in mynde & remembrau*n*ce of þ^e^ gret Troye, for[25] whicħ place aħ her lynage was comen. ¶ And þis Brut lete felle
32 adou*n* wodes, & lete erye & sowe londes, & don*e* mow medes[26] for sustin*au*nce of hym & of his peple. & he dep*ar*ted þ^e^ landȩ to hem, so þ*a*t eche[27] of he*m* had a certayn place for to dwelle vpon. And

[1] Diane þe Goddes [2] comen [3] þai were [4] *om.* [5] *leaf* 5.
[6] men and [7] on [8] stronge [9] fra*m* [10—10] forto wrasteħ
[11] in [12] vnto [13] þis [14] Coryn it [15] his owen [16] shulleþ
[17] house [18] inhabite [19] his [20—20] sou*n*ȝten forthe in diu*er*ses
[21] comen [22] Ryuer side [23] was [24—24] *om.* [25] fram
[26] medowes [27] eu*er*yche

Brut lete Calle al[1] þis land Britaigne, after his owne name, & his
folk he lete calle Britouns. ¶ And þis Brut had geten on[2] his
wyf Gennogen iij sones þat were worthy of dedes:[3] þe firste me[4]
callyd Lotryn, þe secounde Albanac,[5] & þe thryd kambyr. ¶ And 4
Brut bare Crowne in þe Cyte of newe Troye xx ȝeer after tyme[6]
the Cyte was made; & ther he made þe lawes þat þe Britouns
holdeþ[7]: & þis Brut was wondirly weel byloued among all men;
& Brutes Sones also loueden wonderly[1] wel to-gydere.[8] 8

¶ And whan[1] Brut had sowte all þe lond in lengthe &[9] brede,
he fonde A land þat ioyned to Brytaigne in þe north; and þat
land Brut ȝaf to Albanac his sone, and he lete calle yt Albanye
after his [10]name, þat[10] now is called Scotland. ¶ And Brut 12
fonde anothir Cuntre toward þe west; & þat he ȝaf to Cambre
his other [11]sone, & he[1] lete calle yt Cambre aftyr his name,
& now is called Walys. And whan Brut had regnyd xx ȝeer,
as byfore[12] is sayd, he dyde in þe Cytee of newe Troy, & 16
þere his Sones hym entered with mychil honour. And Lotryn,
Brutes sone, was Crowned kyng with myche[13] solempnyte of
all þe land of Brytaigne. And after, whan he was Crouned,
Albanak & Camber, his too brethryn, went aȝen in-to here owne 20
Cuntre, & leuedyn with myche[13] honour, & Lotryn here brother
regned & was kyng and gouerned þe land wel & wysely, for he was
a good man, & wondir wel belouyd of all his land.

¶ And it befel so þat Albanac dwelde in his owne land with 24
myche[13] honour & worschepe.

And so come Kyng Humbar of Hunland with a gret power &
strengthe, & Arryved in Albanye, & wolde haue conqueryd þe land,
& bygan to werre vpon Albanak, & hym quelled in bataylle. 28
Whan Albanac was slayn, þe folk of þe land flye vn-to Lotryn, &
told hym, for he was Kyng of Brytaigne, how þat his brother was
slayn, & prayed hym of help for-to Auenge his brotherys deth.
Lotryn anon lete asemble all þe Brytouns of Kent, of[14] Douorre, 32
vn-to Derewent, of Northfolk & Southfolc, of Kestefen & of
Lyndeseye; & whan they were all Assembled, þei spedde faste
toward her enemyes for to ȝeue hem bataylle. ¶ Lotryn had sent
to Camber, his Brother, þat he schuld come also to hym with all 36
þe power that he myght, hym for-to helpe; & so he dede, with good

[1] *om.* [2] of [3] bodyes [4] m *sic* [5] albac [6] tyme þat
[7] helden [8] togederes [9] and in [10—10] owen name and
[11] *leaf* 5, *back.* [12] *MS.* fyfore [13] michel [14] fro

wiꝗ.[1] So þei comen aꝗ to-gedres, & nome her wey priuyly[2] for to seche Humbar wher þey myghte hym fynde. ¶ And so it byfel *þat* þis Humbar was besides a water *þat* was a gret Ryu*er*, wiꝗ
4 his folk, hym for to dysport; and þo come Lotryn & Camber his brother, wiꝗ aꝗ his[3] folk sodeynly, or *þat* eny of *þat* o*þer* it wyste.

¶ And whan Humbar saw hem[4] come, he was sore adradꝑ,
8 forasmyche as his men wist it not, & also þey were vnarrayedꝑ.[5] And anon Humbar for drede, lept[6] in-to þᵉ wat*er* & drenchyd hym-self, & so deide: he & his men weren[7] aꝗ y-slayn,[8] *þat* non[9] of hem ascapedꝑ. And *þer*fore is *þat*[10] wat*er* calledꝑ Humbar, & eu*er*-
12 more schalbe, for encheson) *þat* Kyng Humbar was *þer*-In drenchedꝑ.

¶ And aft*er* *þat*, Lotryn wente to here shippes, & toke þer[10] goldꝑ & silu*er*, and as myche as he fand vn-to hym-self; & aꝗ *þat* other pylfre he ȝaf vn-to other folk of þᵉ ost. & þei founden[11] in
16 oon of þo[10] shippes A fayr Damyseꝗ *þat* was Kyng Humbarys dough*ter*, & me called herꝑ Estrilde. ¶ And whan Lotryn saw here, he took here w*ith* hym for here fayrnesse, and for here, was on[12] taken for loue, & wolde haue weddid here. [13]þis tydynges
20 come to Coryn: anon he thought to Auenge hym vpon Lotryn, for-as-meche as Lotryn had made coue*n*aunt for-to spowsen[14] Corynys dough*ter*, *þat* me called Guentolen. ¶ And Coryn in haste wente to[15] hym, vn-to[16] þᵉ Newe Troye, & þus sayd to Lotryn:
24 "¶ Now certes," q*uod*ꝑ he, "ȝe rewarden[17] me ful euel for aꝗ þᵉ paynes *þat* I suffrydꝑ & hadde many tymes for Brut, ȝoure fader; & therfore I wyl now Auenge me vpon ȝow;" & drow his fauchon) an hye, and wold haue slayn Lotryn, but þᵉ Damyseꝗ went
28 be-twen hem, & made hem acordedꝑ in þis man*er*e, *þat* Lotryn schuld spouse Guentolen, *þat* was Corynys dough*ter*; and so Lotryn dede, and neþeles, þei he had spoused Corynys doughter pryuyliꝗ, he come to Estrilde, & brought here w*ith* childe, & gate
32 on here A doughter *þat* me called Abraha*m*. ¶ hyt byfel ano*n* aft*er*, *þat* Coryn dide; & anon as he was ded, Lotryn forsookꝑ Guentolen his wyf, & made Estrylde quene. And Guentolen went þens al in wrathe in-to Cornewaylle, & seised aꝗ þᵉ landꝑ
36 in-to her handꝑ, for-as-myche as sche was here Fadrys eyr, & vndirfonge feautes & homages of aꝗ þᵉ men of þᵉ land, and aft*er*

[1] wille and [2] p*r*iueliche [3] herꝑ [4] hi*m* [5] vnarmede
[6] lap [7] wer [8] slayne [9] noman [10] þe [11] fonde
[12] ou*er*e [13] *leaf* 6. [14] spouse [15] vnto [16] to [17] rewarde

Assembled a gret oste & a gret power, for-to be[1] vpon Lotryn auenged, þat was her lord, and to hym come, & ȝaf hym A Strong bataill. & þer was Lotryn slayn, & his men descomfited, þe v ȝeer of his Reigne. ¶ Guentolen lete take Estrilde, and Abraham here 4 dougter, and bynde[2] boþe hondes and fete, & caste hem in-to a water; & so þey were drenched; wherfore þat water was euermore called[3] after, 'Abraham,' after þe name of þe damysell þat was Estrildes doughter; & englissh-men called[4] þat water Seuerne, & 8 Walsshmen [5]called þat water[5] Abraham, into þis day. ¶ And whan þis was don, Guentolen lete Crowne her quene of þat land, & gouerned þe land ful well & wysely vnto þe[6] tyme þat Madhon her Sone, þat Lotryn had begete vpon here, wer of xx ȝer Age, þat he 12 myght be kyng; so þat þe qwen regned xv ȝeer; & þo lete she crowne here sone; & he regned & gouerned þe land wel & honourably; & sche wente in-to Cornewaill, & þer sche dwellid al her lyves[7] tyme. 16

[8]Of Kyng Madhan, how he regnede in pees al his lif; and of Menpris and of Manlyn his sones; and how Menpris slough Manlyn his broþer, and how wolfes drow him al to peces. ¶ Capitulo Sexto. 20

WHen Madhan hade regnede xxx^ti ȝere, he deide, and liþ [9]at newe Troye, and he[10] hade ij sones: þat on me callede Menpris, and þat oþere Manlyn; and þise ij breþerne, after here fadres deth, stryuen faste for þe lande; and Menpris, for enchesoun 24 þat he was eldest, wolde haue hade al þat[11] Londe; and Manlyn wolde nouȝt suffren[12] him, so þat þai token a day of loue and of accorde; and at þis day Menpris lete quelle his broþer þrouȝ tresoun, and him-self afterward helde þe lande, and anone lete croune him 28 kyng, and regnede, and after, he[13] bicome so luþer a man þat he destroyede in a while alle þe men of his lande. ¶ and at þe last he bicome so wickede and so leccherous, þat he forsoke his owen wif, & vsede þe synne of Sodomye; wherfore almighty God was 32 wroþ,[14] and oppon him toke vengeance. ¶ ffor vppon a day, as he went in a wode in[15] huntyng, he loste [16]his folc,[16] and went

[1] bene [2] bonde [3] calle [4] callen [5—5] calleþ it.
[6] that [7] lif
[8] *leaf* 1, *back. The text here is from MS. Rawlinson B.* 171, *and the collations are of MS. Trinity College, Dublin,* 490 (D), *and MS. Douce* 323 (O).
[9] *leaf* 2. [10] *om.* D. [11] þe D. [12] suffre O. [13] *om.* O.
[14] wrot D. [15] on O. [16—16] *MS.* his folc his folc

allone vp and douñ c*r*iyng' after' his men; and þ*er*e come wolfes, and alto-drowe him into pecis; and þo he hade regnede xxiiij ȝer'. and when his peple wist þat he was dede, þai made ioye ynow, and
4 anone made Ebrak[1] his sone kyng; and he regnede with michil honour'.

Of Kyng' Ebrac,[1] how he conquerede ffraunce, and bigate xx^ti^ sones and xxiij douȝtres. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septi*m*o.

8 THis Ebrac regnede .lx. ȝer', and[2] stronge man was, &[2] miȝty, and þis Ebrac, þrouȝ his miȝt, and helpe of his Britons, conquerede al ffraunce, and wan þ*er*e so miche golde and siluer' þat, when he come[3] aȝeyne into þis[4] lande, he made a noble citee, and
12 after' his name lete calle it Ebrac, [5]after' his name,[5] þat now is callede Eu*er*wik' . and þis king'[6] Ebrac made þe castel of Maydenes þat now is clepede Edenburght. This kyng' hade xx sones and xxiij douȝ[7]tres, be diu*er*se wymmen geten; and þe sones were callede
16 as ȝe shul hure;[8] [9]Brut Greneshal, Margand, Seisel, Morghwith Flenghan, Bladud, Iakyn, Kymbar', Rocelyn, Spadogh, Godeherl, Thormnan, Eldaugh, Iorkanghut, Haybor, Ketyn, Rother', Kaier', & Assaruth. ¶ And þe doughtres highten as ȝe shul hur' after:[9]
20 Elegyne, Y*m*mogen, Oghdas, Guenbran, Guardiche, Angarel, Guentolde, Tangustel, Gorghoñ, Michel, Medham, Mailour', Ondur', Cambredan, Rogan, Reuthely, Neest', Cheghem, Scadud', Gladus, Heberhyn, Abalaghe, and Blandan: and' þise were þo[10] xxiij
24 douȝtres; and þe bre*þ*er*n*e bicome gode knyȝtes and worþi in meny contres.

Of þe[11] Kyng' Brut Greneshal, þe ferste sone of Ebrac the[12] kyng.[13] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octauo.

28 After' þe deth of Kyng' Ebrac, regnede Brut Greneshel, his sone xxx ȝer',[14] þat was[15] Ebrakes ferst sone,[16] þat wel and noblye regnede . and [17]when tyme come,[17] he deide, and ¶ liþ at ȝork'.

Of kyng Leyl. ¶ Capitulo. ¶ Nono.

32 AND when[18] Brut Greneshal was dede, regnede his sone Leil xxij ȝere; and he made a faire toune, and lete calle it Karleil after his name, and was a worþi man, and miche bilouede

[1] Ebras D. [2] and a DO. [3] came O. [4] þe D. [5—5] *om.* DO.
[6] *om.* D. [7] *leaf* 2, *back.* [8] here after. [9—9] *om.* D. [10] þe D.
[11] *om.* D. [12] *om.* O. [13] *The* 2 *eldest sons are here put into* 1.
[14] ȝer and D. [15] *om.* D. [16] sone was D.
[17—17] when tyme come D. þe tyme come O, when tyme R.
[18] *MS.* when when

of his people, and when he hade regnede xxij [years][1] he deide, and liþ at Karleil. ¶ And in his tyme renede Kyng Salamon in Jer*usal*em, þat made þe noble temple; and to him come to Ier*usal*em, Sibille, Quene of Saba, for-to hure and see if it were soþe þat 4
men spoken[2] of þe grete noblee and[3] wisdome, and of[4] witte of Kyng' Salamon: and she founde it soth þat men hade here tolde.

Of Kyng Lud Ludibras, þat was Kyng Leiles sone. ¶ Capit*ulo* x^mo^. 8

[5] AND[6] after' þis Kyng Leil, regnede his sone Lud Ludybras, þat made þe citee of Kaunt*er*bery and of Wynchestr*e*; and he regnede xiij ȝere, and deide, and lith at Wynchestr*e*.

Of þe kyng[7] Bladuc,[8] þat was Ludybras sone, regnede,[9] and 12
was a gode man and a nygromancer'. Capitulo xi^mo^.

AND[10] after' þis Lud Ludebras, regnede Bladud his sone, a grete nigromancer'; and þrouȝ his crafte of nigromancie he made þe m*er*uailous hote bathe, as þe gest telleþ, & he regnede 16
[11]xxj ȝere,[11] and he[12] lith at þe[13] newe Troye.

Of[14] Kyng' Leir, and of þe ansuere of his ȝongest douȝter', þat g*ra*ciousely was mariede to þe Kyng of F*ra*unce. C. xij.

After' þis Kyng Bladud, regnede Leir' his sone; and þis Leir' 20
made þe toune of Leycestre, and lete calle þe toune after' his name; and he gou*er*nede þe lande wel and [nobly]. ¶ þis kyng Leir' hade iij doughtres: þe ferst highte Gonorille, þe secunde Rigan, and þe þridde Cordeile; and þe ȝongest doughter' was 24
fairest' and best of' condiciouns. ¶ þe king' here fader' bicome an olde man, and wolde þat his[15] doughtres were mariede or þat he deide. but ferst he þougt' assaye whiche of ham[16] louede him most' and best'; for she þat louede him best shulde[17] best 28
bene[18] mariede. and he axede of þe ferst dought[er] how miche she [19]louede him[19]; and she ansuerede and saide, 'bettre þan here owen

[1] ȝer' D. ȝeer O. [2] spok D. [3] and of D. [4] of þe O. [5] *leaf* 3.
[6] *In the margin is this note, in an ancient hand:* Lud Ludibras y^t^ byldyd ca[n]*ter*bery. [7] *om.* O. [8] bladud' D. bladud O. [9] regne D.
[10] *In the margin, in an ancient hand:* he mayd ye hoyt b[ath]. *The edge of this page has evidently been cut off.*
[11–11] *om.* D. [12] *om.* D. [13] *om.* DO. [14] Of þe O.
[15] his DO. here R. [16] his douȝtres D. [17] shul D. [18] be DO.
[19–19] him louede D, hym loued' O.

lif.' "Now certes," q*uod*[1] [2]þe fader',[2] "þat is a[3] grete loue." ¶ þo axede he of þe secunde doughter', how miche she him louede; and she saide, 'more, and passing al þe c*r*eatures leuyng'[4] of þe
4 worlde.' "ma foy,"[5] q*uod* þe fader', "y may no more axen." ¶ And þo axede he of þe pridde doughter', how miche she him louede. "certes, fader',"[6] q*uod* she, "my sustres haue tolde ȝow glosyng wordes; but for-soþe y shal tel ȝow[7] treuþ: for y
8 loue ȝow as miche as [8]me oweþ[8] to loue my fader; and[9] forto bryng ȝow more in certeyne how loue goþ, I shal ȝow telle, for-as-miche as ȝe bene[10] worþe, as muche[11] shal ȝe bene[12] louede." ¶ The kyng here fader wende þat she hade scornede him, and bicome
12 wonder wroth, and swore by heuen and erþe þat she shulde neuer haue goode of him; but his douȝtres þat louede him so miche shulde be wel auauncede and mariede. and þe ferste dougt*er* he mariede to Mangles, King of Scotlande; And þe secunde he
16 mariede to Hanemos, Erl of Cornewaile; and so[13] þai ordeynede and speke[14] bituene ham þat þai shulde dep*ar*te þe reaune bituene ham too, aft*er* þe deþ of Leir'[15] her' fader', ¶ So þat Cordeil his ȝongest dought*er* shulde noþing' haue of his lande. but þis Cordeil
20 was wonder' faire, and of so[15] goode condicions and maners, þat þe Kyng of Fraunce, Agampe, [16]herde of here[16] speke, and sent to þe Kyng Leir', he[r] fader', for to haue her' vnto wif', and p*ra*yede him þ*er*of. And Kyng' Leir here fader' sent him worde þat he hade
24 dep*ar*tede the lande [17]to his ij oþ*er*e[17] douȝtres, and saide he nade[18] no more lande wherwiþ [19]her' forto[19] marie.[20] ¶ And when Agampe herde þis ansuere, he sent anone aȝeyne to Leir', and saide þat he axede noþing wiþ here, but oneliche[21] heir' cloþing
28 and oneliche heir' body; and anone[3] Kyng' Leire here fader' sent here ouer þe see to þe Kyng' of France; and he resceyuede here wiþ michel[22] worship and wiþ [23]michel solempnite,[23] & made here Quene of Fraunce.

[1] quoþ D. [2–2] he O. [3] *om.* D. [4] *om.* DO.
[5] fey O. [6] *leaf* 3, *back.* [7] ȝow soth and D.
[8–8] y owe D. I owe O. [9] *MS.* and and. [10] beth D. be O.
[11] somiche D. so mych O. [12] be DO. [13] þo O.
[14] spak D. [15] *om.* O. [16–16] Of her herde D.
[17–17] vn-to his o*þ*er too O. [18] hade D. hadde O.
[19–19] he miȝt her D. [20] maryen O [21] only O.
[22] miche D. mych O.
[23–23] miche solempnite her spousede D. mych solempnyte her spoused' O.

How Kyng Leir was dryuen out of his[1] lande þrouȝ his owen[2] folye; and how Cordeil his ȝongest doughter halpe him in his nede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Terciodecimo.

[3] THus it bifel[4] afterwarde, þat þo ij eldest doughtren[5] wolde 4
nouȝt abide til þat Leir here fader were[6] dede, but werrede
oppon him whiles þat[7] he leuede, and miche sorwe and shame him
dede; wherfore þai binome him holly þe reaume, and bituene ham
hade ordeynede þat one of ham shulde haue Kyng Leir to[8] soiourne 8
al his lif tyme, with xl knyȝtes and heir squyers, þat he might wor-
shipfully gone[9] & ryde whider þat he wolde, [10]and into[10] what
contre þat him likede, to playe and to solacen. ¶ So þat Managles
Kyng of Scotlande, hade Kyng Leir with him in þe maner þat[11] is 12
aboue-saide,[12] and, or o*þer*e half ȝere were passede, Corneil his eldest
douȝter, þat was Quene of Scotland, was so annoyed [13]wiþ him and
wiþ[13] his peple, þat anone she and here lorde [14]spoken to-gederes,[14]
wherefor his knyȝtes half,[15] and his squyers,[16] fram him were gone, 16
and nomo lefte but oneliche xxx. And when[15] þis was done, Leire
biganne forto[17] make miche sorwe, for enchesoun þat his state was
enpeirede, and men hade of him more scorne and despite þan euer
þai hade biforne; wherfore he nyst what forto[18] done; and at þe 20
last þouȝt þat he wolde wende into Cornewaile, to Rigan his o*þer*e
dought*er*. ¶ And when he was comen,[19] þe erl and his wif, þat was
Leires doughter, him welcomede, and with him made miche ioye;
and *þer*e he duellede with xxx knyȝtes and squyers. And he nade[20] 24
nought duellede *þer*e scarsly tuelf moneþ, þat his dought*er* of him[21]
nas ful, and of his company; and her lorde and she, of him hade
scorne and despite, so þat fram[22] xxx knyȝtes[7] þai brouȝten
vnto x, and afterwarde v; and so *þer*e lefte wiþ him nomo. ¶ þo 28
made he[15] sorwe ynow, and [23]saide, sore wepyng, 'allas þat euer
he come into þat Lande!' and saide, 'ȝitte hade me bene bettre
forto[6] haue duellede with my ferst dought*er* [and anon went þens
aȝeyne to his ferst douȝt*er*].'[24] But anone as she saw him come, 32
she swore by God and[25] his holy names, and by as miche as she
might, þat he shulde haue nomo wiþ him but one[26] knyȝt, if[27] he

[1] þis O. [2] *om.* DO. [3] *leaf* 4. [4] fel DO. [5] douȝt*er*s D.
[6] was D. [7] *om.* D. [8] forto D. [9] go DO.
[10—10] in D. into O. [11] as DO. [12] above-yseyd O.
[13—13] of DO. [14—14] speken to-gidre O. [15] *om.* O.
[16] Squyers half O. [17] to O. [18] to D. [19] come O.
[20] hade D. [21] his O. [22] fro D. [23] *leaf* 4, *back*.
[24] *supplied from* D. [25] and by D. & by O. [26] o DO. [27] if þat O.

wolde þ*ere*[1] abide. ¶ þo bigan Leir' aȝeyn to[2] wepe, and made
muche sorwe, and saide þo: "allas! now to longe haue y leuede, þat
þis sorwe and meschief is [3]now to me[3] falle; for now [4]y am[4] poer',
4 and[5] some tyme y[2] was ryche; but now haue y no frende ne kyn
þat me wil do[6] eny maner' goode. ¶ But when[7] y was ryche, alle
men me honourede [8]and worsshepede;[8] and now eu*er*y man hath
of me scorne and despite! and now y wote wel þat Cordeil, my
8 ȝonge[9] doughter', saide me treuþ when she saide 'as michel[10] as y
hade, [11]so michel[11] shulde y [12]be louede';[12] and all þe while þat y
hade goode, þo was y belouede and honourede for my rychesse; but
my ij doughtres me glosede þo, and now of me þai sette litel pris,
12 and soþ tolde me Cordeil, but y wolde nouȝt bileue it, ne vnder-
stonde, and p*er*fore y lete here goñ[13] fro me as a þing þat y sette
litel pris of'; and now wote y neuer' what forto done, seþ my
ij doughtres have me[14] þus desceyuede,[15] þat y so michel[16] louede;
16 and now moste me[17] nedes seche[18] here þat is in an op*er*e lande, þ*at*
lighly y lete here go fro me without[19] eny reward' of ȝiftes; and she
saide þat[14] 'she louede me as miche as she outh[20] here fader', bi al
maner resouñ'; and þo y shulde haue axede of here no more; and
20 þo þat me o*þer*e-wise bihiȝten þrouȝ here faire[21] speche, now haue
me desceyuede!"

¶ In þis maner' Leir' longe tyme him bigan[22] to make his mone;
and at þe last he shoope him to þe see, and passede ouer into
24 France, and axede and aspiede wher the Quene myȝt be founde;
and men tolde where þat she was. [23]¶ And when he come to[24] þe
citee þat she was in, p*r*iueliche[25] he sent his Squyer'[26] vnto þe quene,
to tel her' þat heir' fader' was comen[27] to[28] her' for grete nede. ¶ And
28 when þe squyer' come to[28] þe quene, he tolde her' euery dele of heir'
sustres fram þe bigynnyng vnto þe ende. ¶ Cordeil þe Quene
anone nome golde and siluer, grete plente, and toke it to[28] þe squyer',
iñ conseile þat he shulde go and bere it vnto here fader', and þat he
32 shulde go into a certeyn Citee, and him arreyen, baþen and wesshen,

[1] *om.* O. [2] *om.* DO. [3—3] to me now DO.
[4—4] am y D. am I O. [5] p*at* O. [6] done D.
[7] whan þat O. [8—8] *om.* D. [9] ȝongest D.
[10] as mich D. as mych O. [11—11] as miche D. so mych O.
[12—12] bene bilouede D. be belouyd' O. [13] go DO.
[14] *om.* D. [15] destroyede D. [16] miche D. mych O.
[17] y O. [18] sechen O. [19] withouten D.
[20] ought D. owt O. [21] fals O. [22] gan D. [23] *leaf* 5.
[24] into D. [25] p*r*iuely D. pryuyly O. [26] Squyer DO. Squyers R.
[27] come O. [28] vnto D.

and þan come [1]aȝeyne[2] to[1] her', and bryng' with him an honest company of knyȝtes, xl. at þe leste, with here meny; and þenne he shulde[3] sende to[4] here lorde þe kyng', and sayen þat he [5]was comen[5] forto speke with his douȝter', and him to[6] seene. ¶ And when þe 4 kyng and þe quene [7]herde þat,[7] wiþ michel[8] hono*ur* [9]þai comen,[9] and him resceyuede.[10] Þe kyng of Fraunce[11] lete sende þo[12] þrouȝ al his reaume, and co*m*mandede þat alle men [13]to him shulde[13] bene[14] entendaunt', to Leire, þe Quenes fader, in al[15] maner þing' as it were 8 to him-self'. ¶ when Leir hade duellede þ*er*e a monþe and more, he tolde to[16] þe kyng and to þe Quene his doughter', how his ij[17] eldeste douȝtres hade him seruede. ¶ Agampe anone lete ordeyne a grete hoste of Fraunce, and sent it into Britaigne with Leir', þe 12 Quenes fader', forto conquere his lande aȝeyne, and his kyngdome; and Cordeil also come with her[18] fader into Britaigne, forto haue þe reaume after' her' fadres deth. And anon' þai went to shippe, and passede þe see, and come into Britaigne, and fauȝt[19] wiþ þe felons, 16 and ham scomfitede[20] & quellede. And Leir' þo hade his lande aȝeyne, and after' leuede iij ȝere, and helde[21] his reaume in pees, and afterwarde deide; & Cordeil his dought*er* hi*m* lete ent*er*e wiþ michel[22] hono*ur* at Leycestre. 20

[23]How Morgan and Conenedag'[24] þat were Neveus to Cordeil, werrede oppon here, and put here into prisoñ. C. xiiij.

WHen þat Kyng Leir' was dede, Cordeil his ȝongest douȝtre helde and hade þe lande v ȝere; and in þe mene tyme 24 deide here Lorde Agamp, þat was Kyng of Fraunce; and after his deth she lefte[25] widue. ¶ And þo come Morgan and Conenedag', þat were Cordeiles sustres sones, and to here hade enuy, for-asmiche þat[26] her' aunt' shulde haue þe lande; so þat bituene ham þai 28 ordeynede a grete power', and vppoñ here werrede gretlich; and

[1—1] vnto D. [2] *After* aȝeyne *MS. has* with he *underlined for erasure.*
[3] shal D. [4] vn-to O. [5—5] wer' come O. [6] & O.
[7—7] harde tel þat he come D. herd þat he come O.
[8] mych O. [9—9] *om.* DO.
[10] resceyuede wiþ michel honour' D. receyued with mych hono*ur* O.
[11] ff*r*ance þo D. fraunce þo O. [12] *om.* DO.
[13—13] shulde to hym O. [14] be D. [15] *MS.* al al.
[16] *om.* O. [17] tweyne O. [18] her O. him R.
[19] fouȝte*n* D. foughtyn O. [20] descomfitede D.
[21] hade D. [22] myche O. [23] *leaf* 5, *back.*
[24] Conedag *throughout* DO. [25] lyued' O. [26] as DO.

neuer' [1]þai rest[1] til þat þai hade here taken,[2] and put her' [3]vnto deth.[3] ¶ And þo Morgan and Conenedag' seisede al þe lande, and dep*ar*tede[4] bituene ham, and þai helde it xij ȝere. ¶ And [5]when
4 the[5] xij ȝere were gone,[6] þ*er*e bigon bituene ham a grete debate, so þat þai werrede strongely in-fere,[7] and eu*er*yche[8] of ham dede oþ*er*e miche disese, ffor Morgan wolde haue hade alle þe lande fram[9] biȝende Humber', þat Conedag' helde; but he come aȝeynes him
8 with a strong' power', so þat Morgan derst nouȝt abide, but fley awaye into Walys; and Conenedag pursuede him, and toke him, and quelde him. ¶ þo come Conenedag aȝeyne, and seisede al þe lande into his hande, and helde hit, and regnede after', xxxiij[10]
12 ȝere, and þo deide, and liþ at New Troye.

[11]Of Rynallo,[11] þat was Conedag*us* sone: [12]how he[12] regnede after' his fader'; and in his tyme it raynede bloode iij daies, in [13]tokenyng of gret[13] deth. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinto-
16 **desimo.**

ANd after' þis Conenedag,[14] regnede Rynallo[15] his sone, an[16] Wise knyȝt, and an[17] hardy and[18] c*ur*teise, þat wel and nobly gou*er*nede þe lande, and wonder' wel made him bi[19]louede of al
20 maner' folc. and in his tyme it raynede bloode þat lastede[20] iij dayes, as God' wolde; and sone after' þ*er*e come a[21] gret deth of peple, for hostes with-out noumbre of peple fouȝten til þat þai were dede, Wherof no man myȝt ham lette til þat almiȝty God' þ*er*of
24 tok mercy and pitee; and tho gan it cesse. and þis Raynolde regnede xxij ȝere, & deide, & ¶ liþ at ȝork.

How Gorbodian regnede in pees, þat was Rynallo[22] sone; and after, he[23] deide, and liþ at ȝork' C. xvj°.

28 After þis Ryuallo,[24] regnede Gorbodyan[25] his sone xv ȝere, and deide and lith at ȝork'.

[1—1] rest neu*er* D. þey restyd O. [2] take D.
[3—3] into prisouñ deth D. to deth O. [4] p*ar*tede it D.
[5—5] when þo D. þo O. [6] ygone D. [7] y-fere O. [8] eche O.
[9] fro D. [10] xxx D. [11—11] How Raynolde D. How regnold O.
[12—12] *om.* DO. [13—13] tokene of O.
[14] Raynolde *in error for* Conedag D. [15] Reynolde D. Regnold' O.
[16] a DO. [17] a D. [18] and a D. [19] *leaf* 6.
[20] last O. [21] *om.* O. [22] Raynaldes D. reynoldes O. [23] *om.* O.
[24] Raynolde D. Regnold' O. [25] Gordobodian D.

How Gorbodian[1] hade ij sones, & how[2] þat on slough þat o*þer*e, forto haue þe heritage; & how Ydoyne her' moder quellede þat o*þer*e, wherfore þe lande was destroiede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ xvij^mo^. 4

When þis Gorbodian[1] was dede, [3]his ij sones[3] þat he hade, bicome[4] stoute men[5] and proude, & euer' werrede to-geder' for þe lande: þat one, me*n*[6] called Ferreȝ,[7] and þat o*þer*e Porrex; and þis Ferreȝ wolde haue hade al the lande, but þat o*þer*e wolde nouȝt 8 suffren[8] him. Ferreȝ hade a feloun*es* hert', and þouȝt þrouȝ t*re*soun[5] slee his bro*þer*e; but p*r*iuely[9] he went into Fraunce, and þe*re* abode with þe [10]kyng Syward[10] til oppoñ a tyme þat he come aȝeyne, and fauȝt wiþ his bro*þer* Ferreȝ[11]; but ful euel it hapede þo, for he was 12 slayn ferst. ¶ When Ydoyne, here[12] moder, wist þat Porrex was dede, she made grete sorwe, for enchesouñ þat she louede him more þan [13]þat o*þer*e,[13] and þouȝt him forto[14] quelle. p*r*iuely[15] she come to here sone oppon a nyȝt wiþ ij knyfes, and þe*r*wiþ cotte his þrote, 16 and þe body also into smale pecis. Who herde euer[2] soche a cursede moder', þat quellede with here [16]owen hondes here owen sone! and Longe tyme after' Laste þe rep*r*ofe[17] & shame to þe moder' þat, for enchesouñ of þat o sone, mordrede þat o*þer*e, and so loste ham 20 bothe.

How iiij kynges curteisely[18] helde al Britaigne; and whiche beth[19] here names. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octodesimo.

When þise ij bre*þer*ne were so dede, þai nade Lefte bihynde 24 ham noo[20] sone ne doughter', ne none o*þer*e of þe kynrede þat might haue þe heritage. &[21] for-asmiche as þe strongest men dryuen and descomfitede[22] þe feblest', and token[23] al here landes, so þat in eu*er*y contre þai hade grete werre and stryfe. ¶ But amonge[24] 28 alle o*þer*e þinges, þe*re* were amonges ham in þe contre þat ou*er*come[25] alle þe[26] o*þer*e; and þrouȝ heir' strengþ and[27] myȝt þai nomen and token[28] al þe landes; and eu*er*yche[29] of ham tok a certeyne contre; and in his contre lete calle him kyng'. ¶ And on of ham, me*n*[30] 32

[1] Gordobodian D. [2] *om.* O.
[3—3] *Written twice in MS. and struck out the second time.*
[4] bycomen so O. [5] *om.* D. [6] me D. [7] Ferreȝ DO.
[8] suffre DO. [9] priueliche D. [10—10] kynges Styward' O.
[11] Porreȝ O. [12] his D. [13—13] þe to*per* O. [14] for O.
[15] p*r*iuely and p*r*iuely D. pryuyly And p*r*iuyly O. [16] *leaf* 6, *back.*
[17] repref' O. [18] curteisliche D. [19] ben O. [20] ney*þer*e D. nother O.
[21] and for and D. [22] Scomfitede D. scomfited' O. [23] toke D.
[24] amonges D. [25] ou*er*come*n* O. [26] þo D. [27] and here D. her O.
[28] tok D. [29] eche O. [30] me DO.

callede Stater'[1]; and he was Kyng' of Scotland; and þat o*þer*e me callede Dunwal,[2] and he was Kyng' of Loegers, and of alle þe landes[3] þat was Lotrynes, [4]Brutes sone.[4] ¶ þe þridde, me*n*[5] callede
4 Rudak', and he was Kyng of Walys; and þe iiij^te^ me callede Cloten, and he was Kyng' of Cornewaile. ¶ But þis Cloten shulde haue hade al þe lande, be[6] resouñ for þ*er*e was no man þat wist none so ryȝthful heire[7] as he was; but þo[8] þat were strongest sette litel by
8 ham þat were of lasse estate, and þ*er*for þis Cloten hade no more lande amonges ha*m* þa*n* onliche[9] ¶ Cornewaile.

Of Kyng Donewall,[10] þat was Clotenes sone, and how he hade wonne þe lande. ¶ Capitulo xix^o^.

12 THis Cloten hade a sone þat me clepede[11] Donewal, þat, after' þe deth of his fader', bicome an hardy man, and a faire and a curteise, so þat he passede alle þe kynges of Britaigne of fairenesse and of worþinesse. ¶ And[12] as he was knyght, he [13]Wiste wel[14]
16 when his fader' leuede[15] he was moste ryghtful heire of al[7] þe lande, and shulde haue hade it by resouñ; but o*þer*e kynges þat were of more strengþ þan he, binome him[16] his lande. ¶ And afterwarde þis Donebande ordeynede him powere, and ferst conquerede al þe lande
20 of Loegers; and after'[17] he wolde haue conquerede al[7] Scotland and Walys; and Stater'[18] wiþ his men come, and ȝaf him[19] bataile; and Rudak come aȝeyne wiþ his Walshemen forto helpe him; But so it bifel þat Rudak' was slayn,[20] and Skater' also, in pleyn bataile;
24 and so Donewal hade þe victorye, and conquerede al þe lande, and[21] wel mayntenede it in pees and[22] quyete, þat neuer' bifore it was so wel mayntenede.

How Donewal was þe ferst kyng þat eu*er*e Werede crone of'
28 **golde in Britaigne. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo.**

THis[23] Donewal lete [24]make him[24] a *cr*one of golde, and werede þe croune oppon his heuede, as neuer' kyng dede bifore; and he ordeynede a statute þat, [25]hade a man done[25] neuer so miche

[1] Scater D. Skater O. [2] Dawallier DO. [3] lande D. land O.
[4—4] that was Brutes sones D. *þat* was Brutes sones O.
[5] me DO. [6] by DO. [7] *om.* D. [8] þai D. þei O. [9] only O.
[10] Donebande *throughout* DO. [11] callede D. called' O.
[12] And anon DO. [13] *leaf* 7. [14] wel þat O. [15] leuede þat D.
[16] *om.* O. [17] aftyrward O. [18] Skater DO.
[19] ham D. [20] quellede D. queld' O. [21] and þo D. [22] & in D.
[23] *In the margin is written by an ancient hand:* Donwall wa . . . ye first crovne . . . ordeyned ye temp[le] a savgard for m . . . *The edge of the page has been cut away.* [24—24] hym done make O. [25—25] a man do O.

harme, and he might come into þe temple, þe*re*[1] shulde no man him misdo, but gone[2] þe*r*in sauf and in pees, and aftre gone[2] into what contre þat he wolde, withouten[3] eny harme; and if eny man sette hande oppoñ[4] him, he þan shulde lese his lif. ¶ And þis Donewal 4
made þe toune of Malmesbury, and þe toune of þe Vise; & when he hade regnede wel and nobly[5] .xl. ȝere, he deide, & liþ at newe Troye.

**How Brenne and Belyn dep*ar*tede bituene ham þe lande, after 8
þe deth of Donewal, hir fader; & of þe werre. Ca*pitulo* xxj°.**

And after þat þis Donewal was [dede],[6] his sones þat he hade, dep*ar*tede þe lande bituene ham as her fader hade ordeynede; 12
so þat Belyn, his eldest sone, hade al the lande[7] a þis halfe Humber, and his broþ*er*[8] Brenne hade al [9]þe lande fram Humber vnto[10] Scotland; but for-asmich as[11] Belyn hade þe better p*ar*te, Brenne þ*er*for wax wroþ, and wolde haue hade more of þe lande; and 16
Belyn his broþ*er* wolde g*ra*unt him nomore; Wherfor contak and werre aroos bituene[12] ha*m* ij. But Brenne þe ȝong*er* broþ*er* hade no myȝte ne strengþ aȝeynȝ Belyn; and þ*er*for Brenne, þrouȝ conseil of his folc, went fram[13] þens into Norway, to þe Kyng Elsinges, and 20
p*ra*yede hi*m* of helpe and of socoure forto conquere al þe lande [14]of Britayn[14] vppon Belyn his broþ*er*, oppoñ þat couenaunt, þat he wolde haue his douȝ*ter* to wyf; and þe Kyng Elsinges[15] him g*ra*untede. ¶ Belyn, anone as his broþ*er* was gone to[16] Norway, he 24
seisede into his hande al þe lande of Northumberland, and toke al þe castelles,[17] and lete ham arraie, and also kepe þe costes of þe see, þat Brenne shulde nouȝt arryue in no side but þat he were take. ¶ The Kyng Elsinges lete assemble a grete hoste, and delyuerede 28
his doughter to Brenne, and alle þe peple þat he hade ordeynede. And þis damisel, Samye, hade longe tyme louede a kyng þat me callede Gutlagh[18]; and to him she tolde al here counseil, how þat Brenne shulde here haue, and here lede wiþ him for eu*er*more, and 32
so he[19] shulde her lese, but if þat she myȝt forsake Brenne. ¶ And

[1] *om.* DO. [2] go D. [3] with-oute O. [4] on D.
[5] worthelye D. worthyly O. [6] dede DO. *om.* R.
[7] lande of brytayn D. land of Britaigne O. [8] *om.* O.
[9] *leaf* 7, *back.* [10] into D. [11] þ*a*t O. [12] bituenes D.
[13] fro DO. [14—14] *om.* DO. [15] Elsyng O. [16] vnto D.
[17] castell O. [18] Gutlagh*en* D. [19] *corrected from* ȝe *in MS.*

when Gutlagh herde þise tydynges,[1] he lay forto aspie Brenne, wiþ alse[2] meny shippes as he myȝt haue, so þat þo[3] ij fletes [4]metten to-gederes,[4] and longe tyme foughten, so þat Brenne and his shippes
4 turnede aȝeyne, and were descomfitede; and Kyng Gutlagh toke Samye, and put here into[5] shipp*e*, and Brenne shamefully fleye[6] þens as a man descomfitede. ¶ And Gutlagh wolde haue went into his[7] countree; but þ*er*e come oppoñ [8]him a stronge tempest, þat .v.
8 dayes Laste, so þat þrouȝ þat tempest' he was dryuen into Britaigne with iij shippes, and wiþ no mo. and þo þat kepte[9] þe costes of þe see token Gutlagh and Samye, and alle his folc, and ham p*re*sentede vnto[10] Belyn, and he[3] put ham into[11] prisouñ.

12 How Belyn[12] delyuerede[13] out of þis lande Kyng Gutlagh of Dennemarc, and Samye. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Se*cun*do.

HIt[14] was nouȝt longe after', þat Brenne ne come aȝeyne with a [15]stronge meny,[15] and sent to his broþ*er* Belyn, þat he shulde
16 ȝelde aȝeyne his lande to his wif and to his folc, & his castelles[16] also, or elles he wolde destroye his lande. Belyn drade no þing his[17] manace, and wolde no þing done[18] after þat he saide. Wherfore Brenne come with his folc, and fauȝt with him[19]; and Brenne
20 was descomfitede, and his folc slayne, and him-self fleede wiþ xij men into Fraunce. ¶ And þis Belyn, þat was Brennes broþ*er*e, went [20]þe*n* vnto[20] ȝork, and toke[21] counseil what he myȝt done,[22] wiþ Kyng Gutlagh; for Kyng' Gutlagh p*ro*ferede [23]to bicome[23] his
24 man, and to holde his lande of him, ȝeldyng by ȝere [24]M† ti of siluer[24] for euer'-more; and for sikernesse of þis couenaunt' to bene holde, Gutlaghe shulde bryng him gode hostages, and to him shulde done homage, and al his folc, and ȝitte he[3] shulde suere oppon the book'
28 þat þise couenauntes shulde [25]nouȝt bene broken[25] ne falsede. ¶ Belyn þo, by counseil of his folc, g*ran*tede him his axing'; and so Gutlagh bicome his man; and Belyn vnderfonge of him his homage by othe, and by wrytyng' þe same couenauntȝ. ¶ And oppoñ

[1] tidyng' D. tydyng O. [2] as DO. [3] *om.* O.
[4—4] mettes to-geder D. mettyn to-gidere O. [5] in-to his O. [6] fly O.
[7] his owne D. his owne O. [8] *leaf* 8. [9] kepten O. [10] to O.
[11] *om.* D. in O. [12] Brenne O. [13] drof DO. [14] Syt *sic* O.
[15—15] grete nauye D. gret meyne O. [16] casteH DO.
[17] his malyce ne his O. [18] do D. [19] Belyn D. hym Belyn O.
[20—20] þo to DO. [21] nome DO. [22] do O.
[23—23] Gutlagh forto ben D. [24—24] a M† pound' O.
[25—25] neuer be broke D. neu*er*e be brokyn O.

[1]þis Couenant[1] King' Gutlagh tok'[2] Samye and his folc, and went
þennes, and t*ur*nede aȝeyn [3]to Dennemarc. ¶ Eu*er*more after' were
the couenauntes Halden, and þe truage paiede, til þe tyme þat
Hauelok was Kyng of Denmarc, and also of þis lande, þrouȝ his wif' 4
Gildeburghe, þat he hade spousede, for she was þe ryȝt heire of þis
lande. ¶ þis Belyn duellede þo in pees, and worshepliche[4] him
helde amonges[5] his barons; and he made iiij real waies, one fram[6]
þe Est into[7] West', and þat was callede Watlyngstrete; and anoþ*er*e 8
fram[6] þe North into þe South, þat was callede Ikenyle strete; and
ij oþ*er*e waies he made in bossinge þrouȝ-oute the lande: þat one is
callede Fosse, and þat oþ*er*e Fossedik; and he mayntenede wel þe
gode Lawes þat Doneband' his fader' hade made and ordeynede in 12
his tyme, as bifore is saide.

How accorde was made bituene Brenne and Belyn, through Cornewenne, hire moder'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Tercio.

BRenne, that was Belynes[8] broþ*er*, hade longe tyme duellede in 16
Fraunce, and þ*er*e hade co*n*querede a grete lordeship þrouȝ
mariage, for he was Duc of Burgoyne þrouȝ þe douȝt*er* of þe[9] duc
Fewyn þat he hade spousede, þat was right heire of þe lande. and
þis Brenne ordeynede a grete power' of his folc and also of F*ra*unce, 20
and come into þis lande forto feight with Belyn his broþ*er*. and
Belyn come aȝeynes him with a stronge powere of Britons, and þo
wolde haue ȝeue[10] him bataile; but heir' moder' Cornewenne, þat tho
Leuede,[11] [12]herde þat[12] þe o[13] broþ*er* wolde [14]haue destroyede[14] þat 24
oþ*er*e, and went bituene here sones, and [15]ham made[15] accordede
wiþ miche peyne; so þat at þe laste, þo ij breþ*er*ne, with miche[16]
blisse, went to-geder' into newe[17] Troye, þat now is callede Londoñ,
and þ*er*e þai duellede al a ȝere; and after', þai toke[18] [19]Heire conseile 28
forto go conquere al Fraunce; and so thai deden,[20] & brent tounes,
and destroyede al[21] þe lande boþe in lengþ and in Brede. and þe
Kyng of Fraunce ȝaf ham bataile wiþ his powere; but he was
ouercomen,[22] and ȝaf truage vnto[23] Belyn and to his broþ*er*. ¶ And 32

[1—1] þis couenauntes D. these coue*nauntes* O. [2] nome DO.
[3] *leaf* 8, *back*. [4] worshipfullich D. wurschipfully O.
[5] amo*n*ge D. Among O. [6] fro O. [7] into þe DO.
[8] Belyn his O. [9] *om* O. [10] ȝeuen O.
[11] leuede hade D. lyved' had O. [12—12] *MS*. herde þat herde þat.
[13] to O. [14—14] destroye D. dystroye O. [15—15] made hem O.
[16] michel D. [17] grete D. gret O. [18] nome DO. [19] *leaf* 9.
[20] dede O. [21] *om*. DO. [22] ouercome DO. [23] to DO.

after' þat, þai [1]went forþe[1] to Rome, and conquerede Rome, and al Lumbardy and Germayne, and toke homages and feautees of [2]þe folc of þe Erles,[2] barons, and[3] alle o*þere*; and after', þai comen[4]
4 into þis lande of Britaigne, and duellede with here Britounes in ioye and reste. and þo made Brenne þe toune of Bristow; and siþ he went ouer' þe[5] see into his owen lordeshipp*e*, and þ*ere* duellede al his lif'. and Belyn duellede atte Newe Troye; and þ*ere* he made
8 a faire gate þat is clepede[6] Billyngesgate, after' his owen name. and when þis Belyn hade regnede noble[7] xj ȝere,[8] he deide, & ¶ liþ at newe Troye.

How Kyng Corinbatrus quellede þe Kyng of Dennemarc, for
12 **enchesouñ þat he wolde nouȝt paye him his truage. ¶ Capit*ulo* xxiiij^to^.**

ANd after' þis Belyn, regnede his sone Corinbatrus, a gode man and [9]a worþi. and[9] þe Kyng of Denmarc wolde nouȝt paye
16 him his truage, þat is to seyn, [10]M^l^ ħi,[10] as he [11]hade sworne[11] by oth forto paye hit, and also be writyng [12]of' recorde,[12] to Belyn his fader'. wherfore he was euel[13] paiede and wroþ, and assemblede a grete hoste of Britons, and went into Dennemarc and slough þe
20 Kyng Gitclagh, and brouȝt þe lande in subieccioun al new, and toke of folc feautes and homages, and after went aȝeyne into his lande. ¶ And as he come forthe bi Orkeneye, he fonde xxx shippes ful of men and of wy*mm*en, bisides þe coste[14] of þe see, and þe kyng
24 axede what þai were.[15] an Erl, that was maistre of ham[16] alle, curteisely ansuerede vnto the kyng, and saide þat þai were exilede oute of Spaygne,[17] and so þai hade t*rau*ailede half[18] ȝere and more in þe see, to weten[19] if þai myȝt fynde eny kyng', or[20] eny lorde,[21]
28 þat of ham wolde haue pitee or mercy, to ȝeue ham eny lande in eny contre wherin þai might duelle and haue reste, and bicome his liege men, and to him wolde done[22] homage and feautes[23] whiles þat he leuede, and to his heires after' him, and of hi*m* and of his
32 heires holde[24] þat londe [25]for eu*er*more.[25] ¶ And when þe kyng þis

[1—1] wenten boþe D. [2—2] Erles and D. erls O.
[3] and of DO. [4] come O. [5] *þer* O. [6] callede D. called O.
[7] nobli D. nobly O.
[8] ȝer' and iiij monuþes D. ȝeer & iiij monethes O. [9—9] worthi D.
[10—10] a M^l^ pound O. [11—11] swore O. [12—12] recordede D. recorded O.
[13] ylle O. [14] costes O. [15] were And O. [16] them O.
[17] *leaf* 9, *back*. [18] half a O. [19] wete O. [20] in O. [21] lande O.
[22] do D. [23] feaute DO. [24] holden DO. [25—25] *om.* DO.

herde, he hade pite of ham, and ȝaf ham an Ile al wildernesse, þere þat noman was duellyng, saf oneliche[1] wilde bestes. and þe Erl þankede miche þe kyng, and bicome his man, and dede him feaute and homage, and tok[2] alle his folc, and went into þe same 4 Ile. and þe Erl[3] me callede Irlanyal; and þerfore[4] he lete calle þe lande Irlande, afterʼ his owen name. ¶ The kyng þo, Corinbatrus, come aȝeyne into þis Lande, and regnede xxv ȝere; & afterʼ, he deide, and liþ at newe ¶ Troye. 8

How þe Kyngʼ Guentolen regnede in godenesse,[5] & wel gouernede þe lande al his liftyme.[6] ¶ Capitulo vicesimo Quinto.

AND when Corinbatrus was dede, regnede Guentolen his sone, a man of goode condiciouns, and wel bilouede; and he 12 gouernede þe lande wel and wiseliche,[7] and he regnede xxvj ȝere, and after, deide, and lith at newe Troye.

How Kyng Seisel regnede, and wel gouernede þe lande after Guentolen. ¶ Capitulo xxvj^to^. 16

AND afterʼ þis[4] Guentolen, regnede his sone Seisel wel and worþely, and wel gouernede þe lande as his faderʼ hade done biforne him; and he regnede xv ȝere, and afterʼ,[8] deide, and lith at newe Troye. 20

How Kymore regnede afterʼ Seisel his fader; and he bigate Howan, þat [9]regnede afterʼ him.[8] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo ¶ Septimo.

AND after þis[8] Seisel, regnede his sone Kymor wel and nobly[10] 24 xix ȝere in pees; and Howan his sone x ȝere, and deide, and liþ at Herbaldouñ.

How Kyngʼ Morwith deide þrouȝ meschaunce, þrouȝ[11] a beste for his wickednesse. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo ¶ Octauo. 28

AND[8] afterʼ þis Howan, regnede Morwith; and he[4] bicome wickede, and so sterne, til at þe laste, grete vengeaunce come to him; for as he went on[12] a tyme bi þe seeside,[13] he mette a grete

[1] only O. [2] nome DO. [3] kyng O. [4] *om.* O. [5] pees O.
[6] lyf O. [7] wysely O. [8] *om.* DO. [9] *leaf* 10.
[10] nobliche D. noblich O. [11] of O. [12] vppon D. vpon O.
[13] syde O.

beste, þat was blac, and horrible and hidouse; and he wende þat it hade bene a whale of þe see, and bent an Arweblastꝛ,[1] and wolde haue slayne þat[2] best wiþ a quareH; but he miȝtꝛ nouȝt smyte hit.
4 and when he hade shotte alle his quarelles,[3] þe beste anone come to him in grete haste, and him deuourede alif; and so he deide for his wickednesse, þrouȝ vengeance of Gode, after þat he hade regnede ix ȝere.

8 **Of Grandobodian, þat was Morwitheȝ sone, þat made the toune of Cambruge. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Nono.**

After þis Morwith was dede, þe Britouns c*r*onede Grandobodian his sone; [4]and þis Grandobodian[4] longe tyme regnede in
12 godenesse, and made temples and tounes; and þis Grandobodian made þe toune of Cambrugge and þe toune of Grantha*m*, and was wel bilouede of ryche and of pore, [5]for he[5] hono*ur*ede þe riche and halpe þe poerꝛ. ¶ This Grandobodian hade iiij sones, Artogaile,
16 Hesiderꝛ, Higamus, and Petiterꝛ, and whe*n* he hade regnede xj ȝere, he deide, & liþ at newe Troye.

Of Artogaile, þat was Grandobodian*us* sone: how he was made kyngꝛ, & siþ put adoune for his[6] wickednesse. ¶ Capit*ulo*
20 **Tricesimo.**

[7]After Grandobodian, regnede his sone Artogaile v ȝere; and he bicome so wickede and so sterne, þat þe Britons wolde nouȝt suffre him to bene[8] kyngꝛ, but put him adoune, and made
24 Hesiderꝛ his broþ*er* kyngꝛ; and he bicome so gode and m*er*cyable þat men him callede 'kyng of pitee.' and when he hade regnede v ȝere, he hade so[miche][9] pitee of his broþ*er* Artogaile, þat was kyng bifore; and anone he forsoke his dignite, and toke his broþ*er* þe
28 c*r*one aȝeyne, and made him kyngꝛ aȝeynes[10] al þe [11]barons wille of Britaigne.[11] and afterwarde, þis Artogaile bicome so gode of condicioun þat he was wel bilouede of al þe lande; for he bicome so debonoure and free, and dede right and resouñ to alle manerꝛ
32 man;[12] and he regnede vj ȝere, and deide, and lith at Grauntha*m*.

[1] arweblaster D. [2] þe O.
[3] *corrected from* querelles *in MS.* quareH O.
[4–4] *om.* D. & þis Grandobodyan his sone O.
[5–5] for he DO. for R. [6] *om.* O. [7] *leaf* 10, *back.* [8] be DO.
[9] gret O. [10] aȝen O.
[11–11] britons wille D. brytoñs wyH O. [12] of men DO

How Hesider was made kyng' after' þe deth of Artogaile [1]his ¶ broþ*er*.[1] Capit*ulo* xxxj°.

After þe deth of Artogaile, the Britounes crounede an-oþ*er*e tyme Hesider'; but his ij breþ*er*n Higamus and Petiter' haden of him grete despite, and eke scorne, and ordeynede ham helpe forto werre oppoñ þe kyng her' broþ*er*. and so þai token him, and put[2] him into prisoun, the secunde ȝere of his regne; and þai dep*ar*tede al Britaign bituene ham ij. but Higamus leuede but vij ȝere; and þo hadde Petitur' al þe lande; and he made þe toune of Pikeryng', and after deide, þe secu*n*de ȝere of his regne, & liþ at Pikeryng',

How þe Britouns token[3] Hesider' oute of Prisoune, and made hi*m* kyng þe þridde tyme. ¶ Capitulo ¶ [4]Tricesimo Se*cun*do.[4]

And when þis Petitur was dede, the Britons toke[5] anone right' Hesider, and made him kyng þe þridde tyme, and þo [6]regnede he[6] in pees xiiij ȝere, & aft*er* deide, and liþ at Karleil.

How xxxiij kynges regnede in pees, eche after' oþ*er*e, after [7]þe deth of Hesider'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Tricesimo Tercio.

After[8] þe deth of Hesider', regnede xxxiij Kynges, eche after' oþ*er*e, in pees; and wiþout eny longe tariyng' y shal [9]tel ham alle,[9] and how longe eu*er*y[10] of ham regnede, as þe story telleþ. ¶ The ferste kyng' of þo xxxiij me clepede[11] Gorbodia, and he regnede xij ȝere. ¶ and after' him regnede Morgan ij ȝere; ¶ and after' him regnede Eigamus[12] vj ȝere; ¶ and after' him regnede Idwalan viij ȝere; ¶ and after him regnede Rohugo xj ȝere; ¶ and after' him regnede Voghen xiij ȝere; ¶ and [13]after him regnede[13] Katil xv ȝere; ¶ and after' him regnede[14] Porrex ij ȝere; ¶ and after' him regnede Cheryn xvij ȝere; [; & aft*er* him regned Coil xij ȝer'][15] ¶ and after' him regnede Sulgenis xiiij ȝere; ¶ and after him regnede Esdad xx^ti^ ȝere;

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] *om.* D. puttyn O. [3] nomen DO. [4–4] xxxiij D.
[5] nome DO. [6–6] regned he DO. regnede R. [7] *leaf* 11.
[8] And aftir O. [9–9] hem all telle O. [10] eu*er*yche D. eche O.
[11] callede D. Called O.
[12] *It is impossible to distinguish n and u in these MSS. This might be* Eigainus, Eiganius, Eigamus, *etc.* D *and* O *have* Eighnans *or* Eighnaus.
[13–13] aft*er* him regnede D. aft*er* him regned O. after R.
[14] *om.* O. [15] *supplied from* D.

¶ And afterꝑ him regnede Andragie xviij ȝere; ¶ And afterꝑ him regnede Vran[1] v ȝere; ¶ and afterꝑ him regnede Elindꝓ ij ȝere; ¶ and afterꝑ him regnede Eldagan xv ȝere; ¶ and afterꝑ him regnede
4 Claten xij ȝere; ¶ & after him regnede Quirgundꝓ viij ȝere; ¶ and afterꝑ him regnede Morian vj ȝere; and after him regnede Bledaghe iij ȝere; ¶ and afterꝑ him regnede Caph j ȝere; ¶ and afterꝑ him regned Gen ij ȝere; ¶ and afterꝑ him regnede Seisel and Kyng
8 Bledꝓ xxj ȝere; ¶ and Kyng Grabreth[2] xj ȝere; ¶ and Archinal xiiij ȝere; [3]and Erol xxx ȝere; ¶ And Rodengu [4]xxxij ȝere; and[4] Herter v ȝere,[3] ¶ and Hampirꝑ vj ȝere, And Carpoirꝑ vij ȝere, ¶ and Digneile iij ȝere, ¶ and Samuel xxiiij ȝere, ¶ and Rede
12 ij ȝere, ¶ and Ely vij mouneþs; and þis Ely hade iij sones, Lud, Cassabilam, and Enymyoñ.

How Ludꝓ was made kyngꝑ aft*er* þe deþ of Ely his fad*er*. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Quarto.

16 [5]After þe deþ of Ely, regnede Lud his sone, and gou*er*nede wel þe lande, and miche hono*ur*rede gode folc, and temprede and amendit wickede folc. ¶ This Lud louede more to duelle at Troye þan at[6] eny oþ*er*e place of þe lande; Wherfore þe name of[7]
20 Troye was lafte,[8] and þo [9]was callede þe citee of[9] Ludstan; but now[10] þat name is chaungede þrouȝ variance of le*tt*res, and now is callede Londoñ. ¶ and[11] þis kyng made in the citee a faire gate, and callede it Ludgate, afterꝑ his name; and þe folc of þe citee lete
24 hight[12] Loundres, and when he hade regnede xj ȝere, he deide, and liþ at Londoñ. and he hade ij ȝonge sones, Andraghen and Gormace[13]; but þai couþ neiþ*er*e speke ne go, for ȝeugeþ; & þ*er*fore þe Britons crounede a stronge kuyȝt þat me called [14]Lud, þat was
28 Cassibalam*us*[14] broþ*er*, and made hi*m* kyng of Britagne.

How þe Britons g*ra*ntede to Cassibalam, þat was Ludes broþ*er*, þe landꝓ: [15]in whas time Iulius[16] come ij tymes forto conquere þe lande.[15] ¶ Capitulo Tricesimo ¶ quinto.

32 After þe deþ of Kyngꝑ Ludꝓ, regnede his broþ*er* Cassibalam, and bicome a goode man, and miche bilouede of his Britons, so þat, for his godenesse and c*ur*tesye, þai g*ra*ntede him þe reaume for-

[1] vrian D. Vryan O. [2] Trabreth DO. [3—3] *om.* O.
[4—4] xxxij ȝerꝑ D. xxxij and R. [5] *leaf* 11, *back.* [6] in O.
[7] of the new D. of newe O. [8] lafte D. left O. laste R.
[9—9] þe citee callede D. was þe Citee cald O. [10] *om.* DO. [11] *om.* D.
[12] hit D. yt O. [13] Tormace DO. [14—14] *sic in all three MSS.*
[15—15] *om.* O. [16] Iulius Ceserꝑ D.

euermore, to him and to his heires. ¶ And the kyng, of his godenesse, lete norisshe worþiliche boþe [1]his broþeres sones, þe childerne of Lud[1]; And after', made þe eldeste sone Erl of Cornwaile, and þat oþere Erl of Londoñ. ¶ And while þis kyng Cassibalam regnede, 4
come Iulius Cesar, þat was Emperoure of Rome into þis lande, with a power of[4] Romayns, and wolde haue hade þis lande þrouȝ strengþ; but Cassibalam him ouercome in bataile, þrouȝ helpe [2]of þe[3] Britons, and drof him oute of þis Lande; and[4] went aȝeyne to 8
Rome, and assemblede[5] grete power' anoþer tyme, and come aȝeyne into þis lande forto ȝeue bataile to Cassibalam; but he was descomfitede þrouȝ strengþ of þe Britons, and þrouȝ[6] helpe of þe erle of Cornwaile, and[7] þe Erl of londoñ, his broþer, and þrouȝ helpe of 12
Gudian, Kyng of Scotland', and of[8] Corbande, Kyng of north Wales, and of Bretaile, Kyng of Southwalys. and in þis bataile was slayne Nemion, þat was Cassibalamus broþer, wherfore he made miche sorwe; and so went Iulius Cesar' oute of þis lande with a fewe of[9] 16
Romayns þat were lefte a-lif'; And þo Cassibalam went aȝeyne to Londoñ, and made a fest vnto alle his folc þat þo hade [10]him holpen[10]; and when þe[11] fest was done, eche man went into here[12] owen contree. 20

Of þe debate þat was bituene Cassibalam and þe Erle of Londoñ; [13]& of þe truage þat was payede[14] to Rome.[13] ¶ Capitulo xxxvj^to.[15]

AND after, hit bifelle þus oppoñ a day, þat [16]þe gentil-men[16] of 24
þe kynges householde and [17]þe gentelmen[17] of þe Erles householde of Londoñ, after mete went in-fere[18] forto playe; and þrouȝ debate þat arose amonges[19] ham, Enelyn, þat was þe erles broþer[20] of Londoñ, quellede Irenglas þat was þe kynges cosyn; wherfore þe 28
kyng swore þat Enelyn shulde bene[21] honget; but þe Erle of Londoñ, þat was Enelynes lorde, wolde nouȝt suffren[22] hit; wherfore þe kyng' was wroth towarde[23] þe Erl, and þouȝt him[24] destroye. and priuely[25] þe Erl sent lettres to Iulius Cesar' þat he shulde come 32

[1—1] sones that wer' Lud his broþeres D. Sones þat were lud his brotherys O.
[2] *leaf* 12. [3] *om.* O. [4] and he DO. and R. [5] Assembled a O.
[6] þurgh þe O. [7] and of D. [8] *om.* DO. [9] of his D. *om.* O.
[10—10] holp him D. hym holpe O. [11] þat DO. [12] his DO.
[13—13] *om.* O. [14] paye D. [15] xxxv^to D. [16—16] a gentilman D.
[17—17] a gentil-man D. gentylmen O. [18] y-fere D. [19] among O.
[20] cosyn D. Cosyn O. [21] be DO. [22] soffre D. [23] towardes O.
[24] hym to O. [25] priuelich D.

into þis lande forto [1]helpe him, and[1] helpe avenge him [2]oppon þe Kyng', and he wolde helpe him with al his myȝte. ¶ And when þe Emperoure herde þis tydynges,[3] he was ful glade, and ordeynede
4 a stronge power', and come aȝeyne þe þridde tyme into þis land'; and þe Erl of Londone halpe him wiþ vij M' men. and at þe þridde tyme was Cassibalam ouercomen[4] and descomfitede, and made pees to þe Emperoure for[5] iij [6]M' ħi[6] of siluer', ȝeldynge by ȝere for
8 truage for þis lande for euermore. and after' half[7] ȝere passede, the Emperoure went to Rome, and þe Erl of Londoñ wiþ him, for he derste nouȝt abide in þis lande. and after, Cassibalam regnede xvij ȝere in pees, and þo[8] deide, þe xxvij ȝere of his regne, and lithe atte
12 ȝork'.

How þe lordes of þe lande, after' þe deth of Cassibalam, for enchesoñ þat he hade none heire, made Andragen kyng'. Capitulo ¶ xxxvij^mo^.

16 After þe deth of Cassibalam, for-asmiche as he hade none[9] heire of his body, þe lordes of þe lande, by commune assent, cronede Androgen, Erl of Cornewaile, and made him kyng'; and he regnede wel[10] worthely, and was a gode man, and wel gouernede
20 þe lande. and when he hade regnede viij ȝere, he deide, & liþ at Londoñ.

Of Kymbalyn, þat was Andragenus sone, a gode man, [11]and wel gouernede þe lande.[11] Capitulo xxxviij.

[12]Natiuitas *Christi*[12]

24 After þe deth of Andragen, regnede Kembelyn his sone, þat was a gode man, and wel gouernede þe lande in miche prosperite and in[13] pees al his lifes[14] tyme. ¶ And in his tyme was born Ihesus Crist oure saueoure, of þat swete virgine Marie.[15] ¶ þis
28 Kyng[16] Kembelyn hade ij sones, Ginder' and Armoger', gode knyȝtes and worthi. [17]And when þis Kyng Kembelyn hade regnede xxij ȝere, he deide, and liþ at Londoñ.

Of Kyng Ginder', þat was Kembalynes sone, þat wolde nouȝt
32 **paye þe truage to Rome [11]for the lande þat Cassibalam hade grantede[11]; & how he was slayne of a Romayne. Capitulo xxxix°.**

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] *leaf* 12, *back*. [3] tydynge O.
[4] ouercom D. ouercome O. [5] with D. [6–6] M' of ħi O.
[7] half a DO. [8] þo he O. [9] no O. [10] wel and DO.
[11–11] *om.* O. [12–12] *om.* DO. [13] *om.* O. [14] lif D. lyve O.
[15] Marie y-blessede mot she be Amen D. [16] *om.* D. [17] *leaf* 13.

ANd after þe deþ of þis Kembalyn, regnede Ginder' his sone, a gode man and a worþi; and [1]he was of so hie[1] hert þat he wolde nouȝt paye to Rome þat t*r*uage þat Kyng Cassibalam hade g*ra*ntede vnto Iulius Cesar'; wherfore þe Emp*er*oure þat was þo, þat[2] me callede[3] Claudius Cesar',[4] was sore annoyede, and ordeynede a grete power' of' Romay[n]s, and come into þis lande forto conquere þe t*r*uage þrouȝ strengþ, and haue it of þe kyng'; but þe kyng Gynder', and Armoger' his broþ*er*, gadrede a grete hoste ifere of Britouns, and ȝaf bataile to þe Emp*er*our Claudius, and quellede[5] of Romains grete plente. ¶ The Emp*er*our hade a Stiwarde þat me clepede[6] Hamon, þat saw þat her' peple was faste slayne[7]: p*r*iuely[8] he[2] caste awai his owen armes, and toke[9] the Armes of a dede Briton, and armede hi*m* wiþ his armure, and come into þe bataile to þe kyng', and saide in þis maner': "Sire, beth of gode hert', for Godes loue, for þe Romayns þat beþe[10] ȝour' enemys anone shullen[11] bene[12] slayn and descomfitede eu*er*ychon."[13] ¶ and þe kyng ȝaf no kepe ne rewarde to his speche, for enchesoñ of þe armes þat he hade oppoñ hi*m*, and wende it[14] hade bene[15] a Britoune; but þe t*ra*itoure [16]euer' helde him[16] nexte þe kyng', and p*r*iueliche,[17] vnder' þe shulders[18] of his armure,[19] he smote þe kyng, Wherfore he was dede anone,[20] and fel doune vnto[21] þe erþe.

When Armoger' saw his broþ*er* dede, [22]he caste away his Armeȝ, and toke[23] to him his broþ*er*es Armes, and come into þe bataile amonge þe Britons, and bade hertly forto[24] fyght', and faste laide[25] adoune þe Romaignes. and for þe armes, þai wende[26] it hade bene[27] Kyng[5] Gynder', þat arst was slayne, þat þai wist nouȝt', and þo gonne þe Britons hertly feiȝten,[28] and quellede þe Romayns; so[29] at þe last' þe Emp*er*our forsoke[30] þe felde, and fley as faste as þai[31] miȝt into þe citee of Wynchestre. and þe false t*ra*it*our* Hamonde, þ*at* hade quellede þe kyng', faste anone gane forto flee in[32] al þe haste þat he miȝt'; and Armoger', þe kynges broþ*er*, p*ur*suede hi*m* ful fersly[33] wiþ a ferse herte, and drof him vnto[34] þe water', and þ*er*e

[1—1] so hye of D. [2] *om.* O. [3] clept O. [4] Cesar & he O.
[5] *om.* D. [6] called DO. [7] y-slayn O. [8] pryueliche D.
[9] nome DO. [10] ben O. [11] shul D. schul O.
[12] be O. [13] echeon O. [14] he DO. [15] be O.
[16—16] helde hym eu*er* O. [17] priuely D. pryuyly O. [18] shulder' D.
[19] Armes DO. [20] *om.* DO. [21] to D. [22] *leaf* 13, *back.*
[23] nome DO. [24] *om.* D. to O. [25] lay D. ley O.
[26] wende that D. [27] be þe O. [28] fyght O. [29] so þ*at* O.
[30] took O. [31] he DO. [32] with O. [33] fast D.
[34] in-to O.

he[1] toke him, and anone smote of [2]boþe heuede,[2] hendes, and feete, and hewe þe body halto pecis, and þo caste it into þe water; Wherfore þat wat*er* was callede Hamondeshauen; and after,[3] þ*er*e
4 was made a faire toune þat ȝitte [standeth] þat[4] is callede Southamptoñ. ¶ And afterwarde, Armoger went to Wynchestre forto[5] seche Claudius Cesar þe Emp*er*our; and þ*er*e Armoger[6] him toke.

¶ And Claudius þe Emp*er*our, þrouȝ conseil of his Romayns þat
8 with him were lefte alyf, made pees wiþ Armoger in þis maner as ȝe shulleþ[7] hure, þat is to seyne, how[6] þat Claudius þe emp*er*our shulde ȝeue to Armoger, Gennen[8] his[9] douȝt*er*, forto haue to wif, so þat þis lande fro þat tyme aft*er*warde shulde be in þe Emp*er*oureȝ
12 power of Rome, oppoñ suche couenant, þat[10] none Emp*er*our of Rome shulde take none oþ*er*e t*r*uage of þis lande, but oneliche feaute; and so þai were accordede. ¶ And oppoñ [11]þis couenant,[11] Claudius Cesar sent to Rome for his douȝt*er* Gennen; and when
16 she was come*n*,[12] [13]Claudius Cesar ȝaf her to Armog*er* to Wif; and Armoger spoused here at Londoñ with michel[14] solempnite and merþe; and þo was Armog*er* c*r*onede, and made Kyng of Britaigne.

20 **Of Kyng Armog*er*, in whas[15] tyme seynt Pet*er* p*r*echede in Antyoche, wiþ oþ*er*e ap*ost*lis in diu*er*ses[16] contres. [17]Ca*pitulo* xl.[17]**

THis Kyng Armoger regnede wel, and worthely[18] þe lande
24 gou*er*nede, and Claudis Cesar, in remembrance of þis[19] accorde, and for reu*er*ence and hono*ur* of his dought*er*, made in þis lande a fare tou*n*e and a faire castel, and lete calle [20]þe toune[20] after his owen[21] name 'Claucestre,' þat now is callede
28 Gloucestr. and when þis was al done, þe Emp*er*oure toke[22] his leue, and[23] went aȝeyne to Rome; and Armog*er* [24]was þo[24] kyng, and gou*er*nede þe lande wel and nobli al his lif tyme. ¶ and this Armager gete a sone on his wif, þat [25]was callede[25] Westmere. and

[1] thay D. [2–2] boþe heede D. his hed O. [3] aft*er*ward O.
[4] and D. [5] to O. [6] *om.* D. [7] shul D. schul O.
[8] Gelmen *or perhaps* Gelinen *or* Gelnien O. [9] his fair D. his fayre O.
[10] that neu*er* aft*er*warde D. þ*at* neu*er*e aftirward O.
[11–11] þese coueu*aunt*es O. [12] come O. [13] *leaf* 14.
[14] miche D. mych O. [15] who D. [16] diu*er*se D. diuers O.
[17–17] xl° Cap*itulo* O. [18] worthely and D. worthyly & O. [19] his O.
[20–20] *MS.* þe lande toune, *with* lande *underlined for erasure.* yt O.
[21] *om.* DO. [22] nome DO. [23] and þo DO. [24–24] þo was DO.
[25–25] Called was O.

whiles þat þis Armoger' regnede, seynt Pet*er*[1] p*re*chede in Antioche; and þ*er*e he hade[2] made a noble cherche, in þe whiche he satte ferste in his chier', and þ*er*e he duellede vij ȝere.[3] after', he[2] went to Rome, and was made Pope, til þat Nero þe Emp*er*our lete him martre. & þo p*re*chede openly al þe Apo*st*lis, in diu*er*ses[4] landes, þe ryȝt fay.[5] ¶ And when Armog*er* hade regnede xxiiij ȝere, he deyde, and lith at Londoñ.

How Kyng' Westmer ȝaf to Berynger' an Ilande forlete; and þ*er*e þis Beringer' made þe toune of Berwik'. C*apitul*o xlj.

ANd after' þis Armoger', regnede his sone Westmer', a gode man, and a worþi of body, and wel gou*er*nede þe lande. ¶ Hit bifelle so þat tydynges[6] come to him oppoñ [7]a day, þat þe Kyng[8] Rodrik' of Gascoigne was comen[9] into þis lande wiþ an huge noumbre of peple, and was duellyng' in Steynesmore. and when Kyng Westmer' herde þo tydyng*us*, he lete assemble [10]a grete[10] host of Britons, and come to þe[8] Kyng' Rodrik', and ȝaf him bataile. and Kyng Westmer' quellede Rodrik wiþ his owen hondes in pleyne bataile; and when þat[2] kyng Rodrikes men saw þat here Lorde was dede, þai ȝolden ham alle to þe[8] Kyng Westmer', and bicome his men for eu*er*more; and he ȝaf ham a contre þat was forlete, wher'-in þai myȝt duelle; and þider' þai went, and duellede þ*er*e al here lifes[11] tyme; and ix C̃ men þ*er*e[12] were of ham, and nomo[13] lefte alif at þat bataile. Here gou*er*no*ur* and her' p*r*ince, me callede Berynger'; and anone he biganne a toune, þat þai myȝt þ*er*ein duelle[14] and haue resceyt, and lete calle þe toune Berwik' vp[15] Twede; and þ*er*e þai duellede, and bicome riche. but þai nade[16] no wymmen amonges ha*m*, and þe Britons wolde nouȝt ȝeue here douȝtres to þo[17] St*ra*ungers; Wherfore þai went ou*er*e þe see into Irland, and brouȝt with ham Wy*m*men, and ham þo spousede; but þe men couþe[18] nouȝt[19] vnderstonde[20] þe langage[21] ne þe speche of þe wy*m*men, neyþ*er*[22] þe wy*m*men of þe men, and þ*er*efore þai [23]speken to-ged*er*es[23] as scottes; and aftirwarde, þrouȝ chaungeyng of her'

[1] *In the margin in a contemporary handwriting:* Peter was at Rome *in* nero[s] ty[me]: *the edge of the page has evidently been cut off.*
[2] *om.* DO. [3] ȝeer & O. [4] diu*er*se D. diu*er*s O.
[5] feyth O. [6] tydyng DO. [7] *leaf* 14, *back.* [8] *om.* O.
[9] come O. [10—10] an huge O. [11] lif D. [12] þat O. [13] noman D.
[14] *om.* D. [15] vpon O. [16] hadde O. [17] þe D.
[18] coude O. [19] nouȝt þo D.
[20] vndirfonge O. [21] lange D. [22] ne O.
[23—23] spoken to-geder' D. speke to-gidere O.

langages,[1] in al F*ra*unce þei were callede þo[2] Scottes: and so [3]þai shal be callede[3] for eu*er*more.

How Kyng Westmer' Lete arere a stone in þe entryng[4] of West-
4 **me*r*land', *þer*e þat he slouȝt Rodrik'; & *þer*e he biga*n*ne ferste Housyng'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quadragesimo[5] ¶ Se*cun*do.**

ANd after' this bataile þat is aboue-saide, when Rodrik [6]Was dede, Kyng' Westmer', in remembraunce of his Victorie, lete
8 arere *þer*e, bisides þe way, a grete stone[7] in[8] hye,—& ȝitte it standeþ,[9] and eu*er*more shal stande,—and Lete g*ra*ue in þe stone le*tt*res þat þus saide: 'The Kyng Westmere of Britaigne quellede in þis place Rodrik' his enemy.' ¶ And þis Westmere was þe ferst
12 man þat made tounes[10] and hous in Engeland'. and at þat stone bigy*n*neth[11] Westm*er*land', þat Westmer' lete calle after' his owen name. and[12] when Westmer' hade so done,[13] he duellede al his Lif tyme in þat contre of Westm*er*land', for he louede þat contre more[14];
16 and when he hade regnede xxv ȝere, he deide. & liþ at ¶ Karleile.

Of Kyng Coil, þat was Westmeres sone, þat helde his lande in pees[15] his lif-tyme. ¶ Capitulo xl T*er*cio.

After þis Kyng Westmer', regnede his sone Coil, a goode man
20 and a worþi, and of gode condicions, and wel gou*er*nede his lande, and of alle[16] men he hade loue and pees; and in his tyme was neu*er* contak, debate, ne werre in Britayn; and he regnede and was kyng' in pees al his lif-tyme. & When he hade [17]bene kyng[17]
24 xj ȝere, he deide, and liþ at ȝork'.

How Kyng Lucye regnede after' Coel[18] his fader', þat[19] was a gode man; and after', he[12] bicome c*r*isten. ¶ Cap*itul*o xl ¶ Quarto.

28 After' Kyng[20] Coel, regnede Lucie his sone, þat was a gode man to God' and to al þe peple. he sent to Rome, to Apostle Eulenchie, þat þo was, and seide þat he wolde bicome a c*r*isten man, and resceyue baptisme[21] in þe name of' God', and t*ur*ne to þe

[1] langagage *sic* D. [2] *om.* D. þe O.
[3—3] shulleþ þe folc of that contraie D. schul þat folk of þat Cuntre O.
[4] Entre O. [5] Quinq*ua*gesimo D. [6] *leaf* 15. [7] toune D.
[8] an O. [9] stant DO. [10] Tou*n* O. [11] bigy*n*nes D.
[12] *om.* O. [13] y-done O.
[14] more þan eny o*þer* contre D. more þan eny o*þer* Cuntre O.
[15] pees al D. [16] all his O. [17—17] bene kyng' D. be kyng' O. bene R.
[18] *om.* D. [19] & O. [20] þis D. [21] bapteme O.

ryȝt bileue. ¶ Eulenchie sent ij legates, þat me callede Pagan and Elibrayne, into þis lande, and baptisede þe kyng[1] and alle his menye,[1] and after[1] went fro [2]toune[3] to toune, and baptisede þe peple til [4]al þat[4] Lande was baptisede, and þis was in þe c. lvj 4
ȝere after[1] þe Incarnacioñ of Ihesu Crist[1]. and þis kyng[5] Lucye made þo in þis lande ij erchebisshoppes, on at Kaunterbery and anoþere at ȝork[1], and oþere meny bisshopes þat ȝit bene in þis lande. ¶ And when þise[6] ij legates hade baptisede al þe[7] lande, 8
þai ordeynede[8] prestes forto baptisen[9] childern and forto make þe Sacrament[1]; and after[1], þai went aȝeyne to Rome, and þe kyng duellede in his lande, and regnede with michel[10] honour xiij ȝere, and after[1] deide, and liþ at Gloucestre. 12

How þis lande was longe wiþouten[11] a kyng[1]; and how þe Britons chosen[12] a kyng[1]. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quadragesimo. ¶ Quinto.

THis kyng[1] Lucie hade none heire of his body bigeten,[13] þat was 16
afterwarde grete harme and sorwe to þe lande; ffor, after þis kyng Lucies deth, none of þe grete lordes[14] of þe lande wolde suffren[15] an-oþere to bene[16] kyng[1], but leuede in werre and debate amonges ham l. ȝere wiþouten[17] kyng. but þo it bifel [18]aftirwarde 20
þat a grete Prince[18] come fro Rome into þis lande þat me callede Seuerey; nouȝt forto werr[1], but forto saue þe ryght[1] of Rome. ¶ But noþeles, he nade[19] nouȝt duellede half[20] ȝere in þis lande, þat þe Britons ne quellede him. when þo of Rome wiste þat Seuerey 24
was so slayn, þai sent anoþere grete lorde into þis lande, þat me callede Allec, þat was a stronge man, and a myȝty of body, and duellede in þis lande Longe tyme, and dede miche sorwe to þe Britons, so þat after, for pure malice, þai chosen ham a kyng 28
amonges ham, þat me callede Astlepades, and assemblede a grete host of þe Britouns, and went to Londoñ to[21] seche Allec; and þere þai founde[22] [23]him, and quellede him and alle his felawes þat

[1] mene D. meyne O. [2] *leaf* 15, *back*.
[3] *a marginal note in an ancient hand*: [fir]st cristes Kynge.
[4—4] þat alle þe D. [5] *om.* D. [6] þe O. [7] þat O.
[8] ordeigneden O. [9] baptisen D. baptisede R. [10] mych O.
[11] with-oute D. tyme with-oute O. [12] Chose hem O.
[13] bygete D. begete O. [14] *om.* DO. [15] soffre D. suffre O.
[16] be DO. [17] with-oute DO.
[18—18] afterwarde that a grete Prince D. afterward þat a gret prince O. afterwarde R. [19] had O.
[20] half a O. [21] forto D. [22] founden O. [23] *leaf* 16.

were wiþ him, but one of his felawes, þat me clepede[1] Waloun, defendet him fersly, and fauȝt longe with þe Britouns, but at þe laste he was descomfitede; and þe Britons token[2] him, and bounde
4 him[3] Hondes and feete, and caste him into a water; wher'-fore þat water afterwarde was clepede[4] [5]euermore Walbroke.[5] ¶ Þo regnede þis[3] Astlepades in quiete, til one of his erles þat me callede Coel, made a faire toune aȝeynes þe kynges wille, and lete calle þe toune
8 Colchestre after' his name, wherfore þe kyng was ful wroth, and þouȝt destroie þe erle, and bigan to werre vppoñ him, and brouȝt grete power', and ȝaf bataile to[6] þe erl. and þe erl defendede him fersly with his power', and slough þe kyng' him-self in þat bataile;
12 and þo was Coel cronede, and made kyng of þis land. ¶ þis Coel regnede and gouernede þe lande wel and nobly, for he was a[7] noble man, and wel bilouede amonges[8] þe Britons. ¶ When[9] þo of Rome herde þat Astlepades was slayne, [10]þai were[10] wonder glade, and sent
16 anoþere grete prince of Romayns, þat me callede Constance; and he come to þe[11] Kyng Coil [12]forto chalange[12] þe truage þat was wont [13]to bene[13] paiede to Rome; and þe kyng ansuerede wel and worþely,[14] and saide þat he wolde paye to Rome al þat ryȝt and
20 resouñ [15]wolde, wiþ godewil[15]; and so þai accordede þo wiþ goode wil, and wiþouten[16] eny contak'; and boþe þai duellede togeder'[17] in loue. ¶ The Kyng' Coel ȝaf his douȝter Elyne to Constance, forto haue here for his spouse, þat was boþe faire, wise, and gode, and
24 wel lettrede: and þis Constance spousede here þere[3] with michel[18] honour. and it bifelle sone afterwarde, þat þis kyng' Coel [19]deide in the ȝere of his regne xiij, & Lith at Colchestre enterede.

Of Kyng Constance, þat was a Romayn, þat was chosen[20] kyng
28 **after [21]þe deth of[21] Coel, [22]for-asmiche þat[22] he hade spousede Elyn, þat was Kyng Coeles douȝter'. Capitulo xlvj°.**

32 After þis[11] Kyng Coel, Constance was made kyng', and cronede, for-asmiche as he hade spousede Kyng Coeleȝ douȝter, þat was heire of þe lande. þe whiche Constance regnede and worþely

[1] callede D. called' O. [2] nome D. toke O.
[3] *om.* O. [4] callede D. called O. [5—5] Walbrok euermore O.
[6] vnto D. [7] an O. [8] among O. [9] And D.
[10—10] than were þai D. [11] *om.* D. [12—12] and chalangede D.
[13—13] be DO. [14] wiselich D. wysely O. [15—15] wil D.
[16] with-oute O. [17] to-gederes D. [18] mych O.
[19] *leaf* 16, *back.* [20] chose O. [21—21] *om.* O.
[22—22] for-asmiche as D. for as O.

gou*er*nede þe lande; and he bigate on his wif Elyn, a sone þat me callede Constantyn. and þis kyng bare trew fay, and trewly dede to ham of Rome al his lif'. & when he hade regnede xv ȝere, he deide, and liþ atte ȝork'. 4

How Constantyne, þat was Kyng Constanceȝ[1] sone, & þe sone of seynt Elyne, gou*er*nede and rewlede þe lande, & was[2] Emp*er*ou*r* of Rome. ¶ Capitulo xl Septi*m*o.

After Kyng Con[s]tanceȝ[3] deth, Constantyne, his sone of seynt 8
Elyne, þ*a*t founde þat[4] croice in þe[5] holy londe, and how Constantyne bicome Emp*er*oure of Rome. ¶ Hit bifel so[6] in þat tyme þ*er*e was an Emp*er*ou*r* atte Rome, a sarasyne, a tyraunt, þat me callede Maxence, þat put to þe[2] deth alle þat bileuede in God', 12
and destroiede holy cherche by alle his power', and slought C*r*isten men þat he myȝt fynde; and amo*n*ge alle oþ*er*e, he lete martre Seynt Kat*er*yne, and meny oþ*er*e c*r*isten peple þat hade drede of deth, þai[7] fledden[8] and comen[9] into þis lande to Kyng Constantyne, and 16
tolde hi*m* of þe sorwe þat Maxence dede to al c*r*istiente.[10] Wherof Constantyn hade pite, and grete sorwe made, and[11] assemblede a grete hoste and[12] grete power', and went ou*er*e see[13] to Rome, and toke[14] þe citee, and quellede al þat [15]þ*er*in were mesc*r*eaunt,[15] þat 20
he myȝt fynde. ¶ And þo was he made Emp*er*oure, [16]And was a gode man, and gou*er*nede him so wel, þat al þe[13] Landes to him were entendaunt[17] forto be vnder' his gou*er*naile. ¶ And þis deuel tyraunt Maxence, þat þo was in þe lande of Greke, when[18] he 24
herde þis tydynges,[19] he bicome wode, and sodeynely[20] deide, and so he[2] endede his lif'.

When Constantyne went fro þis land' to Rome, he toke[21] wiþ him his moder' Elyn, for þe michel[22] wisedome þat she couþe,[23] and 28
þre oþ*er*e grete lordes þat he moste louede: þat one me callede Hoel, anoþ*er*e me callede Taberne, and þe þridde Morhyn[24]; and toke al his lande to kepe vnto[25] þe Erl of Cornwaile, þat men[26] callede Octouyan. ¶ anone[27] as þis Octouian wiste þ*a*t his lorde was 32
duellyng' at Rome, he seisede al þe lande into his honde, and þ*er*wiþ

[1] Constance D. Constau*n*ce O. [2] *om.* O. [3] Constance D.
[4] þe D. [5] þ*a*t O. [6] so þ*a*t O. [7] þat DO.
[8] fled O. [9] come O. [10] Cristene O. [11] made and DO. made R.
[12] and a DO. [13] *om.* DO. [14] nome O.
[15—15] wer' þ*er*in D. þ*er*-In were mysbeleued O. [16] *leaf* 17.
[17] attendau*n*t O. [18] þo DO. [19] tydynge O. [20] sodey*n*lich D.
[21] nome O. [22] miche D. mych O. [23] coude O.
[24] Morlyn D. [25] to D. [26] me D. [27] And anon D.

dede al his wil amonges[1] heye and law, & þo helde him for kyng'. ¶ when þis tydyng come to Constantyne þe Emperoure, he woxe wonder' wroþe towarde þe Erl Octouyan, and sent Taberne with xij
4 m' men forto[2] destroye the erl for his falsenesse, and arryuede at Portesmouthe. ¶ And' when Octouyan wiste þat, he assemblede a grete power' of Britons, and descomfitede Taberne. ¶ And Taberne fledde þens into Scotlande, and ordeynede þere a[3] grete power', and
8 come aȝeyne into þis lande forto ȝeue bataile anoþere tyme to[4] Octouyan. ¶ When Octouyan herde telle þat, he assemblede a grete power', and come towarde Taberne as miche as he myȝt', so þat þo[5] ij hostes metten oppon Staynesmore, and strongely[6] smyten
12 to-gederes.[7] and þo was Octouyan descomfitede, and fledde þens into Norwaye; and Taberne seisede al þe lande into his hande,[8] Tounes, castelles, and[5] as mich as þai þere hade. ¶ And siþenes[9] Octouyan come aȝeyne fro Norway wiþ a grete power', & slough
16 Taberne, & seisede[10] al þe lande aȝeyne[3] into his honde, & drof oute alle þe Romayns, [11]and was þo made Kyng, and regnede.

How Maximian, þat was þe Emperoureȝ cosyn [12]of Rome spousede Octouyaneȝ douȝter, and was made kyng', ¶ Capitulo xlviij°.[12]

20 THis Kyng[5] Octouian gouernede þis[13] lande wel and nobly[14]; but he[15] nad[16] none heire, saf a douȝter þat was a ȝonge childe, þat he louede as miche as his lif'. and forasmiche þat he wax
24 sike, and was in[17] poynt of deþ, and myȝt no lenger' regne, he wolde haue made one of his Neveus to haue bene[18] kyng', þe whiche was a[19] noble knyȝt' and[20] stronge man, þat me callede Conan Merchedok',[21] and he shulde haue kepte þe kynges douȝter, & haue[15] mariede
28 her' when tyme hade bene; but þe lordes of þe lande wolde nouȝt suffre hit, but ȝaf here conseile to bene[22] mariede to some hye man of great honour, and þan myȝt she haue al her' wille at[23] þe conseile of þe Emperoure Constantyne, here Lorde. and at þis conseile, þai
32 accordede and chose[24] þo Cador, Erl of Cornewail, forto[25] wende

[1] among O. [2] to O. [3] *om.* DO. [4] vnto O. [5] *om.* O.
[6] strongliche D. [7] to-gider' O. [8] handis O. [9] seth O.
[10] seisede aȝeyn D. seised aȝen O. [11] *leaf* 17, *back.*
[12—12] conquerede the lande of Amorican and ȝaf it to Conan Meriedok' D.
[13] þe O. [14] wisely D. [15] *om.* D. [16] ne had O.
[17] oppo[n] D. vp O. [18] be O. [19] an O. [20] and a DO.
[21] Meriedok D. Meridiok' O. [22] be DO. [23] and DO.
[24] chosen O. [25] to O.

to þe Emper*our* to[1] done[2] þis[3] message. and he toke[4] þe way, and went to Rome, and tolde þe Emper*our* þis tydynges[5] wel and wiselich.[6] and þe Emper*oure* sent þo into þis lande with him his owen cosyn, þat was his Vncles[7] sone, a noble kny3t and[8] 4 stronge, þat me callede Maximian; and he spousede Octouyan*us* dou3ter, and was c*r*onede kyng of þis lande.

How Maximian, þat was þe Emper*our*res cosyn, conquerede the Lande of Amorican, and 3af it to Conan M*er*iedok'. 8 ¶ Cap*itul*o xlix°.

THis Kyng Maximian bicome so real, þat he þou3t conquere þe lande of Amorican for þe grete richesse þat he harde[9] telle þat was in þat lande; so þat [10]he ne[10] lefte [11]man þat[12] was of worþi- 12 nesse—kny3t,[13] squyer', ne none o*þer*e man—þat he ne toke ham[14] with him, to grete damage and harme to al þe lande,[15] but nome ha*m* with hi*m* fra*m*[16] þis lande, xxx M^l^ kny3tes þat were doughty mennes bodyes, and went ouer' into þe lande of Amorican, and þ*er*e slough 16 þe kyng þat me callede Imbal, and conquerede al þe lande. ¶ And when he hade so done,[2] he callede Conan, and saide: "For-asmiche as þe Kyng Octouyan wolde haue made 3ow kyng' of Britaigne, and þrou3 me 3e were lette and desto*ur*blede, þat 3e were nou3t kyng', 20 I 3eue 3ow al þis lande of Amorican, and 3ow þ*er*of make kyng'. ¶ And for-asmiche as 3e beth[17] a Britouñ, and 3oure men also, and bene comen fram[18] Britaigne, I wille þat þis lande haue þe same name, and nomore bene[19] callede Amorican, but bene[19] callede 'litel 24 Britaigne'; and þe lande fro whens 3e [20]beþe comen[20] shal bene[21] callede 'michel Britaigne'; and so shul[22] men know þat one[23] Britaigne fra*m*[24] þat o*þer*e." Conan M*er*iedok' þankede him hende- liche[25]; and so was he made kyng' of litel Britaigne. and when 28 al þis was done,[2] Maxence[26] went þens to Rome, and þ*er*e was[27] made Emper*our* after' Constantyne. ¶ Conan M*er*iedok duellede in[28] litel Britaigne with michel[29] hono*ur*, and lete ordeyne ij M^l^

[1] forto DO. [2] do O.
[3] *MS.* þis homage, *with* homage *underlined for omission.*
[4] nome DO. [5] tydyng' D. tydynge O. [6] wysely O.
[7] Vnkel O. [8] and a DO. [9] hade D. [10—10] *om.* D.
[11] *leaf* 18. [12] *om.* O. [13] kny3t ne D. [14] *om.* DO.
[15] lande for he lefte at home bihynde him no man to kepe the lande D. land' for he left at home behynde hym no man to kepe þ^e^ land' O.
[16] fro DO. [17] be O. [18] fro O. [19] be DO.
[20—20] beth come D. be come O. [21] be DO. [22] schuld O.
[23] o DO. [24] fro O. [25] hendely D. hyndly O. [26] Maximian DO.
[27] was þo DO. [28] in the D. in þ^e^ O. [29] mych O.

ploughmen of þe lande forto erie þe lande,[1] to harwe [2]it and sowe,[2] and feffede ham alle rychely, afterʼ þat þai were. ¶ and[3] for-asmiche þat Kyng Conan, ne none of his knyȝtes, ne none of his
4 oþ*er*e peple, wolde nouȝt take wifes of þe nacioñ of F*ra*unce, he þo sentʼ into grete Britaig[n]e, to þe Erl of Cornewaile þat me callede Dionotho, þat chees þrouȝ-oute alle þe lande xj Mⁱ [4]of maydenes, þat is to seyne, viij Mⁱ for the mene peple, and iij Mⁱⁱ for þe
8 grettest lordes þat schulde ham spouse. ¶ And when Dionotho hade tak[5] þis co*m*mandement,[6] he lete þo seche þrouȝ-out al grete Britaigne as meny as þe nombre come to, for noman derst wiþstande his co*m*mandement, [7]for-asmichel[8] as al þe lande was taken[9] him
12 to warde and kepe, to do[10] al þingʼ þat him þo likede.[7] ¶ And when alle þe maydenes were assemblede, he lete ha*m* co*m*me bifore him to Londoñ, and lete ordeyne for ham shippes hastely, as miche[11] as ham nedet to þat viage, and toke[12] his owen dought*er*
16 þat me callede Vrsula, þat was þe faireste c*r*eature þat eny man wistʼ, and wolde haue sent herʼ to Kyng Conan, þat shulde haue spousede here, and made here quene of [13]litel Britaigne[13]; but she hade made p*r*iuely[14] to God a vow of chastite, þat here fader wiste
20 it[15] nouȝt, ne noman [16]elles[17] þat was leuyng oppoñ erþe.[16]

How Vrsula, and xj Mⁱ of maydenes þat were in here co*m*pany, went towarde litil Britaigne, & al[18] were martrede at Coloigne. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinquagesimo.

24 THis Vrsula chees into herʼ[19] company xj Mⁱ maydenes[20] þat of al oþ*er*e she was lady and maistres; and alle þai went[21] into þe shippis at on[22] tyme, in þe wat*er* þat me calleþ[23] Tamise; and co*m*mandede herʼ kyn and alle herʼ frendes to almyȝty God, and
28 sailede forþ towarde litel Britaigne. But when þai were comen[24] in þe hye see, a stronge tempestʼ arose, as it was Goddes wil; and Vrsula, wiþ herʼ shippis and here co*m*pany, was[25] dryuen, and þo xj Mⁱ maidenes, towardʼ[26] Hundelande, þrouȝ tempestʼ, and arryuede in þe

[1] *om.* D. [2—2] and to sowe D. [3] *om.* O. [4] *leaf* 18, *back.*
[5] vnderstonde D. vndirfonge O.
[6] comandement for-as-miche as al þe lande was tak him to warde and kepe to done alþingʼ þat him þo likede D.
[7—7] *om.* D. [8] for-as-mich O. [9] take O. [10] done O.
[11] as meny O. [12] nome DO. [13—13] the lande D. þᵉ landʼ O.
[14] priueliche D. [15] *MS.* his [16—16] þat leuede D. [17] eH O.
[18] alle þai D. alle þey O.
[19] herʼ company D. here Cumpanye O. herʼ R.
[20] of maydeyns D. of Maydenes O. [21] wenten O. [22] o O.
[23] called þᵉ O. [24] come O. [25] were O. [26] towardes O.

hauen of[1] þe citee of Coloigne. ¶ The kyng of þe lande, þat me callede Gowan, was þo in þe citee; and when he wist þo[2] tydynges, þat so meny faire maydenes were þe*re* arryuede, he tok[3] Elga his broþ*er*, and oþ*er*e of[1] his householde, wiþ him, and went to þe 4 shippes to see þat fair' company. and when he sawe ham so faire,[4] he and his co*m*pany wolde haue ham ou*er*layne, and bynome[5] here maydenhode. ¶ but Vrsula, þat gode mayde, conseilede, p*ra*yede, warnede, and tauȝte ham þat were here felowes,[6] þat þai 8 shulde defende ham wiþ al her' myȝt, and raþ*er* suffre deth þan suffre here [7]bodyes bene[7] defoulede. ¶ So þat alle þe maydenes bicome so stedefast in God, þat þai defendede ham þrouȝ his[8] g*ra*ce, so þat none of ha*m* hade power' to done ham eny shame; 12 wherfore þe kyng was[9] so sore annoiede, þat he, for wraþ, lete slee ham eu*er*ychoñ[10] anone ryght; and so were alle þe maidenes martrede for þe loue of God', and ligget[11] at Coloyn.

How Kyng Gowan come forto destroye þis lande; and how 16 aman of grete power', þat me callede Gracian, defendede þe lande. ¶ Capit*ulo* ¶ Qui[n]quagesimo ¶ Primo.

WHen al þis was done,[12] Kyng Gowan, þat was a sarasyn, callede his broþ*er* Elga, and saide to him þat he shulde 20 gone[13] to conquere þe lande þat alle þo[14] faire maydenes were borne[15] in. and he ordeynede þo a grete power' of Peihtes, of Denmarc, of Orkeneye, and of Norwaye, and þai comen into þis lande, and brent tounes, and slough folc, and caste adone cherches and houses[16] of 24 religiouñ, and robbede the lande in lengh and in[17] brede, and put to deth alle þo þat wolde noght forsake þe ryght bileue and c*ri*stendome, for-asmiche as þe*re* was none[18] sou*er*ayne in the lande þat myȝt ha*m* helpe or [19]defende. ¶ For þe Kyng Maximian hade 28 taken[20] wiþ him alle þe worþi men, when he went to conquere litil Britaigne. and in þe same tyme þat ȝe hure now telle, was Seynt Albone martrede þrouȝ þe wode tyraunt Diodician in þe same place, wherin is now an Abbay made of Seynt Albone, whiles þat he was 32 a paynyme. ¶ But he conu*er*tede him towarde God', þrouȝ þe p*re*dicaciouñ of a grete clerc and a wyse, þat me callede Ancibeł,[21] þat

[1] *leaf* 19. [2] þ^e O. [3] nome DO. [4] fayne *sic* O.
[5] bynomen O. [6] felawes D. ffelaws O. felow R. [7—7] body to be O.
[8] his O. here R. [9] Gowan wox D. Gowan wax O. [10] echeon O.
[11] liggen D. [12] do O. [13] go DO. [14] þe D. [15] bore O.
[16] house O. [17] *om.* O. [18] no DO. [19] *leaf* 19, *back.*
[20] take O. [21] Affabeł O.

was h*er*burghede a nyght in his house; and þis was after þe Incarnacioñ of I*hes*u C*r*ist .ij C. xx iiij. vj ȝere. and men shullen[1] vnder stonde þat Seynt Albone soffrede his martredome bifore þat[2] Seynt
4 Edmunde was martrede; and þ*er*fore is seynt Albone callede þe ferst' martre of Engelande. ¶ This Gowan*us* broþ*er*, & his folk', þat[3] were Sarasynes,[4] went þrouȝ-oute þe Lande, and destroyede al þing þat þai fonde; and no þing þai ne sparede. ¶ When þis tyd-
8 yng come to Rome, how þat Kyng Gowan hade bigonne forto destroye þis lande, þe Emp*erour* and þo of Rome sent a stronge man, and of grete power', þat me callede Gracian, w[ith] xxiiij[5] M' men wel feightyng', forto caste oute Sarasynes of þis lande, and
12 alle þai arryuede[6] at Portesmouthe. Maximian myȝt nouȝt come him-self,[7] for-asmiche as he was chosen Emp*er*oure after þe deþ of Constantyn, þat was Seynt Elynes sone. ¶ When þis Gracian was arryuede wiþ his host', he lete aspie p*r*iuely[8] wher' þe[9] Kyng Gowan
16 myȝt [10]bene founden[10]; and he come vppoñ [11]hiṁ sodeynly,[11] as þai Lay in her' beddes, [12]and descomfitede ham, and sloughe[12] [13]echeon,[14] þ*a*t non of hem Ascaped' saf Gowan, þ*a*t fledde w*ith* mych̄ sorowe in-to his cuntre. Sone aftir yt byfel þ*a*t Maximian
20 was slayn at Rome, þurgh̄[15] treson); And when Gracian wyst þ^e^ tydynge, he let Croune hym kyng of þis land'.

How Gracyan made hym kyng whan Maximian was slayn; & after,[16] þe Brytou*n*s quelled' hym for his wikkydnesse.
24 **Capitulo quinquagesimo ij°.**

This Gracian,[17] when he gan[17] forto regne, he bycome so wykked & so sterne, & so mych̄ sorow wrough̄t to þ^e^ Britouñs, þ*a*t þey slow hym amonges hem. ¶ Tho Kyng Gowan had vndirstande
28 þat Gracian was do[18] to deth̄, he Assembled a gret power, & come aȝen in-to þ*is* land'; & yf he had arst don) a[19] grete harme, þ° dede he mych̄ more; for þ° distroyed he al this land, & al[20] Crysten peple þ*a*t was in Myche Brytaigne, so þ*a*t no ma*n* was so[19] hardy for-to
32 nempne God'; & ho þ*a*t dede, anon he was put to strong deth̄.

[1] shul D. Shulden O. [2] *om.* O. [3] þai D. [4] Sarasines & D.
[5] xxiij O. [6] arryueden O. [7] him D. [8] pryueliche D. [9] that D.
[10—10] be founde DO. [11—11] ham sodeynliche D. hem sodeynly O.
[12—12] and slow ham in her' beddes D. *om.* O.
[13] *MS. Rawl. B.* 171 *has two leaves missing here. They have been supplied from MS. Douce* 323 (*O*). [*MS. Douce* 323, *leaf* 17.]
[14] eu*er*yche on D. [15] with D. [16] afterwarde D.
[17—17] when he biganne D. he began O. [18] done D. [19] *om.* D.
[20] alle þe D.

¶ But þe bysshop of London) þat was þo, þat me called Gosselyn, scaped, & went þens to hem of Rome, to seche socour for-to helpe dystroye þe Saraȝins þat had dystroyed þis land. ¶ And þe Romayñs seyde[1] þat þey hadde be[2] so ofte anoyed for her sendyng 4 after folk in-to Brytaigne, al for-to helpe þe Britouns, & þey wold no more so do.[3] And so þe Bysshop Gosselyn went þens with-oute[4] ony Socour or helpe; & þo went he to þe Kyng of litil Brytaigne, þat me called Aldroye, & þis was þe iij kyng after Gowan Meridiok, 8 as bifore is sayd. The bysshop prayed this Kyng Aldroye of socour & of helpe. the kyng hadde[5] herd how þe bysshop fledde, & how þat[6] þe[7] Crystene men were slayn in gret Brytaigne þurgh Paynyms & Saraȝins, & he graunted hym Constantyn his broþer, hym[6] for-to 12 helpe, with Poer of folk, & hem dede arraye hors armure, & schippes, & al thing þat hem neded to þat viage. and when al thing was redy, he called þe bysshop, & to hym seyd: "I take ȝou here to helpe & socour Constantyn my broþer, vpon this couenaunt, 16 þat ȝif God ȝife hym grace, þe Paynems & Saraȝiñs to schende & discomfite, þat þanne ȝe make hym kyng of þe land": & þe bysshop yt graunted with good wyll. ¶ Constantyn & þe bysshop[8] nome leue þo of þe Kyng Aldroye, & by-took hym to[9] God, & nome her 20 men xij M, & went in-to her schippes, & sayled toward þe gret Brytaigne, & Arryued in Tottenesse. whan þe Britouns herd [10]þe tydyng[10] þat to hem come socour, þey[11] were stronglich holpyn, & ordeigned hem an huge nombre of peple, [12]& come to hem, & hem 24 vndirfongen with mychel honour. ¶ Gowan, anon as he wyste of this þyng, he Assemblyd all þe Saraȝins, & come aȝens hym,[13] & ȝaf batayll. And Constantyn slow hym with his owne hand; & all þe othere Saraȝins were discomfited & slayn, þat non aschaped but þo 28 þat were[6] conuerted vnto God.

How Constantyn, þat was þe kynges broþer of litel Britaigne, was Crouned [14]kyng, for his worþines, of mych Bretaigne.[14] Capitulo liij°. 32

Anon, aftir þe batayll, alle þey went to London), & crowned þere Constantyn, & made hym kyng of þis land. And þe bysshop Gosselyn sette þe Croune vpon his hed,[15] & anoynted hym, as

[1] sayden D. [2] bene D. [3] done D.
[4] wiþ-outen D. [5] hade grete pitee in hert when he D.
[6] *om.* D. [7] *MS.* þe Chi, *with* Chi *underlined for erasure.*
[8] bisshop tho D. [9] him to D. hym O. [10—10] tydynges D.
[11] ther D. [12] *leaf* 17, *back.* [13] ham D.
[14—14] kyng of michel britaigne for his worþinesse D. [15] heuede D.

falletħ to[1] A kyng [2]for-to be[2]; & þ° bygan Crystendom. This[3] Constantyn,[4] whan he was Crouned, anon aftir he spoused his wyf þurgħ coun*c*eil of þ^e^ Britou*n*s; & he begate iij Sones on her: 4 þ^e^ ferst me called Constaunce,[5] þ*a*t other Aurylambros, & þ^e^ iij Vter. ¶ Constance, þ^e^ eldest brother, when he come to Age, made[6] hym a monke at Wynchestre. Constantyn here fadir was slayn þurgħ tresoⁿ; for it byfeH vpon a tyme þat a Pohete come to hym 8 vpon a day, in Message as yt were, & seyd þ*a*t he wolde speke w*ith* þe kyng pryuyly[7] in Counceyl. The kyng lete voyde his Chambre of þ° men þ*a*t were witħ-Inne; & þo Abide[8] þ*er*e nomo[9] but þ^e^ kyng & þe Pohete, & made a Conten*au*nce as þey[10] wolde 12 speke to-gidere[11] in his ere; & þ*er*e he qwelled hym w*ith* a long knyf; & aft*er*, went qweyntly out of þ^e^ Chambre in-to anoþ*er* Chambre; so at þe laste no man wyst wher he was bycome.[12] ¶ When þ^e^ kynges men it wyste, þat here lord was so ded, þei made 16 so mycħ sorowe[13] þey nyst [14]aH what for-to[14] done, for-as-mycħ as his ij sones, Aurylambros & Vter, weren so yenge þ*a*t non of hem myght be kyng; & þ^e^ iij[15] broþ*er* was monke at Wynchestre, as [16]I sayd before.[16] ¶ But Vortiger, þat was Erl of Westsex, þoughт 20 pryuyly[17] in his herte, thurgħ queyntise, to be[18] kyng; & went to Wynchestre þ*er* þ*a*t Constau*n*ce was[19] monk, & to hym seyde: "Constau*n*ce," q*uo*d he, "ȝoure fadir is ded, & ȝour ij breþ*er*in þat ben w*ith* Gosselyn, þ^e^ bysshop of Londoⁿ, to norysshħ, bethħ so yeng, 24 þat non of hem may be kyng; wherfore y counseyle þ*a*t ȝe forsake ȝoure Abyte, & come[20] w*ith* me, & I schal do so to þ^e^ Brytouns þat ȝe schul be made kyng."

Of Constau*n*ce, þat was[21] Constanty*n*us sone, þ*a*t was Monk at 28 Wynchestr; & how he was made kyng after his faders dethħ, þurgħ Counceil of Vortig*er*, þat was Erle of Westsex, for-as-mycħ as Aurilambros & Vter, his ij breþ*er*in, were but of yonge age, & [22]was slay*n*.[22] Ca*pitul*o liiij°.

32 This Vortiger counceyled þis Constau*n*ce so mycħ tyl he forsook his Abyte, & went w*ith* hym. & anon aftir, he was Crouned and made kyng by Assent of þ^e^ Brytou*n*s. This kyng Constance,

[1] for D. [2—2] to bene D. [3] This kyng D.
[4] *MS. has* Constantyn her fadir, *with* her fadir *struck out.*
[5] Constance and D. [6] he made D. make O. [7] pryueliche D.
[8] abode D. [9] noman D. [10] thouȝ he D. [11] with þe kyng D.
[12] bicomen D. [13] sorw that D. [14—14] what to D. [15] eldest D.
[16—16] is saide biforne D. [17] pryueliche D. [18] ben D.
[19] was made D. [20] comeþ D. [21] was kyng D.
[22—22] Vortiger lete hi*m* slee to ben kyng himself D.

whan he was *c*rouned & made kyng, he wyst ne knew but litil of
þ^e world, ne cowde[1] [2]no thing as knyghthood axed', he made
Vortiger his maister & his chef Counceillour, & yaf hym aH his
power, for-to ordeigne & do as myche as to þ^e reaume p*er*teyned', so 4
þ*at* hym-self no þing' entrauelled', but only[3] bare þ^e name of kyng'.
¶ Whan Vortiger saw þ*at* he had al þ^e[4] land in his warde &
gou*er*nayle, at his owne wyH, he þoughT A pryue Treson), &
þought to sle Constance þ^e kyng', þat he mygHt hy*m*-self' [5]be 8
Crouned' & made[5] kyng' & regne, & lete sende aft*er* a[6] C knyghttes
of Pehetes, þ^e worthiest of[7] þ^e land', & hem helde[8] w*ith* hym, [9]to
duelle wiþ him, [10]and[9] to bene[10] Kepers of his body, as he wolde
wende þrouȝ þe lande to ordeyne þinges þat p*er*teynede to a Kyng'. 12
¶ And þis Vortig*er* honourede so miche þo C̄ knyȝtes, and so miche
ȝaf ham of golde and siluer', & so ryche reweH,[11] robes, hors, and
oþ*er*e noble plente, wherfore þai helde him more lorde þan þai
deden[12] þe kyng. ¶ And Vortyger' tolde ha*m*, if þat he [13]moste 16
bene[13] kyng', he,[6] as it were þrouȝ tresouñ, he wolde make ha*m*[14]
richest of þe lande. so[15] at the laste, þrouȝ grete ȝiftes þat he[16] hade
ȝeue largely, þai *c*rieden[17] þrouȝ þe court' þat Vortig*er* were better'
worþi ben[18] kyng' þan Constance; wherfore Vortig*er* made sem- 20
blant as þauȝ[19] he hade bene[20] wroþ, and dep*ar*tede þens fro þe
court, and saide he most [21]gone elles-where[21] for þing þat he hade to
done; and so þe t*rai*toure ȝede[22] for[23] enchesouñ þat þai[24] shulde
slee [25]hi*m*, þat is to seyne,[25] Constance. ¶ When þis Vortig*er* was 24
gone, hit bifelle sone after' þat þo C̄ knyȝtȝ of Peightes breken[26]
þe dores of þe kynges chambre, and þ*er*e þai him slough and smoten[27]
of his heuede,[28] and bare it to Vortiger' þ*er*e þat he duellede. and
when Vortyg*er* saw þat heuede,[28] he wepte ful tenderly wiþ his eye; 28
and noþelese he was some dele glade of his deth, and anone lete
take þo[29] C̄ knyȝtes of Peightes, & bonde[30] here hondes bihynde
ham, and lade ham to Londoñ; & þ*er*e þai were dampnede to deth

[1] couþe D. [2] *leaf* 18. [3] onliche D.
[4] þis D. [5—5] ben cronede D. [6] *om.* D.
[7] of al D. [8] with-helde D.
[9—9] *om.* D. [*MS. Rawl. B.* 171, *leaf* 20.] [10—10] as to be O.
[11] Iewels O. [12] þai deden D. þey dede O. deden R.
[13—13] miȝt ben D. must be O. [14] hym O. [15] So þ*at* O.
[16] þai D. [17] *c*riede D. Cryede O. [18] to be O. [19] *om.* DO.
[20] be O. [21—21] gone elles-whid*er* D. go elles-whedir O.
[22] saide D. seyde O.
[23] *MS.* for t*re*souñ, *with* t*re*souñ *underlined for erasure.* [24] *MS.* þat.
[25—25] *om.* D. hym þ*at* is to sey O. [26] broken D. [27] smyten O.
[28] heed' O. [29] þe D. [30] bynde O.

as false t*ra*itoures. ¶ and anone after', al þe britons of þe lande, by co*m*mune assent', c*r*onede þ*er*e Vortig*er*, & made him kyng of þe[1] lande.

4 How þe wardeynes þ*a*t hade þo[2] ij[3] childerne to kepe, þat were [4]Constantines sones, lade ham to litel Britaigne, for the t*re*souñ and falsenesse of Vortiger'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinquagesimo ¶ Quinto.

8 THis kyng Vortyg*er*, when he was c*r*onede, þo þat [5]hade þe ij[5] childerne in kepyng', Aurilambros and Vter', þrouȝ ordenance of Gosselyn, þat was bisshop of Londoñ at his deþ, derst nouȝt duelle in the lande wiþ þe childerne,[6] but lade ha*m* to þe kyng of
12 litel Britaigne, forasmiche as he þo wiste þe t*re*souñ of Vortig*er*, þat þo was made Kyng', þrouȝ wham Constance here broþ*er* was slayn, wherfore þo C̄ knyȝtes of Peightes were put to þe[3] deth, and bare al þe blame, as þeiȝt Vortig*er* [7] hade nouȝt wiste[7] þ*er*of', noþ*er* þ*er*to
16 consentede; and so þe Kepers of þo ij childerne drade[8] laste Vortig*er* wolde put ha*m* to deth, þrouȝ his t*re*souñ and falsenesse, as he hade done[9] her' broþ*er* biforne; and þ*er*for þai wer' ladde ou*er* into litel Britaigne, and þe kyng ham resceyuede wiþ michel[10]
20 hono*ur*, and lete ham to norisshe; and þ*er*e þai duellede til þai bicome fair' knyȝteȝ, &[3] st[r]ong and ferse, and þouȝt[11] euer' to bene[12] a̧vengede of[13] þe deth of Constantyne[14] here broþ*er*, when þai saw here tyme; and so þai deden,[15] as þe[16] shul hur'[17] aftirward'.
24 ¶ Hit was nouȝt long after', þat [18]þe tydynges ne[18] come ouer' þe see, to þe kynrede of þe C̄ knyȝteȝ of[19] Peightes þat were dampnede and put to þe[20] deth þrouȝ Vortiger' in þis lande; þ*er*fore þai [21]weren wonderly[21] wroþe, & sworen þat þai[22] [[23]would be[23] avenged of her
28 kins death,] and comen into þis lande wiþ a grete power', & robbeden[24] in meny places, & slouȝ,[25] & dede[26] al þe sorw þat[27] þai myȝt. ¶ When Vortyg*er* hit wiste, he [28]made [29]sorw ynow[29] and

[1] þis D. [2] *om.* O. [3] *om.* D. [4] *leaf* 20, *back.*
[5–5] hade þo D. ij *sic* O.
[6] *MS.* childerne of þe lande, *with* of þe lande *underlined for erasure.*
[7–7] wist nouȝt D. [8] dradden O. [9] do O.
[10] mych O. [11] þoughten O. [12] be O. [13] vpon O.
[14] Constaun*c*e O. [15] dede O. [16] ȝe DO.
[17] her' tel D. her' telle O.
[18–18] tydynge O. [19] of þ^e O. [20] *om.* DO.
[21–21] were*n* wonder' D. were wonderly O. [22] *MS.* þai wonderly wroþ.
[23–23] wolde ben D. wolden ben O. [24] robbed O.
[25] quelleden in meny places D. quelled' O. [26] deden D. [27] as O.
[28] *leaf* 21. [29–29] miche sorw D. mych sorowe O.

sore was annoyede; and in a-noþ*er* p*ar*tie also tydynges[1] come[2]
þat Aurilambros & Vt*er*[3] ordeynede ham,[4] and assemblede a grete
hoste forto[5] come into michel[6] Britaigne, þat is to seyne, into þis
lande, to bene[7] avenged of Constance [8]deþ her broþ*er*[8]; so þat 4
[9]in one[9] half and in þat oþ*er* he was brouȝt into so[10] miche sorwe
þat he nyst whider to wende.

How Engist and xj M[t] men come into þis lande, to who*m* Vortig*er* ȝaf a place þat [11]is callede[11] Thongecasteh. 8 Cap*itulo* lvj^to^.

ANd sone after þis [12]sorw, tidynges[12] come to Vortig*er*, þat a
grete nauye[13] of straungers were arryuede in[14] Kent; but
þai wist nouȝt whens[15] þai were, ne wherfore þai were comen.[16] 12
¶ The Kyng sent anone messagers[17] þider, þat so*m*me of ha*m*
shulde come and speke wiþ him, forto wete what folc þai werne,
and what þai axede, and into what contre þai wolde gone.[18] ¶ þ*er*e
were ij breþ*er*ne, Prynces and maistres of þat straunge company: 16
þat on me callede Engist, and þat oþ*er*e Hornn. Engist went þo[10]
to þe kyng, & tolde to him enchesoñ wher-fore þai were þ*er*e
arryuede in his[19] lande, and saide: "sire! we beth[20] of a contre
þat [21]is callede[21] Saxoyne, þat is, þe Lande of Germayn, wherin is 20
so[10] miche sorw, þat[22] þe peple is[23] so myche þat þe lande may
[24]nouȝt ha*m*[24] sustene ne suffice. ¶ The maystres & Prynces þat
haueþ[25] þe lande to gou*er*ne and rewele, shul done come bifore
ham men and wy*m*men, þe[26] boldest [27]þat bene amonges ham 24
and best mowen[27] trauaile into diu*er*seȝ[28] londes; and so þai
[29]shal[30] ham ȝeue Horse and harneyse, armure, and al þing þat
ham nedeþ; and after þai[31] say to ham þat þai go into anoþ*er*
contre, wher þat[4] þai [32]mowen leue,[32] as here auncestres deden[33] 28
biforne ham. and þ*er*fore, sire kyng, if[34] ȝe haue ouȝt to

[1] tydyng O. [2] come to him D. come to hym O.
[3] Vter his broþ*er* DO. [4] *om.* D. [5] for D. [6] Mich O.
[7] be O. [8—8] hir broþ*er*es deth D. here broþ*er*s deth O.
[9—9] on o O. [10] *om.* O. [11—11] Called is O.
[12—12] sorwe tydyng D. tydynge O.
[13] meny D. meyne O. [14] in the contre of D. in þe Cuntre of O.
[15] what D. [16] come O. [17] a messag*er* D. a messager O.
[18] go O. [19] þis O. [20] be O. [21—21] called is O. [22] þ*a*t yf O.
[23] be O. [24—24] hem not O. [25] hauen DO. [26] that bene D.
[27—27] amonges ha*m* forto fiȝt þat best mow D. þ*a*t ben among hem for-to fight þat best mow O.
[28] diuerse D. diu*er*s O. [29] *leaf* 21, *back.* [30] shullen D.
[31] þai shul D. þey schul O.
[32—32] mow leuen D. mow lyue O. [33] dede O. [34] and D.

done wiþ oure co*m*pany, we [1]bene comen[1] into ȝoure lande; and wiþ gode wille ȝow wil se*r*ue, and ȝour' lande helpe, kepe, & defende fram[2] ȝoure enemys, if þat ȝow nedeþ." ¶ when Vortiger'
4 herde þis tydynges,[3] he saide he wolde gladeliche[4] wiþhalde ham, oppoñ soche couenant, if þai myȝt delyuer' his lande of' his enemys, he wolde ȝeue ham resonable landes, wher' þai shulde duelle for eue*r*more. ¶ Engist þankede him godeliche; and in þis maner' he
8 and his co*m*pany, ¶ xj. M[1] men, shulde duelle wiþ þe Kyng Vortig*er*; and so miche þai deden[5] þrouȝ here boldenesse, þat þai delyuerede þe lande clene of here[6] enemys. ¶ þo p*ra*iede Engist þe Kyng', of so miche lande þat he myȝt make to him a citee, for
12 him and for his menye.[7] ¶ The kyng ansuerede [8]& saide,[8] 'it was nouȝt forto done[9] wiþouten[10] conseile of his Britons.' ¶ Engist prayede him eftesones of as miche place as he myȝt compasse wiþ a twonge of a skyn, wher'-oppoñ he myȝt make him
16 a maner', and for his to duelle in[11]; and þe kyng g*ra*ntede it[12] frely. ¶ þo tok[13] Engist a bole skyn, and cotte it as smale as he myȝt', al[14] into a twonge al rounde, & þ*er*-wiþ co*m*passede as miche lande as he [15]co*m*passede; wher-oppoñ he[15] made[16] a faire castel.
20 and when þis castel was ymade,[17] he lete calle it Twongecastel, for-asmiche as þe place w*as* m*er*kede wiþ a twonge.

Of Ronewenne, þat was Engistes doughter', [18]and how[19] Kyng' Vortyger [spou]sede her' [20]for here beaute.[20] C. lvij^mo^.

24 WHen þis castel was makede,[21] and ful wel arraiede, Engist p*r*iuely sent bi lettre into þe contre þat he come of, after' an[22] hundrede shippis fillede with strange[23] men þat were bolde and wel feiȝtyng' in alle batailes; and þ*a*t þai shulde bryng' wiþ
28 ham Ronewenne, his douȝ*ter*, þat was þe fairest c*r*eature þat eny[24] man myȝt see. ¶ And when þe peple was comen, þat he hade[22] sende after', he toke[25] ham into þe castel wiþ michel[26] ioye; and him[27] him-self, vppoñ a day, went vnto þe kyng', and p*ra*yede him
32 derworly[28] þat he wolde come and see his new maner', þat he hade made in þe place þat he hade compassede wiþ þe[29] twong of þe

[1—1] be come O. [2] fro O. [3] tydyng' DO. [4] gladly DO.
[5] dede O. [6] his DO. [7] meyne O. [8—8] *om.* DO. [9] do O.
[10] wiþ-oute D. with-oute O. [11] on DO. [12] hi*m* D. hym O.
[13] nome DO. [14] *om.* O. [15—15] *om.* DO. [16] made vpon O.
[17] made D. [18] *leaf* 22. [19] how þe D. [20—20] *om.* O. [21] made O.
[22] *om.* D. [23] stronge D. [24] a DO. [25] nome DO. [26] mych O.
[27] *om.* DO. [28] derworthly D. deworlyly O. [29] a D.

skyn. þe kyng anone *gr*antede[1] him frely, and wiþ him went
þider', and was wel payede wiþ þe castel & wiþ þe faire werk'; and
toged*er*es þ*er*e þai eten and dranken[2] wiþ michel[3] ioye. ¶ And
when ny3t come, þat[4] þe kyng shulde go into his chambre forto 4
take þ*er*e his ny3tes reste, Ronewenne, þat was Engistes dou3ter',
come wiþ a coupe of' golde in here honde, and knelede bifore þe
kyng', and saide to him "Whatsaile!" and þe kyng wist nou3t
what it was forto[5] mene, ne what he shulde ansuere, for-asmiche as 8
himself' ne none of his Britons 3itte couþe[6] none Englisshe speke,
ne vnderstonde it, but speken[7] þo þat[8] same langage þat Britons
3itte done. ¶ Noþeles, a Latymer' tolde þe kyng' þe fulle vnder-
stondyng' þ*er*of 'whatsaill'; and [9]þat oþ*er* shulde[9] ansuere[10] 12
'drynkehaile': and þat was þe ferst tyme þat 'whatsaile' and
'drynkehaile' come vp into þis lande; and fram[11] þat [12]tyme into[13]
this tyme it Haþ bene wel vsede. ¶ The Kyng Vortiger[14] saw[15] þe
fairenesse of Ronewenne, and his[16] armes layde aboute here 16
nek', and þries[17] swetely cussede hir'; and anone ry3t he was
vnarmerede oppoñ hire, þat he desirede to haue here to wyf', and
axede of Engist' hir' fader'. and Engist g*ra*ntede,[18] oppoñ þis
couenaunt þat þe kyng shulde 3eue him al the[19] contre of Kent', þat 20
he my3t duelle in, and al his[20] peple. þe kyng hym g*ra*ntede p*r*iuely
with a gode wille; and anone after' he spousede þe damiseH. þat was
miche co*n*fusioñ to himself'; and þ*er*for al þe Britouns bicome so
wroþ, for enchesouñ þat he hade spousede a wo*m*man of mysbileue, 24
wherfore þai went al from[21] him, and noþing[22] to him toke kepe,
ne helpe him in þinges þat he hade to done.

How Vortymere, þat was Vortigers sone, was made kyng', & Engist dryuen oute; & how Vortymer' was slayn þrou3 28 Ronewenne. ¶ Ca*pitulo* lviij°.

THis Engist went into Kent, and seisede al þe lande into[23] his
hande, for him and for al[24] his men; and bicome in[4] a litel
while of so grete power', & so miche peple hade, þat men wist 32
nou3t in litel tyme, whiche were þe kynges men, & whiche were

[1] *gr*aunt O. [2] drunken O. [3] mych O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] to DO. [6] coude O. [7] spoken D. [8] þe O.
[9—9] þe oþ*er* shul D. þ*a*t other O. [10] Answere schul be O.
[11] fro O. [12] *leaf* 22, *back.* [13] to D.
[14] *MS. has* Ronewenne; *om.* D. [15] þo saw D. whan he saw O.
[16] *altered from* hir' *by the same hand.* [17] iij DO. [18] *om.* O.
[19] him al the D. hym al þe O. him R. [20] *MS.* his his.
[21] fro O. [22] þo þing *sic* D. [23] in O. [24] *om.* DO.

Engistes men. wherfore al Britaigne hade of ham[1] drede, and saide amonges ham þat, if þai ne toke o*þer*e counseil bituene[2] ham, al þe lande shulde be bit*ra*yede þrouȝ Engist and his peple.
4 ¶ Vortyg*er* þe kyng hade bigeten[3] on his ferst wif' iij sones: þe ferst me callede Vortymer'; þe secunde, Catagren; and þe þridde, Passent. þe Britons, eu*er*ychoñ[4] by one assent', chosen[5] Vortymer forto bene[6] here lorde, & here souerayne, and hir' conseiler' in
8 eu*er*y [7]bataile, and c*r*onede him, and made him Kyng', and Wolde[8] soffre Vortiger' no longer' to regne, for enchesouñ of þe alliance bituene Engist and him. ¶ þe Britons ordeynede a grete host to drif out Engist and his company of þe lande, and ȝaf him iij
12 batailles: þe ferst w*a*s in Kent, þ*er*e þat he was lorde; þe secunde was att Tetteford'; and þe þridde was in a shire a þis half Cool, in a more. & in þis batail ham mette Cattegren and Horn, Engistes broþ*er*, so þat eu*er*yche[9] of ham slouȝ o*þer*; but for-asmiche as[10] þe
16 contre w*a*s ȝeuen[11] longe bifore to Horñ, þrouȝ Vortyg*er*, þo he hade spousede his cosyn; þ*er*e he hade made a faire castel þat me callede Horncastel, after' his owen name. ¶ And Vortymere was so annoiede for his broþ*er*es deþ, Cattegren, þat he w*a*s dede in soche
20 a maner'; wherfore anone he lete felle þe castel to þe[12] grounde, and after' þat,[12] he ne lefte nyȝt ne day til he hade dryuen[13] out Engist and all his peple of þe lande. ¶ And when Engist was dryuen[13] away, Ronewenne his douȝt*er* made sorwe ynow, and
24 queyntly spake to ham þat were nexte þe kyng Vortymere,[14] and p*r*iueest wiþ him. and so miche she ȝaf ham of ȝiftes, þat he was apoysenede, & deide at Londoñ þe iiij ȝere of his regne; & þ*er*e he lith.

28 **How þe Britons chosen[15] a-noþ*er*e tyme Vortyg*er* to bene[16] here king'; and Engist come into þis lande aȝeyne, & þai fouȝten to-gedres.[17] ¶ Capit*ulo* lix°.**

32 A*fter'* Vortymeres deþ,[18] þe Britons, by here co*m*mune assent, Eftesones made Vortyg*er* here kyng', vppoñ þis couenaunt, þat he shulde neu*er* after' soffren[19] Engist, ne none of his, eftesones shulde[20] come into þis lande. ¶ And when al þis was done,

[1] *MS.* ham a, *with* a *underlined for omission.* him D. hym O.
[2] bituenes D. [3] bygete O. [4] echeon O. [5] closen *sic* D. [6] be DO.
[7] *leaf* 23. [8] wolde nouȝt D. [9] eche O. [10] þat O. [11] ȝeue D. yeue O.
[12] *om.* O. [13] dryve O. [14] Vortiger O. [15] chose O. [16] be O.
[17] to-gidere O. [18] deth the britouns D. deth þe brytou*n*s O. deþ R.
[19] soffre D. suffre O. [20] *om.* DO.

Ronewenne þe Quene [1]sent p*r*iuely[1] by lettre to Engist, that she
hade enpoisenede Vortymer', and þat Vortyger' her' lorde [2]aȝeyne
bare þe croune and regnede, and þat he shulde come aȝeyne into[3]
þat lande, wel arraiede wiþ miche peple, forto avenge him vppon 4
þe Britons, and to wynne his lande aȝeyne. ¶ of þis tydyng Engist
made grete ioye, and app*ar*ailede him hastely wiþ xv M[l] men þat
were douȝty en eu*er*y batail. And when Vortyg*er* herde telle þat
Engist was comen[4] aȝeyne wiþ a grete power' into þis lande, he 8
assemblede his Britons, and þo went aȝeyns Engist forto haue ȝeue
him bataile, and his folc; but Engist drade him sore of þe Britons,
for þai hade descomfitede[5] him biforn-hand, and dryuen him[6] out
by[7] strengþ; wherfore Engist p*ra*yede him[8] of a loue-day, and 12
saide he was nouȝt comen[9] forto fiȝt, but forto[10] haue his lande
aȝeyne of Kent, if he might accorde wiþ þe Britons, and of ham
haue g*ra*ce. ¶ [11]The Kyng' Vortig*er*,[11] þrouȝ conseile of his Britons,
[12]grauntede a loue-day[12]; and þus it was ordeynede þrouȝ þe Britons, 16
þat þilk[13] loue-day shulde [14]ben holden[14] faste bisides Salesbury,
vppoñ an[15] huH; and Engist shulde come þider' wiþ iiij^c knyȝtes,
wiþouten[16] mo, and þe kyng wiþ as meny of þe wisest of þis[17]
lande. ¶ And at þat day þe kyng come wiþ his conseil, as it was 20
ordeynede; but Engist hade warnede his knyȝtes p*r*iueliche,[18] and[19]
ham co*m*mandede þat eu*er*yche[20] of ham shulde put a Longe Knyf'
in his hose; and when he saide, "faire sires! now is tyme forto[21]
speke of loue and pees," eu*er*yche[22] anone, eu*er*yche[8] shulde draw 24
his knyf & slee a Britouñ. & so þai quellede xxx M[l] & lxj of
knyȝtes; and wiþ miche sorwe meny of ham ascapede; and
Vortyg*er* him-self was taken [23]and Lade to Twongecasteh, and put
into prisouñ; and so*m*me of Engistes men wolde þat þe kyng 28
hade bene[24] brent al quyk'. ¶ And Vortiger' þo, to haue his lif',
g*ra*untede ham as miche as þai [25]wolde axen,[25] and ȝaf vp aH þe
lande, tounes and castelles, citees and Burghes, to Engist and to
his folc. and alle þe Britons fledde þenns into Walys, and þ*er*e 32
helde ha*m* stille. and Engist went þrouȝ þe lande, and seisede alle
þe lande with ffraunchises; and in eu*er*y place lete caste adoune

[1—1] priueliche sent D. p*r*iuyly sent O. [2] *leaf* 23, *back*. [3] to O.
[4] *MS*. cocomen; come O. [5] scomfitede D. scomfited O.
[6] *om*. O. [7] with DO. [8] *om*. DO. [9] come into þis land' DO.
[10] to O. [11—11] And kyng' Vortyg*er* g*ra*unt a loue-day D. The kyng O.
[12—12] *om*. D. [13] þat same D. þ^e same O.
[14—14] be holde D. be hold O. [15] a D. [16] without DO.
[17] his DO. [18] p*r*iuyly O. [19] & to D. [20] eche O. [21] to DO.
[22] eche O. [23] *leaf* 24. [24] be O. [25—25] wolden axe O.

cherche3 and houses of religiouñ, and destroyede Cristendome
þrou3 þe lande, and lete chaunge þe name of þe lande, þat no man
of his were so hardy after' þat tyme to calle þis[1] lande Britaigne,
4 but calle it Engistes lande; and he[2] departede alle þat lande to his
men, and *þere* made vij kynges forto strengþ þe lande, þat þe
Britons shulde neuer' after' come *þerin*. ¶ The ferst kyngdome
was Kent, *þere* þat Engist him-self regnede, and was lorde &
8 maystre ouer al þe[2] o*þere*; ¶ Ano*þere* kyng hade Southsex̄, where
now is Chichestre; ¶ The þridde kyng hade Westsex̄; The ferþe
kyng hade Essex̄; ¶ The v kyng hade Estangle, þat now is callede
Northfolc,[3] Southfolc,[4] Merchemeriche, þat[5] is to seynt, þe Erldome
12 of Nichol; ¶ þe sixte hade Leycestreshire, Northamptonshire,
Hereford and Huntyngdoune; ¶ The vij hade Oxenford, Gloucestr',
Wynchestre, Warwik and Darby-shire.

How Vortiger went into Walis, and biganne *þere* a castel, þat
16 **wolde nou3t stande wiþouten[6] morter' temprede wiþ**
mannes[7] blode. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo.

[8]WHen Engist hade departede al þe lande in this maner'
bituene his men, he delyuerede Vortiger' out of prisoñ,
20 and soffrede hym frely [9]to gone[9] whider' þat[2] he wolde. and he
toke[10] his way, [11]and went[11] into Walys, *þere* þat[12] his Britons
duellede, for-asmiche as þat lande was strong and wikkede to
wynne. and Engist [13]neuer' come[13] *þere*, ne knew[14] neuer bifore
24 þat Lande. ¶ Vortiger helde him *þere* wiþ his Britons, and axede
conseil what him[4] was best al[4] forto done; and þai 3af him conseil
to make a stronge castel þat he my3t him-self *þerin* kepe and
defende[15] if it[2] nede were. Masounes in hast *þere*[16] were fette, and
28 bigonne þe werk oppoñ þe huH of Breighñ; but certes þus it bi-felle,
þat[7] al the werk þat[4] þe masounes made[17] aday, adoune it felle
any3t; and þat ferede so iij tymes or iiij, wherof þai hadden[18] grete
wonder' what it my3t bene[19]; & *þerof* þe kyng was sore annoiede of
32 þat chaunce, and wist nou3t what to done; wherfore he lete sende
after' þe wisest clerkes, and also lewede men þat weren[20] prou3-out
Walys, þat myght bene[21] fonde, for þai shulde telle wherfore þe

[1] þat D. [2] *om.* O. [3] Northfolk & O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] *þat* now O. [6] with-oute DO. [7] *om.* DO. [8] *leaf* 24, *back.*
[9—9] go D. to go O. [10] nome DO. [11—11] *om.* D. [12] as D.
[13—13] come neuer D. [14] knew it D. knewe yt O. [15] defende yt O.
[16] þo DO. [17] masouns made DO. masounes R.
[18] hade D. had O. [19] be O. [20] were O. [21] be DO.

foundement so failede vnde[r] þe werk', and þat þai shulde him telle what was best to done. and when þe wisest men[1] longe tyme hade studiet, þai saide to þe kyng' þat 'he shulde done[2] sike a childe borne of a woman þat neu*er* hade wiþ man to done,[2] & þat 4 childe he shulde sleen,[3] & te*mper* wiþ his[4] blode þe mort*er* of þe werk', & so shulle[5] þe werke [6]endure eu*er*more[6] wiþouten ende.'

How þe kyng' lete seche Merlyn[7] þrouȝ al Walys forto speke wiþ him. Capit*ulo* lxj°. 8

WHen þe kyng herde þis, he co*m*mandede his messagers anone to wende þrouȝ-out al Walys, to seche þat childe if þai myght [8]him fynde,[8] and þat þai[9] shulde [10]brynge him forthwiþ ham vnto him. and in recorde and witnesse of þis þing, he toke[11] 12 ham his let*t*res,[12] þat þai[1] ne were[13] destourblede of no man, ne lette. ¶ And so faste [14]spede ham[14] the messagers, þat þai come vnto[15] a toune þat me callede Kermerdyn; and as þai passede fourth in[16] here way, þai fonden ij childerne of xiiij ȝere age [17]chiddyng togeder'[17] 16 wiþ hastif wordes; and one of ham saide to þat oþ*er* "Donebat," q*uod* he, "ȝe[18] done al wronge to chide or strif wiþ me, for ȝe haue no witte ne resouñ as I haue." ¶ "Certes, Me*r*lyn," q*uod* [19]þat oþ*er*e,[19] "of ȝoure witte and[20] of ȝour' resouñ y make no forse, for men 20 [21]telleþ co*m*muneliche[21] þat ȝe haue no þing of god', siþ ȝe hade neuer' fader', but alle men weten[22] wel ho is ȝoure moder'." ¶ The kynges messagers, when þai herde þis strif bituene þo ij g*r*omes, þai axede of men þat [23]stoden bituene[23] ham, whens þat Me*r*lyn was born, 24 &[24] who him norisshede; and þe folc ham tolde þat a grete gentil-woman him bare in Kermerdyne, þat me callede Adhan, but neu*er*e myȝt men[25] wete who was[26] þe childes fader'. ¶ When þe messag*er*s herde þis tydynges,[27] þai went anone to hi*m* þat w*as* wardeyne of þe 28 toune, and tolde him þe kynges wille and his let*t*res,[28] wherfore þai were comen[29] þider'. ¶ Merlyn and his moder' anone were sent[30] bifore þe wardeyne of þe toune, and he co*m*mandede ham[9] þat þai

[1] *om.* O. [2] do D. [3] slee D. sle O. [4] þe O. [5] schuld O.
[6—6] euer' endur' D. eu*er*e endure O. [7] seche Merlyn DO. seche R.
[8—8] fynde hym O. [9] *om.* D. [10] *leaf* 25. [11] had take O.
[12] lettre O. [13] weren O. [14—14] þo spede D. þo spedde O.
[15] in-to O. [16] *om.* DO. [17—17] chidden ifere D. chidden y-fere O.
[18] *MS.* ȝe beþ, *with* beþ *underlined for erasure.* [19—19] þe toþ*er* O.
[20] ne DO. [21—21] telle comunly O. [22] wot O.
[23—23] stode bisides D. stoden by-sydes O. [24] *and* also DO.
[25] ma*n* O. [26] miȝt be D. myght be O. [27] tyding D. tydynge O.
[28] lettre DO. [29] come O. [30] sent aft*er* D.

shulde gone[1] to þe kyng', as hit was ordeynede by his[2] messag*er*s. ¶ Merlyn and his moder' come[3] vnto[4] þe kyng', and were vnderfonge wiþ michel[5] honour'; and þe kyng axede of þat lady 'if þat
4 childe were her' sone, and who him bigate.'[6] ¶ The lady ansuerede, ful tender'[7] wepyng', and saide she hade neuer' company of man [8]worldely'; "but, sire," q*uod* shee, "as y was a ȝonge maiden in my faderes chambre, and o*þer*e of[9] grete lynage were in my
8 company, þat ofte were wont to playe and to solacen, I belefte allone in my chaumbre [10]of my fader',[10] & wolde nouȝt gon̄[11] out, for brennyng of þe sone. ¶ And oppon̄ a tyme *þer*e come a faire bachiler', and entrede into my chaumbre *þer*e þat I was allone; but
12 how he come into me, & wher', I wiste neu*er*,[12] ne ȝitte wote, for þe dores were fast barrede; and wiþ me he dede game of loue, for I [13]nade no*þer*[13] myȝt ne power' him to defende fro me; and ofte he come to me in the forsaide maner, so þat he bigate one me þis same
16 childe; but' neuer' myȝt y wete of him what he was, ne whens he come, ne what was his name."

Of þe ansuere of M*er*lyn, wherfore þe kyng axede whi his werk' myght nouȝt stande þat he hade bigonne, [14]myȝt nouȝt
20 **p*ro*ue.[14] Cap*itul*o lxij°.**

WHen Merlyn hade herde al þat his moder' hade saide, he spake[15] to þe kyng in this maner': "sire, how y was bigeten, axe ȝe no more, for hit falleþ nouȝt to ȝow ne to none
24 o*þer*e [16]forto wete[16]; but [17]telle me þe[17] enchesone wherefore I ame to ȝow brouȝt, and wherfore ȝe haue sent after' me." ¶ "Certes," q*uod* þe kyng', "my wise concelers hauen[18] done[19] me to vnderstonde þat þe mort*er* of a werk' þat I haue done bigonne biheueþ,[20] ben[21]
28 temp*er*ede wiþ ȝour' blode, or þe fundement shal faile for eu*er*more." ¶ "Sire," q*uod* Merlyn, "wille ȝe slee me for my blode forto te*mper* wiþ ȝoure morter'?" "ȝe," q*uod* þe kyng, "or elles shal neu*er* my castel stonde, as my conselers done[22] me to vnderstonde."
32 ¶ Þo ansurede Merlyn to þe kyng': "sire," he saide, "late ham come bifore [23]me, þo wise[24] conselers, and I wil p*ro*ue þat þai say

[1] go O. [2] þe O. [3] comen DO. [4] to O. [5] mych O.
[6] gate D. [7] tendirly O. [8] *leaf* 25, *back*.
[9] *MS.* of god', *with* god' *underlined for erasure.* [10–10] *om.* D.
[11] go O. [12] neuer' wher' D. neu*er* where O. [13–13] hade no D.
[14–14] *om.* D. ne p*ro*ve O. [15] spok' D. [16–16] *om.* O.
[17–17] telleþ me D. telleth me O. [18] haue DO. [19] do O.
[20] bihoueth D. byhoueþ O. [21] to be O. [22] do O.
[23] *leaf* 26. [24] *om.* D.

nouȝt wel ne trewely. and when þe[1] wise were comen, Merlyn
axede if his blode were þe enchesouñ to make þe[2] werke stande to[3]
endure. Alle þise[4] wise were abasshede, and couþ nouȝt ansuere.
¶ Merlyn þo saide to þe kyng': "sire, I shal telle ȝow þe encheson 4
wherfore ȝour' werk' þus faileþ[5] and may nouȝt stande. *þere* is
vnder þe mountaigne *þere* þat[6] ȝe haue bigonne ȝour' tour' a grete
ponde of wat*er*; and in þe botume of þe ponde, vnder' þe wat*er*,
þere beþ ij d*ra*gons,—þat one is white, and þat o*þere*[7] rede,—þat 8
feiȝten to-geder ageyne[8] ȝoure werk'. Doþ myne depe til ȝour' men
come to the ponde, and doth ȝour' men take away þe wat*er* al out,
and þan ȝe shul see þe dragons, as I haue ȝow tolde, [9]þo togederes[9]
feiȝten ageyne[10] ȝour' werk; and þis is þe[11] [12]enchesoñ, certes, wher- 12
forè[12] ȝour'[13] fundement faileþ.[14]" ¶ the kyng' anone lete degge
vnder', til þat men come to þe[15] ponde, & lete do[16] away al þe wat*er*;
and *þere* þai fonde ij d*ra*gons, as M*er*lyn hade tolde, þat eg*r*ely
fouȝten toged*er*es[17]; þe white d*ra*gouñ egrely assailede þe rede, and 16
laide on him so strong'[18] þat he myȝt nouȝt endure, but wiþdrowe
him, & hidde him in the same Cafe, and restede. ¶ And when he
hade awhile restede, he went bifore, and assailede þe rede d*ra*gouñ
angrely, and assailede[19] him so sore þat he myȝt nouȝt aȝeynes him 20
endure, but with-drow him and restede. And after' come aȝeyne
þe white d*ra*gouñ, and strongely fouȝt wiþ þe reede d*ra*goune, and
bote him euel, & him ou*er*-come, þat he fley þens, and nomore come
aȝeyne. 24

[20]Of þe significacions[21] of þo ij dragounes þat were in þe botume of þe ponde, þat fouȝten togederes.[22] Cap*itul*o Sexagesimo t*er*cio.

THe Kyng Vortiger' and his men, þat saw [23]þis bataile,[23] hade[24] 28
grete m*er*vaile, and p*ra*ede M*er*lyn to telle him what it myght
bitoken. "Sire," q*uod* M*er*lyn, "y shal ȝow telle: the rede d*ra*gouñ
bitokeneþ[25] ȝoure-self', & þe white bitokeneþ þe folc of Saxoine, þat
ferst ȝe toke and helde[26] in þis lande, þat now feiȝten aȝeines ȝow, 32

[1] þise D. [2] ȝ*our* O. [3] and D. [4] þe O.
[5] failleȝ D. falleþ O. [6] *om.* D. [7] o*þere* is D. o*þer* is O.
[8] aȝeynes D. aȝens O. [9—9] þat to-geder D. [9] þat togider O.
[10] aȝeynes D. [11] *om.* O. [12—12] cause whi that D. [13] þe O.
[14] failes D. [15] þat DO. [16] done DO. don) O. [17] to-gidere O.
[18] strongelich D. strongly O. [19] helde D. held O. [20] *leaf* 26, *back.*
[21] significaciouñ D. significac*i*on O. [22] togider' O.
[23—23] that batail þai D. þe bataylł O. [24] hadden O.
[25] bitokenes D. [26] helden D.

and ȝow haue[1] dryuen and enchacede.[2] ¶ But þe Britons þat bene of ȝour' lynage ou*er*come[3] ham, and dryuen ha*m* awhile; and siþen,[4] at þe comyng aȝeyne of þe Saxoynes, þai recou*er*ede þis lande, and
4 helde hit for eu*er*more, and dryuen[5] oute þe Britouns, and dede wiþ þis lande al her' wille, & destriede c*r*istendome þrouȝoute þis lande. ¶ Ȝe hade ferst' ioye of here [6]co*m*myng', but[6] now it is t*ur*nede to ȝow grete damage & sorwe; ffor þo ij breþ*er*ne of Constance þat was
8 kyng, þat[7] ȝe lete slee, [8]shul comen[8] bifore a Quinȝime passede wiþ a grete power' fram litel Britaigne, and shul avenge þe deþ of hire broþ*er*[9]: þai shal brenne ȝow ferst wiþ sorwe, & after' þai shul sle a grete p*ar*tie of þe[10] Saxoynes, and shul dryue al þe remane*n*t[11]
12 oute[10] of the lande; and þ*er*fore abide ȝe[12] no longer' to[13] make no castell ne none oþ*er*e werk', but anone gone[14] elleȝ-where, ȝoure lif[15] forto saue. to God' I ȝow bitake, for treuþ I haue [16]I-saide to ȝow[16] of þing' þat shal bifalle. And vnderstonde[17] wel þat Aurilambros
16 shal bene[18] kyng', but he shal bene[18] enpoisenede,[19] and litil while[20] regne."

Of Kyng' Aurilambros; how he pursuede Vortig*er* and Engist, and how þai deiden. Capitulo Sexagesimo Quarto.

20 MErlyn and his moder' dep*ar*tede fro þe kyng', and t*ur*nede [21]aȝeyne to Kermerdyn. and so after' tydynges[22] come to þe Britons þat Aurilambros and Vter' his broþer' were[23] arryuede at Tottenesse wiþ a grete host, and þe Britouns anone assemblede
24 ham, & went to vnderfong Aurilambros and Vter' wiþ grete nobleye, & ladde ham to London, and c*r*onede þ*er*e Aurylambros, and made him kyng', and deden[24] to him homage. and he axede wher' Vortig*er* þat was kyng myght [25]bene founden,[25] for he[7] wolde
28 bene[26] avengede of[27] his broþ*er*eȝ deþ, and after' he wolde werre oppon paynymes: and þai tolde him þat Vortiger' was in Walis; and so þai ladde him[28] þiderward'.[29] ¶ Vortiger' wist wel þat þo ij breþ*er*ne come[30] him to conquere, & fleye þens into a castel þat me[7]

[1] hauen O. [2] enchacen O. [3] ouercomen O. [4] seþ O.
[5] dryve O. [6–6] company *and* D. [7] *om.* D.
[8–8] shul come D. schullen come O. [9] broþ*er* and D. broþ*er* *and* O.
[10] *om.* O. [11] remaunte D. remn*aun*t O. [12] ȝe her' D. ȝe here O.
[13] *MS.* tok. [14] goþ D. goth O. [15] lif al D. lyf al O.
[16–16] ȝow saide D. seyd to ȝow O. [17] vndirstondiþ O. [18] be DO.
[19] poysenede D. [20] tyme DO. [21] *leaf* 27.
[22] tydynge D.. dydyng *sic* O. [23] weryn O. [24] dede DO.
[25–25] be founde DO. [26] be O. [27] on O. [28] hem O.
[29] þider' D. [30] comen O.

callede[1] Generth, þat stode vppon an hye mounteyne, & þ*er*e him
helde. ¶ Aurylambros, and Vter' his broþ*er*, and hire folc, hade
bisegede þe castel[2] longe tyme, for þe castel was stronge and wel
arraiede; so at þe laste þai cast wilde fire, and brent hous and men, 4
and al here arraye, & as miche as was wiþin þe castel, so þat Vortig*er*
w*as* brent amonge alle oþ*er*e; and so deide he w*ith* michel[3] sorwe.
¶ þo was Engist in Kent, and regnede þ*er*e, and herde þis tydynges[4]
and anone fledde, and wolde haue wende[5] into Scotland forto haue 8
hade soco*ur*, but Aurilambros and his men mette wiþ him in the
North contre, and ȝaf him bataile, & Engist and his men ham
defendede whiles[6] þai[7] myght, but he and his folc were desco*m*-
fitede and slayn, and Otta his sone[8] fley[9] vnto[10] ȝork', & Aurilam- 12
bros him folwede egrely. Otta, a litel while aȝeynes him stode, but
afterwarde he put him to[11] his m*er*cy, and Aurilambros vnderfonge
him; & to him and to his men he[8] ȝaf þe contre of Galway in
Scotland, and þ*er*e þai duellede. ¶ The Kyng Aury[12]lambros went 16
þo þrouȝ þe lande, and put awaye þe name of Engistes lande, þat
E[n]gist, after his owen name hade callede bifore, þo lete he[13] it calle[13]
aȝeyne Grete Britaigne, and lete make aȝeyne cherches,[14] houses of
religiouñ, castelles,[15] citees, and burghes and tounes þat þe Saxoynes 20
hade destroiede, and come[16] to Londoñ, and lete make aȝeyne the
Wallis of þe citee, whiche Engist & his folc hade caste adoune.
¶ þe Britons ladde him to þe mount of Anbrian, wher' some tyme
w*as* an house of religiouñ þat þo was destriede þrouȝ paynemys, 24
whe[re]of a knyght þat[8] me callede Anbry, þat some tyme w*as*
found*our* of þe hous, and þ*er*for þe hulle[17] was callede þe mount'
of Bryan,[18] and after w*as* callede Ambresbery, and shal for
eu*er*emore. 28

How Aurilambros dede redresse þe lande of Grete Britaigne, þat w*as* destroiede þrouȝ Saxoynes. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo ¶ Quinto.

THe[19] Kyng Aurilambros lete amende and redresse þe hous of 32
Ambresbery, and þ*er*iñ put monkes, but now þ*er*e beth[20]
nonnes; a litil fram [21]þe place þat me calleþ[21] Salesbury, þ*er*e þat

[1] calleþ DO. [2] castelle ful D. Castel ful O. [3] mych O.
[4] tydynge O. [5] went O. [6] while D. [7] þat y *sic* O.
[8] *om.* D. [9] fly O. [10] into D. [11] into D. [12] *leaf* 27, *back.*
[13–13] calle yt O. [14] cherches and DO. [15] casteH D.
[16] comen DO. [17] mont D. [18] Anbriañ D.
[19] How the D. How þe O. [20] ben DO. [21–21] *om.* D.

þe Britouns were[1] quellede [2]in þat place þat[2] [3]Vortiger' & Engist'[3] shulde haue made a loueday, in whiche place[4] þe*re* were slayne [5]xxx M'[5] kny3tes þrou3 *tre*sou̅n of Engist. ¶ þe kyng þe*ro*f hade
4 grete pitee, & þou3t to make, in mynde of ham, a monument of stone þat my3t endure to[6] þe worldes ende. and of þis þing þai tok'[7] here conseile what þe*ro*f was best to done. ¶ þo spake to þe kyng þe bishop of London̅ þat me called Ternekyn, þat he shulde enquere
8 after' Me*r*lyn, for he couþe best telle how þis þing mi3t bene[8] made. and me*r*lyn after' was sou3t[9] and founde, & come to þe kyng'; and þe kyng tolde him his wille of þe monument þat he wolde haue made. ¶ þo ansuerede Me*r*lyn to þe kyng', [10]and saide: "þe*re* beþ
12 grete stones in Irlande, and longe vppon̅ the hulle of Kyan þat men calleþ [11]þe geant[11] caroH; and if þai were put in þis place as þai beþ[12] þe*re*, here þai wolde endure eu*er*more, in remembraunce of þo knyghtes þat here beþ ente*r*ede." "P*ar* ma foy," q*uod* þe kyng', "as herde stones beth in my londe as beth in Irland."
16 "soþ," q*uod* Merlyn, "but in aH 3*our* lande beth no*n* soche, for Geaunte3 sette ha*m* for grete gode of ha*m*self, ffor atte eu*er*y tyme þat þai were wonded, or in eny maner' hurt, þai wasshen þe stones wiþ hote
20 wate*r*, & þan wosshen[13] ham þe*r*wiþ, and anone þai were hole."

How þe Britons went forto seche þe grete stones in Irland. Cap*itulo* lxvj^to^.

WHen þe[14] Britons hade herde of þis þing', þai went and
24 sworen[15] ifere amonges ham, þat[16] þai wolde gone[17] to seche þe stones; and toke[18] wiþ ham Vter', þe kynges broþ*er*, to bene[19] here cheueteyne, & xv M' men; and Merlyn conseilede ham forto gone[20] into Irlande, and so þai deden.[21] ¶ And when þe Kyng
28 of Irland, þat me callede Guillomer', herde telle þat straungers were arryuede in his lande, he assemblede a grete power', and fou3t a3eyns ham; but he & his folc were descomfitede. the Britons went fourþ[22] til þai come to þe mount of Kylyan, and clymede vnto þe
32 mount; but when þai saw þe stones, and þe maner' how þai stoden,[23] þai hadden[24] grete me*r*vail, and saide bituene ham þat 'noman shulde

[1] *om.* O. [2—2] where D. *om.* O. [3—3] Vortymer wher Engist *and* he O.
[4] tyme O. [5—5] xxx M' lxiij D. xxx M' *and* lxj O.
[6] vn-to O. [7] nome DO. [8] be DO. [9] sent O.
[10] *leaf* 28. [11—11] geaunts DO. [12] ben DO.
[13] wosshe D. wessh O. [14] þis D. [15] *om.* D. swore O.
[16] swore D. [17] go DO. [18] nome DO.
[19] *MS.* bene þe kyng, *with* þe kyng *underlined for erasure.* [20] go O.
[21] dede O. [22] biforn D. before O. [23] stod O. [24] hadde D. had O.

ham remeve, for no strenghe ne engyne, so huge þai weren,[1] and so long.' But M*er*lyn, þrouȝ his crafte and queyntise, remevede ham, and brouȝt ham into hire shippis, and come aȝeyn into þis lande. and M*er*lyn sette þe stones [2]þ*er*e þat[3] þe Kyng wolde haue ham, 4 and sette ham in þe same man*er* as[4] þai stoden in Irland. and when þe kyng saw þat it was made, he þankede M*er*lyn, and rychely him rewardede at his owen wille; & þat place he lete calle[3] Stonhynges[5] for eu*er*more. 8

How Passent, þat was Vortig*er*ȝ sonne, & þe Kyng[3] Guillomer, come into þis land; and how a t*ra*itoure þat me callede Coppa, enpoisenede[6] þe Kyng Aurilambros. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo Septi*m*o. 12

ANd men shul vnderstonde þat Passent, þat was Vortigers sone, leuede in þe same tyme, and come into þis lande wiþ a grete power, and arryuede in þe Northcontre, & wolde bene[7] avengede of his fadereȝ deþ Vortig*er*, and stronglich[8] trust vppon[9] þe co*m*- 16 pany þat he hade brouȝt wiþ him oute of þe lande of Germayne, and hade co*n*querede al þe Northcontre vnto ȝork. ¶ And when Kyng Aurilambros herde þis, he asse*m*blede a grete power of Britons, and went forto feiȝt wiþ him; and Passent[10] and his peple 20 were descomfitede. But Passent ascapede þens, wiþ some of his folc, and fledde þennes into Irland, and come to[11] Kyng Guillomer, and p*ra*ede him of helpe and socoure. ¶ The kyng g*ra*ntede him wiþ gode wil, and saide: "I wolde helpe ȝow oppoñ þat[12] couenaunt, þat 24 I my-self moste goñ[13] wiþ ȝow wiþ al my power into Britaigne, and I wolde me avenge vppoñ þe Britons,[14] [15]for þai comen[16] into my londe.[17] and[15] token[18] þe stones wiþ strengþ þat [19]is callede Geant[19] Caroil." þe Kyng Guillomere lete ordeyne his shippis, and went to 28 þe see wiþ xv M[t] men, and arryuede in Walis, and bigonne to robbe and miche sorwe to done.[20] hit bifelle so þat Kyng Aurilambros lay sike at Wynchestre, and myght nouȝt helpe [21]himself, so þat he sent in his name Vter his broþ*er*e, with a grete power, forto help 32 Walys; and þiderwarde [22]he went as miche as he[22] myȝt. ¶ þe

[1] wer D. were O. [2] *leaf* 28, *back*. [3] *om*. D. [4] þat DO.
[5] Stonehenge D. Stonehenge O. [6] poysound O. [7] be O.
[8] strongely D. strongly O. [9] of D. [10] he DO. [11] to þe O.
[12] þe O. [13] go DO. [14] britouns the raþ*er*e D.
[15—15] raþ*er* þan þei in-to my land comen *and* O. [16] come D.
[17] lorde *sic* D. [18] toke D.
[19—19] was callede Geauntȝ D. called is Geau*n*tȝ O. [20] do O.
[21] *leaf* 29. [22—22] þai went as fast as þai D.

Kyng of Irland, and Passent,[1] herde telle þat Aurylambros was sik; and to ham[2] come a sarasine þat me clepede[3] Coppa, and saide: "sire3,[4] duelle 3e here al[5] in pees wiþ 3oure hoste, and y[5] bihote
4 3ow, þrou3 my queyntise, þat I shal slee þe Kyng Aurylambros þat liþ sike." "If 3e do,[6]" q*uod* Passent, "y shal 3ow richely auaunce." ¶ This t*rai*toure Coppa put oppoñ him an habite of religiouñ, and lete shaue him a brode c*r*one, and come to þe
8 kynges court, and saide þat he w*a*s a gode ffisician, and saide þat he wolde hele þe kyng of his malady. ¶ Tho saide þe t*rai*tou*r* Coppa [7]vnto þe kyng[7]: "sire, beþ of gode co*m*fort, for y shal 3eue 3ow soche a medecyne þat 3e shulle swete anone ry3t, and softe[8] slepe,
12 and haue gode reste." & þe t*rai*tou*r* 3af him soche a poysoun þat he slepte[9] anone ryght, and deide in his slepyng. and þe t*rai*toure saide þat[10] he wolde gone[11] oute into þe felde til þe kyng were awakede; and so scapede he away, for noman [12]to him hade[12]
16 suspesioñ, for enchesoun of his habit þat he was in cloþede, and also for his brode c*r*one. ¶ But when þe kynges meny wist þat he was dede, þai bicome[13] wonder sory, and fast sou3t þe t*rai*tou*r*; but[14] þai mi3t nou3t hem fynde, for Coppa t*ur*nede a3eyne to þe
20 host fro whens that[10] he come.

When Aurilambros was dede, a sterr in[15] the morne[16] was seyne with a clere light; & at the bou3te of þe beeme w*a*s [17]seye þe heuede of an horrible[17] Dragouñ. ¶ Capitulo
24 **¶ Sexagesimo ¶ Octauo.**

WHen the Kyng Aurilambros w*a*s þus dede & enpysenede [18]at Wynchestre, a morn,[19] after þat he was dede, aboute þe tyme of prime, þ*er*e was seyn a sterr grete and clere; and þe beeme
28 of þe[20] sterr was bright*er* þan þe sone; and at þe bou3t of þe beeme apperede a dragounes heuede,[21] and oute of his mouþ [22]comen ij huge li3te3 þat were as li3t[23] as[22] eny fire brynnyng. ¶ And þat o[24] beeme went[25] towarde Fraunce, and strau3t ou*er*e þe see þiderward; and
32 out of þat beem comen[26] vij beemes ful clere and longe, as it were þe li3t of fire. ¶ þis sterre was seyne of meny man[27]; but none of

[1] Passent had O. [2] hi*m* D. hym O. [3] callede D. Called O.
[4] sir D. sire q*uod* he O. [5] *om.* O. [6] done O. [7—7] *om.* D.
[8] softly D. [9] slepe D. [10] *om.* D. [11] go DO.
[12—12] had to hym O. [13] bicomen D. bycome*n* O. [14] for D.
[15] on D. [16] morwe D. [17—17] seyn þe hed of a O. [18] *leaf* 29, *back.*
[19] a morowe O. [20] that D. þ*at* O. [21] heed O.
[22—22] apperede ij li3tes huge *and* as bright as D. [23] bright O.
[24] on D. [25] it helde D. tilde O. [26] come D. [27] a man DO.

ham wist what it bitokenede. ¶ Vter, þat was þe kyng*us* broþ*er*, þat was in Walys wiþ his hoste of Britouns, saw þat sterre, and þe grete liȝt þat it[1] ȝaf. he wondrede þ*er*on g*r*etly, what it myȝt bitoken; he[2] lete calle Merlyn, & p*r*aiede him [3]forto telle[3] what it 4 myȝt bitokene.

Of þe bitokenyng of þat[4] sterr. ¶ Capitulo Sexagesimo ix°.

MErlyn saw þat sterre, and bihelde hit[5] longe tyme, and siþenes[6] he quok and wepte tenderly; & saide: "allas, 8 allas! þat so noble[7] kyng and worþi is dede. and I do ȝow to vnderstonde þat Aurilambros, ȝ*our* broþ*er*, is enpoysenede, and þat I se wel in þis sterre. and ȝoure-self bitokeneþ bi þe heuede[8] of þe d*ra*gouñ þat is[9] seyne at þe bouȝt of þe beeme: þat is ȝoureself, þat 12 shal bene[10] kyng, and regne. and by þe beem þat stode[11] towarde þe Est, is vnderstonde þat ȝe shal geten[12] a sone þat shal conquere al Fraunce and alle þe landes þat [13]beþ longeyng[13] to þe Kyng[14] of F*ra*unce, þat shal bene[15] a worþier Kyng, and [16]more of[16] honoure 16 þan euer was eny of his ancestres. ¶ And by þe beem þat stracchet[17] towarde Irland, is bitokenede [18]þat ȝe shul bigete[19] a douȝt*er* þat shal be quene of Irland; and þe vij beemes bitokenes[20] þat ȝe[21] shul haue vij sones; and eu*er*yche[22] of ham shal [23]bene kyng, 20 and[23] regne wiþ michel[24] honououre. and abide ȝe no longer here, but go[25] and ȝif[26] batail to ȝoure enemys, and feiȝt[27] wiþ ham boldely, for ȝe shul ou*er*come ham and haue þe victorie." Vter þankede hertly Merlyn, and tok[28] his men, and went towarde his 24 enemys; and þai fouȝten togeder mortaily; and so [29]þai descomfitede[29] his enemys alle, & destroiede ha*m*[30]; & him-self quellede Passent, þat was Vortig*er*ȝ sone; and his Britons quellede Guillomer, þat w*a*s Kyng of Irland, and alle his men. and Vt*er* 28 anone after þat bataile tok his way toward Wynchestre fort[o] done[31] entier Aurila*m*bros kyng, þat was his broþ*er*; but þo was þe[32] body born[33] to Stonhynge wiþ michel[34] honoure, þat he hade

[1] he O. [2] and D. [3—3] *om.* D. [4] þe O. [5] hi*m* D. hym O.
[6] Netheles O. [7] noble a D. nobly a O. [8] hede D. hed O.
[9] is to O. [10] be DO. [11] stondeth D. [12] gete D. be-gete O.
[13—13] longeþ D. ben longynge O. [14] croune D. crovne O.
[15] be DO. [16—16] of more DO. [17] stracches D. strecche þ O.
[18] *leaf* 30. [19] gete D. [20] bitokenes D. betokeneth O. *om.* R.
[21] sche O. [22] eche O.
[23—23] be a kyng and shullen D. be kyng *and* schul O. [24] mych O.
[25] goþ DO. [26] ȝeueth O. [27] fighteth O. [28] nome DO.
[29—29] he descomfite D. he descomfited O. [30] *om.* D. hym O.
[31] do O. [32] his D. [33] bore O. [34] mych O.

[1]done made[1] in remembrance of þe Britons þat þe*re* were slayn
þrouȝ t*re*soune of Engist, þat same day þat þai shulde haue bene
accordede; & in the same place[2] þai ente*re*de Aurilambros, þe
4 secunde ȝere of his regne, wiþ al þe worship þat myght [3]bene
longyng[3] to soche a kyng', of whos soule God haue mercy!

Of Vter Pend*ra*gouñ; and wherfore he was callede so, after' [4]ȝe shal[4] here; &[5] he w*a*s ou*er*take for þe grete loue of Igerne,
8 **þat w*a*s þe [6]Erles wif' of Cornwaile.[6] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo.**

After þe deth of Aurylambros, Vter' his broþ*er* w*a*s c*r*onede,
and regnede wel and worþily; and in rememb*ra*unce of þe
12 d*ra*gons[7] þat he was likenede to, he lete make ij d*ra*gounes þrouȝ
conseile of his Britouns: þat one to [8]bene borne[8] bifore[9] him
when he went into bataile, & þat oþ*er*e to abide at' [10]Wynchestre
in the bisshoppes cherche; And for þat enchesouñ he was callede
16 eu*er*more after', Vter' Pendragouñ. ¶ And Octa, þat was Engistes
sone, co*m*mendet litil Vter' þat w*a*s made newe kyng', and aȝeynes
him biganne forto[11] meve wer', and ordeynede a grete co*m*pany of
his frendes & of his kynne, and of' Ossa his broþ*er*, and hade take[12]
20 al þe lande fro Humber' vnto ȝork; [13]but þo of ȝork[13] helde
strongely[14] agayne ham, and nolde soffre ha*m* come into þe toune,
neyþ*er* to ȝelde þe citee to ham; and he bisegede þe toune anone ryȝt,
and ȝaf þ*er*to a stronge assaut,[15] but tho[16] of þe citee ham keped' wel
24 and strongely. ¶ And when Vt*er* herde þ*er*of', he come þider' wiþ a
stronge[17] power' forto helpe and rescue þe toune, and put away þe
sege, & ȝaf a st*r*onge bataile; and Octa & his co*m*pany ham
defendede as wel as þai myȝt, but at þe[2] last þai were descomfitede,
28 and þe moste p*ar*t' of ham quellede; and Octa & Ossa were taken,[18]
and put into prisouñ at London. ¶ And Vter' him-self duellede
awhile at ȝork', and after', he went to Londoñ. and at[19] Est*er* after'[20]
sewyng', he wolde bere c*r*one, and helde[21] a solempne feste, and
32 [22]lete sompne alle þe[23] Erles and barons, þat þai shulde come to þat

[1–1] done make D. do made O. [2] *om.* O.
[3–3] bilonge D. be-longen O. [4–4] *MS.* me shal; men may D.
[5] and how D. [6–6] Erle of Cornewalys wyf O. [7] dragoun DO.
[8–8] be borne D. be bore O. [9] *MS.* bifore bifore; tofore O.
[10] *leaf* 30, *back.* [11] to DO. [12] taken D. [13–13] *supplied from* D.
[14] strong D. [15] saut D. [16] þai D. þey O.
[17] grete D. gret O. [18] take O. [19] at the D. at þe O.
[20] *om.* D. [21] holde D. hold O. [22–22] *om.* O. [23] his D.

feste; and[22] alle þai[1] comen at[2] þe kynges co*m*mandement, [3]as þai were co*m*mandede.[3] ¶ The feste was richely holden,[4] and alle worþely sette to þe[5] mette after þat þai were[6] of state,[7] so þat [8]þe Erl[8] of Cornewaile & Igerne his wif setten alþer next þe kyng. 4
and þe kyng saw þe fairenesse of þat lady þat she hade, and was rauisshede for here beaute; and after,[9] he made towarde here nyce[10] semblant in lokyng and leiȝhyng. so at þe laste þe Erl *per*seuede þe p*r*iue [11]lokyng and Laughing, and þe loue bituene 8
ham, and arose vp[5] fram þe table al in wraþ, and tok his wif, and callede to him his knyȝtes, and went þens al in wraþ, wiþouten[12] takyng Leue of þe Kyng. þe kyng anone sent after him þat he shulde come aȝeyne, & go nouȝt þens in despite of him; and þe 12
Erl wolde nouȝt come aȝeyne in no man*er* wise. ¶ Wherfor þe kyng was ful wroþ, & in wraþ him defiede as his dedelich[13] enemy. and þe Erl went þens into Cornewaile wiþ his wif, into þe castel of TyntageH. and þe kyng lete ordeyne a grete host, & come into 16
Cornewaile forto destroie þe erl, if he myȝt; but he hade put him in[14] soche a castel þat was stronge and wel arraiede, of TyntageH, and wolde nouȝt ȝelde him to[15] the Kyng. ¶ The kyng anone bisegede þe castel, & þ*er*e duellede xv daies, þat neuer myȝt spede, 20
and eu*er* þouȝt so miche of[16] Igerne, and oppoñ her laide so miche loue, þat he nyst what to done. ¶ So at þe[5] laste he callede to him a knyȝt þat me[17] callede Vlfyne, þ*a*t was p*r*iue wiþ him, and tolde him al hes conseile, and axede of him what was best to done. 24
¶ "Sire," q*uod* he, "doþ sende after Merlyn, for he can telle ȝow þe best consel of eny man leuyng." Merlyn anone was sent after, and come to þe kyng, and þe kyng tolde him al his wille. "Sire," [18]q*uod* Merlyn,[18] "I shal do so miche þrouȝ crafte þat I can, þat I 28
shal make ȝow come þis nyȝt into þe castel of TyntageH, & shal haue al ȝoure wille of þat Lady."

How Vter bigate on[19] Igerne, þat was þe Erleȝ wif of[20] Cornewaile, Arthure þe kyng. ¶ Ca*pitulo* Septuagesimo p*r*imo. 32

[1] þo þat hade wyfes shulde bryng ha*m* also to þat fest & alle D. þo þ*a*t hade wyues schuld bryng hem also to þ*a*t fest & alle O.
[2] to O. [3—3] *om.* D. [4] hold O. [5] *om.* O. [6] werne D.
[7] astat O. [8—8] þe Gorlois D. Gorloys O.
[9] ofte D. oft O. [10] *MS.* nyci. [11] *leaf* 31.
[12] withoute DO. [13] dedely D. dedly O. [14] into D.
[15] vnto D. [16] vppon D. vpon O. [17] he D.
[18—18] *MS. has* q*uod* Merlyn q*uod*, *with* 2*nd* q*uod underlined for erasure.*
[19] in D. [20] *om.* D.

MErlyn,[1] þrouȝ crafte þat he couþe,[2] chaungede þe kyng*us* [3]figure into þe likenesse of Vlfyne his chaumberleyn, and[4] to þe figure of Iordan þat was þe erleȝ chaumberleyn, so þat eche
4 of ham was t*ra*nsfigurede into[5] o*þer*e likenesse. and when M*er*lyn hade so done,[6] he saide to þe kyng: [7]"sire, now may[7] ȝe gone[8] sodeynely to þe castel of Tyntagel, and axen[9] entre *þer*e, and haue ȝoure wille." the kyng tok p*r*iuelich,[10] al þe host to gou*er*ne &[11] lede,
8 to a knyȝt þat he miche louede, and toke[12] his way toward þe castel; and wiþ him went[13] Vlfyne and M*er*lyn. and whe*n* [14]þat he[14] come þider, þe Porter wende [15]þat it[15] hade bene[16] his owen lorde. and when tyme come forto gone[17] to bedde, the kyng went to bedde
12 wiþ[18] Igerne, þe Erleȝ wif, and dede wiþ her al his wille, and þo bigate on[19] here a sone þat me clepede[20] Arthure. ¶ Oppoñ þe morwe þe noble myȝty kyng toke[21] his leue of þe lady, and went aȝeyn to his hoste. and þe same nyȝt þ*at* þe kyng lay by Igerne in
16 bedde ifere wiþ þe erleȝ wif, þe kynges men ȝaf a strong assaute to þe castel. and þe Erl and his men manliche[22] ham defendede; but at þe[23] laste hit bifelle so þat at þat assaut þe erl him-self[23] w*as* slayn, and þe castel w*as*[13] taken. and þe kyng anone t*ur*nede aȝeyne
20 to TyntageH, and spousede Igerne wiþ michel[24] honoure, & made hir Quene. & sone after, tyme come þat she shulde bene[25] delyu*er*ede, and bare[26] a sone þat [27]w*as* callede[27] Arthure. and after [28]he gate[28] on here a douȝt*er* þat me clepede[29] Amya; and[30]
24 when she come to age, [31]she w*as* nobly[31] mariede to a noble Barouñ þat me callede Aloth, þat was lorde of Leones.

¶ When Vter longe tyme hade regnede, þ*er*e come vppoñ him a grete sikenesse, as it were a sorwe. & in þe mene [32]tyme þo þat
28 haden[33] to kepe Octa, þat was Engistes sone, and Ossa his bro*þer*, þat þo were in prisouñ, men lete ham gone[34] for g*r*ete ȝiftes þat þai ham ȝaf, and went [35]wiþ ham.[35] ¶ And when þo ij bre*þer*ne were ascaped, and comen[36] aȝeyne into hier owen contre, þai ordeynede
32 ham a g*r*ete host & a[37] g*r*ete power, & bigon to werre eftesones vppoñ þe kyng.

[1] Helyn *sic* D. [2] couþe he D. coude O. [3] *leaf* 31, *back*.
[4] i*n* O. [5] to DO. [6] y-do O.
[7—7] Sir q*uod* he now mowe D. Sir q*uod* he now mow O. [8] go O.
[9] axe O. [10] p*r*iuyly O. [11] & to O. [12] nome DO. [13] *om.* DO.
[14—14] þai D. þey O. [15—15] þat he D. he O. [16] be O. [17] go DO.
[18] to D. [19] vpon O. [20] callede D. called O. [21] nome DO.
[22] manly DO. [23] *om.* O. [24] mych O. [25] be DO.
[26] bare a childe D. bare a child O. [27—27] callede was D. Called was O.
[28—28] begate O. [29] Called O. [30] & sche O. [31—31] nobly was O.
[32] *leaf* 32. [33] hadde D. had O. [34] go DO. [35—35] hem with O.
[36] come O. [37] *om.* D.

How Kyng Vter chees[1] Aloth to kepe þe lande of Britaigne whiles þat he was sik.[2] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo ¶ Secundo.

AND for-asmiche as Kyng Vter was sik, and myȝt nouȝt helpe him-self, [3]he ordeynede Aloth, þe sone of Elyne,[3] þat þo was to bene[4] wardeyne and chyueteyne of al his folc; & he anone, and his Britons, assemblede a grete host, & ȝaf bataile to Octa and to his folc; but Octa at þe laste was descomfitede.[5] ¶ Hit bifelle þus afterwarde, [6]þat þise Britons[6] haden[7] indignaciouñ[8] [9]at þis[9] Aloth, & wolde nouȝt to him bene[10] entendant; wherfore þe kyng was annoyede wonder sore, and lete put him in a liter in þe hoste amonges[11] his folc; and þai ladde him to Veroleyne, þat þo was a faire citee, þere þat seynt Albone was martrede; and after was þat citee destroiede þrouȝ paynemys & þrouȝ werre. and þider went[12] [13]Ossa and Octa[13] & her peple, & entrede into þe toune, and lete [14]make faste[14] þe ȝates, & þere þai[15] helde ham. & þe kyng come, and ham bisegede, & made a stronge assaut; but þo þat were wiþin, manliche ham defended. ¶ The kyng [16]lete ordeyne[16] his gunnes & his engynes forto breke þe wallys; & þe wallis were so stronge þat noþing myȝt ham misdo. ¶ Octa & his peple hade grete despite þat a kyng liggyng in a liter [17] [18]ham hade[18] bisegede, & þai token[19] conseil amonges ham, forto stande vp in þe morwe, & come oute, and ȝeue bataile to þe kyng; and so þai deden.[20] and in þat bataile were boþe Octa & Ossa slayne; & al þe oþere þat ascapede alif, fledde þens[21] into Scotland, and made[22] Colegryne her cheueteyne. & þe Saxoynes þat were alif, and[23] ascapede fro þe bataile, brouȝt[24] aȝeyne a[25] grete strengþ, & amonges ham[26] saiden þat, if the[15] Kyng Vter were dede, þai shulde wel conquere þe lande; and amonges ham þai pouȝt[27] enpoysone þe kyng, and ordeynede men forto done[28] þis dede, & ȝaf ham of ȝiftes grete plente, þis þing to done. & þai ordeynede ham þiderward þere þat þe kyng was

[1] chose D.
[2] syke for-asmiche as he myȝt nouȝt trauaile for his sikenesse D. sike for-as-mych as he myght not for siknes O.
[3—3] he ordeynede Aloth sone of Elyne D. he ordeyned Aloth sone of Eleyne O. þe sone of Elyne R.
[4] be O. [5] descomfite D. [6—6] *om.* D. [7] had DO.
[8] dedignac*ion* *sic* O. [9—9] of DO. [10] be O. [11] among O.
[12] þai hade seynt D. þey had sent O. [13—13] Octa and Ossa O.
[14—14] fast make O. [15] *om.* D. [16—16] ordeigned O.
[17] *leaf* 32, *back.* [18—18] hade ham D. had hem O. [19] took O.
[20] ded O. [21] *om.* DO. [22] maden DO. [23] that D.
[24] broghten O. [25] *om.* O. [26] ham þai D. hem þey O.
[27] þoughten O. [28] do O.

duellyng', & cloþede ham in pore wede, þe bettre[1] forto spede hire luþ*er* p*ur*pos; but noþelesse, for al her' falsenesse & queyntise, þai myȝt neu*er* come ney þe kyng. But[2] at þe laste þai aspiede þat
4 þe kyng drank none oþ*er*e licoure but [3]oneliche wat*er*[3] of a clere welle þat was neyȝ bisides; and þise false t*rai*toures[4] vppoñ a day p*r*iueliche[5] went to þat wel, and put þ*er*in poisouñ, so þat al þe wat*er* was enpoysenede. And anone after' as þe Kyng hade dronke
8 of þat water', he biganne to swelle, & sone after'[6] deide; & alse meny as drank'[7] of þat wat*er* deide[8] also. And anone as þis falsenesse was aspiede, folc of þe toune lete stoppe þe welle for eu*er*more. ¶ When [9]þe Kyng[9] was dede, his[10] folc bare him to
12 Stonehynge wiþ grete solempnite of bisshop̄p̄ȝ and barons þat were þ*er*e, þat buriede him bisides Aurilambros his broþ*er*; and after t*ur*nede aȝeyne þo eu*er*ycheon̄, & lete sende after' Arthure his sone; and þai made him Kyng of þe lande wiþ [11]michel[12] reu*er*ence, aft*er*
16 his faderes deþ, þe xvij ȝere of his regne.

How Arthure, þat was þe sone of Vter', was cronede after his faderes deþ; & how he drof Colegryn & þe Saxoynes, and Chelduc[13] of [14]Almayne, out of[14] þis lande. Capitulo
20 **lxxiij°.**

WHen Arthure was made kyng' of þe lande, he was[15] but ȝonge, of xv ȝere age, but he was faire, and bolde, & douȝti of body, & to meke folc he was gode & curteise, & to prout
24 folc he was stout & sterne; & also he was [16]gentil and curteise,[16] and large of spendyng', & [17]made him[17] wel biloued[18] of al men þ*er*e þat[18] it was nede. And when he biganne to regne, he swore þat Saxones neu*er*[19] shulde haue pees ne reste til þat[20] he hade drif[21]
28 ham out of his[22] lande. & he lete assemble a grete host, & fauȝt wiþ Colegrin, þat,[20] after' tyme þat Octa was dede, þe Saxones mayntenede. And þis Colegryne was descomfitede, & fley[23] to ȝork', & tok þe tone, & þ*er*e helde him. And þe Kyng bisegede þe tone;
32 but he miȝt noþing[24] spede, for[19] þe toune was so strong, & þai wiþin

[1] bett*er* al DO. [2] But so DO. [3—3] wat*er* onlych D. only water O.
[4] t*rai*tous *sic* D. [5] pryuyly O. [6] aft*er* he DO.
[7] dronken D. drunken O. [8] deiden D. diden O.
[9—9] kyng Vter D. [10] *om.* O. [11] *leaf* 33. [12] mych O.
[13] Sheldruk kyng' D. cheldrik out O. [14—14] *om.* O. [15] nas O.
[16—16] curteise & gentile D.
[17—17] made him D. made hym O. made R.
[18—18] amonges al men þ*er*e þat D. among al men þ*at* þ*er* O.
[19] *om.* D. [20] *om.* O. [21] dryuen D. dryve O. [22] þis O.
[23] come D. fly O. [24] nouȝt D.

kepte þe toune wel & horpedly. ¶ And in þe mene tyme Colegryne lete þe toune to Bladulf, & fley[1] him-self to Cheldrik, þat was Kyng of Almaigne, forto haue of him soco*ur*. and þe Kyng assemblede a grete power, and come & arryuede in Scotland wiþ 4 v. C̄. shippis. & whe*n* Arthure wist of þis tydyng*us*,[2] þat he hade nouȝt power ne[3] strengþ ynow to feiȝt aȝeyne[4] Sheldrik, he lete bene[5] þe sege, and went to Londoñ, and sent anone his let*t*res to þe Kyng of Litil Britaigne, þat me[6] callede[7] Hoel, his [8]neveu, his 8 sustres[8] sone, þat he shulde come to him wiþ [9]al þe power þat he myȝt. And he assemblede a grete hoste, & arryuede at South-*a*mptoñ. ¶ And when Kyng Ar[t]hure hit wiste, he w*a*s glade ynow, & went aȝeynes ham,[10] & ham resceyuede wiþ michel[11] hono*ur*, 12 so þat þo ij hostes ham assemblede, and toke[12] her way euen to Nichole, þ*at*[13] Cheldrik hade bisegede but nouȝt ȝitte taken. And þai comen[14] vppon Cheldrik & vppoñ[15] his peple or þai hit wiste, þ*ere*[7] þat þai werre,[16] and ham egrely assailede. Þe Kyng Cheldrik 16 and his meny defendede ham manly by here power, but Kyng Arthure and his men[17] quellede so meny Saxones, þat neu*er* er[18] was seyne soche a slauȝ*ter*; and[19] his men þat were lefte alif, fledden away, and Arthure ham pursuede, and drof ham into a 20 wode þat þai miȝt no ferþ*er* passe. ¶ Cheldrik and his men saw wel þat þai were brouȝt into miche disesse, & ham ȝolden to Arthure in þis maner wise, þat he shulde take here horse and Here armure, & al þat þai hadde, þat þai most oneliche gone on fote to here 24 shippes, and so þai wolde gone[20] into here owen lande, & neuer come aȝeyne into þis lande. And vppon assuraunce of þis[7] þing, þai ȝeuen[21] hi*m* gode hostages; and Arthure, þrouȝ conseile of his men, g*ra*untede þis þing, and resceyuede þe hostages. & oppoñ þis, 28 þise oþ*er* went vnto[22] here shippes: and when þai werne[23] in þe hye see, hir wille chaungede, as þe deuel it wolde, & þai reto*ur*nede hire nauye, & come aȝeyne into þis land, & arryuede at Tottenesse, & went out of here shippis, & toke[24] þe lande, & clene robbede hit, 32 & michel[25] peple slouȝ, & token [26]al þe Armure þat þai myȝt fynde; & so þai wenten[27] forthe [28]til þai comen[28] to Bathe; but þe men of

[1] fly O. [2] tidyng D. tydynge O. [3] and D. [4] aȝens O.
[5] be DO. [6] he D. [7] *om.* O. [8—8] nevews souster O.
[9] *leaf* 33, *back.* [10] hym O. [11] mych O. [12] token O.
[13] *MS. has* þ*a*t þat. [14] come D. [15] on D. [16] were þere O.
[17] meny D. [18] tofore D.
[19] & sheldrik & D. And Cheldrik & O. [20] go D. [21] ȝaf D.
[22] to DO. [23] were DO. [24] nome DO. [25] mych O.
[26] *leaf* 34. [27] went DO. [28—28] *om.* D. tyl þey come O.

þe toune shitten faste here ȝates, and wolde nouȝt suffren[1] ham come þ*er* in[2] þe toune, and þai defendede ham wel and horpedly aȝeynȝ ham.

4 [3]**How Arthure ȝaf bataile to þe Saxones when þai comen[4] aȝeyne, and bisegede þe toune of Baþe, & [5]ha*m* ou*er*come.[5] ¶ Ca*pitulo* lxxiiij^to^.[3]**

WHen Arthure herde þis tydynges,[6] he lete honge anone þe
8 hostages, & lefte Hoel of Britaigne, his nevew, forto kepe þe Marche toward Scotland wiþ half his peple, and him-self went[7] helpe rescue þe toune of Bathe. And when he come þider, he ȝaf a strong batail to Cheldrik, and quelde almost al þe peple þat he
12 hade; for no man myȝt [8]him wiþstande,[8] ne endure vnder þe st*r*oke of his swerde; and þ*er*e boþe were slayn, Colegr*i*n and Bladud his broþ*er*. ¶ And Cheldrik fledde þens, and wolde haue gone to his shippis; but when[9] Arthure hit wist, he tok xv[10] M[1] knyȝtes to
16 Cador, þat was erl of Cornewaile, forto lette and stoppe his co*m*myng; and Arthure him-self went aȝeyne towarde þe Marche of Scotland, ffor messagers tolde him þat þe[11] Scottes hade bisegede Hoel of Britaign þ*er*e þat he lay sike; and þ*er*fore he hastede
20 þiderward; & Cador pursuede after Cheldrik, & toke him or þat he myȝt[11] come to his[12] shippis, & quellede Cheldrik & his peple. And when Cador hade done þis viage, he hastede him [13]aȝeyne, as faste as[13] he myȝt, towardes Arthure, and founde him in Scotland
24 þ*er*e þat he hade res[14]cuede Hoel of Britaigne. But þe Scottes were al feire wiþin Mounref, and þ*er*e þai helde ham awhile; but Arthure ham pursuede, and þai fledde þens fourþ into Lymoigne, þat were in þat contre lx Iles, & grete plente of briddes, & grete
28 plente of Egles, þat were wont to c*r*ie and feiȝten[15] to-gederes, and make grete noise when folc come[16] to robbe þat lande, and weren as miche as þai miȝt; and so þai deden, for þe Scottes were so grete rauenou*rs* þat þai token al þat þai myȝt fynde in þe lande of
32 Lymoigne wiþ-outen[17] eny sparyng; and þ*er*wiþ þai chargede aȝeyne þe folc, into Scotland forto wende.[18]

[1] suffre DO. [2] with-in D. with-Inne O. [3—3] *om.* O.
[4] come D. [5—5] ou*er*come ha*m* D. [6] tydyng DO. [7] went to O.
[8—8] wi*th* hym stande O. [9] when kyng D. [10] x DO.
[11] *om.* D. [12] here O. [13—13] al þat D. [14] *leaf* 34, *back.*
[15] fight O. [16] comen D. [17] wi*th*oute O.
[18] *MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl.* 490 (*D*) *has several pages missing here, and does not continue until f.* 39 *of the Rawlinson MS., p.* 78 *below.*

How Kyng Arthure axede of Merlyn þe aventures of vj the laste kynges þat weren to regne in Engeland, and how þe lande shulde ende. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo ¶ Quinto.

"SIre," quod Merlyn, "in þe ȝere of Incarnaciouñ of [1]oure Lorde[1] 4
Ihesu Crist M‡ CC xv þere[2] shal come a lambe oute of
Wynchestre þat shal haue a white tong and trew lippis, and he shal
haue wryten in his hert 'Holynesse.' ¶ This lambe shal make
meny Goddes house,[3] and he shal haue pees þe most parte of his 8
lif, & he shal make one[2] of þe faireste places of þe worlde þat in
his tyme shal nouȝt fully ben[4] made an ende. And in þe ende of
his lif, a wolf of a straunge lande shal do him grete harme[5]; but at
þe ende þe lambe shal be maistre, þrouȝ helpe of a rede Fox þat shal 12
come out of þe Northwest, and him shal ouercome; and þe wolfe
shal dye [in] water; and after þat tyme þe lambe shal leue no
while þat he ne shal [6]dye. ¶ His sede [7]þan shal bene[7] in strange
lande, and þe lande shal bene[4] wiþout a gouernoure a litil tyme. 16

"AND after him[8] shal come a dragouñ mellede wiþ mercy and
ek[9] wodenesse, þat shal haue a berde as a goot, þat shal
ȝeue in Engeland shadewe, and shal kepe the lande from[10] colde
and hete; and his o foote shal be sette in Wik, and þat oþere in 20
Londoñ; and he shal vnbrace[11] iij habitacions,[12] and he shal oppen
his mouþ toward Walys, and þe tremblyng of þe hidure of his
mouþe, his heres shal strecche towarde meny habitaciouns and
contres, and his breþ shal bene[4] ful suete in straunge landes[13]; & 24
in his tyme shal ryuers renne wiþ bloode and wiþ brayne, & he
shal make in[14] places of his lande, walles, þat shal done[15] miche
harme to[16] his seede after his tyme.

¶ Than shal þere come a peple out of þe Northwest duryng his 28
regne, þat shal bene[4] lade þrouȝ an[17] wickede hare, þat þe dragouñ
shal done[2] crone Kyng, þat afterwarde shal flee ouer þe see wiþout
comyng aȝeyne, for drede of þe dragouñ. ¶ In[18] þat tyme þe sonne
shal bene[4] also rede as blode, as meny[2] men shul see[2] þrouȝ al þe 32
worlde: þat shal bitoken grete pestilence, and deþ of folc þrouȝ
dent of swerde; and þis[19] peple shal bene[4] faderles til þe tyme þat
þe dragon shal dye þrouȝ an hare þat shal meve[20] aȝeynes him werr

[1]—[1] *om.* O. [2] *om.* O. [3] houses O. [4] be O.
[5] harm þurgh O. [6] *leaf* 35. [7]—[7] schal be O.
[8] his tyme O. [9] eek with O. [10] fro O. [11] vnbracen O.
[12] habitacions & cuntres O. [13] londe O. [14] in al O. [15] do O
[16] vn-to O. [17] a O. [18] And in O. [19] þat O. [20] neuere O

in þe ende of his lif', þat shal nouȝt [1]bene fulliche[1] endede in his tyme. ¶ This d*ra*gouñ shal [2]bene holden[2] in his tyme þe best body of al þe worlde; & he shal dye bisides þe Marche[3] of a
4 straunge lande; and þe lande shalle [4]duelle fade[r]lesse, wiþouten[5] a gode gou*er*noure; and me shal wepe for his deþ fram þe Ile of Shepe vnto þe hauen of Marciħ; wherfore, 'allas' shal bene[6] þe co*m*mune songe of faderles folc, þat shal ou*er*leuen in his land
8 destroiede.

"ANd after' þis d*ra*gone shal come a gote oute of a[7] Kar', þat shal haue hornes &[8] berde of siluer'; and þ*er*e shal come out of his noseþrelles[9] a drop þat shal bitoken hunger' & sorw, & grete
12 deþ of þe peple; and miche of his lande in þe bigynnyng' of his regne shal be wastede. ¶ This goot shal go[10] ouer' into F*ra*unce, & shal oppoñ[11] þe floure of lif and of deþ. In his tyme þ*er*e shal arise an Egle in Cornewaile þat shal haue feþ*er*es of golde, þat' of
16 pride shal [12]bene wiþouten[12] pere of alle þe lande; and he shal despise lordes of blode; and after', he shal flee shamefully by a Bere at Gauersiche; and after' shal bene[6] made brigges of men oppoñ þe costes of þe see; and stones shal falle [13]fram castelles,[13]
20 and meny oþ*er*e tounes shal ben[6] made pleyne[14]; and a bataile shalle [15]bene done vppoñ an Arme[15] of þe see in a felde ordeynede as a shelde[16]; and at þat[17] bataile shal dye meny white hedes; wherfore þat[18] bataile shal bene[6] callede 'þe white bataile.' ¶ And þe
24 forsaide Beere shal done[19] þis goote michel[20] harme, and it shal bene[6] oute of þe Southwest; & of his bloode þan shal þe goote lese miche of his lande til at þe tyme þat shendeship shal him ouer'-comen[21]; & þan shal he cloþen[22] him in a lyoneȝ skyn; and þan
28 shal he wynne þat he hade loste, and more þ*er*to, ffor a peple shal [23]come out of þe northwest þat shal make þe goot sore to bene[6] adrade; and he shal avenge him oppon[24] his enemys, þrouȝ conseil of[25] ij oweles, þat ferst shal bene[6] in p*er*il forto bene vndone[26]; but
32 þe olde owel shal wende ou*er* þe se into[27] a st[r]aunge lande, and þ*er*e he shal duelle vnto a c*er*teyne tyme; and after', he shal come aȝeyne into þis lande. ¶ þise ij oweles shullen[28] do g*r*ete harme

[1—1] *MS. has* bene fulliche bene; fully be O. [2—2] behold O. [3] marches O. [4] *leaf* 35, *back.* [5] w*ith*oute O. [6] be O. [7] *om.* O. [8] & a O. [9] nostreħ O. [10] gon O. [11] *i. e.* open. [12—12] be w*ith*oute O. [13—13] fro Casteħ O. [14] playn In his tyme schal seme þ*at* þe bere schal brenne O. [15—15] be do vpon þ^e Armes O. [16] Childħ O. [17] þe O. [18] his O. [19] do O. [20] mych O. [21] ou*er*come O. [22] cloþe O. [23] *leaf* 36. [24] on O. [25] of þo O. [26] vndo O. [27] *MS. has* into ffr*a*unce, *with* ffr*a*unce *underlined for erasure.* [28] shul O.

to meny on; and so þai shullen[1] counseil þe gote þat he shal arere werre aȝeynes þe forsaid bere; and at þe last, þe goot and þe oweles shullen[2] come atte Bur' vp Trent, and shullen[3] wende ouer'; and for drede, þe Bere shal flee, and a swan wiþ him, for[4] his company, 4 to Bur' towarde þe North, & *þere* þai shal bene[5] wiþ an harde shoure. And þan þe swan shal bene[5] slayne wiþ sorwe, and þe Bere taken & biheuedede,[6] alþer' nexte his neste, þat shal [stand] vppoñ a broken brigge, vp wham þe sone shal caste his beemes; 8 and meny shal him seche, for vertu þat fro[7] hym shal come. ¶ In þat same tyme shal dye, for sorwe and care, a peple of his lande, so þat meny [8]shal bene[8] oppoñ him þe more bolder' afterward. And þo ij oweles shullen[2] do miche harme to þe forsaide floure of lif', 12 and here shul lede in distresse, so þat she shal passe ouer into F*ra*unce, forto make pees bituene þe gote & þe flour' delice; and *þere* she shal duelle to[9] a tyme þat her' sede shal come to seche here; and *þere* þai shul bene[5] stille til a tyme þat þai shul ham 16 cloþe with grace: and þai shul seche [10]the [11]Owelyn, and[11] put ham vnto[12] despitous deþ. And after' shal þis goot bene[5] brouȝt to disese; and in[13] grete anguisshe and sorwe he shal leue al his lif'. 20

"Aftre þis goote, shal come out of Wyndesore a Boor', þat shal haue an heuede[14] of witte, a lyons hert, a pitouse lokyng; his vesage shal be reste to sike men; his breþ[15] shal bene[5] stanchyn of þerst to ham þat bene aþreste *þer*of shal[16]; his worde shal bene[5] 24 gospelle; his beryng shal bene[5] meke as a Lambe. In þe ferste ȝere of his regne he shal haue *gr*ete payne to iustifien[17] ham þat bene vntrew; and in his tyme shal his lande bene[5] multipliede wiþ Aliens. ¶ And þis Boor, þrouȝ fersenesse of hert þat he shal 28 haue, shal make wolfes bicome lambes; & he shal bene[5] callede þrouȝ-oute[18] þe worlde 'Boor of holynesse and[13] of fersenesse, of nobeleye and of mekenesse,' and he shal do mesurabli al þat he shal haue to done[19] vnto þe Burgh of Ier*usal*em; and he shal whet 32 his teiþ vppoñ þe ȝates of Parys, and vppoñ iiij landes. Spayne shal tremble for drede of him; Gascoyne shal swete; in F*ra*unce he shal put his wynge; his grete taile shal reste in Engeland softely; Almayn shal quake for drede of him. ¶ þis Boor shal 36

[1] schuⱧ O. [2] shul O. [3] schul O. [4] fro O. [5] be O.
[6] byhedeď O. [7] for O. [8—8] landes shul be O. [9] tul O.
[10] *leaf* 36, *back*. [11—11] owles & schul O. [12] to O. [13] *om*. O.
[14] heeď O. [15] brest O. [16] shul haue O. [17] iustifye O.
[18] þurght O. [19] do O.

ȝeue mantels to ij tounes of Engeland, and he shal make þe ryuer rynne wiþ blode & wiþ brayn, and he shal make meny[1] medowes reede, and he shal gete as miche as his auncestres deden; & er þat
4 he bene[2] dede he shal bere iij crones; and he shal put on[3] lande into gret subiecciou; and after hit shal bene[2] releuede, but nouȝt in his tyme. ¶ This Boor, after þat he is dede, [4]for his douȝtynesse shal bene[2] enterede at Coloigne, and his lande shal bene[2] þan
8 fulfillede wiþ[5] al goode.

"After þis Boor shal come a lambe, þat shal haue feete of leede, an heuede[6] of bras, an hert of a loppe, [7]and a swynes skyn, and[7] herde; and in his tyme his land shal bene in pees. þe ferst ȝere
12 of his regne he shal do make a citee, þat al þe worlde shal speke þerof. þis lambe shal lese in his tyme a grete parte of his lande þrouȝ an hidouse wolf; but he shal recouer it, an ȝif an[8] Lordeship to an Egle of his landes; and þis Egle shal wel gouerne hit, til þe
16 tyme þat pride shal him ouergone,—allas þe sorwe!—for he shal dye þrouȝ his broþeres suorde.[9] and after shal þe lande falle to þe forsaide lambe, þat shal gouerne[10] in pees al his lifes tyme; and after, he shal dye, and þe lande bene[2] fulfillede wiþ[5] al maner
20 gode.

"After þis lambe shal come a Moldewerpe acursede[11] of Godes mouþ, a caitif, a cowarde as an here. he shal haue an elderliche[12] skyn as a goot; and vengeance shal fal vppoñ him for
24 synne. In þe ferst ȝere of his regne he shal haue of al gode grete [13]plente in his lande, and toward him also; and in his lande he shal haue grete[13] praising til þe tyme þat he shal soffre his peple lyuen[14] in to miche pride wiþouten[15] chastisyng, wherfore God wil ben[2]
28 wroþ. ¶ Than shal arisen[16] vp a dragouñ in[5] þe North, þat shal bene[2] ful fers, and shal meve werre aȝeynes þe forsaide Moldewerpe, and shal ȝeue him bataile vppoñ a stoñ. þis dragouñ shal gadre aȝeyne into his company a wolf þat shal [17]come oute of the West,
32 þat shal bygynne werre aȝeynes þe forsaide Moldewerp in his side; & so shal[18] þe dragoun and he bynde here tailes to-geder.

"¶ þan shal come a lyon oute of Irlande, þat shal fal in company wiþ ham; and þan shal tremble[19] þe lande, þat þan shal
36 bene[2] callede Engeland, as an aspe[20] lef, and in þat tyme shal

[1] *MS.* nemy. [2] be O. [3] o O. [4] *leaf* 37. [5] of O.
[6] heed O. [7–7] a Swynes skyn & an O. [8] a O. [9] deth O.
[10] gouerne þe land O. [11] cursed O. [12] erdelich O. [13–13] *om.* O.
[14] lyve O. [15] *with*oute O. [16] aryse O. [17] *leaf* 37, *back.*
[18] schullen O. [19] tremblen O. [20] Aspyn O.

[1]castelles bene[1] fellede adoune vppoñ Tamise; and it shal semen[2] þat Seuerne shal bene[3] drye, for þe bodyes þat shal [4]fallen dede þerin.[4] ¶ þe iiij chief' flodes of Engeland shal rynne in blode; and grete drede shal bene,[3] and anguisshe, þat shul arisen after' þe 4 Moldewerpe shal fle for drede; and þe dragouñ, þe lyouñ and þe wolf', him shal dryuen away, and the lande shal bene[3] wiþout ham, and þe Moldewerpe shal haue no maner power', saf onely a shipp wherto he may wende; and after þat, he shal come[5] to lande when 8 þe see is wiþdraw. ¶ And after' þat he shal ȝeue þe þride part of his lande forto haue þe ferþe part in pees & reste; and after' he shal leue in sorw al his lif-tyme[6]; and in his tyme þe hote baþes [7]shullen bicome[7] colde; and after' þat shal þe Moldewerp dye 12 aventurly and sodeynely,—allas þe sorwe!—for he shal [8]bene drenchede[8] in a flode of þe see, his seede shal bicome pure[9] faderles in straunge lande for euermore, and þan shal the lande bene[3] departede in iij parties, þat is to seyn, to the Wolf, to þe 16 dragoune, & to þe liouñ; and so shal it bene[9] for euermore. And þan shal þis[10] land bene[3] callede 'þe lande of conquest,' & so shal þe riȝt[11] heires of Engeland ende."

[12]How Arthure ouercome Guyllomer' þat was Kyng of Irland 20 & how þe Scottes bicomen[13] his men. Capitulo lxxvj^to^.

When Guillomer', þat was Kyng' of Irlande, hade tidynges[14] þat Kyng' [Arthur] was entrede at Glastenbery, he ordeynede a grete power' of Irisshemen, & come to þe see wiþ his 24 Yrisshe peple, and so come into Scotteland ouer þe see, and arryuede faste [15]by þere þat Kyng Arthure[15] was wiþ his hoste. and anone as he herde þerof, he went towarde[16] him & ȝaf him bataile, and ouercome him anone ryȝt; and Guillomer' fledde wiþ his men 28 aȝeyne into Irland, and when þis scomfiture[17] was done,[18] Arthure turnede him aȝeyne þere þat he was, into þe place þat he hade lefte þe Scottes, & wolde haue ham al slayne. But þe bisshoppes, Abbotes, & opere folc of þe contre, and Ladies, [19]openheuedede, 32 comen[19] bifore Kyng Arthure, and criede him mercy, & saide:

[1—1] Castell be O. [2] seme O. [3] be O. [4—4] falle þerin ded O.
[5] go O. [6] liues-tyme O. [7—7] schul be-comen O.
[8—8] be dreynt O. [9] *om.* O. [10] þe O. [11] rightful O.
[12] *leaf* 38. [13] become O. [14] tydyng O.
[15—15] *MS. has* by þere þat kyng Arthure þere þat kyng Arthure; þerby as kyng Arthure O.
[16] towardes O. [17] discomfytur' O. [18] do O.
[19—19] openhede come O.

"sire, gentil kyng' & myȝty, haue m*er*cy & pitee of[1] vs! and as ȝoure-self' is[2] of þe riȝt lawe, to holde and mayntene c*r*istendome, ful grete dishono*ur* it shulde be to quelle ham þat leueþ in almyȝty
4 Gode as ȝe done. & for Godes loue haue mercy and pitee of vs, and suffren[3] vs forto lyuen,[4] for we haue hade michel[5] sorwe and pyne; for þe Saxones hauen meny tymes þrouȝ oure lande[6] passede; but þat is nouȝt ynouȝt to ȝow; for often-tymes þai haue done vs
8 miche sorwe & disese. ¶ ffor oure [7]castelles þai hauen[7] taken, & oure bestes slayne & eten, & mich harme þai hauen[8] vs done; and if ȝe wolde vs now quelle, hit were [9]none Honoure to a Kyng' to quelle[10] ham þat c*r*ien him[11] m*er*cy; for ynow ȝe haue [12]y-done vs,
12 & vs ou*er*comen eu*er*ycheon[12]; &, for þe ¶ loue of God', soffre[13] vs forto lyue, & haueþ[14] mercy of[1] C*r*isten peple þat bileueþ[15] in God' as ȝe done!" ¶ when Kyng' Arthure herde þis sorwe, he hade pite of ham, and ȝaf' ham lif and lyme; and alle þai felle adoune to his
16 feete, and bicome[16] his lege men, and he toke of ham homages. ¶ And after' þat, Kyng Arthure t*ur*nede aȝeyne wiþ his host, and come aȝeyne to Ȝorke, and þ*er*e he abode duryng þat Viage. ¶ And þo ȝaf he al[17] Loegers to Loth, þat hade spousede his sustre,
20 and oþ*er*e ȝiftes grete plente. and þo was Gaweyn, his cosyn, [18]but ȝong of[18] age; and to alle his oþ*er*e men þat him hade seruede in his wer', he ȝaf riche ȝiftes, & he þankede ham miche of here gode seruise.

24 **How Kyng Arthure spousede Gunnore, þat was Cadoreȝ cosyn, Erl of Cornewaile; & after' he co*n*querede of Guillomer' aH Irland'. ¶ Capit*ulo* Septuagesimo ¶ Septi*m*o.**

28 WHen Arthure hade brouȝt his lande in pees and reste, & in gode state, & reste w*a*s in eu*er*y contre, þo [19]toke he and wedede a wif'[19] þat me callede Gunnore, & made here quene, a faire lady and a gentil, þat Cador þe erle of Cornewail hade longe tyme norisshede in his chaumbre, þat was his owen cosyn; but
32 neuer' þai [20]haden childe to-gedres,[20] and noþelesse Kyng Arthure louede her' wonder wel and derlich. ¶ And anone as wynt*er* was passede, he lete assemble a grete hoste, & alle his barons, and' saide

[1] on O. [2] be O. [3] suffre O. [4] leue O. [5] mych O.
[6] lond' & O. [7—7] Castell þey haue O. [8] haue O.
[9] *leaf* 38, *back*. [10] quellen O. [11] hem O.
[12—12] don' & vs ou*er*come O. [13] suffreþ O. [14] hath O.
[15] beleuen O. [16] bycomen O. [17] *om.* O. [18—18] but of ȝonge O.
[19—19] nome he a wedded wyf O. [20—20] had childryn to-gidere O.

þat he wolde wende into Irland forto conquere [1]the Lande; and he tarede nouȝt ful[2] longe þat he ne passede ouer into Irland. ¶ And Guillomer, þe Kyng of Scotland,[3] lete assemble a grete hoste, and ȝaf batail to Kyng Arthur; but Guillomer was descom- 4
fitede, & ȝelde him to þe Kyng Arthure, and bicome his man, and to him dede feaute & homage, and of him helde al þat lande fro þat tyme forward. and aft*er* passede Kyng Arthur ferþ*er*,[4] and conquerede Gutland and Irland, and toke homages of folc of þe 8
lande, and þ*er*e duellede xij ȝer in pees, & regnede wiþ [5]ioye and merþe, & werrede vppoñ no maner man, ne no man vppoñ him. ¶ And he bicome so curteys and[6] large, and so[6] honourable, þat þe Emp*eroure*ȝ court of Rome, ne none þrouȝ-out al þe worlde, was 12
none acountede to Kyng Arthures, þat eny man wist, ne none so[7] preisede[8]; and þ*er*efore þe beste knyȝtes of al man*er*[2] landes comen to him forto duelle, &[9] ham resceyuede wiþ gode wille and reu*er*ence[10]; and alle þe knyȝtes weren[11] so gode þat no man knew 16
[12]þe werst[12]; and þ*er*efore Kyng Arthure made þe rounde table, þat when þai shulde sitte to þe[2] mete, alle shulde bene[13] aliche hye, and euenlich[14] seruede[15] at þe table, þat none myȝt maken[16] auant þat none were hyer þan o*þer*e.[17] and Kyng Arthure hade at þat table 20
¶ Britoñs, Fraunchemen, Norma*n*nes, Flemynges, Burgoyners, Mansers, Loherinȝ, and of alle þe[6] landes a þis half þe mount of[2] Gorie, and of his lande of Britaigne, and of þe[6] grete Cornwaile, of Walys, & of Irland, & of Scotland; and shortely to telle, of alle 24
þe landes þ*at* wolde[18] worshipe and[19] chyualry seche, comen to Kyng Arthur*us* court.

How Kyng Arthure come into Fraunce, & conquered þat [20]londe of Froll, þat was a Romayn, & [21]him quellede.[21] Ca*pitulo* lxxviij°. 28

SIth hit bifelle þat Kyng Arthure, þrouȝ conseile of his barons and lordes, wolde gone[22] to conquere al Fraunce, þat þo was clepede Galle, þrouȝ Romayns þat þo helde[23] þat lande in here 32
powe[r] & in here lordeshipe. and þe Romayns [24]hade take þat

[1] *leaf* 39. [2] *om.* O. [3] Irland O. [4] ferthermore O.
[5] *MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin* 490 (*D*) *continues again here.*
[6] *om.* D. [7] so well DO. [8] preferred O.
[9] & he O. [10] reu*er*encede D. [11] were DO. [12—12] ne wyst O.
[13] be DO. [14] euenly D. [15] y-serued O. [16] make DO.
[17] another O. [18] wolden DO. [19] or D. [20] *leaf* 39, *back.*
[21—21] quellede him D. [22] go DO. [23] helden O.
[24—24] hade tak þat lande D. hade take þat land O. *om.* R.

lande[24] to a noble knyȝt, and a worþi[1] of body, þat me calle[2] Frolle.
and when he wist þat Arthure come, he ordeynede an host &[3] grete
power', & fauȝt wiþ þe kyng'; & he & his folc weren[4] descomfitede;
4 and þens þai fledde vnto Parys, and entrede þe touñ, & closede þe
ȝates, & *þere* ham helde. Arthure wist þat FroH was gone to
Parys, he p*ur*suede after', & come þider', & him bisegede; but þe
citee w*as* so strong and wel arraied'; & þo þat were wiþin defendede
8 ham wel and manliche.[5] ¶ Kyng Arthu[r]e duellede *þere* more
þan a mounþe; & *þere* was so miche peple in þe citee, & hade
despendede al her' vitailes þat were wiþin, & so grete hung*er* bicome
amonges ham, þat þai [6]deide[7] wonder þik wiþin the citee[6] for
12 hung*er*, and comen[8] to FroH, & pr*a*yede him to bene accordede
wiþ Kyng Arthure forto haue pees; & þai wolde ȝelde ham to him,
& þe touñ also. ¶ FroH saw[9] þat [10]no longer he[11] myȝt[10] holde þe
touñ aȝeynes her[12] wille, and truste g*r*eteli oppoñ[13] his owen strengþ,
16 & sent to Kyng Authure þat he shulde come to[14] feiȝt wiþ him, body
for body, and so [15]þai shulde[15] dep*ar*te Fr*a*unce bituene ham ij.
¶ Kyng Arthure anone[9] gr*a*unte[16] hit, and wolde þat none of his
peple vndertoke þe batail for him. ¶ And oppon þe morwe, boþe
20 comen[17] wel armede wiþouten[18] Parys, *þere* þat þai shulde fiȝt; and
anone þai smyten togederes[19] so fersely; and so wel, þai fouȝten in
boþe si[20]des, þat no man couþe deme þe bettre of ham. and so Hit
bifelle[21] þat FroH ȝaf Arthure soche a stroke þat he knelede to þe
24 grounde, wolde he nolde he. & as FroH wiþdrow his suerde, he
wonded' Kyng Arthure in þe forheuede, þat þe blode felle adoune by
his eyen and[22] face. ¶ Arthure anone sterte vp hertly, when he felede[23]
him hert, as a man þat semede almoste wode; & he toke[24] Tabourn,
28 his gode suerde & drowe[9] it vp an hye, & ȝaf FroH soche a stroke
þat *þer*wiþ he [25]cleuede his heuede[25] doun to þe shuldres, so þat his
helme myȝt nouȝt bene[26] his warant; & so he felle adouñ dede *þere*
in þe place, and þo of þe citee maden[27] grete sorwe for FroH; and
32 anone eu*er*ycheoñ ȝelde ha*m* to Kyng Arthure, & þe toune also, and

[1] worthy DO. [2] callede D. called' O. [3] & a O.
[4] were D. wer' O. [5] manly O.
[6—6] deiden w*ith*-in the citee wonder' þik D. [7] dyden O.
[8] come D. [9] *om.* D. [10—10] he myght no long*er* D. [11] he ne O.
[12] her' D. her O. *om.* R. [13] in D. [14] & O.
[15—15] shul þai D. shul þey O. [16] gr*a*ntede D. gr*a*unted' O.
[17] come D. [18] with-oute DO. [19] to-geder' D. to-gydere O.
[20] *leaf* 40. [21] felle D. [22] & his D. & by his O.
[23] felt O. [24] nome DO.
[25—25] cleuede heuede R. cleue his heuede D. cleft his heed' O.
[26] be DO. [27] made O.

bicome[1] his men, and deden[2] to him homage & feaute, & he vnderfonge ham & toke of ham gode hostages. & Kyng Arthure, aft*er* þat, went forþe wiþ his host, [3]and conquerede[3] Angoñ & Aungers, Gascoigne, Peihto, Nauerne, Burgoyne, Bery, Loherne, Turyn[4] and 4
Peihters; and alle þe oþ*er*e landes of Fr*a*unce he conquerede hollich. and when he hade alle conquerede, & taken bi homages & feautes, he t*ur*nede aȝeyne to Parys, & þ*er*e[5] duellede longe tyme, and ordeynede pees[6] [7]ou*er* al the contrey, &[7] þrouȝ-out al 8
Fr*a*unce. ¶ And when pees was made ou*er*al, þrouȝ his noble knyȝthode þat he hade, & also for his owen worþynesse, and no man, were he neuer so grete a lorde, derst nouȝt meve[8] werre aȝeynes him, noþ*er* to arise and forto make þe lande of Fr*a*unce in 12
quiete & pees, he wonede þ*er*e ix ȝere, & dede þ*er*e meny grete wonders, & rep*r*ouede meny prout men & luþ*er* tyrauntes, & ham chastisede after her deseruise.[9]

[10]How Kyng Arthure auauncede alle his men þat hade tr*a*uailed in his seruise. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo Nono. 16

AND after,[11] hit bifelle þus at Ester, þ*er*e þat he helde a feste at Parys; richely he gan[12] auaunce his knyȝtes for here seruise
þat[13] him hade holpen[14] in his conquest; he ȝaf to his stywarde þat 20
men[15] cleped[16] Kay, Angoñ & Angers, and to Bedeler his boteler he ȝaf Normandye, þat þo was callede Neustrie; and to Holden his chaumberleyn he ȝaf Flaundres and Mance; and to Doreh his cosyn he ȝaf Boloyne; and to Richard his Nevew he ȝaf Pountif; 24
And to alle oþ*er*e he ȝaf largely[17] landes & fees after þat þai were of state. ¶ And when Arthur hade þus his knyȝtes feffede, at
[18]Aprił aft*er*[18] nexte sewyng he come aȝeyne into Britaigne, his owen lande. And after,[19] atte Whitsontide next sewyng, by conseil 28
of his barons, he wolde bene[20] cronede Kyng of Glomergoñ, and halde a solempne fest, & lete sompne kynges, Erles and barons, þat þai shulde come þider eu*er*ycheoñ.[21] Ther was Skater, kyng of Scotland; Cadwere, kyng of South-walys; Guillomer, king of 32
North Walys; Madede, kyng of Irland; Malgam*us*, kyng of

[1] bycomen O. [2] dede D.
[3—3] *MS. has* and conquerede and conquerede. [4] Tulyn O.
[5] þ*er*e he D. þ*er* he O. [6] pees longtyme O. [7—7] *om.* D.
[8] *om.* O. [9] deseruyng D. [10] *leaf* 40, *back.*
[11] aft*er*ward D. aftirward O. [12] began to O. [13] *MS.* þan.
[14] holp D. [15] me DO. [16] called O.
[17] *MS. has* langely; large D. [18—18] Auerił D. Auerił after O.
[19] *om.* D. [20] be DO. [21] echeoñ O.

Gutland; Achilles, kyng of Ikeland; Aloth, kyng of Denmerc; Gonewas, kyng of Norweye; and Hoel his cosyn, kyng of Dorkeneye; Cador, kyng of litel Britaigne; ¶ Morwiþ, erl of Cornne-
4 waile; Mauran, erle of Gloucestr'; Guerdoñ, erl of Wynchestre; Boel, erl of Herford; Vrtegi,[1] erl of Oxenford[2]; Cursal, erl of Bathe; Ionas, erl of Chestre; Eueral, erl of Dorcestre; Kymar', erl of Salesbury; Waloth, erl of Kaunt*er*bery; Igern, erl of Checestre;
8 Aral, erl of Leycestre, & þe Erl of [3]Warwik, &[3] oþ*er*e riche [4]Lordes. Britons also þ*er*e were ynow, þat is to seyn,[5] Dippon, Donand, Genuȝ; and meny oþ*er*e þat beþ[6] nouȝt here nempnede[7] weren at þat fest; and meny anoþ*er*e[8] faire feste Kyng Arthure hade holden[9]
12 biforn, but neu*er* none soche, ne so solempne; and þat laste xv dayes [10]wiþ michel[10] Honoure and merþe.

Of þe lettre þat was sent fram[11] þe Citee of Rome for p*r*ide to Kyng Arthure ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo.

16 THe þridde day, as kyng Arthure satte at his[12] mete amonges[13] his kynges, & amonges[14] ham þat seten at þe fest biforne ham, comen[15] in xij elderne men of age, rychely arraiede, and curteisly saluede þe kyng', and saide[16] þat[17] þai comen fro Rome, sent
20 messagers fram þe Emp*er*o*ur*, and tok to him a lettre þat þus miche[18] was to vnderstounde: ¶ "Gretely vs m*er*vailes,[19] Arthure, þat þow art on[20] so hardy, wiþ eyen in [21]þi heuede,[21] to maken[22] oppen werr' and contak aȝeyns vs of Rome, þat owen al þe worlde to
24 deme;[23] for þow haste neu*er* ȝitte bifore[24] þis tyme p*r*ouede ne assaiede þe strengþ of þe[25] Romayns, and þ*er*for, þow it shalt[26] in[27] litil tyme. For Iulius Cesar' conquerede al þe lande of Britaigne, and tok' þ*er*of t*r*uage, and oure folc longe tyme haue it hade; and
28 now, prouȝ þi pryde, þow hit witholdes[28]; wherfore we co*m*mande þe þat þow ȝelde[29] aȝeyne. ¶ and [30]ȝitte haste þow[30] more folye done, þat þow hast slayn Froll, þat was oure baroñ of Fr*a*unce, al wiþ wrong'; and þ*er*fore alle þe co*m*munes of Rome warnen and
32 co*m*manden þe, oppoñ lif and Lyme, þat þow in haste bene[31] at

[1] Vrgety DO. [2] Oxoñ D.
[3—3] Warwik' and meny D. Warwyk' & meny O. Warr' & R. [4] *leaf* 41.
[5] say D. sey O. [6] ben D. be O. [7] ynempned O. [8] a DO.
[9] holde D. hold O. [10—10] withel *sic* D. [11] fro D. [12] the D.
[13] among' O. [14] amonge D. among O. [15] come D. [16] seyden O.
[17] *om.* DO. [18] mych yt O. [19] m*er*veylleþ O.
[20] ones D. onys O. [21—21] þine hede D. þy heed O. [22] make O.
[23] demen D. [24] afore D. [25] *om.* O. [26] shal D. [27] in a O.
[28] withholdest O. [29] ȝelde it D. yt ȝelde O.
[30—30] ȝif þou hast O. [31] be O.

Rome, amendes to make of þe[1] misdedeȝ that þow haste done; and
if hit so be þat þow come nouȝt, [2]we shul passe þe huH of Ioye
wiþ strengþ, and we shul [3]þe seke[3] wher'-euer' þow may[4] ben[5]
founde, and þow shalt nouȝt haue a[6] foote of lande of[7] þyn[8] owen 4
þat we ne shal destroy; and aftirward wiþ þi body we shal done[9]
oure wille." ¶ When þis lettre was rade, & alle men hit herde,
þai were annoyede, alle þat were at þe[10] solempnite; and þe Britons
wolde haue slayne þe messagers, but Arthure wolde nouȝt soffre 8
hit, and saide þat þe messagers shulde haue none[11] harme, and mow
by resouñ none deser*ue*; but he co*m*manded[12] hem to bene worþely[12]
ser*u*ede. and after mete he toke[13] conseil of kyng*us*, Erles and
Barons, what ansuere me myȝt ȝeue[14] to þe messagers; and þai 12
conseilede[15] at ones [16]þat he shulde[16] assemble a grete power' of alle
þe landes of þe whiche he hade lordeshipe, & manliche avenge him
oppoñ þe Emp*erour*, of þe despite þat he hade[17] sent to him soche
a lettre; and þai suoren bi God and by his names þat þai wolde[18] 16
him pursue & brenne in-alsemiche[19] as þai[20] myȝt, & saide þat þai
wolde[21] neu*er* faile[22] Kyng Arture, and raþ*er*e to bene[23] dede: and
þai lete writen[24] a lettre to sende to þe Emp*erour* by þe same
messagers in þis maner': 20

Of þe bolde ansuere [25]þat Kyng Arthure[25] sent to þe Emp*erour* of Rome & to þe Romayns. Capitulo ¶ iiij *p*rimo.

"UV[n]derstondes[26] amonges ȝow of Rome,[27] þat I am Kyng
Arthure of Britaigne, and frely hit[28] holde, and shal holde; 24
and at Rome hastely y[27] shal be, nouȝt to ȝeue ȝow truage, but
forto axen truage[27]; ffor Constantyne, þat was Elyn*us* sone, þat was
Emp*erour* of Rome [29]and of al þe hono*ur* þat þ*er*eto bilongede[30];
ffor Maxinian[31] conquerede al Fraunce and Almaigne, & mount 28
Ioye passede, & conquerede al Lumbardye; and þise ij were myn
ancestres; and þat þai hade and helde, I shulde[32] haue, þrouȝ
¶ Godes wille."

[1] þi D. þyn O. [2] *leaf* 41, *back.* [3—3] seke þe O. [4] myght O. [5] be DO.
[6] oo O. [7] o D. [8] þi O. [9] do DO. [10] þat DO. [11] no O.
[12—12] ham to ben worshiply D. hem to be worschipfully O. to bene worþely R.
[13] nome DO. [14] ȝeue DO. ȝe R.
[15] conseilede him D. counseyled hym O.
[16—16] *MS. has* þat he shulde þat he shulde. [17] hathe D.
[18] shulde D. schuld O. [19] in-as-mychel O. [20] þai D. þey O. he R.
[21] nolde O. [22] fayle þe O. [23] be O. [24] write D.
[25—25] *om.* O. [26] Understondeth D. Undirstondiþ O.
[27] *om.* D. [28] y O. [29] *leaf* 42. [30] bilongeth D.
[31] Maximian Kyng' of Britayne D. Maximian kyng of Brytaigne O.
[32] shal D. schal O.

Of þe reu*e*rence þ*a*t Kyng Authure dede to þe Emp*e*ro*ur*re3 [1] messagers of Rome. Capitulo ¶ xx iiij Se*cun*do.

4 WHen þis lettre was made and enselede, Kyng Arthure to þe messagers 3af grete 3iftes; and aft*er* þat, þe messagers toke[2] here leue, & went þens[3] to þe co*ur*t of Rome a3eyne, and tolde þe Emp*erour* how worþely þei were vnderfonge,[4] & whiche[5] real co*m*pany he [K. Arthur] hade him forto[6] serue, & how he was 8 more really se*r*uede þan þe Emp*erour*, or eny kyng leuyng in þe worlde. ¶ And when þe Emp*erour* hade seyne[7] þe lettre of Arthure, & herde what was þe*r*in, and saw þat Arthure wolde nou3t bene[8] rewelede by[9] him, he lete assemble & ordeyne an huge 12 hoste forto destroie Kyng Arthure if[10] he my3t. and Kyng Arthure, as tochyng his p*ar*tye, ordeynede his power' [11]of kny3tes[11] of þe rounde table.

Of þe kynges & lordes þat comen to helpe[12] Kyng Arthure 16 a3eyne3 þe Emp*e*ro*ur* of Rome. Ca*pitul*o Octogesimo ¶ Tercio.

THe kynges[13] of Scotland', & of Irland' & of' Gutland', of Denmarc and of Almaigne, eu*e*ryche[14] of ham hade x M^l^ of[15] 20 men. ¶ Thei of Normandye, Gascoigne [16]& Spaigne,[16] Flaundres & Pehito, & of Boloigne, hade xx iiij M^l^. Geryn of Chartr*e*s hade x M^l^; Hoel of Britaigne hade[17] xij M^l^, and him-self' [Arthur] [18]hade[17] of his owen Londe xij M^l^, & of Arblasters and of Archires,[19] & of o*þe*re 24 folc on foote, þat noman couþe ham nombre. and when [20]þai weren al[20] redy forto wende, Kyng Arthur', his lande & Gunore his wif', [21]he bitoke[21] to one of his Nevewes þat was a wise kny3t, & an herdy, þat me callede Mordrede; but he w*a*s nou3t al trewe, 28 as 3e shul here aft*er*warde. Kyng Arthure toke al his reame to þis Mordrede, saue oneliche þe c*r*one. ¶ And after þat, kyng Arthure tok[22] his host and went to Southamptoñ, þ*er*e þat þe shippes were brou3t. and þe folc assemblede, and[23] þai deden ham to þe

[1] Kynges D. [2] nomen D. nome O.
[3] þens and comen D. þens & come O. [4] vndirfongen O.
[5] which a O. [6] to DO. [7] sey O. [8] be DO. [9] aft*er* DO.
[10] if þat D. [11–11] and kny3te D. & knyghtes O. [12] helpen O.
[13] kyng D. [14] eu*er*y D. eche O. [15] *om.* O.
[16–16] & D. Almaigne O. [17] *om.* DO. [18] *leaf* 42, *back.*
[19] Arches O. [20–20] þai al were D. al weren O.
[21–21] tok to kepe D. toke to kepe O. [22] nome DO. [23] as O.

see, and hade gode wynde & weder' at wille. and as sone as þai myȝten,[1] þai arryuede at Berflete, & wenten[2] oute of here shippis, and spraden al þe contreye.

How Kyng Arthure fauȝt wiþ a Geaunt in Spaigne, þat me callede Denabȝ, þat quellede Elyne, þat was[3] Kyng Hoeleȝ Cosyne, of litel Britaigne. Ca*pitulo* xx iiij iiij^to^. 4

KYng Arthure hade[4] duellede in þe contre but a litil while, þat men ne tolde him þat *þer* was comen a grete Geaunt into 8
Spayne, and hade rauesshede faire Elyne, þat was cosyn to Hoel[5] of Britaigne, & hade brouȝt here vppon an huH þat is clepede[6] þe Mount of seynt Barnard'; & *þere* was noman in þat contre so bolde, ne so hardy, þat derst wiþ him to[7] feiȝt, ne come neyȝ þe place 12
þere[8] þe Geaunt duellede; and men[9] callede him Dynabȝ, þat miche sorwe dede in þe contre. ¶ When Kyng Arthure herde þis tydynges,[10] he callede Kay & Bedewer', & com*m*aundede ham þat þai shulde [11]gon [12]pryuely,[11] and aspie Where þe [13]Geaunt myȝt bene[13] 16
founde. and þai come[14] to þe Ryuage *þere* þat[3] men shulde gon[15] to þe mount, þat was al enclosede about wiþ wat*er*, and ȝit is and eu*er*[16] shal be; and þai saw a brynnyng fire oppon̄[17] þe HuH; and *þere* was also ano*þer* huH neyȝ, þat *þere* was oppon ano*þere* fire 20
brynnyng'. ¶ Kay and Bedewer' come*n*[18] to þe nexte huH, and founden[19] a widowe openheuede,[20] sittyng bisides a tounbe, sore wepyng, & grete sorwe made; and ofte she saide "Elyn! Elyn!" and Kay & Bedwere axede what her' ailede,[21] & wherfore she made 24
so miche sorwe, & who lay in þat tombe. ¶ "O," q*uod* she, "what sorwe and what mysauenture, faire lordes, make[22] ȝe here? for if þe Geant may ȝow here fynde, ȝe worþ dede anone." [23]"ben stille,[23] gode wif," q*uod* þai, "*þer*of dismai þe nouȝt, but tel vs þe soþe whi 28
þow makes[24] so myche[25] sorwe & wepyng'." ¶ "Sires,"[26] q*uod* she, "for a damiselle þat I norisshede wiþ my brest, þat me callede[27]

[1] myght O.
[2] as sone as þai miȝt þai wenten D. as sone as þey myght þey went O.
[3] *om.* D. [4] nad nouȝt D. had not O. [5] Hoel kyng' D.
[6] callede D. called' O. [7] *om.* DO. [8] *þer* þat O.
[9] me DO. [10] tydyng' DO.
[11—11] go *p*riuelich D. go pryuyly O. [12] *leaf* 43.
[13—13] Geauntes miȝten be D. Geaunt myght be O. [14] comen D.
[15] go DO. [16] eu*er*more D. eu*er*mor' O.
[17] on O. [18] come O. [19] founde D. [20] openhed' O.
[21] was O. [22] seke DO. [23—23] Bistill D. Be styH O.
[24] makest DO. [25] michel D. [26] Sire D. [27] calles D.

Elyne,—þat was nece to Hoel, Kyng of litel[1] Britaigne, and here liþ
þe bodye in þis tombe,—þat to me was bitaken[2] to norisshe. so *þere*
come a deuel, a Geaunt, & rauasshede here, & me Also, & lade vs
4 boþe away; and he wolde haue [3]forleyn þis[3] maide þat was so
ȝonge & tendre of age, but she myȝt hit nouȝt soffren, so grete and
so huge þe Geant is. and if he now [4]come as he was[4] wont to
done, *cer*tes he wille ȝow quelle, boþe ij; and *þer*fore faste wende
8 ȝe hens." "and wherfore," saide þai, "go ȝe nouȝt hens?"
¶ "Certes, Sires,[5]" q*uod* she, "When þat Elyne was dede, þe
Geaunt made me to abide, [6]to done and haunt his wille, and me
most nedes [7]it soffren.[7] and God hit wote, I do hit nouȝt wiþ my
12 gode[8] wille, for leu*er* me were to bene[9] dede þan wiþ hi*m* to dele,
so miche payne I haue when he me forleiȝ."[10] ¶ When Kay and
Bedwere hade herde al þat þis woman hade tolde, þa t*ur*nede aȝeyne,
and comen to Kyng Arthure, & tolde him al þat þai [11]hade seyne[11] &
16 harde. ¶ Arthure anone toke[12] ham boþe with him, and went
p*r*iuely by nyȝt, þat none of his hoste it wiste, and come [13]on þe
morne[13] to þe Geaunt, and fauȝt wiþ him strongely, and at þe laste
him slouȝ. and Arthure bede[14] Bedwere smyte of hes heuede,[15] and
20 bryng' it to þe hoste to[16] shewe ham for a wonder', for it was so
grete & so huge. ¶ When þai comen[17] aȝeyne to þe hoste, þai tolde
wherfore þai hade bene out, and shewede to ham þe heuede;[18] &
eu*er*y man was glade & ioyful of þe worþi dede þat Kyng Arthure
24 hade done, her' lorde. ¶ And Hoel was ful sorweful[19] for his nece
þat was so loste; and after', when he hade space, he lete make a
faire chapel of oure Lady ou*er* Elyneȝ Tumbe.

How Kyng Arthure ȝaf bataile to þe Emp*er*o*ur*, in þe whiche
28 **bataile þe Emp*er*oure was slayn. Ca*pitul*o Octogesimo v^to^.**

ARthure and his peple hade tydynges[20] þat þe Emp*er*o*ur* hade
assemblede[21] grete power', as wel of Sarasynes and of[1]
paynemys [22]as of[22] C*r*isten men, [23]Wherof þe noumbre was iiij M^t^
32 of horsemen and of[8] fote men.[23] Arthure and his peple ordeynede[24]

[1] *om.* DO. [2] betake O. [3—3] forlaide þe D. forleyn þat O.
[4—4] as he is O. [5] Sire D. [6] *leaf* 43, *back.* [7—7] y-suffren O.
[8] *om.* D. [9] be O. [10] forlith DO. [11—11] seye D. [12] nome DO.
[13—13] in þe morwe erly D. on þ^e^ morowe erly O. [14] bad' O.
[15] heed' O. [16] & D. [17] come O. [18] heed O. [19] sory O.
[20] tydyng O. [21] assemble a D. Assembled' a O.
[22—22] and D. as O. [23—23] *om.* O.
[24] ordeynede D. ordeigned' O. *om.* R.

ham[1] fast forþ in[2] [3]here Way towarde þe Emp*erour*, and passede
Normandy & Fr*a*unce vnto Burgoyne, and wolde euen haue gone[4]
to þe host, for men tolde him þat þe Emp*eroure*ȝ host [5]was comen[5]
to Lucye. ¶ The Emp*erour* and his host, in þe byginning of 4
August', remevede fram Rome, and come fourth ryȝt þe way
toward þe host. ¶ tho [6]comen Kyng[6] Arthures aspieȝ, and saide,
if þat Arthure wolde, he shulde fynde þ*er*e faste bisides, þe
Emp*erour*; but þai saiden[7] þat þe Emp*er*oure hade so grete power' 8
wiþ him of kynges of þe lande, & of Paynemys yfere, & also c*r*isten
peple, þat it were[8] but grete folie to Kyng Arthure forto mete wiþ[9]
him, for þe espies tolde þat[10] þe Emp*erour* hade v men or vj aȝeynes
one of his. ¶ Kyng Arthure was bolde and hardy, and for noþing 12
him dismaiede, & saide: "go we forþ[11] in Goddes name aȝeynes þe
Romayns, þat wiþ ham ledeþ[12] Sarasines & Paynemes þat no man*er*
truste þai hauen[13] to God', but oneliche[14] oppon̄ here strengþ!
Go we now, and seche ha*m* sharpely[15] in þe name of almyȝty God', 16
and slee we þe paynemys and C*r*isten men þat bene enemys wiþ
ham forto destroe C*r*isten men; and God shal vs helpe, for we
haueþ[16] the ryȝt, & þ*er*fore haue we gode trust in God'; & done[17]
we so þat þe enemys þat bene[18] to C*r*istendome & to Gode mow 20
bene[19] dede & destroiede, & þat men mow recorde þe worþinesse of
knyȝthode!" ¶ When Kyng Arthure hade þus saide, þai c*r*iden[20]
al wiþ an hye voice, "God', fader almiȝty, [21]Worsheppede be þine[22]
name Wiþouten[23] ende, Amen! and' g*ra*nt vs g*ra*ce wel to done,[24] and 24
to destrie oure enemys þat beþ[25] aȝeynes C*r*istendome! In þe name
of þe fader' & [26]of þe sone and of þe[26] holy gost, Amen! And God
ȝeue ham[27] neuer' g*ra*ce ne worshipp̄ in the worlde, ne m*er*cy of
him to[28] haue, þat þis day shal feynten wel forto smyte, and 28
egrely!" and so þai riden softly, and ordeynede her' wenges wel
and wisely.

¶ The Emp*er*oure herde telle þat Kyng' Arthure & his folc were
redy arraiede forto feiȝt wiþ him; and þider [29]þai comen,[29] wher' he 32
ordeynede his wenges in þe best man*er*e þat he myȝt, and more

[1] *om.* DO. [2] on O. [3] *leaf* 44. [4] go O.
[5—5] wolde come D. wold come O.
[6—6] come D. come kyng O. [7] seid O. [8] nere DO.
[9] *MS.* wiþ wiþ. [10] *om.* O. [11] boldely D. boldly O.
[12] ledes D. lede O. [13] haue DO. [14] only O. [15] scharplich O.
[16] haue O. [17] do DO. [18] beth D. [19] be O. [20] cryede O.
[21] *leaf* 44, *back.* [22] þi D. þy O. [23] w*ith*oute O. [24] do O.
[25] ben O. [26—26] sone & D. [27] hy*m* O. [28] for-to D.
[29—29] þai come D. heiȝ come O.

trust oppoñ his strengþ þan[1] in God almyȝty. and þat was seyn afterward', ffor when þo ij hostes metten,[2] the Emp*erour* loste soche foure of his[3] folc as dede Kyng' Arthur'; and so meny were slayne,
4 what in o[4] side and[5] in þat oþ*er*e, þat[3] hit was g*r*ete pite to wete and to seen.[6] ¶ In þis bataile were slayn þrouȝ Kyng Arthure, v kyngȝ of[7] paynemys, & of oþ*er*e, Wonder[8] miche peple. ¶ And Kyng Arthures men fouȝten so wel, þat þe Romaines and[9] paynemys
8 hade no [10]more power' ne strengþ[10] to wiþstande ham,[11] þan xx shepe aȝeynes v. wolfes. ¶ And so hit bifelle [12]þat in þis bataile,[12] in a shoure þat was wonder herde and longe duryng', in þat o[13] side and in þat oþ*er*e, þe Emp*erour*, amonges ha*m* þ*er*e wa*s* slayn;
12 but noman wist forsoþ who him slouȝ.

How Kyng Arthure lete entere his knyȝtes þat he hade Loste in bataile; and how he sent þe Emp*erour*reȝ body [14]to Rome, þat þ*er*e was slayne in bataile. Ca*pitulo* Octogesimo vj^to^.

16 WHen þe Romayns wist þat þe Emp*erour* was dede, þai forsoke þe felde, and þe paynemys also; and Kyng' Arthure after ham chasede[15] til it was nyȝt, and so meny of ham quellede þat hit was wonder' to telle; and þo turnede Kyng Arthure aȝeyne
20 [16]when it[16] was nyȝt, and þankede almyȝty God' of his Vittorie. And [17]on þe morwe[17] he lete loke [18]& seke[18] al þe felde for his knyȝtes þat he hade þ*er*e lost,[19] þat is to seyne, BoreH, erl of Maans; Bedwere & Kay, and[20] Lygers, Erl of Boloigne; Vrtegi,[21] erl of Baat,[22]
24 Aloth, erl of Wynchestre; Cursale, erl of Chestre; and[23] Holdeyn, erl of Flaundres: þise were þe grete Lordes þat Kyng' Arthure Loste in þat bataile amonges[24] oþ*er*e worþi knyȝtes; and so*m*me he lete entere in[25] Abbayes by þe contre, [26]and some he lete bene[27] borne
28 into here owen contre[26]; and þe Emp*erour*res body he lete take and put oppon a bere, & sent hit to Rome, and sent to say to þe Romaynes þat 'as for Britaigne & Fr*a*unce whiche þat he helde, oþ*er*e t*r*uage he wolde none[28] paie; and if[3] þai [29]axend him eny
32 oþ*er*e,[29] riȝt suche[30] he wolde ham pa*y*e.' ¶ Kyng[31] Arthur' lete

[1] *MS.* þat. [2] mette DO. [3] *om.* O. [4] þat one D. on O.
[5] & what O. [6] see O. [7] of þ^e^ O. [8] *om.* D. [9] & þ^e^ O.
[10—10] power' D. more strengþe O. [11] *om.* DO. [12—12] *om.* D.
[13] on D. [14] *leaf* 45. [15] I-chacede D. [16—16] þo it DO. when R.
[17—17] in þ^e^ Morne O. [18—18] *om.* D. [19] ylost O. [20] *om.* D.
[21] Vrgeti DO. [22] Baak' O. [23] & aftir O. [24] amonge D. among O.
[25] at D. [26—26] *om.* D. [27] be O. [28] not O.
[29—29] axede him eny oþ*er*e truageȝ D. axed ony oþ*er* truage O.
[30] such truage O. [31] þ^e^ kyng O.

bere Kay to Kenen, his owen castel, and þ*er*e he was ent*er*ede; and Ligers was born[1] to Boloyne, þ*er*e þat he was lorde; and Holdeyn w*as* borne[1] to Flaundres, & þ*er*e he was ent*er*ede; and alle the oþ*er*e he lete entier [2]wiþ michel hono*ur*[2] in Abbayes & in 4 house3 of Religiouñ in þe contrey þ*er*e þat þai were dede. ¶ And Arthure him-self soio*ur*nede þe[3] same 3ere in Burgoigne [4]wiþ his[5] host, and þou3t þat[6] same 3ere follewyng' passe þe mount[7] Ioye, & haue gone[8] to Rome,[9] forto haue[10] take þe citee, and haue put þe 8 Romayns in subieccioñ; but þe wickede tiraunt Mordrede him lettede,[11] as after 3e shul here.

How Mordrede þe traitour' to whome Kyng' Arthure tok his lande to kepe, and his castelles,[12] and helde hit a3eynes 12 him. ¶ Capit*ulo* ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Septi*mo*.

WHen [13]Kyng Arthure[13] hade taken[14] to Mordrede his reaume to kepe, and was gone a3eynes þe Emp*er*oure of Rome, & was passede þe see, Mordrede anone toke homages and feautes of al 16 ham þat were in þis lande, and wolde haue hade þe lande[15] to his owen vse, and [16]toke castelles about,[16] and lete ham arraie; and after his falsenesse he dede anoþ*er*e grete wrong', ffor, a3eynes þe law of C*r*istiente, he toke[17] his owen Emes wif', as a t*r*aito*ur* shulde, 20 and ordeynede him a grete hoste a3eynes Arthures comyng, to halde the lande a3eyns him wiþ strengþ for euermore, and to slee Kyng Arthure yf[18] he my3t; and lete sende by þe Cee and lande, and lete assemble Paynymes and c*r*isten peple; and he sent to Saxones and 24 to Danoys[19] forto help him. and also Mordrede sende[20] to Cheldrik, to done[21] men come to him out of Saxoyne, þat was a worþi Duc, and bihi3t[22] him, if þat he brou3t wiþ him[23] peple,[24] he wolde g*r*aunt him[25] al þe lande fram bi3onde Humber' vnto Scotland, and 28 al þe lande þat Engist hade[26] of Vortigers 3ifte, When þat he hade spousede his dou3t*er*. And Cheldrik come wiþ grete strengþ [27]and power'[27] of Peple: and Mordrede him[28] assemblede also in his half, þat þai hade xl M^t^ of stronge kny3tes when þat[5] þai hade nede. 32

[1] bore O. [2–2] *om.* D. w*ith* mych honour O. [3] þ*at* O.
[4] *leaf* 45, *back.* [5] *om.* D. [6] þe DO. [7] mount of DO. [8] go O.
[9] Rome al DO. [10] *om.* DO. [11] lette DO. [12] castell D.
[13–13] Arthure the kyng' D. Arthur þ^e^ kyng O. [14] take O.
[15] lande al D. [16–16] nome castell D. nome Castels aboute O.
[17] nome DO. [18] yf þ*at* O. [19] Danes O. [20] sent O. [21] do D.
[22] behete O. [23] him miche D. hym mych O. [24] *om.* O.
[25] him in heritage for eu*er*more D. hy*m* in herytage for eu*er*more O.
[26] *leaf* 46. [27–27] *om.* D. [28] hade D. had O.

How Arthure enchacede[1] Mordrede þe t*rai*tour, and how he was slayne, and [2]Kyng Arthure also[2] wondede to þe[3] dethe. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Octauo.

4 WHen þis tydynges[4] come to Kyng Arthure þ*er*e þat[5] he was in Burgoyne, he was ful sore annoiede, and toke al F*ra*unce to Hoel forto kepe, wiþ haluendele[6] his men, & p*rai*ede him þat he wolde hit kepe til þat he comen[7] aȝeyne, ffor him-self
8 wolde wende into Britaigne and avenge him oppoñ Mordrede þ*at* was his t*rai*toure; and [8]fourþ went[8] his waye, and come to Switsand, & made his men to[5] gone[9] into shippe, & wolde haue arryuede at Sandewiche, and brouȝt wiþ him an[10] grete hoste of Fraunce also
12 wiþ his owen lande. but er þat he myght come to lande wiþ his peple þat were comen[11] out of þe shippis, Mordrede was comen wiþ aH his power, and ȝaf a stronge bataile, so þat Kyng Arthure loste meny a man er þat he miȝt [12]comen to land[12]; ffor þ*er*e was Gaweyn
16 his Nevewe slayne, and Anguissel þat helde Scotland, and meny o þ*er*e, wherof Kyng Arthure was ful sory. ¶ But after þat þai were comen[13] to lande, Mordrede myght nougt aȝeynes him endure, but anone w*as* [14]descomfitede, and flede þens þat[15] same nyȝt Wiþ
20 his men, and oppon þe morwe[16] come to Londoñ; but þo of the citee wolde nouȝt soffre ham[17] come in; and fro þens he fledde to Wynchestre, and þ*er*e[18] helde him wiþ his peple þat [19]with him come.[19] Kyng Arthure[20] lete take þe body of[21] Gaweyn his cosyn,
24 & þe body of Anguissel, and lete ha*m* [22]bene borne[22] into Scotland into[23] her owen contre, and þ*er*e þai were ent*er*ede.

¶ And [24]anone after þat,[24] Kyng Arthur toke[25] his wey to destroie Mordrede; and he fledde fro þens into Cornewaile. ¶ The
28 Quene Gunnore, þat was Kyng Arthures wif, þat þo soiournede at ȝork, and herde þat Mordrede w*as* [26]fledde þens þat he was,[26] and miȝt nouȝt endure aȝeynes Kyng Arthure, she was sore adrade, and hade grete doute, and wist nouȝt what was best al forto done,[27] for
32 she wiste wel[28] here lorde Kyng Arthure wolde nouȝt[29] of her haue

[1] enchase D. [2–2] also þat Kyng Arthure was DO. [3] *om.* DO.
[4] tydyng DO. [5] *om.* D. [6] haluendele of D. haluendel of O.
[7] come DO. [8–8] went forth D. [9] go O. [10] a DO. [11] come O.
[12–12] come to Lande with his peple D. come to londe O.
[13] come O. [14] *leaf* 46, *back.* [15] the D. þe O. [16] morne D.
[17] him D. hym O. [18] þere he O.
[19–19] come with him D. w*ith* hym comen O. [20] *om.* O.
[21] *MS. has* of Arthur *with* Arthur *scratched out.* [22–22] be bore DO.
[23] in O. [24–24] aft*er* anon D. aftir anon O. [25] nome DO.
[26–26] fley D. [27] do O. [28] wel þat DO. [29] neuer D. neu*er*e O.

mercy, for þe grete shame þat she to him hade done; and toke[1] her' wai priuely[2] wiþ iiij men [3]and wiþ no mo,[3] & come to Kerliouñ, and [4]þere she[4] duellede al her' [5]lifes tyme, þat[5] neuer was seyn amonges folc, her lif duryng'. ¶ Arthure wist þat' 4 Mordrede was fledde into Cornewail. he[6] lete sende after his men into Scotland, & into[7] Northumberland vnto Humber', and lete assemble folc wiþout noumbre, & come[8] fro þens into Cornewaile to seche and pursue after Mordrede. and Mordrede hade assemblede[9] 8 al þe folc of' Cornwayle, and hade peple wiþoute nombre, & wist þat' [10]Arthure Was [11]comyng'. he[11] hade leuer' to[12] Dye and tak his chaunce, þan lenger' flee, and abode and ȝaf an harde bataile to Kyng Arthur' & to his peple, so þat so miche peple was slayn,— 12 What in þat' one halfe[13] and in þat oþer,—þat noman wiste who þat[12] hade þe better partie. ¶ But so hit bifelle at the laste, þat Mordrede was slayn, and al his folc, and al þe gode chiualry þat Kyng' Arthure hade gaderede and norisshede of diuerseȝ[14] landes; 16 and also þe noble Knyghtes of þe rounde table, þat so miche[15] were preisede þrouȝ al þe worlde, weren[16] þere slayn; and Arthure himself was wondede to þe deth. but he lete him bene[17] born in a liter to Auyouñ, to bene[17] helede of his wondes; and ȝitte þe Britons 20 supposen þat he Leueþ in a-noþere lande, and þat he shal come ȝit and conquere al Britaigne; but certes þis is þe prophecie of Merlyn: he saide þat his deþ shulde bene[17] dotous; and he saide sothe, for men þerof ȝitte hauen[18] doute, and shal[19] for euermore, as 24 me[20] saiþ, for men weten[21] nouȝt wheþer þat he leueþ[22] or is dede. ¶ Arthure was born[23] to Auyouñ þe xxij[24] ȝere of his regne After' þe Incarnaciouñ of oure lorde Ihesu Crist' v. C̄ and xlvj^ti^ ȝere.

How Kyng Arthure delyuerede þe[25] reame to Constantyn, þe 28 sone of Cador, his nevew. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Nono.

WHenne Kyng Arthure wist þat he miȝt no longer' regne, he lete come bifore him Constantyne, þat was Cadoreȝ[26] sone, 32 erl of Cornwail, his cosyn, and to him bitoke al his reaume, and to

[1] nome DO. [2] pryuelych D. [3–3] wiþ-out mo D. *with*oute mo O. [4–4] *þere* D. *þere* nome & *þere* sche O. [5–5] lif and D. lyf *þat* O. [6] and DO. [7] *om.* DO. [8] went D. comen O. [9] assemblede to him D. Assembled' to hym O. [10] *leaf* 47. [11–11] Comyng' & D. comynge & O. [12] *om.* D. [13] side D. [14] dyuerse D. diuers O. [15] michel D. [16] were O. [17] be DO. [18] haue O. [19] *om.* O. [20] he O. [21] wete DO. [22] leue O. [23] bore O. [24] xij D. [25] þis D. [26] Cador O.

him saide, & bade him þ*er*of' to bene[1] Kyng' til þat he come aȝeyne, for-asmiche as he hade none heire of' his body bigeten: and grete harme was hit þat [2]soche a noble[2] Kyng', and so doughty, hade
4 none[3] childe of his body bigeten[4]; [5]but al þing þat God wil haue done,[6] moste [7]bene done,[7] Whos name ben[8] blessede wiþouten ende! Amen.

How Kyng Constantyne was werrede of Mordred*us* ij sones.
8 **Capitulo Nonogesimo.**

THis Constance[9] was a noble knyght' and a worþi of body; and þo ij sones þ*at* Mordrede hade bigeten,[10] hade grete en[u]y to Constantyne, þat þo w*as* c*r*onede kyng'; and so þat[11] þai bigonne to
12 meve werr' aȝeynes him, and assemblede a grete hoste of ha*m* þat [12]were to-fore[12] wiþ Mordrede, and[13] hade bene dryuen away.[14] þai deden[15] miche sorwe [16]þrouȝ al þat[16] lande: þat o[17] broþ*er* ordeynede hi*m* to Londoñ forto take þe citee, and þat oþ*er*e to
16 Wynchestre; but Constantyn come [18]to Londoñ[18] and slough him þat w*as* þ*er*e; and after', he went to Wynchestre, and slough him þ*at* þ*er*e was also, so þat boþe his enemys were dede. and when Constantyn had regnede worþely iiij ȝer', he deide, & liþ at Londoñ.

20 **Of [19]þe Kynges[19] Adelbright and of Edelf'. Ca*pitul*o Nonogesimo p*r*imo.**

After Kyng Constantyn*us* deth þ*er*e were ij kynges in Britaigne: þat on me callede Adelbright, þat w*as* a Danoys, þat[20] helde
24 þe contre of Northfolc and Southfolc; þat' oþ*er*e hiȝt Edelf, and w*as* a Britoun, þat[21] helde Nichole, Lyndeseye, and al þe lande vnto Humber'. ¶ þise ij kynges faste werrede to-ged*er*es,[22] but afterwarde þai were accorded, and louede to-geder'[23] as þai [24]haden
28 bene borne of o body.[24] ¶ The Kyng Edelf' hade a sustre þat me callede Orewenne, and he ȝaf here þrouȝ grete frendeship to Kyng Adelbright to wif, and he bigate on[25] here a doughte*r* þat me callede Argentiн. and in þe þridde ȝere after', him come vpponñ[26] a stronge

[1] be DO. [2–2] so noble a DO. [3] no DO. [4] begete O.
[5] *leaf* 47, *back*. [6] do O. [7–7] be done D. be do O. [8] be D.
[9] Constantyne D. Constantyn O. [10] biget D. bygete O.
[11] *om.* O. [12–12] wern bifore D. ben byfore O. [13] þat D.
[14] away & DO. [15] dede O. [16–16] þrouȝ-oute þe D. [17] on D.
[18–18] *om.* D. [19–19] Kyng D. [20] and DO. [21] & DO.
[22] to-gidere O. [23] to-ged*er*es D.
[24–24] hade bene borne breþ*er*ne D. had be bore of o body O.
[25] in DO. [26] vpon hym O.

[1]sikenesse, þat nedes he moste dye; and he sent to Kyng Edelf his brother-in-lawe, that he shulde come and speke with him; & he come to him with gode wille. ¶ Tho praiede he the [king], and coniurede also in the name of God, þat aft*er* when he were dede, he 4 shulde tak' Argentil his douȝt*er*, & þe lande, & þat he kepte here wel, and norisshede[2] in his Chaumbre, and when she were of age he shulde [3]done here bene[3] marede to þe strongest and worþieste man þat he myȝt fynde, and þan he shulde ȝelde[4] vp her' lande 8 aȝeyne. Edelf hit g*ra*untede, and by oth hit confermede [5]at his power'.[5] ¶ And when Adelbright was dede and ent*er*ede, Edelfe toke þe damisel Argentil, and norisshede her' in his chaumbre, and she bicome þe faireste c*r*eature þat[6] eny man [7]myȝt fynde.[7] 12

How þe[8] Kyng Edelf' mariede þe damisel Argentil to a knaue of his Kechyne. Cap*itul*o xx iiij &[8] xij°.

THis Kyng Edelf, þat was Vncle to the Damisel Argentil, biþouȝt how þat he myght falseliche[9] haue þe lande fram his 16 nece for euermore; & falsely, aȝeynes his oth, þouȝt to desceyu þe damisel, and mariede here to a knaf of his kechyne þat me callede Curan[10]; and he bicome þe worþiest man[8] & strongest[11] of body þat eny man wiste in eny lande þ*at* þo leuede; and to him he þouȝt 20 here shendefully haue mariede forto haue hade hir' lande afterward; but he w*as* clene desceyuede. ¶ ffor þis Curan[12] w*as* Hauelockes sone, þat was Kyng of Kirkelane in Denmark; and þis Curan conquerede his wifes landes, and slough Kyng Edelf þat was his wifes 24 Vncle, & hade al here lande as [13]in anoþ*er* stede hit telleþ more oppenly; and he ne regnede but iij ȝere, for Saxoynes and Danoys[14] him quellede; and þat was grete harme to al Britaigne; and Britons bere him to Stonehynge, and þ*er*e þai[8] him enterede wiþ 28 michel[15] honoure and solempnite.

Of[16] Kyng Conan. Capitulo Nonogesimo Tercio.

After þis Curan, regnede Conan, [17]þat was[17] his cosyn, þ*at* was a wonder proude knyȝt[18] and regnede.[19] he couþe[20] haue no 32 maner loue, but euer' he was medlyng wiþ his owen peple, and toke

[1] *leaf* 48. [2] norisshe here D. [3—3] do her' be D. do here be O.
[4] ȝeue DO. [5—5] his p*ra*yer' DO. [6] þat myght lyue or O.
[7—7] wist D. fynde O. [8] *om.* DO. [9] falsely D. falsly O.
[10] Hykke Curan O. [11] strongest man D. strengest man O.
[12] Curan þ*at* O. [13] *leaf* 48, *back.* [14] Danes O.
[15] *om.* D. mych O. [16] Of þe O. [17—17] *om.* D. [18] man O.
[19] regnede & D. regned' & O. [20] coude not O.

his Vncle wiþ werre, and helde[1] his ij childerne.[2] ¶ The Saxoynes werrede aȝeynes him oftetymes, but he ham[3] ou*er*come at þe laste; & so he was in pees al his lifes[4] tyme; and he regnede xiiij ȝere,
4 and after,[5] he[6] deide, and ¶ liþ at Londoñ.

Of Kyng Certif; and of Gurmonde, þat come þrouȝ paynemys[7] into Britaigne. Ca*pitulo* Nonogesimo Quarto.

8 After þis Conan, regnede his cosyn Certif', þat was bihatede of all his peple, and noþing bilouede. and þis Certif loste al Britaigne þrouȝ werre. And in his tyme felle þat[8] grete meschief in[9] Britaigne, þat Cristendome was destroede, and alle þe Britons were dryuen oute, &[9] þe lande loste[10] wiþouten[11] eny recou*er*yng'[12];
12 but afterwarde lefte þe lande to Saxoynes, as ȝe shul afterwarde hure. ¶ For in þat tyme þe*re* was a paynyme þat me callede Gurmonde, þat was þe Kynges sone Daufrik', of þe Paynymes folc, þat hade þe reaume after his fader, and was kyng', saf he biquaþ &
16 ȝaf hit to his broþer, and saide þat[6] he wolde[13] neu*er* bene[14] kyng' but[3] if he might [15]conquere and gete[15] a reaume in a[16] st*ra*unge contrey; for he was bolde, and ek'[3] stronge of body. & of him [17]*pro*phecied Merlyn, and saide þat 'he shulde bene[14] a wolf' of þe
20 see'; and[18] lete assemble paynymes wiþout[19] nombre, and lete app*ar*aile shippis, and went by meny londes, and toke homages and feautes of meny. and so he went by þe[16] see fram lande to lande, & conquerede diu*er*ses[20] landes, so þat he come to[21] Irland,
24 and conquered þat [22]lande, þat[22] ofte-tymes werrede vppon Britaigne,[23] and Britons[24] vppoñ ha*m*; and often[25] [26]wonnen, & ofte[26] losten,[27] and ȝeuen hostages to Britons. and so þai senten[28] to Gurmond, þe*re* þat he was in Irland, þat he shulde come into
28 Britaigne, and helpe ham aȝeynes[29] þe Britons, to helpe ha*m* deliu*ere*[30] þat lande of ham; and þai wolde [31]him holde[31] gladly for her lorde; for he was a paynyme, and þai were paynemes, and þe Britons were cristen: wel auȝt him[32] þan ham forto helpe, so as

[1] quelde D. welde O. [2] sones D. [3] *om.* O. [4] lif D. lyf O.
[5] aftirward' O. [6] *om.* DO. [7] Parys O. [8] þe D. [9] of D.
[10] lost D. y-lost O. [11] with-oute O. [12] reto*ur*ne D. recou*ere* O.
[13] nolde O. [14] be DO. [15] gete and conquere D. [16] *om.* D.
[17] *leaf* 49. [18] and he DO. [19] withouten D.
[20] diu*er*se D. diu*er*s O. [21] into DO. [22—22] *om.* D.
[23] Brytonys O. [24] britayne D. [25] ofte D. [26—26] *om.* O.
[27] lost D. [28] senden D. sent O. [29] ȝens O.
[30] *MS. has* deliuerede *with the last* de *underlined for erasure.*
[31—31] holde hym O. [32] he O.

þai weren[1] of on law. ¶ When Gurmond herde þis praier, he hastede him as miche as he miȝt, and arryuede in Scotland, and come into Northumberlond *þere* þat þe Saxones were duellyng; & þai confermede þe couenauntes bituene[2] ha*m*, þat were made by oþes and by hostages, forto beren[3] him trew fay, & halde him for lorde, and paye to him truage by ȝere. ¶ Tho bigonne þe Saxoynes & þe Aufricans to[4] destroye, robbe and brenne tounes, and destroye [5]al þing, as michel[5] as þai myȝt, and sparede[6] neiþ*ere* man, woman, ne childe, Lewede ne lernede,[7] þan[8] alle þai quellede, & caste adoun tou*nus*, & castelle,[9] & cherches, & so put þai al þe lande to[10] grete destruccioun. [11]And as sone as the Britons[11] myȝt [12]flee,[13] þai fledde þens, as wel poer as ryche, Bisshoppis, Abbotes, Chanons, & alle o*þere*, grete and smale; so*m*me into litel Britaign, & some into Cornwail; alle þo þat shippis miȝt haue.

How[14] Kyng Gurmonde drof þe[4] Kyng Certif to Chichestre, and quellede þe Britons, & þrouȝ[4] quey[n]tise ¶ gete the toune. [Capitulo nonagesimo quinto.]

SCertif þe[4] kyng, fleye þens into[15] Chichestre, þat þo was a gode cite and a[4] *str*ong, and *þere* helde him xx daies. and þis Gurmonde hit bisegede; but þe citee was so strong þat he miȝt nouȝt [16]hit gete[16] be no maner engyne þat he myȝt done.[17] þo biþouȝt þai oppoñ a grete queyntise forto brenne the toune: þai maden[18] engynes of[19] glew and of nettes, and token[20] peces of tunder & [21]fire, and bonde to[22] sparwe[23] feet, & aft*er*ward lete ha*m* flee; and þai [24]fley anon ryȝt,[24] and loggede ham in þe toune *þere* þat her nestes were, and in stackes & in euesynges of house[25]; & þe fire biganne anone to tende and brenne[26] al þe toune. and whenne þe Britons saw þe toune brenne on[27] eu*er*y side, þai hiede ham out, and fauȝt; but anone þai were slayn & descomfitede. and whiles þe bataile durede, þe kyng *p*riuely [28]hud him, &[28] stale away into Walys, & men wiste neu*er* where[29] he bicome; & so w*as* þe toun

[1] were O. [2] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [3] ber D. bere O.
[4] *om.* D. [5–5] as michel D. al thing in-as-mych O. [6] spare D.
[7] lered O. [8] *þat* D. þat O. [9] Castels O. [10] in D.
[11–11] & as fast as þei D. & as sone as þey O. [12] *leaf* 49, *back.*
[13] fleen D. [14] How þe D. [15] vnto D. to O.
[16–16] get þat citee D. gete *þat* Cytee O. [17] do O.
[18] made D. [19] with DO. [20] tok D. [21] & of DO.
[22] to þe D. hem to þe O. [23] sparowes O.
[24–24] anone riȝt fley D. anon right fley O. [25] houses O.
[26] brennede D. brent O. [27] in DO. [28–28] *om.* D. [29] qwer *sic* O.

of Chichestre taken[1] & destroiede. and afterꝑ, went Gurmonde, & destroiede citees & tounes þat neu*er* were afterward made aȝeyne, as it is seen ȝitte in meny stedes.

4 How þis lande was clepede Engelandꝑ for þe name of Engist; and how meny Kynges [2]were [3]made[2] afterꝑ in þe Londe. ¶ Capitulo Nonogesimo Sexto.

WHen Gurmonde hade[4] wastede and destroiede al þe lande
8 þrouȝ-out, he ȝaf þe londe to þe[5] Saxones; and[6] þai toke hit wiþ gode wille, for þe Saxones longe tyme hade desirede hit, for-asmiche as þai were of Engistes Kynrede, þat first hade al þe lande of Britain; and þo lete ham bene[7] callede Englisshemen,[8] for-asmiche
12 as in his tyme hit w*as* callede Engistes lande, when he hade conquerede it of[9] Vortig*er* þat hade spousede his douȝt*er*. but fram[10] þe tyme þat Brut come[11] ferst into[12] Engeland, þis land was callede Britaigne, & þe folc Britons, til þe tyme þat þis Gurmond eftesones
16 conquerede hit & ȝaf it vnto[13] Saxon*us*, and þai anone riȝt chaunged þe name, as [14]bifore is[14] saide. ¶ And when þis was done, Gurmond passede ouer into Fraunce, & þ*er*e conquered meny londes, & destroed aH[15] c*r*isten peple þ*er*e þat he come. and þe Danois[16]
20 duellede in þis[17] lande, & bigonne faste hit[18] inhabit at here owen wille; and þai wolde haue made newe kynges and lordes, but þai myȝt neu*er* assenten[19] to haue onelich o kyng, forto bene[7] to him entend*a*unt: and þ*er*fore þai [20]maden meny[20] kynges [21]in diu*er*ses[21]
24 shires, as hit was in Engistes tyme. ¶ The ferst kyngdome w*as* Kent, and þat[22] oþ*er*e Southsex,[23] and þe þridde Westsex, and þe ferþ Estsex, and[5] þe fifte Northumberlandꝑ, and þe sixte Estangle, þat is to seyn Northfolc & Southfolc, and þe seuenþ Merchenorothꝫ, and
28 þat is þe Erl[24]dome of Nichole,[25] Huntyngdoñ and[26] Herefordꝑ, Gloucestre, Wynchestre, Warr*wyk*[27] and Darby; and so dep*ar*tede [28]þe Englisshe-men[28] al Engelandꝑ into[29] vij p*ar*ties. ¶ And afterꝑ,[30] hit

[1] takꝑ D. [2—2] weren y-made O. [3] *leaf* 50. [4] hast O.
[5] *om.* O. [6] anon DO. [7] be DO.
[8] Englisshmen for encheson) of Engistes name & þe londꝑ þey lete Calle Ingelondꝑ in here langage & þe folk ben called Englisshmen O.
[9] of kyng O. [10] fro D. [11] *MS.* cocome.
[12] *MS. has* into fr, *with* fr *underlined for omission;* in D.
[13] vnto þe DO. [14—14] it is afore O. [15] *om.* D.
[16] Saxoynes D. Danes O. [17] the D. [18] it to D. [19] assent DO.
[20—20] made diu*er*se D. [21—21] in al D. in diu*er*s O. [22] þ*er* D.
[23] Sussex O. [24] *leaf* 50, *back.* [25] Lyncolne D. [26] *om.* DO.
[27] Warwykꝑ DO. Warꝑ R. [28—28] Englyssh O. [29] in O.
[30] after þat D.

bifelle þat þo kynges werrede [1]to-gederes ofte-tymes[1]; and euer he
þat w*a*s strongest binome ham[2] þat were[3] feblest; & so hit was
longe tyme þat þai nade no kyng' c*r*onede amonges ha*m*, ne no c*r*isten
men w*a*s þo amonges ham, ne c*r*istendome neiþ*er*e, but were[4] pay- 4
nemys l. ȝere, til þat seynt Gregori was pope[5] of Rome, þat hade
seyne childerne of þe naciouñ in þe citee of Rome, þat were wonder'
faire c*r*eat*ur*es, & hade grete wille and desire ha*m* forto[6] biholde,
and axede of þe marchauntes whens þai were, & of what naciouñ; & 8
men[7] tolde him þat þai were of Engeland', & Englisshe[8] þai were
callede; but þai and aH þe peple of Engeland were paynemes, &
bileuede nouȝ in[9] God'. ¶ "Allas," q*uod* seynt Gregori, "wel
mow þai [10]bene callede[10] Englissh, for þai haue þe visages[11] of 12
Angeles; and þ*er*for wel auȝt [12]ham þen ben c*r*isten men.[12]" And
for þis enchesouñ seynt Gregor sent seynt Austyne into Engeland',
and xl. goode men wiþ him, þat were of gode lif, and holy men, to
p*r*eche and[13] teche, and to conu*er*te þe Englisshe peple, and ha*m* 16
t*ur*ne to God': and þat w*a*s in þe vj ȝere þat seynt Gregor hade
bene Pope,[14] þat is to seyne, aft*er* þe Incarnaciouñ of oure Lorde
Ih*e*su Crist, v. C̄. iiij xx and[15] vij ȝere, as þe c*r*onicles telleþ.[16]

How Seynt Austyne baptisede & conu*er*tede Kyng Adelbright, 20 and ij bisshopis þ*a*t he callede[17] his felawes. Ca*pitulo* iiij xx xvij°.

When Seynt Austyne come ferst into Engeland', he [18]arryuede
[19]in þe Ile[19] of Tenet', and so passede fourth, & come vnto 24
Kaunt*er*bery, and þ*er*e soiournede. And Kyng Adelbright of
Kent, þat w*a*s of þe lynage of Engist, faire vnderfong seynt Austyn
& his felowes wiþ michel[20] hono*ur*, & [21]ham fonde[21] al þat ham
nedede; & ferþ*er*more he ȝaf ham a faire place þat now is callede 28
þe Abbay of seynt Austyn*us*, in whiche place he liþ hi*m*-self
shrinede. ¶ This Kyng' Adelbright w*a*s a gode man, and wiþ
godewel herde seynt Austyn*us* p*r*edicaciouns, and ȝaf hi*m* leue to

[1–1] ofte-tyme togedre D. often-tymes to-gidere O.
[2] hym O. [3] was O. [4] weren O.
[5] O *has* pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written in margin, in same* (?) *hand.*
[6] to D. [7] þai D. [8] englisshe-men D. [9] vpon O.
[10–10] called' be O. [11] visage D. vysage O.
[12–12] þa þan bene cristen D. þey þat be cristene O. [13] & to O.
[14] O *has* pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written over.* [15] *om.* D.
[16] telles D. [17] made D. made of O. [18] *leaf* 51.
[19–19] at Totten *sic* O. [20] mych O. [21–21] fonde ha*m* D.

preche þrouȝ[1] al his lande of Kent, to tourne & to[2] conuerte [3]to him al þe peple[3] þat he miȝt. ¶ Hit bifelle[4] so afterwarde, þrouȝ Goddes grace, þat in litel tyme þe kyng him-self was conuertede
4 [5]to Gode,[5] and aH his peple of[4] his [6]lande was[6] baptisede. And in the [7]mene-while þat[7] þe peple turnede ham to Godꝑ, seynt Austyn come to Rochestre, and þere prechede Goddes worde.[8] þe paynemys þerfor him scornede, and caste on[9] him righe tailes, so þat al his
8 mantel was hongede ful of righe tailes; and for more despite þai[10] caste oppon him[11] þe guttes of ryghe & of ffisshe; wherfore þe gode man seynt Austyn was sore agreuede,[12] and prayede to God[13] þat alle þe childerne þat shulde [14]bene borne[14] afterwarde in þat citee of
12 Rouchestre moste haue tailes. ¶ And when þe Kyng herde and wist of þis vengeance þat[15] was falle þrouȝ seynt Austynus praierꝑ, he lete make an house in þe[2] honoure of Godꝑ, wherꝑ-in wymmen shulde haue childerne at þe bruges ende, in[16] whiche hous wymmen
16 [17]ȝit beþ delyuere[17] of childe. ¶ When[18] seynt Gregory hade[19] herde tel þat[20] þe Englisshe-men were turnede to Gode, and conuertede, He sent to seynt Austyn his Pallyouñ, by a bisshop þat me callede Paulyn, and made him primate & Erchebisshop̄ [21]of al Engelandꝑ,
20 And sent him[22] worde þan[22] þat he shulde[23] make bisshopis in þe landꝑ. And anone as seynt Austyn hade þe Palliouñ of þe[22] dignite of þe erchebisshop̄, he made ij bisshoppes of his felawes þat come wiþ him fram[24] Rome: on þat me[2] callede Mellite, & he duellede
24 at Londoñ, And þat opere me callede Iustyn, þat helde þe dignite of Rouchestre. ¶ And þis[25] bisshop Mellyt[26] went to preche into Essex̄, & baptisede þe kyng of þe contre, þat me callede Sicwith, þat was Kyng Adelbrightȝ cosyn, his sustres[27] sone. ¶ This
28 Iustyne went to preche in Southsex̄, & turnede miche of þe peple to[28] godꝑ; and seynt Austyne went him-self prechyng þrouȝ-oute [29]þe lande.[29]

[1] þurgh-out O. [2] *om.* O. [3—3] þe peple vn-to hym al O.
[4] fel D. [5—5] *om.* D. [6—6] house-holde & of the lande weren D.
[7—7] mene-tyme whil D. mene-tyme whyle O. [8] *MS.* wrorde.
[9] vppoñ D. [10] the *sic* D. [11] oppoñ him D. on hym O. oppon R.
[12] annoyede & greuede D. anoyedꝑ O.
[13] *MS.* gode *with the* e *underlined for omission.*
[14—14] be borne D. be bore O. [15] þat þus D. [16] in the D.
[17—17] ȝit of the Citee beth delyuerede D. ȝyt of þe Cytee be deliueredꝑ O.
[18] And when D. [19] *om.* D. [20] how DO.
[21] *leaf* 51, *back.* [22] *om.* DO.
[23] shulde þan ordeyne & D. þan schuldꝑ ordeyne & O.
[24] fro O. [25] þe O. [26] Mellite þo D. Mellyt þo O.
[27] suster D. Suster O. [28] vnto O. [29—29] Engelondꝑ DO.

How seynt Austyne went into Walys, *pere pat* þe Britouns were; & how[1] þai nolde nouȝt bene[2] obedient to þe Erchebisshop̄ of Kant*er*bury. Capitulo iiij^o^ xviij^o^.

WHen al Engeland was baptisede and turnede to God, seynt Austyn went into þat lande *pere* þat þe Britons were, and forto kepe ham fro[3] Englisshe-men, þat is to seyn,[4] into Walys, & *pere*[5] he founde monkes & Abbayes, & vij bisshoppes; for þe Britons destroiede[6] alwai[7] þe cristen peple þat seynt Austyne hade baptisede,[8] & saide to þe bisshoppes þat 'he was a legate of Rome, & primat of al Engeland, & *pat* þai shulde[9] by al resouñ to him bene[10] obedient.' And þai saide þat 'þai nolde but to þe Erchebisshop of Kerlyouñ'; & saide 'þai nolde neu*er*, for no man*er* þing', bene obedient vnto þe Englisshe-men'; "ffor þe Englisshe-men," þai saide, "beþ[11] oure adu*er*saries & oure enemys, and hauen[12] dryuen vs out of oure owen contre; & we beþ[11] Cristen men, and eu*er* haþ[12] bene; & þe Englisshe-men [13 14]haueþ eu*er*more[14] bene Paynymes, but now late þat þai beþ[15] conu*er*tede." ¶ Seynt Austyne myȝt [16]of ham[16] none o*pere* ansuere haue,[17] but saide[18] ap*er*tely þat 'þai nolde neu*er* [19]ham meke[19] to him ne to þe[20] peple[21] of Rome.' And seynt Austyne turnede þo aȝeyne to Kyng Adelbright, þat was kyng of Kent, and tolde him þat þis[22] folc [23]wolde nouȝt[23] to no man bene[24] obedient[25] but to þe Erchebisshop of Kerlyouñ. and when þe Kyng herde þis, he was sore annoiede, and saide þat he wolde ham destroye, & sent to Elfride,[26] Kyng of Northumberland, þat was his[20] frende, *pat* he shulde come to him wiþ[27] al þe power[28] þat he myȝt, & þat he wolde[29] mete him at Leycestre, and fro[30] þens þai wolde gone[31] into Walys, & destroye þe Erchebisshop of Kerlyouñ, & alle þo[32] þat hade refusede seynt Austyn.

[1] þat O. [2] be D. [3] from O. [4] say O.
[5] *pere* he fonde DO. þere R. [6] dystroyeden O. [7] alwayes D.
[8] conu*er*tede D. conu*er*ted O. [9] shulde be D.
[10] *om.* D. be O. [11] ben O. [12] haue DO.
[13] *leaf* 52. [14—14] haue eu*ere* D. han eu*er*more O.
[15] bene D. ben O. [16—16] *om.* O. [17] haue of hem O.
[18] sayden D. seyden O. [19—19] meke hem O. [20] *om.* O.
[21] pope D. pope *struck out and* bisshop *written in the margin* O.
[22] his O. [23—23] nolde nouȝt bene D. nold not be O.
[24] *om.* DO. [25] obedient ne to no*n* o*per* man O. [26] Elbright D.
[27] in D. [28] hast D. [29] shulde D. schulde O.
[30] from O. [31] go D. [32] *om.* D.

How Kyng Adelbr[i]ght and þe[1] Kyng Elfride quellede Brecyual, þat was a Kyng of Britons þat helde þe contre of Leicestre. Ca*pitulo* Nonogesimo ix°.

4 HIt bifelle so þ*at* þ*er*e was a Kyng Britoun þ*at* helde þe contre of Leycestre, and al þe cuntre aboute him, of Brecyual. And þis Kyng Briton herde telle þat þo ij Englisshe kyngȝ wolde[2] mete þ*er*e at Leycestre, forto wende into Walys.[3]
8 he lete ordeyne al þe power þat he hade, forto feiȝt wiþ þise ij kynges; but litil hit availede hi*m*, for his folc þat he hade was[4] slayn, & him-self fledde, & loste his landeȝ for eu*er*more. ¶ And þise ij kynges, Adelbright and[5] Elfride, duellede [6]awhile at
12 Leycestre,[6] & dep*ar*tede þe lande amonges ham, & toke[7] homages & feautes of þe[8] folc of þe cuntree; and after', þai wenten[9] towarde Walys, & [10]þo of Walys hade herde telle of þe scomfit*ur*e of[11] Brecyual hade at[12] Leycestre, and were wonder' sore adrade of þo ij
16 kynges, and toke[13] and chose amonges ham gode men & holy, of heremytes, monkes and p*r*estes, and[14] o*þer*e folc grete plente, þat wenten[15] bare-fote and wolward', forto haue m*er*cy of þo ij kynges. ¶ But þo[16] kynges were[17] so sterne and so wickede þ*at* þai nolde
20 neu*er* speke with ham, but quellede ham eu*er*ychoñ—Allas þe sorwe!—for þai ne sparede ha*m* nomore þan [18]þe wolfe doth þe[18] shepe, but smyten of [19]þe heuedes of[19] eu*er*ychoñ; & so al were þ*er*e martrede þat to ham come, þat is to vnderstonde, v^c^. & xl.
24 ¶ And after,[20] þo ij kynges went[21] to Bangor, forto quelle al þo[1] þat þai [22]myȝt þ*er*e[22] fynde of þe Britons. And when þe Britons þat herde, þai assemblede & ordeynede al here power' forto fiȝt wiþ ham. ¶ þo was þ*er*e a Britoun[23] in Walys, þat me callede Bledrik'
28 of Cornwaile, þat so*m*me-tyme was lorde of Deuenshire, but þe Kyng Adelbright hade dryuen him into Walys, and ȝeue[24] him bataile; and at þat bataile was Kyng Adelbright slayne, & Elfride[25] woundede sore, & forsoke þe felde, & þe most p*ar*te[26] of his folc
32 slayn; and Elfride fleye[27] into Northumberland', þat was his owen

[1] *om.* D. [2] wolden O. [3] Walys and D. [4] weren D. were O.
[5] *MS.* and Edelf, *with* Edelf *underlined for omission; om.* D.
[6—6] at Leycestre awhile D. [7] token DO. [8] *om.* O.
[9] went D. wente O. [10] *leaf* 52, *back.* [11] þat DO.
[12] of O. [13] nome O. [14] & of DO. [15] wenten O. weren R.
[16] the D. [17] weren D. [18—18] wolfes done D.
[19—19] here hedes O. [20] afterwarde D. afterward' O.
[21] went fro þens DO. [22—22] *þere* miȝt D.
[23] baroñ DO. [24] ȝaf D. [25] Eldryd O. [26] *par*tye D.
[27] flye O.

lande; and afterwarde þe peple of Leycestres*hire* made wiþ strengþ Cadwaladre, þat was Brecyuale3 sone, Kyng of Leycestre, & he after[1] regnede nobli & wiþ grete[2] honoure.

How Cadewaladre, [3]þat was[3] Kyng of Leycestre, and Elfride, Kyng of Northumberland, weren[4] frendes; & of þe debate þat after was bituene Edwyne & Cadewalayn, þat were [5]boþe here[5] sones. Capitulo Centesimo.

And after þat[6] þis bataile was done, þe Britons [7]assemblede ham, and went þens, and come[8] vnto Leicestre, & made Cadwaladre, þat was Brecyuales sone, kyng of Leicestr' and of all þe contre. and[9] he toke homages & feautes of[10] þe folc of þat[11] contre; and after þat, he assembled[12] a grete hoste, and saido 'he wolde go[13] into Northumberland forto[14] destroi Kyng Elfride, & slee him, if þat he myght.' and when he was comen[15] þider', frendes[16] went so bituene ham, & made ham accordede in þis maner', þat Elfride shulde holde al þe lande fram Humber' vnto[17] Scotlande, and Cadwalader' shulde halde[18] al þe lande aþis half' Humber' vnto[19] þe South; and after' þat þai bicome[20] gode frendes al here lif duryng', & louede to-gedre as [they] hade bene[21] ij breþerne. ¶ And þis Elfride hade a sone þat me callede Edwynne, þat hade and helde al þe lande of Northumbreland after' his fadres deth, as his fader' hade holde al his lif-tyme.[22] ¶ And Cadwaladre hade anoþere sone þat me callede Cadwalayn, þat helde his fadres lande as he it helde while he was alif'; and þai louede to-gedre as þai hade bene breþern. and þe loue laste bituene ham but onely ij 3ere, and after biganne debate bituene ham þrou3 a luþer eneuious cosyne of'[23] Cadwalayn, þat men[24] callede Briens, so þat þai assemblede a grete[25] hoste in boþe parties; & at þe laste hit bifelle þat' Cadewalayn was descomfitede, & Edwyne him pursuede, and drof' fram[26] place to place. so at þe[27] laste he fleye into Irlande; and þis oþere destroiede his lande, & caste adoune [28]his castelles,[28] and brennede[29] his maneres, and departede al Cadwalaynes [30]lande amonge his frendes.[30] ¶ And longe tyme after come Cadwalayn

[1] afterward O. [2] gode D. [3—3] *om.* DO. [4] were DO.
[5—5] her boþe O. [6] *om.* D. [7] *leaf* 53.
[8] comen O. [9] and after þat D. [10] of al DO. [11] þe DO.
[12] assemblede D. assembled' O. assemble R. [13] gon O. [14] to DO.
[15] come O. [16] frende D. [17] in-to O. [18] haue DO. [19] into D.
[20] becomen O. [21] be O. [22] lyuystyme O. [23] *MS.* of of.
[24] me D. [25] stronge D. [26] him fro D. hym fro O. [27] *om.* O.
[28—28] castell D. castels O. [29] brent O. [30—30] amonges his frende D.

aȝeyne fram Irlande, with a stronge power, and in pleyn bataile [1] quellede Edwy*n*ne and alle his frendeshippes, & namely þo þat wiþhelde his landes þrouȝ Edwynes ȝifte.

4 How Kyng Oswolde was quellede þrouȝ Kyng [2] Cadwaleyne and Peanda; & how Oswy, þ*a*t was seynt Oswoldes ȝ broþ*er*, regnede aft*er* him, & quelde Peanda. Capit*ulo* Centesimo p*r*imo.

8 WHen þat Edwynne w*a*s slayn, Offris his sone vnderfonge [3] þe werr aȝeyns Cadwaleyn his Eme, so þat þis Offris deide duryng þe werre. and after þe deþ of Offris, þo regned a gentile C*r*isten man þat miche louede God,—þat hade all þe lande 12 of Northumberland by [4] herytage,—þat me [called] Oswolde, and he was kyng of al þat lande. but for-asmiche as he was frende to Edwyne, and helde a grete p*ar*te of þe lande of Cadwalyn, þe same Cadewalyn werred oppon him, and drof him toward Scotland. 16 and when Cadwalyn saw þat he wolde [5] nouȝt abide, Cadwalyn wolde no long*er* him pursue, but toke some of his folc to Peanda, his broþ*er*-in-law, & p*ra*iede Peanda to pursue Oswolde til þat he were take and slayne; and Cadwalyn t*ur*nede þo [6] home aȝeyn. 20 ¶ When Oswolde herde þe tidynges [7] þat Cadwaleyn turnede home aȝeyne, he wolde no long*er* flee, but abode Peanda, & ȝaf him bataile; & Peanda was descomfitede and fley,[8] and come aȝeyne to Cadwaleyn, & saide þat [2] 'he wolde neu*er*e holde a [9] foote of lande 24 of him but [10] if it were so þat [10] he wolde avenge him oppon [11] Oswolde.' Cadwaleyne lete assemble a grete host forto fiȝt wiþ Oswolde; so þat he and Peanda come into Northumberland, [12] and ȝeuen bataile vnto Oswolde; and in þat same bataile was Oswolde 28 slayn,[13] & his heuede[14] smyten of; & aft*er* he was ent*er*ede at þe Abbay of Berdeneye, in whiche place [15] God haþ wrouȝt for him meny a faire miracle, boþe þ*er*e and elles-where.

¶ And anone Oswy[16] his[17] broþ*er* seisede into[18] his hande al 32 þe[19] lande þat was Oswoldes; & þe folc of Northumberlande louede him wonder wel, and helde him for here lorde; but he hade men of his kyn worþi ynow þat wolde haue dep*ar*tede þe lande; & þai

[1] *leaf* 53, *back*. [2] *om*. D.
[3] vnd*er*tok[t] D. vndirtoke O. [4] by þe O. [5] nolde O.
[6] þo home D. þo hoom O. þo R.
[7] Tydynge O. [8] fled O. [9] o O. [10—10] *om*. D. [11] of DO.
[12] *leaf* 54. [13] y-slayn O. [14] heed O. [15] places D.
[16] Oswyne D. [17] *MS*. him. [18] vn-to O. [19] his O.

werrede to-gedre.[1] & for-asmiche as þai were nouȝt stronge ynow,[2] þai come to Peanda, & praiede him of helpe and socour, & bihight him of þat lande largely, oppoñ þat[3] couenant þat he wolde ham [4]ghye, helpe,[4] & conseile. ¶ Peanda herde her' praier', & so spake 4 wiþ þe Kyng Cadwalyñ þat he shulde ordeyne a grete hoste, and faste ordeyne him into Northumberland' forto fiȝt wiþ Oswy. and Oswy was a meke man, & miche louede pees and [5]charite, & prayede Peanda of loue and pees, & [5] proferede him[2] of golde & [6] 8 siluer' grete plente. ¶ And[7] þis Peanda was so proude þat he wolde[8] graunt him no[3] pees for no maner þing, but for al þing h[e] wolde wiþ him[9] feiȝt. so at þe[2] laste þere was sette a day of ba[ta]ille; and Oswy euere hade truste oppoñ Gode, & þis 12 Peanda triste to miche oppoñ his pride & oppoñ his host þat he hade. and to-gedre þai smyten egrely; but Peanda anone was descomfitede & slayn. And þat was after þe Incarnaciouñ of oure lorde Ihesu Criste [10]V. C. & lv.[10] ¶ And þis Oswy þo regnede 16 xxviij[11] ȝere. [12]And a kyng'[13] þat me callede Oswyn, þat was Peandaeȝ cosyn, werrede oppoñ Kyng Oswy, and to-gedre fouȝten; but Oswy hade þe victorie; and Oswyne was descomfitede & slayn, and lith at Tynnemouthe. 20

Of Kyng Ossa, þat was souereyne of alle þe kynges of Engeland'; & how euerych[14] werrede oppoñ oþere in his tyme. Capitulo Centesimo Secundo.

HIt bifelle so þat alle þe kynges in þat tyme þat were in þe 24 londe, as þo of Westsex̄, Mercheneriche, Est Angle, of Kent, & of Southsex̄ & of oþere costes, euerych[14] werrede oppoñ oþere; and [15]þai þat were[15] moste myȝtiest [16]toke þe lande of ham þat were moste feblest.[16] ¶ But þere was a kyng amonges ham 28 þat me callede Ossa, þat was seynt Oswoldes broþer. þis Ossa conquerede alle þe kynges of þe lande, & regned aboue ham alle. ¶ And so grete was þe werr' in euery contre bituene kyngus, þat no man myȝt wete how þe lande went. But Abbotes, prioures, & 32 men of religiouñ, writen þe lifes and[17] dedes of kynges, & how

[1] togederes D. [2] *om.* O. [3] *om.* DO.
[4—4] helpe lede D. gye & helpe O. [5—5] *om.* D. [6] & of D.
[7] But D. [8] nolde DO. [9] hem O. [10—10] D. & lv ȝeer O.
[11] xviij D. [12] *leaf* 54, *back.* [13] kyn D. [14] eche O.
[15—15] he þat was DO.
[16—16] bynomen ham þat were most feblest þe lande D. byname þe lond of hym þat was feblest O. [17] & þe O.

longe [1] eu*er*yche hade regnede,[1] & in what contre; & in what [2] man*er* eu*er*yche [2] kyng deide, and of [3] bisshoppis also, and þ*er*of [4] made grete bokes, & lete calle ham þe Cronicles: and þe goode
4 Kyng Alurede hade þat boke in his warde, and lete brynge hit to Wynchestre, & lete hit faste bene [5] tackede to a pile*r*, þat men myȝt hit [6] nouȝt remeve ne bere [7] þenns, so þat eu*er*y man miȝt hit see and þ*er*eoppoñ loke, for þ*er*in beþ [8] þe lifes of alle þe Kynges
8 þat eu*er* wer' in Engeland'.

How þe Kyng of Northumberland', Osbright, forleye þe wif of Buerne Bocard' þrouȝ strengþ; & aft*er* þis Buerne conquerede þe [9] Kyng wiþ stronge power'.[9] Cap*itulo* C*entesi*mo
12 **t*er*cio.**

ANd þus hit bifelle in the same tyme, þat þ*er*e w*as* a kyng in [10] Northumberland' þat me callede Ossebright, & soio*ur*nede in ȝork, and' þis kyng wente him oppoñ a day into a wode, him
16 forto [11] desporte; and when he come aȝeyne, he went p*r*iuely [6] into a gode man*us* house þat me callede Buerne Bocard'.[6] & þe gode man of þat [12] place was gone þat tyme to þe see, for ofte-tymes he was wonede [13] þ*er*e aspie [14] þeues & robboures, þat ofte-tymes [15] were
20 wont to [6] come into þe londe to robbe & [6] brenne and slee. ¶ þe lady þat was þis Buernes wif, was a [6] wonder' faire woman, and welcomede þe Kyng wiþ michel [16] hono*ur*, and worþely him seruede in al þing'. ¶ When þe Kyng hade [17] eten, he toke [17] þe lady by
24 þe hande, and lad her' into chaumbre, & saide þ*at* he wolde speke wiþ here a counsele. and al þe folc fram [18] þe chaumbre he made voyede, saf onely [19] þe lady and he. but þe Lady wiste nouȝt wherfore he it dede, til þat he hade done wiþ here his wille. and
28 when he hade done þis dede, he t*ur*nede aȝeyne to ȝork', & þe lady he lefte þ*er*e wonder' sore wepyng' for þe dede þat he hade ydone. ¶ And when here lorde was come [20] home, & saw here wepe, and soche mornyng make, he axede of here what she hade done, &
32 whi she made soche sorwe. ¶ "Sire," q*uod* she, "queyntly and

[1—1] eu*er*yche regnede hade D. eche had regned O.
[2—2] man*er*e-wyse eche O. [3] of his O. [4] þ*er*of þai D. þ*er*of þey O.
[5] be O. [6] *om.* DO. [7] bere it DO. [8] ben O.
[9—9] lande w*ith* strengþ D. kyng w*ith* poer & strengþe O. [10] *leaf* 55.
[11] to O. [12] þe DO. [13] wont DO.
[14] aspie & awayte D. aspye & awayte O. [15] oftyn-tyme O.
[16] mych O. [17—17] ete he nome O. [18] fro DO. [19] onlich D.
[20] comen D.

falsely þe Kyng' Osbright me haþ done shame and vilonye, aȝeynes
my wille"; and' tolde him treuþe, How the kyng' hade her' forleyn
wiþ strengþ; wherfore she[1] saide she hade leuer' to dye þan leue.
¶ "Faire leef, bistille," q*uod* he, "for aȝeynes strengþ[2] [febleness] 4
is litel worþ; & þ*er*fore of me [3]shal yow[3] neuer þe lesse bene[4]
Louede, and namely for yow[5] haste tolde me treuþe. and if
Almyghty God' grant[6] me lif, y shal þe wel avenge."

¶ This Buerne was [7]a gret man and[7] a miȝty lorde, and was 8
wel bilouede, & g*r*ete frendes hade, and lete sende for þe greteste
lordes of þe lande, & to ha*m* made his compleynt of þe[8] despite þat
þe kyng to him hade done, & saide þat he wolde bene[9] avengede,
how[10] þat eu*er* it were. and alle his frendes[11] conseilede[12] 12
and g*ran*tede to wende towarde ȝork', þ*er*e þat þe kyng was. &
Buerne toke[13] his menye, & [14]come to[14] þe kyng'. and when þe
kyng him saw, he callede him curtesly Buerne by[15] name; and
Buerne him ansuerede &[16] saide: "Sire, y ȝow defye, & ȝelde op 16
[17]feautes, homages, and[17] londes, and as miche as y haue holde of
ȝow; and so, fro[18] þis tyme afterwarde, y wil no þing of þe holde."
& so he dep*ar*tede fram[19] þe kyng with-outen[20] more speche or
eny abidyng', & toke[21] leue of his frendes, and went to Denmarc, 20
and pleynede to þe Kyng Godryn,[22] & tolde him of þe dispite
þat Kyng' Osbright to him hade done of his wif, & p*ra*iede him
of socoure & of helpe, him to avenge. ¶ When Kyng Godrin[23]
of Denmarc & þe [24]Danoys, when þai[24] hade herde þe pleynt of 24
þis Buerne & of þe p*rae*r' þat he bade, þai were wonder' glade in
hert, for-asmiche as þai myȝt fynde cause forto gone[25] into Enge-
land' forto werr' oppoñ þe Englisshe-men, & also forto avenge
Buerne of þe despite þat þe[26] kyng hade done[27] to his wif', & for- 28
asmiche as Buerne was sib to þe Kyng of' Denmarc. ¶ Anone[28] þai
lete ordeyne a grete hoste of men, & lete ordeyne shippis, and as
miche as [29]was nede[29] to þat Viage. and when alle þe hoste was

[1] he *sic* D. [2] strengþe þe O. [3—3] shalt þow D. þou shalt O.
[4] be DO. [5] þow D. þou O.
[6] *leaf* 55, *back*. [7—7] *om*. D. [8] *om*. O. [9] be D.
[10] how so O. [11] frende D. [12] counceilled hym O.
[13] nome O. [14—14] went towarde D. [15] by his O.
[16] and to him D. & to hym O.
[17—17] feautes & homages and D. feautes homages & O. feautes, homages R.
[18] fram D. from O. [19] fro DO. [20] withoute DO.
[21] nome O. [22] Gordryne D. [23] Gordyn D.
[24—24] Danoys D. Danes whan þey O. [25] go DO.
[26] *MS. has* þe englisshe men, *with* englisshe men *underlined for omission*.
[27] y-done O. [28] And anone D. [29—29] nedede D.

redy, þe kyng made [1] his ij breþ*er*ne cheueteyns, þat Were noble Kny3tes and bolde: þat one me callede Humger',[2] & þat oþ*er*e Hubba.

4 How þe [3] Danoys toke [3] 3ork' & quellede [4] Kyng Osbright, and afterwarde [5] Kyng Elle. ¶ Ca*pitulo* ¶ Centesimo ¶ Quarto.

WHen al þing was aredy,[6] þo ij breþ*er*ne tok' leue of þe Kyng
8 Godrin, and went towarde þe see, forto wende into Engelande as faste as þai my3t spede. ¶ Now is Buerne so [7] wel comfortede, & faste hiede hi*m* wiþ þe [8] Danoys; and þai arryue [8] in þe Northcontre, & [9] come þrou3-out [9] Holdernesse, & destroiede al
12 þe contre,[10] and brent tounes and robbede folc, & quellede al þat þai my3t take, til þat þai come to 3orke. ¶ And when Kyng Osbright saw ham come, he toke [11] þe [12] peple þat he hade, and come out of þe citee, & with ham fau3te; but no foysoun he nade [13]
16 a3eynes ham; & miche w*as* þe peple þat þ*er*e w*as* slayn in boþe parties; and Kyng Osbright himself' þ*er*e was slayn, and þe citee anone w*as* take, & þe [14] Danoys wenten [14] in. ¶ And þ*er*e was also anoþ*er*e kyng in Northumberlond' þat Buernes frendes hade chosen,
20 & helde him for kyng, a man þat me clepede [15] Elle, for-asmiche as þai nolde [16] nou3t to Kyng Osbright bene [17] entendant, for þe despite þet he hade done to Buerne here cosyn. ¶ Hit bifelle þus, þat þe [18] Kyng' Elle was goñ to þe [18] wode hi*m* [19] forto desporte: and of
24 venysouñ somdele he hade tak'. and as he satte in the wode at mete, to a knyght he saide: "we haue wel y [20] spedde, & michel [21] venysoun taken.[22]" and wiþ þat worde þ*er*e come [23] in [18] a man, [24] & to him [24] saide: "Sire, if 3e so miche of venysouñ haue y-wonne,[25]
28 an C. tymes so miche þ*er*e a3eyns [26] 3e hauen [26] loste; for al þis contre þe Danois hauen [27] gete, & take [28] þe cite of 3ork; & a3eynes 3ow shal it holde, þat neu*er* 3e shul come þ*er*in; & forsothe þai

[1] *leaf* 56.
[2] *altered from* Humber', *or perhaps* Humber' *altered from* Hunger'; Humber' D. Hungar O.
[3—3] Danes token O. [4] quellede the D. [5] after O.
[6] redy D. [7] *om.* D.
[8—8] Danoys and arryuede D. Danes þ*at* þei beþ aryued' O.
[9—9] comen þrou3 D. comen þurgh-out O. [10] land D.
[11] nome O. [12] his DO. [13] hade D. [14—14] Danes went O.
[15] callede D. called O. [16] wolde D. wold O. [17] be D.
[18] *om.* DO. [19] him al D. [20] *leaf* 56, *back.*
[21] miche D. mych O. [22] take O. [23] cam O. [24—24] *om.* D.
[25] wonne DO. [26—26] haue 3e D. 3e haue O. [27] han D.
[28] taken D.

[1]hauen slayn[1] Kyng Osbright." ¶ And when Kyng Elle þise wordes herde, he lete assemble al þe folc of þe cuntre, & ordeynede al þe power þat he miȝt haue,[2] and wold haue gete[3] þe toune of ȝork wiþ strengþ. but þe [4]Danois comen[4] out anon & ȝaf ha*m* bataile, 4 & quellede[5] þe kyng & þe moste part[6] of his men þat he hade[7] brouȝt wiþ him: and þe same place þ*er*e þat þai were slayne shal euer[8] bene[9] callede Ellecrofte; and þat place is a litel fram ȝork. and þo[7] abode[10] þe [11]Danois neu*er*,[11] til þai hade conquerede al 8 Northumberland. and in þat contre þai made Werdeynes, & went ferþ*er* into þe lande, and token Notyngham. and þ*er*e þai abiden al þe wynt*er*, and deden[12] al þe sorwe þat þai myght. and aft*er*, when somer tyme come, þai remevede fram Notyngham, & [13]come 12 vnto[13] Nichole, & to Lyndessey, & to Holand, for no man miȝt ham withstande, so miche power & strengþ [14]þai hade.[14]

How Seynt Edmu*n*de þe Kyng was martrede. Ca*pitul*o Ce*ntesi*mo v^to^. 16

AND so ferre [15]hade þe Danois[15] passede fram[16] contre vnto[17] contre, & eu*er*more brennyng & robbyng, & destroiede[18] al þat þai miȝt, til þat[19] þai come vnto[20] Tetteford. & in þat[21] contre þai fonden a Cristen Kyng [22]þat miche louede God and[23] his 20 Werkes, þat me callede Edmunde; & he was Kyng of Northfolc and[24] Southfolc.[25] ¶ þis Seynt Edmunde þe kyng ordeynede as miche folc as he myȝt, & fauȝt wiþ þe Danois[26]; but he and his folc were scomfitede,[27] & [28]þe kyng[28] him-self dryuen vnto a[29] castel 24 of Framelyngham. & þe Danois[26] him pursuede, & comen[30] vnto þe same castel. and when Kyng Edmunde saw þat þe castel myst nouȝt ham[31] wiþstonde, he comen[32] aȝeynes ham. with whame þe Danois[26] ferst speken[33]; and anone þai axede of him where Kyng 28 Edmunde was. "now forsoth," q*uod* he, "when y was in þe castel, [34]y was[34] kyng; & when y went oute[7] of þe castel, he went out also; and [35]whe*þer* þat[35] he shal ascape or dye, at Godes wil

[1—1] haue slayn̄ the D. han slayn O.
[2] haue and wolde haue D. haue & wold haue O. haue R.
[3] y-gete O. [4—4] Danoys come D. Danes comen O. [5] quelle D.
[6] p*ar*ty D. p*ar*tye O. [7] *om.* D. [8] eu*er*more O. [9] be DO.
[10] abide neu*er* O. [11—11] Danes O. [12] dede O. [13—13] comen to D.
[14—14] *om.* D. [15—15] þe Danoys had D. had þe Danes O.
[16] fro O. [17] to D. [18] destroyng D. [19] *om.* DO. [20] to D.
[21] the same D. [22] *leaf* 57. [23] and al D. [24] & of D.
[25] Suffolk O. [26] Danes O. [27] descomfitede D. [28—28] *om.* D.
[29] the D. þe O. [30] come D. [31] hym O. [32] come DO.
[33] spoken D. [34—34] *þer* was þe O. [35—35] whedir O.

most[1] hit be." ¶ When Seynt Edmunde hade nempnede Godꝑ, by
þat [2]worde þai wiste[2] alle þat it[3] was he him-selfꝑ. and anone
Hubba & Hungarꝑ[4] tokꝑ[5] him, & saide þat he shulde God forsake,
4 & al *c*risten law, as alle[6] o*þer*e hade[7] done þrouȝ ham biforn. and
Seynt Edmunde saide þat[8] 'he wolde[9] neuer, but ra*þer* [10]he wolde
suffre deth[10] for Godes sone,[11] and his law[12] to kepe.' ¶ þo tokꝑ[13]
þai Kyng Edmunde, & bounde him vnto[14] a tree, and made[15]
8 Archires [16]to him[16] shote with Arwes, til þat his body stickede
alse[17] ful of Arwes as an hirchone is ful of prickes; but for alle þe
payne þat he hade, he wolde[18] neuerꝑ God forsake. & in[8] þe same
pyne [19]he deide wiþ þat t*ur*mentyngꝑ,[19] & bitoke his soule to[20]
12 almyȝty Godꝑ. & when þai saw þat he was dede, þai smyten of his
heuede[21]; & in þis manerꝑ w*as* Seynt Edmunde martrede.

[22]How Hubba & Hungarꝑ toke þe toune of Redyng. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* vj^to^.

16 [W]Hen sent Edmunde was martrede, Hunguarꝑ and Hubba
went þens, with al here Danoys,[23] vnto Redyngꝑ. and
as þai went þiderwarde, þai brent tounes & citees, & quellede al
Cristen peple þat wolde nouȝt Godꝑ[24] forsake, and caste adouñ[25]
20 cherches, and comen[26] to Redyng, and toke[27] þe touñ, and *þer*e
holde[28] ham til þat þe Kyng Edelfꝑ of Westsex come þiderꝑ wiþ al
his powerꝑ forto take þe toune. ¶ þo come[29] oute þe Danoys[23] forto
ȝeue bataile to Kyngꝑ Elfride[30]; and at þat bataile was quellede an
24 Erl of Danoys[23] þat me callede Gydrakꝑ. ¶ Oppoñ þe morwe come
þe Kyng Eldrede, and his bro*þer* Alurede, with a stronge powerꝑ
and[31] grete host. and þe Kyng Edelfꝑ come aȝeyne (þat hade
[32]fouȝten wiþ þe Danois[32] þe day toforne[33]) to þat bataile. & þe
28 Danois[23] þo comen[34] out forto feiȝt wiþ ha*m*. and þat[35] batale was
wonder strong, for meny a man was *þer*e slayn[36]; and þe Danois[23]
þat day hade þe vittori; and þe Kyng Eldrede & his bro*þer*

[1] iniȝt D. mote O. [2–2] þai wisten D. þei wysten O. [3] þat D.
[4] *D has* Humberꝑ *with* berꝑ *struck out.* [5] nomen O. [6] meny DO.
[7] hadden O. [8] *om.* D. [9] nolde O.
[10–10] suffren deth he wolde D. [11] loue D. [12] lawes O.
[13] nome O. [14] to D. [15] made herꝑ D. made here O.
[16–16] him to D. [17] *om.* D. as O. [18] nold O.
[19–19] and t*ur*ment he deide D. & turneme*n*t he dide O. [20] vn-to O.
[21] hedꝑ O. [22] *leaf* 57, *back.* [23] Danes O. [24] *om.* O.
[25] doune D. [26] come D. [27] token O. [28] helde D. held O.
[29] comen O. [30] Edelfꝑ D. Edilf O. [31] and a D. & a O.
[32–32] fouȝten D. fought O. [33] tofore D. byfore O. [34] come D.
[35] the D. [36] y-slayn O.

Alurede þat day were descomfited. but þe xiiij day afterwarde,
þe Danois[1] and þe Englisshe-men fouȝten to-gederes[2] oppoñ
Elkelden, & *þere* was slayne a kyng of Denmarc þat was callede
Rasyng, and iiij Erles of grete power; and þat day hade þe 4
Danoys[1] shame, for þai were dryuen[3] vnto Engelfilde. and þe xv
day after, þe Danois[1] & þe Englisshemen fouȝten[4] anoþ*er*e tyme at
Rasyng[5] [*sic*], and *þere* were þe Englisshe-men descomfitede. and
fra*m*[6] þens a Danois, þat me callede Roynt, went to Redyng wiþ 8
his hoste, & destroiede al þat [7]he myght tak; and[8] Kyng Eldrede
fauȝt wiþ him, but he was [9]woundede so, wherfore[9] he was dede;
and he[10] nade regnede but v. ȝere, and [11]deide, and[11] liþ atte
Wonburne. 12

Of Kyng Alurede; & how þe Danoys[1] in his tyme p*rai*ede him of m*er*cy, þ*a*t þai moste gone[12] out of þe lande. Ca*pitulo* C*entesi*mo vij°.

After þe deth of þis Eldrede, regnede his broþ*er* Alurede, þat 16
Dolfynes was callede. þo went þe Danois,[1] & assemblede
ham, and went forto seche Alurede, *þat* þo was þe new[13] kyng of
Southsex̄. and *þere* þai fonde[14] him at Wiltoñ,[15] wiþ a litel peple;
& noþeles he fauȝt with ham; but at the laste he fledde þens 20
fram[16] þe felde, and went vnto Westsex̄, and ordeynede so miche
peple of his owen[17] reaume & also of oþ*er*e, so [18]til þat[18] he hade a
stronge host, so þat þe Danois[1] hade non[19] power [20]aȝeynes him[20] to
stande. and he come to Londoñ wiþ his host, [21]*þere* as[21] þe Danois 24
soio*ur*nede; and *þere* [22]wolde he haue fouȝten[22] wiþ ham, but þe
Danois[23] derste nouȝt wiþ him[24] feiȝt, but p*rai*ede him of pees, &
þat þai most gone[25] aȝeyne into her owen contre, & neu*er*more into
Engeland forto come aȝeyne, eny harme forto[26] done, and oppoñ þis 28
couenant þai shulde ȝeue [27]him to plegge,[27] gode hostages, & soche
as þe[10] Englisshe[28]me*n* wolde axen.[28]

[1] Danes O. [2] togeder another tyme D. to-gidere anoþ*er* tyme O.
[3] dryue O. [4] fouȝt D. [5] Rafyng D. Rasyng O. [6] fro D.
[7] *leaf* 58. [8] but D. [9—9] wondeth so wherthouȝ D. [10] *om.* D.
[11—11] *om.* DO. [12] go O. [13] mewe *sic* D. [14] fonden D.
[15] *corrected from* Waltoñ. [16] fro O. [17] *om.* O. [18—18] þat til O.
[19] no DO. [20—20] *MS.* aȝeynes him aȝeynes him.
[21—21] and *þere* D. & *þere* were O. [22—22] he wolde haue fouȝt D.
[23] Danes ne O. [24] him þo D. hem tho O. [25] go DO.
[26] to DO. [27—27] to hym O.
[28—28] *om.* D., Englisshe *ends a page, and the following page continues with* How Hubba, *&c.*

How Hubba & Hunguar' were quellede at Chippenham; & how þe Danoys[1] brouȝt hir' kyng vnto[2] oure kyng'. Capit*ulo* Centesimo Octauo.

4 AND þe same day þat[3] þe Danois[1] dep*ar*tede fram[4] Londoñ, so faste þai riden, boþe [5]nyght and day,[5] and neuer' toke reste of goyng' til þat þai [6 7]comen vnto[7] Excestre, and token[8] þe toune, & þ*er*e helde ham. ¶ Whe*n* Kyng Alurede herde [9]þo tidynges,[9]
8 anone he lete tak þe hostages, and went fram[10] þens vnto[11] Excestre wiþ al þe power' þat he hade. ¶ And when þe Danois[1] herde tel of his[12] comyng', þai went fro þens forth into Westsex, and comen to Chippenham; and þ*er*e þai deden miche harme in þe contre; þai
12 robbede folc, & brouȝt[13] ha*m* into[14] prisouñ. The Kyng Alurede ham pursuede, & [15]come oppon ham, and fersly[15] ham assailede; & þ*er*e were[16] slayn boþe Hubba, and Hunguar' his broþ*er*, and Buerne Bocard'. and in þat[17] bataile was michel[18] folc slayn in þat[19] o p*ar*tye
16 and in[19] þat o*per*e, but þe gree of þe felde lefte wiþ þe Danois,[1] forasmiche [20]as þe kyng' þo[20] come but with litel company.[21] ¶ The Kyng Hastede him as miche as he myght, forto wende aȝeyn; and when þe Danois[22] fonden [23]Hubba his bodye[23] liggyng dede, þai
20 ent*er*ede hit, & made oppoñ him a grete logge, and lette calle hit Hubbeslaw; & so it is callede into þis day; and þat place is in Deuenesshire. ¶ þe barons of Westsex,[24] Wilteshire and Dorset, harde telle how þat here[25] kyng was descomfitede; and ordeynede
24 al þe power þat þai miȝt haue, and come to þe kyng' þ*er*e þat he was, & þankede God þat þai hade [26]him fonden[26] alif', for þai wende þat þe Danois[1] hade him slayne. ¶ þo toke[27] þai a[3] counseil, þe kyng and his barons, &[28] þai wolde [29]gone seche[29] þe Danois,[1]
28 [30]with ham forto feiȝt.[30] and so þai riden al þat nyȝt [31]ham forto seche,[31] and come[32] amorw,[33] about p*r*ime, to Abyngdoñ, þ*er*e þat þe Danois[1] were.

¶ þe kyng þo, Alurede [34]and his barons, assemblede, and þ*er*e

[1] Danes O. [2] to O. [3] *om.* D. [4] fro O. [5—5] day & nyght O.
[6] *leaf* 58, *back*. [7—7] come to DO. [8] toke O. [9—9] þe Tydyng O.
[10] fro DO. [11] to D. [12] þis O. [13] put D. [14] in DO.
[15—15] fressheliche D. [16] was O. [17] this D. þis O. [18] mych O.
[19] *om.* O. [20—20] tho as the kyng D. [21] meny D. [22] Danes had O.
[23—23] Hubba*us* body D. Hubba his body O. Hubba his bodyes R.
[24] Som*er*set D. Som*er*sete O. [25] *MS.* here here.
[26—26] founden him D. founde hym O. [27] nome O. [28] þ*at* O.
[29—29] go sechen D. go to seche O.
[30—30] forto fyȝt with ham D. w*ith* hem al for-to fight O.
[31—31] forto seche ha*m* D. hem al for-to seche O. [32] comen O.
[33] in the morwe D. [34] *leaf* 59.

assailede þe Danois[1] egrely,[2] and þe*re* ȝaf ham a stron*ger*[3] bataile
þan eu*ere* he dede bifore; and þe Danois[1] nobli put ham of, longe
tyme, þat no man wist in whe*þer* *par*tie more peple were[4] slayn.
¶ But þus hit bifelle, as Godꝑ wolde, þat[5] Kyng Alurede hade þe 4
vittorie with michel[6] honoure; for þe Danois[1] were so dryuen [7]þat
þai[7] wist nouȝt[8] whiderꝑ to wende.[9] xv dayes þe kyng ham pur-
suede at his wille, þat glade & fayne [10]þai were forto speken[10] of
pees & of accorde, & toke[11] him gode hostages, & saide þat þai 8
wolde[12] neuerꝑ[13] oppoñ him werre, ne[14] debate arere. ¶ And more-
ou*er* þai bihight to þe Kyng Alurede þat þai wolde go and brynge
her owen kyng vnto him, and þat herꝑ kyng[8] & þai aꝗ shulde[15]
bene[16] baptisede. & oppoñ þis condicioun, Kyng Alurede [17]ham 12
*gra*untede[17] lif and lyme, and saide to ham þat þai shulde goñ[18] here
kyng forto fecche,[19] and at a *cer*teyne day to come aȝeyne, þat to
ham was sette. ¶ And so þai went forþ fast, and come[20] aȝeyne at
here day þat was assignede, and alle þe Danois[1] brouȝt here kyng 16
wiþ ham. ¶ The Kyng Alurede anone lete ham ben[16] baptisede,
and here names chaungedꝑ,[21] so þat þe kyng of [22]Danois was
callede[22] Athelstoñ, & xxx^ti of his felaweȝ names[23] were chaungede
also, & þe o*þer*e were baptisede to þe right bileue; and aꝗ þis was 20
done[24] at Westmynstre.[25] and afterꝑ,[26] Kyng Alurede helde wiþ
him Kyng Athelstone & alle his Danois[1] xij daies at soiune[27]
wiþ miche[28] solempnite, andꝑ ȝaf ham grete ȝiftes afterꝑ [29]þat þai
were overcome,[29] and so þai dep*ar*tede. ¶ Tho was[30] Kyng Alurede 24
al at ese when he hade his enemys [31]ouercomen,[32] & þat þai were
t*ur*nede to þe[33] bileue of almiȝty Godꝑ.

How þe Danois[1] þat comen[34] into Fraunce wiþ Gurmonde,
come[35] aȝeyne into Engelandꝑ; & of þe deþ of Kyngꝑ 28
Aluredꝑ. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Nono.

[1] Danes O. [2] egreliche O. [3] strong O. [4] was O.
[5] þ*at* þe O. [6] mych O. [7–7] *MS.* þat þai þat þai; þat þei ne O.
[8] *om.* O. [9] wende and D. turne and O.
[10–10] they . . spek D. þey . . speke O. þai *om.* R. [11] token DO.
[12] þai nolde D. þei nold O. nolde R. [13] neu*ere*-more O.
[14] ne no DO. [15] schulden O. [16] be DO.
[17–17] *gra*ntede ham D. [18] go to D. go O. [19] fecche him D.
[20] comen O. [21] chaunge DO.
[22–22] Danoys callede was D. Danes called was O. [23] *om.* D.
[24] do D. [25] Wynchestre O. [26] after þat the D. after þ^e O.
[27] soio*ur*ne O. soionne or soioune R. [28] michel D.
[29–29] *om.* D. þat þai were R. [30] was þe O. [31] *leaf* 59, *back.*
[32] ou*er*come DO. [33] þe right D. [34] come D.
[35] comen DO.

And þus hit bifelle afterwarde, þat þe Danoys[1] of Northumberland, þat were paynemys, comen[2] with a grete host of Fraunce, þat is to vnderstonde, with ham þat went into Fraunce
4 with Gurmonde of Aufrik', when he hade conquerede Engeland, & it ȝaf vnto Saxon*us*. and þo þat come fro Fraunce arryuede in Kent, and sent into Northumberlande þat þai shulde come to ham. and whan þo ij hostes were comen[3] & assemblede, anone þai went
8 to destroie þe Cristen peple of Engeland fram[4] place vnto[5] place, and deden[6] miche sorwe. ¶ Hit bifelle þus, as almiȝty God hit[7] wolde, an harde chaunce in Engeland; ffor þe gode Kyng Alurede, þat was wont to abate þe Danois,[1] deide in þe mene-tyme. þis
12 Alured regnede xxx^ti^ ȝere, and a gode kyng' hade bene, and [8]wel couþe[8] chastice his enemys; And[9] was a gode clerc, and lete mak menye bokes. & on[10] boke he made of Englisshe, of Auentures of kynges and of batailes þat hade bene[11] done in þe lande; and
16 meny o*þer*e bokes of gestes, he lete ham write, þat were of grete wisdome and of' gode lernyng',[12] þrouȝ whiche bokes meny man[13] may him amende þat wille[14] ham rede and oppoñ lok; oppon whos soule almighty[7] God haue mercy! & þis Kyng Alurede
20 liþ at Wynchestr'.

Of Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Alured*us* sone. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* x^mo^.

[15]And after þis Alurede, regnede Edward his sone, þat was a gode
24 man & a wise, þat men callede [Edward], þat was[7] wonder curteise. ¶ The [16]Danois deden[16] miche sorwe in þe lande, and her' power' encresede, [17]and biganne forto wexe[17] fram[18] day to day, for þe Danois[1] comen ofte wiþ here companies into þis lande. and
28 when þe kyng saw þat[7] he [19]miȝt no[19] bettre [20]done, he tok[20] trewes with ham, and *gra*nted ha*m* his pees. ¶ And noþelesse þe trewes durede nouȝt longe, þat þe Danois[1] ne[7] bigonne [21]strongliche forto were[21] oppon þe Englisshe-men, & dede ha*m* miche sorwe. Wher-
32 fore Kyng' Edwarde dede assemble a grete hoste forto fiȝt with

[1] Danes O. [2] come D. [3] come O. [4] fro O.
[5] to DO. [6] dede O. [7] *om.* D. [8—8] couthe wel D.
[9] and he D. for he O. [10] o O.
[11] be O. [12] lyuyng O. [13] may *sic* D. [14] wole O.
[15] *leaf* 60. [16—16] Danes dide O. [17—17] *om.* D. [18] fro DO.
[19—19] ne myghte O. [20—20] do he nome DO.
[21—21] forto werr' strongliche D. strongly for-to werre O.

ham; and þo þis[1] Kyng Edwarde deide when God[2] wolde. This Kyng Edward regnede [3]xxiiij ȝere,[3] & liþ at Wynchestre bisides[4] his fader'.

Of Kyng Athel[s]tone, & of Edmunde, Eldrede, & of[5] Edwynne his broþer. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo ¶ Vndecimo. 4

After' þis Edward, regnede Athelstoñ his sone; & when he hade regnede iiij ȝere, he helde bataile aȝeynes þe Danois,[6] and drof Kyng Gaufride, þat was kyng of þe Danois,[6] and al his hoste 8 vnto þe see, & restede by Scotland, & nomen[7] strongliche[8] þe contrey al a ȝere. ¶ And after þat, þo of Cumberland', & þe Scottes of Westmerlande, bigonne to werre oppon Kyng Athelstoñ; and he ham ȝaf so strong' bataile þat he quellede so meny of ham þat no 12 man couþe telle þe nombre [9]of ham.[9] and after' þat he ne regnede but iij ȝere; & he regnede in al xxv ȝere and liþ at Malmesbery.

¶ And after þis [10]Athelstoñ, regnede Edmund his broþer, for-asmiche as Kyng Athelstoñ hade none[11] sone. and þis Edmu[n]de 16 was a worþi knyȝt, and a douȝty man[1] of body, [9]and a noble knyght.[9] and þe[12] þridde ȝere after'[1] þat he was kyng', he went ouer Humber', in whiche place he hade ij Kynges[13] of Danois[14]: þat one me callede Enelaf, and þat[15] oþer Renaud'. ¶ This Kyng 20 Edmund' drof' ham boþe fram[16] þe lande, and after went and tok' grete preye in Comberland'. ¶ This Edmund' ne[5] regnede but vij ȝer', and liþ at Glastynbery.

¶ And after' þis Edmunde, regnede[17] Eldrede his broþer,[18] þat 24 vengede Edwarde his fadre of his enemys þat him quelde; and aftirwarde[19] he seisede[20] Northumberland' into[21] his hand',[22] and made þe Scottes abowe and meke vnto his Wille. ¶ And þe secunde ȝere [23]þat he hade regned[23] [come] Arnalaf Quyran, þat was kyng 28 of Denmarc, and seisede al Northumberland', and helde þat lande ij ȝere. and after' þat come Kyng Eldrede wiþ a[1] grete power, and drof him oute of þis[24] lande. ¶ And þis Kyng Eldrede was a[25] noble man and a goode, of whos godenesse seynt Dunstoñ prechede. 32 & [26]þis Kyng Eldrede[26] regnede xj ȝere, & liþ at Wynchestr'.

[1] *om.* D. [2] *MS.* gode *with the* e *underlined for omission.*
[3—3] xiiij D. [4] bysyde O. [5] *om.* O. [6] Danes O. [7] nome DO.
[8] strongly O. [9—9] *om.* D. [10] *leaf* 60, *back.* [11] no DO.
[12] and the D. & þe O. and R. [13] knyghtes O. [14] Danes O. [15] þe O.
[16] fro O. [17] regne D. [18] sone D. [19] after þat O.
[20] sesed att O. [21] in O. [22] honde D. hond O. land' R.
[23—23] of his regne D. after þat he had regned' O. þat he hade reg R.
[24] his O. [25] was a DO. was R. [26—26] he O.

¶ And aft*er* þis Eldrede, Edwynne his broþ*er* regnede, & was a[1] luþ*er* man towarde God and to þe peple; for he hatede folc of his owen land, and louede & honourede [2]str*a*nge men,[2] & sette litel
4 by holy cherche, and[3] bynom[4] of holy cherche aH þe t*re*soure þat he myȝt haue: þ*a*t was grete shame and velonye to himself, and p*er*ile of his soule, & þ*er*fore God wolde nouȝt þat he shulde regne no long*er* than iiij ȝer, [5]and after[6] deide, and Lith at Wynchestre.

8 **Of Kyng Edgare, þat regned aboue þe kyng*us*[7] of Scotland & of Walys; & how he was bigilede þrouȝ takyng of his wif. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Duodecimo.**

A Nd after þis Edwynne, regnede Edgare his sone, a man þat
12 [8]miche louede[8] God, and pees, & holy cherche also, and was a worþi lorde, bolde and myghty, & mayntenede wel þis land in pees. ¶ And þis Edgare was [9]Kyng and lorde aboue[9] alle þe kynges of Scotland and of Walys: fram[10] þe tyme þat Arthure
16 was gone,[11] neu*er* was siþen[12] kyng of[13] his power. ¶ And þis Edgare was seynt Edwardes fader. And when Edgar*us* wif was dede, þat was seynt Edwardes mod*er*, & ent*er*ede, he herde speke of þe fairenesse of Estrilde, þat was Orgar*us* douȝt*er*, a barouñ of
20 Deuens*hire*, þat was so faire a woman þat alle men spake[14] þ*er*of. He callede one of his knyȝtes þat he miche louede & trust oppoñ, and tolde him: "Go," q*uod* he, "to þe noble Baroñ Orgar of Deuenshire, and se if his douȝt*er* be so faire as men speke[15] of; &
24 if it be soþ, y wil haue here vnto[16] my wif." ¶ þis knyȝt, þat me callede[17] Edelwolde, went forþ[18] þ*er*e þat[19] þe lady þo[20] was; & when he saw her so faire, he þouȝt haue her himself to wif, and þ*er*fore[21] spake to Orgar here fader. and Orgar was an olde[22] man,
28 & hade no mo childerne but here on; and saw þat Edelwolde was a faire ȝonge knyȝt, and worþi and riche, & was wel with þe kyng. & þouȝt his douȝt*er* shulde wel [23]bene[24] mariede, & wel bisette oppoñ him, and g*ra*untede him his douȝt*er*, if þe gode lorde þe
32 Kyng wolde assent[25] þ*er*to. ¶ þis Edelwolde come aȝeyn to þe

[1] *om* D. [2–2] Straungers O. [3] and DO. ne R.
[4] *MS.* bynoman *with* an *underlined for omission.* [5] *leaf* 61.
[6] *om.* DO. [7] kyng O. [8–8] loued mych loued *sic* O.
[9–9] lorde and kyng of D. lord & kyng aboue O. [10] fro O.
[11] gone & D. agoo & O. [12] seth O. [13] of Walys of O.
[14] speke O. [15] speken D. [16] to DO. [17] clepede D.
[18] forth his way & come DO. [19] as D. [20] *om.* O. [21] þ*er*of O.
[22] *MS.* holde, *with* h *underlined for omission.*
[23] *leaf* 61, *back.* [24] be DO. [25] consent D. consente O.

Kyng', and saide[1] 'she was faire ynow oppoñ to see, but of body she was wonder'[2] loþly.' ¶ þo ansuerede þe Kyng, and saide þat he toke of her litel charge. ¶ "Sire," q*uod* Edelwolde þo, "she is her' faderes heire, and y am nouȝt riche of londes,[3] and if ȝe wolde 4
consent and g*ra*nt[4] þat y most her haue, þan shulde y be riche ynow." "In Godes name," q*uod* þe Kyng, "I assent[5] þe*r*to." ¶ Edelwolde þankede þo michel[6] þe Kyng, and went aȝeyne into Deuenshire, & spousede þe damisel, and in[7] þat contre[8] duellede. 8
¶ And þus hit bifel oppoñ a tyme, þat he tolde his conseil & al þis þing' vnto his wif', how & in what maner' he hade bigilede his lorde þe Kyng', þat wolde haue hade her' to[9] wif'. and anone as she it wist, she louede him neue*r*more aft*er*warde[10] as she hade 12
done bifore. ¶ þis lady conseyuede by him a sone; and when tyme was þ*at* þis[11] childe[12] shulde ben born,[12] Eldelwolde come to þe Kyng', & praede him to heue a sone of his at þe fountstoñ. þe Kyng him g*ra*ntede, and lete calle hi*m* Edgare, after' his owen 16
name. ¶ And when þis w*as* ydoñ, he þouȝt þat he was siker' ynow of þe Kyng, for bifore þat tyme þis Edelwolde him[13] drede lest Kyng Edgare wolde haue taken[14] his wif', forasmiche[15] as his lorde was a Ioly man and an Amer*us*. 20

How þat[16] Kyng Edgare wedede Estrilde afte[17] þe deth of Edelwolde. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ terciodecimo.

THus hit bifelle, þat al men in Kyng Edgares court þo speken, and saide þat 'Edelwolde was richely auansede prouȝ þe 24
mariage þat he hade by his wif'; 'and ȝit,' þai saide, 'he was auauncede an hundred-folde more, for he hade spousede þe fairest woma*n* þat euer' was seyn.' and when þe Kyng herde speke so miche of here beaute, he þouȝt þo þat Edelwolde[18] hade him 28
desseyuede & bigilede, & þouȝt p*r*iuely[19] in his hert þat he wolde gone[20] into Deuenesshire, as it were forto hunt for hert and hynde and o*þe*re wilde bestes, and þan he shulde see[21] þ*e*re þe lady[21] or he departede þens. ¶ And þis lady was duellyng at a manere[22] bisides 32

[1] tolde him þat D. told' hym þat O. [2] *om.* O. [3] *om.* D.
[4] g*ra*nt þ*er*to D. [5] consent D. consente O. [6] myche D. mych O.
[7] in DO. *om.* R. [8] contre he D. Cu*n*tre he O. [9] *MS.* to to.
[10] after O. [11] þe DO. [12—12] shulde be be borne *sic* D. was bore O.
[13] hade D. had O. [14] tak D. take O. [15] *leaf* 62.
[16] þat Estrilde *sic* D. [17] aft*er* DO. [18] Edelde D. [19] p*r*iuelich D.
[20] go DO. [21—21] þan the lady þ*e*re D.
[22] maner' D. Man*e*re O. mane R.

þe forest' þ*er*e þat þe Kyng wolde hunte, and at þat maner was herburghede al[1] nyght. and when tyme come þat þe Kyng shulde sope, and þe sonne shoone, þe Kyng' axede after' his Gossib and
4 aft*er* his godsone, and Edelwolde made here[2] come bifore þe Kyng'; and noþeles, [3]and it[3] oþ*er* myȝt haue bene, she shulde nouȝt haue come*n*[4] in his sight bi his wille. ¶ þe lady welcomede[5] þe Kyng, and suetely him kissede; and he[6] toke[7] her' by[8] þe
8 hande, & þo [9]nexte him[10] her' sette, and so[9] soppede þai togeder'. ¶ And þo was a custume and an vsage þat, when a man drank' vnto[11] anoþ*er*, þe drynker' [12]shulde say 'Wassaile,' and þat oþ*er*e shulde ansure[8] 'drynkhaile': and þus dede [13]þe Kyng[13] & þe lady
12 meny tymes, & also kiste. ¶ And after soper', when tyme was to gone[14] to bede, þe Kyn[g] went vnto his bed, hertly[15] þenkyng oppoñ þe[16] ladies fairenesse; and þo was ouercomen[17] for here loue, þat him þouȝt he wolde[18] dye, but of here his wille he hade.
16 ¶ Oppoñ þe morwe þe Kyng aroos, and into þe fforeste went, him þ*er*e to desporte [19]& salace[19] wiþ hertes[20] and hyndes, and alle oþ*er* wilde bestes; & of þe[6] hertes grete plente, to þe[21] lady he sent; and þrise[22] he went to salace[23] and speke wiþ þat lady whiles he
20 duellede in þat contre. ¶ And after' þat, þe Kyng remevede þens, and þouȝt how he myghte best delyuer' Edelwolde[24] f[r]am his wif', as he hade him ferste desceyuede. and þe Kyng anone, after' viij dayes, lete ordeyne a p*ar*lem*en*t at Salesbury of al his baronage,
24 conseile to haue, & forto ordeyn how þe contre of Northumberland' miȝt beste bene[25] kepte,[26] þat þe Danoys[27] come nouȝt þ*er*e, the londe forto destroye. ¶ And þis Edelwolde come also to[28] þe Kynges P*ar*lement; and þe Kyng sent him to ȝork' forto bene[25] keper' of
28 þat contre. ¶ And þus hit fel,[29] þat men þat knew[30] him nouȝt, slow him by þe waye. ¶ And anone as þe Kyng herde þat he was dede, he lete sende after þe lady Estrilde, þat she shulde come to þe citee of Londoñ, and þ*er*e bene[31] weded' to[32] þe Kyng wiþ grete[33]
32 solempnite & worshipe; and' [34]helde a solempne fest; and he werede[35] a crone of [gold], and [36]þe Quene[36] anoþ*er*. ¶ And seynt

[1] al a O. [2] here to O. [3–3] if it D. if þat O. [4] come O.
[5] welcomed' þo D. [6] *om.* D. [7] name O. [8] *om.* O.
[9–9] she sate next by hi*m* and D. [10] hym by O. [11] to O.
[12] *leaf* 62, *back.* [13–13] *om.* D. [14] go DO. [15] hert *sic* D.
[16] þ*a*t O. [17] ou*er*come DO. [18] shulde D. schulde O.
[19–19] *om.* DO. [20] herte D. [21] þat DO. [22] iij O. [23] solacen O.
[24] Edwolde D. [25] be O. [26] kepede D. [27] Danes O.
[28] vnto O. [29] byfell O. [30] knew D. knewe O. know R. [31] be DO.
[32] vnto O. [33] miche D. [34] *leaf* 63. [35] wer' D. [36–36] sche O.

Dunstoñ [1]on þe morwe[1] come vnto þe Kyng' into þe Kyng*us*[2] chaumbre, and fonde þe Kyng' abed, & þe quene also in fere[3]; and seynt Dunstoñ axede who þat she was. ¶ þe Kyng ansuerede, "þis is þe Quene Estrilde." and þe Erchebisshop seynt Dunstañ 4 saide þat 'he dede grete wrong', and aȝeyns Godes wille to tak a woman to wif, whos childe he haþ[4] take at þe funtstoñ'; and þe Quene for þat worde neu*er* after' louede seynt' Dunstoñ; and noþeles þe gode man[5] warnede ha*m* ofte-tymes[6] þat folie to 8 lete; but his warnyng availede litel, for þe loue bituene[7] ham was so miche. ¶ þe Kyng bigate oppon her'[8] a sone þat me callede Eldred'; and when[9] þis childe was vj ȝer' olde, þe Kyng his fader' deide; & aboute þat tyme he hade regnede xvij ȝer', and lith 12 at Glastynbery.

Of seynt Edward' þe Martir'; how Estrilde his stepmoder' lete him quelle, forto make Eldred', her' owen sone, Kyng'.[10] Capit*ulo* [11]C*entesi*mo xiiij°.[11] 16

ANd aft*er* þis Edgare, regnede Edward' his sone, þat he bigate in[12] his ferst wif', þ*at* wel and noble[13] gou*er*nede þe lande; for he was ful of al man*er*[14] godenesse, and lad' ful holy lif'; & aboue[15] al þing he louede God' & holy cherche. & þe quene 20 Estrilde, his stepmoder', lete him slee, for enchesouñ to make her' owen sone Eldred' kyng'; and þus was he slayn,[16] as afterward ȝe shul her'. ¶ Hit bifelle þus oppoñ a day, þat þis Kyng Edwarde went him into a wode forto play in þe Southcontre, bisides a toune 24 þat is callede Warham; in þe whiche forest was grete plente of Hertes & of hyndes. and as he hade bene awhile þ*er*e him forto playe, he þouȝt[17] him[18] oppoñ his broþ*er* Eldred', þat Was wiþ his moder' þe quene, for her place was neyȝ þe forest'; & þouȝte forto 28 go[19] visite & see his broþ*er*; and tok[20] wiþ him but[21] a litel meny,[21] and went him þo toward' his Stepmoders house, þat in þat tyme soio*ur*nede in þe castel of Corf'. and as he rode in þe þickenesse of þe wode, to aspie his game, hit bifelle þat he went amys, & 32 loste his meny þat were wiþ him.[22] & at þe last he come out of þe

[1—1] amorowe O. [2] *om.* DO. [3] y-fere O. [4] hade D. had O.
[5] man often-tymes O. [6] *om.* O. [7] bitue D.
[8] þis wo*m*man D. þis woman O. [9] þo O. [10] *MS.* kyng' kyng'.
[11—11] cxv^to O. [12] on DO. [13] nobly DO. [14] man*ere* of O.
[15] aboþe *sic* D. [16] y-slayn O. [17] *leaf* 63, *back.*
[18] *MS.* he; *om.* DO. [19] and forto *sic* D. go & O. [20] nome O.
[21—21] litil meny D. a litil mayne O. [22] him comen D. hym come O.

wode; & as he lokede about, he saw þ*er*e faste [1]bisides him[1] þe
maner' þat his Stepmoder' duelled in; & þiderward he went[2] allon̄.
and anone hit was tolde þe Quene how þat þe Kyng was come*n*[3]
4 allone wiþout[4] co*m*pany; and þ*er*fore[5] she made ioye ynow, &
þouȝt how [6]she myȝt do[6] þat he were[7] slayn as p*r*iuely as she myȝt.
¶ And anone [8]p*r*iuely she called to her'[8] on of here knyȝtes, to
whom she hade tolde miche of here consel bituene[9] ham. and
8 boþe þai come[10] to þe Kyng', and curtesly him resceyuede; & þe
Kyng tolde þat he w*a*s com[11] her' to Visite, & also forto speke wiþ
Eldrede his broþ*er*. ¶ þe Quene meny tymes him þankede, and
him p*r*aiede to[12] aliȝt and herburgh wiþ her' [13]forto haue[13] al þat
12 nyght. þe Kyng saide þat he myght nouȝt, but aȝeyne he wolde
wende vnto his folc, if he myght ham fynde. ¶ And when þe
Quene[14] saw þat he wolde nouȝt abide, she p*r*aiede him þat he
wolde ones drynk'; & he g*r*auntede her'.[15] and anone as þe drynk
16 come, þe Quene drank' to þe Kyng', & þe Kyng toke[16] þe coppe &
sette hit to his mouþ. & in þe mene-tyme whiles þat he drank',
þe knyȝt þat was wiþ þe Quene, wiþ a knyf smote euen þe Kyng
to[17] þe hert, & þ*er*e he felle adoune dede of his palfray [18]vnto þe
20 erþe. ¶ the Quene, for þis dede, ȝaf to þe Knyȝt golde & siluer'
grete plente, and of oþ*er* richesse ynow. and þe knyȝt, anone as þis
was do,[19] went him ov*er*e[20] þe see; & so ascapede he oute of þis[21]
lande. ¶ When þis Kyng Edward þus was martrede, Hit was in
24 þe ȝere [22]aft*er* þe[22] Incarnacion̄ of[23] oure Lorde Ih*e*su C*r*ist', ix C. &
xx
iiij ȝer', and he hade regnede xij ȝere & an half, & lith at Glastenbery.

Of Kyng Eldrede; & how þe[24] Kyng Swyn̄ of Denmarc helde Engelond; & how Eldrede, þat was seynt Edwardes broþ*er*,
28 **w*a*s nouȝt bilouede in his[25] reme, and þ*er*fore fledde into Normandye. ¶ Capit*ulo* ¶ Centesimo ¶ Quintodecimo.**

After' þis Kyng Edward, regnede Eldrede his[26] broþ*er*;
and seynt Dunstan̄ c*r*onede him. & þis seynt Dunstan
32 deide sone aft*er* þat he hade forȝeue þe Quene her' t*r*espasse,

[1—1] bisides D. beside allone O. [2] rode D. [3] come O.
[4] withouten D. [5] þ*er*of D.
[6—6] þat she miȝt done D. þ*a*t sche myghte done O. she ne myȝt do R.
[7] nere DO. ne were R. [8—8] she callede to her' p*r*iuely D.
[9] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [10] comen DO. [11] comen D.
[12] forto D. al for-to O. [13—13] *om.* D. [14] kyng O. [15] *om.* D.
[16] nome DO. [17] vnto DO. [18] *leaf* 64. [19] done D. I-done O.
[20] ouer DO. oþ*e*re R. [21] the D. [22—22] of D. of of þ*e* *sic* O. [23] aftir O.
[24] *om.* O. [25] þe O. [26] *MS.* his cosyn *with* cosyn *underlined for omission.*

Estrild, for enchesoñ þat she was cause of Kyng Edwardes deth. and seynt Dunstañ hade her assoilede, and penaunce her enioynede; and she leuede after, chaste lif & clene. ¶ þis Kyng Eldrede wedede an Englisshe-woman; & on[1] here he[2] bigate 4 Edmunde Irenside, and anoþer sone[3] þat me callede Edwynne; and after, deide þe Quene his[4] moder. ¶ And in þat tyme come into Engeland Swyn, þat was Kyng of Denmarc, forto chalange and[5] conquere al þat his Ancestres hade[6] bifore þat tyme. & so 8 he conquerede, & hade it al at[7] his axing; ffor þe gode Erle Cuthbert of Lyndeseye, and al þe peple of Northumberland, & almost al þe grete of Engeland, helde with Swyne þat was[2] Kyng of Dennemarc, for-asmiche as þai louede nouȝt Kyng Eldrede, 12 ffor cause[8] þat his gode broþer Edward was slayn falsely [9]for enchesouñ of him[2]; and þerfore no man sette but litil bi hym; Wherfore Kyng Swyn hade al his wille, and toke al þe lande. ¶ And Eldrede þe Kyng [10]þo fledde[10] into Normandye,[11] and so[12] 16 spak to þe Duk, þat þe Duc ȝaf him his sustre to wif; oppoñ þe whiche he bigate ij sones: þat on me callede Alrud, & þat opere Edward. And when Swyn hade conquerede al þe lande, he regnede nobli, & leuede but xv ȝer, & deide, and liþ at Ȝork. 20

How Kyng Eldrede come aȝeyne fram[13] Normandye; & how Knoth[14] þe Danoys[15] regnede; & of þe wer bituene him & Edmunde Irenside. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Sexto decimo. 24

After þe deþ of Swyne, þat was a Danois, Knoght,[16] his sone, duellede in Engeland, and wolde haue bene[17] kyng. and þo come aȝeyn Eldrede out of Normandy, with miche[18] peple & wiþ [19]stronge meny,[19] þat Knoght derst nouȝt abide, but fley 28 þens into Denmarc. ¶ þe Kyng Eldrede hade aȝeyn his reaume, & helde so grete lordeshiþ þat he bigan to destroi al[20] þat hade holpen[21] Swyn, þat was a Danois, aȝeynes him.[22] ¶ And afterwarde come aȝeyn þis Knoght fram Denmarc, with a grete power, 32 so þat Kyng Eldre[de] derst nouȝt wiþ him fiȝt, but [23]fley fro[23]

[1] in O. [2] *om.* D. [3] broþer D. [4] her O. [5] & to O.
[6] haden D. [7] after D. [8] enchesoun D. encheson O.
[9] *leaf* 64, *back.* [10—10] fled þo O. [11] Norway D. [12] þo O.
[13] fro DO. [14] Knogh D. Knoght O. [15] Danes O.
[16] knyght O. [17] be O. [18] michel D.
[19—19] a strong nauye D. a strong meyny O. [20] alle ham D. alle þo O.
[21] holpe O. [22] hym & his reume O. [23—23] fledde D. fledde fro O.

þens vnto[1] Londoñ, & *þer*e helde him. ¶ þo come Knoght, and him bisegede so longe til[2] Kyng Eldrede diede in þe cite of Londoñ, and liþ at seynt Paules; & he regnede ix ȝere.

4 Of Kyng Knoght. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Septuagesimo.[3]

After þe deth of þis Eldred, Knoght, þat was a Danois, bigan
þo forto regne, but Edmunde [4]Irenside,[5] þat was Kyng
Eldred*us* sone by his ferst wif, ordeynede a grete host, & bigan to
8 werr oppoñ Kyng Knoght; and so he dede meny tymes and ofte;
and þe werre was so st[r]onge and harde, þat wonder hit[6] w*a*s to
wete. ¶ And þe Quene Emme, þat duelled[7] þo at Wynchestre,
hade g*r*ete drede of her ij sones, for[8] þe werr of[6] Alured & Edward,
12 leste þai shulde ben[9] defoulede & misdoñ þrouȝ þis[10] werre, wherfore
she sent ham ou*er* þe se into Normandy, to þe duc[10] Richard her
Vncle; and *þer*e þai duelled[11] in safte and pees longe tyme. ¶ þis
Edmunde[12] Irenside[13] & Knouȝt[14] werrede strongliche to-geder[14];
16 but at þe laste þai were accorded in þis maner, þat þai shulde
departe þe reaume bituenes[15] ham; and so þai deden; & after, þai
bicome[16] gode frendes, and so wel louede[17] togederes as þai [18]hade
bene briþ*er*,[18] gete*n*[19] of o[20] body, & of[21] o mod*er* borñ.

20 How Kyng Edmunde Irenside t*rait*e*r*ousely[22] was slayn, þrouȝ a tratour þat me callede Edrith[23] of Stattoñ. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* xviij^mo^.

And after, þo regnede Kyng Edmunde Irenside and Knoght
24 þe Danois. but þus it fel[24] aftirward, and in þe same ȝere
þat þai were accorded, and somiche loueden[25] toged*er*, wherof[26] a
false þef t*rai*toure hade enuy vnto þe loue þat was bituene ham,
and frendeship, whos name was Edrith[27] of Strattoñ, þat w*a*s a
28 grete lorde, þat[28] was Edmu*n*de Irensides man, & of him helde aH
þe londe þat he hade. ¶ And noþeles he þouȝt his lorde to bitraie,

[1] in-to O. [2] til þat D. [3] Sextodesimo D. [4] *leaf* 65.
[5] Irensides O. [6] *om.* O. [7] dwelt O. [8] of DO. [9] be DO.
[10—10] *om.* D. [11] dwelt O. [12] Edward D. [13] Irensides O.
[14—14] werrede st*r*ongely togederes D. werreddyn strongly to-gidere O.
[15] betwen O. [16] becomen O.
[17] loued þat þai bicome sworen breþ*er*ne and so wel loueden D. loued þat þei becomen swore bretheryn & so wel loued O.
[18—18] hadene ben breþ*er*ne D. had ben brethryn O. [19] gotyn O.
[20] on O. [21] *om.* D. [22] *om.* D. traytoursly O.
[23] Edrik D. Edrich O. [24] bifel D. [25] loued O. [26] wherfore D.
[27] Edrik D. [28] & D.

& make Knoght kyng' of þe lande, [1]to þat[1] entent' richely to ben
auauncede, & wiþ him bene[2] wel bilouede. ¶ Wherfore he praiede[3]
his lorde, Edmunde [4]Irenside,[5] [6]oppoñ a day[6] wiþ him forto eten,
and wiþ him duelle. and þe kyng curteisly him g*ran*tede, & to 4
him come at his praier'; and at þe mete þe kyng richely[7] w*as*
s*er*uede with diu*er*se metis & drynkes. ¶ And when nyght come
þat he shulde gone[8] to bede, [9]þe kyng'[9] tok' his owen meny, & went
into chambre. & as he lokede[10] aboute, he saw[11] a wond*er* faire 8
ymage, & wel made,[12] & in[13] semblant [14]as it were[14] an Archire,
wiþ a bowe bent in his honde, & in þe bowe a fyne Arwe. ¶ Kyng
Edmunde went þo neir', to biholde hit bettr', what it miȝte bene[15];
and anone as his honde tochede þe Arwe, anone þe arwe him smote 12
[16]þrouȝ þe[16] body, & þ*er*e slough þe kyng'; for þat engyne was made
to quelle his[17] lorde t*rai*t*er*ously.[18] ¶ And [6]when þe[6] Kyn[g]
Edmund' [19]þ*us* w*as* dede &[19] slayn, he nad[20] regnede but x ȝere.
his peple for him made miche sorw, and his body þai bare to[21] 16
Glastenbury and þ*er*e þai him ent*er*ede. ¶ And þus[22] t*rai*t*our*
Edrik'[23] anone went to þe Quene, þat was Kyng Edmundes wif', þat
wiste of here lordes deþ. anone he [24]toke fram her' hir'[24] ij sones,
þat were faire and ȝong', þat her' lorde hade oppoñ hier' geten,—&[25] 20
þat on me callede ¶ Edward, & þat oþ*er* Edwyn,—& lade ha*m* wiþ
him to[26] Londoñ, and toke ha*m* vnto Kyng Knoght, þat he shulde
done[27] with ham what his willes[28] were; & tolde him how queyntly
he hade [29]quellede Kyng Edmunde,[29] for enchesouñ & loue of him, 24
so þat Kyng Knoght aH Engeland'[30] in his power' holly[31] miȝt haue.
¶ "O þow false t*rai*toure! haste þow my trewe wedbroþ*er*[32] slayn
for cause[33] [34]of me? a man þat y moste Louede in þe Worlde. now,
be myn[35] heuede,[36] I shal for þi t*ra*uail þe wel reward' as þow hast 28
des*er*uede!" and anone [37]lete him take and bynde,[37] hondes & feete
in man*er* of a t*rai*tour', & lete caste him into[38] Thamise; and in þis

[1—1] in O. [2] be D. [3] p*rai*ede oppon a day D. [4] *leaf* 65, *back*.
[5] Irensides O. [6—6] *om.* D. [7] realy D. rially O. [8] go DO.
[9—9] *om.* O. [10] *MS.* lokede lokede. [11] say O. [12] y-made DO.
[13] in the D. [14—14] of D. [15] be O. [16—16] þroutoute his D.
[17] his owen D. his owne O. [18] treitously O.
[19—19] was dede & þus D. [20] had O. [21] vnto DO.
[22] þis false D. þis fals O. [23] Edrith O.
[24—24] toke fram *sic* D. nome fro here O. [25] *om.* DO.
[26] vnto DO. [27] do DO. [28] wil DO.
[29—29] quellede Edmund' Irenside D. y-qwelled Kyng Edmund' O.
[30] Engeland' holich D. [31] *om.* D. hollych O.
[32] wedded' broþ*er* D. brother O. [33] enchesoñ DO. [34] *leaf* 66.
[35] my O. [36] *om.* D. hed O. [37—37] lete bynde hi*m* D.
[38] into the D. in-to þ^e O.

maner' þe false[1] *tra*itour' endede his lif'. ¶ þe Kyng [2]tok' þo ij childerne to[2] þe Abbot of Westmynstr', [3]to warde[3] and to kepe til he wiste what was beste [4]wiþ ha*m* to done.[4]

4 How Kyng Knoght sent Edmundes sones[5] boþe into Denmarc forto slee; & how[6] þai were sauede. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* xix^mo^.

8 HIt bifelle sone after' þat Kyng Knoght hade al þe lande into[7] his hande and spousede þe[1] Quene Emme þrou3 consent of his baronage, for she was a faire wo*m*man, & was Eldredes wif', and þe dukes suster' of Normandye: & þai [8]leueden to-geder'[8] with miche[9] loue, as resoun wolde. ¶ þe Kyng axede oppon a day conseile
12 of þe Quene, what was beste forto[10] done[11] wiþ the sones þat wer' [12]Edmundes Irenside.[12] ¶ "Sire," q*uod* she; "þai [13]beþ þe[13] right heir's of þe londe; & if þai leuen, þai wille do 3ow miche sorwe with[14] werr'; and þe*r*for lete sende ha*m* into a strange lande aferr',[15] to some
16 man þat may ha*m* defoule[16] & destroie." ¶ The Kyng anone lete calle a Danois þ*at* me callede Walgar', and co*m*mandede him þat he shulde lede[17] þo ij childerne into Denmarc, and so do for ha*m*[18] þat neuer' [19]þai herde[19] more tydyng*us*[20] of ha*m*. "Sir'," saide þis
20 Walg*er*, "gladely 3oure co*m*mandement shal bene[21] done," ¶ And tok[22] þo[23] ij childerne, & lad ha*m* into Denmarc. & for-asmiche as [24]he saw þat þe childern were wonder' fair', and also meke,[25] he had of ham grete pitee and reuthe, & wolde nou3t ham slee,
24 but lade ha*m* to þe Kyng of Hung*r*ie forto norisshe: For this Walgar' was [26]wel knowen[26] wiþ þe Kyng, and [27]wel bilouede.[27] ¶ Anone þe Kyng axede whens þe childern were. ¶ And Walger tolde him, & saide þat 'þai were þe right heir's of Engeland', &
28 þe*r*for men wolde ha*m* destroye'; "and þe*r*fore, sire, to 3ow þai [28]beþ comen,[28] mercy & helpe to biseche; & forsoþ [29]if þai mowen leue,[29]

[1] *om.* O.
[2–2] nome þe ij chelderne & tooke ha*m* D. nome þ^o^ ij Childryn & took hem O.
[3–3] forto norisshe D. [4–4] to done with hem O.
[5] sones Irenside D. [6] boþe D. [7] in DO.
[8–8] leueden togederes D. loued to-gidere O. [9] mychel O.
[10] to D. [11] do O.
[12–12] Edmunde Irensides D. Edmund' Irensides O.
[13–13] beth D. ben O. [14] sorwe with D. sorow with O. sorwe R.
[15] wel ferre D. [16] defoyle O. [17] lete O.
[18] hem & ordeyne O. [19–19] we her' D. [20] tydynge O.
[21] be O. [22] nome O. [23] the D. [24] *leaf* 66, *back*. [25] *om.* D.
[26–26] wel biknowen D. y-knowen O. [27–27] beloued wel O.
[28–28] ben come O. [29–29] and þai mow leuen D. if þey now lyve O.

ȝour' men þai shullen[1] becomen, and of ȝow þai[2] [3]shal holde[3] al hire land. ¶ The Kyng of Hung*r*ie ha*m*[4] vnderfonge with michel[5] honour', and lete ham worthely to bene[6] kepte.

¶ And þus hit bifelle aft*er*warde, þat Edwyne, þe ȝong*er* bro*þer*, 4
deide, and Edward þe elder[7] bro*þer* leuede, a fair' man,[8] a stronge,
& a[9] large of body, and gentil and curteise of condicions, so þat alle
men him louede. ¶ And þis Edward, in þe c*r*onicles is callede
amonges[10] Englisshemen, 'Edward þe outelaghe.' And when he 8
was made knyght, þe Kyng*us* dought*er* of Hungary so miche him
louede, for his godenesse and his fairenesse, þ*a*t she made & callede
him her' derlyng'. ¶ The Kyng þ*a*t was her' fader', p*er*ceyuede wel
þe loue þat was bituene ham too, And hade non heir' but þat 12
dought*er*. And þe Kyng fouchede his douȝt*er* to no man so[11] wel
as he dede vnto him þ*a*t her'[12] louede, & she him; & he ȝaf here to
him wiþ gode wille; and Edward her' spousede wiþ michel[13]
hono*ur*. ¶ The Kyng of Hung*r*ie sent after' al his baronage, & 16
made a solempne [14]fest and[15] ryche weddyng', and made al men
to[16] vnderstonde þat he shulde ben[17] Kyng when[18] he were
dede; and [19]þ*er*of þai maden al[19] gret ioye; and of þat tydyng[20]
þai wer' ful glade. ¶ þis Edwarde þigate oppon þis lady a sone 20
þ*a*t me callede Edgar Helyng', and aft*er*ward, a dought*er* þat me
callede Margarete, þat afti[r]ward was Quene of Scotland; and,
by þe Kyng of Scotland þat me callede Maucolom, she hade a
douȝt*er* þat was[21] callede Maude, [22]þ*a*t afterwarde was Quene[22] 24
of Engeland þrouȝ Kyng Henry, þat w*a*s þe ferst sone of þe
Conqueroure, þat her' weded; & he bigate on her' a douȝt*er*' þat
me callede Maude, þat aft*er*ward was Emp*e*resse of Almaigñ; and
of þis Maude come Henry[23] þe Kyng of Engeland, þat into þis 28
day is callede 'Henry, þe Emp*e*resse sone.' ¶ And ȝit hade þis
Edward anoþer' douȝt*er*[16] by his wif, þat me called Cristian, and
she was a none.

[1] shul D. [2] *MS.* þai sla, *with* sla *underlined for omission.*
[3—3] schullen holden O. [4] he*m* vndirtook' & O.
[5] mych O. [6] be O. [7] eldest D. [8] man & DO.
[9] *om.* O. [10] among' O. [11] as O. [12] he DO.
[13] mych O. [14] *leaf* 67. [15] and a DO.
[16] *om.* D. [17] be O.
[18] whe*n* þat D. whan þ*a*t O.
[19—19] þerfore alle þai maden D. þ*er*fore alle þey made O.
[20] tydynges D. [21] me DO.
[22—22] þat was quene aft*er*ward' D. þ*a*t was qwen afterward' O.
[23] *om.* DO.

How Kyng Knoght, þat was a proude man, conquered [1]Norwaye; & how he bicome afterwarde[1] meke.[2] Capitulo Centesimo ¶ xx^mo^.

4 NOw haue ȝe[3] herde of Edmundes [4]sones wiþ þe[4] Irenside, þat Kyng Knoght wende[5] þai hade ben dede, as he hade commandede Walger bifor'. ¶ And this Knoght[6] hade in his honde al Engeland' and Denmarc. And after [7]þat, he went to[7] Norwaye,
8 þat londe to conquere. ¶ But þe Kyng of þe lande þat me callede Elaf, come with his peple, & wende his lande wel[8] haue kepte & defendede; & so[3] þere he fauȝt with ham, til at þe laste he was slayn in þat bataile; & þo[3] þis Knoght toke[9] al þat lande [10]into his
12 hande. ¶ And when he hade conquerede al[6] Norwaye, and taken[11] feautes & homages þere, he come after' aȝeyne into Engeland', and helde him-self' so grete[12] lorde, þat him þouȝt in al þe worlde [13]no man his pier'[13] was; & bicome so prout & hauten þat hit was grete
16 wonder'. ¶ And so[3] hit bifelle, oppoñ a day as he hade herde masse at Westmynstre, and wolde haue gone[14] into his palice, þe [15]water of[15] Tamise so swiftely [16]aȝeynes him comen,[16] þat Almost hit[17] tochede his fete. þo saide þe Kyng with a prout hert, "y com-
20 mande þe water[18] turne aȝeyn, or elles[19] y shal þe make." þe wawys for his commandement wolde nouȝt[20] spare, but [21]flowede euer' on[21] hye more & more. ¶ The Kyng was so prout of hert þat he wolde nouȝt flee þe water, but abode stille in þe water, and bete þe water
24 wiþ a smal ȝerd þat he helde in his hande, & comandede þe water þat it shulde wende no ferþere; but for al his commandement þe water wolde nouȝt cesse, but euer' waxe more & more an hye, so þat þe Kyng was al wete, and stode depe in þe water. ¶ And when he
28 saw þat he hade abide þere or[22] longe, & þe water wolde noþing done[23] his commandement, þo sone he wiþdrowe him, and þo stode[24] oppoñ a stone & helde his hondes[3] an hye, & saide þis worde[25] in heryng' of al þe peple: "¶ þis God þat makeþ þe see[26] þus arise an[27]

[1—1] Normandy & after become O.
[2] mek and milde D. meke & mylde O. [3] *om.* D.
[4—4] sones with O. sone wiþ þe R. [5] went *þat* O. [6] *om.* O.
[7—7] he went into D. [8] weel to O. [9] nome DO. [10] *leaf* 67, *back.*
[11] tok D. [12] stronge a D. gret a O.
[13—13] nomas *sic* D. his pere no man O. [14] go O.
[15—15] wawys of the D. wawys of O. [16—16] aroos aȝens hym O.
[17] þai D. þei O. [18] water to DO. [19] elł O.
[20] wolde nouȝt D. wold not O. wolde R.
[21—21] folwede euer on D. flowed in O. [22] ouere to D. to O.
[23] do D. [24] stepe D. [25] wordes DO. [26] wat*er* D. [27] a D.

hye, he is Kyng of alle Kynges, & of myghtes most; & y ame a caitif and a man dedly, & he[1] may neuer dye; & alle þing[2] doth his *com*mandeme*n*t, & to hi*m* is obedient. ¶ To þat God Y praye [3]þat he be my waraunt, for y knowliche me caitif feble, & of none[4] 4 power; and þ*er*fore y wil gone[5] to Rome wiþout eny lettyng, my Wickednesse[6] forto[7] punisshe, and me to amende; ¶ ffor of þat God y cleyme my landes[8] forto holde, and of none o*þer*e"; and anone made his heir, and him-self [went][9] to Rome wiþouten[10] eny 8 lettyng, & by þe way dede meny almes dedes, & when he come to Rome also. ¶ And when he hade bene[11] þ*er*e, and for his synnes done penaunce, he come aȝeyne into Engeland, and bicome a gode man and an holy, and lefte al man*er* pride & stoutenesse, & leuede an 12 holy lif al his lif aft*er*, and made ij Abbayes[9] of seynt Benet, one in Engeland & [12]þat o*þer*e[12] in Norway, for-asmiche as he louede specialy[13] seynt Benet bifore al o*þer*e seyntes; and miche he louede also seynt Edmunde þe kyng; & ofte he ȝaf grete ȝiftes to þe hous, 16 wherfore it[14] w*a*s made ryche. and when he had regnede xx ȝere, he deide, & liþ at Wynchestr.

Of Kyng Harolde, þat leuer hade gone in[15] foot þa*n* ryde on hors. Capit*ulo* C*entesi*mo xx[i]^{mo}. 20

THis Knoght, of wham y[16] haue spoken[17] bifor,[18] hade ij sones by his wif; & þat on me callede Herdiknoght, & þat o*þer*e Harolde; and he was so [19]liþ of[19] fote þat men callede him þ*er*fore[20] Harolde Harefote. & þis Harolde hade noþing þe [21]condicions ne 24 maners[21] of Kyng Knoght þat was his fader, for he sette but litil pris of chyualry ne of curtesye, neyþ*er* of worship, but onely by his owen wille; & he bicome so wickede þat he exilede his moder. & þo [22]she went[22] out of þe[23] land into Flaundres, & þere she[24] 28 duellede[25] wiþ þe Erl; wherfor aft*er* þ*er*e was neu*er* gode loue bituene him & his broþ*er*, for his broþ*er* him hatede dedely; and when he hade regnede ij [yere] & a litil [26]more,[27] he deide, & liþ at Westmynstre. 32

[1] and he DO. and R. [2] þing DO. þis R. [3] *leaf* 68. [4] no DO.
[5] go DO. [6] wyknesse O. [7] to DO. [8] londe D. land O.
[9] *om.* D. [10] with-oute O. [11] be O. [12—12] another D.
[13] specialy R. specialy seynt Benet D. specially Seynt Benet O.
[14] is *sic* D. [15] on DO. [16] we DO. [17] spoke O.
[18] tofore D. [19—19] light on D.
[20] þ*er*fore co*m*muneliche D. þ*er*fore comu*n*lich O.
[21—21] maners ne condicions D. Condic*i*ons in þe man*er*e O.
[22—22] went she D. went O. [23] this D. [24] *om.* DO.
[25] dwelt O. [26] *leaf* 68, *back.* [27] *MS.* mory.

Of Kyng' Hardiknoght, þat was Haroldes broþer. Capitulo Centesimo xx[i]j^mo^.

After' þis Harolde Harefoot, regnede his broþer Hardiknoght', a
4 noble Knyght & a worþi, & miche louede chiualrye and al
maner' godenesse. ¶ And when þis Hardiknoght[1] hade regnede a
litil while, he lete vncouere his broþer Harolde, and [2]smote of his
Heuede[2] þat was his broþer, at Westmynstr', and lete caste þe
8 heuede[3] into a gonge, and þe body [4]into þe[4] Tamyse. and after'
come fisshers, & toke[5] þe body wiþ her' nettes by nyght, and' bere
him vnto[6] seynt Clementȝ cherche, & þere him buryede; and in þis
maner' avengede him Hardeknoght of his broþer, for in none opere
12 maner' þai[7] mygh nouȝt [8]hym avenge.[8] ¶ This Kyng Hardiknoght
was so large ȝeuer' of mete and of[9] drynk', þat his tables were sette
[10]euer' þre tymes ful[10] wiþ real[11] metes for his owen mayne[12], & for
al þat [13]comen to[13] his court' to bene[14] rychely seruede of[15] real metes.
16 ¶ And þis Kyng' Hardeknoght sent after' Emme his moder', & made
hir' come aȝeyne into Engeland', ffor she was dryue[16] out of Enge-
land' whiles þat Harolde Harefote regnede, þoruȝ conseil of þe Erl
Godwyne, þat þo was þe grettest lorde of al Engeland' next þe kyng',
20 and moste myght done[17] what he wolde [18]þrouȝ al[18] Engeland' [19]þrouȝ
his commaundement,[19] for-asmiche as he hade spousede þe doughter
of þe gode Kyng Knoght þat was a danoys, whiche doughter he
hade by his ferst wif'. ¶ And when þis quene was dryuen[20] out of
24 Engeland', & come to þe Erl of Flaundres þat me callede Balde-
wynne, her'[21] cosyn, [22]he fonde here þere al þing' þat hir nedede,[23]
Vnto the tyme þat she[24] went aȝeyne into Engeland', þat þe Kyng'
Hardiknoght hade sent for[25] her', þat was her' sone, & made here
28 come aȝeyn wiþ michel[26] honour. ¶ This Kyng Hardeknoght,[27]
when he hade v ȝere regnede, he deide, & liþ at Wynchestre.

Of þe Vylonye þat þe Danoys[28] dede to þe[29] Englisshe-men; wherfore fro þat tyme afterward' was none[30] Danoys[28]
32 **made Kyng [31]of Engeland'.[31] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Vicesimo iij°.**

[1] *MS.* Harolde. [2—2] smyte of his heed' O. [3] heed O. [4—4] in O.
[5] to *sic* D. [6] to DO. [7] he DO.
[8—8] bene avenged' D. be auenged O. [9] *om.* DO.
[10—10] euery tyme þrise ful D. everyday iij tymes O. [11] ful ryal O.
[12] maymen R. meny D. meyne O. [13—13] come vnto D. [14] be D.
[15] with D. [16] dryuen D. [17] do D. [18—18] þrouȝ-oute D.
[19—19] *om.* D. [20] dryve O. [21] his RO. her' D. [22] *leaf* 69.
[23] nedeth D. [24] he D. [25] after D. [26] miche D. mych O.
[27] Harolde D. [28] Danes O. [29] *om.* O. [30] no DO. [31—31] *om.* O.

After þe deth of þis Kyng Hardeknoght, forasmiche as he nad [1]non heire[1] of his body bigeten,[2] þe Erles and barons assembled and maden[3] a counseil; and neuer-more after þat tyme no man þat was a Danois, þouȝ he [4]were ner[4] so grete a man 4 amonges ham, he shulde neuer bene[5] Kyng of Engeland, for þe despite þat þe Danois[6] hade done to þe[7] Englisshemen. ¶ For euermore biforne-honde,[8] if it were so þat Englisshe-men & Danois[9] hapden to mete oppoñ a bruge, þe Englisshe[10]-men shulde nouȝt bene[11] so herdy to meve ne stere on[12] foot, but stande stiH, til [13]þat þe Danois[13] were passede forth. ¶ And more-ouer, if þe Englisshe-men hade nouȝt bowede adouñ here heuedes,[14] to done reu*e*rence vnto þe Danois,[9] þai shulde haue bene bete & defoulede; & soche 12 maner despites and Vilonyes deden þe Danois[9] to oure Englisshe-men; Wherfore þai were dryuen out of þe lande after þe[15] tyme þat Kyng Herdeknoght was dede, for þai [16]had non[16] lord þat ham myght mayntene. In þis maner voided þe Danois[9] Engeland, þat 16 neuer þai comen[17] aȝeyne. ¶ þe Erles and barouns, by here co*m*-mune assent & conseile, senten [18]into Normandy forto seche þo ij bre*þer*n Alurede & Edward, *þat* were duellyng wiþ þe duk Richard þat was here eme, [19]to *þat*[19] intent forto *cr*one Alurede þe elder 20 bro*per*, & him make Kyng of Engeland, and of þis þing to make an ende, þe erles & barons made[20] her oth; But þe Erl Godwyne of Westsex falsely[21] þouȝt to slee þo ij bre*per*ne anone as þai shulde come into Engelonde, [22]to þat[22] entente forto make his sone Harolde 24 Kyng, þe whiche sone he hade bigete oppoñ his wif, þat was Kyng Knoghtes dought*er*, þat was a Danoys. ¶ And þis Godwyn pryue-liche[23] went him to Southampton, forto mete *þer*e þo ij bre*per*n when þat þai shulde come to lande. ¶ And þus hit bifelle, þat þe 28 messagers þat wenten[24] into Normandye, fonden[25] nouȝt but onely Alurede, þat was þe eldest[26] bro*per*; for Edward, his ȝonger[27] bro*per*, w*a*s gone[28] to Hung*r*ie forto speke wiþ his cosyn Edward þe outelaw, þat was Edmondes sone wiþ þe Irenside.[29] ¶ þe messagers 32

[1–1] none childe D. no Child O. [2] bigete D. begete O.
[3] made D. [4–4] wer neu*er* D. neu*er*e were O. [5] be DO.
[6] Danys O. [7] *om.* DO. [8] bifore-honde D. [9] Danes O.
[10] *MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl.* 490 (D) *has a page cut out here, and does not continue until leaf* 70, *back, of the Rawlinson MS.*
[11] be O. [12] o O. [13–13] þe Danes O. [14] hedes O. [15] *om.* O.
[16–16] nad non O. [17] come O. [18] *leaf* 69, *back.* [19–19] en O.
[20] maden O. [21] falsly & traytously O. [22–22] in O. [23] priuily O.
[24] wente O. [25] founde O. [26] Eldere O. [27] *om.* O.
[28] went O. [29] Irensides O.

tolde & saide to Alurede, how þat þe Erles & barons of Engeland
senten[1] aftr̃ him, and þat he boldeliche shulde come into Engel*and*
and vnderfonge þe reaume; for Kyng Herdeknoght was dede, &
4 alle þe [2]Danois were dryuen[2] out of þe lande.

How Godewyne, þe false tr*ai*toure, tok Alurede oppoñ Gildesdouñ, when he come fro Normandye to bene[3] Kyng of Engeland, & dede him bene[3] martrede in þe Ile of Ely.
8 **Capit*ulo* C*entesi*mo xxiiij^to^.**

WHen Alurede herde þis tydynges,[4] he þankede God, & into shipp went, wiþ al þe hast þat he myght, and passede þe see, & arryuede at Southamptoñ, *per*e þat Godewyne þe t*rai*tour̃
12 was. And when[5] þis tr[a]itoure [6]saw þat he was comen,[7] he welcomede him & vnderfonge hi*m* wiþ michel[8] ioye, and saide þat he wolde lede him to Londoñ, *per*e þat al þe [9]lordes & barons[9] of Engeland him abode, forto maken[10] him kyng. and so þai wenten[11]
16 in her̃ way toward London. & when þai comen[7] oppon Gildesdoune, þo saide þe t*rai*toure Godwyne to Alurede,[12] "takeþ kepe,"[13] q*uod* he, "aboute ȝow, boþ on[14] þe lefte side & in þe ryght side; and of all ȝe shul bene[3] kyng, & of suche an hundrede more."
20 ¶ "Now forsoþe," q*uod* Alurede, "I behote, & if y be kyng, I shal ordeyn & make soche lawes wherof God & all folc shullen [15]holden ham wel paied."[15] ¶ Now hade þe t*rai*toure comaunded alle his men þat were wiþ him, þat when þai were comen[7] oppon
24 Gildesdouñ, þat þai shulde slee alle þo þat were in Aluredes company þat comen wiþ him fram[16] Normandye, and after þat, taken[17] Alurede, & lede him into þe Ile of Ely, & *per*e put out boþe his eyne of his heued,[18] and afterward bryng him vnto þe[19] deth. & so
28 þai deden, ffor þai quellede al his co*m*pany þat xij [hundred] were in nombre,[20] of gentil-men þat were comen[7] wiþ Alurede fra*m*[16] Normandye; And aft*er* token[21] Alurede, & lade hi*m* into þe Ile of Ely, & put out his[22] eyen of his heuede,[23] & rent his wombe, & token[24]
32 þe chief of his bowailes, & put a stake into þe gronde, & an ende of his[22] bowailes *per*to fastenede, & wiþ nedles of Iren [25]pricked þe body of[25] þe gode childe, and so made[26] him gone[27] aboute þe stake

[1] sent O. [2—2] Danes dryven were O. [3] be O. [4] tydynge O.
[5] þo O. [6] *leaf* 70. [7] come O. [8] mych O.
[9—9] baroñs & lordes O. [10] make O. [11] went O.
[12] Alured & seyd O. [13] heed O. [14] in O. [15—15] hem wel paye O.
[16] fro O. [17] take O. [18] heed O. [19] *om.* O. [20] Cumpanye O.
[21] nomen O. [22] þe O. [23] heed O. [24] nome*n* O.
[25—25] prikeden O. [26] maden O. [27] go O.

til þat his bowales were [1]alle drawen[1] out: & so deide *per*e Alurede,
þrouȝ t*re*soñ of þe Erl Godwyne. ¶ When þe lordes of Engeland
[2]hade herde & wist how Alured, þat shulde have ben her kyng,
was put to[3] deþ þrouȝ þe false t*rai*toure, þe Erl Godwynne, þai 4
weren[4] al wonder wroth, & swore bituene ha*m*, by[5] God & [6]by
his[6] names, þat he shulde die in mor worse deth þan dede Edrik of
Strattoñ, þat hade bitraiede his Lord E[d]munde Ironside.[7] and
þai wolde haue taken him, & put him vnto þe deþ, but þe þef 8
t*rai*toure fley[8] þens into Denmarc, & *per*e helde him iiij ȝere &
more, & loste all his londes[9] in Engeland.

Of Seynt Edward þe Confessoure, *þat* was Aluredes bro*per*; [10]How he was Kyng [11]of Engelande.[11] ¶ Capit*ulo* ¶ Cen- 12 t*esimo* ¶ xxv^to^.[12]

AND when þis [13]was done,[13] alle þe Barons of Enge[land] senten
ano*per* tyme into Normandye, for þat Edward shulde[14] come
into Engeland with michel[15] hono*ur*. And þis Edward in his 16
childehode louede al-myghty God, & [16]him drade,[16] & in honeste
and clennesse leued[17] his lif, and hatede synne as deþ. ¶ And
when he was c*r*onede[18] and annoyntede wiþ[19] real power, he forȝate
nouȝt his gode maners & condicions [20]& custumes[20] þat he ferst 20
vsede,[21] for no maner hono*ur*, ne for no[5] richesse, ne for no man*er*
hyenesse, but eu*er* more &[22] more ȝaf him to godenesse, and wel
louede God & al mekenesse, & louede God & holy cherche passyng
al man*er* þing, & pore me*n* also, & ham[23] helde as þai hade bene 24
his owen bre*per*ne, & to ham ofte ȝaf grete almesse wiþ gode wille.

Of þe ferst specialte þat God shewede for seynt Edwardes[24] loue by his lif. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ xxv[j]^to^.

[25]HIt bifelle oppoñ a day as he went fram[26] þe che[rch] of 28
Westmynstre, & hade herde masse of seynt Iohan
Eu*au*ngelist, for-asmiche as he louede seynt Iohan Eu*au*ngelist

[1–1] drawen al O. [2] *leaf* 70, *back*. [3] vn-to O. [4] were O.
[5] *om.* O. [6–6] his holy O. [7] Irensides O. [8] fledde O. [9] lond O.
[10] *MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl.* 490 (*D*) *continues here.* [11–11] *om.* O.
[12] *MS.* xxiiij^to^; *Secun*do D. [13–13] Traytour had al þus ydone O.
[14] shul D. schuld O. [15] mych O. [16–16] drad hym O.
[17] lade D. lad O. [18] crouned kyng D. [19] with a O.
[20–20] *om.* DO.
[21] vsede ne forȝate nouȝt alle gode custumes D. vsed & forgate not al good Custumes O.
[22] *om.* D. [23] ham louede & D. hem loued & O. [24] Edward O.
[25] *leaf* 71. [26] fro O.

most[1] specialy after' God and oure lady, þan he dede eny o*per* seynt. ¶ And so þe*re* come to him a pilg*r*ime, & pr*a*ede him, for þe loue of God' & of seynt Iohan Eu*a*ungelist', some god him forto
4 ȝeue. And þe Kyng [2]p*r*iuely toke[2] þe ryng of his fenger', p*r*iuely[3] þat no man p*er*ceyuede hit, & ȝaf it þe pilg*r*ime; & he it vnderfonge, & went þens. þis goode Kyng Edward made alle þe gode lawes of Engeland' þat ȝitte beþ[4] most holden, &[5] was so m*er*cyable
8 &[6] ful of pite þ*at* no man myȝt bene[7] more.

How þe Erl Godwyn come aȝeyn̄ into Engeland', & hade aȝeyne al his land', & afterward'[8] Seynt Edward' wedede his douȝt*er*. Ca*pitulo* ¶ C*entesimo* xxv[i]j^to^.

12 WHen þe Erl Godwyn, þat was [9]in Denmarc duellyng',[9] hade michel[10] herd of þe godenesse of Edward, & þat he was ful of m*er*cy & of[11] pitee, & þouȝt þat he wolde gon̄[12] aȝeyn into Engeland' forto seche and [13]to haue[13] g*r*ace of him, & þat he myght
16 haue þe[14] lande aȝeyn in pees, & arraiede him as miche as he might, & put him toward þe see, & come into Engeland', to London̄, þe*re* þat þe Kyng was þat tyme, & al þe[15] lordes of Engeland', & helde[16] p*ar*lement'. ¶ Godewyn sent to ha*m* þat were his frendes, & were
20 [17]þe moste[17] gretteste lordes of þe londe, & p*r*aiede ham to biseche þe Kynges g*r*ace for him, and[18] þat he wolde his [19]pees & his londes[19] g*r*aunt[20] him. his [21]frendes Lade[21] hi*m* bifore þe Kyng' forto biseche[22] grace. ¶ And anone as þe Kyng him saw, he appelede
24 him of t*r*esoun̄, & of þe deþ of Alurede his bro*per*, and þise wordes vnto[23] him saide: ¶ "Traito*ur* Godwyn!" q*uod* [24]þe Kyng, "I þe appele, þat þow haste bit*r*aede & slayne my bro*per* Alurede." ¶ "Certes, sire," q*uod* Godwyn, "saf ȝo*ur* grace,[25] ȝour' pees &
28 ȝoure[26] lorde-shipp*e*, y neuer' hi*m* bit*r*aede ne sloughe; and þ*er*of[27] y put me [in] rewarde of ȝour' cou[r]t'." ¶ "Now, faire lordes,[28] ȝe þat beþ[29] my lieges, erles & barons of þe lande, þat here bene alle

[1] more þan D. more O. [2—2] priueliche nome D. p*r*iuyly nome O.
[3] *om.* DO. [4] ben O. [5] & he O. *om.* R. [6] and so DO. [7] be DO.
[8] after*w*ard' seynt Edward' D. aft*er* seynt Edward O. afterward' R.
[9—9] duellyng in Denmarc D. dwellyng in Denmark' O.
[10] miche D. [11] *om.* O. [12] go DO. [13—13] haue m*er*cy and D.
[14] his DO. [15] the gret D. [16] helde a gret D. held a gret O.
[17—17] þe the *sic* D. [18] *om.* D.
[19—19] londe and his pees D. pees & his land' O. [20] gr*a*unten O.
[21—21] enemyes ladden O. [22] seche DO. [23] to D. [24] *leaf* 71, *back.*
[25] g*r*ace & D. grace & O. [26] ȝour' D. ȝoure O. þoure R.
[27] þ*er*fore O. [28] lordes q*uod* þe kyng' DO. [29] bene D. ben O.

assemblede,—[1]wel ȝe hauen[1] herde myn appele, and þe ansure[2] of
Godwyn; & *per*fore y wil þat ȝe award and do ryght." ¶ þe erles
and[3] barons þo drowen ha*m* [4]al to-geder',[4] forto done[5] þis award by
ham-self'. and so þai [6]spoken diu*er*seliche[6] amonges ha*m*; for 4
so*m*me sayde þat[7] *per*e was neuer' allyaunce by homage, se*r*ment,[8]
se*r*uise, ne by[7] lordeship, bituene Godwyn & Alurede, for which
þing þai might hi*m* draw. ¶ And at þe laste þai demede þat he
shulde put him into[9] þe Kynges me*r*cy altogeders. ¶ þo spake þe 8
Erl Leueryche of Couentre, a gode man to God & to alle þe worlde,
& tolde his resouñ in þis man*er*, & saide: "þe Erl Godwyne is þe
best frendede man of Engeland' after' þe kyng; and wel myȝt it
nouȝt bene[10] gaynsaide þat, wiþout consel of Godwyn, Alurede was 12
neuer' put vnto[11] deþ; Wherefore y awarde, as tochyng my part',
þat him-self[12] and his sone, and eu*er*yche[13] of vs xij Erles þat beþ[14]
his frendes, wende bifore þe Kyng' chargede wiþ alse miche[15] golde
and siluer' as we mowe bere bytuene oure hondes, & p*ra*yng þe 16
Kyng forȝeue his euel wille to þe Erle Godwyn, and resceyue his
homage, & his landes[16] ȝelde aȝeyn." & alle þai accordede vnto þat
awarde, and [17]comen in þis[17] man*er* as[18] is aboue-saide, eu*er*yche[19]
of ha*m* wiþ golde & siluer', [20]as miche as þai myght bere bituenes[21] 20
here hondes, bifore þe Kyng'; and þai saiden[22] þe fou[r]me and þe
maner' of her' accord' and of her awarde. ¶ The Kyng wolde nouȝt
ham[23] gayne-saie; but alse miche[24] as þai [25]wolde ordeyne,[25] he[26]
g*ra*untede & confermede; And so was þe Erl Godwyn accordede 24
wiþ þe Kyng', & hade aȝeyne al[27] his lande; and aftirward he bar'
him so wel & so wiseliche[28] þat þe Kyng louede hi*m* wonder' myche,
& with him was ful p*ri*ue. And[29] wiþin a litel tyme[30] þe Kyng
louede him so miche þat he spousede Godwyn*us* dought*er*, and 28
made her' Quene; and neu*er*þeles,[31] for al þat, þouȝ þe Kyng' hade
a wif', he leuede eu*er*more in chastite & in clennes of body, wiþ-
outen[32] eny flesshely dede[7] doyng' with his wif'; & þe Quene also,
[33]in her' Halfe,[33] lade holy lif'[34] ij ȝere, and deide; & after*w*ard þe 32

[1—1] ful wel ȝe haue D. ful weel ȝe haue O.
[2] ansuere also D. answere also O. [3] & the D. [4—4] togederes D.
[5] do D. [6—6] speken diuersly O. [7] *om.* D. [8] se*r*iant D. *om.* O.
[9] in DO. [10] be O. [11] to D. to þe O.
[12] *MS.* him-self and him-self'. [13] eu*er*y DO. [14] ben O.
[15] as mych O. [16] lande D. land' O. [17—17] come in the D.
[18] þat DO. [19] eche O. [20] *leaf* 72. [21] bituene D. betwene O.
[22] seid O. [23] hym O. [24] asmiche D. as mych O.
[25—25] ordeynede D. [26] & O. [27] *om.* O. [28] wisely D. wysely O.
[29] and so D. [30] while D. [31] noþelesse D. netheles O.
[32] with-oute DO. [33—33] *om.* D. [34] lif on hir' half' D.

Kyng leuede al his lif wiþouten[1] eny wif'. ¶ The Kyng ȝaf þe Erldome of Oxenford' to Harolde, þat was Godwynes sone, & made him Erle; and so wel þai were[2] bilouede, boþe þe fader and [3]þe
4 sone,[3] [4]& so pryue wiþ þe Kyng', þat þai myght[4] do[5] what þing[6] þai wolde by righte, for[7] aȝeynes ryght he wolde nouȝt[8] done[9] for no maner' man, so gode and trew he was of consciens; and *þer*fore our' Lorde Ih*es*u C*rist*', grete special[10] loue to hi*m* shewed'.

8 **How seynt Edward saw Swyn, Kyng of Denmarc, drenche[11] in þe see at[12] þe sac*ra*ment, as he stode & herde[13] masse. Ca*pitulo* C*entesi*mo. ¶ xxviij^mo^.[14]**

HIt bifelle oppoñ[15] Whitsonday, as Kyng Edward herde his
12 masse in þe grete cherch of Westmynstre, ryght at þe leuaciouñ of Ih*es*u Cristes body, and as al men were gaderede into þe cherche, & come*n* neyer'[16] [17]þe aute*r*,[18] sacring forto see, ¶ The [19]Kyng' his[19] hondes lifte vp an hye, and a[2] grete laught*er* toke op;
16 wherfore all þat aboute him stode, gretly gon wonder'[20]; & after masse þai axede whi þe kyng*us* laught*er* was.[21] ¶ "Faire lordes," q*uod* þe Kyng, "Swyn þe ȝonger',[22] þat was Kyng of Denmarc, come into þe see wiþ al his power' forto haue comen[23] into
20 Engeland', oppoñ vs forto haue werrede; and y saw hi*m* and aH his folc drenche[24] in þe hye[25] see: & al þis saw y in þe[25] eleuaciouñ of Ih*es*u[26] C*r*istes body bytuene þe p*r*estes hondes; & y hade *þer*of so miche ioye, þat y myght nought my laughter wiþholde."
24 ¶ And þe Erl Leueriche bisides him stode at þe leuaciouñ, & openlich he saw þe fourme of brede t*ur*ne into þe[27] lickenesse of a [28]knaf childe ȝong,[28] and toke[29] op his right hande, & ferst[2] blessede þe Kyng, and afterward þe Erle. And þe Erle[30] t*ur*nede him
28 anone[31] toward þe Kyng', to make hi*m* see þat holy sight. ¶ And þo[32] saide þe Kyng': "sir' Erle," q*uod* he, "I see [33]wel þat ȝe seeþ,[33]

[1] w*ith*oute O. [2] *om.* D. [3]–[3] he O.
[4]–[4] þat þai wolde D. & so pryve w*ith* þe kyng boþe þe fadir & þe sone þat þei myght O.
[5] done O. [6] þing þat D. [7] and D. [8] no þing O.
[9] do D. [10] specialte & O. [11] drenched' DO. [12] in O.
[13] herde his D. herd his O. [14] *MS. has* xxvij^mo^. [15] oppon a D.
[16] neyȝ D. ny O. [17] *leaf* 72, *back.* [18] Auter' þe D.
[19]–[19] kynges O. [20] wondryn O.
[21] lauȝt*er* was D. laughter was O. laughter R. [22] wonger' *sic* D.
[23] come O. [24] drenched' O. [25] *om.* O. [26] *om.* D. Ih*esus* O.
[27] *om.* DO. [28]–[28] ȝonge childe D. Child ȝong O. [29] nome DO.
[30] Erle anone D. Erle anon O. [31] *om.* DO. [32] þus O.
[33]–[33] þet ȝe see ryȝt wel blessede be god' D. wel þat sight O.

þankede be God þat y haue honourrede my God, my saueoure, Visibili [1]Ihesu Crist[1] in fourme of man, whos name bene[2] blessede in al worldes! Amen!"

How þe ryng þat Sent Edward hade ȝeuen[3] to a pore pilgrime, for þe loue of seynt Iohan Euaungelist, come aȝeyn vnto[4] Kyng Edward. Capitulo Centesimo xxix^mo^.

THis noble man Seynt Edwarde regnede xiij ȝere. & þus hit bifelle oppoñ a tyme biforne[5] er he deide, þat ij men of Engeland were went to þe Holy Lande, & haden done her pilgrimage, & wer goyng aȝeyne toward her owen contre. ¶ And as þai went in þe way, þai[6] mette a pilgrime þat curtesly ham [7]Saluede, and axede of ham in wh[a]t lande & in What contre þai were born; & þai saide "in Engeland." ¶ þo axede he[8] who was Kyng of Engeland; and þai ansuerede & saide "þe goode Kyng Edward." "Faire frendes," þo saide þe pilgrime, "when þat ȝe come into ȝour contre aȝeyne, y praye ȝow þat ȝe wolde[9] gone[10] vnto[11] Kyng Edward, and ofte-tymes him grete in my name, & ofte-tymes þank him of his grete curtesye þat he to me haþ done, A[nd] nameliche[12] for þe ryng þat he ȝaf me when he hade herde masse at Westmynstre, for seynt Iohnes loue Euaungelist," and [13]toke þo[13] þe Ryng[14] to þe pilgrimes, and saide, "y pray ȝow forto [1]goñ &[1] bere þis ryng, & take hit to Kyng Edward, & telle him þat y sende hit[15] him; and a ful ryche[16] ȝift y wil him ȝeue; for oppoñ þe tuelfeþ[17] day he shal come to me, & euermore duelle in blisse wiþouten ende." ¶ "Sir," saide þe pilgrimes, "what man beþ[18] ȝe, & in what place is ȝour duellyng?" ¶ "Faire frendes," quod he, "I ame Iohan Euaungelist & am duellyng wiþ Almyghty[19] God; & ȝour Kyng Edward is my frende, & y loue him specialy for enchesoñ þat he haþ euer Leuede in clennesse, and is clene maide; and y pray ȝow my message al forto done as y haue to[8] ȝow saide." ¶ When seynt Iohan Euaungelist hade þus ham chargede, sodeynly[20] he voidede out of her sight.

þe pilgrimes þo þankede Almyghty Gode, & went forþ in her way. ¶ & when þai hade gon ij or iij myle, þai bigon to waxen[21]

[1]–[1] *om.* D. [2] be DO. [3] ȝeue DO [4] to O. [5] byfor O.
[6] *MS.* þat. [7] *leaf* 73. [8] *om.* O. [9] wol O. [10] go DO.
[11] to þe O. [12] namely D. [13]–[13] þo toke D. nome þo O.
[14] ryng & toke it O. [15] *om.* D. [16] rychere O. [17] xij O.
[18] be DO. [19] almyȝt D. [20] sodenlich O. [21] wax D. wexe O.

wery, & sette adoune ham forto reste; & so þai felle [1]and slepte.[1]
¶ And when[2] þai hade slepte[3] wel, one of ham [4]awoke, & lifte vp
his heuede[5] & lokede aboute & saide vnto[6] his felaw, "arise op, and
4 wende we in oure way." "What," saide þat on[7] felaw to þat
o*þer*, "where be we nowe?" ¶ "C*er*tis," saide þat o*þer*e [8]felawe,
"it semeþ[8] me þat it[2] is nouȝt þe same contreye þat we laide vs in
[9]forto reste &[9] slep, for we were þo fro Ier*usal*em but iij mile."[10]
8 ¶ þai tok[11] op her' hondes, and blessede ham, & went forþ in her'
waye. & as þai went in here way þai saw shep*er*des goyng
wiþ her' shepe, þat spoken[12] none o*þer*e langage but Englisshe.
¶ "Leue frendes," q*uod* on of þe pilg*r*imes, "what contre is þis, &
12 who is lorde þ*er*of?" and one[2] of þe shep*er*des ansurede: "þis is
þe cuntre of Kent, in Engel*and*, of þe whiche þe gode Kyng
Edward is lorde." ¶ þe pilgrimes [13]þankede þo[13] Almyghty God' &
seynt Iohan[14] eu*aun*ge*list*, & went forþ in her way, & come to
16 Kaunt*er*bery, & fro þens vnto[15] London; and þ*er*e þai fonden[16] þe
Kyng, & tolde him[17] fro þe bigynny[n]g vnto þe ende as miche as
seynt Iohan hade ham chargede, & of al þing*us* how þai spedden[18]
by þe way, & toke þe ryng to[19] Kyng Edward; & he vnderfonge
20 hit, & þankede Almyghty God' & seynt Io*h*an Eu*aun*ge*list*, & þo
made him aredy euery day, [20]fram day to day,[20] forto wende out of
þis lif' when God wolde for hi*m* sende.

How seynt Edwarde [de]ide on the xij[21] day. Capitulo ¶ Cen-
24 **tesimo ¶ Tricesimo.**

AND after hit bifelle[22] þus in Cristenmasse[23] eve: as þe
holy man Edward was at Godes s*er*uice, matynes forto[24]
hure of þat holy[25] fest, he bicome ful [26]sik, and in þe morwe
28 [27]endurede wiþ michel payn[27] masse forto here, & after' lete him
bene[28] lade into his chaumbre, þ*er*e forto resten[29] him; but [30]into
his[30] halle amonges[31] his barons and his knyghtes myght he nouȝt

[1—1] aslepe DO. [2] *om.* D. [3] sleped' D. [4] *leaf 73, back.*
[5] hed' O. [6] to D. [7] o O. [8—8] it semes D. it semeth O.
[9—9] to O. [10] miles D. myles O. [11] nomen DO. [12] speke O.
[13—13] þo þankede D. [14] *om.* O. [15] to O. [16] fonde D. founde O.
[17] him al D. hym al O. [18] spedde DO. [19] to þe O.
[20—20] *om.* D. fro day to day O. from day R.
[21] twelfe O. [22] fel O. [23] *c*ristemasse DO.
[24] *MS. has* forto done, *with* done *underlined for omission.*
[25] hye DO. [26] *leaf* 74.
[27—27] durede with miche payne the D. endured with mych peyne þe O.
[28] be DO. [29] rest DO.
[30—30] *MS.* into his into his. [31] among O.

come, ha*m* forto comfort and solace, as he w*as* [1]wonte forto[1] done at þat worþi feste; Wherfore al his[2] merþ & comfort among*us* alle þat were in þe halle was turnede into[3] care and sorwe, for enchesouñ þat þai drade[4] forto lese[5] her gode Lorde þe Kyng. 4 ¶ And oppoñ seynt Iohñes [6]day Eu*au*ngel*ist*[6] þat þo come next, þe Kyng vnderfonge his rightes of holy cherche, as falliþ to eu*er*y Cristen man, & abode þe m*er*cy &[7] wille of God. ¶ And þo ij pilg*r*imes he lete bifore hi*m* come, and ȝaf ha*m* riche ȝiftes, & 8 bitoke ha*m* vnto God. And also þe Abbot of Westmynstre he lete bifore hi*m* come, & toke him þat ryng in hono*ur* of Gode & [8]of Seynt Iohan[8] Eu*au*ng*elist*. And þe Abbot [9]toke hit &[9] put hit amonge o*þer*e reliqes, so þat it is at Westmynstre, & 12 euer[10] shal be. and so lay þe Kyng sike to[11] þe xij eve;[12] & þo deide þe gode Kyng Edward at Westmynstre; & þere he liþ, for whos loue God haþ done meny miracles. And þis was in þe ȝere of[13] Incarnaciouñ [14]of oure Lorde Ih*e*su Crist,[14] M[t] .lxv. ȝere; & 16 aft*er* he was t*ra*nslatede, & put into þe shryne, þrouȝ þe noble Martir Seint ¶ Thomas of Kaunt*er*bery.

How Harolde, þat was Godwyn*us* sone, was made Kyng; & how he scapede[15] fro þe Duc of Britaign. Cap*itul*o C*en*- 20 ***tesim*o xxxj°.**

WHen Seynt Edward was gone oute of þis worlde, & was gone to God, & worþely ent*er*ede, as [16]p*er*teynede to[16] soche a lorde forto bene,[17] þe barons [18]of þe Land Wolde haue 24 hade Edward Helyng*us*, sone[19] to Edward þe Outlaghe, þat was Edmund*us* sone[20] Irensyde, to bene[17] Kyng, for-asmiche as[21] he was moste kyndest kynges blode of þe reaume. ¶ But Harold,[22] sone þrouȝ þe Erle Godwyn,[23] & þe strengþ of his fader Godwyn, & þrouȝ 28 o*þer*e grete lordes of þe reaume þat were of here[24] Kyn & vnto him sib, seisede al Engeland[25] into his Honde, & anone lete c*r*one hi*m* Kyng, after þe ent*er*ement of Seynt Edward. ¶ This Harolde,

[1—1] woned to O. [2] here O. [3] vnto D. [4] dradden O.
[5] lesen O. [6—6] Eu*au*ngelist day O. [7] & þ^e O.
[8—8] seynt Marie and of seynt Iohan the D. seynt Marye & of seynt Iohn) þ^e O.
[9—9] *om.* D. nome & O. toke & hit & *sic* R. [10] eu*er*more DO.
[11] til DO. [12] euen O. [13] of the D. [14—14] *om.* D. [15] ascaped O.
[16—16] app*er*teynede D. p*er*teyneþ to O. [17] be O. [18] *leaf* 74, *back.*
[19] Helyng*us* sone D. Helyngis sone O. Helyng*us* R.
[20] Edmun*d*u*s* sone D. Edmundes sone O. Edmund*us* R. [21] for D.
[22] *MS. has* Haroldes, *with* es *underlined for omission*; Haroldis O.
[23] Godwynne D. Godwyn O. Godwy R. [24] his DO. [25] þ^e lond O.

þat was Godwyn*us* sone, þe secunde[1] ȝere aft*er* þat Seynt Edward was dede, Wolde haue gone into Flaundres, but he was dryuen[2] þrouȝ tempest into þe contre of Pountif', & þ*er*e he was take &
4 brouȝt vnto[3] Duc Willia*m*. ¶ And þis Harolde wende þo þat þe Duc Willia*m* wolde haue bene avenged oppoñ hi*m*, for encheson þat þe Erl Godwyn, þat was Haroldes[4] fader', [5]hade done[5] quelle Alurede, þat was Seynt Edward*us* broþ*er*, and principaly for
8 Alurede,[6] Quene E*m*mes sone, þat was Richardes moder', Duk' of Normandye, þat was Aile to þe Duc Willia*m*. ¶ And noþeles, when þe[7] Duc William hade Harolde in prisouñ & vnder' his power',[7] for-alse[8]-miche as þis Harold' was a noble knyght, wise, &
12 worþi of Body, & þat his fader & he were accordede wiþ þe gode Kyng Edward', & þ*er*fore[9] wolde nouȝt [10]mysdone[11] him,[10] but al man*er* þing*us* þat bituene ham were spoken & ordeynede, Harolde by his gode Wille suore oppon a boke & oppoñ Holy seyntȝ, þat he
16 shulde[12] spouse and wedde Duc William*us* douȝt*er* after þe deþ of Seynt Edward, and þat he shulde besely [13]done His deuer' forto[14] Kepe & saue þe reaume of Engeland, to þe p*ro*fite & auauntage of Duc Willia*m*. ¶ And when Harolde hade þus made his oth vnto[15]
20 Duc Willia*m*, he lete him gone,[16] & ȝaf him[17] riche ȝiftes; And [18]he þo[18] went þens, & come into Engel*and*, & anone dede in þis maner' when Seint Edward was dede; and as[19] man falsely forsuore, he lete c*r*one him Kyng of Engeland', & falsely brac þe[20] couenauntȝ
24 þat he hade made bifore[21] wiþ Duc William; wherfore he was wiþ hi*m* wonder wroþe, & swore þat he wolde[22] oppoñ him bene[7] avengede, [23]whateu*er* so[23] him bifelle. ¶ And anone Willia*m*[24] lete assemble a grete hoste, and come into Engeland', to avenge
28 him oppon Harolde, & to conquere þe lande if þat he myght. ¶ And in þe same ȝere þat Harold' was c*r*onede, Harold' Harestrenge, Kyng of Denmarc, arryuede in Scotland', and þouȝ[t] haue be[25] kyng of Engel*and*. & he come into Engeland', & quellede &
32 robbede, & destroiede al þat he might, til þat he come to ȝorke; & þ*er*e he quellede meny men of Armys M',[26] & an[27] C prestes.

[1] ij O. [2] dryue D. dryve O. [3] into the D. to þe O.
[4] Harold' O. [5—5] lete D. had lete O.
[6] enchesoun þat Alured was D. encheson þat Alured' was O.
[7] *om.* D. [8] as DO. [9] þ*er*fore he O. [10—10] hym mysdone O.
[11] mysdo D. [12] wold O. [13] *leaf* 75. [14] to O. [15] vn-to þe O.
[16] go DO. [17] him meny D. hym meny O. [18—18] tho he D.
[19] as a DO. [20] his O.
[21] *MS. has* bifore þis, *with* þis *underlined for omission.* [22] wolde be D.
[23—23] what-so-eu*ere* O. [24] William bastard' O. [25] bene D. ben O.
[26] a þousand D. a M' O. [27] *om.* O.

¶ When þis tyding come to þe Kyng', he assemblede a strong power', and went forto feiȝt wiþ Harold' of Denmarc, & wiþ his owen honde hi*m* quellede, and þe Danois[1] were descomfitede; & þo þat [2]lafte alyue,[2] wiþ myche sorwe went[3] to her' shippes; and 4 þus Kyng Harolde of Engeland quellede Kyng Harold' of Denmarc.

How William Bastard, Duc of Norma*n*dy, come into Engeland', & quellede Kyng Harold'. Cap*itulo* [4]xx vj xij.[4]

ANd when þis bataile was done, Harolde bicome [5]so prout, and 8 wolde [6]nouȝt dep*ar*te[6] with his peple of þing' þat he hade gete, but helde it al towardes[7] him-self'; Wherfore þe most part[8] of his men were wroþ, and fram[9] him dep*ar*tede, so þ*a*t oneliche wiþ him lefte no mo but his soudeo*ur*s. ¶ And oppon a day, as 12 he sate at þe[10] mete, messag*er*s[11] co*m*me to hi*m*, & saide þat William Bastard', Duc of Normandye, was Arryuede in Engeland' wiþ a grete host', and hade taken[12] al þe lande aboute Hastynge, & hade also mynede þe casteH. ¶ When þe Kyng hade[13] herde þis tydynges,[14] 16 he went þider wiþ a litil peple in[15] al þe hast þat he myght, for[16] a litel peple was wiþ him lefte. ¶ And when he was comen[17] þider', he ordeynede forto ȝeue bataile to þe Duc William; but þe Duc axede him of þise iij þing*us*: [18]if þat[18] he wolde haue his dought*er* 20 to wif', as he hade made [19]& swore[19] his othe [19]& bihight';[19] or þat he wolde halde þe lande of him in t*r*uage; or þat he wolde det*er*mine þis þing bi[20] bataile. ¶ þis Harold' was a prout ma*n* & a stout, and truste wonder'[21] miche oppoñ his owen strengþ, & fauȝt wiþ[22] the 24 duc & wiþ his peple; but Harold' & his men were descomfitede, & himself' [23]was þ*er*e[23] slayn. & þis bataile was endede at Tonbrigge, in þe secu*n*de ȝere [19]of his regne,[19] oppoñ seynt Kalixtes day; and he liþ at Waltham. 28

Of Kyng' William Bastard', & how he gou*er*nede him [24]wel &[24] wisely; & of þe werr' bituene him &[25] þe Kyng' of Fraunce. Cap*itulo* C*entesi*mo xxxiij°.[26]

[1] Danes O. [2—2] were laft on lyf D. [3] fley D. fled O.
[4—4] centesimo tricesimo t*er*cio D. [5] *leaf* 75, *back*.
[6—6] noþing p*ar*te DO. [7] toward' DO. [8] p*ar*tye O. [9] fro O.
[10] *om.* O. [11] a messeng*er* D. a messager O. [12] y-take O.
[13] *om.* D. [14] Tydynge O. [15] w*ith* O. [16] and D. [17] come O.
[18—18] it *sic* D. [19—19] *om.* D. [20] þurgh O. [21] *om.* D.
[22] wiþ the D. w*ith* þe O. wiþ R. [23—23] þ*er*e was O. [24—24] *om.* O.
[25] or D. [26] xiij° *sic* O.

WHen Willia*m* Bastard, Duc of Norma*n*dye, hade co*n*querede al þe land, oppoñ Cri[s]tenmasse[1] day þo next sewyng' he lete *cr*one hi*m* kyng at Westmynstre, & was a worþi kyng', & ȝaf[2] to Englisshemen largly landes, & to his knyghtes. ¶ And afterward he went[3] ou*er* þe see, [4]& come[4] [5]into Normandye, & þ*er*e duellede a while; & in þe secunde ȝere of his regne he come aȝeyne vnto[6] Engeland, and brouȝt [7]wiþ him[7] Maude his wif', and lete c*r*one here [8]quene of Engeland, on[8] Whitsonday. ¶ And þo anone aft*er*, þe Kyng' of Scotland þat me callede Mancolum, bigon to [9]werr' and stryue[9] wiþ[10] Duc William; and he ordeynede him þo toward Scotland wiþ his men, boþe by lande and by see, forto destroy þe Kyng[11] Mancolum. but þai were accordede, & þe Kyng of Scotland, Mancolum, bicome his man, and helde al his lande of him; and Kyng' William resceyuede of him his Homage, and come aȝeyne into Engeland. ¶ And when Kyng William hade bene[12] Kyng xvij ȝere, Maude þe Quene deide, on who*m* Kyng William hade geten meny faire chelde*r*n, þat is forto seyne, Robert Curthose, William le Rous, Richar' also þat deide, Henry Beauclerc, & Maude also, þat was þe Erles wif' of Bleyns, and o þ*er*e iiij doughtre.[13] ¶ And aft*er* his wifes deth, grete debate bigan bituene him & þe Kyng of F*ra*unce, Philippe; but atte þe laste þai were accordede; and þo duellede þe Kyng of Engeland in Normandye, and no ma*n* him werrede, ne[14] he no man, longe tyme. and þe Kyng of Fraunce saide oppoñ a day in scorne of Kyng William, & saide þat 'Kyng' Willia*m* hade longe[15] leyen a[16] childe bed, & longe tyme haþ[17] restede him.' ¶ And þis worde come to þe Kyng of Engel*and* þ*er*e þat he laye in Normandy, atte Roen; and for þis word[18] was þo euel[19] paiede [4]for þat worde,[4] & ek' wonder[2] wrothe toward þe Kyng of F*ra*unce, and swore þo by God þat, when he were arise of his gisyne, he wolde liȝt a þousand candelles to þe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And anone lete assem[20]ble a grete hoste of Normandye and of Engelisshe-men; and in þe bigynnyng' of Heruest' he come into Fraunce, & brent[21] alle þe tounes þat he come by, prouȝ alle þe contre, & robbed, & dede al þe euel þat he might þrouȝ-out al

[1] cristusmasse D. Cristesmasse O. [2] *om.* D. [3] sent D.
[4–4] *om.* D. [5] *leaf* 76. [6] into D. [7–7] hym w*ith* O.
[8–8] kyng [*sic*] at D. qwene of Engelond in O.
[9–9] stryue and were D. [10] with þe O. [11] *om.* O. [12] be O.
[13] douȝt*er*ȝ D. doughters O. [14] & O.
[15] longe tyme D. long tyme O. [16] in DO. [17] had O.
[18] word he O. [19] ille O. [20] *leaf* 76, *back.* [21] brennede D.

Fraunce. & at þe laste he [1]brent þe touñ[1] of Mandes, & commandede his peple forto bere wode, & as miche as[2] myght brenne; & him-self halpe þerto, al þat he myghte, wiþ[3] gode wille. ¶ And
þere was grete hete, what of fyre þat was so grete, & of þe sone þat 4
þo was wonder hote, þat al stuffled[4] him-self was,[5] & felle into a[6] grete sikenesse. and when he saw þat he was so stronge sike, he ordeynede and assignede al Normandy vnto[7] Robert Curthese, his sone, and al Engeland to William þe Rous, & biquaþ to Henry[8] 8
Beauclerc al his tresoure. ¶ And when[9] he hade þus done,[10] he vnderfonge alle his sacramentȝ of holy cherche, & deide, þe xxij ȝere of his regne, & liþ at Caam in Normandye.[11]

**Of[12] Kyng William Rous, þat was William Bastardes sone, þat 12
destroiede [13]tounes & hous of religiouñ[13] fort[o] make þe[14] new Foreste. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo xxxiiij^to^.**

AND after þis William Bastard, regnede his sone William[15] Rous, &[16] was a wonder contrarious man to God and to holy 16
cherche, & lete amende & make þe toune of Cardeys þat þe paynemys hade destroied.[17] ¶ This Kyng William destroiede holy cherche[6] and alle here possessions, in what partye[18] he miȝt ham fynde; and perfore þere was so miche debate bituene him & þe 20
Erchebisshope of Kaunterbery, Ancelyn, for enchesouñ þat he [19]vnderfonge him of his Wickednesse,[19] þat he destroiede Holy cherche; & for enchesoñ þerof, þe Kyng to him bare grete wraþ; & for þat cause he exilede him out of þe lande; & þe erchebisshop 24
þo [20]Went to þe courte of Rome, and þere du[e]llede wiþ þe Pope. ¶ & þis Kyng made þe new Forest, and caste douñ[21] & destroiede xxvj tounes & xx iiij house[22] of religiǫñ, al forto make his foreste longer & broder,[23] & bicome wonder glade & prout of his wode & of his 28
Forest, and of þe wilde bestes þat wer þerin, þat it was mervailous forto[24] wete, so þat men callede him 'keper of wodes & of pastures.' & þe lenger þat[6] he leuede, þe more Wikkede he bicome, boþe to

[1—1] brennede the citee D. brent þe Cytee O. [2] as he D.
[3] with a O. [4] stuffed O. [5] bicome D. bycome O. [6] *om.* D.
[7] to D. [8] Herry O. [9] þo DO. [10] do D. [11] Northfolc D.
[12] How D. [13—13] houses of Regilion) [*sic*] & tovnes O. [14] *om.* O.
[15] William þe O. [16] and this William D. & þis William O.
[17] destruede D. [18] parte D.
[19—19] vndertok him for his wickednesse and D. vndirtoke hym for his wikkednesse O.
[20] *leaf* 77. [21] adoune D. adoun) O. [22] houses O.
[23] wider D. [24] to D.

God & to holy cherche, & to alle his men. & þis kyng lete make
þe grete halle of[1] Westmynstre; [2]and so[2] oppon a[3] Whitsonday
[4]he helde *þer*in[4] his ferste feste, he lokede aboute him,[5] & saide
4 þat[6] þe halle was to litel by haluendele. ¶ And at þe laste he
bicome so co*n*trarious, þat al þing þat plesede God, displesede hi*m*;
and al þing þat gode men louede, [7]he hatede dedly.[7] ¶ And so
hit befel þat he dremede [8]& mette[8] oppon a nyȝt, bifore a litil or
8 þat[6] he deide, þat he was[9] bloode, & bledde a grete q*ua*ntite of
bloode, and a streme of blode lepte[10] an hye toward Heuen more[11]
þan an hundred Venithe[12]; and þe clerenesse of þe[6] day was
t*ur*nede al to[13] derkenesse, and þe firmament also. ¶ And when he
12 awoke, he hade grete drede, so þat he nyste what to done; & tolde
his dreme to meny of his conseile, & saide þat he hade grete drede,
& supposede þat him was some meschaunce to come. ¶ And þe
secunde nyght bifore,[14] a monke dremed of þe household, þat þe
16 kyng went into a cherche wiþ miche peple; and he was so prout
þat he despisede al þe peple þat was wiþ him; & so[15] he toke[16] þe
ymage of þe c*r*ucifixe, &[17] shamefully bote hit with his teiþ; and
þe c*r*ucifix mekely soffrede al þat he dede; but þe kyng, as a wode
20 man, rent of[1] þe Armys [18]of þe[18] [19]c*r*ucifixe and caste it vnder
his feete, & defoulede it and þrewe it al[20] brode[21]; and a grete
flame of fire come out of þe [22]c*r*ucifixeȝ mouthe[22]; of þe whiche
dreem, meny a man[23] hade grete wonder[1]. ¶ The gode man þat
24 dremede þis dreem[24] tolde it to a knyght þat þo was moste p*r*iue wiþ
þe Kyng[1] of al men; & þe knyght me callede Hamund*us* sone; &
þe monke and he tolde þe dreem to[25] [the] Kyng, & saide þat it
shulde bitoken o*þer*e þing þan gode; and noþelesse þe Kyng[1] lauȝhede
28 þ*er*at ij[26] or iij,[27] & litil sette þ*er*of[1]; ¶ And þouȝt þat he wolde
gone[28] Hunte & pleye in þe forest[1]. and his men [29]conseiled him[29]
þat he shulde nouȝt þat day, for no maner[1] þing, come in þe wode,

[1] at O. [2–2] so þat DO. [3] a day of O.
[4–4] *þer*in he helde D. & held *þer*in O. [5] *om.* DO. [6] *om.* D.
[7–7] hated he dedlich O. [8–8] *om.* D. [9] was lete DO.
[10] lappe D. [11] mo D. [12] Vedine O. [13] in-to O. [14] to-fore D.
[15] that D. *þat* O. [16] nome O.
[17] & cast it vndir his feet & defouled it & threw it al abrode & O.
[18–18] *MS.* of þe of þe. [19] *leaf* 77, *back.*
[20] *MS. has* al adouñ, *with* adouñ *underlined for omission; om.* O.
[21] abrode DO.
[22–22] c*r*ucifix mouth of the c*r*ucifix *sic* D. Crucifix mouthe O.
[23] men DO. [24] dreme hade D. dreme had O. [25] vnto D.
[26] twyes O. [27] iij*es* D. thryes O. [28] go D.
[29–29] hy*m* Cou*n*ceyled O.

so þat he abode at home bifore mete. ¶ But anone as he hade eten,[1] noþing[2] might him lette [3]but he wolde go[3] to þe wode forto haue his disporte. ¶ And so hit bifelle þat one of his knyghtes þat hight Walter Tyrel, wolde haue shotte to[4] an[5] herte; & his 4
Arwe glasede oppoñ a braunche, & þrouȝ misauenture smote þe Kyng to þe hert; & so he felle doune dede to[6] þe grounde, wiþouten[7] eny worde spekyng, & so he endede his lif. ¶ And it was [8]non grete[8] wonder, for þat[9] day þat he dede, he hade late to ferme 8
þe Erchebisshoppriche[10] of Kaunterbery, and xij Abbays also, & euermore dede grete destruccioun to holy cherche þrouȝ wrongeful takynges and askyngus; for no man derst wiþsayen[11] þat he wolde haue done; & of his luþernesse he wolde neuer wiþdrawe [12]neyþer, 12
to[12] amende his lif; and þerfore God wolde suffre him no longer regne in his wickednesse. & he hade bene[13] kyng xiij ȝere and vj wokes, & liþ[14] at Wynchestre.[15]

Of Kyng Henry Beauclerc, þat was William [16 17]le Rousus[17] 16
broþer; & of þe debate bituene him & Robert Curthose,
[18]his broþer.[18] Capitulo Centesimo ¶ xxxv.

AND when[19] þis William Rous[20] was dede, Henry Beauclerc his broþer was made kyng, for enchesoun þat William Rous 20
hade non[21] childe [22]bigeten of his body.[22] & þis Henry Beauclerc[23] was cronede kyng[24] at London, þe ferþe day after þat his broþer was dede, þat is to seyne, þe v day[24] of August. ¶ And anone as[25] Ancellyn, þat was Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, þat was at þe 24
court of Rome, herde þat William Rous was dede, he come aȝeyne into Engeland; &[26] Kyng Henry Beauclerc welcomede him wiþ michel[27] honoure. ¶ & þe ferst ȝer þat Kyng Henry was cronede, he spused Maude, þat was Margaretes douȝter, þe Quene of Scot- 28
land; & þe Erchebisshop[28] Ancellyn[29] wedede ham. ¶ And þis Kyng bigate oppoñ his wif ij sones & a douȝter, þat is to seyne, William, Richard, and Maude; & þis Maude was afterward

[1] ete O. [2] noman DO.
[3—3] þat he ne wolde goñ D. þat he nolde goñ O. [4] vn-to O.
[5] on D. [6] vnto DO. [7] with-oute O. [8—8] no D. no gret O.
[9] the D. [10] bisshopriche D. [11] withsay D. with-sey O.
[12—12] ne D. neither O. [13] be O. [14] *om.* DO.
[15] Wynchestre he lith O. [16] *leaf* 78. [17—17] Rous DO.
[18—18] *om.* D. [19] *om.* O. [20] Rous whan he O. [21] no DO.
[22—22] of his body bigete D. begete of his body O.
[23] *Altered from* Beaucherc *in MS.* [24] *om.* D. [25] þis O.
[26] and the D. & þe O. [27] miche D.
[28] Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery D. [29] Ancelyn of Caunterbury O

Emp*er*esse of Almayne. ¶ And in þe secunde[1] ȝere of his regne, his broþ*er*e Robert Curthose, þat was duc of Norma*n*dye, come wiþ an huge nauy[2] into Engeland, forto chalange þe land; but þrouȝ
4 conseile of þe[3] wise men of þe land, þai were accordede in þis man*er*: þat þe Kyng shulde ȝeue þe Duc his broþ*er* a þousand ti[4] eu*er*y ȝere; and whiche of ham longeste leuede, shulde bene oþ*er*es heire; & so bituene ham shulde [5]bene none[5] debate ne stryf.
8 ¶ And when þai were þus accordede, þe Duc went home aȝeyne into Normandy. And when þe Kyng hade regnede iiij ȝere,[6] aros a grete debate bituene him & þe Erchebisshop of Kaunt*er*bery, Ancellyn, for cause þat þe Erchebisshop wolde [7]nouȝt graunt þe
12 Kyng forto take taliages of [8]Holy cherche[8] at his wille; and þ*er*fore[9] þe Erchebisshop eftesones[10] went ouer þe see vnto[11] þe court of Rome, & þ*er*e duellede[12] wiþ þe Pope. ¶ And in þe[3] same ȝere þe Duc of Normandye come into Engeland forto speke wiþ his broþ*er*.
16 And amonges[13] oþ*er*e þinges, þe duc of Normandy forȝaf to þe Kyng, his broþ*er*, þe forsaide[14] M[t] ti[15] by ȝere þat he shulde [16]paie him[16]; & wiþ gode loue þe Duc went þo[17] into Normandye aȝeyn.[10]
20 ¶ And when þo ij ȝere were gone, þrouȝ enticement of þe deuel & of [18]a luþ*er* man,[18] a g*r*ete debate aros bituene ham, þe Kyng & þe duc, so þat þe Kyng, þrouȝ conseile, went ouer[19] into Norma*n*dye. And when þe Kyng of Engel*and* was comen[20] into Normandye,
24 alle þe grete lordes of Normandye t*ur*nede þo[3] to þe Kyng of Engeland, & helde aȝeyns[21] þe Duc, here owen lorde, & him forsoke, & to þe Kyng ham ȝolden,[22] and alle þe castelles &[23] gode tounes of Norma*n*dye. And sone after was þe Duc taken, & lad
28 wiþ þe Kyng into Engeland, and þe Kyng lete put þe Duc into prisoun. & þis was[14] þe vengaunce of God; for when þe Duc was in þe Holy Land God ȝaf him suche might & hono*ur* þ*er*e, wherfore he was chose[24] to ben Kyng[25] of Ier*usal*em; and he[3]
32 wolde nouȝt [26]bene hit, but[26] forsoke it; & þ*er*fore God sende[27]

[1] ij O. [2] meynye O. [3] *om.* O. [4] pound O.
[5–5] be no D. be non O. [6] ȝer þ*er*e D. ȝeer þ*er* O.
[7] *leaf* 78, *back.* [8–8] cherches D. Chirches O.
[9] þ*er*fore eftesones D. þ*er*fore eftsone O. [10] *om.* DO. [11] to DO.
[12] he dwelt O. dullede R. [13] amonge al D. among O.
[14] *om.* D. [15] pound O. [16–16] him pay D.
[17] þo aȝeyn D. þo aȝen O. [18–18] luþ*er* men D. lither men O.
[19] ou*er*e the see D. ou*er* þe see O. [20] comen ou*er*e the see D. Come O.
[21] aȝeyne D. [22] ȝelden O. [23] and the D. & þe O.
[24] chosen DO. [25] lord D. [26–26] and D. [27] sent O.

him þat shame & despite, forto bene[1] put into his broþeres prisouñ. ¶ þo seisede Kyng Henry[2] al Normandye into his hand, & helde hit al his lifes[3] tyme. &[4] þe same ȝere come þe bisshop̄ Ancellyn fram[5] þe court of Rome into Engeland aȝeyne, & þe Kyng & he were accorded. ¶ And in þe ȝere nexte comyng after,[6] þere bigan a grete debate bytuene Kyng[7] Philippe of Fraunce & Kyng Henry[8] of Engeland. Wherfore Kyng Henry[8] went into Normandye; and þe werr was [9]stronge bituenes[9] ham ij; and þo deide þe Kyng of Fraunce; & Lowys his sone was made Kyng anone after his deþ; and þo went Kyng Henry[8] aȝeyne into Engeland, & mariede Maude his doughter to Henry,[10] þe Emperour of Almayn.

Of þe debate þat was bituene [11]Kyng Lowys[11] of France & Kyng Henry[12] of Engeland; & how Kyng Henrieȝ ij sones were loste in þe hye see. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Sexto.

WHen Kyng Henry had bene[1] Kyng xvij ȝere, a grete debate aroos bitue[n] [13]him &[13] Kyng Lowys of Fraunce,[14] for enchesouñ þat þe Kyng hade sent into Normandy to his men, for[15] þai shulde bene[1] helpyng to þe Erle of Bleynes as miche as þai myght, in werre aȝeynes[16] þe Kyng of Fraunce, and þat þai were as redy vnto him as þai wolde bene[1] vnto[17] here owen lord, for enchesouñ þat þe Erle hade spousede his sustre, Dame Maude; for whiche enchesouñ þe Kyng of Fraunce dede miche harme[18] &[19] sorwe[6] to Normandye. wherfore þe Kyng of Engeland was wonder wroþ, & in hast went ouer þe see [20]into Normandye wiþ a grete power,[20] forto defende þat londe; & þe werre bituene ham laste ij ȝere, til at þe laste þai ij fouȝten to-geder,[21] & þe Kyng of France was descomfitede, & vnneþe[22] scapede away wiþ miche peyn; and þe moste part[23] of his men were taken, &[24] dede wiþ ham what him liked; and some of ham he lete goñ[25] freliche,[26] &

[1] be D. [2] Harry O. [3] lif D. [4] and in DO. [5] fro D.
[6] *om.* D. [7] *leaf* 79. [8] Herry O.
[9–9] so strong bituene D. strong betwen O.
[10] *om.* D. Herry O. [11–11] Lowys the kyng D.
[12] Herry *here, and elsewhere in* O. [13–13] *om.* DO.
[14] France and Kyng Henry of Engeland D. Fraunce & Kyng Herry of Engelond O.
[15] that D. [16] aȝen O. [17] to O. [18] *om.* O. [19] *om.* DO.
[20–20] with gret power and come into Normandye D. with a gret power & come in-to Normandye O.
[21] togederes D. [22] vnneþes D. [23] partye O.
[24] and þe kyng DO. [25] go DO. [26] frely O.

some he lete put to deþ; but afterward þo ij kyng*us* were accordede. ¶ And when Kyng Henry hade holiche[1] al þe land[e] [2]of No[r]mandye, and scomfitede his enemys of Fraunce, he turned
4 aȝeyne into Engeland[e] wiþ michel[3] hono*ur*. and his ij sones, William and Richard, wolde come after[e] her[e] fader[e], and went to þe se wiþ a grete company of peple; but er þat[4] þai might come to lond[e], þe shipp come [5]aȝeyn a grete[5] roche, and brake [6]al into[6]
8 pices; and alle were drenched þat were [7]þ*er*in, saf one[7] man þat was in þe same shipp þat ascaped; and þis was on seynt Kat*er*ynes[8] day. ¶ And þise were þe names of ham þat were drenchede, þat is to seyn: William, þe Kynges sone, Richarde his broþ*er*, þe Erl
12 of Chestre, Octouyle his broþ*er*, Geffray Ridel, Walt*er* Emurcy, Gedfreye Erchedeken, þe Kynges dought*er*, þe Countesse of Perches, þe Kyng*us* nece, þe Countesse of Chestre, and meny oþ*er*. ¶ When Kyng Henry and oþ*er*e lordes arryued were in Engeland[e],
16 and harde þise tidyng*us*, þai made sorwe ynowȝ; & al her[e] merþe & ioye w*a*s t*ur*nede þo [9]into sorwe[9] & care.

How Maude þe Emp*er*esse come aȝey[ne] into Engel*and*; and how she was afterward wedded to Gaufrey,[10] þe Erl of
20 **Angoy. Capit*ulo* C*entesi*mo xxxvij.**

ANd when þat[11] ij ȝere were gone, þat þe Erl hade duellede wiþ þe Kyng[e], þe Erl went þo fro þe Kyng[e], and biganne to werre oppoñ him, & dede miche harme in þe lande of Normandye.
24 Wherfore Kyng Henry was sore annoiede when he herde þe tydynges.[12] wiþ al þe haste þat he myght[e], he passede þe see, and come into Normandye, and toke þ*er*e a stronge castel, & þ*er*e [13]helde him[13] al þat ȝere. And þo come to him tydynges[14] þat
28 Henry, [15]þe Emp*er*o*ur* of Almaigne, þ*a*t hade spousede Maud[16] his douȝt*er*, was dede, and þat she duellede no longer[e] in Almaigne, and þat she wolde come aȝeyne into Normandy to her[e] fader[e]. ¶ And when she was comen[17] to hi*m*, he toke[18] her[e] þo wiþ[19] him,
32 and come aȝeyne into Engeland[e], & made þe[10] Englisshemen to[16] done[20] oth & feaute[21] vnto þe Emp*er*esse. ¶ And þe forst man þat

[1] holly D. holy O. [2] *leaf* 79, *back*. [3] mych O.
[4] *MS.* þat þat; *om.* D. [5—5] aȝeynes a D. aȝens a O. [6—6] alto D.
[7—7] within saf o D. þ*er*in saf o O. [8] Kat*er*yne O.
[9—9] in mornyng D. into Mornynge O. [10] *om.* O. [11] þo O.
[12] tydyng O. [13—13] he duellede D. he dwelled O. [14] tydyng O.
[15] *leaf* 80. [16] *om.* D. [17] come O. [18] nome O. [19] to O.
[20] do O. [21] feautes D.

made þe oth was William þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbury, and
þat oþere Kyng Dauid of Scotland, & after him, al þe [1]Erles &
barons[1] of Engeland. ¶ And[2] after þat,[3] þe noble man, þe Erl of
Angoy, a worþi knyȝt, sent to þe Kyng of Engeland þat he wolde 4
grant him forto haue his doughter to spouse, Maude þe Emperesse.
¶ And for enchesoun þat her fader wist þat he was[4] a noble man,
þe Kyng grauntede him, & consentede þerto, and þo tok[5] his
doughter, and ladde her into Normandye, & come to þe noble 8
knyȝt [6]þe Erl[6] Gaufrid; & he spousede þe forsaide Maude wiþ
michel honoure; & þe Erl bigate [7]oppon her[7] a sone þat men[8]
callede 'Henry, þe Emperesse sone.' ¶ And after, when al þis
was done, Kyng Henry duellede al þat ȝere in Normandy. and 12
after þat, longe[9] tyme, a grevous sikenesse toke him, wherfore he
deide. & þis Kyng Henry regnede xxxv ȝere & iiij mounþes; &
after he[3] deide, [10]as bifore is[10] saide, in Normandy; & his hert was
enterede in þe grete cherche of oure Lady of Roen, & his body was 16
brouȝt wiþ michel[11] honour into Engeland, & enterede [12]at Redyng
in þe Abbay; &[12] of þe which Abbay he was [13]bigynner &[13]
Foundoure.

[14]How Stephene, Kyng Henryes suster[3] sone, Was made Kyng of Engeland. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Octauo. 20

After þis Kyng Henry þat was þe ferst, was made Kyng his
Nevew, his sustres[15] sone, Stephen,[16] Erl of Boloigne; For
anone as he harde þe tidynges[17] of his Vncles[18] deth, he passede þe 24
see, and come into Engeland, þrouȝ conseil & [19]strengþ & helpe[19]
of meny grete Lordes[20] of Engeland (aȝeynȝ heir oth þat þai hade
made to Maude þe Emperesse), tok[21] þe reaume, & lete crone
Stephen Kyng of [22]þe land.[22] ¶ And þe erchebisshop [23]William of 28
Kaunterbery,[23] þat ferst made þe[24] oth to[25] Maude þe Emperesse,
sette þe crone ferst opon Kyng Stephenus heuede, & him annoyntede; and Bisshop Roger of Salesbery mayntenede þe Kyngus

[1—1] barouns & Erles O. [2] And also O. [3] *om.* D.
[4] wist þat he was DO. wist R. [5] nome O.
[6—6] erle of D. Erle O. [7—7] on his wif D. [8] me DO.
[9] a longe D. [10—10] as is before O. [11] mych O.
[12—12] in the Abbay of Redyng D. at Redyng in þe Abbey O.
[13—13] *om.* D. [14] *leaf* 80, *back*. [15] suster O. [16] Stephenene *sic* O.
[17] tydyng O. [18] broþeres D. [19—19] helpe & strengþ D.
[20] londes *sic* D. [21] nome O. [22—22] Engeland D.
[23—23] of Kanterbery William D. [24] *om.* O.
[25] of feaute vnto D. & feaute vn-to O.

p*ar*tye in-as-miche as he[1] might. ¶ The ferst ȝere þat Kyng' Stephen biganne forto regne, he assembled' a grete host, & went him[2] toward Scotland', forto haue þo[3] werrede oppoñ þe Kyng of
4 Scotland'; but he come aȝeynes hi*m* in pees & in gode maner', & to him trust; but he made [4]to hi*m* none homage, for-asmiche as[4] he hade made [5]homage to[5] þe Emp*er*esse Maude. ¶ And þe iiij ȝere of his regne, Maude þe Emp*er*esse come into Engel*and*; & þo
8 bigan debate bituene[6] Kyng Stephen and Maude þe Emp*er*esse. þis Maude went vnto þe citee of Nichole; and þe Kyng' her'[7] bisegede longe tyme, & might nouȝt spede, so wel þe cite was kepte and defendede. and þo þat were wiþin þe citee queyntly scapede[8]
12 away wiþouten[9] eny maner' harme; and þo tok þe Kyng þe citee, & duellede þ*er*in to[10] Candelmasse. ¶ And þo come þe barons þat helde[11] wiþ þe Emp*er*esse, þat is forto seyn, [12]þe Erl Randulf' of Chestre, þe Erl Rob*er*t of Gloucestre, Hughe Bigot', Rob*er*t of
16 Molleye,[13] & brouȝt wiþ ham a stronge[14] power'.

How Maude þe Emp*er*esse Went fram[15] Wynchestr' vnto[16] Oxenford'; and after she ascapede[17] to[18] Wallyngford'; & what sorwe & disese ¶ she hade. Ca*pitul*o Centesimo
20 **xxxix°.**

WHen þe Kyng' was taken[19] & brouȝt [20]into warde in[20] þe Castel [21]of Bristow,[21] þis Maude þe Emp*er*esse anone was [22]lady of Engel*and*, & alle men helde her for[22] lady of þe lande.
24 ¶ But' þo of Kent helde wiþ Kyng'[23] Stephenes wif'; and also Willia*m* of Pree & his retenue halpe ham, and helde werre aȝeynes Maude þe Emp*er*esse. & anone after', þe Kyng of Scotl*and* come to ham wiþ [24]a grete[24] nombre of peple; and þo went þai in fere vnto
28 Wynchestre, þ*er*e þat þe Emp*er*esse was, & wolde haue take[25] here; but þe Erl of Gloucestre come wiþ his power', & fouȝt wiþ ham; & þe Emp*er*esse, in þe menewhile þat þe bataile durede, scapede fro þens, & went vnto Oxenford', & þ*er*e her'[26] helde. & in þat batail
32 wa*s* þe Erl of Gloucestre descomfitede & taken,[19] & wiþ him meny oþ*er*e lordes. ¶ And for his delyu*er*aunce was Kyng[3] Stephen

[1] þey O. [2] *om.* DO. [3] *om.* D.
[4—4] vnto [him] homage bicause þat D. [5—5] vnto *sic* D. homage vnto O.
[6] bituene the D. betwen þe O. [7] hem O.
[8] ascapede D. ascaped' O. [9] with-oute DO. [10] tul O.
[11] helden O. [12] *leaf* 81. [13] Morley O. [14] stronge D.
[15] fro DO. [16] to O. [17] schaped O. [18] vnto D. [19] take O.
[20—20] in warde into D. [21—21] *om.* O. [22—22] made D.
[23] kynges O. [24—24] an huge O. [25] taken DO. [26] he O.

delyu*er*ede out of[1] p*r*isouñ. ¶ And when he was delyu*er*ede out of[1] p*r*isoun, he went þens to Oxenford, & [2]bisegede þe Emp*er*esse þat was þo at Oxenford; &[2] þe sege endurede fro Michelmasse vnto Seynt Andrew*us* tyde. ¶ And þe Emp*er*esse [3]lete þo[3] cloþe[4] her[5] 4
al in white lynen cloþ, for enchesouñ þat she wolde nouȝt bene[6] knowe, for in þe same tyme þ*er*e was michel of snowe; and so she scapede[7] by þe[8] Tamyse [9]fra*m* ham awaye[9] þat were her enemys; & fro þens she went to Wallyngford, & [10]þ*er*e here helde.[10] ¶ And 8
þe Kyng wolde haue bisegede her; [11]but he hade so miche to done wiþ þe Erl Randulf of Chestre, & wiþ Hugh Bigot, þat strongelich[12] werrede oppoñ him in eu*er*y place, þat he ne wist whider to[13] turne; and þe Erl of Gloucestre halpe[14] ham wiþ his power. 12

How Gaufride, Erl of Angoy,[15] ȝaf vp vnto[16] Henry, þe Emp*er*esse sone, al Normandye. Ca*pitul*o C*entesim*o xl.

ANd after þis, þe[17] Kyng went vnto Wiltoñ,[18] & wolde haue made a castel þ*er*e; but þo come to him þe Erl of Gloucestre 16
wiþ a stronge power, & almost hade take þe Kyng; but ȝit þe[19] Kyng ascapede wiþ miche payn; & William Marcil[20] þ*er*e was take, & for whos delyu*er*ance þe Kyng ȝaf to[21] þe Erl of Gloucestre þe gode castel of Shirburn þat he hade tak. ¶ And when þis was 20
done, þe Erl Rob*er*t, & alle þe Kynges enemys, went to Faryndoñ, & bigonne [22]forto make þ*er*e a st*r*onge[22] castel; but þe Kyng, wiþ a stronge power, drof ham þens.

In þat same ȝere ¶ The Erl Randulf of Chestre was[23] accorded 24
wiþ þe Kyng, and come to his[24] co*ur*t at his co*m*mandeme*n*t; and þe Erl went[25] haue safliche[26] come*n*[27]; & þe Kyng anone lete[28] take him, and put hi*m* into p*r*isou*n*, & most neue*r* for noþing come out þ*er*of til þat he hade ȝelde op to[29] þe Kyng þe castel of Nichole, 28
þe whiche he hade tak fro þe Kyng wiþ strengþ in þe xv ȝere of þe[30] regne of Kyng Stephene. ¶ & Gaufride, þe Erl of Angoy,[31] ȝaf vp to Henry[32] al Normandy. In þe ȝere þat next sewede,

[1] *MS.* of of. [2—2] *om.* D. [3—3] þo lete D. [4] cloþen O.
[5] *MS.* her her. [6] be D. [7] ascaped DO. [8] *om.* O.
[9—9] away fram ha*m* D. [10—10] helde her þ*er*e D. [11] *leaf* 81, *back.*
[12] strongly O. [13] for-to O. [14] holpe D. [15] Angon O.
[16] to O. [17] þis the D. þis þe O. þis R. [18] Waltoñ D. [19] þo O.
[20] Macyll D. [21] vnto DO.
[22—22] þ*er*e to make a fair D. þ*er*e for-to make a strong O.
[23] was made O. [24] the Kynges D. [25] wende D.
[26] safly D. sauely O. [27] come O. [28] le *sic* D. [29] vnto O.
[30] his O. [31] Angoñ DO. [32] Henry his sone D. Herry his sone O.

[1]deide þe Erl[1] Gaufrid; and Henry[2] þo anon t*ur*nede aȝeyn to Angoy,[3] & þ*er*e was made Erl wiþ [4]michel ioye &[4] honour of his me*n* of þe lande; & to him deden feaute & homage þe most p*ar*te[5]
4 of his land. ¶ And þo w*a*s þis Henry, þe Emp*er*esse sone, Erl of Angoy[6] & Duc of Nor[7]mandye.

¶ And[8] in þe same ȝere Was made deuorse bituene þe Kyng of F*ra*unce & þe quene his wif, þat was ryght heir of Gascoigne, for
8 encheson̄ þat it[9] was knowe[10] & p*r*ouede þat þai wer sib & ney of blode; & þo spousede her, Henry þe Emp*er*esse sone; & þo was he[8] Erl of Angoy,[6] Duc of Normandy, & Duc of Gascoigne. ¶ þe xviij ȝere of þe[11] regne of Kyng Stephen, þis Henry come into
12 Engeland wiþ a[12] stronge power, and bigan[13] forto werre oppon̄ Kyng Stephen, & toke þe castel of Malmesbery, & dede miche harme. And þe[12] Kyng Stephen hade so miche werre þat he [14]wist nouȝt[14] whider to[15] wende; but at þe laste þai wer accorded,
16 þrouȝ þe Erchebisshop*e* Theobalde and þrouȝ o*þer* worþi lordes of Engeland, oppon̄ þis condiciou̅n, þ*a*t þai shulde dep*ar*te þe reaume of Engeland bituene ham, so þat[12] Henry, þe Emp*er*esse sone, shulde haue holliche halfe þe reaume, and when Kyng Stephen
20 were[16] dede, he shulde haue al þe lande of Engeland; & þ*us* þai were accordede, & pees c*r*iede[17] þrouȝ-out al Engeland. ¶ And when þe accord was made bituene þo ij lordes, Kyng Stephen bicome so sori, for cause þat he hade loste half Engel*and*, & felle
24 into soche a malaldy, & deide in þe xix ȝer, viij wokes & v dayes of his regne, al in werr & in contak; & he liþ in þe Abbay of Feu*er*sham, þe whiche he lete make,[18] þe vj[19] ȝere of his regne.

Of Kyng Henry þ*a*t was þe Emp*er*esse[20] sone, in whos tyme
28 **[21]Seynt Thomas of K*a*unt*er*bery[21] was Chaunceller.[22]**
¶ Capitulo ¶ Cent*esim*o xl p*r*imo.

A Nd after þis Kyng Stephen, regnede Henry [23]þe Emp*er*esse sone, þat[24] Was c*r*onede[25] of þe Erchebisshop Theobalde
32 þe xvij day bifore Cri[s]tesmas.[26] And in þe same ȝere Thomas

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] Henry his sone D. Herry his sone O. [3] Angon̄ DO.
[4–4] miche D. mych O. [5] p*a*rty D. p*a*rtye O. [6] Angon) O.
[7] *leaf* 82. [8] *om.* DO. [9] is *sic* D. [10] knowen O. [11] his O.
[12] *om.* D. [13] bigonne D. [14–14] nyst D. nyste O. [15] for-to O.
[16] was D. [17] ycryed O. [18] mak in D. make in O.
[19] sixte O. [20] Emp*er*esses D.
[21–21] *the words* seynt & of Cau*n*tirbury *are struck out, &* Beket *is inserted after* Cau*n*tirbury, *in* O. [22] Ch[a]unceller of Englond O.
[23] *leaf* 82, *back.* [24] and DO. [25] Crouned kyng O.
[26] C*r*istemasse O.

Beket of Londoñ, Erchebisshop̄ of Kaunt*er*bery, was made þe Kyng*us* Chanceller of Engeland. ¶ þe secunde ȝere þat he was cronede, he lete caste douñ alle þe newe castell*es*[1] þat were longyng vnto þe c*r*one, þe whiche Kyng Stephen hade ȝeue[2] vnto diu*er*se[3] meñ, & ham hade made erles & barons forto holde wiþ him, & [4]him helpe[4] aȝeyns Henry,[5] þe Emp*er*esse sone. ¶ And þe iiij ȝere of his regne he put vnder his[6] lordeship þe Kyng of Walys. And in þe same ȝer, when þe Kyng of Scotland had in his owen hande, þat is to seyne, þe citee of Kerlil, þe castel of Bamburghe, þe newe castel op[7] Tyne, and þe Erldome of Lancastre, þe same ȝere þe Kyng, wiþ[8] gret power, went into Walys, & lete caste adouñ[9] wodes, & make[10] waies, and made stronge þe castel[11] of Rutland & Basyngewerc; and amonge þe castell*es*[12] he made an house of þe temple. ¶ And in þe same ȝere was Richard his sone born, þat afterward was Erl of Oxenford.

¶ And þe iiij ȝere of hes regne, he made Gaufride, Erl of Britaigne; & in þat ȝere he chaungede his mone.[13] And þe vj ȝere of his regne he lade [14]an huge[14] host vnto Tolouse, & conquerede hit. And þe vij ȝer of his regne, deide Theobalde, þe[5] Erchebissho[p] of Kant*er*bery; and þo al þe citee of Kaunt*er*bery, [15]þrouȝ meschief, almost[15] was brent.

[*Thomas a Becket is made Archbishop of Canterbury, and quarrels with the King.*]

þe ix ȝer of his regne, Thomas Beket, his Chaunceller, was chosen to [16]ben Erchebisshop of Kaunt*er*bery; and oppoñ seynt Bernardes day he was sacrede. ¶ And in þat ȝere, born w*as* Alienore, þe Kynges douȝt*er*. ¶ And þe x ȝere of his regne, seynt Edmund þe Kyng was t*ra*nslatede wiþ miche[17] hono*ur*. ¶ And þe xj ȝere of his regne he helde his p*ar*lement at Northamptoñ; & fro þens fled Seynt[18] Thomas, Erchebisshop[19] of Kaunt*er*bery,[20] for þe[5] grete debate þat was bituen[21] þe Kyng and him; for if he hade bene[22] fonde on[23] þe morwe, he hade bene[22] slayn; & þ*er*fore he

[1] castel D. [2] ȝeuen D. [3] diu*ers* O.
[4—4] help him D. helpe hym O. [5] *om.* O.
[6] his owen D. his ovne O. [7] vpon O. [8] with a DO.
[9] doune D. [10] made O. [11] cast *sic* D. [12] castel D.
[13] mony D. [14—14] *MS. has* an huge an huge.
[15—15] almost þouȝ meschif D. almost þurgh myschef O. [16] *leaf* 83.
[17] michel D. [18] seynt *struck out in* O. [19] *om.* D.
[20] Caunt*er*bury fro þe kyng O.
[21] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [22] be O. [23] in DO.

fledde þens wiþ iij felawes, in[1] fote oneliche,[2] þat no man wist wher' he was, and went ouer þe see to þe Pope[3] of Rome. ¶ And þis was þe principal enchesouñ, forasmiche as þe Kyng wolde haue put
4 clerkes to[4] deth þat were atteint of felonye, wiþouten[5] eny pryuelege of holy cherche. ¶ And þe xij ȝere of his regne, was Iohñ, his sone, bore.[6] And þe xiij ȝere of his regne deide Maude þe Emperesse, þat was his moder'; And in þat same ȝere was Iohane
8 his doughter born.[7] ¶ þe xiiij ȝere of his regne, þe Duc Henry of Saxoyne spousede Maude, his doughter; & he bigate on here iij sones, Henry,[8] Othus, & William. ¶ And in þe xv ȝere of his regne, deide þe gode Erle Robert of Gloucestre, þat foundede þe
12 Abbay of Nonnes of Etoñ. ¶ And in[9] þe same ȝere, Marik', Kyng of Ierusalem, conquerede Babiloñ. ¶ þe xvj ȝere of his regne, he lete crone his sone Henry at Westmynstre; & him cronede, Roger, þe Erchebisshop of ȝork', in harmyng of Thomas þe Erchebisshop of
16 Kaunterbery; wherfore þe same Roger was acursede of þe Pope.[3]

[10]Of Kyng' Henry, þat was þe Emperesse sone; & of þe debate þat was bituene him & his fader' whiles[11] þat he was in Normandye. Capitulo Centesimo xlij^do^.

20 After' þe coronaciouñ of Kyng' Henry, þe sone of Kyng Henry, the[12] Emperesse sone, þat same Henry þe Emperesse[13] sone went ouer into Normandye; and þere he lete marie Elianore, his douȝter, vnto Dolfynes,[14] þat was Kyng of[15] Almaigne. And in þe
24 vij ȝere þat þe Erchebisshop Seynt[16] Thomas hade bene outlaghed', þe Kyng of Fraunce made þe Kyng & [17]þe Erchebisshop̄[17] accorded'; and þo come Thomas þe Erchebisshop, to Kaunterbery aȝeyne to his owen cherche. And þis accord' was made in þe bigynnyng' of
28 Aduent', and afterward he was quellede &[3] martirede,[3] þe v day of Cristusmasse[18] þat[9] þo next comme. For Kyng' Henry þouȝt oppoñ [19]a day of[19] Thomas, Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, oppoñ Cristesmasse[20] day as he sate[21] at þe[22] mete, and þise wordes saide: þat if
32 he hade eny gode knyȝt with him, he hade bene,[23] meny day go,[9]

[1] on O. [2] onely D. only O. [3] *struck out in* O. [4] to the D.
[5] *with*oute O. [6] borne D. [7] bore O. [8] Hen *sic* D.
[9] *om.* O. [10] *leaf* 83, *back.* [11] while DO. [12] *MS.* the þe.
[13] emperesseȝ D. [14] Delfines D. [15] *MS.* of of.
[16] *om.* D. *struck out in* O.
[17—17] seynt Thomas D. O. *has* seynt Thomas, *with* seynt *struck out.*
[18] cristesmasse D. Cristemasse O.
[19—19] seynt D. seynt *struck out in* O. [20] Cristemasse O.
[21] set D. [22] his D. *om.* O. [23] be O.

avengede of[1] the Erchebisshop Thomas. ¶ And anone Sir' William [Breton], S*ir*e Hughe Morvile, Sir' William Tracy, & Sir' Reynold' Fitz-Vrse, Beressone in Engelisshe,[2] went into[3] þe see, and come into Engel*and*, to þe cherche of K*aunter*bery, & him *þere* þai 4 matrede, at seynt Benetes aut*er* in þe moder' cherche; And þat w*as* in þe ȝere of þe[4] Incarnaciouñ of[5] Ih*es*u[6] crist, M[l]. C. lxxij[7] ȝere.[8] ¶ And anone after', Henry, þe new Kyng', biganne forto make werr' oppon [9]Henry, Kyng,[9] his fader', & eke oppoñ [10]his bre*þer*n.[11] 8 ¶ And so oppon a tyme þe Kyng' of F*ra*unce and al þe Kynges sones, & ek[14] þe Kyng of Scotland' & þe g*re*test' lordes of Engel*and*, were arisen aȝeynes Henry þe fader'; & at[12] last, as God wolde, he conquerede[13] his enemys; and þe Kyng' of F*ra*unce & he were 12 accorded'. and þo sent Kyng Henr', þe fader' specialy vnto þe Kyng' of F*ra*unce, and p*ra*ede him hertly, for his loue, þat he wolde sende to hi*m* by lettre þe names of ham þat bigonne þe werr' oppoñ him. ¶ And þe Kyng of France [14]sent aȝeyn to him[14] by lettre þe names 16 of ha*m* þat bigon þe werr': ferst' was Iohñ his sone, and Richard his bro*per*, [15]& Henry his sone,[15] þe newe Kyng'. ¶ þo w*as* Henry þe Kyng wonder wroþ, & cursede þe tyme þ*at* [16]euer' he ham[16] bigate. And[17] while þe werre durede, Henry his sone,[18] þe newe kyng', 20 ¶ deide, sore repentyng his mysdede; and moste sorw made of eny man for cause of Seynt[19] Thomas deþ of K*aunter*bery; & prayede his fader, wiþ miche sorwe of hert, mercy of[20] his t*re*spasse; and his fader' forȝaf it him, & hade of him grete pite; & aft[er], he 24 deide, þe xxxvj ȝere of his regne, and liþ at Redynge.

How þe C*r*isten men loste þe Holy Land' in þe forsaid Kyng*us* tyme, þrouȝ a[21] false Cristen ma*n* þ*at* bicome a[17] Sarasyne. Cap*itul*o Centesimo xliij^to^.[22] 28

ANd while þat Kyng Henry, þe Emp*er*esse sone, leuede & regnede, þe grete batail was in þe Holy Land' bituene þe Cristen men & þe Sarasyn*us*; but þe C*r*isten me*n* were *þere* quellede þoruȝ grete t*re*souñ of þe Erl of Trype, þat wolde haue hade to wyf 32

[1] oppoñ D. vpon O. [2] Englisshe p*r*iuely D. Englissh pryuyly O.
[3] vnto DO. [4] *om.* DO. [5] of oure lorde D. [6] Ih*es*u*s* O.
[7] lx and xij DO. [8] *om.* O. [9–9] kyng' Henry D. kyng Herry O.
[10] *leaf* 84. [11] bre*þer*n also D. bre*þer*in also O.
[12] at the D. at þ^e^ O. [13] conquerede alle D. co*n*quered all O.
[14–14] sent to him aȝeyne D. [15–15] *om.* D. [16–16] he hym eu*er*e O.
[17] *om.* D. [18] *om. sic* D. [19] *struck out in* O. [20] for DO.
[21] o DO. [22] *MS. has* xliiij^o^.

þe Quene [1]of Ier*usal*em, þat so*m*me tyme was Baldewyn*us* wif; but she forsoke him, & toke to her[2] lorde a Kny3t, a worþi ma*n* þat me called Sire Gy P*er*che3. [3]Wherfore þe Erle of Trip[3] was wroþ,
4 and went anone ryght to Saladyn, þ*a*t was Soudan of Babilon̄, & bicome Saresyn,[4] & his ma*n*, & forsoke[5] Cristendome and all C*r*isten law; and þe C*r*isten me*n* wiste[6] nou3t [7]of þis dede,[7] but wende[8] forto haue[9] hade grete helpe of him, as þai were wont to[9] haue
8 bifore. And when þai comen[10] to þe batail, þis false Cristen ma*n* t*ur*nede vnto þe Sarasynes, and forsoke his owen naciounes[11]; & so were þe Cristen men þere quellede wiþ þe Sarasyn*us*; and þus wer' þe C*r*isten me*n* slayne & put to horrible deþ, and þe citee of'
12 Ier*usal*em destroiede, & þe holy croice born away. ¶ þe Kyng of Fraunce [12]& al þe grete[12] Lordes of þe land lete ham croice [13]forto go into the Holy Lande; and amo*ng* ham went Richard, Kyng Henries sone, ferst aft*er* the Kyng' of' F*r*ance þat tok the crois[13] of
16 þe Erchebisshop of Toures; but he toke[14] nou3[t] þe viage at þat tyme, for enchesoun̄ þat he was lette by o*þer*e maner' waies [15]þat nede[15] moste[16] bene[17] done. ¶ And when Kyng Henry þe[18] fader' hade regnede xxxv^ti^ 3ere &[19] v mounþes and iiij dayes, he deide,
20 & liþ [at] Founteue*r*ard.

Of Kyng' Richard, þat conquerede all[19] þe Holy Land þat Cristen men hade loste. Capitulo Centesimo Quadragesimo quarto.[20]

24 ANd after' [21]þis Kyng[21] Henry,[22] regned Richard his sone, a stronge man & a worþi, & also bolde; & he w*a*s c*r*onede at Wynchestre[23] of þe Erchebisshop̄ Baldewynne, Erchebisshop[24] of Kaunt*er*bery, [25]the þrid day of Septembre; and the secunde 3ar' of
28 his regne Kyng Richard him-self' and Baldewyne the Erchebisshop̄ of Caunt*er*bury,[25] & Huber[t], Bisshop of Salesbery, & Randulf, Erl

[1] *leaf* 84, *back*. [2] here a O.
[3–3] *MS. has* Wherfore þe Erle of Trip Wherfore þe erl of Trip.
[4] a sarasyne D. [5] forsok his D. [6] wist it D. [7–7] *om.* D.
[8] went O. [9] *om.* O. [10] come O. [11] nac*i*on O.
[12–12] *MS. has* & al þe grete & al þe grete.
[13–13] forto . . crois D. for-to gon in-to þe holy land; & among hem went Richard, kyng Herrys sone, ferst aftir þe kyng of fraunce þ*a*t toke þe Cros O. *om.* R.
[14] nome O. [15–15] and nedes DO. [16] to O. [17] be DO.
[18] his DO. [19] *om.* D. [20] *MS. has* quinto.
[21–21] *om.* D. þis O. [22] Herry kyng O. [23] Westmynstre DO.
[24] *MS. has* erchebisbisshop; *om.* DO.
[25–25] the . . Caunt*er*bury D. þe iij day of Septembre & þe ij 3eer of his regne Kyng Richard hym-self & Baldewyn Erchebisshop̄ of Caunt*er*bury O. *om.* R.

of Gloucestre, & o*þer*e meny lordes of Engel*and*, went into þe Holy Land. And [1]in þat viage deide þe Erchebisshop [2]of K*aunter*bery; and Kyng Richard went bifore into þe Holy Lond, &[1] reste[3] nouȝt til þat[4] he come forþe in his way vnto[5] Cypres, and toke Cipres wiþ grete force. & siþen[6] he went fourþ toward þe Holy Land, & gete aȝeyn as miche as þe C*r*iste*n* men[7] haden[8] loste bifore, Kyng Richard [9]co*n*querede & gete hit aȝeyn,[9] saf onely þe Holy Croice. ¶ And when Kyng Richard come to þe toune[10] of Acres, forto gete [11]þe citee,[11] a grete debate aroos bituene him and þe Kyng of F*ra*unce, so þat Kyng Richard went aȝeyne into France, & was wroþ toward[12] þe Kyng of F*ra*unce; but [13]er þat[13] Kyng Richard went aȝeyne, he toke þe Citee[14] of Acres. ¶ And when he hade taken [15]þe citee, he duellede *þer*in[15] awhile; but to him come tydynges[16] þat þe Erl Iohn of Oxenford, his broþ*er*, wolde haue seisede al Engel*and* into his honde, & Normandy also, and wolde c*r*one him Kyng of þe lande. ¶ And when Kyng Richard herde þis tydynges,[17] he went aȝeyn toward Engel*and* wiþ[18] al þe spede þat he myght; but þe Duc of Estriche mette wiþ[19] him & tok hi*m*, & brouȝt hi*m* to[20] þe Emp*er*oure of Almaign; & þe Emp*er*o*ur* brouȝt him into[21] his prisoun. And aft*er*ward he was delyu*er*ede for an huge Raunsoun, [22]þat is, for to paien[22] an .C^M^. li.[23] ¶ And for whiche ransoun to bene[24] payede, eche o*þer*e chalice of Engel*and* was molten[25] & made into monye. And alle þe monkes of þe ordre of Cisteaux[26] ȝeue*n* alle her [27]bokes þrouȝ[27] Engel*and*, to done ham forto selle, and to[28] þat ransoun forto paye.

How Kyng Richard come aȝeyn fro þe Holy Lande, & avenged him of his enemys. Capitulo Centesimo Q*ua*dr*a*gesimo quinto.[29]

[30]WHiles þis[19] Kyng Richard was in p*r*isoun, þe Kyng of F*ra*unce werrede oppon him strongeliche[31] in Norm*an*dye, and Iohn his broþ*er* werrede oppon him[32] in Engel*and*; but þe

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] *leaf* 85. [3] rested O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] to [*sic*] he come to D. [6] siþ D. [7] peple O. [8] hade D.
[9–9] get it & conquered it þrouȝ grete strengþ D. gete it and conquered it aȝen þurgh gret myghte O.
[10] Citee O. [11–11] it O. [12] wiþ D. [13–13] or DO. [14] toune D.
[15–15] it he duellede in the Citee D. it he duellid *in* þe Cite O.
[16] tydyng DO. [17] tydynge O. [18] in D. [19] *om.* O.
[20] vnto DO. [21] to D. [22–22] forto paye D. þat is for-to paye O.
[23] pound O. [24] be DO. [25] meldede D. molte O.
[26] Cistenaux D. [27–27] boker [*sic*] þrouȝoute D. bokes þurgh O.
[28] *om.* DO. [29] *MS. has* Sexto. [30] *leaf* 85, *back.*
[31] strongly O. [32] hym strongly O.

bisshoppis & þe barons of Engel*and* wiþstode[1] ham[2] wiþ al þe[3] power þat þai hade & myght gete*n*,[4] & helde[5] þe castel of Wyndesore and alle o*þer*e castelle*s*. ¶ And þe forsaide Iohñ saw þat he hade
4 no might ne power' aȝeynes þe barons of Engel*and* forto feiȝt; but anone him went ouer' þe see to[6] þe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And when Kyng Richard come out of prisouñ, and was delyu*er*ede, and come into Engel*and*, anone after Candelmasse, in grete haste he
8 went vnto[7] Notyngham, and[8] þe castel of Notyngham to him was ȝolden; and þo disheritede[9] he Iohñ, his bro*þer*, and alle þat wiþ him helde; and aft*er*, he went vnto þe citee of Wynchestre, and *þer*e he lete him c*r*one Kyng eftesones; and aft*er*, he went into
12 Normandy forto werr' oppon þe Kyng of' Fraunce. ¶ And þe Kyng of F*ra*nce come wiþ vj C. knyȝtes toward Gisers; and[10] Kyng Richard mette him, & þo wolde haue ȝeue him bataile, but þe Kyng of Fraunce fledde; & an C. knyȝtes of his were take, & ij
16 C. stedes were trappede wiþ yren. ¶ And anone aft*er*, went Kyng[11] Richard forto bisege þe castel of Gaillard'. ¶ And as he rode oppoñ a day by þe castel, forto take avisement of þe castel, an[12] Arweblaster' smote him wiþ a quarel þat was e[n]venymede; and þe Kyng
20 drow out þe shafte of þe quarel, but þe quarelle hede abode stille in his heuede,[13] & hit bigan forto[14] rancle, þat he might nouȝt helpe him-self' ne [15]meve his Armes. ¶ And þo he wist þat he hade dethe[16] Wounde, þat he might nouȝt bene[17] hole for no maner þing'.
24 He co*m*mandede anone [18]alle his men[18] sharply forto[19] assaile þe castel, so þat þe castel was taken[20] or þat[21] he deide. And so manliche[22] his men deden,[23] þat þe peple þat were in þe castel were al taken; and þe Kyng dede wiþ ha*m* what þat[21] he wolde, & com-
28 mandede his men þat þai shulde bryng' tofore[24] him þe ma*n* þat him so hade[25] hurte & so hade[25] wondede. ¶ And when he come bifore þe Kyng', þe Kyng axed' what was his name; & he saide "Sire, [26]my name is[26] Bertram Gurdoñ." "Wherfore," saide þe Kyng,
32 "hast þow me slayn, siþ þat y dede þe neuer' none harme?" ¶ "Sire," said' he, "þouȝ ȝe dede me neu*er*[27] harme, ȝe haue done[28] to my frendes miche harme; For ȝour'-self, wiþ ȝ*our* owen honde,

[1] withstonden O. [2] him D. [3] here D. [4] gete DO.
[5] geten DO. [6] vnto O. [7] into O. [8] ad *sic* D.
[9] disherite O. [10] & þe O. [11] *om.* O. [12] hike O.
[13] heede D. heed O. [14] to O. [15] *leaf* 86. [16] dethes D. dethis O.
[17] be DO. [18–18] *om.* DO. [19] *om.* D. al his me*n* for-to O.
[20] take O. [21] *om.* D. [22] manly O. [23] dede O.
[24] bifore D. byfor O. [25] *om.* DO. [26–26] *om.* O.
[27] neu*er*e non O. [28] do D.

quellede my fader' & my broþ*er*; and þ*er*for now y han[1] ȝow quytte ȝoure t*rau*aile." ¶ þo saide Kyng Richard: "He þat deide oppon þe croice to bryng mann*us* soule [2]fram þe[2] pyne of helle, forȝeue ȝow my deþ! and y also forȝeue hit þe." Þo co*m*mandede 4
þe Kyng þat no man shulde him misdone[3]; but for al þe kyng*us* defendyng, ¶ So*m*me of his me*n* [4]hi*m* folwed,[4] & p*r*iuely him quellede. And þe vj day aft*er*, þe Kyng deide shryuen, and sore [5]repentance hauyng'[5] of his misdedes,[6] & was houselede & 8
annoyntede. And þis kyng ne[7] regned but ix ȝere & xxxix wokes, & [8]deide, & liþ bisides[8] his fader' at Founteuerard'.

Of Kyng Iohn̄, þat in þe[9] ferst ȝere of his regne loste al Normandye. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* xlvj^{mo}.[10] 12

WHen Kyng Richard was dede, for enchesoun̄ þat [11]he hade none heir', noþ*er*e[12] sone ne dought*er*, his broþ*er* Iohan was made Kyng', an[d] c*r*onede at Westmynstre of Hubert, þat was þo Erchebisshop̄ of K*a*unt*er*bery. ¶ And when he biganne forto 16
regne, he bicome so mervaillous a[7] ma*n*, and went ou*er* into Normandye, & werrede oppon̄ þe Kyng' of France. And so longe þai werrede to-gedre, til att þe laste Kyng Iohn̄ loste Normandye & Angoy[13]; wherfor he was sore annoiede, & was none[14] m*er*vaile. 20
¶ þo lete he assemble byfore him at London̄, Erchebisshoppis, bisshopp*us*, Abbotes & Pryo*ur*s, Erles & barons, and helde þ*er*e a grete Parlement', & axede þ*er*e of þe clergye[15] þe tenþe of eu*er*y cherche of Engeland', forto[16] co*n*quere & gete aȝeyne Normandy & 24
Angoy[17] þat he hade loste. and' þai wolde nouȝt graunt þat þing'; wherfore he was wonder' wroþ. ¶ And in þe same tyme deide þe Erchebisshop[18] Hubert'. And þe Prio*ur* & þe Couent of K*a*unt*er*bery chosen, aȝeynes þe Kyng*us* wille, to bene Erchebisshop, 28
Maistre Stephen of Langetoun̄, a goode clerc þat wonede at þe court of Rome, & sende[19] to þe Pope[20] here elleccioun̄; & þe Pope[20] confermede hit, and sacred hit[21] at Viterbe. ¶ When þe Kyng wiste þis tydyng*us*,[22] he was wonder' wroþ, & drof þe Prior' & þe 32
couent fro Kant*er*bery, & exilede ham[23] out of Engel*and*, &

[1] haue D. [2—2] oute of D. [3] mysdo D. [4—4] folewede him D.
[5—5] repentyng' D. repentaunt hauy*ng* O. [6] mysdede D.
[7] *om.* DO. [8—8] lith beside O. [9] the D. þe O. *om.* R.
[10] *MS. has* xlvij^{mo}. [11] *leaf* 86, *back.* [12] neyþ*er* D. neþ*er* O.
[13] Angon DO. [14] no DO. [15] *MS.* chergye; Clergie of Engelond' O.
[16] forto DO. for R. [17] Angoun̄ DO. [18] bisshop D. bysshop̄ O.
[19] sent DO. [20] *struck out in* O. [21] hym O. [22] tydyng O.
[23] hym O.

co*m*mandede[1] þat no maner' lettre þat come fro þe court of Rome, ne no[2] comandement,[3] shulde be[4] vnderfong' ne pledede[5] in Engelond'. ¶ When þise tydyng*us*[6] come to þe Pope,[7] he sent
4 vnto Kyng Iohn̄ by his lettre, & p*ra*yede him wiþ gode wille & gode hert þat he wolde vnderfonge Stephen, [8] Erchebisshop of Ka*unter*bery, vnto His cherche, & soffre þe P*rio*ur & his monkes to[9] come aȝeyn to[10] her' owen duellyng'; but þe Kyng' wolde nouȝt
8 g*ra*nt hit for noping.[11]

How Kyng Iohan wolde [12]nouȝt do[12] for[9] þe Popes[13] co*m*mandeme*n*t; wherfore al Engel*and* was ente*r*dite[14] [15] & suspended'.[15] Ca*pitul*o C*entesim*o xlvij°.[16]

12 AND at þe[17] laste, þe Pope[7] sent by his autorite, and ennioynede to[18] bisshoppis of Engeland' þat, if þe Kyng' wolde nouȝt vnderfonge þe Prioure of Kaunt*er*bery and his monkes, þat þai shulde do[19] gen*er*al ente*r*dityng' prouȝ-oute al Engeland'; & g*ra*ntede
16 ful power' to iiij bisshopis to p*ro*nounce þe ente*r*dityng, if[20] it were nede: ¶ þe ferst was Bisshop Willia*m* of London̄, & þat o*per* Eustace, Bisshop̄ of Ely; þe þridde[21] was Walt*er*, þe Bisshop of Wynchestre; And þe ferþ[22] was Giles, þe Bisshop of Herford.[23]
20 ¶ And þise iiij bisshoppis praiede þe Kyng', knelyng on here knees & sore wepyng', þat he wolde do[24] þe Popis[25] co*m*mandement', and shewede him þe bullis of the[9] ente*r*dityng'; but, for no p*ra*yer' þat þai myght p*ra*ye, he wolde nouȝt consent þe*r*to. And when þe
24 bisshopes saw þis, þai went fro[26] þe Kyng'; ¶ And in[17] þe morwe[27] after' þe Annunsiacion̄ of oure Lady, þai p*ro*nouncede þe gen*er*al ente*r*dytyng' prouȝ-oute al Engeland', so þat þe cherchedores were shitte[28] wiþ Keyes & wiþ [29]o*per* fastnyng', and wiþ[29] wallys. ¶ And
28 when þe ente*r*dyting was p*ro*nuncede, þan þe Kyng bigan forto[30] wax al out of mesure, and toke[31] into his honde[32] alle þe possessions of þo[33] iiij bisshopis, and of al þe clergye prouȝ-out[34] al þe lande,

[1] co*m*mandede D. Comau*n*ded' O. co*m*mande R. [2] none D.
[3] mandement D. mau*n*dem*e*nt O. [4] þai D. [5] plede D.
[6] tydyng' D. [7] *struck out in* O. [8] *leaf* 87. [9] *om.* D.
[10] vnto D. [11] nomane*r* þing' D. [12—12] no-þing done O.
[13] *MS. has* Pope *struck out; it is also struck out in* O.
[14] ente*r*ditede D. entirdited O. [15—15] *om.* O.
[16] *MS. has* xlviij°; D *has* xxxvij°. [17] *om.* O.
[18] to þe O. [19] don O. [20] if þat D. [21] þirde O. [22] iiij O.
[23] Hereford' O. [24] don O.
[25] Popes *struck out, and* bysshopp*es inserted by another hand in* O.
[26] from O. [27] morne DO. [28] shitte in D. [29—29] *om.* D.
[30] to O. [31] nome O. [32] hondes D. [33] the D. þe O.
[34] þrouȝ D. þurgh O.

and ordeynede men forto kepe [1] ham, þat[1] þe clerkes might nouȝt haue here leuyng'. Wherfore þe biss[hopis curs]ede [2] ham aH þat put, or shulde medle[2] wiþ, holy cherchez[3] godes, aȝeins [4]the Wille of ham þat ham[5] owede. 4

¶ And Whe[n] þe Kyng Wolde nouȝt cesse of his malice for no man*er* þing', þe[6] iiij bisshoppis aboue-saide[7] went ou*er* þe see, and went to þe Erchebisshop̄[8] of Kaunt*er*bery, and tolde him al þe tidyng*us*.[9] ¶ And þe Erchebisshop to ham saide, þat þai shulde 8 go[10] aȝeyn to Kant*er*bery, and he wolde come þider' to ha*m*, or elles he wolde sende þider' certeyn p*er*sones in his stede, þat shulde done[11] as miche as hi*m*-self were þ*er*e. ¶ And when þe bisshopis herde þis, þai t*ur*nede aȝeyne vnto[12] Engeland', & come[13] vnto K[a]un- 12 t*er*bery. [14] ¶ the tydynges comen to the kyng' þat þe bisshoppes wer' come aȝeyne to Kant*er*bery,[14] and [as] him-self might nouȝt come þider' þat tyme, he sent þider[15] bisshopes, Erles, Abbotes, forto trete wiþ ham, þat þe Kyng shulde vnderfonge þe Erchebisshop 16 Stephen, & þe p*r*iour' and alle[16] þe monkes of Kaunt*er*bery, and þat he shulde neuer' after' þat tyme noþing take of Holy Cherche aȝeynes þe wille of ha*m* þat owede[17] þe godes; and þat þe Kyng shulde make ful amendes to ham of whame he hade eny godes 20 taken, & þat holy cherche shulde haue alle here F*ra*unchises as ferforþ[18] as she hade in Seynt Edward*us* tyme þe Confessoure.

How Stephen of Langetone co*m*me into Engel*and* þrouȝ þe Popis[19] co*m*mandement, & the[n][20] went aȝeyn. Ca*pitul*o C*entesim*o xlviij°.[21] 24

WHen þe fourme of accorde þus was ordeynede,[22] hit was in a peire of endentures; & þai put her' selx[23] to þat [24]o p*ar*ty,[24] and þai þat comen[25] in þe Kyng*us* name put her' selx[26] to þat o*per*e 28 p*ar*te[16] of þe endent*ur*es. And þe iiij bisshopp*us* aboue-saide toke

[1–1] it for D. it þat O.
[2–2] al men þat ham medlede D. al hem þ*a*t put or schuld medle O.
[3] Cherche O. [4] *leaf* 87, *back*. [5] it D. [6] þo D.
[7] aforesaide D. [8] Bisshope O. [9] doyng' D. doynge O.
[10] goñ D. [11] do D. [12] to O. [13] comen O.
[14–14] the . . Kant*er*bery D. The tydynge come to þ^e^ kyng þ*a*t þ^e^ Bisshopes were come aȝen to Cau*n*tirbury O. *om.* R.
[15] þide *sic* D. [16] *om.* O. [17] owen D. owe O.
[18] alseferforth D. as ferforþ O. afferforþ R.
[19] *MS. has* Popis *struck out*; *struck out also in* O. [20] he D. *om.* O.
[21] *MS. has* xlix°; D *has* xxxviij°; O *has* lxviij°.
[22] ordenede D. ordeyned' O. ordeyne R. [23] sealles D. seeles O.
[24–24] one p*ar*te D. [25] come D. [26] seeles O.

þat o[1] *par*te[2] of þe enden*tur*es[3] wiþ ha*m*; And þe o*per* *par*te of
þe endenture þai[3] bare wiþ ha*m* forto shew þe Kyng'. ¶ When þe
Kyng saw[4] þe fourme, and hit[4] [5] vnderstode, he helde him ful wel
4 paiede[6] of al mane*r* þing þ*at*[7] þai hade ordeynede, saf as tochyng
þe restitucioñ of þe godes [8]forto make[8] aȝeyne; to þat þing' he
wolde[9] nouȝt accorde; and so he sent worde aȝeyne to þe [10]forsaide
iiij bisshoppis,[10] þat þai shulde done[11] out and put awey þat o pynt
8 of restitucioñ; and þai ansuerede þat þai nolde[12] nouȝt done[4] [13]out
a word'.[13] ¶ þo sent þe Kyng' to þe Erchebisshop by þo iiij
bisshopes, þat he shulde come to Kaunt*er*bery forto speke wiþ him
þere, and sent vnto him saf condit, vnder' plegges, þat is to seyn,
12 his Iusticeȝ, Gilbert Peytevyn, William de la Breuer', & Iohñ le
fi[t]z Hugh, þat in here condit safly he shulde come, & goñ aȝeyn at
his wille; & in þis maner' þe Erchebisshop Stephen come vnto
Kaunt*er*bery. ¶ And when the Erchebisshop w*as* [come],[14] þe
16 Kyng' come to Chilham, for he wolde come no nyer'[15] K*a*unt*er*bery at
þat tyme; but he sent by his t*re*sorer', þe[16] bisshop*e* of Wynchestre,
þat he shulde done[17] out of þe enden*tur*es þe clause of restitucioun
forto make of þe godes. ¶ And þe Erchebisshop made his oth *per*,
20 þat[18] he wolde neuer' do[19] oute a[20] worde *per*of, ne chaunge of þat
þe bisshopes[21] hade spoken[22] & ordeynede. & so þe Erchebisshop*e*
went aȝeyn to Rome, wiþ-outen[23] eny more doyng'. ¶ Kyng' [Iohn]
was þo[24] miche wro*per*[25] þan euer he was bifore, and lete make a
24 comen[26] c*r*ie þrouȝ-out al Engel*and*, þat al þo þat haden[27] holy
cherche rentes, and wenten[28] ouer þe see, þat þai shulde come aȝeyn
into Engel*and* at a c*er*teyn day, and elleȝ þai shulde lese her' rentes[29]
for eu*er*more; and þat he co*m*mandede to[4] eu*er*y shirryf þrouȝout
28 Engel*and*, þat þai shulde enquer' if eny bisshop, Abbot,[30] Pryoure,
or eny o*per* p*r*elate of Holy cherche, [31]fro þat day aft*er*ward'
resceyuede eny mandem*en*t þat come fro þe Pope,[32] þat þai shulde
tak þe body, & brynge hit bifore him; & þat þai shulde take into
32 þe Kynges hande al her' londes[33] of holy cherche[34] þat were ȝeuen

[1] one D. [2] *par*tye O.
[3–3] and D. w*ith* hem & þ*at* o*pere* p*ar*tye of þe enden*tur*es þey O.
[4] *om.* O. [5] *leaf* 88. [6] apayed D. [7] as DO. [8–8] *om.* D.
[9] nolde O. [10–10] iiij bysshopes aforseid' O. [11] do D. [12] wolde D.
[13–13] out o word' D. o word' O. a word R. [14] comen D.
[15] neire D. ner O. [16] *om.* D. [17] do D. [18] that D. þat O. at R.
[19] don O. [20] o O. [21] Archebisshop D. [22] spoke O.
[23] withoute DO. [24] *om.* D. so O. [25] wro*per* þo D.
[26] comune O. [27] hade D. had O. [28] went DO. [29] Rente O.
[30] Abbot or D. [31] *leaf* 88, *back.* [32] *struck out in* O.
[33] godeȝ D. [34] che *sic* D.

to[1] eny man þrouȝ þe Erchebisshop Stephen or by þe Pryour of Kaunterbery, fram þe tyme of þe eleccioun of þe erchebisshope; ¶ And commandede þat alle þe wodes þat were þe erchebisshopus shulde[2] bene[3] cast adoun to[1] þe grounde, and all solde. 4

How Kyng Iohn destroyed þe ordre of Cisteaux. Capitulo Centesimo xlix°.[4]

ANd in þe same tyme þe Irisshe-men bigon to[5] werr oppon Kyng Iohn; and Kyng Iohn ordeynede him forto[6] wende 8 into Yrland, and lete arere an huge tax[7] þrouȝ-out al Engeland,[7] þat is to seyn, xxxv M marȝ[8]; & sent þrouȝ-out[9] al Engeland to þe monkes of þe ordre of Cisteaux, þat þai shulde helpe him of vj M marc of Siluer; and þai ansuerede[10] & saide[10] þat þai derst 12 noþing done wiþouten[11] her chief Abbot of Cisteaux. Wherfore Kyng Iohn, when he come[12] aȝeyne[13] fram Irland,[13] he dede ham so miche sorwe & care, þat þai nist wher forto abide; for he toke so miche ransoun of euery hous of ham,[14] þe somme amountede ix M 16 & iij C marȝ,[15] so þat þai were clene loste[16] and destroyede, & voidede her hous & her landes þrouȝ-out al Engeland. ¶ And the Abbot of Wauersey[17] drade so miche his manace, þat he forsoke al his[18] Abbay, & went þens, and pryuely[19] ordeynede him ouer þe 20 see[20] to þe hous of Cisteaux. ¶ When þe tydynges[21] come to þe Pope,[22] þat þe Kyng had done so miche malice, þo was he toward þe Kyng ful wroþ, and sent ij legates to[1] þe Kyng,—þat on me callede Pandolf, & þat opere Duraunt,—þat þai[23] shulde warne þe 24 Kyng, in þe Popis[22] name, þat he shulde cesse of his persecucioun þat he dede vnto holy cherche, & amende þe[24] wrong and trespasse[24] þat he hade done to þe Erchebisshope of Kanterbery, & [25]vnto þe[25] monkes of Kaunterbery, & to al þe clergye of Engeland, and þat 28 he shulde restore þe godes aȝeyn þat he hade taken[26] of ham aȝeyns her wille, & elles[27] þai shulde curse the[28] Kyng by name; and to done[29] þis þing,[30] & to conferme,[30] þe Pope[22] toke ham his lettres in

[1] vnto O. [2] shul O. [3] be DO. [4] *MS. has* lmo. [5] forto DO.
[6] foro *sic* D. [7–7] *om.* O. [8] Mark O. [9] þrouȝ D. þurgh O.
[10–10] *om.* D. [11] with-oute DO. [12] come home O.
[13–13] into Engeland D. fro Irlond O. [14] ham þat D. hem þat O.
[15] Mark O. [16] ylost O. [17] Waruersey O. [18] þe O. [19] *om.* D.
[20] see pryuely D. [21] tydyng D. tydynge O. [22] *struck out in* O.
[23] *leaf* 89. [24–24] *tre*spas and wrong D. wrong and þe trespace O.
[25–25] to the Priour and D. to þe Priour & to þe O.
[26] take O. [27] ell O. [28] the D. þe O. *om.* R. [29] do D.
[30–30] *om.* D.

bulles patent. ¶ þise ij legates comen[1] into Engel*and*, and comen to þe Kyng' to Northamptoñ, þ*er*e þat he helde his p*ar*lement; & ful curteisely þai[2] him saluedꞇ,[3] and saide: "Sire, we beþe[4] come*n*
4 fro[5] þe Pope[6] of Rome, þe pees of holy cherche & [7] þe lande forto amendꞇ; and we monest ȝow ferste in þe Popis half', þat ȝe make ful restitucioun of þe godes þat ȝe haue rauisshede of holy cherche & of þe landꞇ, & þat ȝe vnderfonge Stephen,[8] Erchebisshop of
8 Kant*er*bery, into his dignite, and þe Priour' of K*a*unt*er*bery & his monkes, & þat ȝe ȝelde aȝeyn to[9] þe Erchebisshop*e* alle his landes & rentes, wiþout eny wiþholdyng. ¶ And Sire,[10] more-ouer', þat ȝe[11] soche restitucioun ham[12] make, as holy cherche shal holde her'
12 paiede."

¶ þo ansuerede þe Kyng'; "as tochyng' þe Prio*ur* & his monkes of Kaunt*er*bery, al þat ȝe haue saide, y [13]wille gladelyche[13] do, & al þing' þat ȝe wille ordeyne. ¶ But as tochyng' þe
16 Erchebisshop, y shal telle ȝow in[12] myn hert as it liþ, þat þe Erchebisshop lete his bisshopriche, & þat þe Pope[6] [14]þan for him[14] wolde praye, & þan oppoñ aventure me shulde like some o*per*e bisshopriche [15]forto ȝeue him[15] in Engelandꞇ; and oppoñ[16] þis
20 condicioun y wil[17] him resceyue and vnderfonge. ¶ And noþeles in Engel*and*, as Erchebisshop yf' [18]he abide, he shal neuer' haue so gode saf condit þat[19] he ne shal ben[4] tak." ¶ þo saide Pandolf vnto þe Kyng': "holy cherche was neuer' wont to disg*ra*de[20]
24 Erchebisshop wiþouten[21] cause resonable; but eu*er* she was wont to chastice Pry[n]ces þat to Godꞇ & holy cherche were in-obedient." ¶ "What! how now?" q*uod* þe Kyng, "manace ȝe me?" ¶ "Nay," saide Pandolf', "but ȝe [22]now openly haue tolde as it stondeþ[22] in
28 ȝo*ur* hert; & to ȝow we wil tel what is þe Popis[6] wille; & þus it stant: þat he haþ ȝow holiche[23] ent*er*ditede & accursede for þe wronges þat ȝe haue done to holy cherche & to þe clergye. & for-as-miche as ȝe duelliþ & beþ in wil to abide in ȝour' malice, and
32 wil nouȝt come to none emendement,[24] ȝe shal vnderstondꞇ þat fro þis tyme aft*er*ward þe centence is oppoñ ȝow ȝeuen, & halde[25] stede

[1] come DO. [2] *om.* D. [3] salewed hym O. [4] be O.
[5] fra*m* D. [6] *struck out in* O. [7] & of DO. [8] Stephen the D.
[9] vnto DO. [10] Sir' ȝitte D. sir ȝit O. [11] ȝe hem O. [12] *om.* O.
[13–13] wolde gladely D. wold gladly O. [14–14] for him þan D.
[15–15] him forto ȝeue D. [16] *MS.* oppoñ oppoñ. [17] wolde DO.
[18] *leaf* 89, *back.* [19] *MS.* þak. [20] descharg D. [21] wi*th*oute O.
[22–22] haue tolde openly how it stondes D. haue now openlich haue told as it standith O.
[23] holy DO. [24] amendeme*n*t O. [25] holdeþ D. halt O.

& strengþ; and all[1] þo þat wiþ ȝow haþ[2] co*m*munede or[3] þis tyme,
Whe*per* þat þai beþ[4] Erles or[5] barons,[6] knyghtes or eny o*per*,
what-so-[7]eu*er* þat[7] þai bene, we ham assoile safly vnto þis day.
And fro þis tyme aft*er*ward, of what condicioñ so-euer[8] he[9] be, we 4
ham acurse þat wiþ ȝow co*m*munen, and[10] do we sentence oppoñ
haṁ openly & specialy. ¶ And we assoile quyte[11] Erles &[12] baroñs,
knyȝtȝ, & al o*per* maner' me*n*, of her' homages, se*r*uices & feautez,
þat þai shulde vnto ȝow done. ¶ And þis þing to co*n*ferme, We 8
ȝeue[13] pleyn power' to þe Bisshop of Wynchestre & to þe Bisshop
of Norwich; ¶ And þe same power we [14]ȝeue into[14] Scotl*and* to þe
Bisshop[15] of Rouchestre & of Salesbery; & in Walys we ȝeue[16] þe
same power' to þe Bisshop[17] of seynt Dauid,[18] of Landa & of[19] 12
Assa. ¶ And more-ou*er* we sende[20] þrouȝ al C*r*istendome, þat al þe
bisshopis biȝend þe see, þat þai[21] [22]acurse alle þo þat helpeþ ȝow, or
in[12] eny conseile ȝeue[23] in eny maner nede þat ȝe haue forto done in
eny p*ar*ty of the world; and [24]we assaile[24] al ha*m* þat aȝeynes ȝow 16
meueþ[25] eny maner' werre. ¶ And we assoile ham al also, by þe
autorite of þe Pope,[26] & co*m*manden[27] ha*m*[28] also wiþ ȝow forto
werr', as wiþ him þat is enemy to[29] al holy cherche." ¶ þo
ansuered þe Kyng, "what mow ȝe done[30] more?" ¶ þo saide[31] 20
Pandolf: "we seyn[32] to ȝow 'in verbo Dei,' þat ȝe, ne none heir'
þat ȝe haue, neu*er* after' þis day may be c*r*onede." ¶ Tho saide þe
Kyng: "by Him þat is Almyghty God, & y hade wist of þis þing
er' þat ȝe come into my land, þat ȝe me[12] hade brouȝt[33] soche 24
tidynges,[34] y shulde haue made ȝow ride[35] al an hool ȝere." ¶ þo
ansuerede Pandolf: "ful wel wende we, at oure ferst comyng, þat
ȝe wolde haue ben obedient to God and to[5] holy cherche, & haue
fulfillede þe Popys[26] co*m*mandement; and nowe we haue shewede 28
& p*ro*nuncede vnto[36] ȝow þe Popis[26] wille, as we were chargede
þ*er*wiþ. ¶ And as now ȝe haue saide þat, if ȝe hade wist þe cause
of oure co*m*myng, þat ȝe wolde haue made vs ryde al an hool ȝere,

[1] oppoñ alle D. vpon alle O. allo R. [2] hauen D. haue O.
[3] bifore D. before O. [4] be D. ben O. [5] *om.* D. [6] Baroñs or O.
[7]—[7] *om.* D. [8] þat eu*er*e D. eu*er* þat O. [9] þei O.
[10] and so DO. [11] quytely D. quytly O. [12] *om.* DO. [13] ȝeuen O.
[14]—[14] ȝeueth in O. [15] bysshoþs O. [16] ȝeuen D. yeueñ O.
[17] bisshoppis D. bysshopes O. [18] Dauid and DO.
[19] of seynt DO. [20] sendeþ D. sendith O.
[21] þai do D. þey don O. [22] *leaf* 90. [23] ȝeueth D.
[24]—[24] assoile D. þat assoylle O. assoile R. [25] meue O.
[26] *struck out in* O. [27] co*m*mande D. [28] *om.* O. [29] vnto O.
[30] do me D. don me O. [31] answered O. [32] saie D.
[33] broght me O. [34] Tydynge O. [35] riden O. [36] to D.

and as wel ȝe myght haue saide þat ȝe wolde haue take[1] an hool
ȝere of respite by þe Popys[2] leue. ¶ But forto suffre what deþ
þat[3] ȝe couþe ordeyne, we shulle nouȝt spare forto tel ȝow holliche
4 al þe Popis[2] message, & his wille þat we[4] wer' chargede with."

How Pandolf' delyuerede a clerc þat hade falsede[5] & contrefetede þe Kyng*us* monye[5] [6]bifore þe[6] Kyng'.[7] Ca*pitulo* Cent*esimo* l°.[8]

8 A Non þo co*m*mandede þe Kyng to[3] the Shirrif'[9] & bailifs[10] of
Northamptoñ þat [11]were in þe Kynges p*re*sence, þat[11] þai
shulde bryng' forth alle [12]þe prisoners, þat[13] þai myȝt bene[14] done
to deþe bifore Pandulf', for encheson þe Kyng wende þat þai
12 wolde haue gaynesaide here dedes for cause of deþ, al þing þat
þai[15] hade spoken bifore.[16] ¶ When þe prysoners were comen[17]
bifore þe Kyng', þe Kyng' co*m*manded'[18] so*m*me to bene honget, &
some to bene[19] drawe, & so*m*me to draw out her' eyen of her'
16 heued.[20] and amonge alle o*þer*, *þer*e was a clerc þat hade falsede
þe Kynges monye; & þe Kyng co*m*maundede þat he shuld'
bene[21] honged & drawe. ¶ And when Pandolf herd þis co*m*-
ma*n*dement of þe Kyng', he stert[22] op smertly, and anone axed
20 a book' & candel, [23]and wolde haue[23] cursed alle ham þat sette
oppoñ þe clerc eny honde. ¶ And Pandolf him-self went forto
seche a croice; and þe Kyng folwede him, and delyu*er*ede him þe
clerc by þe honde, þat he shulde do[24] wiþ him what-euer' þat he
24 wolde. And þus was the clerc delyu*er*ede, and went þens; and
Pandolf & Duraunt'[25] went þo fro[26] Kyng Iohñ, & come aȝeyne to
þe Pope[27] of Rome, and tolde him þat Kyng Iohñ wolde nouȝt
amendede ben, but euer' abide so acursede. ¶ And noþeles þe Pope
28 g*ra*unted' þat ȝer' prouȝ-out Engeland', þat men might synge masseȝ[28]
in couenable cherches, & make Godes body, and ȝif it to sik' men
þat [29]shulde passe[29] out of þe[30] worlde, & also þat men might c*r*isten

[1] tok D. [2] *struck out in* O. [3] *om.* DO. [4] he D.
[5—5] the kynges mony and coun*ter*fetede it D. & cou*nter*fete þ^e^ kynges money O.
[6—6] *om.* O. [7] Kyng' himself D. *om.* O. [8] *MS. has* lj°.
[9] Shereves O. [10] baliez D. [11—11] *om.* D. [12] *leaf* 90, *back.*
[13] þat wer' in the kynges prisouñ þat D. [14] be DO.
[15] he O. [16] afore DO. [17] Come O.
[18] *MS. has* to bene co*m*mamanded', *with* to bene *underlined for omission.*
[19] be O. [20] heed O. [21] be DO. [22] sterte him D.
[23—23] *MS. has* and wolde haue & wolde haue. [24] done O.
[25] Durant his felaw D. Duraunt his felawe O. [26] fro þ^e^ O.
[27] *struck out here and everywhere in* O. [28] masse D.
[29—29] passe shulde D. passe schuld' O. [30] þis O.

childern ou*er*al. ¶ And when þe Pope wist' & sawe þat þe Kyng wolde nou3t bene[1] vnder' þe rewele of holy cherche for no man*er* þing', þe Pope [2]þo sent[2] to þe Kyng of Fr*a*nce, in remissiouñ of his synnes, þat he shulde take wiþ him al þe power' þat he myght, & wende into Engeland forto destroye Kyng Iohan. 4

[*King John gives in to the Pope.*]

When þis tydyng*us*[3] come to Kyng'[4] Iohñ, þo Was he sore annoyede, & sore drade Laste þat he shulde lese his reaume, and him-self [5]be done vnto þe[5] deþ. ¶ þo sent he to þe Pope messagers,[6] & saide þat he wolde bene[7] iustifiede, & come to amendement' in al maner þinges, atte his owen wille. þe messagers comen[8] to þe Pope, & tolde him[9] þe Kyng*us* wille, & saide þat he wolde come to emendement in al man*er*[10] þinges, & wolde make satisfaccioñ to al maner' men after' þe Popys ordenaunce. ¶ þo sent þe Pope a3eyne into Engel*and*, Pandolf' and o*þer*e messag*er*s, & comen to Kaunt*er*bery *þer*e þe Kyng abode. and þe xiij day of May, þe Kyng made[11] an hoth forto stande to þe Popes ordenaunce, bifore Pandolf þe legat, in al man*er* þing*us* for þe whiche he was accursede; & þat he shulde make ful restitucioñ to alle þe[10] men of holy cherche and of religiouñ, of þe gode[12] þat he hade take of ham a3eyn3 heir' wille. And alle þe grete lordes of Engeland' suore oppoñ a[13] book' & by þe holy dome, þat if þe Kyng wolde nou3t holde his oth, þai saide þat[14] þai wolde make him[15] holde hit bi strengþ. ¶ And[10] þo put þe Kyng' him to þe co*ur*te of Rome & to þe Pope, and þo 3af' vp þe reaume of Engel*and* & of Irland', for him & for his heires for eu*er*more þat shuld' come aft*er* him, so þat Kyng Iohan & his heires shulde tak þo ij reaumes of þe [16]Popis Hand', & shulde holde þo ij reaumes of the Pope[16] as to ferme, paying eu*er*y 3er' to þe court of Rome a þousand' marc of siluer'. And þo toke[17] þe Kyng þe croune of his Heued', and sette him[18] on his knees, and þise wordes[19] saide in heryng[20] of alle þe[21] grete[22] lordes of Engeland': "Here y resyngn' op þe c*r*one of[23] þe reaume of Engeland' into þe Popis Hande, Innocent þe þridde, and put [24]me Holliche[25] in his mercy & [26]ordenance." ¶ þo vnderfonge

[1] be D. [2—2] sent þo O. [3] Tydyng O. [4] *leaf* 91.
[5—5] ben done to D. to be don to O. [6] messagers DO. messager R.
[7] be DO. [8] come DO. [9] him D. hym O. ham R. [10] *om.* DO.
[11] made & swore O. [12] godes D. goodes O. [13] þe O. [14] *om.* D
[15] hem O. [16—16] Pope D. [17] nome O. [18] it O. [19] worde D
[20] audience D. [21] peple O. [22] gre *sic* D. & O. [23] and DO
[24] *leaf* 91, *back.* [25] holy O. [26] and in his DO.

Pandolf[1] þe *cr*one of Kyng Iohn̄, and kepte hit v dayes, as for seising-takyng[1] of þo ij reaumes of Engel*and* and of Yrl*and*, and confermede al maner[1] þinges by his chartre þat folewe þ after[1].

4 Of þe lettre obliga[to]rie þat Kyng Iohn̄ made to þe court of Rome; wherfore þe Petrus pens beþ[1] gadrad þrouȝ al Engeland. Cap*itul*o Centesi*m*o Quinqu*a*gesi*m*o primo.[2]

"TO[3] alle[4] *Cr*isten peple þrouȝ-out[5] the worlde duellyng[1], Iohn̄, 8 by þe *gr*ace of God, Kyng[1] of Engeland, gretyng to ȝour[1] vniu*er*site! and knowen[6] þing[1] it be þat, for-asmiche as[7] we haue greuede & offendede[8] God & our[1] moder[1] cherche[9] of Rome, and forasmiche as we haue nede to þe mercy of oure lord Ih*es*u Crist, 12 and we may noþing so worþi offre co*m*petent satisfaccioun̄ to make to God & to holy cherche, but if it were our[1] owen body, as wiþ oure[10] reaumes of Engeland and of Irland, Thanne, by þe *gr*ace of God,[11] we desireñ forto meken[12] vs for þe loue of Him þat meked 16 Hi*m* to þe deþ of þe Croice, þrouȝ conseil of þe noble erles & barons, we soffren[13] and frely *gr*anten to God, and to þe Apostoilȝ seynt Petre & seynt Paule, & to oure moder[1] cherche of Rome, & to our[1] Holy fader þe Pope, Innocent þe þridde, & to alle þe Popis 20 þat comeþ[14] after him, al þe reaume &[15] pat*r*onages of cherches [16]of Engeland[16] and of Irland, wiþ alle þe appurtenances, for remissioun̄ of oure synnes, and helpe & heleþ of oure Kyn[17] soules, and of al *Cr*isten soules, so þat fro[18] þis tyme afterward, we wille resceyue & 24 holde of oure moder che[r]che of Rome, as fee ferme, doyng[1] feaute to our[1][19] holy fader[1][20] [21]þe Pope, Innocent þe þridde, and to alle þe Popes þat comeþ[22] after[1] him, in[23] maner[1] abouesaide. ¶ And in p*r*esence of þe wise man Pandolf, þe Popis Suthdekne,[24] we makeþ[25] 28 liege homage, as it were in þe Popes p*r*esence, & bifore him were; and we shul[26] do al maner[1] þinges[27] aboue-saide; and[28] þ*er*fore we byndeþ[28] vs, and al þat comen after[1] vs, & oure heirs for-euer-more, wiþouten[29] eny gaynsaying, to þe Pope, & eke þe ward[30] of

[1] ben D. [2] *MS. has secun*do. [3] So *sic* D.
[4] *MS.* alle al; alle the D. [5] þrouȝ-out al D. [6] knowe D.
[7] þat DO. [8] offende D. [9] *MS. has* cherche of cherche.
[10] *MS. has* oures. [11] the holy gost D. þe holy gooste O.
[12] meke D. [13] offren DO. [14] comen DO. [15] of Engelond of O.
[16–16] *om* O. [17] Kynes D. [18] from O. [19] *om.* D.
[20] fade *sic* D. [21] *leaf* 92. [22] comen O. [23] in the D. in þe O.
[24] Sudekene O. [25] make DO.
[26] *MS. has* shulde, *with* de *underlined for omission.* [27] þing[1] O.
[28–28] þ*er*to we bynde D. þ*er*to we byndeþ O. [29] wi*th*oute O
[30] wardes D.

cherche3[1] vacaunt3. and in token[2] of þis þing eu*er* forto last, we wille, conferme &[3] ordeyn, þat our special rent3 of þe forsaide Reaumes, sauyng seynt Pet*r*us pens, in al[4] þing to þe moder cherche of Rome, paying by 3er[5] M+ ma*r*3[6] of siluer at ij te*r*mes of 4 þe 3ere, for al maner custumes þat we [7]shulde do to[7] þe forsaide Reaumes, þat is to seyn, at Mighelmesse & at [8]Ester, þat is to[8] seyn,[9] vij C ma*r*3[10] [11]for Engeland,[11] & iij C ma*r*3[12] for Irland, sauyng to vs and to oure heires, oure[3] Iustice3 and oure oþer ff*ra*unchisis, and oþ*er* realtes þat app*er*teyneþ[13] to[14] þe c*r*one. And alle þise þinges þat [15]bifore ben[15] saide, we wille þat hit be ferme & stable wiþouten ende; and to þat obligacioñ we, and alle our [16]successoures & oure heires,[16] in þis man*er* beþ[17] bonde, þat if we, or 12 eny of our heires, þrou3[18] p*r*esumpciouñ falle[19] in eny poynt a3eyne þise þing*us* abouesaide, & he bene[20] warnede, & wille nou3t[21] ri3t amende him, he shal þan lese þe forsaide[3] reaumes for eu*er*more. and þat[3] þis chartre of [22]obligaciouñ, & oure warant,[22] for eu*er*more 16 be ferme and Stable wiþouten[23] gaynsaying, we shul fro þis day afterward be trewe to God & to þe[24] moder cherche of Rome, and to þe Pope Innocent þe þrid,[25] and to al þat[26] comeþ[27] aft*er* him; and þe reaumes of Engeland & of Irland we shul mayntene 20 trewely[28] in al man*er* poynt3 a3eyn3 al maner men by oure power, þrou3[29] þe grace of God." [29]

How þe clerkes þat werne[30] outlawed of Engeland, come a3eyn, & how Kyng Iohñ was assoiled. Ca*pitulo* Cent*esimo* lij°.[31] 24

When þis chartre[32] was made and enselede, þe Kyng Vnderfonge a3eyn his c*r*one of Pandolfes hondes, and sent anone vnto[33] þe Erchebisshop Stephen, and to al his oþ*er* clerkes and lewed men þat he hade exilede out of his[34] lande, þat þai 28 shulde come a3eyne into Engeland, & haue a3eyn her londes & heir rentes, & þat he wolde make restituciouñ of þe godes þat he

[1] Cherche O. [2] tokenyng D. [3] *om.* D. [4] al maner D.
[5] 3ere a O. [6] marc D. Mark O.
[7]—[7] shal do for D. schul don for O. [8]—[8] Estren for Engelond O.
[9] say D. *om.* O. [10] marc þat is to sayn D. [11]—[11] *om.* O.
[12] marc D. Mark O. [13] p*er*teyne D. p*er*tyneþ O.
[14] vnto O. [15]—[15] biforne be D. [16]—[16] heires and successoures D.
[17] ben O. [18] þrou3 eny D. þurgh ony O. [19] faile D.
[20] be O. [21] no O.
[22]—[22] waraunt and our obligaciouñ D. [23] withoute O. [24] our D.
[25] þirde O. [26] *leaf* 92, *back.* [27] comen O. [28] trewlich O.
[29]—[29] godes helpe D. goddes helpe O. [30] were DO.
[31] *MS. has* lijj°. [32] lettre D. [33] to D. [34] him *sic* D.

hade [1] take of heres,[1] aȝeyns her' wille. ¶ þe Kyng him-self þo, and Pandolf, & Erles & barons, went þo [2] vnto Wynchestre aȝeinȝ þe Erchebisshop Stephen. & when he was comen,[3] þe Kyng went
4 aȝeynes him, & felle adouñ vnto [4] his feet', & saide vnto [4] hi*m*: "faire sir', ȝe beþ welcome*n* [5]; and y c*r*ie ȝow me*r*cy, for enchesoñ þat y haue t*re*spassede aȝeynȝ ȝow." ¶ þe Erchebisshop̄ toke him vp þo in his Armes, & cussede him curteisely ofte-tymes, and aft*er*
8 lad hi*m* to þe dore of Seynt Swythynus cherche by þe honde, & assoilede hi*m* of þe centence, and him reconselede to God and to holy cherche; and þat was on seyn[t] Margarites day; and þe Erchebisshop anone went forto synge þe masse, and þe Kyng offred
12 at þe masse a mark of golde. ¶ And whe*n* þe masse was done, alle þai went forto vnderfonge [6] her' londes, wiþoute*n* [7] eny maner' gaynesaying; and þat day þai made aH merþe and ioye ynow; but ȝitte was nouȝt þe ent*er*dit [8] relessede, for enchesouñ [9] þai hade sent
16 þat þe ent*er*dityng' shulde nouȝt bene vndone [9] til þe Kyng' hade made ful restitucioun̄ of þe godes that he [10] hade take of Holy cherche, and also þat him-self shulde done [11] homage to þe Pope by a certeyne ligat þat he shulde sende into [12] Engeland'.
20 ¶ þo toke [13] Pandolf his leue of [14] þe Kyng' and of þe Erchebisshop, and went aȝeyne vnto [15] Rome. And þe Erchebisshop anone lete come bifore him p*re*lates of holy cherche at Redyng', forto trete and conseil how miche and what þai shulde [16] axe of þe
24 Kyng' forto make restitucioun̄ of þe godes þat he hade take [17] of ham. ¶ And þai ordeynede and saide, þat þe Kyng shulde ȝeue to þe Erchebisshop*e* iij M' m*ar*ȝ [18] for þe wronge þat þe Kyng hade done to [19] him, and also to o*per* clerkes [20] xv M' marc, by porcyons.[20]
28 and in þe same tyme Nicholas, [21] bishop of [21] Tuscan, Cardynal Penitauncer' of Rome, come into Engeland' prouȝ þe Popis co*m*mandement, þe v k*alend* of Ottobr*e*, and come to Londoñ þe v Non*e* of Octobre, for enchesouñ þat Kyng Iohñ, and alle þe [22]
32 kynges þat comen aft*er* hi*m*, shulde eu*er*more halde þe reaumes of Engel*and* and of Irland of God & of þe Pope, p*a*ing' to þe Pope by ȝer' as [23] is aboue saide.

[1—1] taken of ham D. take of hem O. [2] *om.* D. [3] come O.
[4] to D. [5] welcome O. [6] vndirfonge al O.
[7] with-out D. w*ith*oute O. [8] Entirdytinge O.
[9—9] *om.* D. þat he had sent *þat* þe entirdityng schuld not ben vndon O.
[10] *leaf* 93. [11] do D. [12] vnto O. [13] nome DO. [14] fro O.
[15] to O. [16] miȝt D. [17] taken D. [18] marc D. Mark' O. [19] vnto DO.
[20—20] by porcions xv M' marc D. by porc*i*ons xv M' Mark' O.
[21—21] *om.* D. [22] *om.* O. [23] as it O.

How þe enterditing was vndone in Engeland; and of þe debate þat was bituene Kyng Iohn̄ & þe barons of þe reaume. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo liij°.[1]

WHen Kyng Iohn̄ [2]hade done his[2] homage to þe legat þat shewede him þe Popes[3] lettre, þat he shulde paye to Iulyan and ȝelde aȝeyn, þat was Kyng Richardes [4]wif', þe þridde part[4] of þe londe of' Engeland & of Irland' þat he hade wiþholde siþ þat Kyng deide,—¶ when Kyng Iohn̄ herde þis, he was wonder' wroþ, for vtterliche[5] þe enterdityng might nouȝt bene[6] vndone til þat he hade made gree & restitucioñ to[7] þe forsaide Iulian of þat she[8] axed'. ¶ The legate went þo aȝeyn to þe Pope[9] after' [10]Cristesmasse, and þe Kyng sent þo messagers[11] ouere[12] see to Iulian, þat was Kyng Richardes wif', forto haue a relesse of þat she axede[13] him. ¶ And so hit bifelle[14] þat Iulian deide anone after' Ester', and insomiche þe Kyng was quyt of[15] þat she axede; but þo, at þe feast[16] of Seynt Iohn̄ þat [17]come next[17] after', prouȝ þe Popis[18] commandement þe enterdytyng was ferst' relessede prouȝ[19] al Engeland þe vij day of Iuł;—and seuen ȝere almost[20] was þe londe enterditede,—and on[21] þe morwe men ronge,[22] & songe masses prouȝ-out Londoñ, and so after prouȝ-out[23] ał Engeland'.

¶ And þe next ȝere after, þere bigan a grete debate bituen[24] Kyng Iohn̄ & þe lordes of Engeland, for enchesoñ þat he wolde nouȝ[t] graunt þe lawes, & halde, þe[25] which Seint Edward' hade [26]ordeyned, and hade ben[26] vsede & holde vnto þat tyme þat[27] he hade ham broken; for he wolde none[28] lawe holde, but dede al þing þat him likede, & disheritede[29] meny men wiþ-outen[30] consent of lordes & pireȝ of þe land; And he wolde haue disheritede[31] þe gode erle Randolf of' Chestre, for encheson þat he vndername him of his wickednesse. & for cause þat he dede so miche shame &

[1] *MS. has* liiij°. [2—2] *om.* D.
[3] popes *struck out and* Bisshopes *written over in a different hand in* O.
[4—4] wyves þe iij partye O. [5] onliche D. [6] be D.
[7] of O. [8] he O.
[9] Pope atte *sic* D; *struck out, and* Bisshope *written over in a different hand in* O.
[10] *leaf* 93, *back.* [11] *MS. has* messagers messagers.
[12] ouere the D. ouer þe O. [13] axede of D. axed' of O.
[14] felle D. [15] of thyng' D. of þing O. [16] *MS. has* ferst.
[17—17] next come D.
[18] popes *struck out, and* Bisshoppis *written over in a different hand in* O.
[19] þouȝ D. [20] *om.* DO. [21] in O. [22] rong belles O.
[23] þrouȝ D. þurgh O. [24] bituene D. betwen O. bitwe R.
[25] *om.* D. [26—26] made and ordeynede and D. [27] and D.
[28] no DO. [29] disherite O. [30] withoute O. [31] disherite O.

vilony to Godꝑ &[1] holy cherche, & also for he helde & hauntede his owen broþeres wifꝑ, & lay also by meny oþere wymmen, grete lordes douȝters,—for he sparede no womman þat him likede forto[2]
4 haue,—wherfore alle þe lordes of þe lande werꝑ toward[3] him wonderꝑ wroþ, and went [4]wiþ him[4] to Londoñ, & toke þe citee.

[*King John grants the Great Charter.*]

¶ And forto cesse þis debate and sorwe, þe Kyngꝑ and þe
8 Erchebisshop, and oþere grete lordes of[5] Engelandꝑ, assemblede ham bifore þe festꝑ of Seynt Iohñ þe Baptiste, in a medowe bisides[6] þe toune of Stanes þat is callede[7] Rome-[8]mede. And þe Kyng made ham þere a chartre of ffraunchiseȝ,[9] soche as þai wolde axen; 12 & in soche manerꝑ[10] þai were acordede; and þat accordement laste nouȝt ful longe, for þe Kyng him-self[11] sone after[11] dede aȝeynes þe poyntes of þe same chartre þat he hade made. Wherfore þe moste [12]party of þe[12] lordes[13] of Engeland[14] assemblede ham, & bigoñ to
16 were oppoñ Kyng Iohñ, and brent his tounes & robbede his folc, & dede al þe sorwe þat þai myghtꝑ,[15] and made ham alse[16] stronge as þai mighꝑ, [17]wiþ alꝑ herꝑ powerꝑ,[17] & þouȝt [18]to dryuen[18] him out of Engeland, and make Lewys, þe Kynges sone of France, Kyngꝑ of
20 Engelandꝑ. ¶ And Kyng Iohan sent þo ouerꝑ þe[19] see, and ordeynede so miche peple of Normannes & of Picardȝ, and of Flemynges, so þat þe lande miȝt nout ham sustene, but wiþ miche[20] sorw. ¶ And among Alle þis[21] peple þere was a Norman[22] þat me callede [23]Frankes
24 of Brent[23]; and þis Norman & his company sparede neyþer cherche ne house of Religioñ, þat þai ne brent & robbed hit, & bare away alle þat[24] þai might takꝑ, so þat þe landꝑ was al destroiede, what [25]in o[25] side & in[26] þat oþere. ¶ þe barons & þe[27] lordes þo of Enge-
28 land ordeynede amonges[28] ham þe best spekers & wisest men, & sent ham ouer þe[19] see to Kyng Philip of Fraunce, & prayed him þat he wolde sende Lowys his sone into Engeland, to ben[29] Kyng of Engelandꝑ, and vnderfonge[30] þe crone.

[1] and to D. [2] to D. [3] wiþ D. with O. [4—4] *om.* DO.
[5] of the lande of D. of þe landꝑ of O. [6] biside D.
[7] y-Calledꝑ O. [8] *leaf* 94. [9] ffraunchise D. [10] a maner D.
[11—11] *om.* D. [12—12] parte of D. [13] landꝑ O.
[14] the lande D. lordes O. [15] myght with al her power O.
[16] as DO. [17—17] *om.* O. [18—18] dryue DO. [19] *om.* D.
[20] michel DO. [21] thi *sic* D.
[22] man of Normandy D. man of Normandye O.
[23—23] faukes of Brute O. [24] *MS.* þat þat.
[25—25] in that on D. on þe on O. [26] on O. [27] *om.* DO.
[28] among O. [29] be DO [30] haue D.

How Lowys, þe Kynges sone of Fraunce, come into Engeland wiþ stronge[1] power of peple, to ben[2] Kyng of Engeland. Capitulo Centesimo liiij^to^.[3]

WHen Kyng Philip of Fraunce herde þis tydynges,[4] he made 4
certeyn aliance bituene ham by her commune eleccioñ, þat
Lowys, Kyng Philippis sone of Fraunce, shuld[5] gone[6] wiþ ham
into Engeland, & dryue out Kyng Iohñ of þe land. And alle þo[7]
þat were in presence of Lowis made to[8] him homage, and bicome 8
his men.[9] And þe barons of Engeland [10]helde ham[10] stille at
Londoñ, & abode[11] there Lowys, þe Kyngus sone of Fraunce. And
þis was þe nexte Saturesday[12] bifore þe Ascenciouñ of our Lord þat
Lowis come into Engeland wiþ a[13] stronge power; & þat tyme 12
Kyng Iohñ hade take alle þe castelles[14] of Engeland into Aliens
hondes. ¶ And Lowys come þo to Rochestre, and bisegede þe
castel, & tok hit wiþ strengþ, & þe þoresday in Whitson weke,[15]
lete honge alle þe Aliens þat were therin. And þe þoresday þo next 16
sewyng, he come to Londoñ; & there he was vnderfong wiþ
michel[16] honour of þe lordes þat aboden[17] him there; & alle to him
þai maden[18] homage. ¶ And [19]afterward, in þe Tywesday þo next
sewyng þe[19] Trinitee Sonday,[20] he toke þe castel of Ryegate, and 20
in þe morwe after, þe castel of Gildeford, & þe Friday [21]þo next
sewyng,[21] þe castel of Farnham; and þe Moneday next after, þe
cite of Wynchestre to him[22] was ȝolden[23]; and in þe morwe nexte[13]
after seynt Iohñs day, þe maner of Wolneseye; And þe Tiwesday 24
next after þe viij^tas^[24] of Seynt Petre & seynt Poule, þai token[25] þe
castel of Odyham. ¶ And þe Moneday next after seynt Margaretes
day, he ordeynede him toward Beaumer,[26] forto bisege þe[27] castel;
& there he duellede xv dayes, & might nouȝt gete þe castel; & 28
þo[28] went he[29] þens, and come to Londoñ, & þe Toure to him
was ȝolde.

[1] strengþ & D. a strong O. [2] be O.
[3] *MS. has* lv^to^; D *has* liij^o^. [4] tydynge O. [5] *leaf* 94, *back.*
[6] go D. [7] *om.* DO. [8] vnto D. [9] men DO. man R.
[10—10] hem held O. [11] abiden D. [12] Satirday O.
[13] *om.* D. [14] castel D. [15] *MS.* weke &. [16] mych O.
[17] abiden O. [18] made D.
[19—19] on þe Tywesday next after þe D. after in þe tewsday next aftir O.
[20] day D. [21—21] nexte after D. next aftir O.
[22] *MS.* him him. [23] ȝolde D. yolde O.
[24] viij O. [25] toke DO. [26] Bremer O. [27] *MS.* þe þe.
[28] þai D. [29] *om.* D. þey O.

[1]And in þe same tyme[1] þe Pope[2] sent into Engel*and* a legate þat me callede Swalo; & of Kyng Iohnes deþ. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* lv^to^.[3]

4 ANd in þe same tyme þe Pope[4] sent into Englond a legate þat me callede Swalo, and he w*as* [5]p*re*st Cardinal of Rome, forto mayntene Kyng Iohnes cause aȝeynȝ þe barons of Engel*and*; but þe barons hade so huge p*ar*tye and help þrouȝ Lowys, þe 8 Kyng*us* sone of F*ra*unce, þat Kyng Iohn wist nouȝt whider forto turne ne go.[6] ¶ And so it bifel,[7] þat he wold haue goñ to Nichole; and as he went þiderward, he come by[8] þe Abbay of Swyneshede,[9] and þ*er*e he abode ij dayes. ¶ & as he satte at þe[10] mete, he axede 12 a monk of þe hous, 'how miche a lofe was worþ, þat was sette bifore him oppoñ[11] þe table.' & þe monk saide þat[12] 'þe lof was worþ but an halpeny.' "O," q*uod* he, "þo here is grete chepe of brede. ¶ Now," q*uod* þe Kyng, "and y may leue, soche a lof 16 shal bene[13] worþ xx s̄., or halfe ȝere be gone."[14] and when he hade saide þis word, michel[15] he þouȝt, and ofte-tyme sichede, and toke[16] & ete of þe brede, & saide: "by God, þe worde þat y haue saide,[17] hit shal ben[13] soth." ¶ þe monk þat stode bifore þe Kyng,[18] for þis 20 word was[19] ful sory in hert, and þouȝ[t], raþ*er* he wolde him-self soffre pitouse deþ, & þouȝt to[20] ordeyn þ*er*for so*m*me maner remedy. ¶ And anone þe monk went to his Abbot, and was shryuen of him, and tolde þe Abbot al þat þe Kyng saide, and praiede his 24 Abbot forto assoile him, for he wolde ȝeue þe Kyng soche a wassaile þat al Engeland [21]shal be þ*er*of glade[21] and ioyful. ¶ Tho went þe monk into a gardeyn, & founde a grete tode þ*er*in, & tok[22] her vp, & put here in a coppe, &[23] prickede þe tode þrouȝ[12] wiþ a 28 broche meny tymes, til þat þe venyme come out on[24] eu*er*yche[25] side[12] into þe coppe. and þo tok[22] he[12] þe coppe, and [26]fellede hit wiþ god ale, &[26] brouȝ[t] hit bifore þe Kyng, & knelyng[27] saide:

[1—1] How O.
[2] *struck out in MS.; also struck out in* O. *and* Bisshop of Rome *written over in a different hand.*
[3] *MS. has* lvj^to^.
[4] *struck out, and* Bisshope of Rome *written over in a different hand in* O.
[5] *leaf* 95. [6] gon D. gone O. [7] felle O. [8] to O.
[9] Swynesheuede D. Swynesheued O. [10] *om.* O.
[11] on D. at O. [12] *om.* D. [13] be DO. [14] agon O.
[15] miche D. myche O. [16] nome O. [17] spoke D.
[18] kyng was DO. [19] *om.* DO.
[20] is he myȝt *sic* D. if he myghte O.
[21—21] shulde be glade þ*er*of D. shuld be glad þ*er*of O. [22] nome O.
[23] & felled it wi*th* good ale & O. [24] of D. in O. [25] eche O.
[26—26] *om.* O. [27] knelyng & O.

"Sir," q*uod* he, "Wassaile! for neuer, dayes of ȝour lyue,[1] dranke[2] ȝe of soche [3]a[4] coppe." "Bygynne, monk," q*uod* þe Kyng, and þe monk dranke a g*r*ete drauȝt, and toke þe Kyng þe coppe; &[5] þe Kyng [6]drank also[6] a g*r*ete drauȝte, and sette doune þe coppe. 4 ¶ þe monk anone right went[7] into þe fermory, & þ*er*e deide anon, oñ whos soule God haue mercy, Amen! & v monkes si*n*geþ[8] for his soule,[9] & shal whiles[10] þat[11] Abbay stant. ¶ The Kyng aros vp anone ful euel at ese, & co*m*manded anon[12] to remeve þe table, 8 & axede after þe monk; and men tolde him þat he was dede, for his wombe was broken[13] in sondre. ¶ When þe Kyng herde þis tidynges,[14] he comandede forto trusse; but al it was for nouȝt, for his bely biganne[15] to swelle, for þe drynk þat he drank, þat he 12 deide wiþin ij daies,[16] þe morwe aft*er* Seynt Lukes day. ¶ And þis Kyng Iohñ hade fair childerne of his body bigeten,[17] þat is to seyn, Henry his sone, þat was Kyng aft*er* his fader, & Richarde, þat[18] was Erl of Cornewail, and IsabeH, þat was Emp*er*esse of 16 Rome, and Alienore, þ*a*t was Quene of Scotland. ¶ And þis Kyng Iohñ, when he had regnede xvij ȝere v mounþes & v dayes, he deide in þe castel of Newerc, & his body was buriede[19] at Wynchestre. 20

Of Kyng Henry[20] þe þridde, þ*a*t w*a*s c*r*onede at Gloucestre. Cap*itul*o C*entesim*o lvj^to^.[21]

ANd after þis Kyng Iohñ, regnede Henry his sone, & was c*r*onede at Gloucestre when he was ix ȝere olde, on seynt 24 Symond*us* day & Iude, of Swalo þe legat, þrouȝ conseile of alle þe grete lordes [22]of Engel*and*[22] þat helde wiþ Kyng Iohñ, his fader, þat is to saien, þe[18] Erl Randolf of Chestre, William, Erl Marchal, William Erl of Penbrok, [23]& William[23] Breuere, [24]Erl of Ferers, 28 Serl de Maule, baron; & alle oþ*er*e g*r*ete[25] lordes of Engel*and* helde with Lowys, þe Kynges sone of F*r*aunce. & anone after, when Kyng Henry was c*r*onede, Swalo the legat helde his conseil at

[1] lif ne D. lyf ne O. [2] dronk O. [3] *leaf* 95, *back*.
[4] *At the top of this page is written in faint ink, by a different* [?] *hand*:—A lambe.
[5] a *sic* D. [6—6] also drank D. also dranke O. [7] *MS.* went went.
[8] syng*en* O. [9] soule specialich D. soule speciallich O.
[10] while O. [11] the D. þe O. [12] *om.* DO. [13] broke O.
[14] tydynge O. [15] began so O. [16] dayes after O. [17] geten O.
[18] *om.* O. [19] y-buryed O. [20] Herry *here, and elsewhere in* O.
[21] *MS. has* lvij^o^. [22—22] *om.* DO.
[23—23] Willia*m* þe D. William þ^e^ O. [24] *leaf* 96. [25] gete *sic* D.

Bristow, at Seynt Martynes fest'; & þere wer' xj bisshopis of Engel*and* & of Walys, & of oþ*er* prelates of holy cherche a[1] grete nombre, & Erles & barons, & meny knyȝtes of Engel*and*; and alle
4 þo þat were at þat conseil swore feaute vnto[2] Henry þe Kyng, þat was Kyng Iohnes sone.

¶ And anone aft*er*,[3] þe ligate ent*er*ditede Walis, for enchesoun þat þai helde with þe barons of Engel*and*; and also alle þo þat
8 [4]holpen or ȝaf conseil[4] to meve wer' aȝeynȝ þe new Kyng Henry, he acursede ham; And in the bigynnyng he put in þe [5]sentence þe[5] Kyng*us* sone of F*r*aunce Lowys. ¶ And noþeles þe same Lowys[6] wolde nouȝt spare forto wer' for al þat, but went anone,
12 & tok þe castel of Berkhamstede, & eke[7] þe castel of Hertford. ¶ And fra*m*[8] þat day aftirward, þe barons [9]dede miche[9] harme þrouȝ al Engel*and*, and principaly þe Frenche-men þat wer' comen[10] wiþ Lowys; wherfore þe grete lordes [11]of Engel*and*,[11] & alle þe
16 co*m*mune peple,[12] lete ha*m* croice forto dryue out[13] Lowys & his co*m*pany out of Engel*and*. ¶ But so*m*me of þe barons, & ek of þe Frenchemen, were gone[14] to þe cite of Nichole, & tok[15] [16]þe Cite,[16] & helde hit to Kyng' Lowys p*r*ofite. But þider' come[17] Kyng
20 Henryes[18] men wiþ [19]a g*r*ete[19] power', þat is to seyne, þe Erl Randolf of Chestr*e*, and William Erl Marchal, & Willia*m* de la Bruer', Erl of Ferers, & meny oþ*er* lordes wiþ ham, & ȝaf[20] Bataile [21]vnto Lowyse men. ¶ And þ*er*e was slayn þe Erl of Perches; and
24 Lowys men [22]were þere[22] foule descomfitede[23]; and þ*er*e w*a*s taken[24] Serl, Erl of Wynchestre, & Humfray de Bouñ, Erl of[25] Herford, & Robert, þe sone of Walt*er*; & meny oþ*er* þat hade bigonne wer' aȝeynȝ þe Kyng' þ*er*e were taken,[26] and lad to[27] Kyng Henry [28]þat
28 was[28] Kyng Iohnes [son]. ¶ When þe tydyng of þis scomfiture come vnto[2] Lowys, he remevede þens, & went[29] vnto Londoñ, and lete shette þe ȝates fast' of þe citee. ¶ And anone after', þe Kyng sent to[30] þe[31] burgeys of Londoñ, þat þai shulde ȝelde ham
32 vnto him, & þe citee also, and he wolde ham g*r*aunt alle þe

[1] *om.* D. [2] to D. [3] afte D. [4—4] ȝaf conseil and halpen D.
[5—5] *om.* D. [6] *MS. has* Lowys Lowys. [7] also D. [8] fro D.
[9—9] de somiche *sic* D. dede so myche O. [10] Come O. [11—11] *om.* DO.
[12] peple of Engeland D. peple of Engelond O. [13] *om.* O.
[14] go O. [15] token O. [16—16] it D. [17] Come*n* O.
[18] Henryes men D. Herryes men O. Henryes R.
[19—19] *MS. has* a g*r*ete a grete. [20] ȝeuen O. [21] *leaf* 96, *back.*
[22—22] þere were O. [23] scomfited O. [24] tak D. take O.
[25] *MS. has* of of. [26] tak D. [27] vnto DO. [28—28] *om.* DO
[29] come D. [30] vn-to O.
[31] *MS. has* þe bisshop, *with* bisshop *underlined for omission.*

F*ra*unchises[1] þat[2] þai were wont forto haue, & wolde conferme ham by his[3] new chartr'[4] vnder' his g*r*ete sele. ¶ And in the same tyme a gret Lorde, þat me callede Eustace þe monk', come out of F*ra*unce wiþ a grete co*m*pany of Lordes, & wolde haue come 4 into Engel*and* forto haue holp Lowys, þe Kyng*us* sone of F*ra*unce. ¶ But Hubert of Burgh[5] and[6] þe v portes, wiþ viij shippis, & no mo, mette wiþ ham in þe hye see, and assailede ham egrely, & ou*er*come ham þrouȝ strengþ, and smyten of Eustace-þe-monkes 8 heuede,[7] & token also x grete Lordes of F*ra*unce, and put ham into prisouñ, & quellede almost alle þe men þat comen[8] wiþ[9] ham; and anone drenchede[10] þe shippis in þe see.

How Lowys turned aȝeyn into F*ra*unce; and of þe confirm- 12 acioun of Kyng Iohñes chartre. ¶ Cap*itulo* Cent*esimo* 1 Septimo.[11]

WHen Lowys herd þis tydynges,[12] he drade sore to ben[13] dede and loste, and lete ordeyne, & spok[14] bituene þe Kyng 16 and Lowys[15] by þe legat Swalo, and þoruȝ þe Erche[16]bisshop of Kaunt*er*bery, and þrouȝ[17] o*per*e g*r*ete lordes, þat alle the prisoners of[18] þat one halfe and of[18] þat o*per* shulde bene[19] delyuerede, & gone[20] quit', and Lowys him-self shulde haue for his costages [21]a 20 M' li[21] of siluer', & shulde gone out of Engeland, and come neu*er* þ*er*in aȝeyne. and in þis maner' was þe accord made bituene[22] Kyng Henry & Lewys. And þo was Lowys assoilede of þe Popis[23] legat þat me[24] callede Swalo, of þe sentence þat he was in, and þe barouns 24 of Engel*and* also. ¶ And after þis, Kyng Henry & Swalo þe legat, & Lowys, went vnto M*er*toñ; and þ*er*e was þe pees confermede, & bituen[25] ha*m* ordeynede. and after*w*ard Lowys went fro þens vnto Londoñ, & tok[26] his leue, & was brouȝt wiþ miche[27] honoure at 28 þe[28] see wiþ þe Erchebisshop of Kaunt*er*bery & wiþ o*per* bisshoppis, and also wiþ erles and[29] barons; and so went Lowys into F*ra*unce.

[1] ff*ra*unchise D. [2] þ*a*t eu*er*e O. [3] his gret DO.
[4] Chartre and D. [5] Brugh DO. [6] in O. [7] heed' O. [8] come O.
[9] *MS. has* wiþ wiþ, *and the second* wiþ *is underlined for omission.*
[10] drenched alł O. [11] *MS. has* Octauo. [12] tidynge O. [13] be O.
[14] speke O. [15] him D. [16] *leaf* 97. [17] *om.* D. [18] on D.
[19] be DO. [20] go O.
[21—21] an þousande pounde D. a þousand' pound' O.
[22] bituene D. betwene O. bitwe R.
[23] Popes *struck out, and* bisshope of Rome *written over in a different hand in* O.
[24] me*n* D. [25] betwen O. bitue R. [26] nome O. [27] michel D.
[28] *om.* O. [29] and with D.

¶ And aftirward þe kyng & þe Erchebisshope, & Erles & barons, assembled ham at Londoñ, at Michelmasse [1] þat next þo sewede,[1] & helde *þere* p*ar*lement.[2] & *þere* were þo renewede alle þe Fraun-
4 chises þat Kyng Iohñ hade[3] g*ra*untede at Romemede; and Kyng Henry þo confermede ha*m* by his chartre, þe which ȝitte beþ holden þrouȝ-out[4] Engel*and*. ¶ And in þat tyme þe Kyng toke of e*uery* ploughe of[5] londe ij s̄; and Hubert of Burgh[6] was made þo chief
8 Iustice of[7] Engeland. ¶ And þis was in[8] þe iiij ȝere of Kyng Henryes regne; & in þe same ȝere was [9]seynt Thomas[9] of Kant*er*bery t*ra*nslatede þe l[10] ȝere aft*er* his martredome.[11] ¶ And after, it was ordeynede by alle þe Lordes of Engeland, þat alle Aliens shulde
12 gone out of Engel*and*, & come nomore þ*er*in.

And þe Kyng' [12]þo toke[12] alle þe castelles into his honde, þat [13]Kyng Iohn his fader hade ȝeue & taken[14] vnto Aliens forto kepe, þat helde wiþ him. ¶ But þe prout [15]Frankes of' Brent,[15] Richely
16 lete arraie his[16] castel of Bedford, whiche he had of þe Kyng*us*[17] ȝifte Iohñ[18]; & he[19] helde þat castel aȝeyns Kyng Henries wille wiþ might and strengþ. ¶ And the Kyng come þider wiþ a streng power', & biseged þe castel. And þe Erchebisshop [20]Stephen of
20 Langetoñ come to þe Kyng[20] wiþ a faire co*m*pany of knyȝtȝ,[21] him forto helpe; and fra þe Ascenciouñ vnto þe Assumpcioñ of our' Lady, laste þe sege: & þo was þe castel wonne & tak, and þe Kyng lete honge aH þo þat were wiþin[22] þe castel, þat[23] wiþ her gode wille
24 [24]helde þe castel aȝeynȝ þe Kyng,[24] þat is [25]forto seyn, foure score[25] men. ¶ And þo aft*er*ward Fr*a*[n]kes[26] himself' was fonde in a cherche of Couentre; and *þere* he forsuore al Engel*and* wiþ miche shame, and went[27] þo aȝeyn into his owen contre.

28 ¶ And whiles þat Kyng Henry regned, Edmund of Abyndoñ, þat was t*re*sorer of Salesbury, was consacrede[28] Erchebisshop of

[1—1] þo next sewyng' D. *þat* next þ° Come sewynge O.
[2] a p*ar*lement DO. [3] *om.* O. [4] þrouȝ-out' al D. þurgh-out al O.
[5] *om.* DO. [6] Brugh O. [7] of al DO. [8] *om.* DO.
[9—9] O. *has* seynt *struck out, and* Beket *written after* Thom*as in a different hand.*
[10] fiftiþe O. [11] *MS. has* martredomo. [12—12] nome þ° O.
[13] *leaf* 97, *back.* [14] tak D. [15—15] Faukes of Brut O. [16] the D.
[17] kynge D. [18] Iohn his fadir O. [19] *om.* D.
[20—20] of Kaunt*er*bury D. of Caunt*er*bury Maister Stephene of Langeton) O.
[21] knyȝtȝ come to the kyng D. knyghtes come to þ^e kyng O.
[22] went into O. [23] and D. *om.* O.
[24—24] aȝeynes him hit held D. for-to hold' þe Castel O.
[25—25] for seyn iiij (xx) *sic* O. [26] faukes O. [27] *MS.* went went.
[28] Sacrede D. Sacred' O.

Kant*er*bery. And þis Kyng Henry sent ouer[1] see vnto þe Erle of P*r*ouince, þat he shulde sende him his douȝte*r* into Engel*and*, þat me called Alienore, & he wolde wedde her. And so she come into Engeland aft*er* C*r*istes-masse,[2] and in þe morwe[3] after seynt 4 Hillary, þe Erchebisshop Edmunde[4] spousede ham to-gedre[5] att Kaunt*er*bery; and at þe viij[6] of seynt Hillary she was crounede at Westmynstre wiþ miche solempnite; & þe*r*e was a swete sight bituene ham, þat is to seyn, Edmund, þat was next Kyng after 8 him, his broþe*r*, [7]folour[8] of curtessi and of Larges, and Margaret, þat w*a*s afterward Quene of Scotland, & Beatrice, þat was aft*er*ward Countesse of Britaign, & Kat*er*ine, þat deide maide in religioun.

Of þe quinȝime of godes þat were g*r*anted for þe new chart*er*s; 12 & of þe puruyance of[9] Oxenford. Capit*ulo* ¶ C° lviij.[10]

AND þus hit bifelle[11] þat þe lordes of Engeland wolde haue so*m*me addicions mo in the Chartre of F*r*aunchises þat þai hade of þe Kyng, & spoken þus bituene[12] ham; & þe Kyng 16 g*r*auntede[13] ham alle her axing, and made to ham ij Chartres: þat on is callede 'þe grete[14] Chartre of F*r*aunchises' & þat o*þe*r is callede 'þe Chartre of þe[15] Forest'; and for þe g*r*ante of þise[16] chartres, p*r*elates, Erles and barons, & alle þe co*m*munes of Enge- 20 l*and*, ȝaf to þe Kyng[17] M' m*a*rȝ[18] of siluer.

¶ When Kyng Henry hade bene[19] Kyng xliij ȝere, þat same ȝere he and[20] his lordes, Erles, and barouns of þe reaume, went to Oxenford, & ordeynede a lawe in emendement[21] of þe reaume, and[22] suore 24 þe Kyng him-self, & aft*er*, alle þe lordes of þe reaume, þat þai wolde holde þat statute[23] eu*er*more; and who þat it[24] brak shulde bene[19] dede. ¶ But þe secunde ȝer aft*er* þat ordenance, þe Kyng, prouȝ conseile of Sire Edward his sone, & of Richard his bro*þe*r, þat was 28 Erl of Cornwail, & also of o*þe*r*e*, repentede him of þat o*þe* þat he hade made forto holde þat lawe & ordynance, and sent to þe co*ur*t of Rome to bene assoilede of þat oth þat he hade made. ¶ And in þat ȝere next comen[25] after, was[26] grete derþ of corne in Engel*and*, 32

[1] ou*er* þe O. [2] Cristemesse O. [3] morne D. [4] *om.* D.
[5] togederes D. [6] viij*tas* D. [7] *leaf* 98. [8] floure DO. [9] *om.* O.
[10] C lvij° O. [11] felle O. [12] bitue D. [13] g*r*antede to D.
[14] *MS. has* grete þe, *with* þe *underlined for omission.* [15] of þe O. of R.
[16] þise ij D. þese ij O. [17] kyng a O. [18] Mark O. [19] be O.
[20] & at O. [21] ame*n*dement O. [22] and ferst DO.
[23] statute for D. statut for O. [24] ha*m* D. hem O.
[25] comyng D. co*m*mynge O. [26] was the D. was þe O.

for a q*uarter* of[1] whete was worþ xxiiij s̄,[2] & þe pore peple ete netles for hung*er*, and o*per*e wedes; & [3]deide meny M†[4] for defaute[5] of mete.

4 ¶ And in þe xlviij ȝere of Kyng Henries regne, biganne werr' and debate bituene him and his lordes, fo[r] enchesouñ þat he [6]hade broken þe couenauntes[6] þat were made bituene ham at Oxenford. ¶ And in þat[7] same ȝer', in Lent, was þe [8]castel of 8 Notyngh*am*[8] tak, and þe folc slayne þat were þ*er*in, for enchesouñ þat þai hade ordeyned wilde fire forto haue brent þe citee of Londoñ.

¶ And in the morwe[9] of May þat come next aft*er*, oppoñ seynt Panc*ra*s day, was the batail at Lewes, þat is to seyne,[10] þe Wed- 12 nesday bifore seynt [11]Dunstan*us* day[11]; and[12] þ*er*e was tak, Kyng Henry [13]him-self', &[13] Sire Edward [14]his sone, & S*ir*e[14] Richard, Erl of Cornwail, & meny[15] o*per*e lordes. ¶ And in þat same ȝere next sewyng', S*ir*e Edward, þe Kynges sone, brak out of 16 þe[1] ward of Sire Symond' of Mountford', Erl of Leicestre, at Hereford,[16] and went to þe barons of þe Marche; and þai vnderfong' him wiþ michel[17] honour'. ¶ And in þe same tyme Gilbert of Clare,[18] Erl of Gloucestre, þat was in þe ward also of þe forsaide Symond', 20 þrouȝ þe co*m*mandement of Kyng Henry, þat went fram him in[19] g*r*ete wraþ,[20] for enchesouñ þat he saide þat þe forsaide Gilbert was a fool in his conseile, wherfore he ordeyned him[21] so, & helde wiþ Kyng Henry. ¶ And þe [22]Sat*ur*esday next[22] after þe middes of 24 August',[23] S*ir* Edward, þe Kyng*us* sone, descomfitede S*ir*e Symond' de[24] Mountford' at Kemworþ; but þe grete lordes þat were þ*er*e wiþ him wer' taken, þat is to seyn, Baldewyne Wake, William of Mounchesye,[25] and meny o*per* g*r*ete lordes: and þe Tywesday next aft*er*, 28 was þe bataile [26]done at[26] Euesham; & þ*er*e was quellede Sire Symond de[24] Mountford, Hughe þe Spenser', and Mountford, þat was Rauf Bassetȝ [27]fader of Drattoñ, & o*per* meny g*r*ete Lordes. ¶ And when þis batail was doñ, alle þe[1] gentiles þat had be[28] wiþ þe

[1] *om.* D. [2] shilynges O. [3] *leaf* 98, *back.* [4] þousand O.
[5] faute D.
[6—6] wolde haue broke the couaunt D. had' broke þe Couen*au*ntes O.
[7] þe O. [8—8] toune of Northamptoñ D. Toun) of Northampton) O.
[9] monthe D. monþe O. [10] say D. [11—11] Dunstaand *sic* D.
[12] *MS. has* bifore seynt and, *with* bifore seynt *underlined for omission.*
[13—13] and his sone D. [14—14] and D. his sone & O. [15] mey *sic* D]
[16] Herford' DO. [17] mych O. [18] Clarence DO.
[19] wiþ D. with O. [20] hert' D. herte O.
[21] him afterward' D. hym aft*er*ward' O. [22—22] Satirday O.
[23] Aust *sic* O. [24] of D. [25] Monchensey O. [26—26] of D.
[27] *leaf* 99. [28] bene D. ben O.

Erl Symond', were disheritede; & [1]þai ordeyned[1] ha*m* togedres,[2] and dede miche harme to[3] al þe land, for þai destroiede her' enemys in al þat þai might.

¶ Of þe sege of Kemworþ; & how þe gentilmen werr' dis- 4
heritede, þrouȝ conseil [4]of lordes of þe reaume of
Engeland'[4]; & how þai come*n*[5] aȝeyn, [4]& had her' landes.[4]
Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* lix^no^.

ANd in þe ȝer' next [6]sewyng', in May, ferst[6] day bifore þe fest 8
of Seynt Dunsta*n*, was bataile and scomfiture at Chesterfeld',
of ham þat were disheritede; & þe*re* meny of ha*m* were quellede;
and Robert, Erl of[7] Ferers, þe*re* was take, and also Baldewyne
Wake; & Iohn̄ de la Haye, wiþ miche[8] sorwe scaped þens. and 12
in[9] Seynt Iohnes Eve[10] þo next sewyng', bigan þe sege of þe castel
of Kemworth[11]; and þe sege [12]laste to[12] Seint Thomas Eve[13] þe
Postoil, in whiche day Sir' Hughe Hastyng*us*[14] had þe castel forto
kep, þat ȝelde vp þe castel vnto[15] þe Kyng' in þis maner', þat him- 16
self and alle oþe*re* þat were wiþin þe castel shulde haue her lif and
lyme, and as[16] miche þing as þai hade þe*r*in, boþe hors & herneys,
and foure dayes of[17] respite forto delyuer' clene[18] þe castel of ham-
self', & of al mane*r*[19] þing þat þai hade wiþin þe castel; & so þai 20
went fram þe castel, and þe kyng & his men went þo into þe castel.
¶ and Sir' Symond' þe Mounford þe ȝonge,[20] and þe Countesse his
moder, were fledde ouer þe[21] see into F*ra*unce, and þe*re* helde ham
as peple þat were exilede out of Engel*and* [22]for[23] eu*er*more. ¶ And 24
sone after hit was ordeyned by the Legat Octoboñ, & by[24] oþe*re*
grete lordes [25]of Engel*and*,[25] þe wisest of [26]þe land',[26] þat alle þo þat
hade bene[27] aȝeyns þe Kyng', & wer disheritede, shulde haue aȝeyn
her' londes, and by greuous ransouñ,[28] after þat it was ordeyned; 28
and þus þai were accorded wiþ þe Kyng, þo was pees c*r*iede prouȝ al
Engela*nd*; and þus þe werr' was endede.

And when þis was done, þe legat toke[29] his leue at[30] þe Kyng',

[1—1] gadered D. [2] to-geder' D. to-gidere O. [3] til D.
[4—4] *om.* O. [5] come DO.
[6—6] comyng' þe iiij D. Comynge in Maij þe ferþe D.
[7] o D. [8] michel D. [9] on D.
[10] eve the Baptist D. Eue þe baptist O. [11] Kenilworthe O.
[12—12] lasted' til O. [13] day O. [14] Hastyng' DO. [15] to D.
[16] *om.* D. [17] or D. [18] clenliche D. clenlich O. [19] oþe*re* D.
[20] ȝong*er* D. yonger O. [21] *om.* DO. [22] *leaf* 99, *back.*
[23] A lambe *written in the margin at the head of this page, in faint ink.*
[24] *om.* O. [25—25] *om.* DO. [26—26] Engeland' D. Engelond' O.
[27] be O. [28] ransons D. [29] nome DO. [30] of D.

& of[1] the Quene, & of alle þe grete lordes of Engeland, & went þo to Rome, þe lv[2] ȝere of Kyng Henryes regne. ¶ And[3] Edward, Kyng Iohnes sone of Britaigne, Iohn̄ Vessy, Thomas of Clare,
4 Rog*er* of Clifford, Othus Grauntsoñ,[4] Robert le Brus, Iohn̄ of Verdoñ, & meny oþ*er* lordes of Engel*and* & of byȝende þe see, token her way toward þe Holy Lond; and þe[3] Kyng Henry deide in þe mene-tyme at Westm*inster*, [5]when he hade ben Kyng lv ȝer
8 & ix[6] wokes,[5] on[7] seynt Edmund*us* day, þe Erchebisshop of K*aunter*bery; and he[1] was ent*er*ede [5]at Westm*inster*[5] on seynt Edmundes day, þe Kyng,[8] ¶ In the ȝer of[9] Incarnaciouñ of oure Lord Ih*es*u Crist M[1] CC lxxij.

12 [10]**Prophecie of Merlyn**[10] **of Kyng Henry, expounede, þat was Kyng Iohnes sone. ¶ Cap*itulo* ¶ Centesi*mo* lx^{mo}.**

AND of þis Kyng Henry, p*ro*pheciede Merlyn, & said þat 'a lombe shulde come out of Wynchestre in þe ȝere of Incar-
16 nacioñ of our Lord[11] M CC &[3] xvj, wiþ trew lippis, and holynesse wryte*n* in his h*ert*.' And he saide soþ, for þe gode [12]Henry þe Kyng[12] was born[13] [14]in Wynchestre in þe ȝere abouesaide, and he spake[15] gode wordes & swet, and was an holy man, and of god
20 conscience. ¶ And Merlin said þat 'þis Henry shulde make þe fairest place of[16] [the] world, [17]þe whiche[17] in his tyme shulde nouȝt [18]fulliche bene[18] endede'; and he saide soþ, for he made þe newe cherche[19] of þe Abbay of seynt [20]Petre of[20] Westm*inster*, þat is
24 fairer of sight þan eny[21] cherch þat men knoweþ[22] prouȝ al C*r*istendome; but Kyng Henry deide er þat werc were ful[23] made, & þat was grete harme. ¶ And ȝitte saide Merlyn, þat 'þis Lambe shulde haue pees þe most tyme of his regne'; and he saide ful soþ, for he
28 was ne[uer] annoiede prouȝ[24] werr, ne disesede in no maner wise, til a litel bifore his deþ. ¶ And ȝitte saide Merlin more in his p*ro*phecie, þat 'in þe regne & ende of þe forsaide lambe, a wolf of a str*a*unge[25] land shulde do[26] him grete[27] harme prouȝ his werr'; and þat he

[1] *om.* O. [2] fyve & fyfty O. [3] *om.* D. [4] of Graunstoñ O.
[5—5] *om.* O. [6] xix D. [7] in D.
[8] kyng and had regned lv ȝeer & xix wokes O. [9] of the D.
[10—10] And of Merlyn*us* p*ro*phecie D. [11] lorde Ih*es*u crist D.
[12—12] kyng Henry D. [13] *om.* D. bore O. [14] *leaf* 100.
[15] *MS. has* spakek. [16] of al D. [17—17] þat DO.
[18—18] bene ful D. be ful O. [19] werk D. werke O.
[20—20] Petrus cherche at D. Petris Chirche at O.
[21] eny oþ*ere* D. eny other O. [22] knowen O. [23] fully DO.
[24] with D. [25] stronge O. [26] done O. [27] miche D.

shulde at þe last be[1] maistre þrouȝ helpe of a reede ffox, þat shulde come oute of þe Northwest, and shulde him ou*er*come; & [2]þat he[2] shulde dryue him vnto þe wat*er*': and þat p*ro*phecie ful wel was knowe, for wiþin a litel tyme or þe Kyng deide, Symond of 4
Mountford, Erl of Leicestre, þat was bore in Fr*a*unce, [3]bigonne aȝeynȝ[3] him stronge werre; þrouȝ whiche doyng, meny a gode bachiler was shent and dede and disheritede. ¶ And when Kyng Henry hade þe vittori at Euesh*a*m, & Symond þe Erl w*a*s slayn 8
þrouȝ helpe & myght of Gilbert of Clare, Erl of Glou[4]cestre, þat Was in Kepyng [2]and ward[2] of þe forsaide Symund, þrouȝ ordenance of Kyng Henry, þat went aȝeyn to þe Kyng wiþ miche power, wherfore þe forsaide Symund was shent; and þat was grete harme 12
to þe co*m*munes of Engel*and*, þat so gode a man was shent for truþ, & deide in charite, and for þe co*m*mune p*ro*fite of þe same folc; and þ*er*for Almighty God, [5]for him haþ siþenn*us*[5] shewede meny faire[6] miracle to diu*er*se men and wy*m*men, of þe sikenesse and 16
disesse þat þai haue had, for þe loue of him.

¶ And Merlyn also tolde [2]& saide[2] in his p*ro*phesie, þat 'after þat tyme þe lambe shulde leue no[7] while; and þan his sede shulde be[8] in st*ra*unge land wiþ-out[9] pasture'; and he said soþ, for Kyng 20
Henry leuede no while aft*er* þat[10] Symund Mountford was ded, [11]þat Kyng Henry ne[11] deide anone after him. ¶ And in þe menetyme, Sir Edward his sone, þat was þe best knyȝt of þe world of hono*ur*,[12] was þo in the Holy Land, and gete þ*er*e[13] Acres. ¶ And 24
in [that] contre he bigate in[14] Dame Alianore his wif, Iohne of Acres his dought*er*, þat aftirward was countesse of Gloucestre. And he made in þe Holy Land soche a viage, þat alle þe world spok[15] of his[16] knyghthode, & eu*er*y man drade hi*m*, hye and lowe, 28
þrouȝ-out[17] al Cristendome, as þe s[t]ory [18]of him[18] [19]telleþ, as[19] afterward ȝe shul here more openly. ¶ And [20]fram the tyme þat[20] Kyng Henry deide, til þat Sire Edward was c*r*oned Kyng, alle þe gret Lordes of Engeland were as faderles children, wiþout[21] eny 32
soco*ur* þat ham might mayntene and [22]gou*er*ne, and[22] defende aȝeynȝ her dedeliche[23] enemys.

[1] *MS.* be be. [2—2] *om.* D. [3—3] began aȝen O. [4] *leaf* 100, *back.*
[5—5] haþ siþens for him D. had for hym sethenes O.
[6] a faire D. a fayre O. [7] non D. [8] ben O. [9] withouten D.
[10] whe*n* O. [11—11] for he D. [12] honour and D. [13] *om.* D.
[14] on D. [15] spak D. [16] his worþinesse and D. his vyage & O
[17] þrouȝ D. [18—18] *om.* O. [19—19] telles and D.
[20—20] fro the tyme þat D. from þe tyme þat O. fram R.
[21] wiþouten D. [22—22] *om.* D. [23] dedly O.

¶ Of Kyng' Edward, þat was Kyng' Henrie3 sone. Cap*itulo* [Centesimo] lx[1] primo.

[2] AND after' þis Kyng Henry, regned his sone Edward, þe
4 worthiest knyght'[3] of [4]þe worlde,[4] of hono*ur*, for Godes g*ra*ce was in him, for he hade þe vittorie of his enemys. And as sone as Kyng Henry deide, he come to Londoñ wiþ a faire company of p*re*lates, &[5] of Erles & barons; & al man*er* men dede him
8 michelle[6] hono*ur*; for in eu*er*y place *þere*[7] Sir Edward rode in Londoñ, þe stretes wer' cou*er*ed ou*er* his heued[8] wiþ riche cloþes of silk, [9]wit[h] tapit3 of[9] riche cou*er*yng'. ¶ And for ioie of his comyng, þe noble burgeys of þe cite [10]of Londoñ[10] cast out at[11] her'
12 wyndowes, golde and siluer handes-ful,[12] in[13] tokenyng of loue and of[5] worship, s*er*uices & reu*er*ence3. ¶ And out of þe condit in[14] Chepe ran reed[15] wyne & white,[16] as stremes doþ[17] of wat*er*; and eu*er*y man[18] might[19] drynk *þer*of[20] at her' owen wille. ¶ And þis
16 Kyng Edward was c*r*onede and annointede as right heire of Engeland with michel[6] honoure; and after masse þe Kyng went into his palice, forto halde a real[21] fest amonges[22] ham þat him had done honour'. ¶ And when he was sette vnto his mete, the Kyng' Alis-
20 ander' of Scotland come forto done him honour'[23] and reu*er*ence wiþ a queyntise[24]: an hundred Knyghte3[25] wiþ him wel horsede and arraiede; & when þai were light done[26] of her' stedes, þai lete ham goo whider[27] þai wolde; & þai[28] *þat* might tak ham, tok ham[29] at
24 her' owen wille, wiþout eny chalange. ¶ And aft*er*ward co[me] Sir' Symond', Kyng Edwardus broþ*er*, a curteise Knyght, and a[30] gentil of renouñ, and þe Erl of Cornewaile & þe Erl of Gloucestre; and after ham come þe Erl of' [31]Penbrok and þe Erl of' Garrein; and
28 eche of [32]ham by him-self[32] lade in [33]his hond'[33] an[34] hundred knyghte3 gayliche[35] disgisede in her' Armes. ¶ And wen þai were light of her' horse,[36] þai[37] lete ham go[38] whider þat ham liked; and

[1] lxxx *sic* O. [2] *leaf* 101. [3] *MS. has* kynght'.
[4—4] al the worlde D. al þe world O. þe worde R. [5] *om.* D.
[6] mych O. [7] *per* *þat* O. [8] heed' O.
[9—9] of tapyt3 and with D. of tapites & w*ith* O. [10—10] *om.* DO.
[11] of O. [12] handfull' O. [13] in DO. & R. [14] of O.
[15] white D. whit O. [16] rede D. reed' O. [17] done D.
[18] man therof D. [19] myght *þer*of O. [20] *om.* DO. [21] riall' O.
[22] among D. [23] s*er*uice O. [24] queyntise and O. [25] Kny3t D.
[26] adoun D. adon' O. [27] whider' þat DO. [28] who D. ho O.
[29] tok' ham D. toke he*m* O. tok R. [30] *om.* O. [31] *leaf* 101, *back.*
[32—32] hemself O. [33—33] her' hondes D. here hand' O.
[34] a O. [35] gaylist O. [36] horses O. [37] and DO.
[38] gon O.

who þat might ha*m* take, holde[1] ha*m* stille, with-outen[2] eny lette. ¶ And when al þis was done, Kyng Edward dede his diligence and his might forto emende[3] and redresse þe wrong*us* [4]of þe reame[4] in þe beste man*er* þat he might, to the hono*ur* of God & holy cherche, 4 and to mayntene his hono*ur*, and to amende þe noyaunce of þe co*m*mune peple.

How Ydoyne, þat was Lewelyn*us* douȝt*er*, Pri e of Walis, & Aymer þat was þe Erles broþ*er*[5] Mounford, wer taken[6] 8 in þe see. Cap*itul*o Cent*esimo* lxij.[7]

THe ferst ȝere after[8] þat Kyng Edward was cronede, Lewelyn, Prince of Walys, sent into Fraunce to þe Erl Mountford þat,[9] prouȝ conseile of his frendes, þe Erl shulde wedde his douȝt*er*. 12 And þe Erl þo avisede him of[10] þis þing, and sent aȝein to Lewelyn, & saide þat he wolde send after his douȝt*er*. And so he sent Aymer, his broþ*er*, after þe damisel. And Lewelyn arraiede shippis for his dought*er* and for Sir Aymer, & for her faire co*m*pany þat 16 shulde wende wiþ her. And þis Lewelyn dede grete wronge, for hit was couenant þat he shulde ȝeue his dought*er* to no man*er* man wiþouten[11] consel and consent of Kyng Edward. ¶ And so hit bifelle,[12] þat a burgeys of[13] Bristow come in þe see wiþ wyn lade,[14] 20 and mette ha*m*, & [15]ham toke[15] wiþ might & power[16]; and anone þe bu[r]geys sent ham to þe Kyng. ¶ And when Lewelyn herde this [17]tydynges,[18] he Was Wonder Wroþ & eke sorweful, and [19]bigon þo[19] forto werre oppoñ Kyng Edward, & dede miche harme vnto[20] 24 Englisshe-men, and bete adoune þe Kyng*us* castelles,[21] & biganne fast to destroi Kyng Edwardes lande.[22] ¶ And when tydyng*us*[23] come to Kyng Edward of þis þing, he went into Walys; and so miche he dede, by[24] Godes grace & his grete power, þat he drof 28 Lewelyn vnto miche meschif, þat he fleye al maner strengþ, and come & ȝelde him to Kyng Edward, and ȝaf him 1 M[l] ma*r*ȝ[25] of siluer forto haue pees, and toke þe damisel & al his[9] heritage, and made an obligacion vnto[26] Kyng Edward, and[26] come to his 32 pa[r]lament ij tymes of þe ȝere.

[1] haue O. [2] wiþout D. withoute O.
[3] amende the realme D. amende þ^e^ reaume O. [4—4] *om.* DO.
[5] broþ*er* of DO. [6] take O. [7] lxj^mo^ D. lxix R. [8] afterward O.
[9] *om.* D. [10] oñ D. vpon O. [11] wiþout D. w*ith*oute O.
[12] felle DO. [13] in D. [14] late O. [15—15] toke hem O.
[16] strengthe O. [17] *leaf* 102. [18] tidyng O. [19—19] gan D. gan þ^o^ O.
[20] vnto the D. vnto þ^e^ O. [21] Castell O. [22] landes O.
[23] tiding D. tydy*ng* O. [24] þurgh O. [25] Mark O. [26] to DO.

¶ And þe[1] secunde ȝere after þat Kyng Edward was cronede, he helde a general parlament at Westminster, and þere he made þe statutes for[2] defaut of lawe, by commune assent of al his baronage. And at Ester nexte sewyng', þe Kyng sent by his lettre to Lewelyn, Prince of Walis, þat he shulde come to[3] parlement for his londes[4] and for his holdyng in Walys, as þe strengþ of þe lettre obligatorie witnessede. ¶ þo Lewelyn hade scorn and despite of þe Kynges commandement; & for pur wraþ biganne aȝeyn forto[5] werr' opoñ Kyng Edward, & destroied[6] [his lands]. ¶ And [7]when Kyng Edward[7] herd þis tydynges,[8] he was[9] wonder[10] wroþ toward[11] Lewelyn, & in haste assembled' his peple, and went him toward Walys, and werred so oppoñ Lewelyn þe prince, til þat he hade[12] brouȝt him in miche sorw and disese; ¶ And Lewelyn saw that his defence myght nouȝt[13] availe, and come aȝeyne, & [14]ȝelde him to þe Kyngus[15] grace, and criede him mercy, and Longe tyme knelede bifore þe Kynges feete. ¶ The Kyng had' of him pite, and commaundede him forto arise; and for his mekenesse forȝaf him his wraþ, and to him saide, [16]that 'if[16] he toke on amys aȝeyns[17] him anoþer tyme, þat he wolde destroie him for euer'-more.' ¶ Dauid, þat was Lewelynus broþer, [18]duellede þat[19] same tyme[18] wiþ[20] Kyng Edward', & was a felle man & a sotil, & enuyous, & ferre castyng', and miche tresoun þouȝt', and euermore helde him stille for[to] wete & aspie þe Kynges wille, and euermore made god semblaunt', and semede so trew þat no man myght perceyue his falsenesse.

How Lewelyn, þrouȝ enginge[21] of Dauid his broþer, Werrede aȝeyne vppoñ Kyng'[10] Edward'. Capitulo Centesimo lxiij°.

HIt was nought longe after' þat tyme, þat Kyng' Edward ne ȝaf vnto[22] Dauid, þat was Lewelynus broþer, þe lordeship of Frodesham, and made him a knyght; and so miche honour dede he neuer[23] to no man of Walys after,[12] for enchesoñ of him.

¶ Kyng Edward helde his parlament at Londoñ, when he hade done in Walys aH þat he wolde, and chaungede his mony, þat þo was[24] foule cotte & rounded'; wherfore þe commune peple pleynede

[1] in the D. in þe O. [2] in D. [3] to his D. [4] land' O.
[5] to DO. [6] destroy D. [7—7] þo kyng *sic* O. [8] tydyng O.
[9] wox D. [10] *om.* O. [11] vnto DO. [12] *om.* DO.
[13] nouȝt him D. hym not O. [14] *leaf* 102, *back.* [15] Kynge D.
[16—16] þf *sic* D. [17] aȝeyne D. aȝen O.
[18—18] *þat* same tyme dwelled' O. [19] the D. [20] with the D.
[21] eggyng O. [22] to DO. [23] neuer' after' D. neuere aftir O.
[24] was ful O.

ha*m* wonder' sore, so þat þe Kyng lete enquere of ham þat soche t*re*spasse deden; and iij C̄ were atteynt of soche maner' falsenes; wherfore so*m*me were honged, and some[1] draw, and afterward[2] hongede. ¶ And after*w*ard, the Kyng' ordeynede þat þe sterlinge 4 halfpeny and ferthinge shulde go[3] þrouȝ-out his lande, and co*m*mandede þat no man, fro þat day afterward', [4]ȝaf ne feffede hous of Religiouñ with lande [5]and tenementȝ wiþouten[5] special leue of þe Kyng'; and he þat dede hit,[6] shulde ben[7] punisshede att þe[2] 8 Kynges wille, and the ȝifte shulde be for nouȝt.

¶ And hit was nouȝt longe after, þat Lewelyn, P*r*ince of Walys, þrouȝ ticement' of Dauid his broþ*er*, and by boþe here consent, þai þouȝt disherite Kyng Edward in-asmiche as þai might, so þat þrouȝ 12 ha*m* boþe þe Kynges pees was broken.[8] ¶ And when Kyng Edward herde þis, anone he sent[9] his barons into Northumberland, and þe Shirreyues[10] also, þat þai shulde gone[11] & take her Viage oppoñ þe t*rai*toures[12] Lewelyn and Dauid. ¶ And wonder herde 16 w*as* forto werr' þo, for it [is][13] wynt*er* in Walis when in oþ*er* cuntres it is somer'. And Lewelyn [14]lete ordeyn[14] and wel arraie[15] his gode castel of Swandoñ, and was þ*er*in an huge nombre of peple & plentee of vitailes, so þat Kyng Edward wist nouȝt wher forto[16] 20 entre. ¶ And wen þe Kynges men hit p*er*ceyuede, and also þe strengþ of Walys, þai lete come in þe see,[13] barges[17] and botes, and grete plankes, as meny as þai might ordeyn and haue, forto gone to the forsaide castell of Swayndoñ wiþ men on foot' and eke on hors. 24 But þe Walshemen hade so miche peple, and were so strong', þat þai dryuen[18] þe Englisshe-men aȝein, [19]so þat þ*er*e was so miche presse of peple at the turnyng aȝeyne,[19] þat þe charge & þe berdeyn[20] of ham made þe barges and botes synk'; and þ*er*e was drenchede 28 ful meny a gode Knyght, þat is to seyn: Sir' Rog*er* of Clifford, Sir' Willia*m* of Lyndesey, þat was Sire Iohnes sone Fitȝ Robert', and S*ir*e Richard Tauny, and an huge nombre of oþ*er*e folc; and al was [21]þrouȝ her' owen folye; for yf þai had hed gode espies, þai had 32 nouȝt bene harmed.

[1] some were O. [2] *om.* O. [3] goñ DO.
[4] *leaf* 103. [5—5] ne tenement with-out D. ne tenement withoute O.
[6] *om.* DO. [7] be DO. [8] broke O. [9] sent his barons DO. sent R.
[10] Shirreyues D. Surreys OR. [11] go O. [12] *trai*tous D.
[13] *om.* D. [14—14] lete & ordeyned' O.
[15] array and vitaile D. arrayd & vitailled' O. [16] to D.
[17] *MS.* barges barges. [18] drof D.
[19—19] so þat þ*er*e was so miche presse of peple at the turnyng aȝeyne D. so þat þ*er* was so myche prese of peple at þe turnynge aȝen O. *om.* R.
[20] berthen D. berþene O. [21] *leaf* 103, *back.*

¶ When Kyng' Edward harde tel þat his peple were so ydrenchede,[1] he made sorwe ynow. ¶ But þo come Sir' Iohñ of[2] Vessy fram[3] þe Kyng' of Aragouñ, and brouȝt with him miche[2] folc of
4 bachilers &[2] of Gascoignes,[4] and wer' soudioures, and duellede[5] wiþ þe Kyng', and tok[6] of him wages, & wiþ him were wiþholde, & noble-men; hit were forto fiȝte, & brenne meny tounes, & quelle[7] miche peple of Walshemen, al þat þai myght take. ¶ And alle þo,
8 wiþ pure strengþ & might, maden[8] assaute to þe castel of Swandoñ, & gete the castel.

¶ And when Dauid, þe Prynce[9] broþer, herde[10] þo tidinges,[11] he ordeined' him to flight.[12] ¶ And Lewelyn þe Prynce saw þat [13]Dauid
12 his broþer[13] was flowen, [and] [14]sore he was[14] abasshed', for he had none[15] power' þo, his werr' forto mayntene. ¶ And so Lewelyn gan forto flee, and wend wel forto[2] haue scaped; but on a[16] morwe Sir Roger þe[17] Mortymer' mette wiþ him oneliche[18] wiþ x knyȝtes, and
16 sette him rounde aboute, and to him went, and smote of his heuede,[19] & presentede him vnto[20] Kyng' Edward: & in þis maner þe Prince of Walys was taken,[21] and his heued[22] smyten[23] of', and alle his heires disherited for euermore, þrouȝ right[24] dome of þe
20 lordes of þe reaume.

¶ How Dauid, þat was Lewelynes broþer, Prynce of Walys,[25] was put to[26] deþ. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo lxiiij^to^.

24 DAuid, þat was [27]Lewelynus broþer,[27] þrouȝ pride [28]wende forto haue bene[28] Prince of Walis after his broþeres deth; and oppoñ þat, he sent after Walshemen to his parlement at Denbegge, and fulliche[29] made Walys [30]arise aȝeynes the Kyng', and biganne to meve Werr' [31]aȝeyns þe Kyng',[31] and dede al þe sorwe and dissese
28 þat he myght by his power'.

¶ When Kyng' Edward harde of þis þing,[2] he ordeyned men to pursue oppoñ him; and Dauid ferseliche[32] him defended til þat he

[1] drenchede D. drenched' O. [2] *om.* D. [3] fro DO.
[4] Gascoyng *sic* D. [5] dwellyng O. [6] vndirfong O. [7] queld' O.
[8] made DO. [9] Prynces O. [10] herde þo D. herd' þat O. herde R.
[11] tydynge O. [12] flight O. fight R.
[13—13] his broþer Dauid' O. [14—14] was sore D. sore awas O.
[15] no DO. [16] þe O. [17] *om.* D. le O. [18] only O. [19] heed O.
[20] to D. [21] take O. [22] heed O. [23] smet D. smyte O.
[24] riȝtful O. [25] *MS.* Walys Walys. [26] to þe O.
[27—27] the Prince broþer of Walys D. þe Prynces brother of Walys O.
[28—28] went haue be O. [29] folylich O. [30] *leaf* 104.
[31—31] *om.* D. aȝen þe kyng' O. [32] fresly D. fersly O.

come to þe touñ of Seynt Morice; and *þer*e was Dauid take as he fley,[1] and lad to þe Kyng'; & þe Kyng co*m*manded þat he shulde ben[2] hongede & ydraw,[3] & smyten[4] of his heuede,[5] & [6]q*uar*ter him,[6] & sende his heuede[7] to Londoñ, and þe iiij q*uar*ters sende to 4 [8]the iiij[8] [9]chief tounes[9] of Walys, for þai shulde take ensample, & *þer*of be-war'.

¶ And aft*er*ward Kyng Edward lete c*r*ie his pees þrouȝ[10] Walys, & seisede al[11] the londe into his honde; and alle þe grete lordes of 8 Walys þat were lefte alif, come þo to done[12] feaute and homage vnto[13] þe Kyng' as to her' Kynde Lord'; and þo lete Kyng Edward' amende þe lawes of Walys þat were[14] defectif'. ¶ And aft*er*, he sent to[15] alle þe lordes of Walys, by his lettre patent, þat[16] þai 12 shulde co*m*me alle to his p*ar*lement. And when þai were come*n*,[17] þe Kyng saide [18]to ha*m* ful curtesly: "Lordyng, ȝe beþ welcomen[18]; and me bihoueth ȝour' conseile and ȝour' helpe forto wende into Gascoigne, forto amende þe t*re*spasse þat to me was 16 *þer*e done when þat[19] y was *þer*e,[19] and forto entrete of Pees bituene þe Kyng of Aragoñ & þe Prynce of Morrey." ¶ And[20] alle þe Kynges lege[21]-me*n*, Erles & barons, consentede [22]and g*ra*nted[22] *þer*eto. And þo went þe Kyng' into Gascoignñ, and lete amende þe 20 t*re*spasse þat him was [23]*þer*e doñ,[23] and of þe debat þat was bituene þe Kyng of Arragoñ & the Prynce of Morrey, he cessede, & made ha*m* accordede.

¶ And while the [24]Gode Kyng' Edward and Alianore his Quene 24 w*as*[25] in Gascoigne, þe gode Erl of Cornwaile was made Wardeyn of' Engeland' til þat Kyng' Edward come aȝeyn. And þo enquerede he of his t*ra*itoures þat coniectede falsenesse aȝeynȝ him; and eche of ha*m* alle vnderfonge his[26] dome, after' þat þai hade deserued. 28 ¶ But in the mene-tyme, while[27] Kyng' Edward was biȝonde þe see, to done[28] ha*m* forto make amendes[29] þat aȝeyns him hade t*re*spassede, a false þef[30] t*ra*ito*ur* þat me callede 'Rys ap Meriedok,' bigan forto make werr' aȝeyns the[19] Kyng' Edward; and þat was for 32 enchesouñ þat[31] S*ir*e Payn Tiptott' wrongefully greuede & disesede þe

[1] fled O. [2] be DO. [3] drawe O. [4] smyte DO. [5] heed' O.
[6—6] quartred' O. [7] heed O. [8—8] iiij the D. [9—9] Tounys Chef O.
[10] þrouȝ-out al D. þurgh-out al O. [11] of O. [12] do O. [13] to D.
[14] weren O. [15] vn-to O. [16] *om.* O. [17] Come to þe kyng O.
[18—18] ful curteysly lordynges ȝe ben welcome O. [19] *om.* D.
[20] Ano*n* O. [21] lieges D. [22—22] *om.* D.
[23—23] done *þer*e D. don) in Gascoigne O. [24] *leaf* 104, *back.*
[25] were DO. [26] her' D. [27] while *þat* O. [28] do D.
[29] amende D. [30] þef a O. [31] þat D. of R.

forsaid Rys ap Meriedok'. ¶ And when Kyng' Edward herd al þis, he sent by his l*ett*res to Rys ap M*er*iedok', þat he shulde bigin to[1] make non[2] werr', but þat he shulde be[3] in pees, for his loue; and
4 when þat[4] he come aȝeyn into Engeland, he wold vndertake þe querel, and wolde done[5] amende al þat was misdone. ¶ The forsaide Rys ap M*er*iedok dispisede the Kynges co*m*mandement, and sparede nouȝt forto done[5] alle þe sorwe þat he might to þe Kyng*us*
8 men of Engeland; but anone after' he was taken,[6] and lad' to ȝorke, and þ*er*e he was drawe and hongede for his folye.[7]

Of þe redressing' þat Kyng' Edward made[8] of his Iusticeȝ & [9]of his clerkes, þat þai had done[9] for her' falsenesse[8]; & how
12 **he drof þe[10] Gewes out of Engel*and*, [11]for her' Vsurye and her' mysbileue.[11] Cap*itul*o C*entesi*mo lxv^to^.[12]**

WHen Kyng' Edward had duellede iij ȝer' in Gascoigne, [13]ful wel hit bicome vnto[13] him forto Wende aȝeyn into Enge-
16 land'. And when[14] he was comen[15] [16]aȝeyne, he toke[17] so meny pleyntes made to him of his Iusticeȝ and of his clerkes, þat had doñ so meny wronges & falsenesseȝ,[18] þat wonder' hit was [19]forto wete[19]; ¶ and for whiche falsenesse, Sir' Thomas of Weylond', þe Kyng*us*
20 Iustice, forsuore Engel*and* at the Toure of Londoñ, for falsenesse þat men put oppoñ [him]; wherfore[20] he was teint,[21] & p*r*ouede false. ¶ And anone aft*er*, whe*n* þe Kyng had doñ his wil [22]of þe[22] Iusticeȝ, þo lete he enquere & aspie how þe Gewys desceyuede & bigilede
24 his peple, þrouȝ here[23] synne &[24] falsenesse of[25] Vsurie; and lete ordeyn a p*r*iue p*ar*lement amonges[26] his lordes; and þai ordeynede among*us*[26] ha*m* þat 'alle þe Gewes shulde voide Engeland', for here misbileue, & also for her' false Vsurye þat þai deden vnto Cristen
28 men.' ¶ And forto spede and make an ende of þis þing', al þe co*m*munite[27] of Engel*and* [28]ȝeue to[28] þe Kyng' þe l.[29] peny of alle here Godes moeble: and so were þe Gewis dryuen out of Engeland'; and þo went þe Gewis into Fraunce, [and there dwelled], þrouȝ þe[4]
32 leue of Kyng' Philip þ*a*t þo w*a*s Kyng' of Fraunce.

[1] forto DO. [2] no DO. [3] by D. [4] *om.* DO. [5] do D.
[6] take O. [7] felonye DO. [8] *om.* D. [9—9] clerkes O. [10] *om.* O.
[11—11] *om.* O. [12] lxxxv^to^ *sic* O. [13—13] wel come to D. wil come to O.
[14] þo O. [15] come O. [16] *leaf* 105. [17] founde D. fond O.
[18] falsenesse D. falsnes O. [19—19] to here O.
[20] wherof D. [21] atteynt D. atteint O.
[22—22] with his D. [23] his O. [24] of DO. [25] and D. and of O.
[26] among O. [27] co*m*munes D. Comunalte O.
[28—28] ȝaf vnto D. [29] xv D. fyftyþe O.

How Kyng' Edward was seisede in al þe lond of Scotland', þrouȝ consent & graunt of alle þe[1] lordes of Scotland. Capitulo Centesimo ¶ l[x]vj^to.[2]

HIt was nouȝt longe after, þat Alisander',[3] Kyng' of Scotland, 4
nas dede, and Dauid Erl of Huntyngdoñ, þat was þe Kynges
broþer of Scotland, axede and chalangede[4] þe Kyngdome of
Scotland', for enchesoñ þat he was rightful[5] heir'. ¶ But meny
grete lordes of Scotland saide 'nay'; wherfore grete debate arose 8
bituene[6] ham & her'[7] frendes, for-asmiche as[8] þai wolde nouȝt
consent to his[9] coronacioñ; and in the [10]mene-tyme þe forsaid
Dauid deide. ¶ And so hit bifelle þat þe[8] same Dauid had iij
doughtres, þat worþiliche[11] wer' maried: þe ferst doughter was 12
mariede to Bailoille, þe secunde to Brus, þe þridde to Hastinges.
¶ And þe forsaide Bailol & Brus chalangede [12]þe land of[12] Scotland;
and grete debate and strif aroos bituene ham þre, for enchesouñ þat
eche of ham wolde haue bene[13] Kyng'. ¶ & when þe lordes of [14]þe 16
land'[14] saw þe debate bituene[15] ham þre,[16] þai come to Kyng Edward
of Engeland, and seisede him in alle þe land' of Scotland' as [t]heir'
chief' lord'. ¶ And when þe Kyng was seisede of alle[17] þe lordes
of Scotland', þe forsaide Bailol, Brus, and Hastyngus, comen[18] to 20
þe Kyngus court', and axede of þe Kyng' 'whiche of ham shulde
be Kyng' of Scotland'.' ¶ And Kyng' Edward, þat was fulle[19]
gentil and trewe, lete enquere by þe Cronicles of Scotland', and of
þe gret lordes of Scotland', whiche of ham was the Eldeste blood'; 24
and it was founde þat Bailoil was þe[20] eldest',[21] and þat þe Kyng
of Scotland shulde holde of the Kyng' of Engeland', and do[22] him
feaute and homage. ¶ & after þat[23] þis was doñ, Bailoil went into
Scotland', and þere was cronede Kyng of Scotland'. 28

And þe same tyme was oppoñ þe see [24]grete strif[24] bituene þe[25]
Englisshe-men and the No[r]mannes. ¶ But oppoñ [a tyme] þe
Normans arryuede[26] al at Douer'; and þere þai martrede an holy
man þat me calleþ[27] seynt Thomas of Douer'. And aftirwarde[28] 32

[1] þe gret D. [2] xx iiij vj^to *sic* O. [3] Alisander the D.
[4] cleymede D. Claymed' O. [5] riȝt D.
[6] bituene D. betwene O. bitue R. [7] *MS. has* her' her'. [8] þat D.
[9] þis O. [10] *leaf* 105, *back*. [11] worthily O. [12–12] *om.* D.
[13] be O. [14–14] Scotland' DO. [15] of D. [16] *om.* O.
[17] *MS. has* alle Londoñ, *with* Londoñ *underlined for omission; om.* DO.
[18] come O. [19] bothe D. [20] *om.* O. [21] eldest bloode D.
[22] done O. [23] *om.* DO. [24–24] strong werr' D. stronge werre O.
[25] *om.* D. [26] arryued vp O. [27] callede D. Called' O.
[28] afterwardes D.

were þe Normans quellede, þat *þer*e [1]scapede none of ham.[1]
¶ And sone after*w*ard,[2] Kyng Edward shulde lese þe Duchee of[3]
[4]Gascoign̄,[5] þrouȝ Kyng Philipp of Fr*a*unce, þrouȝ false castyng[6]
4 of þe Dossepere*ȝ* of þe lond; wherfore Sir Edmu*nd*, þat was sire[7]
Edwardes bro*þer*, ȝaf vp his homage vnto[8] the Kyng of Fr*a*unce.
And in þat tyme þe clerkes[9] of Engel*and* [granted] vnto[10] Kyng
Edward haluendel [11]holy cherche[11] godes, in helpyng forto recouer
8 his land aȝeyn in Gascoign̄. ¶ And þe Kyng sent þider a noble
company of his bachilers; and[12] himself wolde haue went[13] to
Portesmouthe, but he was lette þrouȝ on Maddok of Walys, þat
hade seisede þe castel of Swandoñ into his honde. And for þat
12 enchesouñ the Kyng[14] t*ur*nede aȝeyn into Walys at C*r*istus-masse.[15]
¶ And for enchesouñ þat þe noble lordes of Engel*and* þat were sent
into[16] Gascoign̄, had no[17] comfort of here lord þe[14] Kyng Edward,
þai wer take of Sire Charles of Fr*a*unce, þat is to seyn, Sir Iohñ
16 of Britaigne, S*ir*e Robert Tiptott, S*ir*e Rauf Tauny,[18] S*ir* Hughe
Bardolf, & Sir Ada*m* [19]of Creting*us*.[19] And ryȝt at þe[14] Ascencioñ
was Maddok taken[20] in Walys, and ano*þer* þat me callede Morgan;
and þai were sent to þe Toure of Londoñ, and[21] þai wer honget.[22]

20 How Sir Iohñ of[14] Balol, Kyng of Scotland, wiþsaide his homoge[23]; and of Sir Thomas[24] Tourbeluile. Capit*ulo* C*entesi*mo[14] lxvij°.[25]

AND when sir Iohñ Bailol, Kyng of Scotland, vnderstode þat
24 Kyng Edward was werrede in Gascoign̄, to whom þe
reaume of Scotland was delyuerede, falseliche[26] þo aȝeynȝ his oth,
wit[h]saide[27] homage, þrouȝ p*ro*curyng of his folc, and sent to the
court of Rome, þrouȝ a false suggescioun̄, to bene assoiled[28] of þat
28 oth þat he swore[29] vnto the Kyng[29] of Engeland; and so he was,
by lettres enbullede. ¶ þo chose[30] þai of Scotland Dossepers forto
bynime Edward his right.

[1—1] ascapede of ham neuer on D. scaped of he*m* not on O.
[2] after D. aftir O. [3] *MS.* of of. [4] *leaf* 106. [5] Lancastr*e* O.
[6] tysyng D. [7] kyng DO. [8] to D. [9] clergy D. [10] to DO.
[11—11] of holy cherches D. of holy Cherche O. [12] and þe kyng D.
[13] goñ D. [14] *om.* D. [15] cristen-masse D. Cristemasse O.
[16] vn-to O. [17] none D. [18] Tauny and D.
[19—19] Cretyng D. of Cretynge O. [20] tak D. take O.
[21] & *þer*e O. [22] biheuedede D. beheded O. [23] homages O.
[24] Iohñ D. [25] *MS. has* lxviij; O. *has* lxxxvij°. [26] falsly O.
[27] gaynesaide his D. withsayd his O. [28] *leaf* 106, *back.*
[29—29] to Kyng Edward D. [30] chosen DO.

& in þat tyme com [1]ij Cardinalles[1] fro þe court of Rome, fram
þe Pope[2] Celestyne, forto trete of accorde bituene þe Kyng of
F*ra*unce & þe Kyng of Engel*and*. ¶ And as þo ij Cardinalles
speken of accord', Thomas Tourbeluile, þat was take[3] at Ryouns, 4
made feaute and homage to the Wardeyn of Parys, and to him
put his ij sones in hostage,[4] for þat he þouȝt[5] goñ into Engel*and*
forto aspie the contre, and telle ham whe*n* he come into Engel*and*,
þat he hade broken þe Kynges prisouñ of F*ra*unce by nyght, and 8
saide þat he wolde done, þat alle Englisshe-me*n* and Walshe-men
shulde abowe to þe Kyng of F*ra*unce: and þis þing forto brynge to
þe ende, he swore; and oppoñ þis couenaunt, dedes[6] wer' made
bituene[7] ham, and þat he shulde haue by ȝere [8]an hundrede 12
poundes[8] worþ of land', to bryng' þis þinge[9] to þe[10] ende. ¶ This
false t*rai*to*ur* toke his leue, and' went þens and come into Engeland'
vnto[11] þe Kyng', & saide þat he was broken out of prisouñ, and þat
he had' put him in soche p*er*ile for his loue. Wherfore þe Kyng' 16
couþ him miche[12] þank', & ful glade was of his comyng'. ¶ And
þe false þef t*ra*itoure fro þat day aspiede al the Doyng of þe Kyng'
and also his Conseile, for þe Kyng' louede him ful[13] wel, & was wiþ
him ful p*ri*uee. ¶ But a clerk of Engeland', þat was in the Kynges 20
hous of F*ra*nce, herde of þis t*re*souñ & of the falsenesse, and wrote
to anoþ*er*e[14] clerk' þat Was duellyng' wiþ þe Kyng' of Engel*and*, al
how Thomas Tourbeluile hade done his false[15] coniettyng'. And al
þe Conseil of Engeland was writen[16] forto haue sent vnto[17] þe Kyng 24
of F*ra*unce; and þrouȝ þe forsaide lettre þat þe clerc hade sent fro
F*ra*unce, hit was founden[18] oppoñ him; wherfor he was lade to
Londoñ, & drawen & honged þ*er*e for his t*re*souñ; and his ij sones,
þat he hade put in[19] F*ra*unce for hostages, were[20] [21]þo biheuedede.[21] 28

Of þe Conquest of Berwik'. Cap*itul*o Cent*esim*o Sexag*esim*o[22] viij°.

When þo ij Cardinales wer' gone[23] aȝeyn into F*ra*nce, forto
trete of[24] pees at Cambrey, þe Kyng sent þider' of his 32
Erles and baroñs, þat is to seyn, S*ir*e Edmund' his broþ*er*, Erl of

[1—1] to ham a Cardynal D.
[2] pope *struck out, and* bisshop *written over in a different hand in* O.
[3] taken DO. [4] hostages D. [5] þoghte haue O. [6] dede D.
[7] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [8—8] a C li O. [9] tydynge O.
[10] an D. [11] to D. [12] michel D. [13] *om.* DO. [14] *leaf* 107.
[15] false D. fals O. falso R. [16] wryte O. [17] *om.* D. [18] founde O.
[19] into O. [20] weren O. [21—21] biheued' D. þo byheded' O.
[22] lxxx *sic* O. [23] went DO. [24] of þ^e O.

Lancastre & of Leycestre, Sir' Henr' Lacy, Erl of Nichole, and William Vessy, a baron; & of o*pere* baronettes, aboute xiiij of þe best and wisest of Engel*and*.

4 And in þe same tyme[1] Kyng Edward tok[2] his viage in[3] Scotl*and*, forto werr' oppon Iohn[4] Bailol, Kyng of Scotland. ¶ And Sir' Robert Roos at[5] Berwik' fley[6] fro þe Englisshe-men, & went to þe Scottes. ¶ And Kyng Edward went him toward Berwik, and
8 bisegede þe toun; and þo þat were wiþin[7] manliche[8] ham defendede, and sette afire[9] and brent ij of Kyng Edwardes shippis, and saide, in despite and in rep*ro*fe of him: "¶ Wenes[10] Kyng Edward, wiþ his longe shankes, [11]forto wyn[11] Berwik', al our'
12 vnþankes[12]? gas pikes him! and when [13]he haþ hit, gas diche hi*m*[13]!" ¶ When Kyng Edward herd þis scorn, anone þrouȝ his mightynesse he passede ou*ere* þe diches, and assailede þe toun, & [14]come to þe ȝates, and gete[15] and conquered þe toune, and, þrouȝ his
16 gracious power', quellede xxv M' & vij C̄ of[16] Scottes. & Kyng Edward loste of his me*n*, no ma*n* of renoun saue Sir'[4] Richard of Cornwaile; and him quellede a Flemyng' out of the Reede Halle wiþ a q*ua*rel, as þe forsaid Richard dede of his helme; and
20 co*m*mandede ha*m* forto ȝelde ha*m*, and put ham into[17] the Kyng*us* g*ra*ce; and þe Scottes wolde nouȝt; wherfore þat halle was brent, [18]and cast' adoune, and alle þo þat were within were brent.[18] And Kyng Edward loste [19]no man[19] at þat viage, of simple State,[20]
24 but xxviij Englisshe-men; and þe wardeyn of þe castel ȝaf vp[21] þe keyes wiþouten[22] eny assaut. And þ*ere* was take,[23] Willia*m* Douglas, and Sir' Symond' Frisel; and þe Erl Pat*r*ik' ȝelde him to þe pees; but Ingh*a*m of Hunfreuil and Robert of[4] Brus, þat were
28 wiþ þe[24] Kyng Edward', forsoke Kyng Edward, & helde wiþ þe Scottes: and aft*er*ward þai were tak',[23] and put into prysoun; & aft*er*ward þe Kyng' forȝaf ham her' trespasse, & deliu*er*ed ham out of p*r*isoun; and þo lete Kyng Edward close in Berwik' wiþ wallis
32 and wiþ diches. ¶ And aftirward, Robert Brus[25] went to Tyndale, and sette Woxebryge afire, and Excelh*a*m and Lamerstok', and

[1] tyme þe O. [2] nome D. [3] into D. to O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] of DO. [6] fly O. [7] wiþ *sic* D. þ*er*in O.
[8] manly O. [9] on fir' D. [10] wende DO. [11—11] haue gete O.
[12] ovne þankes O.
[13—13] haþ so do gas dikes D. he haþ gas dikes him O.
[14] *leaf* 107, *back.* [15] gate DO. [16] *om.* O. [17] to DO.
[18—18] and . . . . brent D. & cast adon) & alle þo þat were with-Inne were brent O. *om.* R. [19—19] no mo D. no mo men O.
[20] estate D. [21] vp þe Castell & O. [22] with-oute D. with *sic* O.
[23] taken D. [24] *om.* DO. [25] Rous DO.

quellede & robbit þe folc of þe contrey; and aftirward he went fro þens vnto Dunbarr'.

¶ And þe ferst Wedenesday of Marche, þe Kyng sent[1] þe Erl of Garreine, Sir' Hughe P*er*cy and Sir' Hught Spenser', [2]wiþ a 4 faire co*m*pany, forto[2] bisege þe castel. But on þat me called Sir' Richard Siward, a t*rai*to*ur*, a false man, ymagynede forto bigile[3] þe Englisshe-men, & sent[4] to[5] the [6]Englisshemen, [7]ham forto desceyue,[7] and saide þat he wold ȝelde to ham þe castel if[8] þai 8 wolde g*ra*unt him viij dayes of respite, þat he might sende & telle to Sir' Iohn̄ Bailol, Kyng' of Scotland', how [9]þe Englisshe-men[9] ferde, [10]as þai[10] werr' in þe castell, and sende him word' [11]'if þat he nolde[11] remeve þe sege of þe[12] Englisshe-men̄, þat[13] [14]þai wolde þe 12 castel ȝelde to þe[14] Englisshemen̄.' ¶ The messang*er*[15] þo come to[16] Iohn̄ Bailol, Kyng of Scotland', þ*er*e þat he was wiþ his host; and [17]þe messag*er* tolde him.[18] ¶ And Sir' Iohn̄[19] tok þo his host', and[17] come in þe morwe erly toward þe castel. & Sir' Richard Syward 16 saw him come, þat was maistre of þe Conseile and keper' of þe castel, and saide vnto þe[12] Englisshem*en*: "O God!" q*uod* he, "now y se of folc a fair' company, and wel app*ar*ailed, y wil go[20] aȝeynes ham, & [21]wit[h] ha*m* to[21] mete and ham[12] assaile." ¶ And 20 Sir' Hugh þe Spenser' saw the falsenesse of him & þe t*re*souñ, and saide to hi*m*[22]: "O traito*ur*, tak and p*ro*uede,[23] ȝour' falsenesse shal nouȝt [24]ȝow availe."[24] ¶ And Hugh the Spenser' [25]co*m*mandede anon[25] forto bynde him, and in al haste went aȝeins[26] 24 her' enemys, & quelled of þe Scottes[27] xxij M'; for þe Scottes[28] had [29]wiþ ha*m*[29] þat tyme no ma*n* [30]of honour,[30] saf Sir' Pat*r*ik Graham, þat manliche[31] fauȝt, and Longe tyme, and at þe last he was quelled. & þo saide þe Englisshe-men in rep*ro*f of þe Scottis: 28

[1] sent to D. [2—2] to D. [3] desceyue D. [4] *om.* O.
[5] vnto D. [6] *leaf* 108. [7—7] in desceyte D. [8] if þat O.
[9—9] his men D. þ*a*t his men O.
[10—10] *MS. has* as þai were as þai þat; þat D.
[11—11] but if he wolde D. [12] *om.* D. [13] *MS. has* þat þat; *om.* D.
[14—14] he saide he wolde ȝelde the castel to D. þey wold' ȝeld' þe Castell to þe O.
[15] Messager O. [16] to s*ir*e D. to s*ir* O. [17—17] *om.* O.
[18] him the message D. [19] Iohn̄ Bailol D.
[20] gone O. [21—21] ham D. with hem O.
[22] and saide to hi*m* D. & seyde to hym O. *om.* R.
[23] *MS. has* pro*u*ede is. [24—24] availe ȝow D. vayle ȝow O.
[25—25] anone comandet D. [26] aȝen O. [27] Scottes DO. Scotte R
[28] Scotte D. [29—29] *om.* DO.
[30—30] with ha*m* D. with he*m* of honour O.
[31] was of honour & manlich he D. manly O.

¶ Thus[1] staterand Scottes,
holde y for sottes,
of wrenches vnwar',
¶ Erly in a mornyng',
in an euel tyming'
went ȝe[2] fro Dunbarr'.

¶ þo[3] þat wer' in the castell saw þe scomfit*ure*, and[4] ȝelde[5] þe castel to[6] þe Englisshemen, and bonden her' bodyes, londes & castell*es* to[7] Kyng' Edward: and so þ*er*e[8] wer' [9]take in þe[9] castel, [10]iij Erles, and[11] vij barons, &[11] xxviij^ti^ Knyghtes, [12]& xj clerkes, and xij[13] Picardes; and alle were p*re*sentede vnto Kyng Edward',[12] and he sent ham to þe Toure of Londoñ, [14]to ben kepte[14] þ*er*e.

How Kyng' Edward, of his grete g*rac*e, delyu*er*ed aȝein[11] þe Scottes out of prisoñ,[15] þat were cheueteyns of the londe; and þay[16] drow ham þo[17] to þe Frenchem*en*, [18]þrouȝ conseil of William Waleys.[18] Capit*ulo* Cent*esimo* Sexag*esimo*[19] Nono.

When Kyng Edward hade made[20] þo an ende of the werre, and taken the chyueteyns of Scotland', þo come Sir' Iohñ Bailol, and ȝelde him vnto[21] Kyng Edward, and put [22]ham in[22] his g*rac*e; and he was lad[23] to Londoñ. And when Kyng' Edward was comen[24] þider, þai were brouȝt bifore him; and þe Kyng' axede of ha*m* how þai wolde make amendes of þat t*re*spasse and losse þat þai hade done him; and þai put ham[25] in his mercy.

¶ "Lordynges," q*uod* þe kyng, "y wille nouȝt ȝour' landes, ne none of ȝ*our* godes, but y wille þat ȝe make to me an oth, oppoñ Godes body, forto bene[26] trewe to me, and neuer after' þis tyme aȝens me bere Armes." And alle þai consentede to þe Kynges wille, and swore oppoñ Godes body, ¶ þat is to seyn, Sir'[11] Iohñ of Comyn and þe Erl of Stratthorñ,[27] þe Erl of Carryk'; and also iiij bisshop*us* vndertoke for alle[11] þe clergye; & so þe Kyng delyu*er*ede ham, and ȝaf ha*m* saf condit to wende into her' owen Land'. ¶ And

[1] This O. [2] þai D. [3] And þo D. When þo O. [4] þai D. þei O.
[5] yolden O. [6] vnto O. [7] to the D. to þe O.
[8] þey O. [9—9] taken in that D. take *þer* in þe O. [10] *leaf* 108, *back*.
[11] *om.* D. [12—12] xj clerkes and vij Picardes D.
[13] vij O. [14—14] forto bene kepede D. to ben y-kept O.
[15] prisouñ aȝeyne D. [16] *om.* O. [17] *om.* DO. [18—18] *om.* O.
[19] lxxx *sic* O. [20] y-made O. [21] to D.
[22—22] him vnto D. hy*m* in O. [23] led O. [24] come O.
[25] hy*m* O. [26] be O. [27] Stratthorñ and D.

hit was nouȝt longe after',[1] þat þai ne risen[2] aȝeyns[3] Kyng Edward, for enchesouñ þat þai wist'[4] þat Kyng Edward*us* folc[5] were[6] take in Gascoigne, as bifore is saide; but Sir' Iohñ Bailloil, [7]Kyng' of Scotland', wiste wel þat his lande shulde haue [8]sorwe and shame[8] 4 for her' falsenesse, and in haste went hi*m* ouer' þe see vnto[9] his owen londes, and þe*r*e helde hi*m*, and come neu*er*[10] aȝeyne. Wherfore þe Scottes chosen to bene[11] her' kyng', William Walis, a rybaude, an harlot, come*n* vp of nouȝt, and miche harme dede to þe Englisshemen. 8

¶ And Kyng Edward þouȝt how he myght haue deliu*er*ance of his peple þat were tak'[12] in Gascoigne, and in hast went ou*er* þe see into Flaundres, forto werr' oppoñ þe Kyng' of F*ra*unce. And þe Erl of Flaundres vnderfonge him wiþ michel[13] honour', and 12 g*ra*untede him alle his landes at his owen wille. ¶ And when þe Kyng' of[14] Fraunce herde telle þat þe Kyng of Engeland' was arryuede in Flaundres, and come wiþ an huge power', him forto destroye, he p*ra*yede him of trewes for ij ȝere, so þat Englisshe 16 marchauntȝ, and also Frenche, myȝt safliche[15] goñ in boþe sides. ¶ The Kyng Edward grantede hit, so þat he miȝt[16] haue his men out of prisouñ þat were take[11] in Gascoigne; and þe Kyng of F*ra*unce g*ra*untede anone; and so þai wer' Delyu*er*ede. 20

¶ And in the same tyme þe[17] Scottes sent by þe Bisshop̄ of seynt Andrewes into F*ra*unce, to þe Kyng', and to Sir' Charles, his broþ*er*, þat Sir' Charles shulde come wiþ his power', & þai [18]of Scotland'[18] wolde come wiþ heir', and so þai shulde gone into Enge- 24 land', þat lande forto destroye, fra*m* Scotland', til þat þai [19]come into[19] Kent. And þe Scottes truste[20] ful[11] miche oppon[21] þe Frensshe-me*n*; but of þat þing þai hade no man*er* g*ra*unt. and [22]noþeles þe Scottes bigoñ to robbe and quelle in Northumberland', 28 and dede[23] miche harme.

How William Wallis lete slee Sir' Hughe of Cressingh*am*; and of þe batail of Foukirk'. Capit*ulo* Cent*esimo* Septuagesimo.[24] 32

[1] afterward' D. [2] arysen O. [3] aȝeyn D. aȝen O.
[4] wist wel D. wist weel O. [5] men D. [6] was O.
[7] *leaf* 109. [8—8] shame and sorwe D. [9] to DO. [10] neuer more D.
[11] *om.* DO. [12] *om.* D. [13] mych O.
[14] *MS. has* of Engel*and*, *with* Engel*and underlined for omission.*
[15] safly D. sauely O. [16] must O.
[17] *MS. has* þe kyng, *with* kyng *underlined for omission.*
[18—18] *om.* D. [19—19] comen to D. come to O. [20] trist O.
[21] to O. [22] *leaf* 109, *back.* [23] deden O.
[24] *MS.* Octogesi*m*o; Octogesimo D. lxxxx° O.

WHen þis tydyng was comen[1] to Kyng Edward, þat William Walis hade ordeynede soche a stronge power, and þat al Scotland to him was entendant, and redy to quelle Englisshemen
4 & destroye his[2] lande, he was sore annoied, and sent anone by his[3] lettres[4] to þe Erl of Gerreiñ, and to Sir Henry Percy and to Sir William Latomer, and to[5] Sir Hugh of Cressingham his Tresorer,[6] þat þai shulde take power, and wende into Northumberland, & so
8 forþ into Scotland, forto kepe þe contres. ¶ And when William Waleys herde of her comyng, he gañ[7] forto flee; & [8] Englisshe-men him[9] folwede, and drof him til þat he come to Streuelyñ; & here he helde him in þe casteH; and þe Walshemen euery day ham[10]
12 ascriede & manacede, & dede al þe despite þat þai myght.[11] ¶ So þat þe Englisshe-men[12] oppoñ a tyme in a morwenyng,[13] went out fram[14] þe castel þe mountance[15] of x mile, and passede ouer a bruge; and William Walys come wiþ a stronge power, and drof
16 ham abak, for þe Englisshe-men hade aȝeynes him þo no myght, but fledde; and þo þat might take þe brugge scapede. ¶ But Sir Hughe, þe Kyngus Tresorer, here was slayn, and meny opere also; wherfore was made miche[16] sorwe.
20 þo hade Kyng Edward spedde alle his nedes in Flaundres, ¶ and was comyng[17] aȝeyn into Engeland, [18]and in haste toke[19] his Way toward[20] Scotland, and come þider at þe Ascencioun; and al þat he founde, he sette [21]on fire[21] & brent. But þe pore peple of Scotland
24 come to him wonder þik, and prayed him, for Godes loue, [22]þat he wolde[22] haue[3] on[23] ham[24] mercy and pitee; wherfore þe Kyng þo commandet þat no man shulde done[25] harme to ham þat were ȝolden[26] to ham, ne to no man of ordre, ne to no[27] hous of religioñ,
28 ne no maner cherche; ¶ But lete aspie[28] al þat he myght, where þat he myght fynde eny of his enemys. þo come an[29] espie to þe Kyng, and tolde wher[30] þe Scottes were assembled forto abide bataile.
32 And on seynt Marie Magdaleynus[31] day, þe Kyng come to

[1] come O. [2] the D. þe O. [3] *om.* O. [4] lettre D. [5] *om.* D.
[6] fader & O. [7] bygan O. [8] and the D. & þe O. [9] hem O.
[10] him D. hym O. [11] miȝten D. [12] *MS. has* Englisshemen went.
[13] mornyng DO. [14] fro D. [15] montynaunce O.
[16] michel D. [17] comen D. come O. [18] *leaf* 110.
[19] nome O. [20] into O. [21—21] afere O.
[22—22] *MS. has* þat he wolde þat he wolde. [23] of D.
[24] hem haue O. [25] do D. [26] ȝolde O. [27] non O.
[28] aspye in O. [29] *om.* DO. [30] wher þat D.
[31] Magdaleyn D. Maugdeleyne O.

Foukirk', and ȝaf bataile to þe Scottes; and at þat bataiH þere[1] wer' quellede of[2] Scottes [3]xxxiij M',[4] and[3] of Englisshemen but xxviij[5] and no mo; of þe whiche was a worþi Knyght' slayn, þat was a knyght [6]of the HospitaH,[6] þat me called Frere Briañ Iay; for, when 4 William Waleys fley fram þe bataile, þat[7] same Frere Briañ him pursuede fersly[8]; and as his hors[4] ran, hit sterte into a mere [9]of marreys[9] vp to þe bely; and William Waleys turnede þo aȝeyn, and *þere* quellede þe forsaide Briañ; and þat was miche harme. 8 ¶ And while Kyng Edward went þrouȝ Scotland forto enquere if[10] he might fynde eny of his enemys; and in þat lande he duellede as[11] longe as him likede, and *þere* was none enemy þat derst him abide. 12

¶ And so[12] aftirward Kyng Edward went to Southamptoñ, for he wolde nouȝt abide in Scotland in[13] wynter sesoñ, for esement of his peple. ¶ And when he come to Londoñ, he lete amende meny misdedes þat were done aȝeynes [14]his pees Whiles[15] þat He Was 16 in Flaundres.

Of þe laste mariage of Kyng Edward; and how he went þe þridde[16] tyme into Scotland. Capitulo Centesimo Septuagesimo[17] primo. 20

ANd after',[18] hit was ordeynede þrouȝ[19] þe court of Rome, þat Kyng Edward shulde wedde Dame Margarete, Kyng Philippus suster of France; and þe Erchebisshop Robert of Wynchelse spousede ham togedre; þrouȝ whiche mariage pees was 24 made bituene Kyng Edward of Engeland and Kyng' Philippe of Frauunce. ¶ Kyng[20] Edward[21] went þo[4] þe þridde[16] tyme into Scotland; and þo, with-inne þe ferst ȝere, he had enfamenede þe land so þat *þere* ne[21] lefte nouȝt on [22]but þai[22] come to[23] his mercy, 28 saf þo *þat* were in þe castel of Estreuelyn, þat was[24] vitailede & storede[25] for vij ȝere.

[1] *om.* DO. [2] of the D. [3—3] xxx M[l] iij M[l] & O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] Englisshe-men but xxviij D. Englessh-men but xxviij O. Englisshe-men R.
[6—6] an hospitaler' D. an hospyteler O. [7] þe D.
[8] fersliche D. [9—9] *om.* O. [10] if *þat* O.
[11] alse D. [12] sone DO.
[13] þe O. [14] *leaf* 110, *back.* [15] and his lawe while DO.
[16] iij O. [17] *MS. has* Ottogesimo; iiij D. lxxxx O.
[18] afterward D aftirward O. [19] by O. [20] And Kyng D.
[21] *om.* O. [22—22] þat þai ne D. þat þey ne O. [23] vn-to O.
[24] was wel D. was weel O. [25] astorede D. astored O.

How þe castel of Estreuelyn was bisegede. ¶ Ca*pitulo* Cent*esimo* lxx[1] se*cundo*.

Kyng' Edward come with an huge power' to þe castel of
4 Estreuelyn, and bisegede þe casteH; but hit litil availede, for he myght do[2] the Scottes none harme, for þe castel was so stronge an[d] wel Kepte.[3] ¶ And Kyng' Edward saw þat, & þouȝt him oppoñ a queyntise, and lete [4]make *þere* anone[4] ij peire of hye
8 Galwes bifore þe toure of þe casteH, and made his oth þat, as meny as were in[5] þe casteH, [6]were he[6] Erle or baroñ, and he were take wiþ strengþ, but if he wolde þe[7] raþ*er* him ȝelde, he shulde bene hongede on[8] þo Galwes. ¶ And when þo þat were in þe castel
12 herde þis, þai come and ȝelde ham alle to þe Kynges mercy & *grace*; and þe Kyng' forȝaf ha*m* al his maletalent.[9] And *þere* were alle þe grete lordes of[10] [11]Scotland sworne to Kyng' Edward, þat þai shulde come to Londoñ to eu*er*y p*ar*lement, and shulde stonde to
16 his ordenaunce.

[12]How Troillebastouñ[12] was ferste ordeynede. Cap*itulo* C*ente*sim*o* lxx[13] iij°.

THis[14] Kyng' Edward went þens to Londoñ, and wende haue
20 hade [15]rest and[15] pees of his werr', wiþ whiche werre he was ocupiede xx^ti^ ȝer', þat is to seyn, in Walys, in Gascoigñ, and in Scotland', and þouȝt how he myght recou*er*e his t*re*soure þat he hade spendede about his werre, and lete enquere þrouȝ þe reaume
24 of alle þe[16] mistakyng*us* and wrong*us* done þrouȝ misdoers in[17] Engeland', of alle þe tyme þat he hade bene out of his realme, þat [18]me callede[18] 'Troylebastoñ'; and ordeynede þ*er*to Iustices. And in þis man*er* þe Kyng' recou*ere*d'[19] t*re*soure[20] wiþout noumbre. ¶ And his
28 encheson was, for he[21] hade þouȝt [22]forto haue went into[22] þe Holy Land' forto [23]haue werrede[23] oppon Godes enemys, for enchesouñ þat he was croisede longe tyme bifore; and noþeles, þat law þat he had ordeynede dede miche gode þrouȝ al Engeland', to ham þat were

[1] MS. xx iiij; xx iiij D. lxxxx O. [2] done O. [3] ykept O.
[4—4] make anone *þere* D. amake anon þere O. [5] with-Inne O.
[6—6] whedir he were O. [7] *om.* O. [8] oppon D.
[9] maletalent DO. ale talent R.
[10] *MS. has* of engel *with* engel *underlined for omission.* [11] *leaf* 111.
[12—12] Of Traillebastoñ how it D. [13] *MS. has* xx iiij; xx iiij D.
[14] The D. þe O. [15—15] *om.* D. [16] *om.* DO. [17] of O.
[18—18] men calles D. me*n* Called O. [19] recou*ere*de þo D. [20] good O.
[21] *om.* D. [22—22] goñ to D. [23—23] were D. werre O.

mysbode; for þo þat *tre*spassede were[1] wel chastisede, and afterward þe meker' and þe[2] bettre; and þe pore comunes were in þe[3] more reste and in[4] pees.

¶ And[5] þe same tyme Kyng Edward enprisonede his owen sone Edward, for encheson þat Walt*er* of Langetoñ, Bisshop of Chestre, þ*at* was þe Kyng*us* t*re*sorer', hade made oppoñ him co*m*pleynt, and saide þat þe forsaide Edward, þrouȝ conseil and p*ro*curme*n*t of on, Piers of Gauastoñ, a squyer' of Gascoigne, [6]had broke[6] þe parkeȝ of þe forsaide bisshop*e*, and þe forsaide Piers conseilede and ladde þe same Edward, þe kynges sone; and for þis cause [7]Kyng Edward exilede him[8] out of Engeland for eu*er*more.

Of þe deþ of William Waleys, þe false t*ra*itoure. Cap*itulo* C*entesim*o lxxiiij.

And when þis god Kyng Edward [9]hade his enemys ouercome[9] in Walis, Gascoigñ, & in Scotland, and destroyede his t*ra*itoures, but[10] oneliche[11] þat[12] rybaude William Waleys, þat neuer' to þe Kyng' wolde him ȝelde. and at þe laste, in þe toune of Seynt Dominic, in þe ȝer' of Kyng' Edward*us* regne xxxiij ȝer', þat false t*ra*itoure was take, and p*re*sentede to þe Kyng; saf þe Kyng wolde nouȝt seen[13] him, but sent him to Londoñ to vnderfonge his iuge-[ment].[14] And on Seynt Bartholomeus Eve he was honget and drawe, and his [15]heuede smyten[15] of, & his bowailes take[16] out [17]of his body,[17] and brent, and his body q*ua*rtarede & sent to iij[18] þe best tounes of[19] Scotland, and his heued[20] sette oppoñ a spere, and sette oppoñ Londoñ Brugge, in sample[21] þat þe Scottes shulde haue in mynde forto bere ham amys aȝeynȝ her'[22] lorde eftesones.

How þe Scottes come to Kyng Edward, forto amende here t*re*spasse þat þai had done aȝeyns him. [Capitulo] Cen-tesi*m*o lxxv^to^.[23]

And at Michelmasse þo next coming, Kyng' Edward helde his p*ar*lement atte Westmynstre; and þider come þe Scottes, þat is to seyn, þe Bisshop of Seynt Andrew*us*,[24] Robert þe Brus, Erl

[1] weren O. [2] *om.* D. [3] *om.* O. [4] *om.* DO. [5] and in D.
[6–6] hade broke DO. *om.* R. [7] *leaf* 111, *back.*
[8] his sone O. [9–9] *om.* D. [10] saf D.
[11] only O. [12] the D. [13] see D. se O. [14] Iugement *þere* D.
[15–15] heed smyte O. [16] taken D. [17–17] *om.* D.
[18] iiij of D. foure O. [19] in D. [20] heed O. [21] ensample DO.
[22] her liege D. her lege O. [23] lxxxv^to^ O. [24] Andrew O.

of Carrik, Symond[1] Frise Ħ, Iohn̄,[2] Erl of Athe Ħ[3]; and þai were accordede with[4] þe kyng', [5]and' bonden[5] by her'[6] oth sworn̄, þat after,[7] if eny of ham [8]misbare ham[8] aȝeyns Kyng Edward, þat þai
4 shulde bene[9] disheritede for euermore. And when here pees was þus made, þai toke her' leue priueliche,[10] [11]and went Home into Here owen[12] contree.

How Robert þe Brus chalanged Scotland'. Capitulo Centesimo
8 **lxxvj^to^.[13]**

ANd after,[14] Robert[15] þe Brus, Erl of Karrik, sent by his lettre to þe Erles and barons of Scotland', þat þai shulde come to him to Scone, in the morwen[16] aftir' þe concepciouñ[17] of oure Lady,
12 for hye nedes of þe land'; and þe lordes come at þe day assignede. ¶ And at þe same day, Sir' Robert þe Brus saide: "Faire lordes! ful wel ȝe wete[18] *þat* in my *per*sone du[e]lleþ þe ryght of þe reaume[19] of Scotland'; and as ȝe weteþ[20] wel, as ryȝtful heir', siþ
16 [21]þat Sir'[21] Iohn̄ Bailoil, þat was our' Kyng', [22]haþ vs[22] forsak', & also lefte[23] his lande. ¶ And þouȝ it [24]so be[24] þat Kyng Edward of Engel*and*, wiþ wrongeful power' haþ made me [25]to hi*m*[25] assent aȝeyns my wille,—yf þat ȝe wil gr*an*t þat y be Kyng' of Scotl*and*, y
20 shal kepe ȝow aȝeyns Kyng' Edward & aȝeyns alle maner'[26] men." And wiþ þat worde, þe Abbot of Scone aros,[27] and bifore ham alle saide, þat hit was resouñ forto helpe him, and þe lande to kepe and defende; and þo saide, in *pr*esence of ham alle, þat he wolde [28]ȝeue
24 him[28] a þousand' pound'[29] forto mayntene þat land'. and alle þe[30] o*per*e gr*an*tede þe[31] lande to him, and wiþ hir' power' him forto helpe, and defiede Kyng' Edward of Engel*and*, and saide *þat* Rob*er*t þe Brus shulde bene[32] Kyng of' Scotland'.

28 **How Sire Iohn̄[33] Comyn gaynesaide þe crounyng' of[34] [35]Robert þe[35] Brus. Capitulo Centesimo [36]Septuagesimo Septimo.[36]**

[1] Symond' the D. Symou*n*d þe O. [2] Iohn þe O. [3] Athels O.
[4] to O. [5—5] and bonden and D. & bound' & O. bonden R.
[6] *om.* O. [7] afterwarde D. aftirward' O. [8—8] bere he*m* amys O.
[9] be DO. [10] p*r*iuelys D. p*r*euyly O. [11] *leaf* 112.
[12] *om.* DO. [13] lxxxxvj^to^ O. [14] after þis D. aftir þis O.
[15] ymage *sic* O. [16] morwe D. morne O. [17] Ascenciouñ D.
[18] weteþ O. [19] me *sic* D. [20] wote D. weten O. [21—21] *om.* O.
[22—22] vs hath DO. [23] lost' D. [24—24] be so O. [25—25] his O.
[26] man*er* of O. [27] roos vp D. [28—28] hym ȝeue O. [29] ti O.
[30] *om.* D. [31] *þat* O. [32] be D. [33] Iohn of O.
[34] & O. [35—35] sir Rob*er*t D. [36—36] xx iiij xvij^o^ O.

"LOrdynges," saide Sir' Iohñ of Comyñ, "þenketh oppoñ þe treuthe and þe[1] oth þat ȝe[2] made vnto Kyng' [3]Edward of Engeland'! and as tochyng'[4] myself, y Wil nouȝt breke myn oth for no man." And so he went fra*m*[5] þat company at þat tyme; 4 wherfore Robert þe Brus, and alle þat to him consentede, were wonder' wroþe, & þo[6] manacede Sir' Iohñ of[1] Comyñ. ¶ þo ordeynede þai[7] anoþ*er* conseil at Dumfrys, to þe whiche come þe forsaide Sir' Iohñ Comyn, [8]and duellede[8] but ij mile fram[5] 8 Dunfris, þ*er*e þat he was wont[9] to soiourne and abide.

How Sir' Iohñ Comyn was t*rai*ter*o*usely slayn.[10] Ca*pitul*o C*ent-esim*o lxxviij°.[11]

WHen[12] Robert þe Brus wiste þat al þe g*r*ete[13] of Scotland' 12 were comen[14] to Scone, saf Sir' Iohñ Comyn, þat soiourned þo neyȝ Scone, he sent after' hi*m* specialiche,[15] þat Sir' Iohñ Comen shulde com & speke wiþ him; and oppoñ þat' he sent after' him[1] Sir' Iohñ Comyn*us* ij breþ*er*ne, and pr*ai*ede hi*m* forto[1] come[16] and 16 speke wiþ him atte þe Gray Freres at[17] Donfris; and þat was þe Thoresday after Candelmasse; & Sir' Iohñ g*ra*untede ham forto wende wiþ ham. And when he had[18] herde masse, he toke a sop and drank', &[18] afterwarde he bistrode his palfray and rode his way, 20 and so come to Dunfris. & Rob*er*t[19] Bruys sawe him co*m*me atte a wyndow, as he w*as* in his chaumbre, and þo made ioye ynow, & come aȝeyn[20] him, and halsed[21] hi*m* aboute þe nek', & made wiþ him gode semblaunt. And when alle þe Erles & barons of 24 Scotland were p*r*esent, Robert þe Brus spake and saide: "Sires," q*uod* he, "ȝe weten[22] wel the[23] enchesouñ of þis comyng, & wherfore hit is: if þat ȝe wil Graunt þat Y mote[24] be Kyng of Scotl*and*, [25] [26]as rygh̄t heire of the londe." And al þe lordes þat were þ*er*e, 28 saide wiþ on[27] voys þat he shulde bene[28] crouned Kyng' of Scotl*and*,[26] and þat þai wolde him help and mayntene aȝeyns al maner' men on lif; and for him, if it wer' nede, dye. ¶ þe Gentil knyȝt þo,

[1] *om.* D. [2] ȝe DO. he R. [3] *leaf* 112, *back.* [4] *MS.* tothyng'.
[5] fro O. [6] so O. [7] þey þo O.
[8]–[8] he duelled no D. dwelled' not O. [9] woned O. [10] queld' O.
[11] iiij xx xviij° O. [12] Whenne þat O. [13] gret lordes D. [14] come O.
[15] specially O. [16] kepe O. [17] of O. [18] *om.* O.
[19] Robert þe D. Robert þ^e O. [20] aȝeynes D. aȝens O.
[21] collede D. colled O. [22] wete D.
[23] the D. þe O. *om.* R. [24] most' D. [25] *leaf* 113.
[26]–[26] *om.* D. [27] o O. [28] be O.

Sir'[1] Iohñ of Comyn, ansuerede & saide: "*cer*tes, neuer' for me, ne forto haue of me as miche[2] helpe as þe value of a botouñ; for, þat oth þat y haue made to Kyng' Edward of Engeland', y shal holde þe[1] while my lif laste.[3]" And with þat worde he went fro þe co*m*pany, and wolde haue went oppoñ his palfray. And Robert the Brus pursuede him wiþ a drawen[4] sworde, and bare him þrouȝ the body, and Sir' Iohñ Comyn felle [5]adoune vnto[5] the Erþe. ¶ But when Roge*r*, þat was Sir' Iohñ Comines broþ*er*, saw þe falsenesse, he[6] stert vp[7] to Sir' Robert the Brus, and smote him wiþ a knyf'; but þe false t*ra*itoure was armed vnder', so þat þe stroke myght done hi*m* none harme; and so miche helpe come aboute Sir'[8] Robert the Brus, so þat Roge*r* Comyn was þe*re* quellede and alto-hewe into smale pices. ¶ And Robert þe Brus t*ur*nede aȝeyn þe*re* þat Sir' Iohñ Comyn þe noble Baroñ lay [9]woundede and pynede[9] towardes[10] his deþ, bisides þe hye aut*er* in the cherche of þe Gray Freres, and saide vnto Sir' Iohñ Comyn: "O t*ra*itour'! þow shalt be[11] dede, & neuer' after' lette myn avauncement'"; and shooke his suorde at þe[1] hye auter', and smote him on[12] the heuede,[13] þat þe brayn felle adoune[14] oppoñ[15] þe Gronde, and þe blode stert' vnto[16] the wallis; and ȝitte into þis Day that[17] blode [18]is seyne þe*re*,[8] and[19] no Wat*er* may wasshe it away; and so deide þat noble knyȝt in holy cherche.

How Robert þe B[r]us w*a*s c*r*onede, [20]and made[20] Kyng' of Scotland'. Cap*itulo* C*entesimo* lxxix°.[21]

And when þe intruso*ur*[22] Robert þe Brus saw þat no m*an* þo wolde lete his coronaciouñ, he commandede alle ha*m* þat were of power' shulde come to[23] his c*r*ounyng',[24] to Seynt [25]Iohnes touñ[25] in Scotland'. ¶ & so hit bifelle þat on[1] oure Lady Day, þe[26] Anunciaciouñ, þe Bisshop of Glascowe[27] and þe Bisshop̄ of Seynt Andrew*us*[28] c*r*ounede [29]for her Kyng, Rob*er*t the Brus,[29] in Seynt Iohnes toune,[30] & made him Kyng'. And anone after' he

[1] *om.* O. [2] michel D. [3] lasteþ O. [4] draw DO.
[5]–[5] douñ to D. doun vnto O. [6] *all three MSS. have* and.
[7] *om.* DO. [8] *om.* D. [9]–[9] wounde and pynyng' D. [10] toward' O.
[11] bene D. [12] oppoñ D. [13] heed' O. [14] doun O. [15] to D.
[16] an hye oppoñ D. on hye in-to O. [17] the D. [18] *leaf* 113, *back.*
[19] þat O. [20]–[20] *om.* O. [21] xx iiij ix° O.
[22] t*ra*itoure D. traytour O. [23] vnto O. [24] Corounynge O.
[25]–[25] Iohñ O. [26] of O. [27] Glastoñ DO. [28] Andrew O.
[29]–[29] for her Kyng Rob*er*t the Brus D. for her Kyng Rob*er*t þe Brus O. her' Rob*er*t R.
[30] *MS. has* toune toune, *with the second* toune *underlined for omission.*

drof out al[1] þe Englisshe-men out[1] of Scotland; & þai fledde,[2] and come & pleynede vnto[3] Kyng Edward, how Robert þe Brus hadde dryuen[4] ham out of the lande, & disherite[5] ham.

How Kyng Edwarde dobbit at Westm*inster* xiiij score knyghteȝ. Capit*ulo* Cent*esimo* Ottogesimo.

AND when Kyng Edward herde of þis meschief, he[6] suore þat he wolde þ*er*of bene avenged, and saide þat 'alle þe t*ra*itours[7] of Scotland shulde bene[8] hongede and draw, and þat þai shulde neu*er* bene[9] raunsonede.' ¶ And Kyng Edward þouȝt oppoñ þis falsenesse þat þe Scottes hade done, and sende[10] aft*er* alle [11]þe bachilers[11] of Engel*and*, þat þai shulde come to Londoñ at Whitsontyde; and he dobbit[12] at Westm*inster* iiij[xx][13] knyȝtes.

¶ Þo ordeynede him þe noble Kyng Edward forto wende into Scotland, to werr oppoñ Robert þe Brus; and sent bifore him[1] into Scotland [14]Sir Aymer of[15] Valance, Erl of Penbrok, & Sir Henry Percy,[16] wiþ a fair company, þat p*ur*sewede þe Scottes and brenede[17] tounes & castille*s*; & aft*er*warde come the Kyng himself, wiþ Erles[18] and barons a fair co*m*panye.

How Robert þe Brus was scomfitede in bataile; and how[19] Symond Frisell was[19] slayñ. Ca*pitul*o Cent*esimo* Ottogesimo p*r*imo.

THe[20] Fryday next bifore[21] þe Assu*m*pcicioñ of our Lady, Kyng Edward mette Rob*er*t the[1] Brus bisides Seynt Iohnes touñ in Scotland, & with his co*m*pany[22]; of þe[23] whiche co*m*pany[1] Kyng Edward quelled vij M. ¶ When Robert þe Brus saw þis meschief, he[24] gan to flee, and hudde[25] him þat me*n* myght nouȝt him fynde; but Sir Symond Frisell pursuede him so sore, so[23] þat he t*ur*nede[26] & abode bataile, for he was a worþi[27] knyȝt and a bolde of body[27]; and þe Englisshe-me*n* pursuede him[28] sore on[29] euery

[1] *om.* O. [2] fley D. [3] to D. [4] dyve *sic* O. [5] disheritede D.
[6] *MS. has* he sor *with* sor *underlined for omission.*
[7] traitoures D. Traytours O. traitors R. [8] be O. [9] be DO.
[10] sent DO. [11—11] bachelrye D. þe Bachelrye O.
[12] tobbet D. dubbed O. [13] fourtene score DO. [14] *leaf* 114.
[15] *om.* D. þe O. [16] Percy barouñ D. Percy Baroñ O. [17] brent O.
[18] erler *sic* D. [19] *om.* O. [20] O the O.
[21] fefore *sic* O. [22] Cumpanye Kyng Edward O. [23] *om.* D.
[24] and DO. [25] hyd O. [26] turnede aȝeyne D. turned aȝen O.
[27—27] Knyȝt of body and bold D. [28] hym eu*er*e O. [29] in O.

side, and quellede þe stede þat Sir' Symond Friseꝗ roode oppoñ; and þai toke him and lade him into[1] þe hoste. ¶ And Sir' Symond bigan forto flat*er* and speke faire, and saide: "lordes, y
4 shal ȝeue ȝow iiij Mꝗ m*ar*ȝ[2] of Siluer', and myn[3] horse and myn[3] herneys, and aꝗ myn[3] armure, and bicome a begg*er*." þo ansuerede Theobalde of Peuenes,[4] þat was þe Kyng*us* Archir', "Now God me so helpe, hit is for nouȝt þat þow spexte; for alle þe golde of
8 Engel*and* y wolde [5]nouȝt lete þe[5] gone[6] with-out co*m*maundement of Kyng Edward." And þo was he lade to þe Kyng'[7]; but[8] þe Kyng wolde nouȝt [9]see him, but co*m*maundede [10]him to ben ledde[10] away to haue his dome at[11] Londoñ. In oure Ladies Eve, þe[12]
12 Natiuitie, he was hongede[13] and drawe, & his[14] [15]heuede smyte*n*[15] of', and hongede aȝein wiþ cheynes of yren oppoñ þe Galwes; & his heuede[16] was sette[12] oppoñ Londoñ Brugge vppoñ a spere; and aȝeyns Cristenmasse[17] þe body was brent, for enchesouñ þat þe men
16 þat kepte þe body by nyght, saw meny deueles raumpande wiþ yren crokes rynnyng oppoñ þe galwes, and horribliche t*ur*mentede þe body; and meny þat ha*m* sawe, anone aft*er* þai deide for drede, or woxen made, or sore sikenesse þai had. ¶ And in þat bataile
20 was taken[18] þe Bisshop of Glascowe,[19] þe Bisshop*e* of Seynt Andrewes,[20] þe Abbot of Scone, aꝗ armede wiþ yren as me*n* of Armes, &[21] false t*rai*toures and false p*r*elatis aȝeyns her' oth; and þai were brouȝt to þe Kyng', and þe Kyng sent ham to þe Pope of
24 Rome, þat he shulde done[22] wiþ ham what his wille were.

How Iohñ, Erl of Atheles, was take, & put to[23] deþ. Cap*itulo* ¶ Cent*esimo* Ottog*esimo* se*cundo*.

A Nd at þat bataile fledde[24] S*ir*e Iohñ [25]Erl of Ateles,[25] and went
28 into a cherche, & þ*er*e hudde[26] him for drede. But he miȝt haue þ*er*e no refute, for enchesouñ þat þe cherche was ent*er*ditede þrouȝ a gen*er*al sentence; and in þe same cherche he was take.[27] ¶ And þis Sir' Iohñ wende wel haue scapede fram[28] þe deth, for
32 enchesouñ þat he cleymede kynrede of Kyng' Edward. And

[1] to D. vnto O. [2] Mark O. [3] my O.
[4] *MS. has* Peueneseye, *with* eye *underlined for omission.*
[5—5] þe not lete O. [6] go DO. [7] *om.* O. [8] and DO.
[9] *leaf* 114, *back.* [10—10] to lede him D. to lede hym O. [11] to O.
[12] *om.* D. [13] honge O. [14] h *sic* D. [15—15] hed' smyte O.
[16] heed O. [17] Cristemasse O. [18] take O. [19] Bastoñ DO.
[20] Andrewes and D. Andrews and O. [21] as O. [22] do D.
[23] to þe D. [24] fley D. flye O. [25—25] of Atheles Erle O.
[26] hid O. [27] taken D. [28] fro D.

[1] Kyng' Edward wolde[1] no longe*r* [2] bene taried[2] of his t*rai*toures, and sent him to London in haste; & *þer*e he [3] was[4] Hongede, and his[5] [6] Heuede smyten[6] of, and his body brent' [7] al into smal[7] asshes. ¶ But at þe p*ray*er' of þe[8] Quene Margarete, for 4 enchesoun þat he cleymede [9] of Kyng Edward' kynrede,[9] his drawyng' [10] was forȝeuen him.[10]

How Iohn, þat was [11] William Waleys broþ*er*,[11] was put to þe [12] deþ. Cap*itul*o Cent*esimo* iiij iij^o^. 8

WHen þe gretteste maistres of Scotland' [13] were þus[13] done to euel deþe, & shent for her' falsenesse, Iohn, þat was William Waleys broþ*er*, was tak[14] as Sir' Iohn, Erl of Atheles, was.

How Robert þe Brus [15] fley fro[15] Scotland to[16] Norwaye. Ca*pi*- 12
***tul*o Cent*esimo* ottog*esimo* iiij^to^.**

ANd at[17] þat same tyme, w*as* Robert þe Brus miche hatede amonges[18] þe peple of Scotland'; so he[19] wist nouȝt what to[20] don; and forto hide[21] him, he went into Norway, to þe Kyng þat 16 had spousede his sustre, and *þer*e helde him, soco*ur*[22] forto haue. ¶ And whe*n* Rob*er*t þe Brus might nouȝt [23] bene founde[23] in Scotland', Kyng' Edward þo lette crye his pees þrouȝ[24] al þe land', & his were vsede, and his ministres s*er*uede þrouȝ-out al[17] þe land'. 20

How Kyng Edward' deide. Cap*itul*o Cent*esimo* Ottogesi*m*o quinto.

WHen Kyng' Edward hade abatede his enemys, he turnede aȝeyn Southward, and a maladye toke him at Burgh op[25] 24 Sande, in þe Marche of Scotland'. And he wiste wel þat his deþ was ful neyȝ, and callede to him Sir' Henry þe Lacy, Erl of Lyncoln,[26] Sir' Gy, Erl of Warr*wyk*, Sir' Aymer' Valence, Erl of Penbrok', and Sir' Robert of Clifford, barou*n*, and p*ray*ede ha*m*, 28 oppon þe faiþe[27] þat þai to him owede, þat þai shulde make Edward'

[1—1] the kyng' nolde D. þe kyng nold O.
[2—2] be trayede D. be taryed' O. [3] *leaf* 115. [4] shulde ben D.
[5] þe D. [6—6] heed smyte O. [7—7] alto DO. [8] *om.* O.
[9—9] kynred of Kyng' Edward D. [10—10] forȝeue hym was O.
[11—11] William*us* broþ*er* Waleys D. [12] *om.* DO. [13—13] þus were D.
[14] tak and done to deth D. take & done to deth O.
[15—15] fledde fram D. [16] in-to O. [17] *om.* D. [18] among O.
[19] h *sic* D. [20] forto O. [21] abyde O.
[22] socoure al D. socour al O. [23—23] be fonden D. be fou*n*de O
[24] þrouȝ-out' D. þurgh-owt O. [25] oppon D. vpon O.
[26] Nichol D. Nichole O. [27] fay O.

[1]of Carnaryuan, Kyng' of' Engeland', his sone, as raþe as þai myght; ¶ and þat þai shulde nought suffre Piers of Gauastoñ come aȝeyn into Engeland forto make his sone vse ryaute. And þai
4 *gr*antede hi*m* wiþ god wille; and þe Kyng toke his sac*ra*ment*ȝ* of holy cherche, as a gode Cristen ma*n* shulde, and deide in Verray repentaunce. ¶ & when he hade bene[2] Kyng' lv ȝer', he deide, & was buried at Westm*inster* wiþ miche solempnite: oppoñ whos
8 soule, God' haue mercy!

Of Merlyn*us* [3]p*ro*phecies, þat were[3] declarede of Kyng' Edward, þat was Kyng'[4] Henries sone. Cap*itulo* Centesimo xx iiij vj^to^.

A
12 Nd of þis Kyng' Edward,[5] p*ro*pheciede Merlyn, and callede him a d*ra*goñ, þe secunde kyng' of þe vj laste kynges þat shulde bene[6] forto regne in Engeland; and saide þat 'he shulde [7]ben mellede[7] wiþ mercy & also wiþ sternesse, þat shulde kepe Engeland' fram[8] colde and fram[8] hete; and þat he shulde oppen
16 his mouþe toward Walys, and þ*a*t he shulde sette his on[9] foot in Wyk', and þat he shulde closen[10] wiþ Wallis, þat shulde do[11] miche harme to his seed'; and he saide soþ, for þe gode Kyng Edward was medled[12] wiþ m*er*cy & with fersnesse; wiþ mercy aȝeyns his
20 enemys of Walis, & aft*er* of Scotland'; wiþ fersenesse, when he put ha*m* to the[13] deth for her' falsenesse & t*ra*iteri, as þai had diserued hit[4]; And wel kepte he Engel*and* fram[14] colde and fram[14] hete, siþ he kepte hit fra*m* alle man*er* enemys þat ronne oppoñ
24 hi*m* to done him eny [15]harme or[15] wronge. ¶ And wel openede he his mouþ toward Walys, and made hit [16]quake þrouȝ þe hido*ur* of his mouthe, When he conquerede hit þrouȝ dent of suerd; for þe Prynce Lewelyn, and[17] [18]his broþ*er*[18] Dauid'[13] Rys and Morgan,
28 wer' put vnto[19] deþ for her' falsenesse and her' folie. ¶ And he sette his one[9] foot in Wik', and conquered Berwik'; at þe whiche conquest was[20] slayn xxv M^t^ and vij C̄, out-take ha*m* þat wer' brent in þe Rede Halle; and þe wallis þat he lete make shulde[21]
32 ben[6] noious [22]to his[22] seede, as men shal hure after' in þe lif[23] of S*ir*e Edward[24] his sone.

[1] *leaf* 115, *back*. [2] be O. [3—3] p*ro*phecye O. [4] *om.* O.
[5] *om.* D. [6] be DO. [7—7] be medlede D. be melled O. [8] fro DO.
[9] o O. [10] close D. [11] doñ DO. [12] melled O. [13] *om.* DO.
[14] fro O. [15—15] *om.* DO. harme o R. [16] *leaf* 116.
[17] & Dauid DO. [18—18] *MS. has* his broþ*er* his broþ*er*.
[19] vnto the D. vnto þ^e^ O. [20] were DO. [21] shal O.
[22—22] vnto þ^e^ O. [23] *MS.* liþ.
[24] Edward of Caþiarifan D. Edward' of Carnerifan O.

¶ And ȝitte saide Merlyn, þat 'he shulde make Ryu*er* rynne in[1] bloode and wiþ brayn': and þat semede wel in his werres, þ*er*e þat he hade þe maistry. ¶ And ȝitte saide Merlyn: þat 'þ*er*e shulde come a peple out of þe northwest, duryng' þe regne of 4 þe forsaide d*ra*gouñ, þat [2]shulde bene[2] lad be an euel[3] grehounde, þat shulde[4] þe d*ra*gouñ croune Kyng', þat aftirward shulde[4] flee ouer' þe see [5]wiþout comyng aȝeyn,[5] for drede of þe d*ra*gouñ[6]': and þat was p*r*ouede by Sir' Iohñ Baloil, þat Kyng Edward made 8 forto[7] bene[8] Kyng of Scotland, þat falsely[9] aroos aȝeynnes him; and aft*er*, he fledde to his owen landes in[10] F*ra*unce, and neu*er* come aȝeyne into Scotland for drede of King Edward. ¶ And ȝitte said M*er*lyn, 'þat þe peple þat shulde lede þe forsaide 12 grewhonde shulde bene[11] faderles vnto[12] a certein tyme': & he saide soth, ffor þe peple of Scotland gretliche wer' disessede sith þat sir' Iohñ Baloil, her' Kyng', fley fro[13] Scotland'.

¶ And ȝitte saide Merlyñ, 'þat þe sone shulde bicome in his 16 tyme as rede as [14]eny blode, in tokening' of[15] grete mortalite of deþ of peple': and þat was[16] wel knowen when þe Scottes was[17] slayne. ¶ And siþ saide M*er*lyn, 'þat þilk d*ra*gouñ shulde norisshe a fox þat shulde meve[18] werr' aȝeynes him, [19]þat [20]in his tyme shulde 20 nouȝt bene[20] endede': and þat semede wel by Robert þe Brus, þat Kyng' Edward norisshe[21] in his chambre, þat siþennes[22] stale away, and mevede grete werr' aȝeynes him[19]; whiche wer' was nouȝt endede in his tyme. ¶ And aft*er*ward', Merlyn tolde þat 'þis 24 d*ra*gouñ shulde [23]ben holde[23] þe best body of al þe world': and he saide soþ, ffor þe gode Kyng Edward was þe worthiest knyght of al þe worlde in his tyme.

¶ And ȝit saide M*er*lyn þat 'þe d*ra*gouñ shulde dye in þe 28 marche of anoþ*er* land', and þat his londe shulde be longe [24]wiþouten a[24] gode keper', and þat men shulde wepe for his deth, fram þe yle of Sheepe vnto þe Ile of Marcylle, wher'[25] (allas!) shal[26] be[27] her' co*m*mune songe amonge peple faderles, in þe lande wastede': and 32

[1] w*ith* O. [2—2] shal be D. schuld' be O. [3] ylle O. [4] shal D.
[5—5] *om.* DO.
[6] dragouñ with-oute comyng aȝeyne D. dragon) w*ith*-oute comyng aȝen O.
[7] to D. [8] be O. [9] falseliche D. [10] of D. [11] be D.
[12] vntil O. [13] fram ham oute of D. [14] *leaf* 116, *back.* [15] of þe O.
[16] *om.* O. [17] were DO. [18] meve grete D. meue gret O.
[19—19] *om.* D. [20—20] schuld' not in his tyme be O. [21] norisshed O.
[22] sethen O. [23—23] be D. be holde O.
[24—24] without eny D. w*ith*oute eny O. [25] wherfore DO.
[26] shulde D. schuld' O. [27] ben O.

þat [1]*pro*phecie was know oueral ful wel[1]; ffor þe goode Kyng Edward deide at Burgh̃ op Sandes, þat is oppoñ[2] þe marche of Scotl*and*; wherfore þe Englisshe-men gretlich[3] were descomfitede[4]
4 & gou*er*nede in Northumberlond̃, ffor enchesouñ þat Kyng Edwardes sone sette by þe Scottes non[5] force, for þe[6] ryaute of Piers of Gauastoñ; wherfore (allas!) was þe songe þrouȝ-oute[7] Engeland̃ for defaute of a gode warde; fra*m* þe Ile of Sheepey
8 vnto þe yle of Marcile, þe peple made miche[8] sorw for gode[8] Kyng Edwardes deth; ffor þai wende[9] þat[10] gode[11] Kyng̃ Edward shulde haue goñ into[12] þe Holy Land̃; [13]for þat was holliche[14] his p*ur*pos: oppoñ whos soule, God of his[8] blisse haue mercy[15]!

12 **Of Kyng Edward̃, þat was Kyng Edwardes sone. Capitulo Cent*esimo* Octog*esimo* Septi*mo*.**

ANd after̃ þis Kyng[8] Edward, regnede Edward his sone, þat was born in Carnaryvan, and̃[16] went into F*ra*unce, [17]and
16 spousede IsabeH, þe Kyng*us* douȝt*er* of F*ra*unce,[17] þe xxv day of Ianuer̃ at þe cherche of our̃ Lady of[18] Boloigñ, in þe ȝer̃ of our̃ Lorde M̊ CCC vij. ¶ & þe xx day of Februer̃,[19] þe nexte ȝer̃ þat come after̃, he was *c*ronede solempliche[20] at Westm*inster* of þe
20 Erchebisshop*e* Robert of Wynchelse,[21] of Kant*er*bery; and þ*er*e was so g*r*ete prees of peple þat Sir̃ Iohñ Bakwelle was dede and mordrede. ¶ And anone as þe gode Kyng̃ Edward was dede, Sir̃ Edward̃ his sone, Kyng̃ of Engeland̃, sent aft*er* Piers of Gauastoñ
24 into Gascoigne; and so miche louede him þat he callede him his 'bro*per*'; and anone after̃ he ȝaf him þe lordeshipp of Wallyng-ford̃; and hit was nouȝt longe after̃ þat he ne ȝaf him þe Erldome of Cornwaile, aȝeynes alle þe lordes [22]wille of þe reaume.[22] ¶ And
28 þo brought he Sir̃ Walt*er* of Langetoñ, Bisshop of Chestre, into prisouñ, into the Toure of Londoñ, with̃ ij knafes allone him to[23] s*er*ue, for enchesouñ þat[24] þe Kyng̃ was wroþ with him, for cause þat Sir̃ Wa[l]t*er* made pleint[25] vppoñ him to his fader̃; wherfore
32 he was put into[26] p*r*isouñ in þe tyme of trailbastoñ.

[1–1] *pro*phecyed Merlyn which was wel knowe ou*er*al O. [2] in D.
[3] gretly O. [4] discomfortede D. dyscomfited̃ dyscomforted *sic* O.
[5] no O. [6] *om.* D. [7] þrouȝ-out al D. þurgh-out al O. [8] *om.* O.
[9] went O. [10] the D. þat þe O. [11] *MS.* gode Gode. [12] to D.
[13] *leaf* 117. [14] holy O. [15] m*er*cy Amen O.
[16] and þis Edward DO. [17–17] *om.* O. [18] at O.
[19] ffeu*er*er DO. [20] sole*m*pnyly O. [21] Wynchestre O.
[22–22] willes of Engeland̃ D. [23] forto DO. [24] *om.* DO.
[25] co*m*pleynt DO. [26] in D.

¶ And þis[1] Piers of Gauastoñ made so grete maistries, þat he went into þe Kyng*us* *tre*sorie in þe Abbay of Westm*inster*, and toke[2] þe table of golde, [3]wiþ þe tresteles of þe same, and meny o*þer*e riche gewell*es* þat some tyme wer' þe noble[4] Kyng Arthures, 4 and toke ham to a marchant þat me clepede[5] Aymery of Friscombande, for he shulde bere ha*m* ouer' þe see into Gascoigne: and þai come neuer' aȝeyne aft*er*; wherfore hit was[6] g*r*ete losse vnto[7] þis land. 8

¶ And when þis Piers was so rychely auauncede, he bicome so proude and so stout, wherof alle þe grete lordes of þe reaume had him in despite for his grete beryng'. Wherfore[8] Sir' Henry þe[9] Lacy, Erl of Lyncoln,[10] and Sir' Guy Erl of Warr*wyk* (þe whiche 12 gode lordes þe gode Kyng' Edward chargede, þat Piers of Gauastoñ shulde nouȝt come into Engeland forto brynge his sone into ryot), ¶ And alle þe lordes of Engel*and*, assemblede ham[9] at a c*er*teyn day at þe[11] Frere Prichoures of[12] Londoñ, and speken[13] of þe[14] dis- 16 hono*ur* þat þe Kyng dede to[15] his reaume and to his c*r*one. and so þai assemblede[16] alle, boþe Erles, baroñs[17] and co*m*munes, þat þe forsaide Piers of Gauastoñ shulde ben[18] exilede out[19] of Engel*and*. And so hit was done; for he forsuore Engel*and*, and went into 20 Irland; and þ*er*e þe Kyng made him chiefteyn and Gou*er*nour' of þe lande [20]by his co*m*missiouñ; and þ*er*e þis Piers was chefteyn of al þe land,[20] and dede þ*er*e al þat him liked, and had þ*er*e al[9] what he wolde. ¶ And[21] þat tyme were þe templeres exilede þrouȝ al 24 c*r*istendome,[22] ffor enchesouñ þat men put oppoñ ham þat þai shulde done[23] [24]þing þ*at* was[24] aȝeynes þe faiþ[25] and gode bileue. ¶ Kyng' Edward louede Piers of Gauastoñ so miche [26]þat he might nouȝt forlete his company; and so miche þe Kyng ȝaf and bihight 28 to þe peple of Engeland, þat þe exiling of þe forsaide Piers shulde bene[27] reuokede at Staunford, þrouȝ ha*m* þat [28]him hade[28] exilede. ¶ Wherfore Piers of Gauastoñ come aȝeyne into Engeland; and when he was comen[29] aȝeyn into þis lande, he despisede þe grettest 32 lordes of þis lande, and callede Sir' Robert'[30] Clare Erl of Gloucestre,

[1] the forsaide D. þe forsayd' O. [2] nome DO. [3] *leaf* 117, *back*.
[4] gode D. [5] Called O. [6] was a D.
[7] in-to O. [8] wherof D. [9] *om.* DO. [10] Nichole DO.
[11] *om.* O. [12] at O. [13] spek' D.
[14] *MS.* þe þe. [15] vnto O. [16] assentede DO.
[17] *om.* D. & baroñs O. [18] be O. [19] *om.* D. [20—20] *om.* O.
[21] And in O. [22] cristiente DO. [23] do O.
[24—24] þinges D. þing' O. [25] fey O. [26] *leaf* 118. [27] be D.
[28—28] had hym O. [29] come O. [30] Robert of DO.

'Horessone,' and þe Erl of Lyncolñ,[1] Sir' Henry þe[2] Lacy, 'Broste bely,' and Sir' Guy Erl of Warr*wyk*, 'blanke[3] hounde of Arderne.' And also he callede þe noble Erl and gentil, Thomas of Lancastre,
4 'Cherl,' and meny [4] oth*er*e[5] shames and scorn[4] [6]ha*m* saide, & by meny oþ*er*e[6] grete lordes of Engeland', wherfore þai were towardes[7] him ful ang*r*i and sore annoiede.

¶ And[8] in þe[9] same tyme deide þe Erl of Lyncoln[10]; but he
8 charged', or he was dede, Thomas of Lancastre, erl, þat was his sone-in-lawe, þat he shulde mayntene his quereH aȝeyns þe same Piers of Gauastoñ, oppoñ his benisoñ. ¶ And so hit was ordeynede, þrouȝ[11] helpe of þe Erle of Lancastr' and of þe Erl of Warr*wyk*,
12 þat þe forsaide[12] Piers was biheuedede[13] at Gauersiche bisides Warwik', þe xix day of[14] Iun',[15] in þe ȝere of g*rac*e[16] M^t CCC &[17] xij; wherfore þe Kyng was sore annoiede, and p*ra*yede God þat he might[18] see þat day to bene avengede of[19] þe deþ of þe forsaide
16 Piers. ¶ And so hit bifelle aftirward, as ȝe shul hure,—allas þe tyme!—ffor þe forsaide Erl of Lancastre & meny oþ*ere*[20] [21]grete barouñ,[22] wer' put to pitouse deþ, and martrede, for enchesouñ of þe forsaide quereH.

20 ¶ The Kyng was þo at Londoñ, and helde a p*ar*lement, and ordeynede þe lawes of Sir' Symond' Mountford'; wherfor the Erl of Lancastre, and alle þe Erles & aH þe clergye of Engeland', maden an oth, þrouȝ conseile of Robert of Wynchelse, forto maintene þe
24 ordenaunces[23] for eu*er*more.

How Robert þe Brus come aȝeyne into Scotland', and Gaderede a grete power' of men forto werr' oppoñ Kyng Edward'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Ottog*esimo* viij°.

28 ANd when Sir' Robert þe Brus, þat made him Kyng of Scotland', þat was fledde into Norm*a*ndy[24] for drede of deþ of þe[2] goode Kyng Edward, and herd of þe debate þat was in Enge-

[1] Nichol D. Nichole O. [2] *om.* D. [3] blac D. Blake O.
[4—4] other scornes and shame D. oþ*er* scornes & schame O.
[5] *MS.* ou*er*e. [6—6] & seyde by oþ*er* meny O. [7] toward O.
[8] *MS. has in the margin, in same hand:* Obijt Henric*us* Comes Lincoln.
[9] that D. *om.* O. [10] Nichole DO. [11] þurgh þe O.
[12] forseid s*ir* O. [13] beheded' O.
[14] *MS. has* of Ian*uer*, *with* Ian*uer underlined for omission.*
[15] Ianu*er* D. [16] g*rac*e a O. [17] *om.* DO.
[18] most D. muste O. [19] vpon O. [20] Another O.
[21] *leaf* 118, *back.* [22] barons D.
[23] ordenance D. [24] Norway D. Norwey O.

landꝑ bituene þe Kyng and his lordes, he ordeynede an hoste, and come into Engelondꝑ, into Northumberlandꝑ, and clenly destroiede þe contreye. ¶ And when Kyng Edward herde þis tidynges,[1] he [2]lete assemble[2] his host, and mette þe Scottis at Streuelyn,[3] in þe day of 4 þe[4] Natiuite of Seint Iohñ þe Baptiste, in þe vij[4] ȝerꝑ of his regne,[5] and in þe ȝere of ourꝑ Lorde [6]Ihesu Cristꝑ,[6] Mꝑ CCC &[7] xiiij. Allas þe sorw and losse þat *þere* was done! for *þere* was slayn, þe noble Erl Gilbert of Clare, S*ire* Rob*er*t of Cliffordꝑ, a[7] barouñ, and meny 8 o*þere*; & of o*þere* peple þat no man couþ nombre; and *þere* Kyng Edward was scomfitede. And Sirꝑ Edmundꝑ of Maule, þe[8] kynges stiward, for drede went and drenchede him-self[9] in a fresshe ryuerꝑ þat is callede Bannokesbourñ; *þere*fore[10] [11]þe Scottes 12 saide, in rep*ro*fe and despite of Kyngꝑ Edward, foralsemiche[12] as he louede forto go[13] by wat*er*e, and also for he was descomfitede at Bannokesbour[n]e, *þer*fore maidenes made a songe *þero*fꝑ, [14]in þat contre, of Kyng Edward of Engelandꝑ[14] and in þis manerꝑ þai 16 songe[15]:—

¶ **Maydenes of Engełande, sare may ȝe morne,**
For tynt ȝe haue [lost][16] ȝoure lemmans at Bannokesbornñ
wiþ hevalogh. 20

¶ **What wende þe Kyngꝑ of Engel*and* haue ygete[17] Scotlande**
wiþ Rombyloghñ.

When Kyng Edwardꝑ was descomfitede, he was wonderꝑ sory, and faste[18] fledde wiþ his folc[4] þat was lafte alifꝑ,[19] and went 24 to Berwikꝑ, and *þere* helde him. ¶ And aft*er*, he toke hostages, þat is to seyne,[20] vij childerne, of þe rychestꝑ of þe touñ; and þe Kyng went to Londoñ, and toke[21] conseile of þinges *þat* were nedeful vnto þe reaume of Engelandꝑ. 28

¶ And in þe same tyme hit bifelle þat *þere* was in Engelandꝑ a rybaude þat men[22] callede Iohñ Tann*er*; and he went and saide þat he was þe goode Kyngꝑ Edwardus sone, and lete him calle 'Edward of Carnaruañ'; and *þer*fore he was take[23] at Oxenfordꝑ, 32 and *þere*[24] chalangede þe frere Carmes chirche þat Kyng Edward hade ȝeue[25] ham, þe whiche cherch[26] some tyme was[4] þe Kyng*us*

[1] tydynge O. [2—2] assemblede D. [3] Estreuelyn D. Estryuelyn O.
[4] *om.* O. [5] regne vij O. [6—6] *om.* O. [7] *om.* DO.
[8] þe DO. for þe R. [9] him D. hym O. [10] wherfore DO.
[11] *leaf* 119. [12] forasmyche O. [13] gone D. *om.* O. [14—14] *om.* D.
[15] saiden D. [16] *om.* D. [17] gete DO.
[18] *MS.* faste faste, *with second* faste *underlined for omission.*
[19] on lifꝑ D. [20] weten D. wete O. [21] to *sic* D. nome O.
[22] me DO. [23] taken DO. [24] *þere* he DO. [25] youe O.
[26] Cherche was O.

Halle. ¶ And afterwarde was þis Iohñ ladde to Northamptoñ, and[1] draw, and þ*ere*[2] hongede for his falsenesse. and er' þat he was dede, he confessede,[3] and saide bifore al þe folc, þat 'þe deuel
4 bihighte him þat he shulde be Kyng' of Engel*and*'; and þat 'he hade seruede þe deuel iij ȝere.'

How þe touñ of Berwik was taken[4] þrouȝ t*re*soñ; & how ij Cardynales wer' robbet in Engel*and*. Cap*itul*o C*entesim*o xx iiij ix°.

8 [5]AND in myd Le*n*toñ[6] Sonday in þe ȝere of our Lord Ihesu Crist M[t] CCC xvj, Berwik was loste, þrouȝ false t*re*souñ of on, Piers of Spaldyng'; þe whiche Piers, þe Kyng' had put þ*ere*
12 forto kepe þe[7] same toune wiþ[8] meny burgeys of þe[9] touñ. ¶ Wherfore þe childerne þat were put in hostages[10] þrouȝ þe burgeys of Berwik,[11] folwede þe Kyng*us* Marchalcie meny daye,[12] fetrede in st*r*onge yrenes.

16 ¶ And after' þat tyme þ*ere* come ij Cardinales into Engeland', as þe Pope hade ham sende forto mak pees bituene Scotland' and Engel*and*. and as þai went toward Duresme forto haue sacrede maistre Lowys of Beaumond', Bisshop of Duresme; and as þai went,
20 þai were taken[4] and robbit oppoñ þe more of Wigelesdoñ[13]; of whiche robrye, Sir' Gilbert of Mideltoñ was atteint, and take,[14] and hongede & drawe[15] at London, and his [16]heuede smyten[16] of', and his bowales taken out of his body, and brent, & his body q*uar*-
24 tarede, and his heuede[17] [18]smyten of', and[18] sette oppoñ a spere, and sette oppoñ Newegate; and þe iiij q*uarter*s sent to iiij citees of Engeland.

¶ And þat same tyme bifelle meny meschyues in Engeland'; for
28 þe pore[2] peple deide in Engeland for hunge*r*; and so miche and[19] so faste folc deiden, [20]þat vnneþes[20] men m[i]ght ha*m* bury; for a q*uarter* of[2] whete was worþe xls., and ij ȝere and an halfe a q*uarter* of[21] whete[19] was worþe [22]ij m*ar*ȝ[22]; and ofte-tymes þe pore

[1] and þ*ere* was D. [2] *om.* D. [3] confessede him D. [4] take O.
[5] *leaf* 119, *back.* [6] lentenes D. lent O. [7] þ*at* O.
[8] *MS. has* wiþ me- *with* me- *underlined for omission.* [9] þe same D.
[10] *MS.* hostages þrouȝ þrouȝ, *with first* þrouȝ *underlined for omission;* hostage DO.
[11] Berwyk' and þe burgeys of Berwik D. Berwyk' and þ^e Burgeys of Berwyk' O.
[12] dayes DO. [13] Wyngelestoñ D. Wyngeledonne O. [14] taken DO.
[15] drawen DO. [16—16] heed smyte O. [17] heed O. [18—18] *om.* DO.
[19] *om.* O. [20—20] þan vnneþe O. [21] *om.* DO.
[22—22] xxvj s. viij d. ij m*ar*c O.

peple stale childern and ete ham, and ete also alle[1] þe houndes þat þai might take, and ek Horse & cattes; and aft*er*, þ*er*e felle a grete [2]pestilence amonges[3] bestes in diu*er*se contrees of Engel*and* duryng Kyng Edwardes lif. 4

How þe Scottes robbede Northumberland. Capit*ulo* Cent*esimo* Nonogesimo.

AND in þe same tyme [4]come þe[4] Scottes aȝeyne into Engeland,[5] and destroiede Northumberland,[6] and brent þat lande, & 8 robbet hit,[6] and quellede me*n* and wymmen, & childern þat laye[7] in cradell, and brent also holy cherche, and destroiede C*r*isten-dome, and [8]toke &[8] bare awaye Englisshe-me*n*nes godes, as þai hade bene[9] Sarasins or paynemes. and of þe wickednesse þat þai 12 deden,[10] all þe worlde spake þ*er*of, þrouȝ al Cristendome.

How þe Scottes wolde nouȝt amende her t*re*spasse; and þ*er*fore Scotland was ent*er*ditede. ¶ Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* Nonogesi*mo* p*r*imo. 16

AND when[11] Pope[12] Iohn, þe xxij aft*er* seynt Petre, herde of þe grete sorwe and meschief þat þe Scottes wrought, he was wonder sory þat Cristendome was so destroiede þrouȝ þe Scottes, and nameliche[13] for þai destroiede so holy cherche; Wherfore þe 20 Pope[14] sent a gen*er*al sentence, vnder his bullis of leade, vnto þe Erchebisshop*e* of Kaunt*er*bery, and to þe Erchebisshop*e* of ȝork, þat 'if Robert þe Brus of Scotland wolde nouȝt be iustifiede, and make amendes vnto[15] kyng [16]Edward of Engel*and*,[16] his[17] lorde, & 24 make amendes of his losse, and his harmes þat þai hade done in Engeland, and also to restore þe godes þat þai hade[18] [19]take out of[19] holy cherch, þat þe sentence shulde be p*r*onou*n*cede þrouȝ all Engel*and*. ¶ And when þe Scottes herde þis, þai wolde nouȝt 28 [20][21]cesse of[21] her malice for þe Popes[22] co*m*maundement; Wherfor

[1] *om.* O. [2] *leaf* 120. [3] among O. [4–4] comen D.
[5] Northumberland D. [6] *om.* D. [7] leyne D. leyn O.
[8–8] *om.* D. [9] be O. [10] dede DO. [11] when the D.
[12] pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written over in a different hand in* O.
[13] namely O.
[14] pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written over in a different hand in* O.
[15] vnto the D. vnto þe O. [16–16] of Engelond Edward O.
[17] her DO. [18] *MS.* hade m, *with* m *underlined for omission.*
[19–19] taken in D. take of O. [20] *leaf* 120, *back.*
[21–21] leue D. lette O.
[22] popes *struck out, and* bisshopis *written over in a different hand in* O

Robert þe[1] Brus, Iamys Douglas, and Thomas Randolf Erl of Morref, and alle þo þat wiþ ham communede, or ham halp in worde or in[2] dede, were accursed [3]þrouȝ euery cherche þrouȝ[3] Engeland, 4 euery [day] at masse iij tymes; and no masse shulde be songen[4] in holy cherche þrouȝ-out[5] al Scotland, but if þe Scottis wolde make restitucioñ of þe harmes þat þai hade made vnto[6] holy cherche. Wherfore meny a gode preste and holy man,[7] þerfore were slayn 8 þrouȝ al[8] þe reme of Scotland, for enchesouñ þat þai wolde singe no masse aȝeynes þe Popes[9] commaundement and aȝeynes his wille, and to done and fulfille þe tirauntȝ[10] wille.

How Sir Hughe, þe Spenseres sone, was[2] made þe Kyngus 12 Chamberlein; and of þe bataile of Mitoñ. Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo secundo.

And hit was nouȝt longe afterward, þat þe Kyng ne ordeynede a parlement at ȝork; and þere was Sir Hugh, þe Spenereȝ[11] 16 sone, made Chamberleiñ. And in þe mene-tyme, while þe werr last, the Kyng went aȝeyne into Scotland, þat hit was wonder forto wete, and bisegede þe touñ of Berwik; but þe Scottes went ouer þe water of Solewath, þat was iij mile fram þe Kyngus host, 20 and priuely[12] þai stele awaye by nyght, and comen[13] into Engeland, and robbede and destroiede[14] al þat þai myght, and sparede no maner þing[1] til þat þai comen to[15] ȝork. And when þe Englisshemen þat were lafte at [16]home Wist[17] of þis þing, alle þo þat might 24 trauaile—as wel monkes and[18] prestes and ffreres & Chanouns and seculers,—and come and mette wiþ þe Scottes at Mitoñ op[19] Swale, þe xij day of Ottobre. Allas! what sorwe for þe Englisshe hosbonde-men þat couþe noþing in werr, þere were quellede and 28 drenchede[20] in [21]þe Ryuer of Swale.[21] And her chyueteynes, Sir William of Meltoñ, Erchebisshop of ȝork, & þe Abbot of Selby with her stedes, [22]fledde, & come vnto[22] ȝork. And þat was her owen folie þat þai had þat meschaunce, for þai passede þe water of

[1] *om.* D. [2] *om.* O.
[3—3] in euery cherche of D. in euery Cherche þurgh O.
[4] songe O. [5] þrouȝ D. [6] to D. þurgh O. [7] men DO.
[8] *om.* DO.
[9] popes *struck out, and* bisshoppis *written over in a different hand in* O.
[10] Traytours O. [11] Spencer O. [12] priuelich D. [13] come O.
[14] destruede D. [15] vnto O. [16] *leaf* 121. [17] herde D. herd O.
[18] as O. [19] oppoñ D. [20] dreynt O.
[21—21] an arme of the see D. an arme of þe see O.
[22—22] fledden and comen to D. fled & comen vnto O.

Swale; and þe Sccottes sette in[1] fire iij stackes of hey; and þe smoke þe*r*of was so huge þat[2] Englisshe-me*n* myght nought see þe Scottes. ¶ And when þe Englisshe-men were gon ou*er* þe wat*er*, þo come[3] þe Scottes wiþ her wenge,[4] in man*er* of a shelde, and come 4 toward þe Englisshe-men in a rawe; and þe Englisshe-men fledde, for vnneþes[5] þai hade eny men[6] of Armes; for þe Kyng hade ham alle[7] almost loste atte þe[7] sege of Berwik; and þe Scottes[8] hobilers went bituix[9] þe brigge & þe Englisshe-men. ¶ And when 8 þe grete host [10]had þaim[10] mette, þe Englisshe-men fledde bituene þe hobilers and þe grete host; and þe Englisshe-men almost alle[7] were þe*r*e slayn.[11] And [12]he þat might wende ou*er* þe wat*er* was sauede; but meny were drenchede,[12] Allas, for [13]sorwe! for[13] þe*r*e was[14] 12 slayne meny me*n* of Religiouñ, and seculers, and ek p*r*estes and clerkes; and wiþ miche sorw the Erchebisshop scapede; and þe*r*fore þe Scottes callede hit[15] 'the White Bataile.'

How Kyng Edward dede alle maner [16]þing as [17]Sire Hugh þe 16 Spenser[17] Wolde. Ca*pitulo* Cent*esimo* Nonog*esimo* t*er*cio.

AND when Kyng Edward herde þis tydynges,[18] he remevede his sege fra*m* Berwik, & come ayeyne into Engeland. But Sir Hugh þe Spenser, þe sone, þat was þe Kynges chaumberlein, kepte 20 so þe Kyng*us* chaumbre, þat no man might[19] speke wiþ þe Kyng, but if[20] he made wiþ him a frett forto done his nede, & þat ouer mesure. And þis Hugh bar him so stoute, þat alle men hade of him scorn and despite; and þe kyng him-self wolde nouȝt be[21] 24 gou*er*nede[22] by no maner man, but oneliche[23] by his fader and by him. ¶ And yf eny knyght of Engel*and* hade wodes, maneres, or lande, þat þai wolde couette, anone þe Kyng moste ȝeue it ham, or elles[24] þe man þat owede[25] hit [26]shulde falsely[26] be enditede of 28 fforfet[27] or of ffelonye; and prouȝ soche doynges[28] þai disheritede meny a grete[29] bachiler, and so meny landes[30] geten, þat hit was miche Wonder.

[1] on D. a O. [2] þat þe D. [3] Comen O. [4] wynges D.
[5] vnneþe O. [6] ma*n* O. [7] *om.* O. [8] Scottyssh O.
[9] bituene D. betwen O. [10–10] ham D. hem O.
[11] quellede D. y-quelled O. [12–12] dreynt O. [13–13] *om.* DO.
[14] were O. [15] that bataile D. þat bataill O. [16] *leaf* 121, *back.*
[17–17] þe Spencers O. [18] tydyng O. [19] must O. [20] *om.* DO.
[21] ben O. [22] gouerned ne reulede D. gou*er*ned ne rewled O.
[23] onely D. only O. [24] ell O. [25] ouȝt D. ought O.
[26–26] falsely shulde D. [27] þe forest O. [28] doyng D. doynge O.
[29] gode D. good O. [30] landes þai D.

¶ And when þe lordes of Engeland saw þe[1] couetise and þe falsenesse of Sir Hugh þe Spenser, his[2] fader, and of Sir Hugh his[3] sone, þai comen[4] to þe gentil Erl of Lancastre, and axede
4 [5]him of[5] conseile of þe disese þat was in the reame þrouȝ Sir Hugh þe[6] Spenser and his sone. And in haste, by one assent, þai made a priue assemble at Shirborn in Elmede; and alle þa[i] maden[7] *þere* an oth forto breke and destourble þe doyng bituene þe Kyng and
8 Sir Hugh þe Spenser and his sone, oppoñ her power. And þai went into þe Marche of Walys, & destroiede þe Lande[8] of þe forsaide Sir Hughes.

[9]How sir Hughe þe Spenser and his fader Were exilede out
12 **of Engeland. Ca*pitul*o Cent*esimo* Nonogesimo iiij^to^.**

When Kyng Edward saw þe grete harme and destruciouñ þat þe barons of Engeland deden on[10] Sir Hugh þe[6] Spensers Landes, and to his sones, in eu*er*y place þat þai comen oppoñ. And
16 þe Kyng þo, þrouȝ his Conseile, exilede Sir Iohñ Mounbray, S*ir*e Rog*er*[11] of Clifford, and Sir Gosselyn Dauiħ, and meny o*þer* lordes þat wer to ham[12] consent.[13] Wherfore þe barons dede þo[14] more harme þan þai dede bifore. ¶ And when þe Kyng saw þat[6] þe
20 barons wolde nouȝt cesse of her cruelte, þe Kyng was sore adrade leste þai wolde[15] destroy him and his reame for his mayntenance, but yf[6] þat he assentede to ham; and so he sent for ham [16]by lettreȝ,[16] þat þai shulde come to Londoñ to his p*ar*lement at a
24 certeyne day, as in his let*t*res[17] were[18] conteynede.

¶ And þai come wiþ iij batailes wel armed[19] at alle poyntȝ; & eu*er*y bataile hade cote-armur[20] of grene cloþe[21]; and *þer*of þe right quart*er* was ȝalwe, wiþ white bendes; Wherfore þat p*ar*lement was
28 callede 'þe p*ar*lment wiþ[22] þe whit bende.[23]' ¶ And in þat company was Sir Humfray de Bohoñ, Erl of Herford,[24] and Sir Rog*er* of Clifford, S*ir*e Iohñ Mounbray, S*ir*e Gosselyn Dauiħ, S*ir*e Rog*er* Mortymer, Vncle of Sir Rog*er* Mortymer of Wigemore, S*ir*e Henry
32 of Tyeys,[25] S*ir*e Iohñ Giffard, and Sir Bartholomew[26] Badelesmere þat was þe Kynges Stiward, þat þe Kyng hade sent to Shirborn

[1] þe grete D. þe gret O. [2] þe D. [3] þe DO. [4] come DO.
[5–5] of hym O. [6] *om.* D. [7] made DO. [8] Laundes D.
[9] *leaf* 122. [10] to DO. [11] Rob*er*t D. [12] hym O.
[13] co*n*sentede D. [14] the D. *om.* O. [15] shulde D. [16–16] *om.* D.
[17] lettre D. [18] was O. [19] y-armed O.
[20] cotarmures D. cote-armures O. [21] choþe *sic* D. [22] of O.
[23] bendes D. [24] Hereford D. [25] Trays DO.
[26] Bartholomew of O.

in Elmede, to þe [1]Erl of Lancastre and to alle þat Wiþ him Were, forto trete of accorde þat him aliede to þe barons, and come wiþ þe[2] company, And Sir Roger Damory and Sir Hugh [3]of Audeley[3] þat hade spousede þe Kynges neces, susters[4] to[5] Sir Gilbert of Clare, 4 Erl of Gloucestre, þat was quellede in Scotland, as aboue[6] is saide. ¶ And þo ij Lordes hadde þe ij partes[7] of þe Erldome of Gloucestre; and Sir Roger[8] þe Spenser, þe sonne, hadde þe [9]þridde part[9] on[10] his Wifes behalue,[11] the þridde[12] suster. And þo ij lordes went to 8 þe barouns wiþ al her power, auȝeynes Sir Hugh, her broþer-in-Law; and so þer come with ham, Sir Roger of Clifford, Sir Iohn Mounbray, Sir Gosselyn Dauiħ, Sir Roger Mortymer of Werk, Sir Roger Mortymer of Wygemore, his nevew, Sir Henry Trays,[13] 12 Sir Iohn Giffard, Sir Bartholomew of Bedelesmere, wiþ alle[14] her company, & meny oþere þat to ham wer consent.

¶ Alle þis[15] grete Lordes comen[16] to Westminster, to þe Kynges parlement; and so þai spoken and dede, þat boþe Sir Hugh þe[17] 16 Spenser, þe fader & [18]þe Soñ, were outlawede of Engeland for euermore. ¶ And Sir Hughe þe fader went to Douer, and made miche sorwe, and felle adouñ[19] by þe see bank, [20]& clipped[20] acros wiþ his Armes, and sore wepyng,[21] saide: "now, farewele[22] Enge- 20 land! & gode Engeland, to[23] Gode y þe bitak!" and þries cussede þe grounde, and wende neuer[24] haue comen[25] aȝein, and[26] Wepyng ful sore, cursede þe tyme þat euer he bigate Sir Hugh his sone, & saide 'for him [27]he hade[27] loste Engeland'; and in presence of 24 ham þat were him [28]aboute, he ȝaf him his curse, and went ouer þe see to his landes. But Sire Hugh þe soñe wolde nouȝt go[29] out of Engeland, but helde him in þe see; and he & his company robbede ij Dormondes bisides Sandewiche, & toke[30] and bar awaye 28 aħ þe gode þat was in ham, þe Value of xl[31] M^t ti.

How þe Kyng Exilede þe[32] Erl Thomas of Lancastre, & alle þat helde wiþ him; and how þe Mortymer come & ȝelde him vnto[33] þe Kyng; & of þe lordes siege. Capitulo Centesimo 32 Nonogesimo Quinto.

[1] *leaf* 122, *back*. [2] *MS.* þe þe; þat DO. [3—3] Daudel D. Daudele D. [4] suster O. [5] and DO. [6] bifore D. byfore O. [7] partyes DO. [8] Hugh DO. [9—9] iij partye O. [10] in DO. [11] half D. hand O. [12] ij O. [13] Trays DO. [14] *MS.* alle aħ. [15] þese O. [16] come O. [17] *om.* DO. [18] & sir Hugh Spencer O. [19] doune oppoñ the grounde D. doun vpon þe grounde O. [20—20] *om.* DO. [21] wepynge & O. [22] fayre DO. [23] to almyȝty D. to almyghty O. [24] neuere to O. [25] come O. [26] and D. & O. *om.* R. [27—27] y haue D. [28] *leaf* 123. [29] goñ DO. [30] nome O. [31] iiij D. [32] *om.* O. [33] to O.

HIt was nought longe afterꝑ, þat þe Kyng ne[1] made Sirꝑ Hugh
þe Spens*er* þe faderꝑ, and Sirꝑ Hugh þe[2] so*n*ne, come aȝein
into Engel*and*, aȝeyns þe lordes wille of þe reaume. ¶ And sone
4 after, þe Kyng, wiþ[3] strong Powerꝑ, come and bisegede þe castel of
Leedes: and in þat castel was þe Lady of Badelesmore, for enchesouñ
þat she wolde nouȝt g*ra*nt þe castel to þe[1] Quene IsabeH, Kyng
Edwardes wifꝑ. ¶ But þe principal cause was, for enchesoñ þat Sirꝑ
8 Bartholomev Badelesmere was aȝeins þe Kyngꝑ, & helde with the
lordes of Engel*and*. And noþeles, þe Kyngꝑ, by helpe and socoure of
men of Londoñ, and also þrouȝ helpe of Southernñ men, þe Kyng gate
þe castel, maugre ha*m* alle þat werꝑ wiþin,[4] and tok wiþ him al þat he
12 might fynde. ¶ And when þe barons of Engeland herd of þis þingꝑ,
[5]Sirꝑ Rog*er* Mortymerꝑ &[5] oþ*er*e meny lordes[6] toke þe toune of
Brugeworth with strengh; Wherfore þe Kyng was wonderꝑ wroþ,
and lete outelawe Thomas[7] of Lancastre & Hounfray de Bohouñ,
16 [8]Erl of Herefordꝑ,[9] and alle[10] þat Were assent[11] to þe same querelH.
¶ And þe Kyng Assemblede an[12] host, & come aȝeynes þe lordes of
Engelandꝑ; wherfor þe Mortymers put ha*m* to þe Kynges mercy &
his g*ra*ce; and anone þai werꝑ sent to þe Toure of Londoñ, and þ*er*e
20 kepte in p*r*isouñ. ¶ And when þe barons herd of þis þingꝑ, þai
come*n* to Pontfretꝑ, þ*er*e þat þe Erl Thomas soiornede, and tolde him
how þe Mortymers[13] had[14] ȝelde ha*m* boþe[15] vnto[16] þe Kyngꝑ, &
put ha*m* in[16] his g*ra*ce.

24 **Of þe sege of Tikhulle. ¶ Ca*pitul*o C*entesim*o xx iiij xvj°.**

WHen Thomas, Erl of Lancastre, herde[17] þis, [18]þai were[18]
wonderꝑ wroþ, & alle þat were of his co*m*pany, and gretly
þai were descomfortede, & ordeinede herꝑ powerꝑ togeder, and
28 bisegede þe casteH of TykhuH. But þo þ*a*t were wiþin, so man-
liche[19] [20]defendede ham,[20] þat þe barons might nouȝt gete þe casteH.
¶ And when þe Kyng herde telle[21] þat his casteH was bisegede, he
suore, by God and by his crowne,[22] þat þe sege shulde be remevede,
32 and assemblede an huge powerꝑ of peple, and went þiderward forto

[1] *om.* O. [2] his D. [3] with a O. [4] *þer*in O.
[5]—[5] *written twice in all three MSS.* [6] lordes nome & O.
[7] Thomas erle DO. [8] *leaf* 123, *back.* [9] Herfordꝑ O.
[10] al þo D. aH þo O. [11] assentant D. assentynge O.
[12] a gret D. an hugh O. [13] Mortymers both D. Mortymers boþe O.
[14] hadden O. [15] *om.* DO. [16] to O. [17] herde of D.
[18]—[18] he was D. [19] manly O. [20]—[20] ham defendede D. [21] *om.* D.
[22] namen D. names O.

rescue þe casteH; and his power encressede fram day to day.
¶ When þe Erle of Lancastr and þe Erl of Hereford,[1] and þe
barons and her company, herde of þis þing, þai assemblede al her
power, and went ham to Burtoñ op Trent, and kepte þe bruge, þat 4
þe Kyng shulde nouȝt come[2] ouer. ¶ But hit bifeH so, þat[3] on þe
x[4] day of Marche, in þe ȝere of grace M[t] CCC xxj[5] þe Kyng and
þe Spensers, Sir Aymer Valaunce, Erl of Penbrok, & Iohñ,[6] Erl of
Arundel, and her power, went ouer þe [7]Watere, and descomfitede 8
þe Erl Thomas & his company; and þai fledde to þe casteH of
Tuttebery; and fro penns þai went to Pountfret. And in þat
Viage deide Sir Roger Dammory, in þe Abbay of Tuttebery.

¶ And in þat same tyme, þe Erl Thomas hade a traitour with 12
him þat men[8] callede Robert of Holonde, a Knyght þat þe Erl
hade brouȝt vp of nouȝt, and hade norisshede him in his botelerie,
and had ȝeuen[9] him ij M[t] marȝ[10] [11]of rent[11] by ȝere.[12] And so
miche þe Erl louede him, þat he might doo[13] in þe Erles court 16
what[14] him likede, boþe amonges[15] hye & law; and so queyntely
[16]euer he[16] bare him aȝeynes his lord, þat he truste more oppoñ him
þan oppoñ[17] eny man alyue. ¶ And þe Erl hade ordeynede [18]him
by lettre[18] forto wende into þe Erldome of Lancastr, forto make 20
a rise to helpe him þat[19] viage, þat is to seyn, v[c] men of Armes.
But þe [20]said Holand[20] come nouȝt þere, no maner men[21] forto
warne, ne to make a rise to[22] helpe his lord. ¶ And when Holand[23]
herde telle þat his lord was scomfitede[24] at Burtoñ, as [25]an vntrew 24
man[25] he stale away, and robbede in Rauenesdale his lordes men
þat come[26] fra þe scomfiture, & tok[27] of ham horse and harneys, and
al þat þai hade, & quellede of ham alle þat he myght tak, and þo
come and ȝelde him vnto[28] þe Kyng. ¶ When þe gode Erl Thomas 28
wist þat he was so bitraiede, he was sore abasshede, and saide to
him-self, "O almyghty god!" quod he, "how might Robert
Holonde fynde in his hert me to bitraye, siþens[29] þat y [30]haue
Louede him so miche? O God, [31]wel may now[31] a man see[32] by 32

[1] Herford O. [2] passe DO. [3] *om.* DO. [4] tenþe O.
[5] & xxij O. [6] Iohñ þe O. [7] *leaf* 124. [8] me DO. [9] ȝeue O.
[10] Mark O. [11—11] *om.* D. of land O. [12] ȝere of lande D.
[13] done O. [14] al þat D. al þing þat O. [15] amonge D. among O.
[16—16] þe þif D. þe þef O. [17] he dede D.
[18—18] by his lettre him D. by his lettre O. [19] in his D. in *þat* O.
[20—20] false traitoure D. fals Traytour O. [21] man D. [22] for-to O.
[23] the *traitour* D. þe Traytour O. [24] descomfitede D. discomfited O.
[25—25] a false þef traitoure D. a fals þef a Traytour O. [26] comen D.
[27] nome O. [28] to O. [29] sith D. seth O. [30] *leaf* 124, *back.*
[31—31] now may wel O. [32] y-se D.

him þat no man may desceyue anoþ*er*,[1] raþ*er*e þan he þat he most trust oppoñ. He haþ ful euel ȝeldede[2] me[3] my godenesse, and þe worship þat y to him haue done, and þrouȝ my kyndenesse haue
4 him avauncede, and made him hie fram[4] lowe; & he makeþ me go fram[4] he into[5] lowe; but ȝitte shal he dye in euel deþ."

Of þe Scomfiture of Burbrigge. ¶ Cap*itulo* ¶ Cent*esimo* Nonc-g*esimo* Septi*mo*.

8 THe gode Erl Thomas of Lancastre, Hunfray de Bohoñ, Erl of Herford, and þe barouns þat wiþ ham[6] wer', toke[7] a[8] conseile bituene ha*m* at þe[3] Frere P*r*echoures at Pountfrett'. þo þouȝt Thom*as* vppon þe traito*ur*[9] Rob*er*t Holond', and saide in
12 rep*r*ofe, "Allas! Holonde me haþ bitraiede! Ay is in þe rede of so*m*me euel shrede.[10]" ¶ And by co*m*mune assent þai shulde alle [11]gone to[11] þe castel of Dunstanburghe, the whiche p*er*teynede to þe Erldome of Lancastre, and þat þai shulde abide þ*er*e til[12] þe Kyng
16 hade forȝeue ham his male-talent. but when þe gode Erl Thomas þis herde, he ansuerede in þis maner', and saide: "Lordes," q*uod* he, "if we gone[13] toward þe north, me*n* wil seyn[14] þat we goñ[15] toward þe Scottes; and so we shul be holde t*ra*itoures, for [16]cause
20 of[16] distaunce þat is bituene[17] Kyng Edward and Rob*er*t þe Brus, þat[18] made him Kyng' of Scotland. And þ*er*fore y say, as tochyng myself, þat y wil go[19] no ferþ*er* into þe North þan to myn owen castel of Pountfrett'." ¶ And when Sire Roger' Clifford' herde þis,[20]
24 he aros vp anone in wraþ, [21]and drow his suorde, & swore by Almygty God' [22]and by his holy names,[22] but if þat he wolde go[23] wiþ ham, he shulde be dede, and þat he wolde slee him þ*er*e. ¶ þe noble[24] Erl Thomas of Lancastre was sore adrade, and saide:
28 "faire sires,[25] y wil go wiþ þow[26] whider'-so-euer' ȝe me lede." þo went þai toged*er*es into þe North; and wiþ ha*m* þai hade viȝ^c men of Armes, and come to Burbrig'.

¶ And when S*ir*e Andrew of Herkela—þat was in þe North-
32 contre þrouȝ ordenance of þe Kyng', forto kepe þe cuntre of Scotland'

[1] a man D. [2] ȝelde D. ȝelden O. [3] *om.* O. [4] fro O.
[5] to D. [6] hym O. [7] nomen O.
[8] *MS. has* a castel, *with* castel *underlined for omission; om.* DO.
[9] *tra*ytry of D. Trayterye of O. [10] deth O. [11—11] wende into DO.
[12] til þat O. [13] go DO. [14] say D. [15] go D. [16—16] *om.* D.
[17] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [18] *om.* D. [19] gone D.
[20] þis word' D. [21] *leaf* 125. [22—22] *om.* D. [23] gon O.
[24] noble and gentil DO. [25] sir' D. [26] ȝow DO.

—herde telle how þat[1] Thomas of Lancastre was descomfitede,
[2]and his company were descomfitede[2] at Burton vp[3] Trent, he
ordeynede him a stronge power, and Sir Symond Ward also,[4] þat
þo[5] was[6] shirryf of ȝork, & come & mette þe barons at Burbrig; & 4
anone þai breken[7] þe brige, þat was made of tre. ¶ And when[8]
Sir Thomas of Lancastre herde þat Sire Andrew of Herkela hade
brouȝt wiþ him soche a power, he was sore adrade, & sent for[9] Sir[1]
Andrew of Herkela, & wiþ him spake, and saide to him in þis 8
maner: "Sire Andrew," q*uod* he, "ȝe mow wel vnderstonde how
þat our Lord þe Kyng is ladde and misgou*er*nede by miche false
conseil, þrouȝ Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, &[10] Sir Hugh þe[11]
sone, & Sir Iohn Erl of Arundel, and þrouȝ Maistre Robert Baldok, 12
a false pilede clerc, þat is in þe Kyng*us* court duellyng; wherfore y
praye ȝow[4] þat ȝe wil[12] come wiþ vs, wiþ al þe power þat ȝe haue
ordeynede, and helpe to destroie þe venyme of Engel*and*, and þe
t*rai*toures þat bene[13] þerin, and we[1] wil ȝif vnto ȝow þe best part 16
[14]of v Erldomes þar We haueþ[15] & holdeþ[16]; and We wil mak vnto
ȝow [17]an oth[17] þat we wil neu*er* do þing wiþout ȝour consel, and so ȝe
shul bene[18] as wele [19]at ese[19] wiþ vs as euer was Robert[20] Holande."
¶ Þo ansuerede Sir Andrew of Herkela, and saide: "Sir Thomas! 20
þat wolde y nouȝt do,[21] ne consent þ*er*to, for no maner þing þat
yhe[22] might me[5] ȝeue, [23]wiþouten þe wil[23] and co*m*maundement of
our lord þe Kyng; for þan shulde y be holde a t*rai*toure for eu*er*-
more." ¶ And when þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre saw þat he 24
nolde consent to hi*m* for no man*er* þing, "Sir Andrew," he saide,
"wil ȝe nouȝt consent to destroye þe venyme of þe reaume, as we
bene consented?[24] At on[25] worde, Sir Andrew, y telle þe, þat or þis
ȝer be goñ, [26]þat ȝe shal be[26] take and holde for a t*rai*toure, and 28
more þan ȝe holde vs nowe; and in worse deth ȝe shul die, þan
euer dede[27] Knyght of Engel*and*; and vnderstonde[28] wel þat
[29]neu*er* ȝe dede[29] þing þat sorer [30]ȝow shal[30] repent. And now
goþ and [31]do what[31] ȝow gode likes[32]; and y wil put me to[33] 32

[1] *om.* D. [2—2] *om.* D. & his Cumpanye O. [3] oppoñ D.
[4] *om.* O. [5] *om.* DO. [6] was to *sic* O. [7] broken D.
[8] when þat D. [9] to O. [10] & by D. [11] his DO.
[12] wolde D. wold O. [13] beth D. [14] *leaf* 125, *back.* [15] haue O.
[16] hold O. [17—17] *om.* D. [18] be efte D. be eft O. [19—19] *om.* DO.
[20] Robert of DO. [21] done O. [22] me DO.
[23—23] without consel D. w*ith*-oute wil O. [24] consent DO.
[25] o DO. [26—26] ȝe shul ben D. [27] dide eny O.
[28] vndirstondeth O. [29—29] ȝe dede neuere D. ȝe dede neu*er* O.
[30—30] shal ȝow D. schal ȝow O. [31—31] doth þat DO.
[32] likeþ D. liketh O. [33] vnto DO.

þe [1]mercy and *grace*[1] of God." And so went þe false *trai*toure, Sir'[2] Andrew of Herkela, in his way as a false *trai*tour', a tiraunt, & forsuore[3] man. for þrouȝ þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre he vnderfonge þe armes of chiualry, and þrouȝ him he was made 4 knyght.

¶ Thoo might men seen[4] Archieres drawen ham in þat on[5] side and in þat o*þere*; and [6]Knyȝtes also[6] fouȝten togeder' wonder' sore; and amonge[7] o*þere*, Sir' Hunfray de Bohouñ, Erl of Herford, a 8 worþi knyght of renou*ne* þrouȝout al Cristendome, stode & fauȝt with his enemys apon þe brigge. [8]And as the noble lorde stode and fauȝt oppoñ þe brugge, a þef, a ribaude, scolkede vnder þe brigg*e*, and fersly wiþ a spere smote the noble knyght into þe fonde- 12 ment, so þat his bowailles comen out *þere*. Allas þe sorwe! for *þere* was slayn þe floure of solace and of comfort', & also of curtesye. and S*ir*e Rog*er* of Clifford, a noble knyght, stode euer', and faught, & wel and nobly him defendede as a worþi baron; but at þe laste 16 he was sore wounded in þe[9] heuede, & S*ir*e William of Sulley & Sir' Rog*er* of Bernesfelde[10] were slayn in[11] þat bataile. ¶ And[12] Sir' Andrew of Herkela saw[13] Sir' Thomas me*n* of Lancastre [14]laske and slake.[14] Anone he & his co*m*pany come*n* to the Gentil Knyght, 20 Thomas of Lancastre, & saiden[15] "ȝelde þe, *trai*to*ur*! ȝelde þe!" ¶ The gentil Erl ansuerede þo,[2] and saide: "nay, lordes! traito*ur*[16] be we none, and to ȝow wille we neu*er* vs ȝelde while[17] þat our'[18] lifes lasten[19]; but leuer we hauen[20] to be slayn in oure treuþ, þan 24 ȝelde vs to ȝow." And Sir' Andrew aȝein[21] c*r*iede[22] oppoñ Sir' Thomas company, [23]ȝellynge as a wolfe,[23] and saide: "ȝelde ȝow, *trai*to*ur*[24] taken! ȝelde ȝow!" and wiþ an hye [25]voice saide[25]: "beþ ware, sires, þat [26]no man[26] of ȝow be[27] so hardy, oppoñ lif and lyme, 28 to mysdo[28] Thomas body of Lancastre." ¶ And wiþ þat worde, þe gode Erl Thomas went into a chapel, and saide, knelyng douñ oppoñ his knees, and turnede his visage toward þe crois, and saide: "almyghti God! to þe y me ȝelde, and holliche[29] put me into þi 32

[1—1] grace & m*er*cy O. [2] *om.* D.
[3] as a false forsuoren D. as a forswore O. [4] see D. [5] o O.
[6—6] knyȝte also and D. knyghtes also & O.
[7] also among' al D. also among O. [8] *leaf* 126. [9] his DO.
[10] Bernefeld' O. [11] at DO. [12] When D. wha*n* O.
[13] saw þat' DO. [14—14] lefte and slakede D. lasked' & slaked' O.
[15] saide D. [16] traytou*rs* O. [17] whiles O. [18] one D.
[19] laste O. [20] han D. haue O. [21] *MS.* aȝein aȝein. [22] grad O.
[23—23] ȝollyng as wode wolues O. ȝeldynge as a wolfe R.
[24] traitoures D. traitours O. [25—25] a voys cryede & seyde O.
[26—26] non DO. [27] bene D. [28] mysdone O. [29] holly D. holy O.

mercy." ¶ And wiþ þat, þe vileins ribaudes lepten[1] about him, on[2] eu*er*y side þat Gentil Erl, as tiraunt3 [3]and Woode t*ur*ment*ur*es, and despoilede him of his Armure, & cloþede him in a robbe of Ray, þat was[4] his sq[u]yers liueray, and [5]fourþ lade him vnto[5] 4
York[6] by wat*er*. þ*er*e[7] might me*n* see miche sorwe and care, for þe gentil knyghtes [8]fledden on[8] eu*er*y side, and þe ribaudes and vileins egrely ham desc*r*iede, and c*r*iede[9] in[10] hye, "3elde 3ow, t*ra*itoures! 3elde 3ow!" 8

¶ And when þai were 3olden,[11] þai wer' robbed, and bonde as þeues. Allas þe shame & despite, þat[12] þe gentil ordre of Knyghthode þ*er*e hade at þat bataile! And þe land þo was wiþouten[13] Law, for holy cherche þo hade nomore[14] reue*r*ence þan hit 12
hade bene a bordel hous. And in þat bataile was þe fader' a3eins þe sone, and þe vncle a3eins his[15] nevew; for so miche vnkyndenesse was neu*er* seyne bifore in Engel*and*[16] amonges[17] folc of on[18] naciouñ; for o[19] kynrede had no more pite of þat oþ*er*, þan an 16
[20]hundred' wolfes haueþ on o[20] shepe; and hit was no wonder', for þe grete lordes of Engeland were nou3t alle of o[21] naciouñ, but were mellede[22] wiþ oþ*er*e nacions, þat is forto seyn, so*m*me Britons, so*m*me Saxones, so*m*me Danois,[23] so*m*me Pegñtes, so*m*me Frenche- 20
me*n*, so*m*me Normans, so*m*me Spaignardes, so*m*me Romayns, some Henaudes, some Flemyng*us*, and of oþ*er*e diu*er*se naciouns, þe whiche nacions acorded nou3t to þe kynde bloode of Engel*and*. ¶ And if þe grete Lordes [24]of Engel*and* hade bene onelich wedded'[24] 24
to Englisshe peple, þan shulde pees haue bene, and reste among*us* ham, wiþouten[25] eny envy. And at þat bataile was Sir' Roger' Clifford' tak',[26] S*ir*e Iohñ Mounbray, S*ir*e William [27 28]Tuchet, Sir' William[28] Fit3-William, and meny oþ*er* worþi Knyghtes; and Sir' 28
Hugh Dauiħ þe next day after' w*as* taken[29] and put into prisouñ, & shulde haue ben[30] done to þe[31] deþ if he hade nou3 spousede þe Kynges nece, þat w*as* þe Erl Gilbert*us*[32] sustre[33] of Gloucestre.

[1] lepte D. [2] in DO. [3] *leaf* 126, *back*. [4] was of DO.
[5—5] lad him forth to D. [6] *MS.* þork'. [7] þo DO.
[8—8] fled in D. fledden in O. [9] grad O. [10] an DO.
[11] 3olde D. yolde O. [12] *om.* D. [13] without D. w*ith*oute O.
[14] no maner' D. [15] þe D.
[16] Engeland as was þat tyme D. Engelond' as was þat tyme O.
[17] among O. [18] o O. [19] one D.
[20—20] hungry wolfe hath of a D. hungry wolf hath of a O. [21] on D.
[22] medled' D. [23] Danes O.
[24—24] hade be wedede onliche D. hadden ben onlich wedded' O.
[25] without D. withoute O. [26] taken D. [27] *leaf* 127. [28—28] *om.* D.
[29] take O. [30] be O. [31] *om.* O. [32] Gilb*er*t D. [33] wyf O.

And anone afterꝑ, was Sirꝑ Bartholomev of Bedelesmerꝑ taken[1] attꝑ Stawe[2] Park, a manerꝑ of þe Bisshoppes of Lincolñ, þat was his nevew, and meny oþer barons and baronettes; Wherfore was made
4 miche sorwe.

How Thomas of Lancastre was biheuedede[3] atte Pountfrettꝑ, & v barons hongede and [4]Draw þere.[4] ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo Octauo.

8 ANd now y shal telle ȝow of þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre. When he was taken[5] & brouȝt to ȝorkꝑ, meny of þe citee were ful glade, and oppoñ him criede[6] wiþ[7] hye voice, "A, sire traitoure! ȝe [8]arne welcome,[8] blessedꝑ be Godꝑ! for now shal ȝe
12 haue þe reward þat longetyme ȝe haue diserued! " and caste oppoñ him[9] meny snoweballes, and meny oþer reproues dede[10] him. But þe gentil Erl þat soffrede, and saide neþer on ne[11] oþere.

¶ And in þat[12] same tyme þe Kyng herde of þat[13] scomfiture,
16 and was ful glade, and in haste come to Pountfrettꝑ; and Sirꝑ Hugh þe Spenser, and Sirꝑ Hugh his sone, and Sir Iohñ, Erl of Arundel, and Sirꝑ Edmundꝑ of Wodestokꝑ, þe Kyngus broþer, Erl of Kent, and Sirꝑ Aymerꝑ of Valance, Erl of Penbrokꝑ, & maistre Robert of
20 Baldokꝑ, a false pilede clerc, þat was priue & duellyngꝑ[14] in þe Kynges courtꝑ; and alle [15]þai come[15] þiderꝑ wiþ þe Kyngꝑ. ¶ And Sirꝑ Rauf of Beestoñ ȝaf vp the [16]castel to the Kyngꝑ; and þe Kyngꝑ entrede into þe castel; & Sirꝑ Andrev of Herkela, þe[17] false tiraunt,
24 þrouȝ þe Kynges commandement tokꝑ[18] with him þe gentil Erl Thomas[19] to Pountfretꝑ; and þere he was prisonede in his owen castel þat he hade new made, þat stode aȝeins þe Abbay of Kyng Edward.

28 And Sirꝑ Hugh þe[20] Spenserꝑ þe faderꝑ, [21]and Sirꝑ Hugh his sone,[21] caste and þouȝt how and in what manerꝑ þe God Erl Thomas of Lancastre shulde bene[22] dede, wiþouten[23] iugement of his peris; wherfore hit was ordeinede þrouȝ þe Kynges Iustices, þat þe Kyngꝑ
32 shulde put oppoñ[24] him poyntes of traitery. ¶ And so hit bifelle

[1] take O. [2] traw *sic* D. [3] byhededꝑ O. [4–4] drawen D.
[5] take O. [6] cryeden O. [7] with an O.
[8–8] bene welcomen D. ar welcome O. [9] *om.* D. [10] deden O.
[11] neþer O. [12] þe D. [13] the D. [14] dwelled O.
[15–15] comen DO. [16] *leaf* 127, *back.* [17] a DO.
[18] tokꝑ D. nome O. to bring R. [19] Thomas of Lancastꝑ O.
[20] *om.* O. [21–21] *om.* D. & þe sone O. [22] be O.
[23] with-outen eny D. without eny O. [24] on O.

þat he was ladde to þe barr' bifore þe Kynges Iustice3, bare-heuede[1] as a þef', in a faire halle wiþin[2] his owen castel, þat he hade made *þer*in meny a faire fest, boþ to riche and eke[3] to pore. ¶ And þise were his Iustice3: Sir' Hugh þe Spens*er* [4]þe fader',[4] Sir' Aymer' of 4 Valance, Erl of Penbrok', Sire Edmund of Wodestok, Erl of Kent', Sire Iohñ of Britaignñ, Erl of Richemond, & Sir' Robert of Malemeþrop, iustice; and Sir' Robert him acoupede in þis maner': ¶ "Thomas! atte þe ferst', oure lord þe Kyng' & þis court' 8 excludeþ 3ow of al maner' ansuere. ¶ Thomas! oure lorde þe Kyng' put oppoñ 3ow þat 3e haue in his lande riden wiþ baner' displaiede, [5]a3eynes his pees, as a *tra*itour.[5]" ¶ And wiþ þat worde, þe gentil Erl Thomas, wiþ an hie voice saide, "Nay, Lordes! forsoþ, 12 and by Seint Thomas, y was neuer' traitoure." ¶ The iustice saide a3ein þo: "Thomas! our' Lord þe Kyng' put oppoñ þe[6] þat 3e hauen[7] robbede his [8]folc, and mordred his folc,[9] as a þef'. ¶ Thomas! þe Kyng also put oppoñ you[10] þat he descomfitede 3ow 16 and 3our' peple wiþ his folc in his owen reaume; Wherfore 3e went and fley[11] to þe wode as an outlawe, and [12]also 3e were taken as an outlaw. ¶ & [12] Thomas, as a *tra*itoure 3e shuld be[13] hongede by resouñ, but þe Kyng' haþ for3eue 3ow þat[3] gewys for þe loue of 20 Quene Isabell. ¶ And, [14]Thomas, resouñ wolde also þat 3e shulde ben hongede; but þe Kyng' haþ for3eue þat gewys[14] for cause and loue of 3*our* lynage. ¶ But, Thomas, for-asmiche as 3e were tak fleyng', & [3] as an outlaw, þe Kyng wil þat 3our' heued[15] be smyten[16] 24 of', as 3e[17] haue wel des*er*uede. Anone doth[18] him out of pres, and[19] bringe him to his iugement!" ¶ þe gentil knyght, when he[20] hade herde alle þise wordes, wiþ an hye voice he *cr*iede, sore weping', and saide: "Allas, Seint Thomas, [21]faire fader'! Allas[21]! shal 28 y be[22] dede þus? *gra*unt me now, blisseful God, ansuere!" but al it availede him noþing[23]; for þe cursede Gascoignes put him hider[24] and þider', and on him *cr*iede wiþ an hye voice, "O Kyng' Arthur', most dredeful! wel[25] knowen [26]now is þin[26] open *tra*itery! 32

[1] bare-heed' O. [2] in O. [3] *om.* D. [4—4] *om.* D.
[5—5] as a *tra*itour' a3eynes his pees D. [6] 3ow D. [7] haue DO.
[8] *leaf* 128. [9] peple DO. [10] þe O. [11] fled O.
[12—12] *om.* O. [13] ben D.
[14—14] *om.* D. Thomas as resoñ wold' also þat 3e schuld' be honged' but þe kyng for3eue 3ow þat gewes O.
[15] hed O. [16] smyte O.
[17] *MS.* 3e shul, *with* shul *underlined for omission.* [18] do O.
[19] & anone D. & anon O. [20] *MS.* he he. [21—21] allas fayre fader O.
[22] bene D. ben O. [23] not O. [24] hide *sic* D. [25] we O.
[26—26] is now þine D. is now þyn O.

in euel deþ shalt þow dye, as þow hast wel dis*er*uede." ¶ þo sette þai oppoñ his heuede[1] in scorn an olde chapelet', al-to rent & torn, þat was [2]nouȝt worþ[2] an halpeny; & after' þai
4 sette[3] him oppo[illegible] a [4]lene white[4] palfray, ful vnsemeliche,[5] and ek al[6] bare, wiþ an [illegible]de bridel; and wiþ an horrible noyse[7] þai drow him [2]out of þe c[illegible]tel[2] toward his deþ, and caste on[8] him meny balles of snowe. [illegible] And as þe turmentoures lade him out of þe
8 castel, [9]þo saide he [illegible]ise [10]pitouse[6] wordes, and his Handes helde vp[11] [12]in hye toward[illegible] heuen: "Now, þe Kyng of Heuen ȝeue vs m*er*cy, for þe erþely [illegible]ng'[13] haþ vs forsak'!" And a frere p*r*ech-oure went wiþ him oute[illegible] [illegible]e castel, til þat he come to þe place
12 þat[14] he endede-in[15] his lif; [illegible]nto[16] whom he shroue him al his lif.[17] ¶ And þe gentil Erl helde þ[illegible] [illegible]rere wonder' faste by þe cloþes, and saide: "fair'[11] fader', abide w[illegible]rs til þat [18]y be[18] dede; for my flesshe quakeþ for drede of deþ. [illegible] And soþ forto saie, þe gentil Erl
16 sette him oppoñ his Knees, & ta[illegible]ed' him toward þe East'; but a Ribaude þat meñ[19] callede Hugoñ [illegible]r Mostoñ, sette hande oppoñ þe gentil Erl, and said in despite of him[20]: "Sir' t*rai*toure, turne þe toward þe Scottes, þin[21] foule deth to vnderfonge"; and turnede þe
20 Erl toward' þe North. ¶ The noble Erl Thomas ansuered þo wiþ a milde voice, and saide: "Now, fair' Lordes, y shal do al ȝour' owen[15] wille." And wiþ þat worde þe frere went fram[22] him ful sore[23]; and anone a ribaude went to him, and smote of his heuede,[24] þe xj
24 Kalend*us*[25] of Aprił, in þe ȝer' of g*ra*ce M' CCC[26] xxj. Allas þat eu*er* soche a gentil blode shulde ben[27] don to deþ with-outen[28] cause and resoun! ¶ And t*rai*t*er*ously[29] was þe Kyng' conseilede when he, þrouȝ false conseil of þe false[11] Spens*er*s, soffrede Sir' Thomas,
28 his vncles[30] sone, bene[31] put to soche a deþ, & so [32]ben-heuedede[32] aȝeyns al man*er* resoun. And grete pitee hit was also, þat soche a noble Kyng' shulde ben[33] desceyuede and mysgou*er*nede þrouȝ[34] false Spensers, þe whiche he mayntenede þrouȝ loselry aȝeins his
32 honour' and ek p*ro*fit'; for after*w*ard þ*er*e felle grete ve*n*geaunce in

[1] heed' O. [2–2] *om.* D. [3] sent O. [4–4] white lene D.
[5] *MS.* vnsemelicliche; vnsemely D. [6] *om.* D. [7] voys D.
[8] oppoñ D. [9–9] he saide D. [10] *leaf* 128, *back.* [11] *om.* O.
[12–12] an hye towardes D. in hye towardes O. [13] þing *sic* O.
[14] *þere* D. [15] *om.* DO. [16] in-to O.
[17] *MS.* lif a, *with* a *underlined for omission.* [18–18] we bene D.
[19] me DO. [20] hym & seide *sic* O. [21] þy O. [22] fro O.
[23] sore wepyng' D. so wepynge *sic* O. [24] heed O. [25] *Kalend* DO.
[26] CCC & O. [27] be DO. [28] without D. withoute O.
[29] Traytourly O. [30] vncle O. [31] be O. [32–32] beheded' O.
[33] be DO. [34] þrouȝ conseil of the D. þurgh Counceill of þe O.

[1]Engel*and* for enchesouñ of þe forsaide Thomas deþ. ¶ When þe gentil Erl of þis lif was passede, þe Prioure and þe monkes of Pounfrett' geten Sir' Thomas body of þe Kyng', and þai buriede hit bifore[2] þe hye aut*er* in the right side. 4

¶ And[3] þat same day þat þe gentil lord was dede, þ*er*e wer' honged and draw[4] for þe same[5] querel [6]at Pountfrett',[6] Sir' William Tuchet, Sir' William Fitz-Willia*m*, S*ir*e Warein of Ysillee, S*ir*e Henry of Bradboure,[7] Sir' Willia*m* Cheyne, baroñs alle,[8] & 8 Iohñ Page, Squyer'. ¶ And sone aft*er* at ȝork, wer' draw and Honget, S*ir*e Rog*er* of[3] Clifford, Sir' Iohñ of Mounbray, barons, & Sire Gosselyn Dauil,[9] Knyght. ¶ And at Bristow were draw and honged, S*ir*e Henry of Wyningtoñ, and S*ir*e Henry of Mounford, 12 barons. ¶ And at Gloucestre wer' draw and hongede, Sire Iohñ Giffard & S*ir*e Willia*m* of Elmebruge,[10] barons. ¶ And at Londoñ wer' [11]Honget & draw,[11] Sir' Henry Tyeys,[12] baroñ; & at Winchelse,[13] Sir' Thomas Culpeper', knyght; & at Wyndesore, Sir' 16 Fraunceys of Waldenham,[14] baron; & at Kaunt*er*bury was draw and honged, S*ir*e Bartholomew of Badelesmer' & Sir' Bartholomev of Assheburnh*a*m, barons; And at Kerdif in Walys, Sir' Willia*m* Flemynge, baroñ. 20

How Kyng' Edward' went into Scotland' wiþ an[15] C^m^ men of Armes, and might nouȝt spede. ¶ Cap*itul*o Cent*esimo* Nonogesi*m*o ¶ Nono.

ANd when Kyng Edward of Engeland' hade brouȝt þe flour' of 24 chiualry vnto þis[16] deþ, þrouȝ conseil of Sir' Hughe þe Spensers[17] þe fader', & [18]Sir' Hugh[18] his sone, he[9] bicome as[19] wood as a lyouñ; and what-so-euer' the Spensers wolde haue done, it was doñ. And so wel the [20]Kyng louede ha*m*, þat þai might do[21] 28 wiþ him al[22] þat þai wolde; wherfore [23]the King[23] ȝaf vnto Sir' Hugh þe Spens*er* þe fader', þe Erldome of Wynchestre, and to Sir' Androv of Herkela þe Erldome of Carlele,[24] in p*r*eiudice and[25] harmyng of his croune. ¶ And Kyng Edward þo, þrouȝ conseil of 32

[1] *leaf* 129. [2] bisides D. [3] *om.* D. [4] drawen D.
[5] same cause & D. [6–6] *om.* D.
[7] Bradborñ and D. Bradbourne & O. [8] al at Pountfret D.
[9] *om.* O. [10] Elmebright D. [11–11] draw and hongede D.
[12] Treys DO. [13] Wynchestre O. [14] Baldenh*a*m O. [15] a O.
[16] *om.* D. his O. [17] Spens*er* D. Spencer O. [18–18] *om.* O.
[19] *MS.* as a, *with* a *underlined for omission.* [20] *leaf* 129, *back.*
[21] done D. [22] al þing DO. [23–23] *MS. has* sir' Hugh.
[24] Kardoil D. Cardoil O. [25] and in DO.

þe Spens*er*s, disheritede[1] alle ham þat hade bene aȝeins him in eny quereH wiþ Thomas of Lancastre; and meny o*þer*e wer' disherited also, for enchesoñ þat þe Spensers coueitede forto haue her' londes;
4 and so þai hade al þat þai wolde desire, wiþ wronge, and aȝeyns al resouñ.

¶ þo made þe Kyng, Rob*er*t[2] of Baldok', a false pilede clerc, Chaunceller' of Engel*and*, þrouȝ conseil of þe forsaide Spensers;
8 and he was a false rybaude and a couetous; and so þai conselede þe Kyng so miche, þat þe Kyng' lete take to his owen ward alle þe godes of þe lordes þat [3]wrongefully were[3] put vnto þe[4] deþ, into his owen honde; and aswel þai token[5] þe godes þat were in
12 holy cherche, as þe godes þ*at* were wiþout, and lete ha*m* ben[6] put into his t*re*sorie a[t] Londoñ, and lete [7]ham calle[7] his forfaitȝ; and by her[8] conseile þe Kyng' wrought, and[9] disheritede [10]al ha*m*[10] þat [11]þe gode[11] oweden[12]; and þrouȝ her' conseil lete arere a[13] talliage
16 of alle þe godes of Engeland'; wherfore he was þe richest Kyng'[14] þat euer' was in Engel*and*, after Willia*m* Bastard' of Normandy, [15]þat conquerede Engel*and*.[15] ¶ And ȝitte, þrouȝ co*n*seH of ham, him semede þat he hade nouȝt ynouȝ, but made ȝitte eu*er*y touñ
20 of[16] Engel*and* fynde a man of Armes oppoñ her' owen costages,[17] forto goñ[18] and werr' oppoñ the [19]Scottes [20]þat Wer' his enemys.

Wherfore þe Kyng' went into Scotland[20] wiþ an[21] hundred' þousande men of Armes at Whitsontide, in the ȝere of our' Lord
24 God'[22] M† CCC &[4] xxij. But þe Scottes went and hud ha*m* in Mounteyns and in Wodes, and tariede þe Englisshe-men fro[23] day to day, þat þe Kyng myght for no man*er* þing' ha*m* fynde in pleyn felde; wherfore meny Englisshe-[24]men, þat few vitailes hade,[24] for
28 hung*er* [25]þ*er*e deiden[25] wonder' faste, and sodeynly, for hunger' in goyng' and in comyng', and nameliche[26] þo þat hade bene aȝeyns Thomas of Lancastre, and hade robbet his men oppoñ his landes.
¶ When Kyng' Edward saw þat vitailes failede him, he was þo
32 wonder' sore discomfortede,[27] for enchesouñ also þat his me*n* so deide, and also for he might nouȝt spede of his[13] enemys; so at þe[13]

[1] disherite D. [2] *MS. has* Robert þe, *with* þe *underlined for omission.*
[3–3] were wrongefully D. [4] *om.* DO. [5] tok D. [6] be O.
[7–7] calle ham D. [8] her DO. his R. [9] and for-eu*er*-more DO.
[10–10] hem aH O. [11–11] þo godes D. þo goodes O. [12] owede O.
[13] *om.* O. [14] *om.* D. [15–15] *om.* O. [16] in O. [17] Costage O.
[18] go O. [19] *leaf* 130. [20–20] *om.* D. [21] a O.
[22] god' a O. [23] fram D.
[24–24] þat wanted vitailes D. men þat fewe vitalles hadden O.
[25–25] þey dide O. [26] namely DO. [27] descomfitede D. discomfited' O.

last he come aȝeyne into Engeland. And anone after come Iames[1] Douglas and[2] Thomas Randolf wiþ an huge ost [3]into Engel*and*,[3] into Northumberland, and wiþ ha*m* þe Englisshe-men þat wer dryuen out of Engel*and*, & come and robbet the contre, and 4 quellede þe peple,[4] and also brent[5] þe touñ þat was callede North-allertouñ, and meny oþ*er* tounes vnto ȝork. ¶ And when þe Kyng herd þis þing,[6] he lete [sompne] alle maner men þat might t*ra*uaile. And so þe Englisshemen mette þe Scottes atte þe Abbay of Beihe- 8 land, þe xv day aft*er* Michelmasse in þe same ȝer abouesaide; And þe Englisshe-men wer þ*er*e descomfited; & at þat scomfiture was tak[7] Sir Iohñ of Britaygñ, Erl of [8]Richemonde, þat helde þe contre and the Erldome of Lancastre; and after, he paiede an 12 huge raunsouñ, and was lete gone; and after þat he went into F*ra*unce and come neuer after[9] aȝeyn.

How Sir Andrew of Herkela w*a*s taken,[10] and put vnto þe[11] deþ, þ*a*t w*a*s Erl of Cardoile. Cap*itul*o CC^mo^. 16

And at þat tyme Sir Andrew of Herkela, þat [12]newe w*a*s[12] made Erl of Cardoile, for cause þat he hade taken[13] þe goode Erl[14] of Lancastre, he hade ordeyned, þrouȝ þe Kyng*us* co*m*mandement of Engel*and*, forto bryng him aH þe power þat he might, forto 20 helpe him aȝeyns þe Scottes atte þe Abbay of Behigland. ¶ And when þe false t*ra*itoure hade gadrede aH þe peple þat he might, and shulde haue come*n*[15] to þe Kyng to[16] þe Abbay of Biegl*and*, þe false t*ra*itoure lad ha*m* by anoþ*er* contre þrouȝ[17] Copeland, and 24 þrouȝ þe Erldome of[18] Lancastr, and went þrouȝ þe contre, and robbit and quellede folc, al þat he[19] might. ¶ And ferþ*er*more þe false t*ra*itou*r* hade take[20] a gret some of golde[21] of Sir Ia*m*ys Douglas, forto bene[22] aȝeyns þe Kyng of Engel*and*, and to bene[22] 28 helpyng and holdyng wiþ þe Scottes; þrouȝ whos t*re*souñ þe Kyng of Engeland was scomfitede at Bihelande er þat he come þider; wherfore þe Kyng was [23]toward him ful[23] wroþ, and lete p*ri*uely enquere in[24] þe contre about,[25] how[26] hit was. and so me*n* 32

[1] Iame D. [2] and also DO. [3—3] *om.* D. [4] folc D.
[5] brennede D. [6] tydyng DO. [7] taken D. [8] *leaf* 130, *back.*
[9] aft*er*ward O. [10] take O. [11] *om.* DO. [12—12] was newe O.
[13] take O. [14] erl Thomas D. Erle Thom*a*s O. [15] come O.
[16] vnto DO. [17] to D.
[18] *MS.* of Richemond, *with* Richemond *underlined for omission.*
[19] þai D. [20] taken DO. [21] golde and siluer D. gold & silu*er* O.
[22] be O. [23—23] towardes him wonder D. toward hym wondir O.
[24] by DO. [25] *om.* D. [26] how þat O.

enquerede and aspiede, so[1] þat at the laste[2] treuþ was founde,[3] and sought, and he atteint and taken as a false *trai*tour',—as þe noble Erl Thom*as* of Lancastre him tolde, er' þat he were doñ [4]to dede[4]
4 at his takyng' [5]att Burbrig', and to him saide, þat 'or þat ȝere wer' Doñ, he shulde ben[6] take and holde a *trai*tour'': and so hit was, as þe holy man saide. Wherfore þe Kyng sent *pr*iuely to S*ir*e Antoyn[7] of[8] Lucye, a knyȝt of þe contre of Cardoile, þat he shulde
8 tak Sir' Andrew of Herkela, and put him vnto þe deþ. And to bryng þis þing to[9] þe ende, þe Kyng sent his co*m*missioñ, so þat þe same Andrew was take at Carleel,[10] & ledde vnto þe barr' in man*er* of an Erl, worthely arraied', and with a suorde gert aboute him,
12 and hosede and spored'. ¶ þo spak Sir' Antoyn[7] in þis man*er*, "Sir' Andrew," q*uod* he, "þe Kyng put oppoñ þe þat, for-asmiche as[11] ȝe haue[12] bene orpede in ȝour' dedes, he dede vnto[13] ȝow michel[14] honour', and made ȝow Erle of Carlele[15]; and þow, as[16] *trai*toure
16 vnto[17] þi lord' þe Kyng', laddest his peple of þis contrey, þat shulde haue holpe him at þe bataile of Bihiland'; and þow laddest ha*m* away by þe contre of Copeland', and þrouȝ þe Erldome of Lancastr', wherfor our' lord þe Kyng was scomfitede [18]in bataile[18]
20 þ*er*e of the Scottes, þrouȝ þi *tr*esouñ and falsenesse. And if þow[19] hadest [20]come betyme,[20] he hade yhade þe maistre; and al þat *tr*esouñ þow dedest',[21] for þe[22] grete so*m*me of golde and[23] siluer' þat þow vnderfong' of Iames· Douglas, a Scott', þe Kynges enemy.
24 ¶ And our' Lorde þe Kyng*us* wille is, þat ȝe, þe ordre of Knyghthode,—by þe whiche þow[24] vnderfonge al þin[25] hono*ur* and worship oppoñ þi body,—be al [26]brouȝt to[26] nouȝt', and þi state vndone, þat o*per*e knyghtes of lawer' Degre mowe after þe be-ware; þe
28 whiche lorde haþ þe auancede hugely in diu*er*ses[27] [28]contrees of Engeland'; and *þat* alle [29]may take ensample[29] by þe,[30] her lord' aftirward[8] trewely forto serue."

¶ þo co*m*man*d*ed he a knaf' anone[8] to hew of his spores of[31] his

[1] so *þat* O. so R. [2] laste þe D. laste þat O. [3] founden D.
[4—4] vnto deth DO. [5] *leaf* 131. [6] be DO. [7] Antony O.
[8] *om.* D. [9] vnto DO. [10] Kerdoith D. Cardoith O.
[11] þat D. [12] han O. [13] to D. [14] mych O.
[15] Cardoith DO. [16] as a DO.
[17] *MS.* vnto þi lord, *with* þi lord *underlined for omission;* to D.
[18—18] *om.* DO. [19] *altered from* ȝow *in MS.* [20—20] comen be-tymes D.
[21] *tr*esoun þow dedest' D. treson) þou dedest O. tresouñ R. [22] a D.
[23] and of D. [24] ȝe D. [25] þy O. [26—26] y-brought vnto O.
[27] diu*er*se D. diu*er*s O. [28] *leaf* 131, *back.*
[29—29] mow take a sample D. mowe take ensample O. [30] *om.* O.
[31] w*ith sic* O.

heles; & after he lete breke þe suerde ouer' his heuede,[1] þe whiche
þe Kyng [2]him ȝaf[2] to kepe and defende his[3] lande *þer*wiþ, when
he made him Erl of Cardoile; and aft*er* he lete him vncloþe of his
furrede mantel[4] and of his hood',[5] and of his furrede Cotes and of 4
his gerdeH. And when þis was doñ, Si*r*e Antoyne[6] saide vnto
him: "Andrew," q*uod* he, "now art þow no kny3t, but a knaue;
and for þi t*r*esoñ þe Kyng wille þat þow bene[7] honged & drawe,[8]
and [9]þin heuede smyten[9] of', and þi bowelles taken out of þi body, 8
and þi bowelles brent,[10] and þi body q*uarter*ede, and [11]þin heuede
smyten[11] of, and sent vnto[12] Londoñ; and *þer*e hit shal [13]be sette[13]
oppoñ Londoñ Brigge; and þi iiij[14] q*uarter*s shal be sent to iiij
tounes of Engeland', *þat* alle o*þer*e mowe be-ware and chastisede by 12
þe." And as Antoyne[15] saide, so hit was done, al maner þing', on[16]
þe last day of Ottobre, in þe ȝer' of g*r*ace M' CCC[17] xxij ȝere[14];
and þe sonne þo t*ur*nede into[18] blode, as þe peple it saw. ¶ and
þat durede fro [19]þe morne,[19] til hit was xj of þe Clokke of þe day. 16

¶ Of þe miracles þat God wrou3t for Seint Thomas loue of Lancastre; wherfore þe Kyng lete close þe cherche dores of[20] Pountfrett', [21]of þe Prioury,[21] for no man shulde come *þer*in [22]to þe body[22] forto offre. Capitulo Ducentesimo 20
¶ Primo.

ANd sone after'[23] the Gode Erl Thomas of Lan[24]castr' was
martrede,[25] a p*r*este, þat[14] Longe tyme [26]hade ben[26] blynde,
dremede in his slepyng' þat he shulde gone[27] vnto þe huH *þer*e þat 24
þe gode [28]Erl Thomas of Lancastre[28] was doñ vnto deþ, and he
shulde haue his sight a3ein: and so he dremede iij nyghtes sewyng.
[29]And þe p*r*est'[29] þo lete lede him to þe same huH. ¶ And when he
come to þat place þat he was martred oñ,[30] deuoutely he made *þer*e 28
his p*r*ayer',[31] and p*r*ayede God and Seynt Thomas þat he might[32]
haue his sight a3eyne. And as he was in his p*r*ayers, he laide his
right hand' oppon þe same place *þer*e[33] þe Gode man was martred'

[1] heed' O. [2–2] ȝaf hym O. [3] þe D. [4] tabard' O. [5] hodes D.
[6] Antony O. [7] be O. [8] drawen D. [9–9] þy heed' smyte O.
[10] brent biforn D. brent byforn þe O. [11–11] þy heed smyte O.
[12] to O. [13–13] stonde DO. [14] *om.* O. [15] Antonye O.
[16] in DO. [17] CCC & O. [18] to D.
[19–19] morne D. þe morne O. þe morwe R. [20] of þe Prioury of D.
[21–21] *om.* D. [22–22] *om.* O. [23] after þat DO. [24] *leaf* 132.
[25] enterede D. [26–26] þat had be O. [27] go DO. [28–28] Thomas O.
[29–29] *MS.* and þe p*r*est' and þe p*r*este. [30] in D. [31] p*r*ayers DO.
[32] must O. [33] þat O.

on[1]; and a drope of dry bloode and smal sande cleued on[2] his
honde,[3] and þerwiþ he striked his eyne, and anone, þrouȝ þe might
of God and of Seynt Thomas of Lancastre, he hade his sight aȝeyn,
4 and þankede þo Almighty God and Seynt Thomas. ¶ And when
þis miracle was [4]cud amonges men,[4] þe peple come þider on[2] euery
side, and knelede, and made her praiers at his tombe þat is in the
Priori of Pountfrett, and praiede þat holy martr, of Socour and of
8 helpe, and God herd her prayer. ¶ Also þere was a ȝonge childe
drenchede in a welle in þe touñ of Pountfrett, and was dede iij
daies and iij nyghtes; and men come[5] and laide þe dede childe
oppoñ seint Thomas tombe, þe holy martr; and þe childe aros
12 [6]þere fram[6] þe[1] deþ vnto[7] lif,[8] as meny a man hit saw; & also
miche peple wer out of here mynde, & God haþ sent ham her
mynde aȝeyn þrouȝ vertu of þat holy martr. [9]¶ And also God
haþ[10] ȝeuen[11] to creples hir goyng, and to crokede her hondes and
16 her feet, and to blinde also her sight, and to meny sike folc her
hele, þat hadde diuerse maladyes, for the loue of his gode martre.
¶ Also þer was a riche man in Coundoñ in Gascoigne; and soche a
maladie he had, þat al his right side rotede, and felle awaie fram[12]
20 him; and men might se his Lyuer and also his hert; and so he
stank, þat vnneþ men might come neiȝ him; Wherfore his frendes[13]
for him [14]were ful[14] sory. ¶ But at þe last, as God wolde, þai
prayede to Seint Thomas of Lancastre, þat he wolde praye to
24 Almighty God for þat prisouñ, and bihight to goñ[15] to Pountfrett
forto done[16] her pilgrimage. And þe goode man sone after[17] slepte
ful softe, and dremed þat þe martre Seynt Thomas come vnto him,
and enoynted[18] oueral his sike side.[19] And þerwiþ þe gode man
28 awoke, and was al[20] hole; and his flesshe was restorede aȝein,[21] þat
bifore was [22]rotede and felle[22] away; for whiche miracle þe good
man & his frendes louede God and Seint Thomas euermore after.
¶ And þis gode man come into Engeland, and toke[23] with him iiij
32 felawes, and come to Pountfrett, [24]& come to[24] þat holy martr, and
dede her pilgrimage; but þe gode man þat was sik come þider al

[1] *om.* DO. [2] in O. [3] fengeres D.
[4—4] knowen D. knowe among men O. [5] comen O. [6—6] fro O.
[7] to DO. [8] lyve O. [9] *leaf* 132, *back.* [10] haue O.
[11] ȝeuen þere D. ȝoue þere O. [12] fro O.
[13] frendes wer D. frendes were O. [14—14] wonder D. wondir O.
[15] go O. [16] do D. [17] afte D. [18] annoyntede him D.
[19] body O. [20] *om.* D. [21] *om.* D.
[22—22] roten and falle D roted & falle O. [23] nome D.
[24—24] vnto DO.

naked, saf his breche; and when þai hade done, þai t*ur*nede home
aȝeyne into her' contre, and tolde of þe miracle wher-so þat þai come.
¶ And also ij me*n* haue bene helede þe*re* of þe morimal, þrouȝ helpe
of þat holy martre, þouȝ þat euel be holde incurable. 4

¶ When þe Spensers herde þat God wrouȝt[1] soche miracles for
his holy martre, and þai wolde nouȝt[2] bileue hit in no man*er* wise,
but saide[3] ope*n*ly [4]þat hit was grete heresie, soche v*er*tu[5] of[6] him
to bileue. ¶ And when[7] Sir' Hugh þe Spens*er*, þe sone, [8]saw al[8] 8
þis doyng', anone he sent his [9]messag*er*s fram[9] Pountfret þe*r*[7] þat[10]
he duellede þo, to þe[2] Kyng' Edward, þat þo was at Grauene atte
Skiptoñ, for cause þat þe Kyng shulde vndo his[11] pilg*r*image.
¶ And as þe rybaude þat was messag*er* [12]come to[12] þe Kyng' forto 12
doñ his[13] message, he come by þe hull þe*re*[14] þe gode man was done
vnto deth; and in þe same place he made his ordur'; and when he
hade ydoñ, he went toward þe Kyng'; and a st*r*onge flux him come
oppoñ er' he come to ȝork', and shedde all his bowailles at his 16
fundement.

¶ And whe*n* Sir' Hugh þe Spens*er* herde þis tydyng*us*,[15] somdel
he was adrad', and þouȝt forto vndo þe pilg*r*image, if he might by
eny man*er* way; And to þe Kyng went, and saide þat þai shulde 20
be in grete sclaundre þrouȝ-out al C*r*istendome for the deþ of Thomas
of Lancastre, if þat he soffrede þe peple done[16] her' pilg*r*image at
Pountfrett'. And so he conseilede þe Kyng', þat he comandede to
close[17] þe cherche dores of Pountfrett', in þe whiche cherch þe holy 24
martre Seynt Thom*as* was ente*r*ede; and þus þai deden, [18]aȝeyns al[18]
fraunchise of holy cherche, so þat iiij ȝer' after myght no pilg*r*ime
come vnto[19] þat holy body. ¶ And for enchesoun þat[20] monkes
soffred me*n* come & hono*ur* þat holy body of Seynt Thomas þe martre, 28
þrouȝ conseile of Sir' Hugh þe Spens*er* þe Sone, and þrouȝ conseile
also of Maistre Robert Baldok', a[21] false[22] piled clerk' þat was þe
Kynges Chanceller', þe Kyng' consented that þai shulde be sette [23]to
her' wages, and Lete make Wardeynes ou*er* her' owen Godes[24] longe 32
tyme. ¶ And þrouȝ þe[7] co*mm*an*d*ement of þe forsaide Sir' Hugh þe
Sepens*er*, xiiij Gascoignes wel armed' kepte þe huH *per* þat þe gode[25]

[1] dede DO. [2] *om.* DO. [3] seyden O. [4] *leaf* 133.
[5] v*er*tues D. [6] on O. [7] *om.* O. [8–8] when he herd al of O.
[9–9] Messag*er* fro O. [10] *om.* D. [11] þe O.
[12–12] went toward' D. wente toward' O. [13] her' D. [14] þat O.
[15] tydyng' DO. [16] do D. [17] close in D. [18–18] aH aȝens O.
[19] to D. [20] þat þe DO. [21] þe DO. [22] fals cursed O.
[23] *leaf* 133, *back.* [24] gode D. good O.
[25] gode man D. good man O.

Seint Thomas was don vnto his[1] deþ and biheuedede,[2] so þat no pilgrime might come. By þat way ful wel wende he forto[3] haue binome[4] Cristus mightꝰ and his powerꝰ, and þe grete loos of miracles
4 þat he shewede for his martre Thomas þouȝ-out[5] al Cristendome.

¶ And þat same tyme þe Kyng made Robert of Baldokꝰ, a pilede clerc and a false, þrouȝ [6]conseile &[6] praierꝰ of Sirꝰ Hugh þe Spenserꝰ þe sone, Chancellerꝰ of Engelandꝰ. And in þe[7] same tyme
8 was þe castel of Wallingfordꝰ holden aȝeynes[8] þe Kyngꝰ, þrouȝ þe prisoners þat were wiþin þe castel, for Seint Thomas quereH of Lancastre. Wherfore þe pep[l]e of þe contre come & tokꝰ the castel oppoñ þe[9] prisoners; wherfore Sire Iohñ of Goleintoñ, knyȝt, and
12 Sir Edmunde of[10] Bech, parsoñ, and a squyer þat me callede Roger of Waltoñ, werꝰ taken[11] and sent to the Kyngꝰ to Pounfrettꝰ; and þere þai werꝰ done into prisoñ; and þe forsaide Roger was sent vnto ȝorkꝰ, and þere he was draw and hongedꝰ.
16 ¶ And aftirward,[12] Sirꝰ Roger Mortymerꝰ of Wygemore brak out of þe Toure of Londoñ[13] in þis manerꝰ: [14]þe forsaide Sirꝰ Roger[14] herde[15] þat he shulde bene[16] draw and hongede at Londoñ, [17]in þe morne[17] after Seint Laurence day; [18]and on þe dai bifore,[18] he helde
20 a fairꝰ fest in þe Tourꝰ of Londoñ, and þo was Sirꝰ Stephen [19]Segraue, Conestable of Londoñ, and meny grete men wiþ him. ¶ And when þai shulde sopen,[20] þe forsaide Stephen sent for alle þe officers of the Tourre; and þai come and soppede wiþ him; and when þai
24 shulde take herꝰ leue of him, a squyerꝰ þat me callede Stephen, þat was ful priue wiþ þe forsaide Roger, þrouȝ heirꝰ conseile ȝaf ham alle soche a drynkꝰ, þat þe lest of ham alle slepte ij dayes & ij nightes; and in þe[21] mene-tyme he scapede away by water, þat is to
28 seyn, by þe[22] Tamise, and went ouer þe see, and helde him in Fraunce; wherfore þe Kyng was sore annoiedꝰ, and þo put þe same Stephen out of his Conestablery.

How þe Quene IsabeH went into Fraunce forto treten[23] of pees
32 **bituene herꝰ lord, þe[1] Kyngꝰ of Engeland, & þe Kyngꝰ of Fraunce, herꝰ broþer. Capitulo Ducentesimo Secundo.**

[1] *om.* O. [2] byhededꝰ O. [3] to O. [4] bynomen D. fulfilled O.
[5] þurghꝰ O. [6–6] *om.* DO. [7] þat D. [8] aȝeyn D.
[9] þe forsaide D. þe forseyd O. [10] of þe DO. [11] take O.
[12] anone after D. anon after O. [13] Londoñ & O.
[14–14] Sir Roger þe forseyd O. [15] saw D. [16] be O.
[17–17] on þe morw D. in þe morowe O. [18–18] before on day O.
[19] *leaf* 134. [20] sope DO. [21] þat D. [22] *om.* DO. [23] trete DO.

THe Kyng' went þo vnto Londoñ, and þere, þrouȝ counseil of Sir' Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, and of his sone, and of maistre Robert of[1] Baldok, a false pilede clerc, his Chanceller', lete seise þo alle þe Quenes landes into his owen honde, and also alle þe landes 4 þat were Sir' [2]Edward his[2] sones, and were þo[1] put to her' wages, aȝeins al maner' resoñ; and þat was þrouȝ þe falsenesse of þe Spensers. ¶ And when þe Kyng of' Fraunce, þat was þe[3] Quene Isabelles broþer, herde of þis falsenesse, he was sore annoyed' 8 aȝeyns þe Kyng' of Engeland' and his false conseilers; wherfore he sent a lettre vnto Kyng Edward, vnder' his seal, þat he shulde come into Fraunce att a certeyn day forto[4] [5]done His homag; and þerto he sompnede him; and elles[6] he shulde lese al Gascoigne. 12 ¶ And so Hit was ordeynede in Engeland', þrouȝ þe Kyng' and his Counseil, þat Quene Isabell shulde[7] wende into[8] Fraunce, forto trete of pees bituene her' lord' and[1] her' broþer; and þat Olyuer' of Yngham shulde wende into Gascoigne, and shulde[3] haue wiþ him 16 vij M' men and mo of Armes, to bene[9] Senescal and wardein of Gascoigñ. And so hit was ordeynede þat Quene Isabel went þo ouer' þe see, and come into Fraunce, and wiþ her' went Sir' Aymer' of Valence, Erl of Penbrok', þat was þer mordrede sodeynly [10]on a 20 priue[10] sege: but þat was þrouȝ Godes vengeaunce, for he was on of þe Iusticeȝ þat consentede to Seint Thomas deþ[11] of Lancastre, & wolde neuer afterward repente him of þat wicked dede. ¶ And at þat tyme Sir' Olyuer' of Yngham went ouer'[12] into Gascoigne, and 24 dede miche harme to þe Kyng of' Fraunce, and þo gete aȝein þat Kyng' Edward hade loste, &[13] more þerto.

How Kyng' Edward sent Sir' Edward' his sone, þe eldest, into Fraunce. Capitulo Ducentesimo Tercio. 28

THe Quene Isabel nad [14]nouȝt bene[14] but a quarter of a ȝer' in Fraunce duellyng',[15] þat Sir' Edward, his eldest' sone, ne axede Leue forto wende into Fraunce forto spek' wiþ his moder', Isabel þe quene. And þe Kyng his fader' [16]grantede him[16] with 32 gode wille, and saide to him, "go, my fair' sone, in Godes blessing' and myn; and þenk' forto come aȝein as hasteli as þow maiste.[17]"

[1] *om.* D. [2–2] Edwardes her' D. Edwardes his O. [3] *om.* DO.
[4] *MS.* forto forto. [5] *leaf* 134, *back.* [6] eth O.
[7] shul shulde *sic* D. [8] in D. [9] be O. [10–10] in pyue *sic* O.
[11] *om.* O. [12] ouer þe see O. [13] and miche D. & myche O.
[14–14] *om.* DO. [15] duellede D. dwelled' O.
[16–16] him grantede D. [17] miȝt D. myght O.

and he come[1] ou*er* the[2] see[3] into F*ra*unce; and þe Kyng' of F*ra*unce, his Vncle, [4]vnderfonge Him wiþ michel[5] hono*ur*, and saide to[6] him, "faire sone, ȝe [7]ben welcomen[7]; and for cause þat
4 ȝour' fader' comeþ[8] nouȝt'[9] forto done his homage for þe Duchee of Ghyen, as his auncestres were wont forto done, y ȝeue ȝow[10] þat lordeship, to holde hit of me in heritage as[11] ȝoure auncestre deden[12] bifore[13] ȝow." Wherfore he was callede Duk of Gyene.

8 How Kyng Edward exilede his Quene,[14] and Edward' his eldest[2] sone. Cap*itul*o CC quarto.

WHen Kyng Edward of Engeland herde telle how the Kyng of F*ra*nce hade ȝeue þe duche of Gieñe vnto Sire Edward
12 his sone, wiþouten[15] consent and wille of him, and þat his sone hade vnderfonge þe Duchie [16]of hi*m*,[16] he bicome wonder wroþ, and sent' to his sone bi his[17] lettre, & to his wif also, þat þai shulde come[18] into Engel*and* wiþ al þe haste þat þai[19] might. ¶ The Quene
16 Isabell, & S*ir*e Edward her sone, [20]were wonder' sory and drade[20] of the Kyng*us* manace and of his wraþ, and p*r*incipally [21]of the false t*ra*itoures[21] þe Spensers, boþe of þe fader and of the sone, & at his co*m*mandement þai wolde nouȝt come. Wherfore Kyng Edward
20 was ful sore annoiede, and' lete make a c*r*ie at Londoñ þat, if Quene Isabell and Edward her' sone come nouȝt into[22] Engel*and*, þ*at* þai shulde bene[23] holden[24] as enemys, boþe[25] to þe reaume & to þe c*r*oune; and for þat þai wolde nouȝt come into Engel*and*, but boþ
24 were exilede, þe moder' and her[26] sone. ¶ Whe[n][27] Quene Isabell herd þis tiding*us*,[28] she was sore adrad to bene[23] shente þrouȝ þe false *con*iettyng of þe Spensers, and went wiþ þe knyghtes þat wer' exilede out of Engeland' for [29]Seint Thomas quereH[30] of Lancastre,
28 þat is to seine, S*ir*e Rog*er* Mortymore,[31] S*ir*e William Trusseh, S*ir*e Iohñ of Cromweh, & meny oþ*er* grete[32] kniȝtes. ¶ Wherfore þai tok[33] her' conseih, & ordeined amonges ha*m* forto make a mariage

[1] went D. [2] *om.* O. [3] see and went D. [4] *leaf* 135.
[5] myche O. [6] vnto DO. [7—7] be welcome O. [8] come O.
[9] *MS. has* nouȝt' come, *with* come *underlined for omission.*
[10] ȝow al D. [11] as al D. as alH O. [12] dede O. [13] biforn D.
[14] Quene Ysabel D. qwen IsabeH O. [15] with-out D. with-oute O.
[16—16] *om.* D. [17] *om.* D. [18] come aȝeyn D. come aȝen O. [19] ȝe D.
[20—20] weren sore adrade D. were wonder sore adrad' O.
[21—21] þe falsenesse of D. of þe falsnes of O. [22] vnto D. [23] be O.
[24] holde DO. [25] boþe ij D. [26] þe D. [27] When þe D.
[28] tydyng O. [29] *leaf* 135, *back.* [30] Cause DO.
[31] Mortymere of Wigemore D. Mortymer of Wygemore O.
[32] gode D. good O. [33] nomen D.

bituene þe Duc of Gyene, þe Kyng*us* sone of Engel*and*, and the Erles douȝt*er* of Henaud', þat was a noble knyȝt of name, and a douȝty in his tyme. And[1] if þat þing might be[2] brouȝt about and stand', þai trowede, wiþ þe helpe of God', and wiþ his helpe, to 4 recou*er*e heir'[3] heritage in Engeland', wherof þai were put out[4] þrouȝ the[5] coniettyng of þe false[6] Spensers.

¶ How Kyng Edward, þrouȝ conseile of þe Spensers, sent to þe Duȝsipiers of F*ra*unce, þat þai shulde helpe þ*a*t[7] Quene 8 Isabell, and hire sone Sir' Edward, weren[8] exilede out of F*ra*unce. Ca*pitul*o CC° v^to^.

WHen Kyng Edward and þe Spens*er*s herde how Quene Is*abel*, and Sir' Edward her' sone, hade Aliede ham to þe 12 Erle of Henaud', and to ha*m* þat were exilede out of Engeland' for enchesoñ of Thomas of Lancastre, þey[9] were so sory þat þai nist what to done. Wherfore Sir' Hugh þe Spenser', þe sone, saide vnto Sir' Hugh his fader', in þis man*er* wise, and saide: "Fader, accursede 16 be þe tyme & þe conseil þat eu*er* ȝe consentede þat Quene Is*abel* shulde gone[10] into F*ra*unce forto treten[11] of[12] accorde bituene þe Kyng' of Engeland & her' bro*þer* þe Kyng of F*ra*unce, for þat was ȝour' conseile, for at þat tyme for-soþe ȝour' witte faillede; for Y 20 drede me sore[13] lest, þrouȝ her' & her' [14]sone, We [15]shul be[15] shent, but if we take þe[16] bett*er* consel."

¶ Now, fair' sires, vnderstondeþ how mervaillous folie[17] and falsehede þe Spensers ymagynede & caste; for p*r*iuely þai lete fille 24 v barell*es* ferers wiþ siluer',—þe so*m*me amontede v M^l^ ti,—and þai sent þo [18]barelle oue[r] þe se p*r*iuely by[18] an Alien þat me callede Arnolde of Spaignñ, þat was a brocour' of Londoñ, þat he shulde go to þe Duȝsipiers of F*ra*nce, þat þai shulde p*r*ocuren and speken[19] 28 to þe Kyng of F*ra*unce, þat Quene Is*abel* and [20]Edward her' sone were dryue[20] and exilede out of F*ra*unce, [21]and, amonge al o*þer* þing*us*,[21] þat þai were brouȝ to[22] þe deþ as p*r*iuely as þai might'.

[1] þat D. [2] bene D. [3] his O. [4] *om.* O.
[5] þe false D. þe fals O. [6] *om.* DO. [7] þat þe D. [8] wer' O.
[9] *MS.* þat. [10] go O. [11] trete DO. [12] & O.
[13] *MS.* sore for, *with* for *underlined for omission.* [14] *leaf* 136.
[15—15] shulleþ bene D. [16] *om.* O. [17] felonye DO.
[18—18] barelles p*r*iuelich ouer þe see with D. barell ouer þe see pryuyly by O. [19] speke DO.
[20—20] her' sone Edward wer' dryuen D. her sone Edward' were dryven O.
[21—21] *MS.* and amonge al o*þer* þing*us* & amonge al o*þer* þinges.
[22] vnto D.

But Almighty God wolde nouȝt so; ¶ ffor when þis Arnolde was in þe hye see, he was taken[1] wiþ Selanders þat mette him in þe see, and toke[2] him, & lad hi*m* to her Lord,[3] þe Erl of Henaud; & miche
4 ioye was made for þat takyng. ¶ And at þe laste, þis Arnolde p*r*iuely[4] stale away fro þens, and come[5] to London. And of þis takyng, and of[6] oþ*er* þinges, þe Erl of Henaude saide to þe Quene Is*abel*: "dame, [7]make ȝow[7] mery and beþ of gode chier, for ȝe
8 beþ[8] more riche[9] þan ȝe wende forto[10] haue bene; & tak ȝe þise v barelle*s*[11] of Siluer þat were sent to þe Duȝsepiers of Fr*a*unce forto[12] quelle ȝow & ȝour sone Edward; and þenkeþ hastely forto wende into Engeland; and tak ȝe wiþ þow Sir Iohn of Henaude, my
12 broþ*er*, and v C men of Armes; for meny of ha*m* of Fr*a*unce, in whom ȝe haue [13]hade grete truste, hade grete deintee þow[14] forto scorne: and Almighty God g*r*ant ȝow g*r*ace, ȝour enemys forto[15] ouercome." ¶ þe Quene Is*abel* sent þo þrouȝ Henaud and Flaundres
16 for her sodioures, and ordeinede her eu*er*y day forto[16] wende into Engeland aȝeine; and so she had in her company S*ir*e Edmund of Wodestoke, þat was Erl of Kent, þat was Kyng[17] Edwardes broþ*er* of Engeland.

20 [18]**How Kyng Edward lete kepe þe costes bi[19] þe see, & lete t*r*ie alle the p*r*is men of Armes & footmen also þrouȝ al[20] Engel*and*. Cap*itul*o CC^o^ vj^to^.[18]**

24 WHen Kyng Edward herde telle þat þe Quene Is*abel* and Edward hir sone [21]wolde come[21] into Engeland wiþ meny Alien*us*, and wiþ ha*m* þat were outlawede out of Engeland for her rebelnesse, he was sore adrade to bene[22] put adoune and lese his kyngdome. Wherfore he ordeynede forto kepe his castelles,[23] in
28 Walis as wel as in Engeland, wiþ vitailles and her app*ar*ale, and lete kepe his ryuers, and also þe see costes, wherof þe v Portes token to kepe ham, & also þe see. ¶ And also he co*m*mandede ferþ*er*more, &[24] by his lettres ordeynede, þat eu*er*y hundred &
32 wapentache[25] of Engeland, ij triors,[26] as wel of me*n* of Armes as of

[1] tak D. take O. [2] token DO. [3] lord þe O. Lord R.
[4] p*r*iueliche D. [5] comen D. [6] *om.* D.
[7]—[7] now make D. makeþ ȝow O. [8] ben O. [9] rycher D. richere O.
[10] *om.* DO. [11] barelles ful D. bareH ful O. [12] forto DO. for R.
[13] *leaf* 136, *back.* [14] ȝow DO. [15] to DO. [16] to O.
[17] s*ir*e O. [18]—[18] *om.* O. [19] of D. [20] out D.
[21]—[21] were comen D. [22] be O. [23] casteH D.
[24] ferþermore & O. ferþ*er*more R. [25] Wapentage DO. [26] *MS.* trions.

[1]men of foote,[1] and þat þai shulde bene[2] put in[3] tuentysome and in hundredesome; and commandet þat al þo men wer' aredy, when eny outesse and crie wer' made, forto pursue and tak þe Aliens þat comen into Engeland forto binime him þe land', and forto put him 4 out of his kyngdome. ¶ And more-ouer' he lete crie, þrouȝ his patent, [4]in euery faire and in euery marcat of Engeland', þat þe Quene Ysabell, and Sir' Edward his eldest sone, and þe Erl of Kent, þat þai were take, and safly kepte, wiþout[5] eny maner of[6] harme 8 vnto ham doyng'; and alle oþer[7] peple þat come wiþ ham, anone smyte of her' heuedes,[8] wiþout eny maner[9] raunsoñ. ¶ And what man þat might bryng[10] Rogeres heede, þe[11] Mortymer', of Wigemore, shulde haue a[12] C li of monee for his trauaile. And 12 ferþermore he ordeynede by his patent, & commande,[13] to mak a fire on[14] euery hye hull bisides[15] þe ryuers and in low contres, forto make hye bikenes of tymbre, þat if it so were þat þe Aliens come to[16] þe lande by nyght, þat men shulde[17] tende[18] þe bikenes, þat þe 16 contre miȝt ben[19] warnede, and come and mete her' enemys. And in þe same tyme deide Sir' Roger [20]Mortymer, his[20] Vncle, in þe Toure of Londoñ.

How[21] Quene Isabell & Sir' Edward', Duc of Gyene, her'[22] Sone, 20 come to land' at[23] Herwiche; [24]and how þai deden.[24] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Septimo.

THe Quene Isabell and Sir' Edward hir' sone, Duc of Gyene, Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok, Erl of Kent,[25] and Sir' Iohñ þe 24 Erles[26] broþer of Henaud', and her'[27] company, drade nouȝt þe manace of þe Kyng' ne of his traitoures, for þai truste al in Godes grace, & come vnto Herwiche in Southfolc, þe x day [28]in þe mounthe[28] of Ottobr', And in[29] þe ȝere of grace[30] M' CCC[31] xxvj. 28 ¶ And at[32] þe same tyme, [33]at Londoñ, þere was Kyng Edward'[33]

[1—1] foote men D. men on foote O. [2] be O. [3] into D.
[4] *leaf* 137. [5] with-outen D. [6] *om.* DO.
[7] oþere maner D. oþer maner O. [8] heed' O.
[9] *MS.* maner reso, *with* reso *underlined for omission; om.* DO.
[10] bryng sire D. brynge sir O. [11] *om.* O. [12] an DO.
[13] commanded' O. [14] oppoñ D. vpon O. [15] beside O.
[16] vnto DO. [17] schul O. [18] light D. [19] be DO.
[20—20] Mortymeres D. [21] How þe DO. [22] his O. [23] to O.
[24—24] *om.* O. [25] erl of Kent D. Erle of' Kent O. erl R.
[26] *MS.* erles douȝter, *with* douȝter *underlined for omission.*
[27] he *sic* D. [28—28] *om.* D. [29] *om.* D. [30] grace a O.
[31] iij *sic* D. [32] in D.
[33—33] Kyng Edward was at Londoñ D. Kyng Edward was at London O.

in[1] the Toure at his metee; and a messenger[2] come into þe haH,
[3]and saide þat[4] Que[en] IsabeH was come*n*[5] to lande at[6] Herewiche,
and hade brouȝt in her company S*ir*e Iohn̄ of Henaude, and wiþ
4 him me*n* of armes wiþoute nombre. And wiþ þat worde, Sir
Hugh þe Spens*er*, þe fader, spake &[7] þus to þe Kyng saide[8]:
"my most worshipful Lorde,[9] Kyng of Engel*and*, now mow[10] ȝe
make gode chere, for ce*r*teinly þai ben al oures." ¶ The Kyng saw
8 þis worde comfortable; ȝitte he was ful sorweful & pensif in hert.
And þe Kyng hade nouȝt ȝitte fulliche[11] ete*n*,[12] þat þe*r*e ne come
into þe halle anoþ*er* messag*er*, and saide þat þe[8] Quene Is*abel* was
arryuede at Herewich, bisides Skipwich[13] in Southfolc. Sir Hugh
12 þe[8] Spens*er*, þe fader, spake[14] to þe messag*er*, and saide: "telle þe[8]
soþ in goode fay,[15]" q*uod* he to þe messag*er*, "my faire frende, is
she comen[5] wiþ a grete strengþ?" ¶ "Ce*r*tis, sir, soþ forto say,
she haþ[16] in her co*m*pany but vij C̄ men of Armes." And wiþ þat
16 worde, S*ir*e Hughe þe Spens*er*, þe fader, c*r*iede wiþ an hye voice,
and saide: "Allas, Allas! we [17]beþ alle[17] bit*r*aiede; for certes wiþ
so litil power she [18]nad neu*er* comen[18] to londe, but folc of þis
lande were to her consentede.[19]" And þe*r*fore, after mete þai
20 toke[20] her conseile, and went toward Walys, forto arere þe Walshe-
men aȝeins Quene IsabeH and Edwarde her sone, al forto fight;
and so þai were in p*ur*pos, eu*er*ycheon̄.[21]

How Maistre Walt*er* of[9] Stapleton̄, Bisshop of Excestre, þat
24 **was þe Kyng*us* Tresorer, was biheuedede[22] at London̄.**
Capit*ulo* Ducent*esimo* Ottauo.

AND in þe same tyme, Kyng Edward was sore adrade leste men
of London̄ wolde ȝelde ham [23]vnto[24] þe Quene Isabel and to Sir
28 Edward her[25] sone. Wherfore he sent maistre Walt*er* of[9] Stapleton̄,
his Tresorer, forto bene[26] wardein and keper of þe citee of London̄
wiþ þe Mair. and so he come to þe GildehaH of London̄, and axede
þe keies of þe ȝates of þe citee, þrouȝ ve*r*tue and strengh of his co*m*-
32 mission̄, and wolde haue hade þe Kepyng of þe citee. ¶ And þe
co*m*munes[27] ansurede and saide, þat 'þai wolde kepe þe citee to þe

[1] þe *sic* D. [2] Messager O. [3] *leaf* 137, *back*. [4] þat þe O.
[5] come O. [6] *MS.* &. [7] & seyde O. [8] *om.* O.
[9] *om.* D. [10] *MS.* mow mow. [11] ful D. [12] ete O.
[13] Gypeswych O. [14] spake þo O. [15] feþ D. [16] ne had O.
[17–17] ben O. [18–18] had neu*er*e come O.
[19] consent D. consente O. [20] nome D. [21] echeon O.
[22] beheded O. [23] *leaf* 138. [24] to D. [25] his D. [26] be DO
[27] Comuners O.

hono*ur* of[1] Kyng Edward, and of Is*abel* þe Quene, and of þe Duc, þe Kyng*us* sone, wiþouten[2] eny mo.' ¶ þe Bisshop was þo sore annoiede, and suore his oth þat þai alle shulde abie, anone as þe Kyng were come[3] out of Walys; and þe co*m*muners[4] anoñ,[5] alle[6] 4
of þe citee, toke[7] þe Bisshop*e*, and lade him amid[8] Chepe; and þ*er*e þai smyten[9] of his heuede,[10] & sette [11]his heede[11] in his right hand; and aft*er*, þai biheuedede[12] ij of his Squyers þat helde wiþ þe Bisshope; and one of ha*m* me callede Willia*m* of Walle, þat was 8
þe Bisshoppes Nevew; & þat oþ*er* me callede Iohñ of Padyngtoñ. and also þai toke a burgeis of Londoñ, þat me callede Iohñ Marchal, þat was Sir Hugh þe Spens*er*s aspie, þe fader, and smyten of his heede[13] also. 12

¶ And in þat[14] same tyme þat[15] same Bisshop hade in Londoñ a fair Toure in making, in his cloos oppoñ þe ryuer of Tamise, þat was wiþout þe[6] Te*m*ple-Barr, and him failede stone forto[16] make þ*er*of an ende; wherfore he co*m*mandede his men forto gone[17] to 16
þe cherche of þe Frere Carmes; and þ*er*e þai toke[18] stone, [19]and made þ*er*wiþ þe tour[19]; and miche sande and[20] morter, and olde robons[21] þ*er* was lefte. ¶ And for [22]þe despite þat þe Bisshop Hade done to[23] holy cherche,[24] he and his ij squyers were buriede in þat 20
sande, as þauȝ[5] þai hade bene hondes; and þ*er*e þai leyen xj wokes til þat þe[5] Quene Is*abel* sent her *lett*res to þe co*m*muners,[25] and p*r*aiede ham þat þai wolde soffre and g*r*ant þat þe Bisshop moste bene[26] take out of þat place, &[27] buriede at Excestr, at his owen 24
cherche; and so he was; and his ij squyers were buriede at seynt Clementis cherche wiþout Te*m*ple-Barr.

¶ And Hit was [28]nouȝt ful g*r*ete[28] wonder þauȝ þat Bisshop deide in euel deþ, for he was a couetouse man, and hade wiþ him 28
no mercy, and euel conseilede þe Kyng. And sone þ*er*eaft*er*[29] was Arnold of Spaigne taken, he þat was assentant to haue ladde þo[30] v M+ ti of Siluer in v barelles[31] ferers vnto þe Dussipiers of Fr*a*unce, forto helpe and haste the[5] Quene Is*abel* to hir deþ, & Edward her 32
sone also: and þis Arnolde was done vnto þe[32] deþ wiþout þe citee of Londoñ.

[1] of þe O. [2] with-out D. with-oute O. [3] comen D.
[4] co*m*mun*e*rs alle O. [5] *om.* D. [6] *om.* O. [7] to *sic* O.
[8] in myddes þe D. [9] smyte O. [10] heed O. [11—11] it D.
[12] beheded O. [13] heuede D. [14] þe O. [15] þe D. [16] to DO.
[17] go O. [18] token DO. [19—19] þ*er*with þe Toure to make O.
[20] *MS.* and &. [21] Robons þ*a*t O. [22] *leaf* 138, *back.* [23] vnto O.
[24] *MS. has* cherche and. [25] co*m*munes D. [26] be O.
[27] and bene D. & be O. [28—28] no DO. [29] after O. [30] þe D.
[31] bareH O. [32] *om.* DO.

How Kyng Edwardꝑ and Sirꝑ Hugh þe Spens*er* were taken, and þe Erl of Arundel. Capit*ulo* CCº ixº.

WHen Kyng Edwardꝑ hade sent Maistre Walt*er* [1]of Stapletoñ,[1] his Tresorerꝑ, into Londoñ, forto kepe þe citee vnto
4 him aȝein[2] þe[3] Quene Is*abel* his wif, & aȝeyn[4] Edwardꝑ herꝑ[5] sone, ano*n* him-self [6]tokꝑ wiþ hi*m*[6] S*ir* Hugh þe Spens*er*[7] þe fader, and [8]S*ir* Hugh[8] his sone, & Sirꝑ Iohñ, Erl of ArundeH, & Maistre Rob*er*t
8 Baldokꝑ, [9]a false pilede clerc, his Chaunchellerꝑ,[9] and [10]toke here[10] way towarde Bristowe; And þ*er*e þe Kyngꝑ abode a litil [11]t*er*me, and made Sirꝑ Hugh þe Spenserꝑ þe faderꝑ, [12]Keper and Conestable[12] of þe castel. And þe Kyngꝑ and þe oþ*er* aboue-saide went into
12 shipp, and sailede towardꝑ Walys, and toke no leue of þe Stywardꝑ, ne of none of[13] þe Kynges Householde; and went ou*er* into Walys forto arere þe Walshe-me*n* aȝeynes Dame Is*abel* þe Quene, & [14]Edwardꝑ, Duc[14] of Gyene, herꝑ sone, & her co*m*pany. ¶ But þe
16 Quene, & þe Duc herꝑ sone, and þe Erl of Kent, and Sirꝑ Iohñ of Henaude,[15] went and p*ur*suede afterꝑ ham; and herꝑ powerꝑ come and encressede eu*er*y day; so at þe laste þe Kyng was taken[16] oppoñ an[17] hulle in Walys, and Sirꝑ Hugh þe Spens*er* þe sone, in þat oþ*er*
20 side of þat[18] same huH, and þe false pilede clerc, ¶ Maistre Rob*er*t of Baldokꝑ, þ*er*e fast bisides ham, and were brouȝt aȝeyne into Engelandꝑ, as Almighty God wolde. And þe Kyng him-self[3] was in saf kepyngꝑ in þe casteH of Kenyworth; and hi*m* kepte S*ir*
24 Henry, þat was Seint[3] Thomas broþ*er* of Lancastre.

& S*ir* Hugh þe Spenserꝑ þe faderꝑ come and put hi*m* vnto[19] þe Quenes grace, and to Sirꝑ Edward herꝑ sone, Duc of Gyene. ¶ But S*ir* Hugh þe Spens*er* [8]þe sone,[8] aft*er* þat[20] he was taken,[21] wolde[22]
28 ete no maner mete, ne[23] drynkꝑ [8]no man*er* drynkꝑ,[8] for he wist to haue no m*er*cy, but onelich[24] he wiste he shulde bene[25] dede. And þe Quene and herꝑ conseil[26] ordeynede þo[27] þat he shulde bene[28] done to deþ at Londoñ; but he was so feble for his michel[29]

[1–1] Mapletoñ D. [2] aȝens O. [3] *om.* D. [4] aȝeyne sir D. aȝens O.
[5] his D. [6–6] nome with D. [7] Spencers boþe O. [8–8] *om.* O.
[9–9] his Chanceller a false pilede clerc D. his Chaunceller a fals piledꝑ Clerkꝑ O.
[10–10] nomen he *sic* D. token her O. [11] *leaf* 139.
[12–12] as conestable and keperꝑ D. as Constable & kepere O. [13] in DO.
[14–14] duk Edwardꝑ D. [15] Henaude and þai D. Henaudꝑ & þey O.
[16] take O. [17] a O. [18] the D. [19] to D.
[20] þe tyme þat DO. [21] take O. [22] nolde D. he nolde O.
[23] ne*per* O. [24] only O. [25] be O.
[26] conseile hade þo D. CounceiH þo had O. [27] *om.* DO.
[28] haue be O. [29] miche D. myche O.

fastyng', þat he was dede almost for fastyng'; and *per*fore hit was
ordeynede þat he shulde haue his iugement at Hereford'[1]; and at
a place[2] of þe toune his [3]hode was taken[4] fra*m*[5] his heued',[6] and
also [7]fro Maistre Rob*er*t[7] Baldok,[8] þat was [9]a false pilede clerc,[9] 4
& þe Kyng*us* Chanceller'. And me*n* sette vppoñ her' Heuedes[10]
chapelettes of sharpe[11] netles, and ij squyers blow[12] in her' eres wiþ
ij g*r*ete bugles[13] hornes, oppoñ þo[14] ij p*r*isoners; and[15] me*n* might
her' þo[16] blowyng out wiþ hornes, mo þan a þousand' and one. 8
Symunde of Redyng',[17] bifore ha*m* bar' her' armes oppoñ a spere
reue*r*sede, in token þat[18] þai shulde be vndone for eu*er*more.

¶ And oppoñ þe morwe was Sir' Hugh þe[19] Spenser' þe sone
dampnede to deþ; and was draw and hongede, biheuedet, & his 12
boweiles taken out of his body, and [20]his bowelles[20] brent. And
aft*er* he was q*uarter*ede, & his q*uarter*es sent to iiij tounes of
Engel*and*, and his heuede[21] sent to Londoñ Brigge. And þis
Symo*nd*', for enchesoñ þat he despisede þe Quene Is*abel*, he was 16
draw and hongede on[22] a stage made[23] [24]in mydes[24] þe forsaide Sir'
Hughes galwes.[25] And þe same day, a litil fro þens, was Sir' Iohñ
of Arundel biheuede[26]; for he was on of Sir' Hugh þe Spensers
conseilers. And anone after wa[s] Sir' Hug[h] þe[19] Spenser' draw & 20
hongede, & biheuedede[27] at Bristow, and aft*er* hongede[28] aȝeyn bi
þe Armes bi[29] ij strong ropes; and þe iiij[30] day aft*er*, he was hew
al to peces; & hundes ete*n*[31] hi*m*. And for[23] þat enchesouñ þ*at* þe
Kyng' hade ȝeue*n*[32] [33]hi*m* þe Erldoñ[33] of Winchestre, his heede[34] 24
was lad þider', and put oppoñ a spere; and þe false Baldok' was sent
to Londoñ, & þ*er*e he deide in p*r*isone amonges[35] þeues, for men[36]
dede hi*m* no more reue*r*ence þan me wolde do[37] vnto an hunde:
and so deide[38] the t*r*aitours of Engeland', blissede be Almyghty 28

[1] Herford' D. [2] place of þe place *sic* D. [3] *leaf* 139, *back*.
[4] take O. [5] fro DO. [6] heed' O.
[7—7] fram Robert of D. from Rob*er*t of O. [8] Baldoks O.
[9—9] a piled' clerc and also þat was false D. a piled' Clerk' also þat was fals O. [10] hedes O.
[11] D *has* sharp þornes, *with* þornes *struck out with a red line*.
[12] blew O. [13] bugle O. [14] þe D.
[15] þat DO. [16] *þere* D. her O.
[17] Redyng' þe kynges Marchal D. Redyng þe kynges Marschall O.
[18] þan *sic* O. [19] *om.* D. [20—20] *om.* O. [21] hed O.
[22] in O. [23] *om.* O. [24—24] amyddes D. amyddo O.
[25] galhouse D. [26] biheuedede D. beheded' O. [27] byheded' O.
[28] hongen D. hanged O. [29] with DO. [30] fourþe O.
[31] ete O. [32] ȝeue O. [33—33] þe erl D. þe Erle O.
[34] heuede it D. heed' it O. [35] among O. [36] for men DO. for R.
[37] don O. [38] diden O.

Godꝑ! & [1]hit Was no wonder, for þrouȝ herꝑ conseil th[e] gode Erl Thomas of Lancastrꝑ [2]was done unto deth and al þat helden with Thomas of Lancastre[2] þrouȝ þo traitoures were vndoñ, and alle
4 herꝑ heires disheritede.[3]

How Kyng Edward was put adoune.[4] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Decimo.

ANon[5] afterꝑ þis was done, þe Quene Is*abel*, and Edwardꝑ hirꝑ
8 sone, and alle þe g*r*ete lordes of Engel*and*, at on assent sent to Kyng Edwardꝑ to þe castel of Kenylworþ, þ*er*e þat þe kyng was in kepyngꝑ vnderꝑ þe warde of Sirꝑ Iohñ Hothum, þat was þe[6] bisshop of Ely, & of S*ir* Iohñ of Parcy, a baroñ, for enchesouñ þat
12 he shulde ordein his p*ar*lement attꝑ a c*er*tein place in Engelandꝑ, forto redresse [and] amende þe state of þe ream. And Kyng Edwardꝑ ham ansuerede and saide: "Lordes," q*uod* he, "ȝe see[7] ful wel how hit is. Lo! haueþ herꝑ my seal. y ȝeue[8] ȝow my
16 powerꝑ to ordeine a p*ar*lement wherꝑ[9] ȝe wille." And þai toke[10] herꝑ leue of him,[11] and come aȝeyne to þe barons of Engelandꝑ, and whe*n*[12] þai hade þe Kyng*us* patent of þis þingꝑ, and þai shewede hit to[13] þe lordes, and þo was ordeynede þat þe p*ar*lement shulde be[14] at
20 Westmynstr*e*, at þe[15] Vtas of Seint Hillari. And alle þe g*r*ete lordes of Engel*and* lete ordein for ham þ*er*e aȝeins þat tyme þat þe p*ar*lement shulde bene.[16] ¶ And at þe[15] whiche day þat þe p*ar*lement was assignede,[17] þe Kyng wolde nouȝt come þ*er*e,[18] as he hade sette
24 himself and assignede. And noþelesse þe barons sent to him, on[19] tyme and oþ*er*, and he suore by Godes soule, þat he nolde come þ*er*e [20]on foote.[20] Wherfore hit was ordeynede by al þe grete lordes ofꝑ [21]Engelandꝑ, þat he Shulde no Longerꝑ bene[22] Kyngꝑ, but bene[23]
28 deposede; and saide þat[15] 'þai wolde c*r*one[24] Edwardꝑ his sone [25]Kyngꝑ, þe eldeste,[25] þat was Duk of Gyene'; and sent so tydynges[26] to þe Kyngꝑ þ*er*e þat he was in ward vnd*er* S*ir* Iohñ, Erl of

[1] *leaf* 140.
[2—2] *supplied from* D. was done vn-to deþ & alꝑ þat heldꝑ wiꝑh hym O.
[3] disherite D.
[4] adouñ and his dignite bynomen him D. a-doun) & his dignite bynome O.
[5] And D. [6] *om.* D. [7] sene O. [8] ȝeue DO. ȝe R.
[9] wher þat O. [10] nome D. [11] hem O. [12] þat þat *sic* D.
[13] vnto D. [14] bene D. [15] *om.* O. [16] be O.
[17] *om.* DO. [18] þ*er*e for no man*er* þingꝑ DO. [19] o DO.
[20—20] a foote D. o foote O. [21] *leaf* 140, *back.* [22] be O.
[23] be DO. [24] crovne kyng O. [25—25] þe elder kyngꝑ D. þe elderꝑ O.
[26] tydynge O.

Gerrein, and S*ir*e Iohñ of Bothun, þat was Bisshop of Ely, and Sir' Henry P*er*cy, barouñ,[1] and S*ir*e Willia*m* Trusseꝗ, a kny3t, þat was wiþ þe Erle Sir' Thomas of Lancastr', forto 3elde vp her' homages vnto him for aꝗ ha*m* of Engel*and*. ¶ And S*ir*e Willia*m* Trussel 4
saide þise wordes: "Sir' Edward'! for enchesoñ þat 3e haue t*rai*ede 3our' peple of Engeland', and haue vndone meny grete Lordes of Engel*and* wiþouten[2] eny cause, but now 3e beþ[3] wiþstand,—þankede be God'!—and also for[4] 3e wolde nou3t come to þe[5] p*ar*le- 8
ment as 3e ordeynede at Westmynstre, as in 3our' owen[5] Lettre patent is conteinede, forto trete wiþ 3our' lige me*n* as a Kyng shulde; and þ*er*fore, þrou3 aꝗ þe co*m*mune assent' of alle þe lordes of Engel*and*, y telle vnto 3ow þise wordes: ¶ 3e shul vnderstonde, 12
Sir', þat þe barons of Engel*and* atte on assent wille þat 3e bene[3] nomore Kyng of Engel*and*, but vtterly haueþ[6] put [7]3ow out[7] of 3our' realte for eu*er*more." ¶ And þe bisshop of Ely saide þo to þe Kyng', "Sir' Edwarde! here y 3elde vp feautes[8] & homage[9] for alle 16
þe Erchebisshopp*es* and Bisshopes of Engeland', and for al þe clergye." ¶ þo saide Sir' Iohñ, Erl of Garrein, "Sir' Edward[10]! y 3elde vp her'[5] vnto 3ow feaute and homage, for me, and for al þe Erles of Engeland." ¶ And Sir' Henry [11]þe[12] P*er*cy 3af vp also þ*er*e 20
his homag,[13] for him and for alle þe barons of Engeland'. ¶ And þo saide Sir' William Trussel: "y 3elde vp, [14]Sir', now[14] vnto 3ow my[15] homage, fo[r] me & also for alle þe kny3tes of Engeland', and for ha*m* alle þat holden by s*er*iauntrye[16] or by eny oþ*er* man*er* þing' 24
of' 3ow, so þat fro þis day aft*er*ward' 3e shulle nou3t be cleymede Kyng, neiþ*er* for Kyng' bene[3] holde; but fram[17] þis tyme aft*er*ward' 3e shul bene[3] holde a singuler ma*n* of aꝗ[12] þe peple." And so þai went þens vnto Londoñ, þ*er*e þat þe lordes of Engel*and* ha*m* 28
abode; and sir' Edward' abode in prysouñ vnder' gode[18] keping[19]; and þat was þe day of [20]þe Conu*er*sioñ[20] of seynt Poule in þe xx 3ere of his regne.

**Prophecie of M*er*lyn declarede of Kyng' Edward', þe sone of 32
Kyng[5] Edward'. Cap*itul*o CC vndecimo.**

[1] a barouñ D. a baron) O. [2] withoute O. [3] be O.
[4] for enchesoun þat D. for encheson) þat O. [5] *om.* O. [6] haue DO.
[7—7] out 3ow O. [8] feute O. [9] homages O. [10] Edward' here O.
[11] *leaf* 141. [12] *om.* D. [13] homages O.
[14—14] now sire D. now sir O. [15] myn DO. [16] seriauntye O.
[17] fro D. [18] þe D. [19] Kyng Edward' his sone O.
[20—20] Conu*er*sac*i*on O.

Of þis Kyng Edward, *pro*pheciede M*er*lyn, and saide þat þ*er*e shulde come a gote [1]out of a[1] car, þat shulde haue hornes of siluer and a berde as white as snowe; and a drop shulde come out
4 at[2] his noseþrelles þat shulde bitokne miche harme, hungre, and deþ of þe[3] peple, and gret losse of his lande; and þat in þe bigynnyng of his regne shulde ben[4] hauntede michel[5] lecherie; and saide soiþ, allas þe tyme! ffor Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Edward*us*
8 sone, þat was born[6] in Carnariuan in Walys, for soþ he hade Hornes as[2] siluer, and a berd as snowe, whe*n* he w*as* made Prynce of Walys, & to miche he ȝaf him vnto realte[7] and[8] folie. And soþ saide Merlyn in his p*ro*phecie [9]þat þ*er*e shulde come[10] out of
12 His nose a drop; ffor in his tyme was grete hung*er* amonges[11] þe pore me*n*, and stronge deþ amonge þe ryche, þat deiden[12] in st*ra*nge lande wiþ miche[13] sorw, and[14] in Scotland; and afterwarde he loste Scotland and Gascoigne; and whiles þat him-self was Kyng, þ*er*
16 was miche lecherie hauntede. and also M*er*lyn tolde and saide þat þis goote shulde seche þe floure of lif & of deþ; and he saide soþ, for he spousede Is*abel*, þe Kyng*us* douȝt*er* of Fr*a*unce.

¶ & in his tyme [15]M*er*lyn saide[15] þat þ*er*e shulde be made[16]
20 briges of folc oppoñ diches of þe see; and þat was ful wel sein at Bannokes-borñ in Scotland, whe*n* he was descomfitede þ*er*e[17] of þe Scottes. ¶ And M*er*lyn tolde also þat stones shulde falle fra*m*[18] castelles, and meny tounes shulde be made playn; and he saide
24 soþ, ffor when Kyng Edward was scomfitede in Scotland, and come þo Southward, þe Scottes bisegede castell*es*,[19] and dede ha*m* miche ha[r]me, and brent tounes vnto[20] þe herde erþe. ¶ And aftirward Merlyn [21]saide and tolde þat an Egle shulde come[21] out
28 of Cornwaile, þat shulde haue feþ*er*es of golde, þat of pride shulde haue non[22] pier, and shulde despice Lordes[23] of bloode, and aft*er* he shulde dye þrouȝ[24] a beer at Gauersiche: and þat p*ro*phecie was ful wel knowe,[25] ffor[16] by þe Egle is vnderstonde Sir[17] Piers of
32 Gauastoñ, þat was Erl of Cornewaile, þat was a wonder prout man

[1–1] of O. [2] of DO. [3] his D. *om.* O. [4] be O.
[5] mich D. mych O. [6] bore O. [7] ryout D. reaute O.
[8] & to O. [9] *leaf* 141, *back.* [10] be O. [11] amonge D. among O.
[12] deide D. dide O. [13] michel D. [14] and in werr D. & werre O.
[15–15] seid Merlyn O. [16] *om.* O. [17] *om.* D. [18] fro O.
[19] þe Castels O. [20] to D.
[21–21] tolde þat þ*er*e shulde come an Egle D. tolde þ*a*t an Egle schuld come O.
[22] no DO. [23] lordeshippes D. lordschippes O. [24] by D.
[25] know and founde soth D. knowe & founde soþ O.

þat dispisede þe baronage of Engel*and*; [1]but aftirward' he was biheuede[2] at Gauersiche, þrouȝ þe Erl of Lancastr' and þe Erl of Warwik'. ¶ And Merlyn tolde[3] þat in his tyme it[4] shulde seme þat þe bere shulde brenne, & þat a bataile shulde be[5] done[6] oppoñ 4 an Arme of þe See in[7] felde arraiede like a shilde, wher' shulde dye meny white heuedes[8]: & he saide soþ; for, by þe brynnyng' [9]of þe bere[9] is bitokenede grete drede þrouȝ cotting of suorde. at þat bataile, ordeynede in a felde as a shelde oppoñ an Arme of 8 þe see, is bitokenede þe bataile of Mitone. ffor þ*er*e come þe Scottes in man*er* of a shelde, [10]in maner' of a wynge,[10] and quellede oppoñ Swale, men of Religioun, p*r*estes & seculers; wherfor þe Scottes callede þat bataile, in despite of Englisshe-men, 'þe white 12 bataile.'

¶ And after', M*er*lyn saide þ*a*t þe forsaide Beer' shulde[11] do þe forsaide[4] goot miche harme, and þat shulde be[12] oppoñ þe[13] Southwest', and also oppoñ his bloode; and saide also þat þe goot 16 shulde lese miche[14] of his lande,[4] til þe[15] time þat shame shulde him ouercome; And þan he shulde [16]cloþe him in[16] a lyons skyn, and shulde wynne aȝeyne þat he hade loste, and miche more, þrouȝ a peple þat shulde come out of þe Northwest', þat shulde make him 20 bene[17] drade, and him avenge of his enemys, þrouȝ conseile of ij Oweles, þat ferst shulde be[18] in p*er*il to bene vndone; and þat þo ij oweles shulde wende ouer þe see into a str*a*unge [19]lande, and þ*er*e þai shulde duelle til[20] a c*er*tein time; and aft*er* þai shulde 24 come into Engel*and* aȝeyne, and þo ij oweles shulde done miche harme vnto meny oñ, and þat þai shulde conseile þe [21]goot to[21] meve werr' aȝeynes [þe] [22]Bere, and þat goot shulde come, and þe Oweles,[22] vnto an Arme of þe Se at Bur*ton* op Trent', and shulde 28 wende ou*er*, and þat for drede þe bere shulde flee, wiþ a swyne[23] in his co*m*pany, [24]vnto Bur',[24] toward' þe North,[25] þrouȝ an vnkynde out-puter'; and þat þe Swyn[26] þan shulde be slay[27] [28]with sorwe; and þe bere shulde be slayn[28] ful neiȝ his owen nest', þat shal[29] 32

[1] *leaf* 142. [2] beheded' O. [3] saide D. [4] *om.* D. [5] ben D.
[6] do O. [7] in a DO. [8] heedes O. [9–9] *MS.* of þe bere of the bere.
[10–10] with her' wynges D. [11] *MS.* shulde shulde. [12] ben O.
[13] *MS.* þe North, *with* North *underlined for omission*; *om.* D.
[14] miche del D. myche dele O. [15] þat D.
[16–16] be cloþen him with D. [17] be O. [18] bene D.
[19] *leaf* 142, *back.* [20] to D. [21–21] goot' forto DO. bere to R.
[22–22] forseide and þat þe goot and þe oweles shulde come D. forseid bere & þat þe goot & þe owles shuld' come O.
[23] Swan O. [24–24] *om.* D. [25] North vnto Bur' D. [26] swan DO
[27] slayne D. slayn O. [28–28] *om.* D. [29] schuld' O.

stonde oppoñ Pountfrett', vppoñ wha*m* þe sone shal[1] shede his
beemes, & meny folc him shal[1] seche for þe miche ve*r*tue. and
he saide ful soþ; ffor þe gode Erl Thomas of Lancastr' was born[2]
4 in þe Northwest', and cosyn to þe Kyng', sone of his vncle; and
by lawe he made þe Kyng lese miche lande þe whiche he hade
p*ur*chasede[3] wel foliche,[3] til at þe laste þe Kyng' þe*r*of tok shame,
and him-self fillede wiþ cruelte; and after he gate aȝeyne þat he
8 hadde lost', and miche more, þrouȝ folc þat he lete assemble out of
þe Northwest', þat made him to bene adrade,[4] and avengede[5] him
of his barons,[6] þrou conseile of Sir' Hugh̄ þe Spens*er* [7]þe fader,
and of Sir' Hugh[7] his sone, þat biforne[8] were outlawede out[9] of
12 Engel*and* for her' wickidnesse. ¶ But aft*er*ward' come aȝeyne into
Engel*and* Sir' Hughe þe Spens*er* the fader, out of Fr*a*unce, and so
miche conseilede the [10]Kyng' þat He Shulde Werr' oppoñ Thomas,
erl of Lancastr', so þat þe Kyng and þe Spensers, and þe Erl of
16 Arundel and her power, mete wiþ Thomas of Lancastr' atte Burtoñ
op Trent, and him þe*r*e desco*m*fitede; and[11] Hunfrai, erl of
Hereford',[12] was in her'[13] co*m*pany. and' aft*er*, fledde[14] þe forsaide
Thomas and Hunfray, wiþ her' company at Burbrig', wiþ sir'
20 Andrew of Herkela, þat is callede[15] þe vnkynde out-putter', and
also sir' Symond' Warde, Shirref[16] of ȝork': þai come and mette wiþ
Thomas of Lancastre wiþ an huge co*m*pany, and ha*m*[17] þe*r*e descom-
fitede. and in þat Scomfit*ur*e þe Erl of Hereford'[18] w*a*s slayn oppoñ
24 þe brige, cowardly, wiþ a spere, in the fundement; and þe Erl
Thomas was taken[19] & ladde vnto Pountfrett; and þe*r*[20] he was
biheuedede[21] bisides his owen castel. But aftirward, many a[22]
man hi*m* souȝt, for miracles þat God' dede for him.
28 ¶ And in þat tyme Merlyn saide for sorwe and harme [shuld
die][23] a peple of his land', wherfore meny landes shulde bene [24]on
him þe bolder'[24]: and he saide soþ, ffor by enchesouñ of his barouns
þat were [25]done vnto þe deþ for[25] Seint Thomas loue[26] of Lancastre,
32 peple of meny londes bicome[27] þe bolder' forto meve werr' aȝeyns[28]
þe Kyng', for her bloode was t*ur*nede into[29] meny naciouns.

[1] schuld' O. [2] bore O. [3—3] ful falsely D. wilfullich O. [4] drade D.
[5] vengede D. venged' O. [6] enemys D. [7—7] & O. [8] before O.
[9] *om.* D. [10] *leaf* 143. [11] and sir' DO. [12] Herford' DO. [13] his DO.
[14] fledden DO. [15] *MS. has* callede Sir' Andrew of Herkela þat is callede.
[16] erl D. Erle O. [17] hy*m* O. [18] Herford DO. [19] take O.
[20] þo O. [21] beheded' O. [22] *om.* DO. [23] *om. in all three MSS.*
[24—24] oppoñ him D. vpon he*m* þe boldere O.
[25—25] *om.* D. done to deth for O. [26] querel D. querell O.
[27] becomen O. [28] oppoñ D. vpon O. [29] to DO.

¶ And afterward Merlyn tolde and saide þat þe forsaide Oweles shulde done[1] miche harme vnto þe flour of lif & of deþ, & þai shulde [2]bring Her vnto[3] miche disese, so þat she shulde wende ou*er* þe[4] see into Fraunce for to make pees[5] to þe flour de lice, 4 and þ*er*e she shulde abide til a[6] tyme þat her seede shulde come & seche her; and þ*er*e þai shulde abide[7] til a tyme þat þai shulde cloþen[8] ha*m* wiþ g*ra*ce; and þo ij Oweles she[9] shulde seche, and put ha*m* vnto Spitouse[10] deþ. and þat p*ro*phecie was wel knowen[11] 8 and was ful soþ; for, Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, and [12]sir Hugh[12] þe sone, dede[13] miche sorwe and p*er*secucion vnto þe Quene Is*abel*, þrouȝ her p*ro*curment, to her Lorde þe Kyng. ¶ and so þai ordeinede amonges ha*m* þat she was put vnto hir wages, þat is to 12 seyn, xxs on[14] þe day. Wherfore þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce, her broþ*er*, was wonder sore[15] annoiede, and sent into Engel*and* by his l*ett*res[16] vnto Kyng Edward, þat he[17] shulde come to[18] his p*ar*lement to Parys in[19] Fr*a*unce; but Kyng Edward was sore adrade forto 16 come þ*er*e, for he wende to bene arest til þat he hade made Gode[4] for þe t*re*spasse þat þe Spens*er*s hade done, and also grete harme þat þai hade done vnto þe[20] Quene Is*abel*, his sostre[21]: Wherfore, þrouȝ here ordenance & her consent of þe Spensers, the Quene Is*abel* 20 went ouer þe see into Fr*a*unce, forto make accorde bituene Kyng Edward and þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce, hir broþ*er*. ¶ And þ*er*e duellede she in Fr*a*unce til[22] Edward, her Eldeste sone, come her to[23] seche; and so þai duelled [24]þ*er*e boþe til þat Aliaunce was 24 made bituene Ha*m* and þe gentil Erl of Henaud, þat if þai wiþ his[25] helpe mygh[t] destroi and ouercome þe venyme and the falsenesse of þe Spensers, þat Sir Edward shulde spouse Dame Philipp, þe worshipful lady,[26] þe Erles Dought*er* of Henaud. ¶ wherfore þe 28 Quene Is*abel*, and Sir Edward her [son], and Sir Edmund of Wodestok, þe Kynges broþ*er* of Engeland, and Sir Iohn of Henaud, and Sir Rog*er* Mortymer of Wygemore, and Sir Thomas Rocelyn, and sir Iohn of Cromwel, and S*ir*e Willia*m* Trusseh, and 32 meny oþ*er*e of þe Aliaunce of þe gentil Erle Thomas of Lancastre,

[1] do O. [2] *leaf* 143, *back.* [3] into DO. [4] *om.* D.
[5] *MS.* pees bituene, *with* bituene *underlined for omission.*
[6] on D. on a O. [7] abide boþe D. [8] cloþe O. [9] she DO. he R.
[10] pitous O. [11] know D. knowe O. [12—12] *om.* O. [13] deden O.
[14] in DO. [15] sore O. sone R. [16] lettre D. [17] sche O.
[18] vnto O. [19] into O. [20] *om.* O.
[21] *MS.* sostres, *with the last* s *underlined for omission.* [22] til þat O.
[23] forto D. [24] *leaf* 144. [25] his D. here R. [26] lady and DO.

þat wer' exilede out of Engeland[1] for his querelle, and wer'[2] disheritede[3] of her' londes, ordeynede ham a[4] grete power', and arryuede[5] at Herewiche in Southfolc. and sone after'[6] þai
4 pursuede[7] þe Spensers til þat þai wer' take[8] and put vnto spitouse[9] deþ, as bifore is saide, and her' company, and also for þe[10] grete falsenesse þat þai deden[11] vnto Kyng' Edward & to[12] his peple.

¶ And Merlyn saide also more, þat þe goote shulde bene[13] put
8 into grete disese; & in grete anguisshe & in grete sorwe he shulde lede[14] his lif'. and he saide soþ: for after þe tyme þat Kyng Edward was tak', he was put into warde til þat þe Spensers were put vnto deþ. ¶ and also, for enchesoñ þat he wolde nouȝt come
12 vnto[15] his owen parlement at Londoñ, as he had ordeyned and assignede him-self', and to his [16]Baronage,[17] and also wolde nouȝt gouerne ne[18] reule his peple ne his reaume as a kyng shulde done, somme of þe barons of Engeland come[19] & ȝelden vp her' homage[20]
16 vnto him, for ham[21] and for alle þe oþer of þe reaume, in þe day of [22]þe Conuersioun[22] of Seint Poule, and in þe ȝer' of his regne xx; and þai put him out of his realte for euermore; & euer' he leuede his lif' aftirward in miche sorw and anguisse.

20 **Of Kyng' Edward þe þridde[23] after þe conquest. Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Duodecimo.**

AND after þis Kyng Edward of Carnariuan, regnede Sire Edward of Wyndesore his sone, þe whiche was cronede
24 Kyng, and annoyntede, at Westminster, þrouȝ consent and wille of alle þe grete Lordes of [24]þe reaume,[24] þe Sonday in[25] Candelmasse eve of oure Lady, In þe ȝer' of grace M' CCC[26] xxvi, þat was þat tyme of age but xv ȝer'. [27]and for enchesoun þat[27] his fader' was
28 in warde in þe castel of Kenylworþ, and eke was put doun of his realte, þe reaume of Engeland was as wiþout Kyng', fro þe feste of Seynt Kateryne in þe ȝer' aboue-saide, vnto þe fest of Candelmasse;

[1] Engeland and Sir Iohñ of Henaude and Sir Roger Mortymere D.
[2] weren O. [3] disherite D. disherited O. [4] *om.* O.
[5] arryueden O. [6] afterward DO. [7] pursueden O. [8] taken DO.
[9] pitous O. [10] her O. [11] dede O. [12] *om.* D. [13] be O.
[14] lese D. [15] to DO. [16] *leaf* 144, *back.*
[17] A bere *is written in the margin at the head of this page, in a different* (?) *hand.*
[18] and DO. [19] comen O. [20] homages DO. [21] him D.
[22–22] Conuersacion O.
[23] þirde O. [24–24] Engeland D. [25] on D. [26] CCC & O.
[27–27] *MS.* and for enchesoun þat and for enchesoun þat.

and þo were [1]al maner[1] pleeȝ of þe Kyng*us* Benche astent'. ¶ And
þo was co*m*mandede to alle þe shirreffes of Engel*and* þoruȝ write[2]
to warne þe p*a*rtieȝ defendandȝ þrouȝ somp[n]ing' aȝein, and also
ferþ*er*more þat alle þe p*r*isoners þat were in þe Kyng*us* Gayole þat 4
were atachede þrouȝ shirrefs shulde [3]be Late go quiet. ¶ The Kyng
Edward', after' His coronaciouñ, at þe[4] prier' and biseching' of his
lieges of' þe reaume, g*ra*untede[5] a chart*re* of stedefast pees to alle
ham þat wolde it[6] axe. ¶ And S*ir*e Iohñ of Henaude and his 8
co*m*pany toke[7] his leue of þe Kyng and of þe lordes of his[8] reaume,
& t*ur*nede home to her' owen contre aȝeyn; and eu*er*yche[9] of ha*m*
hade ful riche ȝiftes, eu*er*y ma*n* as he w*as* of value and of State.
¶ And' þo was Engeland' in pees and in[10] rest', & grete loue[11] 12
bituene þe Kyng and his lordes; and co*m*muneliche[12] Englisshemen saide among*us* ham þat þe deuel was dede. ¶ But þe t*re*sour'
of þe Kyng his fader', and[13] of the Spensers, boþ of þe fader' and
of[4] þe sone, and þe t*re*sou*r* of þe Erl[14] of Arundel, and of Maistre 16
Rob*er*t[15] Baldok' þat was þe Kyng*us* chaunceller', was dep*ar*tede
after' þe Quene Is*abels* ordenaunce, and Sir' Rog*er* Mortymer' of
Wigemore, so þat þe Kyng' hade noþing þ*er*of but at her' wille and
her' deliu*er*aunce, neiþ*er* of hir' landes, as aft*er*ward' ȝe shul here 20
more openly.

How Kyng Edward' went to Stanhop forto mete þe Scottes. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ xiij.

ANd ȝitte[4] in þe same tyme was Kyng Edward' in þe castel of 24
Kenylworth, vnder' þe kepyng of Sir' Henry þat was Erl
Thom*as* broþ*er* of Lancastr', þat þo was Erl of [Leycestre; and þe
Kyng g*ra*ntede him the erldome of][16] Lancastre þat þe Kyng' hade
seisede into his hande, and put out Thomas of Lancastre his 28
broþ*er*, and þo was he[17] Erl of Lancastre & [18]of Leicestre, and eke
Stiward of Engeland', as his broþ*er* was in his tyme. ¶ but Sir'
Edward, þat was Kyng Edwardes fader,[19] made sorw wiþouten[20]
ende, for cause þat he might nouȝt speke wiþ his wif' ne wiþ his 32
Sone; wherfor hit was miche meschief[21]; ffor þauȝ hit were so þat

[1–1] alle þe D.
[2] Engeland' þoruȝ write D. Engelond' þurgh writte O. Engel*and* R.
[3] *leaf* 145. [4] *om.* O. [5] *gra*untede ham D. graunted' hem O.
[6] him D. [7] nome DO. [8] the D. þe O. [9] eche O.
[10] *om.* DO. [11] loue was D. [12] Comenly O.
[13] and þe t*re*sour' D. & þe tresour O. [14] erles DO.
[15] *MS.* Rob*er*t Robert. [16] *supplied from* D. [17] þe *sic* O.
[18] *leaf* 145, *back.* [19] *MS.* fader fader'. [20] with-oute O. [21] nedfuł O.

he were[1] ladde & reulede þrouȝ[2] false conseile, ȝitte[3] he was Kyng Edward*us* sone, & come[4] of þe worþiest bloode of al[5] þe worlde; and þilk' to whom he was [6]wonede forto[6] ȝeue grete ȝiftes and
4 large, were[7] most pryue wiþ þe Kyng, his owen sone; and þai were his enemys boþe by nyght and by day, and p*r*ocurede forto make debate and contak bituene him and his sone, and Is*abel* his wif. but þe ffrer' P*r*echoures to him were gode frendes eu*er*more,[8] and
8 caste and ordeynede, boþe nyght and day, how þai might bryng him out of p*r*isoñ. ¶ And amonge her' co*m*pany þat þe ffreres p*r*iueliche[9] hade brouȝt, þe*r*e was a ffrere þat me callede Dunheuede[10]; and he hade ordeynede an[d] gaderede a grete company
12 of folc forto helpe at þat nede; but þe ffrere was take a[nd] put into þe castel of Pountfrett', and þ*er* he deide in p*r*isone. ¶ And S*ir* Henry, Erl of Lancastr', þat hade þe [11]Kyng*us* fader[11] in kepyng', þrouȝ[12] co*m*mandement of þe Kyng, delyue*r*ede Edward,
16 þe King*us* fader, by endentur' vnto S*ir*e Thomas of Berkelee, and to Sir' Iohñ Mautrauers; & þai lad him fram[13] þe casteH of Kenylworth vnto þe casteH of Berkelee, [14]and kepte him þ*er*e safly.[15] ¶ And at Este[r] nexte after' his coronaciouñ, þe Kyng ordeynede
20 an huge host forto feiȝt aȝeins[16] þe Scottes; and Sir' Iohñ, þe Erles broþ*er* of Henaud', from[17] byȝonde þe see, come forto helpe Kyng' Edward', and brouȝt wiþ him[18] v C̄ men of Armes, and arryuede at Douer'; and þai hade leue forto gone[19] forth til þat[18] þai [20]come
24 vnto[20] ȝork', þ*er*e þat þe Kyng abode ham. ¶ And þe Scottes come*n*[21] þider' vnto þe Kyng forto make pees and accorde, but þe accordement bituene ha*m* laste but a[22] litel while.[23] and at þat tyme þe Englisshe-men were cloþe[24] alle in cotes & hodes, peyntede[25] wiþ
28 let*t*res & wiþ[22] floures ful sembli,[26] wiþ longe berdes; and þ*er*fore þe Scotes made a bille þat was fastenede oppoñ þe cherche dores of Seint Peres[27] toward Stangate. & þus saide þe Scripture in despite of the[18] Englisshe-men ¶ **Longe berde hertles, peyntede Hode**
32 **witles, Gay cote graceles, makeþ[28] Engl[i]ssheman[29] þriftles.**

¶ And on[5] þe Trinite day next [30]comyng, biganne[30] þe contak

[1] was O. [2] by DO. [3] þit *sic* D. [4] comen O. [5] *om.* DO.
[6—6] wont D. wonte to O. [7] weren O. [8] for euermore D.
[9] p*r*iuely D. pryuyly O. [10] Donebat O.
[11—11] fader of þe Kyng O. [12] þurgh þe O. [13] fro O.
[14] *leaf* 146. [15] falsly O. [16] with D. [17] fro DO. [18] *om.* D.
[19] go O. [20—20] comen to D. [21] come O.
[22] *om.* O. [23] tyme DO. [24] cloþede D. clothed' O.
[25] y-peynted' O. [26] semely DO. [27] Petre D. *om.* O.
[28] makes DO. [29] Englond O. [30—30] sewyng' big *sic* D.

in þe citee of ȝorkꝰ bytuene þe Englisshemen and þe Henaudres. and in þat debate were quellede of þe Erldom of Nichole and Mordrede, xx iiij; and after, þai werꝰ buriede vnderꝰ a stone in Seynt Clementis cherche haw in Fossegate. And for enchesouñ þat þe Henaudres 4 come[1] forto helpe þe Kyngꝰ, hirꝰ pees was[2] criede, oppoñ payne of lif and lime. and in þat oþere Half, it was [3]fonden[4] by enquest of þe citee, þat þe Englisshe-men biganne þe debate.

How þe Englisshe-men Stoppede þe Scottes in þe parkꝰ of 8 Stanhope, and How þai turnede aȝeyne into[5] Scotlandꝰ. Capitulo CC xiiij.

ANd at þat tyme þe Scottes hade assemblede al her powerꝰ, and come[6] into Engeland, and quellede & robbede alle þat þai 12 might tak,[7] and brent and destroiede al þe North contre þrouȝ-out, til [8]þai come[8] to þe Parke of Stanhope in Wyredale: and þer þe Scottes helde ham in a busshement. ¶ But whe[n] þe Kyngꝰ hade herde þrouȝ certeyne aspieȝ wherꝰ þe Scottes were, anone right wiþ 16 his host he bisegede þe forsaide park, so þat þe Scottes wiste neuer wherꝰ forto goñ out, but onliche[9] vnto herꝰ armes, and þai abiden in þe parke xv daies; and vitailes ham failede on[10] euery side, so þat þai werꝰ gretly empeyrede of herꝰ[11] bodyes. ¶ And siþ þat Brut 20 come ferst into[12] Britaigne, vnto þis tyme, was neuerꝰ seyne seþenes[13] so fairꝰ an host, what of Englisshemen and of Aliens, and of men on foot,[14] whiche ordeyned ham forto feiȝt wiþ þe Scottes, þrouȝ egging of Sire Henry, Erl of Lancastrꝰ, and of Sirꝰ Iohn of[15] 24 Henaude, þat wolde haue gone ouer þe water of Wythe forto haue fouȝt wiþ þe Scottes; but Sirꝰ Roger of Mortymerꝰ consentede nouȝt þerto, for he hade priueliche[16] tak[17] mede ofꝰ þe Scottes, ham forto helpe, þat þai myght wende aȝeyne into hirꝰ owen contre. ¶ And 28 þe[18] same Mortymer counseilede miche[19] Thomas of Broþertoñ, þat þe Erl Marchal, þat was Kyngꝰ Edwardes vncle, þat the [20]forsaide Thomas shulde nouȝt assemble at þat tyme vnto þe Scottes; and he assentede; but he wiste nouȝt þe doyng bituene þe Scottes and 32 þe forsaide Mortymer. and for enchesouñ þat he was Marchal of

[1] comen DO. [2] werꝰ D. [3] *leaf* 146, *back*. [4] founde DO.
[5] to O. [6] comen D.
[7] take without nombre D. take without nombre O.
[8–8] þat þai comen D. [9] only O. [10] in DO. [11] he *sic* D.
[12] vnto D. [13] seth O. [14] foote the D. foote þe O. [15] *om.* DO.
[16] priuyly O. [17] taken DO. [18] þat D.
[19] somiche D. so mych O. [20] *leaf* 147.

Engel*and*, and to him p*er*teynede[1] eu*er*[2] þe vauntward. he sent hastely to þe Erl of Lancastre and to S*ir*e Iohñ of[1] Henaude, þat þai shulde nouȝt feiȝt oppoñ þe Scott*es*, in p*re*iudice and in[3] harm-
4 yng[1] of him and[4] his fee, and if þai dede, þat þai shulde stande to[5] her[1] owe*n* p*er*il. and þe forsaide Erl Marchal was al aredy[6] wiþ his bataile at þe redose of þe Erl of Lancastre forto haue fouȝte*n*[7] wiþ him and wiþ[8] his folc, if he hade meuede forto feiȝt wiþ þe
8 Scottes. and in þis mane[r] he was desceyuede, and wiste [9]no man*er* þinge of þis[9] t*re*souñ; and þus was þe Kyng[1] Principaly[10] desceyuede.

¶ And when it was nyȝt,[11] Mortyme[r], þat hade þe wacche forto
12 kepe of þe host, þat nyght destourblede þe wacche þat noþing most be[12] done. and [13]in þe[13] meny-while þe Scottes stele[14] by nyȝt toward her[1] owen contre, as fast as þai myght; and so was þe Kyng falsely [15]desceyuede &[15] bit*rai*ede, þ*at* wende þat alle þe t*rai*toures
16 of his land[1] had bene brouȝt vnto an ende, as it[2] was saide bifore.

¶ Now here, ȝe lordes, how t*rater*ously Kyng[1] Edward was desceyuede, and how m*er*vailously and[16] boldely þe Scott*es* dede of werr[1]; ffor þe same nygh[t][17] Iames Douglas, wiþ CC men of Armes,
20 ryden þrouȝ-out þe host [18]of[1] Kyng Edward[1], þe same nyght þ*at* þe Scott*es* were scapede toward[1] her[1] owe*n* contre, as is aboue [said], til þat[19] þai comen[20] to þe Kyng*us* Pauyloñ, and quellede þ*ere*[21] me*n* in her[1] beddes; and c*r*iede[22] so*m*me "Noward[1], Noward[1]!" and anoþ*ere*
24 tyme, "A Douglas, A Douglas!" wherfore the Kyng, þat was in his pauylouñ, and miche oþ*er* folc, were wonder[1] sore afraiede; but, —blessede be Almyghty God!—þe Kyng was nouȝt taken; and in g*r*ete p*er*ile w*as* þo þe reaume of Engeland[1]. ¶ And þat nyght the
28 mone shone [23]ful clere[23] and briȝt; and for al þe Kyng*us* men, þe Scottes ascapede harmeles. and in þe morwe, when þe Kyng[1] wist[1] þat þe Scottes were ascapede,[24] he was wonder[1] sory, and ful hertly wepte wiþ his ȝonge eyne; and[1] [25]ȝitt wist he[25] nouȝt who [26]had
32 done[26] him þat[27] t*re*souñ; but þat[28] t*re*soñ was wel knowe[29] a gode

[1] p*er*teyneth O. [2] *om.* D. [3] *om.* O. [4] and of DO.
[5] vnto DO. [6] arrayede D. arayed[1] O. [7] fouȝt D. fought O.
[8] *MS.* wiþ him and wiþ.
[9—9] noþiñg of þe D. noþing of þis O. [10] p*r*iueliche D.
[11] nyȝt þe D. nyght þe O. [12] bene D. [13—13] þat D. [14] stale D.
[15—15] *om.* O. [16] and how D. [17] myȝt *sic* D. [18] *leaf* 147, *back.*
[19] *MS.* þat þat. [20] come DO. [21] þ*ere* meny DO.
[22] c*r*ieden D. [23—23] fayre D.
[24] ascapede into her[1] owen contre D. ascaped[1] into her Cuntr[1] O.
[25—25] wist O. [26—26] þ*at* had do O. [27] þis D.
[28] þat false D. þ*at* fals O. [29] y-knowe O.

while afterꝑ, as þe story telleþ. ¶ The Kyng Edwardꝑ[1] come þo aȝeyne vnto[2] ȝorkꝑ, ful sorweful, and his hoste dep*ar*tede, and euery man went into[2] his owen contre wiþ ful heuy and mornyng semblant.[3] and þe [4]Henaude toke[4] herꝑ leue, and went into herꝑ owen 4 contre; and þe Kyng, for herꝑ t*ra*uaile, hugely ham rewardedꝑ, and for enchesouñ of þat viage, þe Kyng had despendedꝑ miche of his t*re*sourꝑ, and wastede.

¶ And in þat tyme werꝑ seyne ij mones in þe firmament: þat on 8 was clere, and þ*at* oþ*er* was[5] derc, þat[6] me*n* myȝt hit[7] þo see þ[r]ouȝout[8] al þe worlde. and[9] Grete dêbate was þat same tyme aȝeyn [10]þe[7] Pope Iohñ þe xxij aft*er* þat[5] Seynt Petre was Pope, and þe Emp*er*oure of Almaigne, þat made him Emp*er*ourꝑ aȝeins þe Popes 12 wille, þat þo helde his see at Avy[n]ouñ; wherfore þe Emp*er*our made his c*r*ie at Rome, and ordeynede anoþ*er* Pope þat hight[11] Nicholas, þat was a ffrerꝑ menou*r*; and þat was[12] aȝeynes þe right of holy cherch, wherfore he w*a*s c*ur*sede[5]; and þe powerꝑ of þat 16 [13]oþ*er* Pope[13] sone was laide; and for enchesoñ þat soche me*r*vailes were seyne, men saide þat þe wor[l]de was neiȝ at an[5] ende.

Of þe deþ of Kyng Edwardꝑ of Carnaruan, sometyme Kyng of Engelandꝑ. Capit*ulo* Ducent*esimo* Quintodecimo. 20

ANd now [go] we aȝeyne vnto Sirꝑ Edward of Carnaruan, þat was [14]some-tyme Kyng[14] of Engel*and*, and was put adoune[15] of his dignite. allas for his t*ri*bulaciouñ! and sorwe hi*m* bifelle þrouȝ false consel þat he leuede, & truste oppoñ ha*m* to miche, þat 24 aft*er*wardꝑ w*a*s destroyede[16] þrouȝ herꝑ falsenesse, as God wolde. ¶ And þis Edward of Carnaryuan was in þe castel of Berkele, vnder þe kepyng of Sirꝑ Morice of Berkeley and of S*ir*e Iohñ of Mautrauers. and to ha*m* he made his co*m*pleynt of his sorwe and of 28 his disese; and oftetymes he axede of his wardeyns what he hade t*re*ssepassede aȝeins Dame Is*abel* his wif, and Sirꝑ Edward his sone, þat was new made Kyngꝑ, þat þai wolde nouȝt visite him. ¶ [þo ansuerede one of his wardenes][17] ¶ "My worþi lord, displese ȝow 32 nouȝt þat y shal ȝow telle; þe enchesou*n* is, for it is done ham to vnderstonde þat, if my Lady ȝourꝑ wif come eny þingꝑ neiȝ ȝow, þat ȝe

[1] *om.* O. [2] toward D. [3] *MS.* semblant se.
[4—4] Henaudes nome D. Henaudes toke O. [5] *om.* D. [6] as DO.
[7] *om.* DO. [8] þrouȝ D. [9] and a DO. [10] *leaf* 148.
[11] me callede D. [12] was þe[re] D. [13—13] Pope afore hym O.
[14—14] kyngꝑ symetyme D. kyng sumtyme O. [15] adouñ some-tyme D.
[16] destroyede D. distroyedꝑ O. *om.* R. [17] *supplied from* D.

wolde [1]her' strangle and quelle, and [2]al so þat ȝe Wolde do to[2] my
Lord' ȝour' Sone." ¶ þo ansuerede he wiþ simple chere, and saide:
"allas, allas! am y nouȝt in prisouñ, and aH at ȝour' owen wille?
4 Now God it wote, y þouȝt it neu*er*; and now y wolde[3] þat y were
dede! so wolde God þat y were! for þan were al my[4] sorwe
passede." ¶ Hit was nouȝt longe aft*er* þat þe Kyng, þrouȝ conseil
of þe Mortymer', *gr*antede þe ward' and þe kepyng' of S*ir*e Edward'
8 his fader', to S*ir*e Thomas[5] Toiourneye and to þe forsaide Sir' Iohñ
Maut*ra*uers, þrouȝ þe Kyng*us* lettre, and put out holliche [6]þe for-
saide[6] Sir' Morice, of þe warde of þe Kyng'. and þai tok[7] and lad
[8]him to[8] þe castel of Corf', þe whiche castel þe Kyng' hatede as
12 eny deþ; and þai kepte him þ*er*e safly[9] til þat[10] it come to[11] Seint
Matheus day in Septe*m*bre, in þe ȝere of G*r*ace M' CCC xxvij, þat
þe forsaide Sir' Roge*r*[12] Mortymer' sent þe man*er* of þe[13] deþ, how
and in what maner he shulde be done to deþ. ¶ And anone as þe
16 forsaide Thomas and Iohñ Hade seyne þe lettre and þe[14] co*m*mande-
ment, þai maden[15] Kyng Edward of Carnaruan gode chere and gode
solace, as þai myght atte þat soper'; and noþing' þe Kyng wiste of
her' t*ra*itou*re*ȝ.[16] ¶ And when tyme was forto gone[17] to bed', þe
20 Kyng went vnto[18] his bed', and laye, and slepte faste. And as þe
Kyng lay and slepte, þe t*ra*itoures, false forsuorne[19] aȝeins her'
homage and her' feaute, come[20] p*r*iueliche[21] into þe Kyng*us*
chaumbre, and her' co*m*pany [22]wiþ Ham, and Laiden an Huge
24 table oppon his Wombe, and wiþ men pressede and helde[23] fast
adoune þe iiij corners of þe table oppoñ his body: wherwiþ þe gode
man awoke, and was wonder' sore adrade to bene[24] dede þ*er*e, and
slayn, and turnede his body opsadouñ. ¶ þe tok[25] þe false
28 tiraunt̄ȝ,[26] and as[27] wode t*ra*itoures,[28] an horne, and put hit into[29]
his fundement as depe[30] as þai might, and toke a spete of Copur'
brennyng',[5] & put hit þrouȝ þe horne[31] into his body, and ofte-
tymes rollede þ*er*wiþ his bowailes; and so þai quellede here
32 Lorde, þat[32] noþing was p*er*ceyuede; and aft*er*, he was ent*er*ede at
Gloucestr'.

[1] *leaf* 148, *back*. [2–2] þat ȝe wol do also O. [3] wil O.
[4] my*n* O. [5] *om*. D. [6–6] *om*. O. [7] toke þe kyng' D.
[8–8] þe kyng vnto O. [9] saflich D. [10] *om*. DO. [11] vnto DO.
[12] Thomas DO. [13] his D. [14] *om*. O. [15] maden þe D. made O.
[16] treytourresse O. [17] go O. [18] to D. [19] forsuore D.
[20] come*n* O. [21] p*r*iuely D. priuyly O. [22] *leaf* 149. [23] held it O.
[24] be O. [25] nome D. [26] t*ra*itou[r]s D. traytours O.
[27] as fals & O. [28] tiraunt̄ȝ D. tirauntes O. [29] in D. vnto O.
[30] dede *sic* O. [31] horne brennyng' D. [32] and D.

How Kyng' Edward spousede Philipp*e*, þe Erles dought*er* of Henaude, at ȝork'. Capit*ulo* Ducent*esimo* xvj^to^.

AND after cristes-masse[1] þo next sewyng', sir' Iohñ of Henaude brouȝt[2] wiþ hi*m* Philipp, his broþ*er*eȝ[3] Douȝt*er*, þat was Erl of Henaud', [4]his nece,[4] into Engel*and*; and Kyng Edward spousede[5] her' at ȝork' wiþ michel honour'; and Sir' Iohñ of Hothum, Bisshop of Ely, and Sir'[6] William of Meltoñ, Erchebisshop of ȝork, songe þo[7] þe masse, þe Sonday in þe [8]Eve of þe Co*nuer*sioñ[8] of Seynt Poule, in þe ȝer' of g*ra*ce M^l^ CCC xxvij. ¶ but for enchesouñ þat þe kyng was[9] but ȝonge and tender of age when he was c*r*onede, and meny wrong*us* were[10] Done [11]whiles his fader'[11] leuede, for enchesouñ þat he trowede þe[12] counseilers þat were false aboute him, þat conseilede him to done oþ*er*wise þan resouñ wolde, wherfore grete harme was þo vnto[13] the [14]reaume and to þe Kyng, and al me*n* directede[15] þe Kyng*us* dede,[16] and hit was nouȝt—so Almyghty God hit[7] wote,[17]—wherfor it was ordeynede att [18]þe Kyng*us* crounyng',[18] þat þe Kyng, for tendre of his age, shulde be gou*er*nede be tuelf grete Lordes of Engel*and*, wiþouten[19] þe whiche noþing shulde be[20] done, þat is forto seyne, þe Erchebisshopp*e* of Kant*er*bery, þe Erchebisshop of ȝork', þe Bisshopp of Wynchestre and þe Bisshop of Hereford,[21] And þe Erl of Lancastre, and[22] þe Erl Marchal, and þe Erl of Kent', þat were þe Kyng*us* vncles, and þe Erl of Gerreint,[23] Sir' Thomas Wake, Sir' Henry of[6] Parcy, S*ir*e Olyuer' of Yngham, and Iohñ of Roos, barons. ¶ Alle þise were [24]suore treweliche[24] forto conseil þe Kyng', and þai shulde ansuere eu*er*y ȝere in þe p*ar*lement of þat shulde [25]be done[25] in þe tyme of þat[26] gou*er*naile. ¶ But þat ordenance was sone vndone,[27] and þat was miche [28]losse and harme[28] to al Engeland'; ffor þe Kyng and alle þe lordes þat shulde gou*er*ne him, were gou*er*nede & reulede after þe Kyng*us* moder', Dame Is*abel*, and by Sir' Rog*er* þe[22] Mortymer'; and as þai wolde, al þing' was done, boþe[29] amonges hye and[30] lawe. ¶ And

[1] Cristemasse O. [2] brouȝt þo D. [3] Brother O. [4—4] *om.* D.
[5] wedede D. [6] *om.* D. [7] *om.* DO. [8—8] Conuersac*i*on O.
[9] nas O. [10] were*n* O.
[11—11] while his [fader] D. while *þat* his fadir O.
[12] his D. [13] to O. [14] *leaf* 149, *back.* [15] directe it *sic* O.
[16] dedes D. [17] wold O. [18—18] Crounynge of þe kyng O.
[19] wi*th*oute O. [20] bene D. [21] Herford' DO. [22] *om.* O.
[23] Garenne O. [24—24] trewly swore O. [25—25] done be O.
[26] þe D. [27] y-done O. [28—28] harme and lossé D.
[29] *MS.* boue. [30] and amonge D.

þai toke[1] vnto ham castelles,[2] tounes, Landes and rentȝ, in grete harme and losse vnto the croune, and of þe Kyng*us* state also, out of mesur'.

4 How þe pees was made bituene þe Englisshemen and þe Scottes; & also of[3] þe iustifiyng' of Troilebastoñ. Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Septuadecimo.

[4]THe Kyng Edward, at Whitsontide, þe secunde ȝere of his
8 regne, þrouȝ conseile of his mod*er* and of Sir' Rog*er*[5] Mortymer, ordeynede a p*ar*lement at Nor[t]hamptoñ; at þe whiche p*ar*lement þe Kyng, þrouȝ her' conseil and none o*þer*e of þe land[6] wiþin age, *gr*antede to bene[7] accordede wiþ þe Scottes in þis
12 man*er*, þat al þe feautes and homages þat þe Scott*es* shulde done to[8] þe croune of Engeland', forȝaf ham vnto the Scottes for eu*er*more, by his chartre ensealede. ¶ and ferþermore an endenture was made of þe Scottes vnto[9] Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng
16 Henries sone, whiche endenture þai callede his[10] Ragemain, in the whiche were contenede alle þe homages and feautes, ferst of þe Kyng of[3] Scotl*and*, and of alle þe p*r*elates, Erles and barons of aH[11] þe reaume of Scotl*and*, wiþ her' seals sette þ*er*on, and o*þer*
20 chartres and remembrance ȝ þat[12] Kyng Edward' and his barons had of her' right in þe reaume of Scotland', hit was forȝeue ham aȝein holliche,[13] and also wiþ þe blac crois of Scotland', þe whiche þe gode Kyng' Edward' conquerede in Scotl*and*, and brouȝt hit out of
24 þe Abbay of Scone, þat is a ful p*r*eciouse reliq*ue*. ¶ And also ferþ*er*more he relessede and forȝaf alle þe landes þat þe barons of Engeland' had in Scotl*and* by olde conqueste. and þis pees forto halde and laste, þe Scottes were bonden[14] to þe Kyng' in xxx M+
28 ti[15] of siluer', to ben[7] paiede wiþin iij ȝere, þat is to seyne, eu*er*y ȝere x M+ ti, by even porcioñs. [16]¶ And ferþ*er*more, ou*er* al þis, þai[17] spake[18] bituene þe P*ar*[t]ies [a]boue-saide, þat Dauid Dritonanter', þat was Rob*er*t Brus[19] sone,—þe false tirant and t*r*aitou*r*,
32 and false forsuorne aȝeynes his oth, þat aroos aȝeynes his liege Lord', þe noble[20] Kyng Edward', and falseliche[21] made him Kyng

[1] token O. [2] castell and D. [3] *om.* O. [4] *leaf* 150.
[5] Rog*er* þe D. [6] lande and D. [7] be O. [8] vnto DO.
[9] vnto þe O. [10] it O. [11] *om.* DO. [12] *MS.* þat þat.
[13] holly D. [14] bounde O. [15] pound' O. [16] *leaf* 150, *back.*
[17] þe *sic* O. [18] speken D. speke O. [19] the Brutes D. þe Brus O.
[20] gode D. [21] falsely D. falsly O.

of Scotland, as is saide bifore,—& his sone shuld be Kyng of Scot-
land, þat was of age but[1] v ȝere. ¶ & so, þrouȝ hir[2] cursede
conseil, þis Dauid spousede at Berewik Dame Iohñe [3]of þe[3]
Toure, þat was Kyng Edward*us* sustre, as þe geste [4]telleþ, oppoñ[4] 4
Marie Magdalein[5] day In[6] þe ȝer of g*ra*ce M CCC xxviij, to
grete harme and enpeiryng to al þe Kyng*us* bloode, Wherof þat
gentil lady come, Allas þe time! for wonder miche was [7]þat fair[7]
DamyseH disp*ar*age,[8] siþ þ*at* she was mariede wiþout[9] þe co*m*mune 8
assent of alle[10] þe lordes of Engel*and*. ¶ And fro þe[11] tyme þat
Brut hadde conquerede Albyoñ, and nempnede þe land aft*er* his
owen name Brytayngñ, þat now is callede Engel*and*, after þe name
of Engist; and so was þe reaume of Scotl*and* holden[12] of þe 12
reaume of Engel*and*, and of þe croune, by feaute and[13] homage.
For Brut conquerede þat lande, and ȝaf it to Albanac, his[14]
secunde sone; and he callede þe land Albany aft*er* his[15] name, so
þat þe heires þat comen aft*er* him helde[16] of Brut, and of his heires, 16
þe Kyng*us* of Britaignñ, by feaute and homage; and fro þat[17] tyme
vnto þis Kyng Edward, ¶ þe reaume of Scotland w*a*s holden[18]
[19]of þe reaume of Engelond by feaute[20] and by[21] s*er*uices abouesaide, as þe cronicles of Engel*and* and of Scotland bereþ[22] witnesse 20
more plen*er*ly. and acursede be þe tyme þat þis p*ar*lement was
ordeynede at North*a*mtoñ! for þ*er*e, þrouȝ false conseile, þe Kyng
was [23]þ*er*e falsely disherited[23]; and ȝitt he[24] was wiþin age. ¶ And
ȝette, whe*n* Kyng Edward was put doune[25] of his realte of 24
Engeland, ȝitte men put him nouȝt out of þe feautes and s*er*uises[26]
of þe reaume of Scotl*and*, and of þe F*ra*unchises Disheritede for
eu*er*more. ¶ And noþeles þe grete lordes of Engel*and* were aȝeins
to conferme þe pees & the trewes abouesaide, saf oneliche[27] þe 28
Quene Is*abel*, þat was þe Kynges moder Edward, and þe Bisshop
of Ely, and þe Lorde Mortymer. ¶ But resouñ and law wolde
nouȝt þat a final pees shulde be made bituene ha*m*, wiþouten[28]
co*m*mune assent of Engel*and*. 32

[1] of DO. [2] his O. [3–3] atte O. [4–4] telleȝ oppoñ seynt *sic* D.
[5] Magdaleyns D. [6] *om.* O. [7–7] the D.
[8] disp*ar*agede D. disp*ar*aged O. [9] aȝeyns al D. aȝens al O.
[10] *om.* O. [11] þat O. [12] *MS.* holden holden. [13] & by O.
[14] *MS. has* his eldest, *with* eldest *underlined for omission.*
[15] his owen D. [16] helden O. [17] fro þat DO. fro R.
[18] holde O. [19] *leaf* 151. [20] feutes O. [21] *om.* DO.
[22] beren O. [23–23] falsely disherite D. [24] *MS.* it.
[25] adoune D. adoun) O. [26] homages D. [27] onely D. only O.
[28] with-out D. with-oute þe O.

Of the debate þat was bituene Quene[1] IsabeH and S*ir*e Henry, Erl of Lancastre and of Leycestre; and of [2]the ryding of[2] Bedford. Capitulo Ducentesi*mo* xviij°.

4 WHen þe forsaide Dauid hade spousede Dame Iohne of þe Tour in þe toune of Berwik, as bifore is saide, þe Scottes, in despite of þe Englisshe-me*n*, callede Dame Iohn̄ þe Countesse 'make pees,' for þe cowardise pees forto ordeyne; but þe Kyng*us*
8 pe*r*son̄ bare þe [2]wite & þe[2] blame, wiþ wrong, of þe makyng of þe accorde; and al was done þrouȝ þe Quene & Rog*er* þe Mortymer. ¶ And hit was nouȝt longe after, þat[3] þe quene Is*abel* [4]ne toke into Her[5] Honde al þe Lordeshipp of Pountfrett,
12 and almost al þe landes [2]þat were[2] of value, þat pe*r*teynede[6] vnto[7] þe croune of Engel*and*, so þat þe Kyng had nouȝt forto[7] dispende, but of his Vsues[8] and of his escheker; ffor þe Quene Is*abel* and þe Mortymer had a[9] grete manie of[10] her retenue,[11] þat folwede
16 eu*er*more þe Kyng*us* courte, and went and tok þe Kyng*us* prises for her penyworthes at gode chepe; wherfore þe contre þat þai comen[12] in were ful sore adrade, and almost destroiede. ¶ þo bigan[13] þe co*m*munite[14] of Engel*and* forto hate [15]Is*abel* þe Quene,[15]
20 þat so miche[16] louede her when she come aȝein forto p*ur*sue the false t*ra*itoures þe Spensers fro F*ra*unce, þat same tyme þe false t*ra*itour Robert of Holand þat bit*ra*ede his lorde[17] Thomas of Lancastre was þo deliu*er*ede out of p*r*ison, and was wonder pryue wiþ þe[18] Quene
24 IsabeH and also wiþ þe Mortymer; but þat availede him but litel, for he was tak at Michelmasse þ*at* next come after, as he rode toward þe Quene Is*abel* to London̄; and Sir Thomas Whither smote of his heede[19] bisides þe toune of Seynt Alban*us*. and þis[18]
28 Sir Thomas duellede þo wiþ Sir Henry, Erl of Lancastre; and he put him in hidyng for drede of þe Quene, for she louede him wonder miche, and praiede[20] vnto þe Kyng [2]for hi*m*,[2] þat þe same Thomas most ben[21] exilede [2]out of Engel*and*.[2]
32 ¶ And þe noble Erl, Sir Henry of La[n]castr, had ofte-tymes [22]Herde þe co*m*mune clamo*ur* of þe Englisshe-men, of þe michel[23] disese[24] þat were done in Engeland, an[illegible] also for diu*er*se wronges

[1] *om.* D. [illegible]e qwen O. [2–2] *om.* D. [illegible]an *sic* D.
[4] *leaf* 151, *back.* [5] her owen D. her [illegible] O. [6] pe*r*teyneden O.
[7] to D. [8] Isues D. vses O. [9] *om* [illegible] [10] in D.
[11] reten*a*unce O. [12] come O. [13] bi[illegible] D. [14] Co*mmin*alte O.
[15–15] þe Quene IsabeH D. [16] *om.* D. [illegible] lord sir DO.
[18] *om.* O. [19] heuede D. [20] praye D[illegible] [21] be O. [22] *leaf* 152.
[23] myche O. [24] diseses DO.

þat were done amonges[1] þe co*m*mune peple, of[2] whiche þe Kyng bare þe blame wiþ wrong', for he nas but ful ȝonge and tendre of age, and þouȝt, as a gode man, forto done[3] away and slake þe slaundre of þe Kyng*us* pe*r*sone, if þat he might in eny maner'- 4 wise, so as[4] þe Kyng was þe*r*of noþing gulti, wherfore he was in pe*r*el of lif and lyme. ¶ And so he assemblede al his retynance,[5] and went & spake vnto ham of þe Kyng*us* hono*ur*, and also forto amende his estate. and Sir' Thomas of Broþe*r*toñ, Erl Marchal, 8 and Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok', þat were þe Kyng*us* vncles, and also men of Londoñ, maden[6] her' oth, him forto[7] mayntene in þat same querele. ¶ And her' cause was þis, þat þe Kyng shulde holde his household and his many[8] as [9]pe*r*teynede a Kyng'[9] forto done,[10] 12 and haue also his realte; and þat[11] þe Quene Is*abel* shulde delyuer' out of her' honde, [12]into þe Kyng*us* honde,[12] al maner lordeshippe,[13] rentes, tounes, [14]and castelle*s*[14] þat pe*r*teynede to[15] þe croune of Engeland', and þat she shulde leue wiþ þe þridde[16] part of 16 þe rentes of Engel*and*, as oþe*r*e Quenes hade done [17]or þis tyme,[17] and wiþ none oþe*r* þing'. ¶ And also þat Sir' Roge*r* Mortyme*r* shulde duelle oppoñ his owen Londes, for þe whiche landes he hade holpen disherite miche peple, so þat þe co*m*mune peple were 20 nouȝt[11] destroiede þrouȝ hir' [18 19]wrongeful takyng'.[19] ¶ And also to enquere How, and by[20] whome, þe Kyng was bit*rai*ede and falsely[21] deseyuede at Stanhope, and þrouȝ whos conseil [22]þat þe Scottes went[23] away by nyght fram[24] þe Kyng'. ¶ And also how, and þrouȝ 24 whos conseil,[22] þe ordenance þat were[25] made at þe coronacioñ of Kyng Edward wer' put adouñ, þat is to seyne, þat þe Kyng, for [26]helpyng and amendement[26] of þe reaume, and in hono*ur* of hi*m*, shulde be[27] gou*er*nede and reulede by xij, þe grettest & wiseste 28 Lordes of þe reaume; and wiþouten[28] ham shulde noþing be g*ra*untede ne done, as 'bifore is saide; the whiche gou*er*nances maliciou[s]ly were put adouñ[29] frò þe Kyng'; wherfor me[ny] harmes, shames and rep*ro*fes haue falle vnto þe Kyng' and to his 32

[1] among O. [2] of the DO. [3] do O. [4] þat D. þ*a*t as O.
[5] retenauntȝ D. [6] made D. [7] to D. [8] meyne O.
[9—9] a kyng' pe*r*teynede D. pe*r*teyneth vnto a kyng O. [10] do O.
[11] *om.* D. [12—12] *om.* D. [13] lordeshiꝑꝑes D. lordschippes O.
[14—14] castelles D. [15] vnto DO. [16] þirde O.
[17—17] bifore her' D. byfore her O. [18] *leaf* 152, *back.*
[19—19] takyng' so wrongeful D. [20] *MS.* by by. [21] falseliche D.
[22—22] *om.* O. [23] wente*n* D. [24] fro D. [25] was DO.
[26—26] amendement and helpyng D. amendeme*n*t & helpynge O.
[27] ben D. [28] with-oute O. [29] douñ DO.

reaume. And þat is to[1] vnderstonde, for-asmiche as Kyng[1] Edward, some-tyme Kyng of Engel*and*, was ordeynede, by assent of [2]þe co*m*munite[2] in plein p*ar*lement, forto bene[3] vnder þe warde
4 and Gou*er*nance of Henry, Erl of Lancastre, his cosyn, for saluacioñ of his body he was taken[4] out of þe castel of Kenylworth, þ*er*e þat he was in ward, and þrouȝ colour of þe Quene Is*abel* and of þe Mortymer, wiþout[5] consent of eny p*ar*lement,
8 þai[6] tok[7] and lad hi*m* þ*er* þat[8] never aft*er* none of his[9] Kynrede myȝt wiþ hi*m* speke ne see, and aft*er* t*rai*t*er*ously [10]toke and mordrede him[10]; for whos deþ a foule sclandre aroos þrouȝ-out all Cristendome, when hit was done. ¶ And also al[9] þe t*re*soure þat[11]
12 Sir[12] Edward of Carnaryuan hade lefte [13]in meny places of[14] Engelond and in Walys, were wastede and born[15] away [16]wiþouten þe[16] wille of Kyng Edward his sone, in destruccioun of him and of his folc. ¶ Also, þrouȝ whos conseile [17]þat þe Kyng[17] ȝaf vp þe
16 Kyngdome of Scotl*and*, for þe whiche reaume þe Kyng*us* ancestres hade ful sore t*ra*uaile,[18] and so dede meny a nobleman for her ryght; and was diliu*er*ede al þe right vnto[19] Dauid, þat was Rob*er*t le Brus[20] sone, þat no right hade vnto þat reaume, as al[1] þe
20 worlde hit wiste. ¶ And also, by whom þe chartres & remembrances þat þai hade of þe right of Scotl*and* were[21] take out of þe t*re*sorie, and taken to þe Scottes, þe Kyng*us* enemys, to disheritesoñ[22] of hi*m* and of his successoures, and to grete harme to[23] his lieges,
24 & grete rep*ro*fe to[24] alle Englisshe-me*n* for eu*er*more. ¶ Also, wherfore Dame Iohñ of þe Toure, þe Kyng*us* sustre Edward, was disp*ar*aged and mariede vnto Dauid, þat was Robert þe Brus[25] sone, þat was a t*ra*itour and[26] enemy vnto Engel*and*; and þrouȝ
28 whos conseil she was tak[27] into our enemys Hondes, out of Engelond.

¶ And in þe mene-tyme, while[28] the Gode Erl Henry of Lancastr and his co*m*pany tok[29] conseile how þise poynte[s] aboue-
32 saide might bene amendede vnto þe worshipp of þe Kyng, and to his p*ro*fite, and to þe p*ro*fite also of his lieges, þe Quene Is*abel*,

[1] *om.* D. [2—2] co*mmin*alte O. [3] be O. [4] take DO.
[5] with-outen D. [6] *MS.* þat. [7] nome D. [8] as D. [9] *om.* O.
[10—10] nome and him mordrede D. toke hym & mordred hym O.
[11] of O. [12] kyng D. [13] *leaf* 153. [14] in O. [15] bore O.
[16—16] with-oute O. [17—17] Kyng Edward D. [18] Trauaylled O.
[19] to D. [20] Bruseȝ D. Brus his O. [21] weren D.
[22] disherityng O. [23] of D. [24] vnto DO.
[25] *MS.* Brus so *with* so *underlined for omission;* Bruseȝ D. Brus his O.
[26] and an D. [27] taken D. [28] whiles DO. [29] nome D. token O.

þrouȝ co*n*ietting and sotelte of[1] þe Mortymer', Lete ordein a
p*ar*lement at Salesbury; and at þe same P*ar*lement þe Mortymer'
was made Erl of[2] Marche, aȝeins alle þe barons wille of Engel*and*,
in p*re*iudice of þe Kyng and of his croune; & [3]Sir' Iohn̄ of Eltham, 4
[4]þe Kynges broþ*er*,[4] was gert[5] wiþ a suerd of Cornwail, and þo
was callede Erle of Cornwaile; and eu*er*more þe Quene Is*abel* so
miche p*ro*curede aȝeinȝ[6] hir' sone þe Kyng', þat she hade þe warde
of [7]þe forsaid[7] Sir' Edward and of his Landes. ¶ And at[8] þat 8
p*ar*lement þe Erl of Lancastre wolde nouȝt come, but ordeyned al
his power' aȝeins þe Quene Is*abel* and the Mortymer'; and[9] men
of London̄ ordeynede ha*m*[10] wiþ vj C̄ men of armes [11]him forto
helpe.[11] 12

¶ Wh*en* þe Quene Isabell wist of the[12] Doyng', she suore by
God and by his names ful ang*r*ely, þat in euel tyme he þouȝ[t]
on[13] þo poyntes. ¶ Tho sent þe Quene Is*abel* and þe Mortymer'
after' her' retenue, and aft*er* þe Kyng*us* retenue, so þat þai hade 16
ordeynede among*us* ham an huge ost; and þai conseilede þe
Kyng so þat oppon̄ a nyght þai ryden xxiiij[14] [myle] toward
Bedford, þ*er*e þat þe Erl of Lancastr' was wiþ his co*m*pany, and
þouȝt haue him destroiede. and þat night she rode biside[15] the 20
Kyng' her' sone, as a knyȝt armede, for drede of Deþ. ¶ And hit
was done þe Kyng Edward to vnderstond, þat þe Erl Henry of
Lancastre & his co*m*pany wolde haue destroiede þe Kyng and his
conseil[16] for eu*er*more, wherfor þe Kyng was [17]somedel towardes 24
him[17] heuy & annoiede. ¶ When[18] þe Erl Marchal and þe Erl of
Kent, þe Kyng*us* broþ*er*, herde of þis þing', þai ryden so in message
bituene ha*m*, þat þe Kyng g*ran*tede him his pees to þe Erl Henry
of Lancastre for a[19] c*er*teyn raunson̄ of xj M' li; but þat was 28
neu*er* [20]paiede aft*er*ward. ¶ And þise were þe Lordes þat Helde[21]
wiþ Sir' Henry of Lancastre: Sir' Henry Beaumond, Sir' Fouk
fitȝ-Warein, Sir' Thomas Rooselyn, Sir' Willia*m* Trussel, Sir'
Thomas Wyther', and about an C̄ of knyȝteȝ mo, þat[22] were to 32
ha*m* consenting'; and alle þo were exilede þrou conseile of[23] Quene
Is*abel* & of þe Mortymer', for þe Mortymer' couetede[24] forto haue

[1] and also of DO. [2] of þe O. [3] *leaf* 153, *back*. [4–4] *om*. D.
[5] gerd D. [6] *MS*. aȝeinȝ þe. [7–7] *om*. O. [8] to D.
[9] and þe D. [10] ham forto help D. hem for-to helpe O.
[11–11] *om*. DO. [12] þis D. [13] oppon̄ D. vpon O. [14] xxiij O.
[15] bisides D. [16] Cu*m*panye O. [17–17] toward hym sumdel D.
[18] wherfore O. [19] *MS*. a a. [20] *leaf* 154. [21] helden O.
[22] þan *sic* O. [23] of þe D. [24] coniectede D.

her' londes, if he might þrouȝ eny man*er* coniettyng'; for he was so couetous, and hade to miche[1] his wille, and þat was Grete pitee.

How Kyng Edward' went ou*er* þe see forto Don his homage vnto
4 **þe Kyng of F*r*ance for þe Duchee of Gyene. ¶ Capit*ulo* Ducentesimo Decimo nono.[2]**

HIt was nouȝt longe[3] after', þat þe Kyng of F*r*ance, þrouȝ conseile of his Dusȝepirs, sent to Kyng' Edward' of
8 Engel*and*, þat he shulde come to Parys, and do[4] his homage, as resouñ hit[5] wolde, for þe Duchee of Gyene. ¶ And so, þrouȝ consent of þe lordes of Engel*and*, Kyng Edward went ouer' þe see; [and] at[6] Ascencioun̄ he come vnto[7] Parys þe iij ȝere of his
12 regne, forto done his homage [vnto þe Kyng of Fraunce. and þe Kyng vnderfonge his homage][8] and made michel[9] ioye and worship. But or Kyng Edward hade made his homage [10]vnto þe Kyng' of F*r*ance,[10] hastely he was sent[11] aȝeyne into Engeland'
16 þrouȝ þe Quene Is*abel* his moder'; and anone hastely he come aȝeyne into Engeland' oppoñ Whitsonday, wiþout[12] eny takyng leue of þe Kyng of F*ra*unce; wherfore he was wonder' worþ [= wroth].

20 **How Sir' Roger'[13] Mortymer' bare him so [14]proudely &[14] hie. Ca*pitulo* CC xx.[15]**

[16]AND now shul ȝe[17] hure How[18] sir' Rog*er* þe[3] Mortymer' of Wygemore, þat desirede and couetede to bene at an[5] hye
24 state, so þat þe Kyng g*r*antede him to bene[19] callede þe[20] Erl of[21] Marche [22]þrouȝ-out al his Lordeship. ¶ And he bicome þo so prout,[23] þat he wolde lese and forsake þe name þat his [24]Ancestre haden[24] eu*er* bifore; And for þat enchesoun̄ he lete him calle Erl
28 of[21] Marche[22]; And none of þe co*m*munes of Engeland' derste calle him by none[5] oþ*er* name, for he was callede so, þrouȝ þe Kyng*us* c*r*ie þat men shulde calle him þe[20] Erl of[21] Marche. ¶ And þe Mortymer' [25]þo bare him[25] so hauten and so proude, þat wonder hit
32 was to wete; and also disgisede him wiþ wonder' ryche cloþes oute of al man*er* resouñ, boþe of shaping and of[5] wering'; Wherof

[1] mychel O. [2] *MS.* octauo; viij° O. [3] *om.* O. [4] done O.
[5] *om.* D. [6] at þe D. [7] to O. [8] *supplied from* D. [9] myche O.
[10—10] *om.* DO. [11] sent for D. [12] withouten D. [13] Rog*er* þe DO.
[14—14] proutliche and so D. proudly & so O. [15] *MS.* xix.
[16] *leaf* 154, *back.* [17] he O. [18] of DO. [19] be O. [20] *om.* DO.
[21] of þe O. [22—22] *om.* D. [23] proude & so hauteyn O.
[24—24] Auncestres had O. [25—25] bar hym þ° O.

the Englisshe-men hade grete wonder, how and[1] in what maner
he might contreue or fynde soche[2] man*er* pride; and þai saide
amonges ha*m* alle co*m*muneliche,[3] þat his pride shulde nouȝt
longe endure. ¶ And þe[4] same tyme, Sire Geffray þe Mortymer 4
þe ȝonge, þat was þe Mortymers sone, lete him calle Kynge of
Folye; and so[5] hit bifelle aftirward indede, ffor he was so ful of
pride and of wrecchednesse, þat he helde a rounde table in Walys
to alle me*n* þat [6]þider wolde[6] come, and countrefetede[7] þe man*er* 8
&[8] doyng of Kyng Arthureȝ table; but openly he failede, ffor þe
noble Knyȝt Arthure[9] w*as* þe[10] moste worþi lord of renoun þat
was in al þe worlde[11] in his tyme, and [12]ȝitte come neu*er* non soche
after him, for alle þe noble knyȝtes[13] þ[r]ouȝ C*r*istendome of dede 12
of Armes alosede, du[e]llede wiþ Kyng Arthure, and helde him for
her lord; and þat was wel sene,[14] for he conquerede[15] a Romayn þat
me callede Frolle, & gete of him þe reaume of F*r*ance, and quellede
hi*m* wiþ his owen[16] hande.[17] ¶ And also he fauȝt wiþ a Geaunt 16
þat me callede Dynab*us* and quellede him,[18] þat hade rauisshede[19]
Elyne, þat was Kyng Hoeles nece, Kyng[5] of Litil Britaign̄; and
afte*r*ward he quellede in bataile þe Emp*erour* of Rome, þat me
callede Lucye, þat had assemblede aȝeyns Kyng Arthur forto feiȝt 20
wiþ him [20]so miche peple[20] of Romayns and of[16] Peiȝtes and of
Sarasyn*us*, þat no man couþ ham nombre; and he descomfitede
ham alle, as þe story of him more pleynloker[21] telleþ. ¶ And in
þe[22] same tyme, co*m*mune loos sprong in Engel*and*, þrouȝ coniettingⁱ 24
and ordenaunce of þe ffrere P*r*echoures,[23] þat Sir Edward of Car-
naryuan, þat was Kyng Edward*us* fader, of whom þe geest [24]telles,
saide[24] þat he was alif[25] in the castel of Corf; wherfore alle þe
co*m*mune[s] almost of Engel*and* were[26] in sorwe and[27] drede 28
whe*þer* hit were so or[28] nouȝ; þai wist neuer how[29] þe Mortymer
*trait*erousely hade [30]done him mordre.[30]

[1] or D. [2] such a O. [3] co*m*munely D. comunly O.
[4] þat D. [5] *om.* D. [6—6] wolde þider D.
[7] Counterfete O. [8] & þe O.
[9] *MS.* Arthure and, *with* and *underlined for omission.* [10] *om.* DO.
[11] worde *sic* D. [12] *leaf* 155. [13] knyȝtes D. knyghtes O. knyȝt R.
[14] ysene O. [15] conquerede in bataile D. Conquered in bataylⁿ O.
[16] *om.* O. [17] hondes D.
[18] Dynabȝ and quellede him D. Dynabus & qwelled hym O. Dynab*us* R.
[19] rauisshede fair D. rafisshed faire O. [20—20] *om.* O.
[21] plenerly O. [22] þat D. [23] menours O.
[24—24] telleþ saiden D. telleþ seyden D. [25] on lif D. [26] weren O.
[27] or D. [28] or wer D. [29] how þat O.
[30—30] him done mordrede D. ydone hym y-mordred O.

How Edmunde of Wodestok, [1]þat was Erl of Kent, and þe Kyng*us* bro*þer*, Edward of Carnaryuan,[1] was biheuedede[2] at Wynchestr. Capit*ulo* CC° xxi°.[3]

4 AND oppoñ a tyme hit was[4] so, þat Sir Edmunde of Wodestok, Erl of Kent, spake vnto þe Pope[5] Iohñ þe xxij at Auy[n]on, and said þat Almyghty God hade meny tymes done, for[6] Thomas loue[7] of Lancastre, meny Gret[8] miracles to meny men and [9]wymen 8 þat Were þrouȝ diu*er*se sikenesse[10] vndoñ as to[11] the world, and þrouȝ his p*rai*er þai were brouȝt vnto her hele. ¶ And so Sir Edmund p*rai*ede þe Pope[12] hertly þat he wolde g*ra*unt him g*ra*ce þat þe forsaide Thomas might bene[13] t*ra*nslated; but þe Pope 12 saide, 'nay, he shulde nouȝt bene[13] t*ra*nslatede, þe same Thomas, Erl of La[n]castre, vnto þe tyme þat he were bettre c*er*tefied of þe clergie of Engeland, and seyne by hir obediens what þing God had done for þe loue of Thomas of Lancastre, aft*er* þe suggestioñ 16 þat þe forsaide Edmunde of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, had vnto hi*m* made.'[14] ¶ And when þis Edmund saw þat he miȝt nouȝt spede of his p*ur*pos as tochyng þe t*ra*nslaciouñ, He praiede him þo of his conseile as toching Sir Edward of Carnaryuan, his bro*þer*, 20 and saide[7] nouȝt longe [15]goñ þat[15] he was Kyng of [England], what þing mygh[t] beste bene[16] done as tochyng his delyu*er*ance, siþ þat a co*m*mune fame is[17] þrouȝ-out al Engel*and* þat he was alif,[18] and hole and saf. ¶ When þe Pope herde him telle þat Sir Edward 24 was alif, he co*m*manded þe Erl, oppoñ his benisoñ, þat he shulde helpe, wiþ al þe power þat he might, þat he were delyu*er*ede out of p*r*isoñ, and saf his body in al mane*r*[19] þat he myght; and, forto bryng þis þing vnto an ende, he assoilede him and his company a 28 pena & a culpa, and alle þo þat halpen to[20] his delyu*er*ance.

¶ Tho tok[21] Edmund of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, his leue of þe Pope, and co*m*me aȝeyn into[20] Engel*and*. And when Edmunde was come*n*[22] so*m*me of þe ffrere p*r*echoures come and saide þat Sir 32 Edward his bro*þer* ȝitte was alyf in þe [23]Castel of Corf, vnder the kepyng of Sir Thomas þe[24] Gurnay. ¶ þo spede him þe forsaide

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] beheded O. [3] *MS.* xx.
[4] bifelle D. befell O.
[5] pope *struck out, and* Bisshop of Rome *written over in another hand in* O.
[6] for seynt D. [7] *om.* O. [8] grete mervailes D. [9] *leaf* 155, *back.*
[10] maladyes DO. [11] vnto DO. [12] *struck out in* O. [13] be O.
[14] y-made O. [15–15] agone O. [16] be DO. [17] *om.* D.
[18] on lif D. in lyve O. [19] þing D. [20] vnto D. [21] nome D.
[22] Come O. [23] *leaf* 156. [24] of D.

Edmundꝑ, as[1] faste as he might, til þat he come to[2] þe castel of Corfꝑ, and acqueyntede him,[3] and spake so faire wiþ Sirꝑ Iohñ Daueril, þat was conestable of þe forsaide castel, and ȝaf him riche ȝiftes forto haue acqueyntance of him, and forto[4] know of his 4
conseil. and þus hit bifelle, þat þe forsaide Sirꝑ Edmund[5] praiede specialy forto telle him priuely of his lorde his broþer, Sirꝑ Edwardꝑ, if þat he leuede or were dede. [6]if þat[6] he were [7]on lif,[7] he praiede of[8] him [9]ones to haue[9] a sight. ¶ Andꝑ þis Sirꝑ Iohñ 8
Daueril was an hye-hertede man, & ful of corage, and ansurede shortely vnto Sirꝑ Edmundꝑ, and saide, þat Sirꝑ Edward[10] his broþer was in hele & vnderꝑ his kepyngꝑ, ¶ and derst shew him vnto no man, siþ it was defendede him in the Kyngus half, Edward, þat was 12
Edwardꝑ[11] sone of Carnauan, and also þrouȝ commandement of þe Quene Isabel, þe Kyngus moderꝑ, and of Sirꝑ Roger þe Mortymerꝑ, þat he shulde[12] shew his body [13]to no man[13] of þe worlde, saf onely[14] vnto ham, oppoñ peyne[15] of lif and lyme, and to disherite- 16
souñ of his heires for euermore. but þe false traitourꝑ falsely liede, for he was nouȝt in his wardꝑ, but he was tak þens, and lade to[16] þe castel of Berkelee þrouȝ Sirꝑ Thomas Gurnay, þrouȝ commandement of þe Mortymer, til þat he was dede, as bifore is saide more 20
plenerly.[17] ¶ But Sirꝑ Edmundꝑ of Wodestokꝑ wist noþingꝑ þat[18] his broþer was dede. Wheroppon he toke a lettre vnto þe[8] forsaide Sirꝑ Iohñ, and praiede him hertly þatꝑ [19]he wolde take hit to[20] Kyng Edwardꝑ his broþer, as to His worþi Lorde; and he toke[21] þe lettre 24
of him, and bihight to him[22] forto done[23] his message wiþ-outen[24] eny manerꝑ faile. and wiþ þat, Sirꝑ Edmundꝑ to[k][25] of him his leue, þat is to seyne, of þe forsaide Iohñ, and went þo into his owen contre and Lordeship in Kent, þat he hade þer. ¶ And 28
anon as þis same Iohñ wistꝑ þat Sirꝑ Edmundꝑ of Wodestoke was Gone into Kent, his owen Lordeship, anone he went in al the[8] haste þat he might fro þe castel of Corfꝑ, and come [26]to Sirꝑ Roger[26] Mortymer, and toke him þe[27] lettre þat Sirꝑ Edmundꝑ of Wodestoke, 32
Erl of Kent, hade take him closede, & enselede[28] wiþ his owen seal.

[1] alse D. [2] vnto DO. [3] *om.* DO. [4] to DO. [5] *MS.* Edwardꝑ.
[6—6] and if D. and if þat O. [7—7] a-lyve O. [8] *om.* O.
[9—9] forto haue ones D. forto haue onys O. [10] *MS.* Edmunde.
[11] Edwardes DO. [12] *MS.* shulde shulde.
[13—13] vnto nomanerꝑ man DO. [14] oneliche D. [15] losse DO.
[16] vnto DO. [17] pleynerꝑ D. [18] þat Edward DO. [19] *leaf* 156, *back.*
[20] vnto DO. [21] vnderfongꝑ D. vndirfonge O. [22] sir Edmund DO.
[23] do O. [24] *with*oute O. [25] nome D.
[26—26] vnto sirꝑ Roger þe DO. [27] *om.* D. [28] seled O.

¶ And when Sir' Roger hade vnderfonge þe lettre, [1]he vnclosede [2]þe lettre,[2] and[1] saw what was conteynede þerin, and gan[3] Hit forto rede; ¶ Wherof þe bigynning was þis:

4 "Worshippis and reuerence,[4] wiþ broþeres liegeance[5] and subieccioun. Sir' knyght, worshipful and dere broþer! if it ȝow plese, y pray[6] hertly þat ȝe bene of gode comfort, ffor y shal so ordeyne for ȝow, þat sone ȝe shul come out of prisoun, and bene[7]
8 deliuerede of that disese þat ȝe beþ[8] in. and vnderstondeþ of ȝour Grete lordeshipe, þat y haue vnto me assentant almoste al þe grete [lordes][9] of Engeland, wiþ al her' apparail, þat is to seyne, wiþ Armure, wiþ tresour' wiþout nombre, forto mayntene and helpe
12 ȝour' quereH so ferfourth that ȝe shul ben[7] Kyng aȝein as ȝe were biforne;[10] and þat þai alle haue suorne to me oppoñ a boke, and alsewel[11] prelates as[9] Erles & baroñs."

¶ when Sir' Roger þe[12] Mortymer' saw and vnderstode þe myght
16 and the [13]strengþ of the Lettre, anone for wraþ his hert gan[14] bolne, and euel hert bare toward Sir'[9] Edmund of Wodestok' þat was Erl of Kent'. ¶ and so, wiþ al þe haste þet he might, he [15]went vnto[15] Dame Isabel þe Quene, þat was þe Kyngus moder', and shewede
20 her' Sir' Edmundus Lettr', [16]Erl of Kent,[16] and his wille and his purpos, and how he hade coniettede & ordeynede to put adoun Kyng Edward of Wyndesore, hire sone, of his realte and of his Kyngdome. ¶ "Now certes, sir' Roger," quod she,[17] "haþ[18] Edmund
24 done so? be my faderes[19] soule," quod she, "y wil [20]bene þerof[20] avengede, if þat God graunt me[21] my[9] lyf, and þat in a[21] shorte tyme." ¶ And anone wiþ þat, þe Quene Isabel went vnto Kyng Edward here[22] sone, þere þat he was at þe[9] parlement at Wynchestre
28 forto haue amendede þe [23]wronges & trespasses[23] þat were done amongus[24] þe peple in[25] his reaume. ¶ And þo toke[26] she and shewede him þe lettre þat Sir'[21] Edmund of Wodestok', [16]Erl of Kent,[16] hade made, and ensealede it[9] wiþ his seal, and bade him,
32 oppoñ her'[27] benysoñ, þat he shulde avengede bene oppoñ him, as oppoñ his dedeliche[28] enemy.[29] ¶ Tho was þe quene so wroþ toward Sir' Edmund, [16]Erl of Kent,[16] and cessede neuer to pray vnto her'

[1—1] & O. [2—2] it D. [3] began O. [4] reuerences DO.
[5] liegeauances O. [6] praye ȝow D. [7] be O. [8] bene D.
[9] *om.* O. [10] before O. [11] aswel D. asweel O. [12] of O.
[13] *leaf* 157. [14] began to O. [15—15] sent to D. [16—16] *om.* O.
[17] þe quene D. þe qwene O. [18] had O. [19] fader D. fadir O.
[20—20] *per*of bene D. be þerof O. [21] *om.* D. [22] he *sic* D.
[23—23] *tres*passes and wronges D. [24] among O. [25] of D.
[26] nome D. [27] he *sic* D. [28] dedely D. [29] *MS.* eneny.

sone þat he shulde sende in[1] haste after him. and oppon þat, þe Kyng' sent by his l*ett*res after' Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok', þat he shulde[2] come &[3] speke wiþ him at Wynchestre, alle man*er* þinges lafte. ¶ And when Sir' Edmund' saw þat þe Kyng sent aft*er* him[4] 4
wiþ his l*ett*re enselede, he hastede him in aH [5]þe hast[5] þat he myght', til þat he come to Wynchestre. ¶ But [6]þo[7] þe Quene Wist þat Edmund' was come[8] vnto Wynchestre, and[9] anone she [10]p*rai*ede so faste[10] vnto Edward' her' sone, þat þe gode Erl was 8
arrestede[11] anone, & ladde vnto the barr' bifore Robert of Hamond', þat was crouner[12] of þe Kyng*us* Household'; and he[4] associede vnto[13] him Sir' Rog*er* þe Mortymer'. and þo spake þe forsaide Iohn̄ vnto him and saide: "¶ Sir' Edmund', Erl of Kent, ȝe shul 12
vnderstond' þat it is done vs to wete, and principalli vnto oure liege lord', Sir' Edward', Kyng of Engel*and*—þat Almyghty God saue and kepe!—þat ȝe beþe[14] his dedely enemy & his t*rai*tou*r*, and also a co*m*mune enemy vnto þe reaume; and þat ȝe·haue[15] 16
bene about meny a day forto make priueliche[16] deliu*er*ance of Sir' Edward', some-tyme Kyng of Engeland, ȝour' broþ*er*, þe[4] whiche was put adoune of his realte by co*m*mune assent of alle þe lordes of Engel*and*, in enpeiring[17] of our' Lord þe Kyng*us* Estate, and also 20
of his reaume." ¶ þo ansuerede þe gode man and saide: "For-soþ, Sir', vnderstandeþ wel þat y was neuer' assenting forto enpeir'[18] þe state of our' Lorde þe Kyng', ne of his[19] croune, and þat y put me to ben[20] demede oppon[21] my pires." ¶ And wiþ þat word', Sir' 24
Rog*er* þe[4] Mortymer' shewede hi*m*[22] þe Erles l*ett*re & his seal, and saide þo: [23]"Sir' Edmuñde,[23] knowe ȝe nouȝt[24] þe prynt of þis l*ett*re þat he[25] hade take vnto[26] Sir' Iohn̄ Dauery H?" and he saw þe print of his seal, but he saw nouȝt what was contenede *per*in;[27] 28
and þe Erl him-self' wende þat hit hade bene[28] on of his l*ett*res þ*at* hade bene of no [charge]. [29]¶ þo saide þe Erl to Sir' Rog*er* Mortymer', þat He wolde nouȝt fo[r]sake þe l*ett*re, and þat[30] was þe prynt of his seal. and anone wiþ þat word, þe wile and[31] false 32

[1] in al O. [2] schuld & *sic* O. [3] *om.* O. [4] *om.* D.
[5]—[5] *om.* DO. [6] *leaf* 157, *back.* [7] when D. [8] comen D.
[9] *om.* DO.
[10]—[10] p*ra*yede and so fast' Went' D. prayed & so faste wente O.
[11] areste O. [12] Coroner' DO. [13] to O. [14] ben O.
[15] han O. [16] prynuly O. [17] peyryng' D. pesynge O.
[18] appaire D. [19] þe DO. [20] be O. [21] of D.
[22] ham D. he*m* O. [23]—[23] *om.* D. [24] ouȝt D. oght O.
[25] ȝe O. [26] to O. [27] in þe lettre DO. [28] be O. [29] *leaf* 158.
[30] þat it O. [31] & þe O.

Mortymer' bygan to vndo þe *lett*re, and gan[1] hit forto rede in audience of al þe court'. ¶ And þo saide Sire Rob*er*t of Hamuꞧ,[2] "Sir' Edmunde," q*uod* he, "siþ þat ȝe haue made knowyng openly
4 in þis court þat þis is ȝour' *lett*re ensealede wiþ ȝour' seal, and þe teno*ur* of þe[3] lettre seiþ þat ȝe wolde haue [4]bene aboute forto haue[4] delyu*er*ede þe body of þat worshipful knyȝt Sir' Edward', sometyme Kyng of Engeland', ȝour' bro*þer*, and forto helpe[5] him þat he
8 shulde haue[6] bene[7] Kyng aȝeyne, and gou*er*ne[8] his peple as he [9]was wont[9] bifore tymes, in empeiring of our' liege lorde þe Kyng*us* state,[10] þat is now,—wham God kepe fra*m* alle desese![11]—¶ And þis court wil þat ȝe bene vndone of lif and lyme, and þat ȝour' heires
12 bene disheritede for euermore, Saf þe g*rac*e of our' lorde þe Kyng'." þo was þe Erl, Sir' Edmund' of Wodestok', put aȝeyne into prisouñ, vnto[12] ful saf ward' til oppoñ þe morwe; and þo come þe Mortymere vnto þe Kyng', *per*e þat he satte at his mete, and tolde him how
16 þe Erl was Dampnede by wai of lawe, and also of lyf and lyme, and his[13] heires disheritede[14] for eu*er*more, þrouȝ oppen knowe-liching[15] in plein court; wherfore him þouȝt hit were gode þat þe forsaide Erl were hastely quellede, wiþouten[16] wetyng of þe Kyng'; for elleȝ [17]the Kyng wolde forȝeue him his deþ, and þat shu[l]de turne ham [18]vnto miche[18] sorwe so as[19] he was enpechede. ¶ Anone
24 þe Quene Is*abel*, þrouȝ conseile of þe Mortymer', and wiþout eny o*per*e conseile, sent in haste to þe baliffys of Wynchestr', þat þai shulde smyte of Sir' Edmundes heede[20] of Wodestok', Erl of Kent', wiþout[21] eny man*er* [22]abidyng' or respite oppoñ peyne[22] of lif and lyme. ¶ þo tok'[23] þe bailliffes Sir' Edmund' [24]of Wodestok'[24] out
28 of p*r*isouñ, and lade him bisides the castel att Wynchestr', and þ*er*e þai made a gonge-fermer' smyte of his heuede,[25] for none o*per* ma*n* derst hit done; & so deide he þ*er*e—allas the tyme!—þat is to seyne, the x Day of Ottobre, þe þridde[26] ȝer' of Kyng Edwardes regne. And when þe Kyng wist þ*er*of', he was wonder' sory, and
32 lete ent*er*e him at þe[13] ffrere menoures at Wynchestre.[27]

[1] began O. [2] Hamond D. [3] ȝoure O. [4–4] *om.* O.
[5] haue holpen DO. [6] *om.* D. [7] be O. [8] gou*er*ned O.
[9–9] woned O. [10] estate D. [11] diseses O. [12] vndir O.
[13] *om.* O. [14] disherite D. of his disherited' O. [15] knowleche O.
[16] wi*th*oute O. [17] *leaf* 158, *back.* [18–18] to michel D. to myche O.
[19] as he D. as ȝe O. as R. [20] heuede D. [21] with-outen D.
[22–22] biddynge or respite oppoñ peyne D. abydynge or respyte vpon payne O. abidyng' or respite R.
[23] token O. [24–24] *om.* DO. [25] heed' O. [26] iij O.
[27] *MS.* Wynchestres.

Of the Deþ of Sir Roger Mortymer, Erl of þe Marche. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ [1]Vicesimo ¶ Secundo.[1]

ANd so hit bifelle at þat tyme, þat Sir Roger the[2] Mortymer, Erl of the Marche, was so prout & so hauten, þat he helde no lorde of the reaume[3] his pier; and þo bicome he so couetouse, þat he folwede Dame Isabell þe Quenes[4] court, þe Kyngus moder Edward, and bisette his penyworthe[5] wiþ þe officers of þe Quenes household in þe same maner as þe Kyngus[6] officeres deden; & so he made his takyngus as tochyng vitailes, and also of cariages; and al he dede for enchesouñ of Spenses, and[2] forto gadre tresoure; and so he dede wiþout nombre in al þat he myght. ¶ Tho made he him wonder priuee [7]with þe Quene Isabell; and so miche Lordeshippe And retenue hade, so þat alle þe grete Lordes of Engeland of him wer adrade. wherfore þe Kyng and his Conseile towarde[8] him wer agreuede, and ordeynede amongus ham forto vndo[9] him be[10] pure resouñ[11] and lawe, ffor enchesouñ þat Kyng Edward, þat was [12]þe Kyngus[12] fader, traterousely þrouȝ him was mordred in the castel of Berkelee, as bifore[13] is saide more plenerly, in the CC and xvij Chapiter of þis book. ¶ And somme þat were of þe Kyngus Conseil louede[14] þe Mortymer, and tolde him in priuetee how þat þe Kyng and his conseil wer[15] about fram[16] day to day hym forto shende and vndo;[17] Wherfore þe Mortymer was sore annoiede, and angry as þe[18] Deuel aȝeynes ham þat wer of þe Kyngus Conseil, and saide þat he wolde on ham bene avengede, how-se-euer he toke on. ¶ Hit was nouȝt longe afterward, þat[19] Kyng Edward and Dame Philipp his wif, and Dame Isabell þe Kynges moder, and Sir Roger Mortymer ne went vnto Notyngham, þere forto soiourne. ¶ and so hit bifell,[20] þat þe Quene Isabell, þrouȝ conseile of the[21] Mortymer, toke to her þe[2] keyes of þe ȝate[22] of þe castelle of Notingham, so þat no man might come neþer in ne[23] out by niȝt, but þrouȝ þe[2] commandement of þe Mortymer, ne þe Kyng, ne none of his Conseil. ¶ And þat tyme Hit felle[24] so þat þe[25] Mortyme[r], as a Deuel for wraþ, bolnede [26]for wraþ[26] þat

[1–1] xxj° D. [2] *om.* D. [3] lande D. [4] quenes DO. kyngus R.
[5] penyworthes DO. [6] quenes D. [7] *leaf* 159.
[8] towardes DO. [9] vndone O. [10] þrouȝ D. þurgh O.
[11] Tresoun O. [12–12] Kyng Edwardes D. [13] aboue D.
[14] Loueden DO. [15] weren O. [16] fro O. [17] vndone D.
[18] a D. [19] þat þe D. [20] fel D. [21] *om.* O.
[22] ȝates DO. [23] nor O. [24] bifelle D. [25] þe DO. *om.* R.
[26–26] *om.* D. & also for wrathe O.

he hade toward[1] the Kynges men Edward, and principally[2] aȝeins ham þat [3]hade him[3] accusede to þe Kyng of þe deþ of Sire [4]Edward his[4] fader. ¶ And priueliche[5] a conseile [6]was taken[7] bituene
4 [8]Quene Isabel[8] and the Mortymer, and þe Bisshop of Lincolne, and Sir Symond of Bereford and Sir Hughe of Trompetoñ,[9] and oper priue of hir conseile, forto vndo[10] ham alle þat hade accusede þe Mortymer vnto the Kyng of his fadres deþ, [11]Sir Edward,[11] of
8 tresouñ and of ffelonye. Wherfore alle þo þat were of the Kynges Conseile, when þai wist of the Mortymeres castyng pryuely, comen[12] to þe Kyng Edward, and saide þat þe Mortymer wolde ham[13] destroie, for cause þat þai had accusede him of Kyng[14] Edwardus
12 Deþ, his fader, & praiede him þat[15] he wolde maintene ham in her trew quereH; and þe Kyng granted ham hir bone, and saide þat[16] he wolde maintene ham in hir right. ¶ And þise were þe lordes [17]þat pursuede[17] þis quereH: Sire William Montagu, Sire Hunfray
16 de Boungh, Sire William his broper, Sire Rauf of Stafford, Sire Robert of Hufford, Sir William of Clyntoñ, Sir Iohñ Neuyl of Horneby, and meny opere of her consent; and alle þise suorne oppoñ a[18] bok to mayntene þe quereH in-asmiche[19] as thei[20]
20 might.

¶ And hit[21] bifelle so after, þat Sir William Mountagu ne none of þe Kynges frendes moste nouȝt[14] bene[22] herburghede in the castel, for the Mortymer, but went & toke her herbugage[23] in
24 diuerse places in[24] the toune of Notingham; and þo were þai sore adrade leste þe Mortymer shulde ham destroie. ¶ And in haste þere come vnto[25] Kyng Edward, Sir William Mountagu þere þat he was in his castel, [26]and priuely tolde him þat he ne none of his
28 company shulde nouȝt take þe Mortymer wiþout conseil & helpe of William of Eland, Conestable of þe same casteH. ¶ "Now certes," quod þe Kyng, "y leue ȝow ful wel; and perfore y conseile ȝow þat ȝe go[27] to þe forsaide conestable,[28] and commande[29] him in my name
32 þat he be ȝour frende and ȝour helpe forto take the Mortymer, al

[1] aȝeynes D. aȝens toward O. [2] priueliche D. [3—3] him hade D.
[4—4] Edwardes O. [5] priuely D. pryuyly O. [6] *leaf* 159, *back.*
[7] take O. [8—8] *MS.* quene quene Isabelbel; þe quene Isabel DO.
[9] Trumpyngton O. [10] vndone O. [11—11] *om.* DO.
[12] come O. [13] *altered from* him *in MS.* [14] *om.* D.
[15] *MS.* þat þai, *with* þai *underlined for omission.* [16] *om.* DO.
[17—17] to pursue DO. [18] þe DO.
[19] in-alse-miche D. [20] þai D. þey O. hei R. [21] *MS.* his.
[22] be O. [23] herburghe D. herburgh O. [24] of D. [25] vnto þe O.
[26] *leaf* 160. [27] gone D. [28] *om.* O. [29] comaundeth O.

þing[1] lafte, oppoñ peril of lyf and[2] lyme." "[3]Sir', q*uod*[3] Mountagu,[4]
"Sir', my lord, g*ra*unt mercy!" ¶ Tho went forth the forsaide
Mountagu, and come to þe conestable of þe[5] casteH, and tolde him þe
Kyng*us* wille. and he ansuerede and saide þe Kynges wille shulde 4
be[6] done, in-asmichel[7] as he might, and wolde nouȝt spare for no
maner' deþ; and so he[8] suore and made his oth. ¶ þo saide Sir'
William of Mountagu [9]to þe conestable,[9] in[10] hering' of[11] alle ham[11]
þat were[12] Helpyng [13]to þe same[13] quereH: "Now certes, dere 8
frende, vs bihoueþ forto[14] werche and done by ȝour'[15] queyntise, to
take þe Mortymer', siþ þat ȝe bene[16] keper of þe casteH, and haueþ[17]
þe keyes in[18] ȝour' [warde]." ¶ "Sir," q*uod* þe conestable, "wil
ȝe vnderstonde þat þe gates of þe castel beþ[19] loked wiþ þe lokes 12
þat Dame Is*abel* sent hider'; and by nyght she haþ þe keyes þerof',
and leiþ ham vnder þe cheuesel of her' bede vnto the morne; and
so y may nouȝt come into þe castel by þe ȝates in no maner' wise;
but y know a[20] Alie þat stracches[21] out of the ward', vnder' erþe, 16
vnto[22] the castel, þat goþe into[23] þe weste, the[24] whiche alie Dame
Is*abel* [25]þe Quene, ne none of her' men, ne[11] þe Mortymer', ne
none of his co*m*pany knoweþ hit nouȝt'; and so y shal lede ȝow
þrouȝ þat[26] Alie; and so ȝe shul come into þe castel wiþout[27] aspies 20
of eny man þat beþ ȝ*our* enemys."

¶ And þat[28] same nyght Sir' William Mountagu, & alle the
lordes of þe[29] quereH, and þe same Conestable also, [30]went ha*m*[30] to
horse, and made[31] semblant as hit wer' forto wende out of þe 24
Mortymeres sight'; but anone as þe Mortymer' herde þis tydyng*us*,[32]
he wende þat þai wolde haue gone o*u*er þe see for drede of him;
& anone he and his co*m*pany toke conseile amonges ha*m* forto lette
hir' passage, and sent lettres anone vnto the portes, so þat none of 28
the grete lordes shulde wende [33]ha*m* home into[33] her' owen contre,
but if he were areste & taken. ¶ And amonge[34] o*per*e ping*us*,
William Eland, Conestable of þe forsaide castel, p*r*iueliche[35] lade
Sir' William Mountagu and his co*m*pany by þe forsaide way vnder 32

[1] þinges D. [2] & of O. [3—3] þo saide þe D. [4] Mountegu þo O.
[5] þe same D. [6] ben D. [7] in-alsemichel D. inasmyche O.
[8] *om.* D. [9—9] *om.* D. [10] in he*m sic* O. [11] *om.* O.
[12] wer' þere O. [13—13] vnto þe D. to þe O. [14] to D.
[15] ȝour counseile and D. [16] beþ D. be O. [17] haue O.
[18] *MS.* in in. [19] be O. [20] an D. [21] stracche þ D. strechеþ O.
[22] into DO. [23] vnto D. [24] *om.* DO. [25] *leaf* 160, *back.*
[26] *MS.* þat casteH, *with* casteH *underlined for omission.*
[27] wiþ-outen D. [28] þe DO. [29] his O. [30—30] wenten D.
[31] maden O. [32] tydynge O. [33—33] home vnto DO.
[34] amonge al D. [35] *om.* D. pryuyly O.

the[1] erþ, so[2] til þat þai come*n* into[3] the castel, and went vp into[4] the Toure *þere* þat þe Mortymer was in.[5] But Sir Hughe of Trompitoñ[6] ham as*c*riede hidously, and saide, "A, t*rai*toures! hit
4 is al[5] for nouȝt þat ȝe [7]beþ comen[7] into þis castel. ȝe shul dye ȝitte in[2] euel deþ eu*er*ychoñ."[8] And anone on of ha*m* þat was in the[1] Mountagues co*m*pany, vp wiþ a mace, and smote the same Hughe oppoñ þe heuede,[9] þat þe bray[n] barst[10] out and felle on
8 þe Ground; and so was he dede in euel deþ. ¶ Tho toke[11] þai þe Mortymer, as he[12] Armede him atte þe toures [13]dore, When he herde þe noise of ham for drede. And When[14] Quene IsabeH saw þat þe Mortymer was taken,[15] she made miche sorwe in hert, and
12 þise wordes vnto ha*m* saide: ¶ "Now, fair sires, y ȝow praye þat ȝe done no*n*[16] harme vnto his body; a worþi knyȝt,[17] our[18] wel bilouede frende and our dere cosyn." ¶ Tho went þai þens, and come[19] & brouȝt the Mortymer, and p*re*sentede him vnto Kyng
16 Edward, and[20] co*m*maundede to brynge him into[21] sauf ward. ¶ But anone as þai þat were consent vnto[22] þe Mortymeres doyng herde telle þat he was taken,[23] þai went and hid ham, and p*ri*ueliche[24] by niȝt went out of the toune, eu*er*yche[25] on[26]
20 his side, wiþ heuy hert and mornyng, & leuede oppoñ her oweñ[1] londes as wel as þai myght. ¶ And so þe[27] same ȝer[28] þat[29] þe Mortymer was taken,[30] he hade at his retynu ix[31] knyghtȝ, wiþouten[32] squyers & serieantȝ of Armes and footmen. And þo
24 was þe Mortymer lade to Londoñ, and Sir Symond of Bereford was lad wiþ him, and was[33] take to þe conestable to kepe. ¶ But afterward was þe Mortymers lif examynede at Westm*inster* bifore þe Kyng & bifore[5] alle þe grete Lordes of Engel*and* for p*er*il þat
28 might falle to[4] þe reaume, & forto[34] enquer also whiche wer assentyng vnto[34] Sir Edwardes deþ, þe Kyng*us* fader, and also þrouȝ who*m* þe Scottes askaped at[35] Stanhop*e* into Scotl*and* wiþout þe wille of Kyng Edward; ¶ And also how the chartre of Ragaman
32 was delyuerede vnto þe Scottes, wherin [36]þe Homages and[37] feautees

[1] *om.* DO. [2] *om.* O. [3] vn-to O. [4] vnto D. [5] *om.* D.
[6] Trumpyngton O. [7—7] be come O. [8] echeon O.
[9] heed O. [10] brast DO. [11] token O.
[12] *MS. has* þai *underlined for omission, and* he *written in the margin.*
[13] *leaf* 161. [14] when þe D. whan þe O. [15] take O. [16] no O.
[17] knyȝt and D. [18] a O. [19] comen O. [20] and he DO.
[21] in O. [22] to D. [23] take O. [24] pryuyly O.
[25] eu*er*ychoñ D. eche O. [26] in O. [27] þat DO.
[28] *MS.* nyght *underlined for omission, and* ȝer *written in the margin.*
[29] *MS.* þat þat. [30] take O. [31] ix score DO. [32] wi*th*oute O.
[33] werne D. [34] to DO. [35] fro DO. [36] *leaf* 161, *back.* [37] and þe O.

of Scotland were[1] contened, þat þe Scottes shulde do[2] eu*er*more to[3] þe Kyng*us* of Engel*and* for þe reaume of Scotland. Wherfore in his absence [4]he was dampnede to bene[4] [5]honget & draw[5] for his t*re*souñ. And þis meschief come to[3] him on Seint Andrewes 4
eve,[6] In þe ȝere of þe incarnacioñ of our Lord Ihesu Criste, M[t] CCC[7] xxx.

**How Kyng Edward gete aȝeyn [8]into his honde[8] g*ra*ciouseliche[9] þe feautes and þe[10] homages of Scotland, wherof he was 8
put out þrouȝ þe false conseil of IsabeH his moder, & of S*ir* Rog*er*e Mortymer [4]þ*a*t was made[4] Erl of þe[11] Marche. Capit*ulo* Ducent*esimo* xxiij[to].[12]**

NOw[13] ȝe haue [herde] Lordes, how S*ir* Iohñ of Bailoil, in 12
tyme of pees, w*as* chosen to bene[14] Kyng of Scotland, for enchesoñ þat he come of þe eldest douȝt*er* of þe Erl Dauid of Huntingdoñ,[15] þat was Kyng Alisaundres bro*þer* of Scotl*and*, þat[16]
deide wiþouten[17] heir of his body bigeten ;[18] and how þis Iohñ made 16
feaute & homage to Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Henries sone þe þrid, for his landes of Scotland ; and how he aft*er*ward wiþsaide[19] his homages,[20] þrouȝ conseile of þe Scottes, In þe[21] ȝere of the[10]
Incarnacioñ M[t] cclxxij[o],[22] and [23]sende vnto[23] þe pope,[24] þrouȝ false 20
suggestioñ þat he made his oth vnto[25] þe forsaid sir[26] Edward, ouer his estate and his wille, of þe[11] whiche oth þe Pop[27] [28]assoilede him,[28] þrouȝ his bulles to him sent. ¶ And anone as Kynge Edward wiste þ*er*of, he ordeynede anone his [29]barons, and come 24
Vnto Berewike, and conquerede þe toune ; at þe[30] whiche conqueste þ*er*e were slayn xxv M[t] & vij[c]. and[31] Bailoil, þat was Kyng of Scotland, come[11] & ȝelde him vnto Kyng Edward ; and þe Kyng[s] aft*er*ward[32] delyu*er*ede him out of þe tour of Londoñ, and alle þe 28

[1] werin *sic* O. [2] done DO. [3] vnto O. [4—4] *om.* O.
[5—5] drawe and hongete D. to be drawe & honged he was dampned O.
[6] eve & DO. [7] CCC and O. [8—8] vnto him D. vnto hym O.
[9] graciously alle O. [10] *om.* DO. [11] *om.* D.
[12] *MS.* xxiiij ; xxij[do] D. xxiiij[o] O. [13] How *sic* O. [14] be O.
[15] Heretingoñ D. Heretyngeton) O. [16] *MS.* þai. [17] w*ith*oute O.
[18] begete O. [19] forsoke O. [20] homage DO. [21] þer *sic* O.
[22] CCClxxij O. [23—23] sent to D. sent vnto O.
[24] pope *struck out, and* bysshope of Rome *written over in a different hand in* O.
[25] to D. [26] kyng[s] DO.
[27] pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written over in* O.
[28—28] him assoilede D. hym assoylled O. assaide him R. [29] *leaf* 162.
[30] *om.* O. [31] And þe DO. [32] Edward D.

grete lorde[s] of Scotland wiþ hi*m*, þat were taken[1] at Berwike, and ȝaf ham sauf condit to goñ into Scotl*and*. And the Scottes seþenes, þrouȝ her falsenesse, werrede oppoñ Kyng Edward.
4 ¶ And when Sir Iohñ Bailoile, Kyng of Scotland, saw al þis, he went & put him ouer[2] þe[3] see vnto Dompier, and leuede þ*ere* oppoñ his owen landes as wel as he might, til þat þe Scottis wolde amende ham of hir misdedes & t*re*spasseȝ,[4] and lad with him Sir
8 Edward, his sone. Wherfore þe Scott*es*, in despite of him, callede him "Sir Iohñ Turnetabard,"[5] for cause þat he [6]wolde nouȝt[6] offende ne t*re*spasse aȝeynes Kyng Edward of Engel*and*; and so he forsoke his reaume of Scotl*and*, and sette þ*er*of but litil pris.
12 ¶ And þis Sir Iohñ, Longe duellede in Fr*a*unce, til þat he deide þ*ere*; and Sir Edward his sone [7]vnderfonge his heritage,[7] and dede homage vnto þe Kyng of France for his landes of Dunpier.

¶ And so hit felle aft*er*ward þat Edwarde, þat was Iohñ
16 Bailoilles sone, had[8] wiþ him a squyer of Engel*and* þat was born[9] in ȝork-shire, þat men callede Iohñ of Barnaby; and þis[10] Edward Bailoil louede him miche, & w*a*s neiȝ hi*m*, and [11]wiþ him[11] ful pryuee. [12]¶ And so þis Iohñ of Bernaby w*a*s in debate with a
20 Frenche-man in þe toune of Dounpier; and so he quellede him, and went in his way, in al the haste þat he might, into þe castel fortil[13] haue socoure and helpe of his lord. ¶ And anone come þe Offic*er*es of þe toune[14] forto[15] take Iohñ of Barnaby as a felouñ.
24 and Sir Edward, his lorde, halpe him, and rescuede him,[3] and by nyȝt made him wende out of the castel; and so he went his way, and come into Engel*and* with-oute[16] eny harme. ¶ And when þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce saw þat[17] Sir Edward had rescuede his
28 felouñ, he bicome wonder wroþ aȝeyns Sir Edward, and anoñ lete him bene[18] arest, and toke into his hande alle his landes. ¶ Tho duellede Sir Edward in prisoñ vnto þe tyme þat Sir Henry[19] Beaumond come into Fr*a*unce; þe whiche Henry [20]some-tyme
32 w*a*s[20] Erl of Angos [21]in Scotl*and*, prouȝ his wif,[21] and was put out of þe forsaide Erldome when þe accord was made[22] bituene Engel*and* & Scotland, prouȝ þe Quene Isabell & Sir Rog*er*e þe[23]

[1] take DO. [2] one D. [3] *om.* O. [4] trespas O.
[5] Turnelabard DO. [6–6] ne wolde O. [7–7] his heritage vndirfonge O.
[8] lad O. [9] bore O. [10] *MS.* þis þis. [11–11] *om.* DO.
[12] *leaf* 162, *back.* [13] for-to O. [14] Tou*n* of Dunpiere O.
[15] forto DO. fortok R. [16] wiþouten D.
[17] *MS.* þat kyng, *with* kyng *underlined for omission.* [18] be DO.
[19] Henry of D. Herry of O. [20–20] was sumtyme O.
[21–21] þrouȝ his wif in Scotland D. [22] *om.* DO. [23] *om.* D.

Mortymer' & her' *com*panye, for þe mariage þat she made bituene
Dauid, þat was Robert þe Brus[1] sone, and Dame Iohñ of[2] þe toure,
Kyng Edward*us* sustre of Engeland, and wel vnderstode[3] þis, þat
at the ende he shulde come to his rygh', but if [it] were þrouȝ þe[4] 4
Edward Bailloiħ, þat was right heir' of the reaume of Scotland.
¶ And þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce, Lowys, louede wel[5] þis Sir' Henry,
and was wiþ him ful p*r*iuee, and [6]þouȝt forto[7] make[8] delyu*e*rance
of Sir' Edward Bailoiles body, if he might in eny maner'. ¶ Tho 8
praiede he þe Kyng, þat he wolde g*ra*unt him of his g*ra*ce Sir'
Edward Bailoilles body vnto þe next p*ar*lement, þat he miȝt leue
wiþ his owen rentes in þe mene-tyme, and þat he myȝt[9] stande to
bene[10] Iugede by his pieris at the[11] p*ar*lement. ¶ the Kyng 12
g*ra*ntede him his p*ra*ieres,[12] and made þe forsaide Sir' Edward ben
delyu*e*rede out of p*r*isouñ in the maner' aboue-saide. and anone
as he w*a*s out of p*r*isouñ, Sir' Henry toke him forth wiþ him, & lad
him[13] into Engeland and[14] made him duelle p*r*iueliche[15] [16]in the[16] 16
Maner' of Sandhal oppoñ[17] Owes in ȝorke-shire, wiþ þe Lady Vescy.
and so he ordeynede him *pe*re an Huge retenance of peple of
Englisshemen, and also[18] of Aliens, forto conquere aȝeyne[18] his
heritage. ¶ And so he ȝaf miche siluer' vnto soudeoures and to 20
Alienes forto helpe him; and þai bihight him forto helpe[19] in al
þat þai[20] might', but þai failede hi*m* at his most nede.

And at þat tyme[21] Donalde, Erl of Morref', herde telle how þat
Sir' Edward was comen[22] into Engel*and*, and come to him, and 24
made wiþ him grete ioye of his co*m*myng aȝeyne, and saide to[23]
him, and bihigh[t] þat alle[24] grete lordes[11] of Scotland[25] shulde
[26]bene to him[26] entendant, and [27]holde him[27] for hir' Kyng', as right
heir' of Scotland. and so miche þai wolde done, þat he shulde 28
be[28] crounede Kyng of þat lande, and [29]to him dede[29] [30]feaute &
Homage.[30] [31]þo come Sir' Henry of Beaumond to Kyng Edward of
Engeland, and praiede him, in way of charite, þat he wolde g*ra*nt

[1] Brus his O. [2] at O. [3] vnderstondeþ D. [4] sir' DO.
[5] miche D. mych O. [6] *leaf* 163. [7] to D. [8] make a O.
[9] most D. muste O. [10] be O. [11] *om.* O.
[12] prayer' D. prayere O. [13] him forth D. [14] and laide *sic* D.
[15] p*r*iuyly O. [16–16] at a D. atte a O. [17] op O. [18] *om.* D.
[19] helpe him D. [20] he D. [21] I-tyme *sic* O.
[22] p*r*iuely come D. p*r*iuyly come O. [23] vnto D.
[24] alle þe D. aħ þe O. [25] Engelond O.
[26–26] to hi*m* bene D. be to hym O.
[27–27] shulde him holde D. schuld' hym hold' O. [28] bene D.
[29–29] dede to him D. dede to hym O. [30–30] homage & feute O.
[31] *leaf* 163, *back.*

of his g*ra*ce vnto Sir' Edwarde Bailoil, þat he moste[1] safliche gone[2]
bi land' fram[3] Sandhall vnto Scotland', forto conquere his riȝt
heritage in Scotland'. ¶ the Kyng Edward ansuerede and saide
4 vnto him: "yf þat y soffre þe Bailoil wende þrouȝ my londe
toward Scotland', þan þe peple wolde say þat [4]y were[4] assenting
to[5] þe co*m*pany." ¶ "Now, Sir', y praie ȝow þat ȝe wolde g*ra*nt
him leue to take vnto [him] soudeoures of Englisshe-men, þat þai
8 myȝt safly lede him þrouȝ ȝour' land' vnto[6] Scotland'; and, Sir',
oppoñ þis couena[n]t, þat if[7] it so bifalle—þat God hit forbede!—þat
þai bene[8] descomfited' in bataile þrouȝ þe Scottes, þat y and alle þe
lordes þat holden with Bailoil ben for eu*er*more put out of oure[9]
12 rentȝ þat we haueþ in Engel*and*." ¶ and þe Kyng, oppoñ þis
couenant, g*ra*ntede hir' bone, as toching him and þo þat were of
þe[10] same querell, þe whiche cleimede forto[11] haue londes &[12] rentȝ
in þe reaume of Scotland'. ¶ And þise were þe names of þe same
16 Lordes þat pursuede þis mater', þat is to seyn,[13] Sir' Edward[14]
Bailoil, þat chalangede þe reaume of Scotl*and*; S*ir* Henry
Beaumond', Erl of Angos; Sir' Dauid of Stroboly, Erle of Atheles;
S*ir*e Geffray of Mountbray, Walt*er* Comyn, and meny o*per*e þat
20 were put out of hir[15] heritage in Scotland' whe*n* þe pees w*as*
[16]made bituene Engeland' and Scotland', as bifore is saide.

¶ And ȝe shal vnderstond' þat þise lordes toke wiþ ham v C
men of Armes and ij Mt Archires[17] of footmen, and[18] þo went vnto[19]
24 ship atte Rauenesere, and sailede by þe see til þat þai come[20] vnto
Scotland', and[21] come to lande at Kynkecorne, xij mile fro[22] Seint
Iohnes toune, and sende[23] oute hier' shippes aȝeine, for þai shulde
nouȝt ben[24] hurt ne apairede,[25] neiþ*er* þat no man shulde gone[2] into
28 shipp*e* aȝeyne, þouȝ þat[26] þai hade nede, but abide at al p*er*iles, and
nouȝt flee, but [27]stande, and raþ*er*[27] soffre deþ þan flee, to mayntene
hir' trew querelle. ¶ when þe Erl of Fif,[28] a fers ma*n* and a sterne,
herde telle þat þe Bailoil was come*n*[29] forto take þe lande of
32 Scotland', he come in haste vnto Kynkecorñ wiþ x Mt Scott*es*,
forto destourble him, þat he shulde nouȝt come to land'. ¶ But
Sir' Edward' Bailoil and his company had taken þe land', maugre

[1] miȝt D. [2] go O. [3] fro DO.
[4–4] he shulde ben D. he schuld ben O. [5] vnto DO. [6] into O.
[7] *om.* D. [8] were O. [9] ȝ*our* O. [10] þ*at* O. [11] to DO.
[12] or O. [13] sey O. [14] *MS.* Iohñ; Edward þe DO. [15] *om.* D.
[16] *leaf* 164. [17] Archers and D. Archiers & O. [18] & of O.
[19] into O. [20] comen O. [21] *MS.* at. [22] fram D. [23] sent DO.
[24] be O. [25] enpeirede D. Empeyred' O. [26] *om.* O.
[27–27] rather stande & O. [28] Wif' *sic* D. [29] come O.

him and his company, and him descomfitede; at þe whiche
scomfiture Sir' Alisandre of Setoñ[1] was þ*er* quellede, and meny
oþ*er*. ¶ The Erl of Fif was þo wonder' sory, and ful euel[2]
shamede[3] þat so litil[4] company hade him descomfitede, and shame- 4
fulliche[5] put [6]him & alle[6] his company þat w*as*[7] alif forto flee.[8]
þo come Sir' Edward the[9] Bailoil, and toke þe contre al about him,
til þat[10] he come to þe Abbay of Dunfermelyn; and þ*er*e he fonde
vitailes for him and' [11]for his men.[12] and amonge aH oþ*er* þinges, 8
He fonde in a chambre aboue[13] v C̄ of grete[14] stafes of fyne oke,
with longe[9] pikes of yren and of stele: he tok[15] and' delyu*er*ede
ham to þe most strongeste of his co*m*pany. ¶ And anone after
he went fro þens, and loggede him in a felde ij mile fro Seint 12
Iohn̄[16] toune. and' when þe burgeys of þe toune herde how þe Erl
was descomfitede þrouȝ[17] Sir' Edward'[18] Bailloile, þai were sore
adrade, and broken þe briggeȝ þat þai had' made ouer þe wat*er* of
Erne, so þat þe Bailoil might nouȝt goñ[19] ouer'; Wherfore he 16
loggede him þ*er*e al þat nyght', but litel hede he toke to[20] reste, and
saide vnto his peple, ¶ "Now, dere lordes, ȝe knowe[21] ful wel þat
we bene[22] now[9] loggede[23] bituene oure enemys; and if þai mow vs
hampre, þ*er*e nys[24] but litil[18] deþ; whe[r]fore if we abide here aH 20
þis nyght stille, y leue þat hit shal turne vs to miche harme; for þe
power' of Scotland' may eu*er*y day wax and encresce, and we may
nouȝt so; and we bene ful[25] litel peple as aȝeins ham. whefore y
pr*a*ye ȝow, for the loue of Almyghty God, make we vs bolde and 24
hardy, and[9] þat we mow mightely take þe Scott*es* þis nyght, and
[26]boldely werr' oppoñ ham; and late vs pu[r]sue ham þis niȝt; and[26]
if þai bene[22] tr*a*uailede þrouȝ vs, and þai see oure hardynesse, so
þat oþ*er*e Scottis þat comen, and mete ham & see ham so tr*a*uailede[27] 28
and wery, þe sorer wil bene adrade wiþ vs forto feiȝten;[28] and
fresheliche[29] þan [30]we shullen[30] [31]feiȝt, and oppoñ Ham p*ur*sue, so
þat, þrouȝ the gr*a*ce of Almighty God', al the worlde shal speke of[18]
þe[32] douȝtynesse of our' chaialry." ¶ And, sires, vnderstondeþ[33] 32

[1] Setoñ þe sone DO. [2] il D. [3] aschamed' O. [4] l[i]tel a O.
[5] shamelich D. schamelich O. [6—6] him and D. hym & al O. & alle R.
[7] were D. [8] slee *sic* D. [9] *om.* D. [10] *om.* DO.
[11] *leaf* 164, *back*. [12] folc D. folk O. [13] aboute O. [14] gode D.
[15] nome ham D. toke hem O. [16] Iohnes D. Iohnys O.
[17] þurgh þe O. [18] *om.* O. [19] go O. [20] of DO. [21] Knowen D.
[22] be O. [23] ylogged' O. [24] is no bote O. [25] but DO.
[26—26] *om.* D. [27] y-trauaylled' O. [28] fight O.
[29] fresshely D. fersly O. [30—30] schul we O. [31] *leaf* 165.
[32] oppoñ D. [33] vnderstondes D.

wel þat aH the company þat come[1] with Sir' Edward' Bailoile
grauntede wel [2]vnto þis[2] conseil, and were þerof glade, and anone
pursuede oppoñ þe Scottes þat wer'[3] bicomen wonder' wery. and
4 þe Bailoile and his company sore folwede ham, and dede ham
miche sorwe þrouȝ her' assaut, so þat þai myght nouȝt, for feble,
ham helpe, and for litel peple. ¶ But þo saide amongus ham:
"what is [4]vs now[4] bifalle, þat so litel peple as þe Bailoil haþ in
8 wenge, done vs so miche trauaile and sorwe? now certes hit
semeþ vs þat he werches[5] by grace, for he is wonder graciouse in
his querelle, and al[6] we certes shul bene[7] dede er þat we may
come to him, vs forto ȝelde, siþ þat his fader' sette of[8] vs no pris."
12 ¶ And amonge alle opere pengus, þe Bailoil & his peple passede
þe watere of Erne, so þat Sir' Roger of Suynertoñ, þe[9] sone, was[10]
fers and angri, and went forth; and þai saw miche[11] peple of men
of armes ful wel arraiede; and forþ þai went vnto[12] ham, and [13]wiþ
16 ham fouȝten,[13] and quellede as[14] meny as wolde abide, and[15] toke;[16]
and noþelesse at þat assaut þai wende þat hit hade bene þe grete
host of Scotland'. and when hit come [17]to þe morne,[17] þai gadrede
[18]ham and restede[18] a while. ¶ But þe while[19] þat þe Englisshe-
20 men restede,[20] þe noble Baroñ Thomas[21] of Vescy, and[22] þe noble
baroñ of Stafford', prekeden hir' [23]horse vp and douñ by þe hulles,
forto Kepe þe estres of þe contreye. ¶ and as þai prekeden vp
and douñ, þai saw a grete hoste of gode arraye, ordeynede in iij
24 wenges, wiþ helmes and shelde[24] shynyng, comyng[25] oppon ham,
and þo come þo ij lordes aȝeyne vnto[26] þe Bailoiles folc, and saide,
"Now, for the loue of Almyghty God, beþ of gode comfort, for ȝe
shul haue bataile anone right!" ¶ And þo spake Sir' Fouk', þe
28 sone of Gerrein, a barouñ of grete renouñ and of dede of Armes:
"Sires lordynges, vnderstondeþ [þ]at y wil saien y haue seyne
meny diuerse wenges, as wel amonges[27] Sarasynus and[28] Gewes as
amonge þe Scottes; and ȝitt see[29] y neuer þe ferþe[30] part of þe
32 wenge feiȝten. and þerfor, and[31] we wil abide our' enemys, we beþ[32]

[1] comen DO. [2—2] to þat' D. vnto þat O. [3] þai D. þey O.
[4—4] now vs DO. [5] worcheth O. [6] *om.* D. [7] be O.
[8] vppon D. [9] þo D. [10] þat was O. [11] meny O. [12] to D.
[13—13] fauȝt with ham D. [14] alse D. [15] or DO. [16] take O.
[17—17] vnto þe morwe D. [18—18] ham to-geder' and restede ham D.
[19] whiles DO. [20] restede ham D. rested' hem O.
[21] *Against this is written in the margin in a contemporary* (?) *hand:* Thomas Vessy and the barron of Stafford.
[22] *om.* O. [23] *leaf* 165, *back.* [24] sheldes D. scheldes O.
[25] comy *sic* D. [26] to D. [27] among O. [28] as O. [29] saw DO.
[30] ferde D. [31] if DO. [32] ben O.

ynow forto feiȝt aȝeynes ham; but if[1] we be[2] nouȝt of gode hert
and of gode wille forto feiȝt wiþ ham, for *cer*tes[3] we ben ful[4]
fewe aȝeyns þis co*m*pany. ¶ And þ*er*fore, for the loue of God,
take we vnto vs gode hert, and lete vs bene[5] bolde; and þenke we 4
neiþ*er* oppoñ[6] oure wifes ne[7] oppoñ our cheldren, but oneliche[8] to
conquer ham in bataile; and, þrouȝ þe helpe of our Lord God,
oure enemys we shul[9] ou*er*come."

¶ And with þat, come þe hoste of þe[10] Scottes toward ham ful 8
sorely,[11] &[10] aȝeins Sir[10] Edward of[12] Bailoile, in iij baitailes wel
araiede in Armure; and wonder fressheliche[13] þai comen[14] toward
þe Bailoiles men. But when Sir Donalde,[10] Erl of Marcile, saw al
[15]þis, he saide to Robert þe[10] Brus, [16]þe sone of Robert þe[17] Brus,[16] 12
þise wordes: "Sir Rob*er*t," q*uod* he, "ful sore me forþenkeþ at myn
hert þat þis folc, þ*at* þe[18] Bailoile haþ brouȝt wiþ him, shulde[19] dye
wiþ dent of Scottisshe meneȝ[20] suorde,[21] siþ þat þai bene[22] Cristen
men as wel as [23]we bene[23]; and þ*er*fore me þenke[24] þat hit were 16
grete charite to sende vnto ha*m* forto ȝelde ham vnto[25] our mercy
and g*rac*e, and raunsouñ ham[26] þrouȝ greuous raunsoñs,[27] forasmiche
as þai haue take[28] our land and done ille."[29] ¶ "Now, c*er*tes,"
q*uod* Sir Rob*er*t[30] Danolde, "y haue wel p*er*ceyuede þat þow [16]art 20
an enemy and traitour vnto Scotland, siþ þat þow[16] wil[31] consent to
saue oure dedely enemys þat haue[32] done vs miche sorwe and
shame; and nowe hit semeþ wel[33] þat ȝe beþ[2] of her assent."
¶ "Certes, Robert," q*uod* Sir Donald, "falseliche[34] ȝe lye! y am 24
nouȝt of her co*m*pany ne of her consent; and þat hastely ȝe shul
see, for y wil feiȝt wiþ ha*m* ra*per* þan eny of þis[35] co*m*pany." "And
certes," Sir[10] Robert saide, "y shal, [36]magre þin heede,[36] assaile ha*m*
or þow." ¶ And wiþ þat þai p*re*keden[37] her stedes fersely[38] oppoñ 28
Caskemore, and her wenges ham folewede on a[10] renge. and þo
come þai, and mette þe[39] Bailloil and his company at an hongen[40]
bouȝt of þe more in a streite passage. and so faste þai hastede ha*m*
vnto þe Englisshemen, so þat þousandes felle[41] to þe gronde, eche 32

[1] if þat DO. [2] bene D. [3] certes we O. certes R. [4] but O.
[5] be O. [6] on O. [7] neyþ*er* O. [8] only O. [9] shullen D.
[10] *om.* D. [11] serely O. [12] þe DO. [13] ferselich D. ferslych O.
[14] come DO. [15] *leaf* 166. [16—16] *om.* D. [17] *om.* O.
[18] þis O. [19] shul D. schul O. [20] men D. [21] Swerdes O.
[22] beþ D. [23—23] ȝe beþ D. [24] þenkeþ D. þinkeþ O.
[25] to DO. [26] þem O. [27] raunson O. [28] taken D. [29] euel D.
[30] Rob*er*t brus D. [31] wilt O. [32] hauen D. [33] vs D.
[34] falslye O. [35] his O. [36—36] maug[r]e þine of þin heuede *sic* D.
[37] p*re*kede D. [38] ferslych O. [39] wiþ D. [40] hongyng O.
[41] fellen D.

oppoñ o*per*, [1]into on hepe,[1] bo*p*e horse and man. ¶ The Bailoil [2]and his men *p*o[2] [3]mighghtely stoden a*z*eynes Ham, and faste quellede *p*e Scottis vnto *p*e grounde, & meny sore woundede, so longe
4 til *p*at *p*ai stoden oppoñ ham, and foynede ham with her' suordes & speres *p*rou*z*-out here bodyes; and so sore t*ra*uailede oppoñ ham til *p*ai[4] bicome[5] ful wery, and wist nou*z*t what to done. and *p*e Scottes *p*at were lafte alif' fledden to saue ham-self', in the best
8 man*er* *p*at *p*ai myght. ¶ And *p*o pursuede[6] Edward Bailoile & his me*n*, and quellede of ham [7]til *p*at hit was nyght.[7] and fro *p*ens *p*ai went vnto[8] Seint Iohñes Toune, and toke hit, and helde ham *per*e and vitailede ham-self' atte her' owen wille, for *p*ai fonden ynou*z*[9]
12 wherwith to make ham mery. ¶ *p*o made *p*e Bailoile his men *p*at wer' woundede gone to shippe forto wende into Engeland, forto hele her'[10] woundes.

And in *p*at same tyme *per*e was a Flemyng' in *p*e see, a strong'
16 *p*ef robour'[11] *p*at me callede 'Crab'; and *p*is Flemyng' was dryuen out of Flaundres for his wickednesse; and *per*fore he come into Scotland, and helde him[10] wi*p* *p*e Scottis, and dede[12] as miche harme vnto the Englisshe-men as he myght'. ¶ And *p*is Crab
20 mette in *p*e see *p*is[13] Bailoiles men *p*at wer'[10] wondede in bataile, *p*at were sent a*z*eyn into[14] Engel*and* forto hele her woundes. and *p*is Crab *z*af vnto ha*m* a grete assaut, and wolde haue quellede ha*m* eu*er*ychoñ[15]; but *p*e Englisshe-men defendet ham wel and
24 manliche, [16]and descomfitede[17] Crab and his co*m*pany; and *p*o gan he forto[18] flee into Scotland. ¶ And as he come towarde Seint Iohnes toune, he fonde a grete company of Scottis, *p*at were comen[19] a*z*eyn to-geder' after *p*e sco*m*fiture[20] of Gaskemore, *p*e whe[ch]
28 bisegede Bailoil and his me*n* in *p*e same toune of Seint Iohñ; and anone tolde[21] to *p*e Scottis how [22]*p*at he[22] desco*m*fitede of *p*e Englisshe-me*n* *p*at were sore wondet at Gaskemore, [23]& went[23] toward Engel*and* forto hele her' wonde[24]; and saide vnto *p*e
32 Scottes, *p*at *p*ai shulde haue no g*ra*ce ne might a*z*eynes Edward

[1—1] *om.* D. into an hepe O. [2—2] *p*o & his men O. [3] *leaf* 166, *back.*
[4] *p*at *p*ai D. *p*at *p*ey O. [5] becomen O.
[6] pursewede ham s*ire* D. p*ur*sued' hem sir O.
[7—7] *om.* D. til it was nyght O. [8] to D. [9] ynow DO.
[10] *om.* O. [11] a roboure D. a robber' O. [12] de *sic* D.
[13] *om.* D. *p*e O. [14] vnto D. [15] echeon O.
[16] *leaf* 167. [17] descomfit' D. [18] *om.* D.
[19] come O. [20] discomfiture O. [21] *MS.* tolde tolde.
[22—22] he was DO. [23—23] *p*at were D. *p*at went O.
[24] *MS.* wonde and sad, *with* and sad *underlined for omission;* woundes DO.

Bailoile, for enchesouñ þat he had scomfitede[1] & empairede al the chiualrye of Scotland wiþ an handeful of men, as to acount aȝeins þe Scottis þat wer slayn. Wherfore he conseilede ha*m* to[2] remeve þe sege fra*m*[3] Seynt Iohnes toune,[4] and kepe ha*m* in þe best 4
mane*r* þat þai couþe or[5] myght. ¶ The Scottes vnderstode[6] þat Crab saide ha*m* soþ, and forsoke þe sege and went þens by nyght, and halpe ha*m*-self in the beste mane*r* þat þai might.

¶ When þis tidyng[7] was know þrouȝ Scotland, how þat þe 8
lordes and knyghtes were scomfitede at Gaskemore of Scotl*and* þrouȝ Sir Edward[8] Bailoil, ȝe shullen[9] vnderstonde þat the Lordes and[10] ladies & gentiles of Scotland comen wonder faste vnto Seynt Iohñes toune, and ȝelde[11] ham vnto[12] Baloile, and to [13]ha*m* dede[13] 12
[14]feaute and homage[14] for hir londes, and ȝelden ha*m* vnto his pees, [and helde[15] him for heir lord. and he vnderfonge of ham heir homages, and gr*a*untede ham his pees; and fro þens he went to þe Abbay of Scone, and þe*r*e he was c*r*onede Kyng of Scotland. and 16
after, he lete c*r*ie his pees][16] þrouȝ-[17]out þe Land. and at þat[18] same tyme Hit bifelle[19] þat Kyng Edward of Engel*and* helde his p*ar*lement among*us*[20] his Lieges at þe[4] Newe-Castell oppoñ Tyne, forto amende þe t*re*spasses[21] and þe wronges þat had ben[22] done in his 20
land. and Sir Edward þe Bailoil, Kyng of Scotl*and*, come to him þider, and dede [23]vnto him feaute and homage[23] for þe reaume of Scotland. ¶ And in þis maner Kyng Edward of Engel*and* gaderede aȝeyn þe homages and feautes of Scotland, wherof he was 24
put out þoruȝ conseil and assent of Dame Isabell his moder, and of S*ir*e Rog*er*e Mortymer, Erl of þe Marche.

¶ Tho toke Sir Edward Bailoil, Kyng of Scotl*and*, his leue of Kyng Edward of Engel*and*, and went þens into his owen lande of 28
Scotland, and sette but litil [24]be ham[24] þat hade conseilede him and holpen him in his quereH; wherfore þai went from[3] him, and went & leuede by her owen[25] londes and rentȝ in[26] Scotland. ¶ And so hit[27] bifelle after*w*ard nouȝt longe, [28]þat þe Kyng of Scotland[28] ne 32

[1] discomfited O. [2] forto DO. [3] fro O. [4] *om.* O. [5] & O.
[6] vnderstode þo D. vndirstode þo O. [7] tydynges D.
[8] Edward þe D. [9] schal O. [10] and þe D. [11] ȝelden D.
[12] vnto þe DO. [13—13] him deden D. hym deden O.
[14—14] homage & fewte O. [15] helden O. [16] *supplied from* D.
[17] *leaf* 167, *back.* [18] the D. þe O. [19] fel D. [20] among O.
[21] trespasse D. Trespas O. [22] be O.
[23—23] to him homage and feaute D. to hy*m* feute & homage O.
[24—24] hem by O. [25] *om* DO. [26] of D. [27] *MS.* his.
[28—28] *MS.* þat þe kyng of Scotland þat þe kyng of Scotland.

remevede and come to þe toune of Anand', and *þer*e toke[1] his duelyng'. and þider come to him a co*m*pany of kny3tes, stronge men and worthy, & 3elde[2] ham vnto þe kyng, and bare ha*m* so
4 faire in dede, and' in contynaunce so þat he trust miche oppoñ ha*m*. [and anone as þe t*ra*itoures sawe þat he trust miche oppon ham],[3] þai ordeynede among*us* ham l. in o[4] co*m*pany, and [5]wolde haue[5] slayn[6] her' Kyng'; but, þrou3 þe grace of Almyghty God' he
8 brake [7]out þrou3 a[7] walle [by] [8]an Hole in his [9]chambre; and, as God wolde,[9] scaped her' t*ra*itery. and alle his men [10]wer' quellede[10]; and he ascapede wiþ miche drede to þe Toune of Cardoile, and *þer*e helde him, sore annoiede: and þis bifelle on[11]
12 oure Ladyes eve þe[12] Concepciouñ.

¶ Tho sent [13]Kyng Edward[13] Bailoil to Kyng Edward of Engel*and*, how falsely and t*ra*it*er*ousely he w*as* in litel while[14] put vnto[15] shame and sorwe, þrou3 his lige men, oppoñ whom he [16]truste
16 wonder'[16] miche[17] and p*ra*iede him, for þe loue of Almyghty God þat he wolde mayntene him and helpe[18] [him] a3eyns his enemys. ¶ the Kyng of Engeland' hade of him þo grete pite, & bihight him[19] helpe and socour', and sent him worde þat he shulde halde
20 him in pees stille in the citee of Cardoile, til þat he hade gaderede his power'. ¶ Tho ordeynede Kyng Edward' of Engel*and* a conseil at Londoñ, and lete gader his me*n* in diu*er*ses[20] shires of Engel*and*, and when he was redy, he went toward þe toune of Berwik'-vp-
24 Twyde; and' þider' [21]come to him[21] Kyng Edward' of Scotland', wiþ his power', and bisegede the toune, and made wiþout þe toune a fair' toune of pauylouns, and dikede ham wel al[12] aboute, so þat þai hade non[22] drede of þe Scottes; & made meny assautes[23] wiþ gonnes
28 and wiþ o*þer*e engynes to þe toune, wherwiþ þai destroiede meny a fair' hous; and cherches also [24]were beten[24] adoune [25]vnto the erþe, wiþ gret stones, [26]and spitouse comyng[26] out of [27]gonnes and of o*þer*e gynnes. and noþeles þe Scottes kepte wel þe toune, þat þo
32 ij kyng*us*[28] mi3t nou3t come *þer*in longe tyme. and noþeles the

[1] nome D. [2] 3olden O. [3] *supplied from* D. [4] a O.
[5—5] *om.* O. [6] quellede D. quelled' wolde haue O.
[7—7] þrou3 an D. þurgh a O. [8] *leaf* 168. [9—9] *om. sic* D.
[10—10] weren y-qwelled' O. [11] in O. [12] *om.* O.
[13—13] *struck out in* D. [14] tyme DO. [15] to DO.
[16—16] trustede D. [17] mychel O. [18] *om.* D. [19] him þo D.
[20] diu*er*s O. [21—21] comen to D. [22] no DO. [23] assaute O.
[24—24] weren bete O. [25] *leaf* 168, *back.*
[26—26] þat dispitously comen D. þat spytously comen O.
[27] of the D. [28] knyghtes O.

Kynges abiden *per*e so longe, til þo þat were in þe toune faillede vitailes; and also þai were so wery of wakyng' þat þai wiste nouȝt what to Done. ¶ And ȝe shulle vnderstonde þat þo [1]þat wer' in[1] the toune of Berwik', þrouȝ hir' comune conseile and her' assent, lete 4 *cr*ie oppoñ þe walles *þat* þai miȝt haue pees of þe Englisshe-me*n*; and *per*of þai p*rai*ede[2] þe Kyng, and of his g*rac*e, and p*rai*ede him of trewes for viij daies, oppoñ þis couenant, þat,[3] if þai were nought rescuede in þat side of þe toune toward Scotland', of þe[4] Scottis, 8 wiþin viij daieȝ, þat þai wolde ȝelde ham vnto the Kyng, and þe toune also. and to holde þise couenauntȝ,[5] þai p*r*ofurede [6]to þe Kyng xij hostages[6] oute of þe toune of Berwik'. ¶ When the hostages wer' delyu*er*ede vnto þe Kyng*us*, anone þo of þe toune 12 sent[7] vnto þe Scottes, and tolde ham of hir' sorwe & meschief'. and þe Scottes comen þo pryueliche[8] ou*er* þe wat*er* of Twyde, to þe bouȝt of þe Abbay; and Sir' William Dikett', þat was þe[9] Styward of Scotl*and*, and meny o*per* þat comen wiþ him, put ha*m* *per*e in 16 grete *per*ile of hamself att þat tyme of hir' lif'; for þai comen ouer'[10] a bruge [11]þat was to-broken,[12] and þe stones away. and meny of hir' co*m*pany were *per*e drenchede[13]; but þe forsaide William went ouer', and [14]o*per*e of[14] his co*m*pany, and come[15] by þe [16]Englisshe 20 shippis,[16] and quellede in a barge of Hulle xvj men; and aft*er* þai went into the toune of Berwik' by the wat*er* side; Wherfore þe Scottis helde þo þe touñ rescuede, and axede hir' hostages aȝeyne of þe Kyng of Engel*and*. ¶ And þe Kyng sent ham worde aȝeyne þat 24 þai askede the hostages wiþ wronge, siþ þat þai come*n*[17] into the toune by Engel*and*[18] syde; for couenaunt was bituene ham þat þe toune shulde be rescuede by the half' of Scotland'.[19] anon Kyng Edward' þo co*m*manded[20] ha*m*[21] to ȝelde þe toune or he wolde haue 28 þe hostages. and' þe Scottis saide þat þe toune was rescuede wel ynow, and *per*to þai wolde holde ha*m*. ¶ When Kyng Edward' saw[22] þe Scottis breke her' couenauntȝ þat þai made, he was wonder' wrothe, and anone lete take S*ir*e Thomas fitȝ and S*ir*e Alisaundre of Setoñ, 32 Wardeyne of Berwik',—the whiche Thomas was p*er*soñ of Dunbarr',—and lete ham be taken[23] ferst' bifore þe[24] o*per* hostages, for

[1–1] of D. [2] *prai*den D. [3] *om.* O. [4] *MS.* þe þe.
[5] couenant D. Couen*aun*t O. [6–6] xij hostages vnto þe kyng' D.
[7] senten O. [8] pryuyly O. [9] þo DO. [10] o*per*e D. [11] *leaf* 169.
[12] broke O. [13] ydreynt O. [14–14] *om.* O. [15] comen D.
[16–16] shippes of Engeland D. Shippes of Engelond' O. [17] come D.
[18] Engelandes D. Engelondes O. [19] Scotland' and DO.
[20] co*m*mande D. [21] *om.* O. [22] seye D. [23] tak' D. take O.
[24] *per* O.

enchesouñ þat Sir' Alisaundres fader'[1] w*a*s keper' of[2] þe toune. and
þe Kyng co*m*mandede eu*e*ry day forto[1] take [3]ij hostages[3] of þe
toune til þat þai were alle done, vnto þe deþ, but if þai [4]wolde
4 ȝelde[4] þe touñ; and so he wolde[5] teche ham to[6] breke her' coue-
nauntȝ. ¶ And' when þo of þe toune herde þis tydynges, þai bicome[7]
wonder' sory, and sent[8] to þe Kyng of Engel*and*, þat he [9]wolde
g*ra*unt ham o*per* viij dayes of respite, so þat bituene CC men of
8 Armes and xx^ti^ [10]me*n*[11] of Armes[10] mygh[t] by[12] strengþ goñ[13]
bituene ha*m* vnto[14] þe toune of Berwik', ham forto vitaile, so þat þe
toune moste be[15] holde for rescuede. ¶ And if it so were þat xxj
or xxij or mo were slayn of þo CC biforesaide, þat þe toune shulde
12 nouȝt ben[16] halde for rescuede. & þis couenaunt [17]forto holde,[17] þai
sent to him o*per*e xij [18]of þe toune[18] in hostageȝ.[19] ¶ The Kyng of
Engeland' g*ra*ntede ham her' praier', and tok þe hostages. on Seynt
Margaretes eve, In the ȝer' of g*ra*ce M^t^ CCC xxxij,[20] þe Scottis
16 comen ferseliche[21] in iiij weng*us* wel arraiede in Armes, forto mete
Kyng Edward of Engeland' and Edward þe Kyng of Scotland', &
wiþ hir' power', and' come fast and sharpely aȝeynes evesong tyme.
and þe same tyme was flode at Berwik', in the wat*er* of Twede, þat
20 no man myght wende ouer', on horse nei*þer* on foote, and þe wat*er*
was bituene þo ij kyng*us* and þe reame of Engel*and*: and þat tyme
abyden the Scottis in þat o*per* side, for enchesouñ þat þe Englisshe-
men shulde haue [22]bene drenchede[22] or slayñ.

24 **THis was þe arraie of the Scottis as[23] þai [24]come*n* in bataile[24]
aȝeynes þe ij Kyng*us* of Engeland' & of Scotland': In þe
vant-ward'[25] of Scotland' were þise Lordes:—**

¶ The Erl of Morrif', Iames Frise H, Symond' Frise H, Walt*er*
28 Stiward', Raynolde Cheyne, Patrik of Graham, [26]Iohñ le Graunt,
Iames of Cardoile, [27]Patrik Parkeres, Robert Caldecotes,[26] Philip
of Meldrum, Thomas Gilb*er*t, Wiseman, Adam Gurdouñ, Iamys
Gramat, Rob*er*t Boyde, Hughe Park, wiþ xl knyȝtes newe dobbede,
32 and vj C̄ me*n* of Armes, & iij M^t^ of co*m*mune.[28]

[1] *om.* D. [2] of þe DO. of R. [3—3] hostages too O. [4—4] ȝelden DO.
[5] shulde D. schuld O. [6] forto DO. [7] becomen O.
[8] senten DO. [9] *leaf* 169, *back.* [10—10] *om.* O. [11] *MS.* men men.
[12] *MS.* by by. [13] go O. [14] in-to O. [15] ben D. [16] be O.
[17—17] to ben halden D. to be holde O. [18—18] *om.* D. [19] hostage O.
[20] *MS.* xxij. [21] fressheliche D. fersly O. [22—22] be dreynt O.
[23] how þat DO. [24—24] come in bataylles O. [25] vanne-warde O.
[26—26] Decotes *sic* O. [27] *leaf* 170. [28] co*m*munes D.

In þe ferst partie of þe halfe bataile of Scotl*and* wer' þise lordes:—

¶ The styward of Scotland, þe Erl of Moneteth, Iames his Vncle, William Douglas, Dauid of Lyndeseye, Maucolyn Flemyng', William of Keth, Dunkan Kambok', wiþ xxx bachilers new dobbede. 4

In þe secunde part of þe half Lien-warde of the bataile of Scotland, were þise lordes:— 8

¶ Iames Stiward of Coldeñ, Aleyne Styward, Willia*m* Abbrehyn, William Morice, Iohñ fitz Willia*m*, Adam le[1] Mose, Walt*er* fitz Gilbert, Iohñ of Cherltoñ, Rob*er*t Walh*a*m, wiþ vij C̄ men of armes, & xvij M' of co*m*munes.[2] 12

In þe þridde ward of þe bataile of Scotland were þise Lordes:—

¶ The Erl of Marr', þe Erl of Roff, þe Erl of Straherne, þe Erle of Sotherland, William[3] Kirkeleye, Iohñ Cambron, Gilbert de Haye, William of Rameseye, William Proudegest, Kirstyn Hard, William Gurdoñ, Arnolde Garde, Thomas Dolfyn, wiþ xl knyghtes new dobbede, ix C men of Armes, aud xv [M' of] co*m*munes.[2] 16

In þe ferþ[4] warde of þe bataile of Scotland were þise lordes:— 20

¶ Archebald Douglas,[5] Erl of Leneux, Alisaunder le Brus, Erl of Fiff', Iohñ Cambel,[6] Erl of Atheles,[7] Rob*er*t Lawether, William[8] Vipount, William of Lonstoñ, [9]Iohñ de[9] Labelles, Gros de She-[10]renlowe, Iohñ of[11] Lyndeseye, Alisaunder de Gray, Ing*a*m De Vmfreuil, Patrik de Pollesworth, Dauid de Wymes, Michel Scott', Willia*m* Landy, Thomas de Boys, Rog*er*e de Mortymer', with xxx bachilers, ix C̄ me*n* of Armes, and[12] xviij M' co*m*munes.[13] 24

[In þ^e^ v^te^ warde of þ^e^ bataile of Scotlo*nd* were these lordis:—][14] 28

¶ The Erl of Dunbarr*e*, keper' of þe castel of Berwik', halpe þe Scottis wiþ l. men of Armes. And Sir' Alisaundre of Setoñ, keper of þe toune of Berwik, wiþ[15] C̄ men of Armes, [and the comoñs of þ^e^ tou*n* w*ith* CCCC men of armes],[16] ¶ and x M' & viij C̄ of fote-men: þe so*m*me of þe Erles and lordes amonteþ lv[17]; þe so*m*me of[18] 32

[1] de O. [2] Comune O. [3] William of DO. [4] *MS.* ferste.
[5] Douglas þ^e^ DO. [6] Camber O. [7] Athel D. [8] Willia*m* of DO.
[9–9] Iohan D. [10] *leaf* 170, *back.* [11] De DO. [12] *om.* O.
[13] and iiij C of communes D. & iiij C of Comune O.
[14] *supplied from* D. *om. in* OR. [15] w*ith* an D. w*ith* a O.
[16] *supplied from* D. [17] lxv D. lv M' O. [18] of þ^e^ D.

bachileres newe dobbede amounteþ[1] C and xl; þe some of me*n*
of Armes amounteþ iij M[t][2] vj C̄ & l; þe [som of þ[e] comoñs
amou*n*tith lxiiij M[t] & CC, The][3] so*m*me of co*m*mune[4] peple aboue-
4 saide[5] amounteþ lxviij M[t][6] & xlv. ¶ And þise[7] lv grete[6] Lordes
ladden alle þe o*þere*[8] lordes aboue-saide[9] in iiij batailes, as[10] is
tolde bifore, alle on[11] foote.

¶ And þe[7] Kyng Edward of Engeland and[12] Edward, Kyng[7] of
8 Scotland, hade wel app*ar*alede her folc[13] in iiij batailes, forto feiȝt
[14]on foot aȝeynes[14] her Enemys. And þe[15] Englisshe mynstralles
blow[16] her trompis ¶ and hir pipes, and hidousely ascriede þe
Scottis. and þo hade eu*er*y Englisshe bataile ij wenges of pris
12 Archiers, þe whiche at þat bataile shotten Arwes so faste and[17] sore
þat þe Scottis myght nouȝt helpe hamself; and so[18] þai smyten [þ[e]]
Scottis, þousandes to þe[19] grounde; and [20]þai goñ[21] forto fle fro þe
Englisshe-men forto saue hamselfe.[22] ¶ And[20] when þe English[23]
16 knafes saw þe scomfit*ur*e, [24]and þe Scottis falle faste[7] to the[19]
g*r*ound, þai prikeden[25] hir maistres hors wiþ þe Spores forto kepe
ham fro[26] p*er*ile, and sette her maistres at no force. ¶ And when
þe Englisshe-men saw þat, þai lopte on her hors, and fast pursuede
20 þe Scottis; and alle[27] þat abiden, þai[6] quellede doune ryght. *þere*
[28]might men[28] see þe douȝtynesse of þe noble Kyng Edward and of
his men, how manliche[29] þai pursuede þe Scottis, þat flowen for
drede. ¶ And *þere* [30]might me*n*[30] see meny a Scottisshe-man caste
24 douñ vnto þe erthe dede, and hir baneres displaiede, &[19] hackede
into pices, and meny a gode habrigouñ[31] of stele in hir blode
baþede[32]; and meny a tyme þe Scottes were gadrede in[33] co*m*panyes,
but euermore þai were descomfitede. ¶ And þus hit bifelle, as
28 God wolde, þat þe Scottis hade[34] þat day no more foisouñ ne
myght aȝeynes þe Englisshe-me*n*, þan xx shepe[6] shulde haue aȝeyns
v wolfes; and so[35] were þe Scottis descomfitede; and ȝitte þe

[1] amountith an D. amou*n*teþ a O. [2] M[t] & D.
[3] *supplied from* D. som*m*e of þe co*mmun*es amou*n*teþ lx M[t] & iiij M[t] & ij C þ[e] O.
[4] the D. þe O. [5] aboue-yseyd O. [6] *om.* O. [7] *om.* D.
[8] to*þer* D. [9] abouen-sayd O. [10] as it D. [11] in DO.
[12] and king D. [13] puple D.
[14—14] in fote aȝenst D. in foot aȝens O. [15] then D.
[16] blewen D. blew O. [17] and so D. [18] thus D. [19] *om.* DO.
[20—20] *om.* O. [21] begon D. [22] her lyvis D. [23] *MS.* Scottisshe.
[24] *leaf* 171. [25] p*r*ikkid D. p*r*eked O. [26] from D.
[27] alł tho D. [28—28] men myȝt D. men myghte O.
[29] manly O. [30—30] men myht D. me*n* myghte O.
[31] habirioñ D. haberion O. [32] bathe DO. [33] in-to DO.
[34] hadde*n* at D. [35] thus D.

[1]Scott*es* me*n*[1] had v me*n* aȝeyns on[2] Englisshe-man. And þat bataile w*a*s done at Halydounhill bisides þe toune of Berwik: at þe[3] whiche bataile were slayn of þe Scottis xxxv M[t] &[3] vij[c] & xij, and of Englisshem*en* but vij oneliche, & þo were footem*en*. & þis Victorie bifelle [4]to þe[4] Englisshe-me*n* on[5] Seynt Margaret*es* eve, In þe ȝer of our lord Ih*es*u Crist [6]M[t] CCC[6] xxxij. And while[7] þis doyng laste,[8] þe Engl*ish* knafes tok[9] þe pilfre of þe Scott*es* þat were quellede, eu*er*y ma*n* þat he myght take, wiþout[10] eny chalange of eny ma*n*.[11] Deo gracias!

[1—1] Scottis D. Scottes O. [2] an D. [3] *om.* D. [4—4] on-to D.
[5] in DO. [6—6] a M[t] CCC and D. [7] whilis D. [8] was D.
[9] nomen D. [10] with-outen D. [11] man Amen O.

APPENDIX A.

THE ROMANCE OF THE BATTLE OF HALIDON HILL, A.D. 1333.

[1. *The longer poetical Version in Harl.* 4690, *leaf* 82, *back, corresponding to the prose on p.* 285, *line* 14 *ff.*]

¶ And anone þe Skottes beganne to fflee fro þe Englische menne, to saue þer lyves. butt wanne þe knaves & þe Skottisch pages þat weren behinde the Skottes, to kepe her horses, seyen the discomfiture, þei prikeden her maisters horses awey, to kepe hem 4 selfe from perelle; and so þei towke no hede off her maisters. And þen þe Englische men towken many off þe Skottes horses, and prikeden after þe Skottes, & slewe hem downe Righte. And there men mighte see the nowbell King Edwarde off Englonde & his 8 ffolke, heugh mannefully þei chasedon the Skottes; were-off þis Romance was made:—

There men mighte well see — The Scots fled,
Many a Skotte lightely fflee, 12
And þe Englische after priking, — the English after them.
With scharp swerdes þem stiking;
And þere her Baners weren ffounde [leaf 83]
Alle displayedde on the Grounde, 16
And layne starkly on Blode
As þei hadde ffought on þe fflode.
Butt þe Scottes, (ille mote þei þee!) — The Scots thought the English must be drownd;
þought þe Englisch adrenit shulde be; 20
for bi cause þei mighte not fflee,
butte iff þei adrenite schulde bee;
butte þei kepte hem manly on londe,
so þatte þe Scottes might nott stonde, 24
and felde hem downe to Grounde, — but they slew thousands of Scots,
Many þowsandes in þatte stounde;
and þe Englische men pursuyed hem so,
Tille þe fflode was alle a-Goo: 28
Alle þus þe Skottes discomfite were
in litell tyme wiþ Grete feere;

ffor no noþer wise dide þei stryve,
Butt as .xx. shape among wolfes fyve;
(tho the Scots were 9 to 1) ffor .v. off hem þen were
ayenste an Englischman þere. 4
So þere itte was welle semyng
þatte w*ith* multitude is no scomfiting,
Butt w*ith* God, fulle off mighte,
wham he will helpe in trewe ffighte. 8
by the grace of God, at Halidon Hill near Berwick. so was þis, Bi goddes Grace,
Discomfiture off Skottes in þ*at* place,
that men cleped Halidown Hille;
ffor þere þis Bateill Befelle, 12
Atte Berwike, Be-side þe towne.
This was do w*ith* mery sowne,
wiþ pipes, Trompes, & nakers þer-to;
And loude clariounes þei Blew also. 16
And þere þe Scottes leyen dede,
35,712 Scots and more lay dead, and only 7 English. xxx. M[1]. Be-yonde Twede,
& v. M[1] tolde there-to,
w*ith* vii· C· xii· and mo; 20
& of Englischemen But sevenne,—
worschipped Be God in hevenne!—
& þat wer men on ffote Goyng,
By foly of her owne Doyng. 24
The victory of Halidon Hill was on St. Margaret's Eve, on seinte Margete-ys Eue, as y yow tell,
Befille þe victory of Halidoune Hille,
In þe yere of God almighte,
19 July, 1332-3. a M[1] iii· C and ii· and þritty. [leaf 83, col. 2] 28
atte þis Discomffiture
The English took the Scots' armour and clothes. þe Englisch knightes towke her hure
of þe Skottes þatte weren dede,
Clopes & haberiounes for her mede; 32
And watte-euer þei might finde
on þe Skottes, þei lefte not behinde;
And þe knaues, by her purchas,
hadde þere a mery solas, 36
for þei hadde for her degree,
In alle her lyffe þe Better to be:
Alle þus þe Bateille towke Ending.
But where their Kings But y canne not telle off þe yen Going 40

Off þe too kingges, were þei become,
& weþer þei wenten oute or home;
But Godde, þatte is heven king,
sende vs pees and Gode Ending! 4

went to, I don't know.

[2. *A shorter fragmentary version in MS. Arundel LVIII, College of Arms, leaf* 334, *back.*]

There þan men myght se
Many a Scott swiftly fle,
And þe Englysshmen after prikynge,
Wiþ sharp swerdys þe Scottes stykynge; 8
& þere hure banyrs weryn founde
al displayd, lyeng on grounde;
and þay lay sprad on blood,
as þey foughten on þe flood. 12
That þe Englisshmen drent shold be,
ffor þat þey hopyde to se,
ffor so þey hopyde to spede,
Seyng þe flood þat was on Twede. 16
ffor þe Englisshmen myght not fle
but yf a-drent þey shold be;
& þan þere-to loþ þey were,
for þey þought nought in no such fere, 20
But þey kept hem on londe,
So þat þe Scottes myght nought stonde;
ffor þey were fillyd to grounde,
many a þousand in þat stounde; 24
& þe Englisshmen pursywid hem so,
fort þe flood was al a-go.
And þis þe Scottes discomfytyd were
In lytil tyme wiþ gret fere.— 28

The Scots fled, the English pursued 'em.

The Scots hoped the English would be drownd;

but they kild many thousand Scots.

290

The Brut.

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 136.

1908.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Brut

OR

The Chronicles of England,

EDITED FROM

MS. RAWL. B 171, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, &c.

BY

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE, Ph.D.

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY.

PART II

(*completing the Text, with the Roll of Battle Abbey, including the name* Chaucer.)

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., Ltd.,

DRYDEN HOUSE, 43 GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

AND BY HENRY FROWDE, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C.

1908.

ERRATA.

p. 298. The headline must be: *Caen* instead of *Scluse.*
p. 333. In the head of the page: *MS. Lambeth* 331 instead of *Harley* 331.

Original Series, No. 136.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

PREFACE.

This second part finishes the text of the Chronicle, or rather, series of Chronicles, contained in the present volumes. In the first part I have printed the text of the common Brut which comes down to A.D. 1333, while this second part contains the continuations of the Brut, composed by various authors at different times, in different places and with very varying intentions. Out of the great number of Continuations I have chosen only such as have not been published as yet; and among these, only such as afford new material for the student of History or Literature. If a Continuation exists in several MSS., I have always chosen the best MS., not the oldest, for publication, and have taken the one or two next best MSS. for collation. In a few cases, however, the Continuations are extant in one recension only. The text has been printed from the MSS. as it stands, without attempting conjectural emendations, but occasionally a word or sentence accidentally omitted has been supplied from the other MSS., in the text instead of in a footnote, for the convenience of readers. But in all cases of this kind the reading of the original has been put in a footnote. Letters or fragments of words accidentally omitted are mostly added in brackets. In the footnotes, mere variations of spelling have not been inserted as a rule, while inversions of words are always noticed.

The present publication will be welcome, as well to the Student of Literature as to the Student of History. The former will recognise in it the work which, in its various forms, has been for three centuries the most popular Chronicle of England, and will find in it some interesting matter, not only in the inserted poems, among which the two mocking songs against the Flemings (p. 582 and p. 600) are published for the first time, but also in a fair number of prose passages of which I shall only refer to that dealing with Henry V's dismissal of his old rioting companions (p. 594).

The Student of History will recognise in our text the first large

Chronicle in the English language which has been laid under contribution by nearly all the great Chronicle-writers of the 16th and 17th centuries. As to its historical value I readily admit that the authors of the common Brut and its Continuations have for the most part recorded such matter as is not new, and much that, in the present state of historical literature, will appear to many readers trivial and unimportant. But these disadvantages are inseparable from the uniform practice of annalists of the middle ages. I am, however, decidedly of opinion that there is an amount of original historical information contained in the various Continuations which outweighs the obvious trivialities, mistakes and repetitions; and even the superficial reader will see that long parts of the Continuations are given with a vividness which marks the narration like that of an eye-witness. The whole discussion of historical points connected with the Brut is reserved for the Introduction and the Notes in the third volume.

The following account of the MSS. used for the text and collation in the present volume may suffice. The letters prefixed to each designate them in the notes below the text:

The *first Continuation* from A.D. 1333 to A.D. 1377 *called B*, is taken from

C = MS. Corpus Christi Coll. Camb. 174, which was written in the beginning of the 15th century and closes with the burial of Edward III in 1377.

The text, though the best among the MSS. of the same recension, is not a good one. It has been collated with

T = MS. Br. Mus. Add. 24,859, a late but accurate transcript from a MS. of the second half of the 15th century which closes with the capture of Rouen in 1419, and

R = MS. Br. Mus. Reg. 17 D XXI, likewise a late but faithful transcript from a MS. of the second half of the 15th century which ends in the same year.

Appendix B describing the character of Edward III, is taken from

W = MS. Harley 753, a late 15th century MS. which closes in the year 1430. It has been collated with

X = MS. Lambeth 331, a 15th century MS. breaking off in 1422.

Y = MS. Lambeth 491, which shows a hand of the early 15th century, and ends in 1377.

Z = MS. Lambeth 738, which is written by two 15th century hands, and ends in 1418.

The Continuation from A.D. 1377 to 1419, *called C*, is taken from

Kk = MS. Un. Libr. Camb, Kk I 12, which was written about the middle of the 15th century and closes in the year 1419. It has been collated with *T* and *R* described above.

Appendix C, a fuller version of the time from A.D. 1399 to 1401, is taken from

Ra = MS. Rawl. B 173, which was written in the 15th century and closes in 1431. It contains a very bad text, but is unique for the piece it contains.

The Continuation from A.D. 1418 to 1430, *called D*, is taken from

G = MS. Galba E VIII, which is written in a fine 15th century hand and closes in 1430. It has been collated with

A = MS. Harley 2256, the text of which agrees in every respect with that of the foregoing Galba MS.; and where A is defective, with

B = MS. Harley 266, a MS. of the same type.

Appendix D, which gives additional matter for the years A.D. 1418 to 1430, is taken from

Hh = MS. Un. Libr. Camb. Hh VI 9, which was written in the 15th century, and closes in 1434.

The Continuation from A.D. 1419 to 1431, *called E*, is taken from

E = MS. Egerton 650, which shows a hand of the time about 1450, and closes in 1431.

Appendix E, containing a differing version for the time 1422–31, is taken from Ra = MS. Rawl. B 173, which is described above.

The Continuation from A.D. 1430 to 1446, *called F*, is taken from

Tr = MS. Trin. Coll. Camb. O 9, 1 which closes in 1446. It has been collated with

U = MS. Un. Libr. Cambr. Hh VI 9 down to 1434 where U closes.

The Continuation from A.D. 1419 to 1461, *called G*, is taken from

Ad = MS. Br. Mus. Add. 10,099, which was written in the end of the 15th century, and closes in 1461. It has been collated with

H = MS. Harley 3730, which breaks off in 1452, and

C = Caxton's first printed edition of 1480, which closes in 1461.

The Collection of various pieces between 1066 and 1436, *called H*, is taken from

Ha = MS. Harley 53 which was written in the 15th century and breaks off during the siege of Calais in 1436. It has been collated with

L = Lambeth 6, a finely illuminated MS., which shows a hand of the end of the 15th century, and closes with the end of the siege of Calais in 1436. Its text, however, is not so good as that of Ha.

The Continuation of the foregoing piece H, *called I*, is taken from L, which is unique in this part.

The Collection of pieces between Havelok's time and A.D. 1475, *called K*, is taken from

La = MS. Lambeth 84, whose unique text shows a hand of the end of the 15th century, and closes in 1475.

For anything else the reader is referred to the third volume of the present edition, which will contain Introduction, Notes, Glossary and Index.[1] Finally, I have again to express my thanks to Dr. Frederick J. Furnivall for his constant and invaluable help. In both volumes the headlines over the pages are added by him.

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE.

Marburg a/L., August 1908.

[1] An abstract of the Introduction has appeared in German under the title: Geschichte und Quellen der mittelenglischen Prosachronik *The Brute of England* oder *The Chronicles of England.* Marburg. N. G. Elwert. 1905.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

B.

Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1333 *to* 1377.

Chapters 224–8.

Edward III takes Berwick. Balliol does homage for Scotland. Cornwall is made a Duchy. Edward claims France, and makes his preparations for war. The English win the battle of Sluys, A.D. 1340, and besiege Tournay. Want of money compels Edward to make peace with France. Storms at sea on his way back. Edward goes to Scotland. His son is made Prince of Wales. Constitution of the Round Table. The English imitate the foolish dress of strangers. Expedition into Brittany, A.D. 1345. Edward enters Normandy at La Hogue. English Victory at Caen. Battle of Crecy, A.D. 1346. Edward besieges Calais. The Scotch invaders beaten at Nevil's Cross. The King of France avoids a proposed combat near Calais. Calais surrenders, A.D. 1347. Citizens kindly treated. The Plague of 1348–9. Frustrated treachery of Geoffrey of Charney at Calais ... pp. 291–303

Chapters 229–231.

Sea-fight between the Spaniards and English, A.D. 1349. New Coinage. General dearth. A Drought. Negotiations about Guienne, furthered by the Pope, but broken up by the English. French attempt on Guienne. Edward crosses the sea, but John of France flees, A.D. 1355. The Scotch try to take the Castle of Berwick. Berwick surrenders. Edward III is crowned King of Scotland. The Black Prince in Gascony. Battle of Poictiers, A.D. 1356. The French King as prisoner in England. The festival of St. George, A.D. 1358. Marriage of Duchess Blanche. Edward invades Burgundy, A.D. 1360, and sets fire to the suburbs of Paris. English naval victories. Great Storm near Orleans. Treaty of Bretigny. King John of France is freed. Thunder-storms, and appearance of the Devil. Anglo-French Treaty confirmed at Westminster. Wonders and apparitions. Marriage of the Prince of Wales to Joan of Kent, A.D. 1361 ... pp. 303–314

Chapters 232–235.

Wind, Rain and Frost. Law-pleading in English, A.D. 1363. Charles of Blois slain, A.D. 1364. Peter's Pence not to be paid. King

Pedro of Spain is deposed by his brother, A.D. 1366. Danish Invaders are repulsed in the North-sea. The Black Prince helps King Pedro of Spain. Battle of Navarra. Marriage of Prince Lionel, Duke of Clarence, A.D. 1366. Great Pestilence, A.D. 1369. Death of the Earl of Warwick at Calais. Sir John Hawkwode. Robert Knollis's expedition to France. Limoges rebels against the Black Prince. The King of Navarra's visit to England. King Pedro's daughters married to the Duke of Lancaster and the Earl of Cambridge. Spaniards surprise Englishmen at Rochelle. pp. 314–326

Chapters 236–239.

The Duke of Lancaster's expedition to Bordeaux, A.D. 1373. Disputes between Edward III and the Pope. Truce with France for one year. Great pestilence. The Earl of Pembroke is taken prisoner by the Spanish, A.D. 1374. The Commons refuse further money unless the King proves his need of it, A.D. 1376. Alice Ferrers and Lord Latimer. Piers de la Mare imprisoned. Death of the Black Prince, A.D. 1377. Revolt of Warwick's tenants. Subsidy granted to Edward III. Sir John Munsterworth executed for treachery. Death of Edward III, A.D. 1377 ... ... pp. 326–332

Appendix B.

The Character of Edward III. ... ... pp. 333–334

C.

Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1377 *to* 1419.

Chapters 239–240.

Coronation of Richard II. Hawle and Shakyll, A.D. 1378. French gallies burn English Towns. Revolt of Jack Straw and Wat Tyler, A.D. 1381. Walworth slays Jack Straw. Punishment of the rebels, Earthquake, A.D. 1382. Crusade of the Bishop of Norwich, A.D. 1383. Fight near Dunkirk, A.D. 1383. Marriage of Richard II with Anne of Bohemia.[1] Expedition of the Duke of Lancaster into Spain, A.D. 1386. The King of Armenia visits England. Treaty with the Scots. The Earl of March slain in Ireland, A.D. 1398. The rising of the Five Lords, A.D. 1387. Flight of the evil counsellors. Tournament for foreigners in London, A.D. 1388. John of Gaunt's Expedition to Spain, A.D. 1387. Dispute between Londoners and the Bishop of Salisbury about a baker's broken head. King Richard's Quarrel with the Londoners. Reconciliation, and great reception of him. Jousts in Smithfield. Death of Queen Anne, A.D. 1394.[2] ... ... pp. 335–348

[1] "Right as our firste lettre is now an A"—Anne, crowned Queen of England on Jan. 14, 1382—Lowes on the date of Chaucer's *Troilus*, Book I, st. 25, in Publ. of Modern Lang. Assoc. of America, June 1908.

[2] See Lowes on the effect of this on the shorter and revised Prologue to Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women.*

Chapters 241–242.

King Richard marries Isabella of France, A.D. 1396. Coronation of the Queen. King Richard arrests the Duke of Gloster, and sends him to Calais, A.D. 1397. Murder of the Duke. Other arrests. The great Parliament at Westminster. Muster of Richard's adherents. The Earl of Arundel sentenced and executed. Others condemned to perpetual imprisonment. Creation of Nobles. Duel between Bolingbroke and Norfolk stopt by the King, A.D. 1398. False Blank Charters. Richard's Expedition to Ireland, A.D. 1399. Return of Bolingbroke. Richard deposed, and Bolingbroke made King ... ... pp. 349–359

Chapter 243.

Coronation of Henry IV, A.D. 1399. Richard II starved. Plot against Henry IV; conspirators executed, A.D. 1400. Debate between Owen Glendower and Lord Grey de Ruthin, A.D. 1401. The King invades Wales. A comet, A.D. 1402. Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403. The Emperor of the Turks in London. The Marriage of Henry IV, A.D. 1403. Marriage of the Princess Blanche. English naval victory near Flanders, A.D. 1404. Execution of Serle. Duel in Smithfield. Archbishop Scrope's rebellion and execution, A.D. 1405. Marriage of the Earl of Kent, A.D. 1407. Death of Sir Robert Knollis. Princess Philippa is married to the King of Denmark, A.D. 1405. Duel in Smithfield. Death of Northumberland and Bardolf, A.D. 1408. The Earl of Kent killed at St. Brieux, A.D. 1408. Six days' jousting by Hainaulters in London, A.D. 1409. Duel in Smithfield between Glocester and Arture. Rys ap Die's Execution. English Victory at St. Cloud, A.D. 1411. Victory at La Hogue, A.D. 1412. Henry IV dies in "Jerusalem," A.D. 1413 ... ... pp. 359–372

Chapters 244–245.

Henry V re-buries Richard II, A.D. 1413. Lollards' conspiracy discovered, A.D. 1414. The sending of the tennis-balls. Henry V's war-preparations. Conspiracy against the King's life, A.D. 1415. Henry invades France and besieges Harfleur. Surrender of Harfleur. Battle of Agincourt, A.D. 1415. Killing of the French prisoners. The English Dead. Henry V's reception in London. The German Emperor meets King Henry. Henry V's muster of ships. Second Invasion of France, A.D. 1417. Surrender of the French cities. Siege of Cherbourg. Arrival of the Earl of March in France. Sir John Oldcastle's imprisonment and execution, A.D. 1417. Siege of Rouen, A.D. 1418. Siege of Caudebec. Names of the Governors of Rouen. Distress of the City. Rouen surrenders, A.D. 1419 ... ... pp. 373–391

Appendix C.

Fuller Version of the time from 1399 *to* 1401.

Conspirators against Henry IV punished. Execution of Roger Clarendon and the prior of Laund. Rebellion of Owen Glendower.

Lord Grey de Ruthin taken prisoner. The capture of Edmund Mortimer. Henry V's fruitless expedition into Wales ... pp. 392–393

D.

Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1418 *to* 1430, *including John Page's Poem on the siege of Rouen.*

Henry V besieges Rouen, A.D. 1418. Stations of his generals. Chain and bridges across the Seine. Caudebec wants to share the fate of Rouen. Cherburg won by Humphrey of Gloster. Reinforcements for Henry V. Rumoured approach of the French King. Chief Captains of Rouen. Defence of the city. Henry arranges a sham fight with a rescuing power, to deceive the French in Rouen. Deaths from starvation. Henry feeds the expelled starving Roueners. The City sends delegates into the English camp. *Beginning of the Poem.* The delegates want safe-conduct to the King. The King is ready to see them. They ask him for mercy. Henry grants them time. Tents are pitched to treat in. The Roueners refuse the English terms. The poor in Rouen insist on the rich yielding to Henry V. If no rescue comes in eight days, Rouen is to be given up to Henry V. Delivery of the keys. The English welcomed in Rouen. Henry V hears mass in the Minster. *End of the Poem.* Queen Joan arrested. Death of Friar Randulf. Meeting of Henry V and the French Queen. No agreement. Pontoise taken by the English. Treaty of Troyes, A.D. 1420. Henry V weds Katherine of France. Their reception in London. Death of the Duke of Clarence. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. Henry V besieges Meaux in Brie. Capture of Meaux. Death of Henry V, A.D. 1422.

The child Henry VI reigns. His Guardians. Wonderful escape of Gloster's wife. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425. Death of the Duke of Exeter, A.D. 1426. The Bishop of Winchester is made Cardinal. Siege of Orleans, A.D. 1428. The Earl of Salisbury killed. Siege of Orleans raised by the French. Boat with Duke of Norfolk swamped, A.D. 1429. Great Dearth. Coronation of Henry VI, A.D. 1430. Reinforcements sent to France. Smithfield Duel stopt. Henry VI crosses the sea. His success in France. Joan of Arc taken, A.D. 1430 pp. 394–439

Appendix D.

Additional matter from the time A.D. 1420 *to* 1428.

Will Wawe hanged. Great Rain in 1427. Royal Seal counterfeited. A Widow's Murderer stoned. The heretic Richard Hunder burnt ... ... pp. 440–443

E.

Continuation of the Brut from the capture of Rouen, A.D. 1419 *to* 1430.

Queen Joan arrested. Henry V weds Catherine, A.D. 1420. Feast at the Queen's coronation. The *menu* at the banquet. Death of the

Duke of Clarence. Henry V goes to France. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. Death of Henry V. His corpse brought to London. French homage to Henry VI. The heretic William Taylor burnt. Siege of Orleans raised, A.D. 1429. Lord Talbot taken prisoner. Great dearth. Henry VI in London. His coronation at Westminster. Duel in Smithfield stopt, A.D. 1430 ... ... pp. 444–451

Appendix E.

Additional matter for the time from A.D. 1422 *to* 1431.

The child Henry VI brought to London. Sir John Mortimer beheaded. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425. Parliament at Leicester. False Wines in London. Siege of Orleans raised, A.D. 1429. Lord Talbot taken prisoner. Coronation of Henry VI, A.D. 1430. Parliament at Westminster ... ... pp. 452–455

F.

Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1430 *to* 1446.

Spanish Ambassadors insulted, A.D. 1430. A Lollard burnt. Jack Sharp executed, A.D. 1431. Ludgate-prison built. Henry VI's journey from Calais to Rouen. Reception in Paris. Wonderful shows. The King visits his grandmother. Coronation at Paris, A.D. 1431. Reception in London, A.D. 1432. Cornhill and Cheapside. St. Paul's and Westminster Abbey. Parliament at Westminster. Foreign Ambassadors. Convocation at Basel. The Earl of Huntingdon goes into Normandy. Great Pestilence, A.D. 1434. Hard frost. Negotiations for peace with France, A.D. 1435. Money for war granted to Henry VI. English troops to Normandy. Fights round Calais. The English besieged in Calais are rescued, A.D. 1436. Flemish towns taken. Scotch invasion repulsed. Hard Frost, A.D. 1436. Death of Queen Katherine. Foreigners at the English Parliament. The Duke of York comes back to England, A.D. 1437. A Murderer sentenced. Heretics burnt. Dear food. Storms and Earthquake. The Earl of Huntingdon goes to France. Peace-meeting at Calais, A.D. 1439. Cruel murder discovered. Parliament at Westminster and Reading. Ship-thieves hanged. Heretics burnt. Duel in Smithfield, A.D. 1440. Expedition to France. Henry VI visits the City. Storm raised by witches. The clerk Roger retracts his devilish art. Eleanor Cobham found guilty of treason and witchcraft, A.D. 1441. Her public penance. The clerk Roger is hanged. Duel in Smithfield. Lord Talbot's expedition to France, A.D. 1442. Arrant thieves hanged. A woman pressed to death for bad language. Negotiations for Henry VI's marriage. King's offender pardoned. Princess Margaret betrothed to Henry VI, A.D. 1444. St. Paul's steeple burnt, A.D. 1445. King Henry's wedding. Queen Margaret's procession and coronation. French Ambassadors come to treat for peace pp. 456–490

G.

Continuation of the Brut from the Capture of Rouen, A.D. 1419 *to* A.D. 1461.

Chapters 245[1]–251.

Murder of the Duke of Burgundy, A.D. 1419. Queen Joan arrested. Henry V weds Katherine of France, A.D. 1420. The Duke of Clarence slain. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. The Queen visits Paris. Death of Henry V, A.D. 1422. Praise of Henry V, who was wild in youth, but virtuous when King. His French wars incited by the clergy. His foundations of religious houses. Gloster made Protector. Battle of Verneuil, A.D. 1424. Gloster weds the Duchess of Holland. His Hainault attack fails. Affray in the City, A.D. 1425. Henry VI and Nobles knighted. Much rain. Lord Salisbury shot at Orleans, A.D. 1428. Widow's murderer stoned. Henry VI crowned, A.D. 1430. Joan of Arc burnt, A.D. 1431. Henry VI's coronation at Paris. Rebellion of the soldiers at Calais. Pope Eugenius IV deposed. Congress of Arras, A.D. 1435. French plot to seize Calais discovered. The Duke of Burgundy besieges Calais. Siege raised by the Duke of Gloster, A.D. 1436. Flemish towns ransacked. Roxburgh besieged by the Scots. Death of Queen Katherine, A.D. 1437. Treaty between the King and the Duke of Burgundy ... ... pp. 491–506

Chapters 251–255.

Death of Sigesmund of Germany. Owen Tudor's imprisonment, A.D. 1438. Death of Warwick at Rouen. Great dearth. Frederick is chosen Emperor of Germany. Eleanor Cobham is accused of treason, A.D. 1441. Her accomplices. Disputes as to the Lord Mayor. St. Paul's steeple burnt, A.D. 1445. Henry VI's marriage with Margaret. Duel at Smithfield stopt by the King. Henry's marriage dearly bought. Losses by it. Suspicious death of Duke Humphrey of Gloster, A.D. 1447. The papal Schism. Felix resigns. Rouen and Normandy lost. Constantinople taken by the Turks. Dutch ships captured. Rouen taken by the French, A.D. 1448. Captain Bluebeard executed, A.D. 1450. The Duke of Suffolk's end, A.D. 1450. Jack Cade's rebellion. His entrance into London. Lord Say beheaded. Jack Cade killed by Alexander Iden, A.D. 1450. ... ... pp. 506–520

Chapters 256–263.

Rebellion of the Duke of York. Prince Edward born, A.D. 1453. Lord Mayor's show on the Thames. Rebellion of the Lords. First Battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1455. The Duke of York made Protector. Lombard Riot in London. Great Fish caught. Prisoners of Newgate break out. The French pillage Sandwich. Bishop Peacock's abjuration. Concord among the Lords, A.D. 1458. Battle of Bloreheath, A.D.

[1] Compare under C. The reckoning differs by one chapter.

1459. Trollop deserts the Yorkists. Failure of the Yorkist revolt, A.D. 1459. The Yorkists keep Calais, and increase in number. Sandwich taken, A.D. 1460. Lord Warwick goes to Ireland, to speak with the Duke of York. Yorkist Lords come to London. Battle of Northampton, A.D. 1460. Henry VI to be King for his life; and York acknowledged as his successor. Battle of Wakefield, A.D. 1460. The Duke of York slain. Second Battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1461. Henry VI captured. Londoners negotiate with the Queen. Flight of the rich merchants. Henry VI deposed. Edward IV made King. Battle of Towton, A.D. 1461. Coronation of Edward IV ... ... pp. 520–533

H.

Various Pieces from MS. Harley 53, *from* A.D. 1066 *to* 1436.

I. Coronation of William I's Queen. Battle Abbey escutcheons. Battle Abbey Roll of the names of the Norman knights ... pp. 534–537

II. Edward III resolved to chastise the French, A.D. 1346. Roll of the English for Crecy and Calais. Battles before and at Crecy. Siege of Calais. Scotch invaders are beaten at Nevil's Cross, A.D. 1346. The King of France avoids a proposed combat near Calais pp. 537–544

III. Bolingbroke's return to England, A.D. 1399. Richard II is deserted, and taken prisoner. Bolingbroke's son Henry talks friendlily with Richard II. Richard II starved. His corpse exhibited. A Conspiracy disclosed to Henry IV by the Duke of Aumerle, A.D. 1400. Conspirators beheaded. Revolt of Owen Glendower, A.D. 1400. The King's expedition to Wales. Scotch beaten at Homildon Hill, A.D. 1402. The King buffets Sir Henry Percy. Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403. The Emperor of Constantinople in London. Ships captured at sea. Battle of Marck, A.D. 1405 ... ... pp. 544–551

IV. The Lollards' conspiracy against Henry V discovered, A.D. 1414. Sir John Oldcastle arrested. Henry V's claim to France. His preparations for an invasion, A.D. 1415. Traitors beheaded. Siege of Harfleur The great gun Goodgrace. Names of Harfleur Hostages. Surrender of Harfleur. Battle of Agincourt, Oct. 25, 1415. The English King's words to his men. His personal bravery. Names of the French Lords killed at Agincourt. The English dead. French prisoners killed. Henry V's reception in London, A.D. 1466. Visit of the German Emperor. Council at Calais ... ... pp. 551–559

V. Capture of Rouen, A.D. 1419. Attempt at peace between England and France. The Duke of Burgundy slain. The Treaty of Troyes, A.D. 1420. Henry V betrothed to Katherine of France. Their return to England, A.D. 1421. Death of the Duke of Clarence. Henry V's second expedition to France. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. The Earl of Warwick made keeper of Henry VI, A.D. 1422. Sir Roger Mortymer executed. Verneuil surrendered to the French. Battle of Verneuil, A.D. 1424. Names of the Scotch and French slain in the battle. The Prince of Portugal in England. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425.

Henry VI knighted. William Wawe hanged. The Bishop of Winchester goes to Normandy against the Pope's order, A.D. 1427. Henry VI's coronation at Westminster. Henry VI in Paris, A.D. 1431. Rebellion of the soldiers at Calais about their wages. Congress of Arras, A.D. 1435. The men of Popering's bad behaviour. The Duke of Burgundy besieges Calais, A.D. 1436. The Flemings scorn the English by pictures and interludes. The French, disguised as fishermen, try to surprise Calais. Death of the Duke of Bedford. Calais well fortified. Calais men sworn to Henry VI. English force gathered to rescue Calais. Successful English raids from Calais. The English surprised while hunting hares. The Picards beaten in the Golden Dale. The Flemings capture the Castle of Oye. William Bullion treated as a traitor. Marck surrenders to the Flemings. The Flemings besiege Calais, A.D. 1436. The Picards ruin Guisnes Castle. Sandgate's shameful surrender. The Flemings try to block the harbour of Calais. The men of Bruges and their "Bad Thursday" at Calais. The bulwark of the men of Ghent taken pp. 559–580

I.

End of the Siege of Calais, A.D. 1436, *from MS. Lambeth* 6.

The besieged English receive reinforcements. The Duke of Burgundy and the Flemings abandon the siege. The Siege of Guisnes given up by the Picards. The Englishmen's mocking song against the Flemings pp. 581–584

K.

Various Pieces from MS. Lambeth 84, *from Havelok's time to* A.D. 1475.

I. Story of Havelok's son Curan and Argentil ... pp. 585–588

II. Richard II's quarrel with his uncle, the Duke of Gloster, about the soldiers from Brest, A.D. 1397 ... ... pp. 588–589

III. Deposition of Richard II, and Election of Henry IV, A.D. 1399. Prophecy that Richard II should be destroyed by a toad pp. 589–590

IV. Richard II murdered by Piers of Exton, A.D. 1400. His corpse brought to London and to Langley. Reported starvation of Richard II. His treasure ... ... pp. 590–592

V. The causes of the Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403 ... p. 593

VI. Accession and character of Henry V, A.D. 1413. Dismissal of his old companions. With the help of Katherine Swynford, he sets his court in order. He stops a duel ... ... pp. 593–596

VII. Battle of Agincourt, A.D. 1415. The English King's crown captured and sent to Paris. The people from Paris hasten to Agincourt. French prisoners killed. The list of dead ... ... pp. 596–598

VIII. The Siege of Rouen, A.D. 1418. Prophecies of Surrender. Every eldest son in Rouen made a King on St. Dennis' Eve ... p. 598

IX. Prophecy at Henry VI's birth, A.D. 1421. His coronation. The Popering men's bad behaviour. The Duke of Exeter's revenge. English Ballad against the Flemings ... ... pp. 598–601

X. The first battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1455. The Battles of Blore heath and Ludlow, A.D. 1459. The Battles of Northampton and Wakefield, A.D. 1460: of St. Albans and Wigmore, A.D. 1461 pp. 601–602

XI. Battle of Towton, A.D. 1461. Henry VI taken prisoner. Battle of Barnet, A.D. 1471. Death of Henry VI. King Edward IV goes to France, A.D. 1475. The French pox, the stitch and the flix pp. 602–604

Appendix to H. (Compare p. 535–537.)

Alphabetical List of the Battle Abbey Roll in MS. Harley 53 pp. 605–607

[B]

[FROM THE BATTLE OF HALIDON HILL (A.D. 1333) TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD III (A.D. 1377).]

[*MS. Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, No.* 174, *leaf* 172, *back.*]

¶ Ande so, aft*er* þis *gra*cious victorye, þe King t*ur*nyd him aȝen vnto þe same seege of Berwyk. & whan þey of þe sege,[1] sawen & herd hov þat þe[2] King Edward had sped, þey ȝolden to him þe
4 toun, w*ith* þe castell, on þe morwe aft*er* þ*at* þe bataile was, þat ys forto seyn, on Seint Margaretes day. And þan þe King ordeyned S*er*e Edwarde Bayllol, w*ith* o*þer*e noble & worþy men, to be [3]kep*er*s and gou*er*no*ur*s of Scotlonde in his absence; & hy*m* self t*ur*ned
8 aȝen, and come into Englond aft*er* þis victory, w*ith* myche ioye & worship.

¶ And in þe next ȝere sewyng,[4] þ*at* ys forto[5] seyn, þe ȝer*e* of ou*r* Lord M^{l}. CCC. & xxxij,[6] & of King Edward, þe vj.,[7] he wente aȝ*en*
12 into Scotland in þe wynter tyme; at whiche viage þe castell of Kylbrigge in Scotland, for hym & his men þ*at* w*ith* hym comen, he recou*er*ed, & had[8] aȝens the Scottis, al þ*at*[9] his owne luste.[10] ¶ And in þ*at* same ȝere, S*er*e Edward Baillol, king of Scotlande,
16 held his p*ar*lemen*t* in Scotland, w*ith* meny noble lordes of Engelond, þ*at* were at þat same p*ar*lement, for enchesoun of hire landes and lordshipes þ*at* þey had in þe reume of Scotland, and helden of þe same Baillol. & in þe vij. ȝere of his regne, aboute þe feste of
20 sent Iohn[11] Baptiste, Sire Edward Baillol, þe verry and trewe King of Scotland, as by heritage & riȝte lyne, made his homage and feaute vnto King Edward of Englond for þe reaume of Scotland, at þe Nev Castell vp Tynt, in p*re*cense of meny worþi lordeȝ, and
24 also of co*m*munes of boþe reaumes, & ano*n* aft*er* in þe same ȝer*e* of[12] King Edward of Engelond resceyued of þe duke of Britaigne his homage for þe erldome & lordship of Richemound.[13] ¶ And so folwyng in þe neyne ȝere of his regne, aft*er* Micelmasse, King
28 Edwarde rode into Scotlond, and þ*er* was faste by sent John*n*es toun almoste al þe wynt*er* tyme; & he helde his c*ri*stiscemasse at

[1] towne T. toun R. [2] þe *om.* R. [3] *leaf* 173. [4] folwynge R.
[5] to T. [6] M^{l}CCC xxxiii T. MCCC xxxiij R. [7] vj ȝeer R.
[8] had it T. [9] at T. at R. [10] wille. [11] Iohn þe TR.
[12] of *om.* R. [13] erldom of Richemonde & lordship R.

þe Castel of Rokysburgh. & in þe same ȝere þoruȝt-out al Engelond, aboute sent Clemcys tyde, in wynt*er* þ*er*e arose a[1] suche a sprynggynge and wellinge op of wateres [2]and floodes, bothe of þe see and also of fresshe ryvers & sprynge3, þat þe see brynke wallaes 4 & coostes broken vp.[3] Men,[4] bestes, and houses in meny places, & namely in lowe cuntres, violently and sodenly[5] were dreynt and dryven awey; and þe fruyte of þe erþe, þoruȝ continuance and abundaunce of þe see watres, eu*er*more aft*er*[6] were t*ur*ned into more 8 saltnes & sournes of sauour.

¶ The x. ȝere of King Edwarde, he entred þe Scottysshe see aft*er* Missom*er*e; & to meny of þe Scottes he ȝaf batayll, and ou*er*come him,[7] and meny he treted & bowede vnto his pees, þoruȝ his 12 doughtynes. & after Michelmasse þan next folwynge, was þe Erl of Moryf ytake att Eþinburgh, & brouȝt into Engelond, & put into prisoun. ¶ And in þe moneþes of Iuyn and Iuull[8] þan next folwyng, in the xj. ȝere of his regne, was seyn and aperede in þe 16 firmament, a bemyd[9] sterre, þe whiche clercus calleþ 'stella comata'; and þat sterre was seyn in diu*er*ce parteis of the firmament; wheraft*er* anon þer folwyd in Engelond good chepe, and wonder grete plente of[10] chaffaree, vitaile and marchaundice, and 20 þ*er*e aȝens, honger, scrafte, mischif,[11] and nede of money, in-somuche þat a quart*er* of whete att London was suolde for .ij s., and a good fatte oxe at a noble, and v. good dowe briddes for a j d. In whiche ȝere, on Holy Roed ȝeue, deide S*er*e Iohn of Elh*a*m, Erl of 24 Cornewaile, King Edward*us* broþ*er*, and lithe at Westmynstr*e*.

Hov King Edwarde made a Duchye of þe Erldom of Cor[n]waile; & also of vj. oþ*er*e erles þat were newe made; & of þe ferste Chalangyng of þe reaume of Fr*a*unce. Cap° CC^mo^. 28 xxv^to^.[12]

[13]In þe ȝere of our Lord a[14] M^t^. CCC. xxxvii., and of King Edwarde xij.,[15] in[16] þe moneþe of March, durynge þe p*ar*lement at Westminstr*e* in lente tyme, King Edwarde made of the erldome of 32 Cornevayle a duchye, þe whiche duche he ȝaf to Edwarde his ferste sone wiþ[17] þe erldome of Chestr*e*. also King Edward made at þat tyme vj. oþ*er*e erles, þat ys forto sey, Sere Henry, þe Erl of

[1] a *om.* TR. [2] *leaf* 173, *back.* [3] vp *om.*T. vp so þ*a*t R.
[4] and boþe men T. [5] Cuntrees sodenli and violenti R. [6] after *om.* TR.
[7] hem T. [8] of Iuyll and Iuyn R. [9] lemed R. [10] of alle R.
[11] mischif *om.* T. [12] CCxxvj R. [13] *leaf* 174. [14] a *om.* T.
[15] xij^e^ yeer T. [16] Edwarde þe xij ȝeer in R. [17] þe R. *om.* C.

Lancastres sone, Erl of Leycestre; William of Bowham, Erl of Northampton; William of Mountgen, Erl of Salesbery; Hughe of Awdelee, Erl of Gloucestre; Robert of Vfforde, Erl of Suthfolk;
4 and William of Clyntton, Erl of Huntyngdone. In that same ȝere, hit[1] was ordeynede in þat same parlement, þat noman shulde were no cloþe þat was woruȝt oute of Engelond, as cloþe of gold, of silk, damaske, vellewet, saton, baudekyn, ne non suche oþere; ne non[2]
8 wyldware in Furrenre of beȝonde[3] see, but suche as myȝte Spende an C. li. of rente erliche[4]: but þis ordeynaunce and[5] statute was of[6] litel effecte, for hit was noþing holde.

¶ In þe xiij. ȝere of hys regne, King Edward wente ouere see
12 into Braban, wiþ Quene Phelip his wif[7] þere beryng[8] childe,[9] and[10] att Andwerp, þere[11] he duellid more þen a ȝere, to trete wiþ þe Duke of Braban and oþere allyed vnto him of þe calynggyn of þe reaume of Fraunce to King Edward, be riȝte and by herytage, after
16 þe deþ of Carol þe grete, King of Fraunce, broþer Germayne of[12] quene Isabelle,[13] King Edwardus Moder, þe whiche[14] was holden and ocupied vnrightfully by Philip of Valeys, þe Emessone of King Carol: ¶ þe whiche duke, and al his, in þe forseyd þinges [15]and in
20 al oþere þerto longyng, wiþ al his men and goodes, King Edward founde redy vnto him, and maden and behyȝten[16] suerte, by good fayghte and truste; and after þat, þe king hasted him into Engelond aȝen, and left þere þe quene stille behynde hym in Braban.

24 ¶ þan in þe xiiij. ȝere of his regne, whenne al þe lordeȝ of his[17] reaume, and oþer þat ownen to be at his parlement, weren clepte and assembled togedre in þe same parlement, holden at London after þe feste of sent Hillary, þe Kingeȝ nedes were putt forþe and
28 promoted as toching þe kingdome of Fraunce; for whiche nedeȝ to be spede, þe King askeþ þe vif[18] part of alle þe meble goodeȝ of Engelond, and þe wolles, and þe ix. þe[19] schef of euery[20] corn; and þe lordeȝ of eny[21] toun wher suche þinges schulde be taxid and gaderd,
32 shulde ansuere to þe King þerof; and al he had and helde at his owene liste[22] and wil. wherfor, yf y shal knowliche þe verrey treuþe,[23] þe ynnere loue of þe peple was turned into hate, & þe

[1] hit *om* T. [2] noon oþer R. [3] beyonde þe T. biyonde þe R.
[4] yeerli rente T [cp. Newers day, 302/12]. [5] and þis T. & þis R.
[6] off fuł R. [7] wif and T. [8] sche bere T.
[9] þere beryng childe *om.* R. [10] and *om.* T. [11] and þere T.
[12] to T. [13] Isobelle that was T. [14] that T. [15] *leaf* 174, *back.*
[16] behighte him R. [17] þe T. [18] xv^e T. xv. R.
[19] þe *om.* TR. [20] alle maner T. [21] eueri T. euerie R.
[22] luste T. lust R. [23] þe treuthe verray R.

co*m*mune prayrs into cursinge, for cause *þat* the co*m*mune peple were strongliche ygreued. ¶ also þe forsaide Philip of Valeys of Fr*a*unce, had gadered to him a g*r*ete oste, and destr*o*yede *þer*e in his p*ar*teys and kingdome, meny of þe Kinge*ȝ* frende*ȝ* of Engelonde, 4 w*ith* tounes & castellis, and meny o*þer*e of hire lordshippe*ȝ*; and meny harmes, schames, and despite*ȝ*, dede vnto þe Quene. wherfore þe King, whan he ha[r]d[1] of þis[2] tydinge, he was str*o*n[g]lyche meued, and *þer*wiþ an-anger[d], and sente diu*er*se lett*er*s ou*er*e see 8 to þe Quene, and to o*þer*e þat were his frende*ȝ*, gladyng him, and c*er*tyfienge þat he wolde be þer [3]him-self in al þe haste þat he my*ȝ*t. ¶ And anon, after Est*er*, when he had sped of al þing þat hym neded, & come fore,[4] he wente ou*er*e see a*ȝ*en; of whos comyng, þe 12 quene & al his frendis were wonder glad, & maden myche ioye; and al þat were his enemys, and a*ȝ*ens hym helden,[5] madyn as[6] muchel sorwe. ¶ In þe same tyme þe King, þoru*ȝ* councel of his treue leiges, & councell[7] of his lordes *þat* þere weren p*r*esent wiþ 16 him, toke þe King of Fr*a*unces name,[8] and toke & melled þe Kinge*ȝ* armes of Fr*a*unce qwarte*r*ly w*ith* þe armes of Engelond, & com-m*a*unnded forþwiþ his coigne of gold, vnder descripciou*n* of the name of Engelond and of Fr*a*unce, to be made, þe[9] beste *þat* my*ȝ*te be, 20 þat ys for to seyn, þe floreyn *þat* was clept þe 'noble,' of[10] value of vj s. & viij d., and þe 'half-noble' of[11] iij.s. iij.d., & þe 'ferþing' of value of xx. d.

Hov King Edward come to þe Sclus, and descomfited alle þe 24 poer[12] of Fr*a*unce in þe same havene. Cap*itulo*[13] CC^mo^ xxvj^to^.[14]

And in þe next *ȝ*er*e* aft*er*, þat ys forto seyn, þe xv. *ȝ*er*e* of his regne, he comaunded, & lete[15] write in his charters, writtes, & o*þer*e 28 lett*er*s, þe date of his regne of Fr*a*unce ferst,[16] & while *þat* he was þus doyng & trauaillyng in Fr*a*unce, þoru*ȝ* his councel he wrote to al p*r*elatis, dukes, Erles, barouns, &[17] noble lorde*ȝ* of his cuntr*e*, and also to diu*er*s of þe co*m*mune peple, diu*er*s l*ett*res and maunde- 32 mentis, beryng date at Gandanu*m* þe .viij. day[18] Feu*er*er. ¶ And anon aftir, wiþ-yn[19] litel tyme, he come a*ȝ*en into Engelond, wiþ þe

[1] herde TR. [2] these T. [3] *leaf* 175. [4] & come fore *om.* T.
[5] helden *om.* T. [6] as *om.* T. [7] councell *om.* R.
[8] kingis name of ffraunce T. [9] þe *om.* T. [10] of þe R.
[11] of value of T. off value of R. [12] power R. [13] Capitulo *om.* T.
[14] xxvj^to^ *om.* T. CC xxvij R. [15] dide T. [16] ferst *om.* R.
[17] and þe TR. [18] day of TR. [19] yn a T.

quene and hire childrin. And in þe same ȝere, on Missomer even, he bigan to sayle towarde Fr*a*unce aȝen, & manly & stifly ful vpon Philip of Valeys, the whiche long tyme lay, and had[1] gaderid to
4 him a ful [2]huge and boystous navee of diu*er*s nacions, in þe hauene of Sclus. And þ*er*e þey fouȝten togedir þe Kinge of Fr*a*unce, and he wiþ her ostes from midday vnto þe morwe. ¶ In wiche batail were slayn xxx m[t] men of þe kingeȝ cumpanye of Fr*a*unce, and
8 meny shippes & Coggeȝ were take; and so, þoruȝ Godeȝ helpe, he had þ*er*e þe victorye, and bere þens a glorious chiuache. And in þe same ȝere, aboute sent Iames tyde, wiþout þe ȝates of sent Omers, Robert of Artoys, wiþ men of Engelond and of Flaundres, bitterly
12 fauȝt aȝens þe duke of Burgoyne & þe Frensshe men; at wiche bataile þer were slayn & take [3]of þe Frensshe men, xv. barouns, xx .iiij. knyȝtis; & shippeȝ & barges were take,[3] vnto þe noumbre of .CC. &[4] xxx. ¶ The same ȝere, þe King makyng &[5] abydyng
16 oppon þe see[6] of Tourney, þe Erl of Henaude, wiþ englisshe archers, made asawte to þe toun of Seyntanmu*n*d, wher þat he slow L. kniȝtis & meny oþ*er*e, and destroyed also þe toun.

And in þe .xvj. ȝere of his regne folwynge, in þe wynt*er* tyme,
20 þe king, duelling still oppon þe forsaid sege, sent oft into Engelond to his tresorer & oþ*er* purveyours for gold[7] & meny, þat shulde be sent to hym þ*er* in his nede; but his pr*o*curatours & messagers cursidly & ful slowly s*er*ued him at his nede, & him deceyved.
24 ¶ On wos faute & laches þe King toke trews bytwene hym & þe King of Fr*a*unce. & þe King, ful of sorow woo & shame in his hert, wiþdrowe him from þe see,[8] and come into Brytaigne; & þ*er* was so g*r*ete strif [9]for vitailles, þat[10] he lost meny of his peple. &
28 wha*n* he had do þ*er*e[11] þat he come for, he dressid hym ou*er* see[12] into Engelond warde. ¶ And as he sayled toward Engelond, in þe hye see, þe moste mishappes, stormes & tempeste, thundres & lightny*n*geȝ, fil to hym in þe see, þe whiche was seyd þat it was
32 done & areysed þoruȝ evel spirites made by sorcery and Nigromancye of hem of Fr*a*unce. Wherfore þe Kingeȝ hert was ful of sorwe & angwysshe, weyling & sighyng, & said vnto oure lady on þis wyse. ¶ "O blessid lady, sent Marye! what is þe cause þat

[1] had *om.* T. [2] *leaf* 175, *back.*
[3—3] of þe ffrensshe men xv barons iiij knyȝtis & shippez & barges were take *om.* T. [4] and *om.* T. [5] makyng and *om.* T.
[6] sege T. king abydyng vp on þe sege R.
[7] for gold and R. for gold *om.* C. purveyours for gold T. [8] sege R.
[9] *leaf* 176. [10] so þat T. [11] *þere om.* R. [12] the see T.

eu*er*more, goyng into Fr*a*unce, al þinge3 & wederes fallyn to me
ioyful & likyng & gladsome, & as y wolde haue hy*m*[1]; but alwey
t*ur*nyng into Engelond ward, al þinges fallen vnpr*o*fitable & harm-
full?" ¶ Neu*er* þe latter, he, scapyng alle þe p*er*illes of þe see, as 4
God wolde, come[2] by nyght to þe tour of London. & þe same 3ere
þe King held him[3] Cristemas att[4] Menres, and sent word to þe
Scottes by his messagers, þat he w*a*s redy, and wolde fi3te wiþ him;
but þe Scottis wolde not abyde þat, bot fled ou*er* þe Scottish see, 8
& hid hem as wel as þey my3te.

¶ And in[5] þe xvij. 3ere of his regne, aboute þe feste of Conu*er*-
siou*n* of seint Paule, King Edward, wan he had be in Scotland, &
þe Scottis were fledde, he come a3en i*n*to Engelond, & a litel afore 12
Lente was þe t*ur*nement at Dunstable, to þe wiche t*ur*nement comen
al þe 3ong bachelrye & chyualrye of Engelond, w*it*h meny erles &
o*þer* lordes; at þe wiche t*ur*nement þe King himself was *þere*[6]
p*re*sent. ¶ And þe nexte 3er*e* folwyng, [7]in þe xviij. 3ere of his 16
regne, at his p*ar*lement holden at Westm*inster* in þe xv.[8] of Pasche,
Kyng Edwarde þe þrid made Edward, his ferst bygeten sone, Prince
of Walys.[9] ¶ And in þe xix 3ere of his regne, anon aft*er* in Janyuer,
before[10] Lente, þe same King Edward lete make ful[11] noble Iustice3, 20
and g*re*te festis, in þe place of his berþe, at[12] Wyndessore, þat *þere*
weren neu*er*e no*n* suche seyn *þere*[13] afore.[14] at whiche festis and
rialte were ij. Kinge3, .ij. quene3, þe Pr*i*nce of Walys, þe Duk of
Cornewaile, x erlis; .ix. Cuntesse, barouns,[15] & many burgeys, þe 24
wiche my3t nou3t li3tly be noumbred; & of diu*er*s lande3 be-3onde[16]
þe see, were many strangers. and at þe[17] same tyme when þe[18]
Iustes were don, King Edward made a grete sop*er*, in þe wiche he[19]
ordeyned feest, and bygan þe[20] Rounde Table, & ordeyned & 28
stefastyd þe day of þe forsaide Rounde Table to be holde þer at
Wyndissore in[21] Whitesen-wike eu*er*more aft*er* erly.

¶ In[22] þis tyme, Englisshe men so muche hauntted and cleuyd
to þe wodnes and[23] foley of þe strangers, þ*a*t fro þe tyme of þe 32
comyng of þe Henauderns, xviij. 3ere passid, þey ordeyned and
chaungyd ham eu*er*y 3ere diu*er*s schappis of[24] disgynge3 of cloþing,
of long large and wyde cloþis, destitu and desert fra*m* al old honeste

[1] hem T. [2] and come TR. [3] his R. [4] at þe T. [5] in *om.* T.
[6] *þere om.* R. [7] *leaf* 176, *back.* [8] xv^e day T. xv day R. [9] Wawys C.
[10] in R. [11] ful *om.* TR. [12] at TR. and C. [13] þere *om.* T.
[14] seen) afor þat R. [15] barouns *om.* T. [16] be3onde þe see T. þe see *om.* C.
[17] þat T. [18] þe R. [19] whiche he R. he *om.* C. [20] his TR.
[21] in þe R. [22] And in TR. [23] of T. [24] and R.

and good vsage; & anoþer tyme schorte cloþis & stret-wasted, dagged & ket, & on eu*er*y side[1] desslatered & boned, wiþ sleues & tapets of sircotys, & hode*ȝ* ou*er*e longe & large, & ou*er*muche hang-
4 ynde, þ*at* if y soþ schal say, þey were more liche to t*ur*mentours & deuels in hire cloþing & schewyng & oþ*er* arraye þe*n* comen.[2] ¶ And þe wemmen more myseli ȝet pasted [3]þe men[4] in array, and cureslicher; for þey were so strete cloþed þat þey lete hange fox
8 tailes sawyd beneþe w*ith*-inforþ hire cloþis, forto hele and heyde hire ars; þe whiche disgysenge*ȝ* & pride p*er*auenture aft*er*ward brou*ȝ*te forþe & encausid many mys-happis & mischeuys[5] in þe reaume of Engelond.

12 ¶ The xx ȝ*er*e of King Edward he wente ou*er*e[6] into Brytaigne & Gascoigne: in wos companye wente þe Erl of Warwyk, þe Erl of Suthfok, þe Erl of Honntyngdone & þe Erl of Arundel, and meny oþ*er* lordes, & co*m*mune peple in a gret multitude,[7] w*ith* a
16 g*r*ete navey of ij. C.[8] & xl. shippis, anon aft*er* mydsom*er*, forto avenge him of meny wronge*ȝ* & harmes[9] to hym done be Philip of Valeys, King of Fr*a*unce, a*ȝ*ens þe treues byfore-hand[10] grauntyd, þe whiche trewes he fasly & ownetreuly, by cawelaciones, loste and
20 disqwatt.

Hov King Edward sayled into Normandye, & arryued at Hogges wiþ a gret oste; & of þe batayle of Sclus, and of[11] þe bygynnyg of þe seege of Calys, & also of þe
24 **batayll of Duresme. Cap°. CC^mo^ xxvij^mo^.[12]**

IN þe xxj. ȝere of his regne, King Edward, þoru*ȝ* councel of al þe grete lorde*ȝ* of þis[13] reaume, clepid & gadered togedre in his p*ar*lement at Westm*inster* before Est*er*n, ordeyned him
28 forto[14] passe ou*er* þe se a*ȝ*en, for to discesce and destrouble þe rebellis of Fr*a*unce. and when his navey was come togedre & made redy, he went w*ith* an huge oste, þe xij. day of Juyll, & sayled into Normandye, & arryued at Hogge*ȝ*.[15] & whan he had
32 restid him þ*er*e vj. daies, for bycause of t*ra*uelyng of the see, & forto haue out al his men wiþ al hire nessessaryes, out of hire shippes, he wente toward Cadomon,[16] brengyng, wastyng, & destr*o*yenge al þe tounes [17]as he went by þe way. ¶ And þe xxvj day

[1] side TR. [2] þen comen *om.* T. [3] *leaf* 177.
[4] þe men *om.* T. [5] meny mischiefs and myshappe*ȝ* R. [6] ou*er*e *om.* R.
[7] multitudo C. [8] *om.* R. [9] meny harme*ȝ* & wronge*s* R.
[10] biforhand R. byfore had C. [11] of *om.* T.
[12] ccxxviij R. xxvij *om.* T. [13] his R. [14] to T.
[15] and arryued at hogge*ȝ* *om.* TR. [16] Rone T. Paris R. [17] *leaf* 177, *back.*

of Juyll, at þe brigge of Cadomy, manly & orpudly yst*r*engþed and defended wiþ Norma*n*nes, he had þe*r*e a st*r*onge batayll, & a[1] longe-duryng, þoruȝ which[2] g*r*ete[3] multitud of people was slayn. ¶ And þe*r*e were take p*r*isoners, þe Erl of Ewe, þe Lord 4 of Tanke*r*wyle, & an C. oþ*e*r kingeȝ[4] and men of armes, & vj C. foote men ynombred; and þe toun & þe subbarbus vnto þe bare wallys of al þing þat myȝte be bore & caryed out, was robbid and despoyled. ¶ aftirward þe King, passing forþe by þe cuntre 8 aboute þe brede of xx. mile, he[5] wastyd alle man*e*re þing þat he founde. Whan Philip of Valeys p*er*seuyd[6] al þis, al-þouȝ he were faste by w*ith* a st*r*onge oste, he wolde nouȝt come no ner, but brek al þe briggys beȝonde þe wat*er* of Seyn, fro Roon vnto Paris, 12 & him self fledde vnto[7] þe same Citee of Paris[8] wiþ al þe haste þ*at* he myȝte. ¶ fforsothe, þe noble King Edward, when he come to Paris brigge, and founde hit broken, wiþinne ij. dayes he lete make hit aȝen; & in þe morwe aft*er* þe assumpicio*un* of oure 16 Lady, King Edward passed ou*e*re þe wat*er* of Seyen, goyng toward Cryesce, & dist*r*oyed by þe way tounes wiþ þe[9] peple duelling þ*er*inne.[10] & in þe feste of sent Bartolomev, he passid ou*e*re þe wat*er* of Co*m*me owne hurte[11] wiþ al his oste þ*er* as neu*er* afore 20 honde was eny man*e*re wey in[12] passage werto a M[ł][13] men were slayn of he*m* þat letted hire passage ouer.

[*The Battle of Crecy.*]

¶ þ*er*fore, þe xxvj. day of auguste, King Edward in a felde faste by Creyscy, hauyng iij.[14] bataillis of englisshe men, counttryd 24 and mette wiþ Philip of Valeys, hauyng [15] wiþ him iiij. batailles, of þe wiche þe leste passid g*r*etely þe nombre of þe Englisshe peple. & whan þes ij. ostes metten togedir, þer fil oppon him[16] þe King of Beme, þe Duke of Loroyne and erles also of Flaundr*e*s, Dalasou*n*, 28 Bloys, Harecourt, Aumerle, and Nyvers, & meny oþ*e*r erlis, barouns,[17] lordes, Kingeȝ,[18] & men of armes, þe noumbre of a M[ł] V. C. xlij.,[19] wiþout foet men & oþ*er* men in[20] armevre, þat were noþing rekened. ¶ And for al þis, þe same vnglorious Philip wiþdrowe him, wiþ þe 32 residue of al his peple; wherfore it was seyd in co*m*mu*n*e among

[1] a *om.* T. [2] whiche a T. with C. [3] þoruȝ whiche a greet R.
[4] knyghtis T. knȝtis R. [5] and R. [6] herde R.
[7] to R. [8] & him self fledde vnto þe same Cite of Paris *om.* T.
[9] þe *om.* R. [10] þ*er*ine *om.* T. [11] owne hurte *om.* T. [12] ne TR.
[13] Where ij M[ł] R. [14] þe iij^e T. [15] *leaf* 178. [16] hem TR.
[17] barons and T. [18] knyghtis T. oþer lordis erlis Barons knyȝtis R.
[19] M[ł]VC xij T. M[ł] vij^c xlij R. [20] y TR.

his owne peple 'N*ost*re beall Retret,' that is for to sey, 'Our faire
wiþdraweþ hym.' Þan Kyng Edward & our Englyssh men, þank-
yng God for suche a victorye, aft*er* hire grete labour, takyng to
4 hem al þyng nedeful for her susten*au*nce & sauyng of hire lyf
ferdred of hire enemys, rested hem þere. ¶ And ful erly in[1] þe
morwe, after þe Frensshe men wiþ an houge passyng oste come
aȝen for to ȝeue batayll & fiȝte wiþ þe Englisshe men, wiþ whom
8 metten & countreden þe Erles of Warwyk, Norhampton & Norfolk,
wiþ hire companye & slowen ij. M[1],[2] & token meny prisoners of
þe gentils of ham; and þe remen*au*nt of þe same oste fled iij.
mile þens.

[*The Siege of Calais, and the Invasion of England by the Scots.*]

12 ¶ And þe third day aft*er* the bataill, þe kyng wente to Caleys
warde, dest*ro*yng al þe cuntre as he rode; whider,[3] whan þ*at*[4] he
was comen,[5] þat is forto seyn, þe .iij. day of Septembre, he bygan
to besege þe toun wiþ þe castell, and continued his sege fro þe
16 forseyd iij. day of Septe*m*bre vnto þe iij. day of Auguste þe next
ȝere after. & in [6]þe same ȝere, duryng þe sege of Caleys, þe King
of Scotlond,[7] with a ful grete multitude of Scottis, come into
Engelond, to Nevyles crosse, about seint Lukes day þe eu*au*ngglist,
20 hopyng & trustyng to haue found al the land destitut & voyde
of peple, forasmuche as þe Kyng of Engelond was beȝend þe see,
saue only p*re*stes & me*n* of holy chirche, & women & childrin, &
ploghmen, & such o*þer* laborers. ¶ And þ*er* þey robbeden, &
24 deden mych p*ri*ve[8] sorow; but ȝet fond þey ynowe þat ham
wiþstode, by þe g*ra*ce of God. And so a day of batayll was
assigned bytwene hem; & c*er*teyne lordes & men of holy cherche
þat were in þat cuntre, wiþ o*þe*re co*mun*e peple, fast by þe Citee
28 of Duresme; at whiche day, þoruȝ þe g*ra*ce and þe helpe of God[9]
þe Scottis[10] were ou*er*comen, & ȝet were þey threfold so meny of
hem[11] as of[12] Englisshe men[13]; and þ*er*e was slayn al þe chiualrye
and knyȝthood of þe reaume of Scotland. ¶ And þ*er* were take,
32 as þey wolden haue fleed, Dauid, King of Scotlond, þe Erl of
Mentyf, s*er*e William Douglas, & many o*þer* g*re*te men. & aft*er*
þat, oure Englisshe men, when þey had restyd ham a fewe dayes,
& had ordeyned kep*er*s of þe[14] Northcuntr*e*, þey comen to London,

[1] on T. [2] ij M[1] men T. [3] whider *om.* TR. [4] þat *om.* R.
[5] was come þider R. [6] *leaf* 178, *back.* [7] Sctolond C. [8] o*þer* T.
[9] help & grace of God R. [10] Cottis C. [11] of hem *om.* R. [12] þe R.
[13] peple TR. [14] þe land of the T.

and brouȝt with ham þe King of Scotlond, & þes o*þer*e lordeȝ þat were taken p*ri*soners, vnto[1] þe tour[2] of London, wiþ al þe haste þat þey myȝte; & þ*er* þey lefte ham in saue kepyng, vnto þe Kingeȝ comynge,[3] and went[4] home aȝen into hire owne cuntr*e*. & after- 4
ward was þe Kingeȝ raunsome of Scotlond taxid vnto an C. M[t] mark[5] of selu*er*e, to be payed in x ȝer, þat ys forto sayne, eu*er*y ȝere x þousand mark.

Of the conqueste and [6]wynnge of Caleys, and of[7] grete 8
pestelence & raynes þat fillen sone aftir; and of þe tresoun ordeyned aȝe*n*s Caleys. Capitulo[8] CC[mo]. xxviij[o].[9]

IN þe xxij ȝere of King Edwardys regne, he wente ou*er*e in þe wynt*er* time, & lay al þe wynter in[10] þe seege of Caleys. [11] þe 12
whiche year, while þe sege lasted, Philip of Valeys,[11] Kyng of F*ra*unce, cast & p*ur*posed, trecherously & wiþ fraude, to put awey þe sege,[12] & co*m*e þe xxvij day of Iuyll in þe same ȝere wiþ a grete oste & a st*ro*ng poer, & neigrhed vnto þe sege of Caleys. ¶ þe 16
wiche Philip, þe last day of Iuyll, sent to King Edward word þat[13] he wold ȝeue him playn bataill þe .iij. day next aft*er* þat, about euesong tyme, if þat he durst come fro þe sege & abyde hit. And whan Kynge Edward herd þat, wiþout eny long taryng or g*re*te 20
avisement, he accepted gladly þe day & hour of bataill þat Philip had assigned. And whan the Kyng of F*ra*unce herd þat, wiþout eny long tary*ng* or grete auysement, þe next nyght aft*er* he set hys tentys afyre, and vanysshed & went awey þens cowardly. ¶ Than 24
þey þat were in[14] þe toun and i*n* þe castell byseged, seyng al þis, how þat þei hade non o*þer* helpe ne socour of þe Kinge of F*ra*unce ne of his men, & also þat her vitailles wiþin hym[15] were spended and wasted, & for defaute of vitailles & of[16] refresshyng þey eten 28
hors, houndes, cattes & mys, for to kepe her trou*þ*e as long as þey myȝte. ¶ And whan they sawe, & was found amongeȝ hem at þe last þat þey had no þing amonge hem[17] forto ete ne lyve by, ne no soco*ur* ne rescuyng of þe Frensshemen; on þe to*þer*[18] syde 32

[1] to T. [2] tone C. towr TR. [3] comyng to London T.
[4] wente TR. when C. [5] an C M[t] e CR. [6] *leaf* 179. [7] of *þis* R.
[8] Capitulo *om.* T. [9] xxviij[o] *om.* T. ccxxix R. [10] at T.
[11]—[11] þe whiche yeer while þe sege lasted Philip of Valeys T. the whiche yeer while the Sege lasted Philip of Valeis R. *om.* C.
[12] þe sege TR. þe *om.* C. [13] sent word to King Edward þat R.
[14] withine T. [15] hem T. [16] of *om.* T. [17] amonge hem *om.* R.
[18] on þat o*þ*er TR.

þey weste wel þat [1]þey must deie[2] for defaute, eyþ*er*[3] ȝelde[4] vp þe toun; and anon wenten & tokin[5] done þe ban*er*ys &[6] þe armes of F*ra*unce on eu*er*y side þat were hanged out, & wenten on þe walles
4 of þe toun, and in oþer diu*er*s placys, as naked as þey were bore, saf hire chirtys and[7] brechys, & heldyn hire swerd*us* naked, & þe poynt downward, in hire handeȝ, & puttyn ropys & halt*er*ys abowte hire[8] neckys, and ȝolden vp þe keyes of þe toun and of þe
8 Castell to Kyng Edward, wiþ grete fere and drede of hert. ¶ And when the King sav þis, as a mercyable king and lord, resceyued hym al to his grace; & a feue of þe grettste p*er*sones of stat and of gou*er*nau*n*ce of þe toun he sent into Engelond, þer for to abyde
12 hire raunsome & þe king*es* grace; & al þe co*mmun*ialte of þe toun þe king lete go wher þey wolde in pees, & wiþoute ony harme, & lete ham bere w*ith* ham al hire þingeȝ þat þey myȝte bere & cary away,[9] keping þe toun and the Castell to hymself. ¶ Þan, þoruȝ
16 mediacio*un* of cardenalles þat were sent fro þe pope, trewes was take þ*er* bituene F*ra*unce & Engelond for ix moneþes þan next folwyng; & aboute mychelmasse King Edwarde come aȝen vnto Engelond wiþ a glorious victorye.

[*The Plague of* 1348.]

20 ¶ And in þe xxiij. ȝere of his regne, in þe Este parteys of þe worlde þ*er* aros & bygan a pestilence, & deþ of Sarasineȝ and Pay*n*gneins, þat so g*r*ete a deþ was neu*er* herde of afore,[10] and þ*a*t wasted awey so þe peple þat vnneþes þe x^the^ persone was left
24 a[11]-lyue. & in þe same ȝere, aboute þe Sowthcuntreys and also in[12] þe west cuntres, þere fell so much [13]reyne and so grete waters þat, from C*ri*stemasse vnto[14] Midsom*er*, þ*er* was vnneþes day ne nyght but þat it rayned su*m*what; þoruȝ whiche watres, þe pestilence was
28 sone fectid[15] & so habundant in all cu*n*tres, & namely aboute þe court of Rome & oþ*er* places & sore[16] costes,[17] þ*a*t vnneþes þ*er*e were left alyve[18] folk to bery ham þ*a*t were ded, honestly, but maden g*r*ete diches and puttes þ*a*t were wonder brood and depe, & þ*er*in
32 beried, & made a renge of þe[19] dede bodyes, & anoþ*er* renge of erþe aboue ham; & þus were þey buried, & non oþ*er* wise, but yf it were þe fewer þ*a*t were grete men of state.

[1] *leaf* 179, *back*. [2] eythir die T. [3] or ellis T.
[4] þey moste ouþer die for defaute or ellis yelde R. [5] took a T.
[6] of TR. [7] and her TR. [8] þeir R. [9] away *om.* T.
[10] bifore R. [11] on T. [12] in *om.* R. [13] *leaf* 180. [14] to T.
[15] was so effect T. was so effected R. [16] sondry T.
[17] & sore costes *om.* R. [18] on lyue T. [19] þe *om.* R.

¶ And aft*er* al þis, in þe xxiiij ȝere of his regne, hit was done King Edward to wite and vnd*er*stonde of a tresoun þat was bygun at Caleys, and ordeyned for to selle þat[1] toun for a g*re*te so*m*me of Florens vnto King Philip of F*ra*unce, þoruȝ þe falsnes & þe[2] ordin*an*ce of a knyȝt þat me called Sir Geffrey of Charney, þ*a*t was wonder p*ri*vey wiþ þe King of F*ra*unce. ¶ And whan þe King herd þis, he toke wiþ hym þe noblys & þe gentils, & o*pe*re worþy & orped men of armes, þat were þere p*re*sent wiþ hym for þe solempnite of þat[1] hey[3] feest, & wel & wisely, in al þe haste þ*a*t he myȝt, & as p*ri*uely as he myȝt, he wente hym[4] ou*er*e see,[5] and þat same tyme þe King held hys C*ri*stemas at Hau*er*yng. ¶ And in þe morwe after[6] Newers day, þe King was in þe Castell of Caleys wiþ his men of armes, þat none of[7] þe aliens wist þ*er*of. And thilk[8] fals conspirato*ur* & traytour, Geffrey of Charney, seth[9] he myȝte not opynly haue his p*ur*pos of þe castell, pryuely & stelyngly he comen yn, & held þe toun wiþ a grete oste. [10]And when he wiþ his men were comen yn, he payed þe forsaide som*me* of florens, as couenaunt was bituene him, to a Geneweys in þe toun þat was kep*er* of þe castell, & consentyng to þe same Gefferey in al þis[11] falsnesse & trecherye, & bonde þe Englisshe mynest*er*s and seruauntȝ þat were in þe castel, þ*a*t þey myȝt nouȝt helpe hamself, ne lete ham of hire p*ur*pos. & þan, wenyng þ*a*t þey had be siker ynov, þey spaken hire wickednesse & falones oppynly & an hey, þ*a*t al men myȝt here. ¶ And nov shul ȝe here hov þey were desceyued; for þey com*me* in by a preuy post*er*ne ou*er* a litel brigge was drawyn opp[12] of tre; & when þey were come yn sotelly and preuely, þe brigge was dravyn op and kepte, þat non of ham þat were come yn myȝte go out, ne no moo come yn to hym. ¶ And anon our Englisshe men wente oute at p*ri*uy holes and wendawes, & ou*er*e þe wallys of þe toun & of þe castel, & went*en* & fouȝten manly wiþ þe Frenche men þat were wiþoute, & had the bett*er* of ham, þe wiche when þey were ocupied by ham self on[13] hire side. Þe King, þat was wiþin þe toun, hauyng wiþ him[14] scharstly but xxx. men of armes, dreve out his swerd, & w*ith* a lowed voys c*ri*ed on hey: "*A sent Edward! a sent Gorge!*" And when folk herde þat, þey come rennyng to him, and ȝeauen þ*er*[15] to hire enemys so st*ro*nge

[1] þe TR. [2] þe *om.* R. [3] hey *om.* T. [4] hym *om.* R. [5] þe see R.
[6] next T. [7] of alle T. [8] And whane þat R. [9] saw þat R.
[10] *leaf* 180, *back.* [11] þis *om.* T. his R. [12] was drawyn opp *om.* TR.
[13] on of C. on TR. [14] wiþ him *om.* R. [15] þ*er* *om.* T.

assaute þat þer were mo þen ij. C. men of armes, and meny oþer, slayn, & meny fledden; & so, by þe grace of God, þe victorye fel to þe Englisshe men. ¶ þan þe King toke with him þis Gefferey, þat
4 was fynder of þis trecherye, and also many oþer Frenshe prisoners, & withyn a while [1]after wente[2] aȝen into Engelond.

[*The Plague, or Black Death.*]

And in þis same ȝere, and in þe ȝere afore, & also in þe ȝere aftir, was so grete a pestilences of men fro þe Est into þe west, & namely
8 þoruȝ bocches, þat he þat siked þis day, deid on þe iij. day after. ¶ To þe wich men þat so deiden in þis pestilens, þat haddyn but litel respyte of lyggyng, þe pope Clement, of his goodnes & grace, ȝaf ham ful remissioun & foryeuyng of all hire synnes þat þey
12 were schryven of. & þis pestilence lasted in London fro Michelmasse into[3] Auguste next folowyng almoste an hool ȝere. & in þes dayes was deþ wiþoute sorwe, weddyng wiþoute frendship, wilfull penaunce, and derþe wiþout scarste, and fleyng wiþoute refute or[4]
16 socour; ¶ ffor meny fledden fro place to place by-cause of þe pestilens; but þey were[5] enfecte, & myȝt not ascape þe deþe, after þe prophete Isaye[6] seith: "ho[7] þat fleeþ fro þe face of drede, he shal fall into þe diche; [8] & he þat wyndeþ hymself out of þe diche,[8]
20 he shal be holde and teyd wiþ a grenne," but whan þis pestilens was cesid & endid, as God wolde, vnneþes þe x. parte of þe peple was left alyve,[9] and in þe same ȝere bygan a wonder þing þat al þat euere were born after þat pestilens hadden ij. chekteth in her heed lasse
24 þan þey had afore.

How King Edward had a grete bataylle of þe Spaynardes in þe see faste by Wynchel-see, & of meny oþere þingeȝ. Capitulo CC.mo xxixo.[10]

28 And in þe xxv. ȝere of his regne, about sent Johnnes tyde in heruest, in þe see faste by Wynchelse, King Edward had a grete batayll wiþ men of Spayne, wher þat [11]hire shippes & navee ley cheyned togider, þat eiþere they muste fiȝt or drenche. ¶ And so,
32 whan al our worþi men of armes on þe see coostes fast by Wynchelsee & Romeny were gadred,[12] & ouer navee & shippes al redy to þe werre, þe Englissh men metten manly & stifly with hire enemys,

[1] *leaf* 181. [2] wente R. *om.* C. [3] vnto R. [4] of T.
[5] were *om.* R. [6] Isaye *þat* T. [7] who R.
[8–8] *om.* R. [9] on lyue T. [10] xxix *om.* T. ccxxx R.
[11] *leaf* 181, *back.* [12] gatherid togidere T. gadred to gedir R.

comyng fersly aȝens ham, & when þe Spaynesshe vessellis & nauey were closid yn al about, þ*er* men myȝte se a st*ro*nge bataile vn boþe sides, and lo*ng* duryng; in þe whiche Batayle þ*er* ner[1] but fewe þat fauȝten but þat[2] þey were sputesly herte, & fowle. and after 4 þe batayle þ*er* were xxiiij shippes of hereȝ ytaken; & so þe[3] Engligsshe men had þe bett*er*.

[*The new Coinage. The dear Summer. A Drought.*]

¶ And in þe next ȝere aft*er*[4] folwyng, of his regne xxvj[ti], þe King, þoruȝ his councele, lete ordeyne & make his neve money, þat 8 ys forto sey, þe peny, þe grote of valev of iiij. pens, & þe half-[5] grote þe[6] valev of ij d.; but hit was of lesse wyȝth þan þe old st*er*lyng was, by v. s. in þe pound. ¶ And in þe xxvij. ȝere of his regne was þe[7] grete derþe of vitailes, þe wiche was clepid þe dere 12 somer. ¶ And in þe xxviij. ȝer*e* of his regne in þe p*ar*lement holdyn at Westm*inster* aft*er* Est*er*, S*er*e Henry, Erl of Lancastr*e*, was made Duk of Lancastr*e*. and in þis[8] same ȝere was so grete a drowthe þat, fro þe moneþ of Marche unto þe moneþ of Iuyll, þ*er* 16 fel no rayne into[9] þe erþe; wherfore al[10] fruttys, sedis and erbis, for þe more[11] part was lost; in defaute wherof þ*er* come so grete desise of men and bestes, & derþe of vetailes in Engelond, so þat þis lande, þ*at* eu*er* byfore was plentues, had nede þat tyme to seche 20 his vytaylis and refreschyng of oþ*er* out yles and cuntres.

[*Negotiations about Guienne dropt.*]

¶ [12]And in þe xxix ȝere of King Edward, hit was acorded, g*ra*unted and swore, bytwene þe King of F*ra*unce & þe King of Engelond, þat he shulde haue aȝen al his landeȝ and lordshipps þat 24 longe to þe Duche of Guyne of old tyme, þe wiche had bene with-drawe & wrongfully occuped by diu*er*s Kyngeȝ of F*ra*unce . byforhand, to haue & to hold to Kyng Edward & to his eyrs & successours for eu*er*more, frely, pesible, & in good quyete, vppo*n* þis 28 covenaunt, þat þe Kyng of England shold leue of,[13] & relese all[14] right & clayme þat he had & claymed of þe kingdome of F*ra*unce, & of þe title þat he toke þ*er*of. Oppon wiche speche & coueno*au*ntes, it was sent to þe court of Rome on boþe sydes of þe Kyngeȝ,[15] þ*at* 32 þe forsaid coueno*au*nt shold be enbulled. but God ordeyned bet*er*e for þe Knygeȝ worship of Engelo*n*d; for, what þoruȝ fraude &

[1] ne were but T. [2] þat *om.* T. [3] oure T.
[4] aft*er* *om.* T. folowynge R. [5] and half a TR. [6] of TR.
[7] þe *om.* R. [8] þe TR. [9] on TR. [10] alle þe R. [11] moste R.
[12] *leaf* 182. [13] of *om.* R. [14] al þe R. [15] of þe kynges *om.* T.

deceyte of þe Frensshmen, & what þoruȝ lettyng of þe pope & of þe court of Rome, þe forsaid couenauntes were to-sqwat & left of.

[*Transfer of the Staple of Wool to England.*]

¶ And in þe same ȝere þe Kyng reuoked, by his wys & descrete
4 counceyll, þe staple of wolles out of Flaundres into Engelond, wiþ al þe libertees, fraunchises & free customes þat longen þerto, & ordeyned hit in Engelond in diuers places, þat ys forto[1] seyn, at Westminster, Caunterbery, Chichestre, Bristowe, Lincoln, & Hull,
8 wiþ al þe forsaid þyngeȝ þat longen þerto. and þat þis þing sholde be þus done,[2] þe Kyng swore hym self þerto, & prins Edward his sone, wiþ oþer meny grete witnesse þat were þere than[3] present.

[*The French attempt on Guienne frustrated.*]

And in þe .xxx. ȝere of his regne, anon after Wytsonday, in þe
12 parlement ordeyned at Westminster, hit was told and[4] certyfied to[5] þe King, þat Philip þat held þe kingdome of Fraunce was dede, and þat John his sone was crouned King, & þat þis John had ȝoue Karoll his sone þe Duchie of Guyone. ¶ Of þe[6] wiche þing, King
16 Edward, whan he herd þerof, he[7] had grete indignaciou*n* vnto hym, & was wonder wroþ, & strongly meved: and þer, afor[8] al þe worþy lordes þat þere were assembled at þat parlement, he clept[9] Edward his son to hym, to wiche[10] þe Duchye of Guyene by right heritage
20 shold longe to, and ȝaf hit hym þer, byddyng and strengþing him þat he shulde ordeyne him to defende and avenge him oppon his enemys, & saue & mayntene hys ryȝt. ¶ And afterward, King Edward him self, and his eldiste[11] sone Edward,[12] wenten to diuerce
24 placeȝ and senten in Engelond a pilgrimage, forto haue þe more grace and help of God and of his sentȝ. and þe secunde kalend— of Iuyll, when al þing was redy to þat viage and batayleȝ, and al[13] his retennev & power assembled, and hire navey also redy, he toke
28 wiþ him þe Erl of Warwyk, þe Erl of Suthfolk, þe[14] Erl of Salysbery, & þe Erl of Oxenford, and a M[t] of[15] men of armes, and as many archerys, in þe Natiuite of our Lady, and at Plymmough token hire shippes, and bygan to sayle. ¶ And when[16] he come
32 and was arryued in Guyene, he[17] was þer worshipfly take[18] and[19]

[1] to R. [2] þo R. [3] were þanne þere R. [4] *leaf* 182, *back.*
[5] to *om.* T. [6] þe *om.* R. [7] he *om.* R. [8] þerfore R.
[9] also and cleped R. [10] whom TR. [11] eldiste *om.* R.
[12] Prince Edward T. [13] al *om.* T. [14] þe erle TR. þe *om.* C.
[15] of *om.* TR. [16] when *om.* T. [17] and he T. [18] take *om.* R. [19] and *om.* C.

resceyued[1] of þe moste noble men and lordeȝ of þat cuntre. And anon after, King Edward toke wiþ him his ij. sones, þat ys forto seye,[2] Sir Lyonell, Erl of Vltoun, and Sere Iohn his broþer, Erl of Rychemonde, and Sere Henry, Duke of Lancastre, wiþ meny Erles 4 and lordes and men of armes, and too [3]M[t] archers, and sayled into[4] Fraunce, and reste him awhile at Caleys. ¶ and afterward, þe King went wiþ his folk aforsaide, and wiþ oþere sowdiours of beȝende þe see þat þere aboden þe Kinges comynge, þe secunde day 8 of Nouembre, & toke his iorneye toward King Iohn of Fraunce, þere as he trowed to[5] haue y[6]found him faste by þe toun of Odomarum, as his letters and couenauntȝ made mencioun þat he wolde abyde him þere wiþ his oste. ¶ And whan King Ion of 12 Fraunce herde of þe Kyngeȝ comeing of Engelond, he wente awey wiþ his men & his cariage, cowardly & schamfully fleynge, wastyng al vitaileȝ ouer[7] al, þat[8] Englisshe men shold nauȝt haue therof. ¶ And when King Edward herde þat he fleed, he pursued him wiþ 16 al his mayne til[9] Hedoun; and þen he, by-holdyng þe wantyng and þe scarsites of vitaileȝ, and also the cowardice of the King of Fraunce, he turned aȝen, wastyng al þe cuntre.

[*The Scots attack Berwick.*]

¶ And while al þese þingeȝ were a[10]doyng, þe scottes prevyly and 20 by nyȝt token þe toun of Berwyk, sleyng ham þat wiþstode ham, and no man ellis; but,—blessid by god!—þe castel neuer-þe-latter was sauyd and kepte be Englisshe men þat were þerin. þen þe Kinge perceuyng al þis, turned aȝen into Engelond as worþ as he 24 myȝte.[11] ¶ Wherfore in a parlement at Westminster was graunted to þe King of euery sake of[12] wolle .l. s. duryng þe terme of vj. ȝere þat he myȝt þe myȝtlyker fyght and deffende þe reaume aȝens þe Scottis and oþere mys-doers: and so, when al þinges were redy, 28 þe King hastyd hym to þe seege warde.

Hov King Edward was crouned King of Scotland, and hov Prins Edward toke þe King of Fraunce, [13]& of þe bataylle of Peyters.[13] *Ca*pitulo CC[mo] Tricesimo.[14]

[1] and rescyuyd T. [2] þat ys forto seye *om.* TR. [3] *leaf* 183.
[4] toward TR. [5] forto T. [6] y *om.* TR.
[7] ouerall R. oþer al C. [8] þat þe T. þe R. [9] to T. [10] in T.
[11] myghte be R. [12] of *om.* T. [13–13] *om.* T.
[14] Triscesimo *om.* T. ccxxxi R.

[1] And in þe xxxj. ȝere of his regne, þe xiij day of Ianuere, þe King beyng in þe castel of Beywyk wiþ a fewe men, but[2] havyng *þer* fastby a[3] gret oost, þe toun was ȝold to him wiþout
4 eny[4] man*er*e fens or[5] difficulte. þan þe King of Scotlond, þat ys forto sey, Sire Iohn Bayllol, considering how þat God dede meny m*er*ueylles þinge3 & *gra*cious[6] for King Edward at his owene will fro day to day, he toke[7] & ȝaf op[8] þe reaume of Scotland, & þe
8 croune of Scotland,[9] att Rokesburgh,[10] in-to þe Kinge3 handes[11] of Engelond, vnder his patent *lett*res *þer* of y[12]made. ¶ And anon aft*er* King Edwarde, in *pr*esence of al þe *pr*elates & o*þer* worþi men & lorde3 þat þere were, lete croune hym King *þer*-of[13] þe reaume
12 of[14] Scotland. and whan al þinge3 were done & ordeyned in thilk cuntres at his luste, he t*ur*ned aȝen into Engelond wiþ a[15] houge worschip.

¶ And while þat[16] þis viage was adoyng in Scotland, Sir
16 Edward, Prins of Walys, as a man enspired of God, was in Guyne, in þe Citee of Burdeux, tretyng & spekyng of þe chalangyng, &[17] of the Kinge3 right of Engelond, þat he had to þe reaume of F*ra*unce; and þat he wold avenged be[18] wiþ st*ro*nge hond. & alle þe *pr*elates,
20 peris, & myȝty men of þe cuntr*e*, consentid wele to hym. ¶ þan S*er*e Edward, the Pryns, wiþ a *gre*te oste y[19]gaderid to hym, þe vj. day of Iuyll went fro Burdeux, goyng & trauaylyng by meny diu*er*s cuntres. And he toke meny[20] prisoners, mo þan vj^{M} men of
24 armes, by the [21]cuntre as he iourneyed,[21] & toke þe toun of Remorantyn in Saloigne, & beseged þe castell vj. dayes. and at þe vj. dayes ende þey ȝolden þe castell vnto hym; and [22]þ*er*e were taken þe Lord of Crom̄, and S*er*e Bursigand, and meny o*þer*e knyghtes,
28 and men of armes mo þan iiij^{xx}.

[*The Battle of Poictiers.*]

And fro þens by Tureyne & Petey,[23] faste by Chaneney, his noble men þat were w*ith* him hadden a st*ro*ng bataill wiþ Frenssh men, and a[24] C. of hire[25] men[26] of armes were slayn. and þe Erle

[1] *leaf* 183, *back*. [2] but *om*. T. [3] bi a T. [4] any defence or any T.
[5] fens or *om*. T. [6] & *gra*cious *om*. R. [7] toke up T.
[8] and ȝaf vp *om*. T. [9] of Scotland *om*. T.
[10] Rokesburgh and bi Baillol þe kyng of Scotland y yonen frely T.
[11] þe hondis of the kyng T. [12] y *om*. T. [13] him þere king off R.
[14] þe reaume of *om*. R. [15] An TR. [16] þat *om*. T. [17] & *om*. TR.
[18] wolde be avengid T. [19] y *om*. R. [20] meny *om*.
[21]—[21] cuntre and he ordeynyd T. [22] *leaf* 184. [23] MS. *indistinct*.
[24] an R. [25] of hire *om*. R. [26] And an C men T.

of Damice & þe stiward of Fr*a*unce were*n* take, wiþ a[1] C. men of armes. In þe wiche ȝeer, þe xix day of Septembre, fast by Peyters,— þe same prins, with a M† and ix^c men of armes and archers, ordeyned a bataill to Kyng Iohn of Fr*a*unce, comyng to þe prins- 4 ward wiþ vij. M† cosyn men of armes, and oþ*er* miche peple in a houge[2] passyng noumbre[3]; of[4] þe whiche þer was yslayne[5] þe Duke of Burbou*n* and þe Duke of Athene3, & meny oþ*er*e noble men, & of þe pris men of armes a M†, & of oþ*er*e (after þe trewe account & 8 rekenyng) viij. C.; and þe King of Fr*a*unce was þ*er* take, and S*er*e Philip his ȝong*er* sone, and meny dukes & noble men & worþy kny3tys, and men of armes aboute .ij. M†; and so[6] þe victorie fill þ*er*e to þe Prins & to þe peple of Engelond, by þe g*ra*ce of God. 12 ¶ And meny þat were take p*ri*sone*r*s were set at her raunsoun, & oppon her trouþe & kny3thoode were charged, and had leue to go; but þe Prins toke wiþ hym þe King of Fr*a*unce, and Philip his sone, wiþ al þe reue*r*ence þat he my3te, & wente a3en to Burdeux 16 with a glorious victorie. ¶ þe som*m*e of þe[7] men þat were take p*ri*soners, & of þe man þ*at* were slayn, þis day of[8] bataill, was iiij. [M†]CCCC. xl.[9] And in þe xxxij. ȝere of Kyng Edward, þe .v. day of Maij, Prins Edward, wiþ King Iohn of Fr*a*unce [10]and Philip his 20 sone, and meny worþy[11] prisoners, arryved g*ra*ciously in þe hauene of Plymmouth; & þe xxiiij. day of þe same moneþ, about iij. aft*er* none, þey come*n* to London by London brigge, & so wente forþe to þe Kynge3 paleys of[12] Westmynstr*e*. ¶ and þ*er*e fill so grete pres & 24 multitude of peple abute ham, to byholde and se þat[13] wonder and þat[14] real[15] si3th, that[16] vnneþes fro Midday þey my3te come to Westmy*n*st*er*. And þe Kinge3 raunsoun of Fr*a*unce was taxied & set to iij. Milions of Scutes,[17] of whom[18] ij. shuld[19] be paid a 28 noble[20]: & ȝe shul vnd*er*stonde þat a Miliou*n* is a M†. M†. And aft*er* som*m*e men, his raunsoun was set at iij. M†[21] floreyns; & al is on in effecte.

And i*n*[22] þis same ȝere was made solempne iustes in Smeþefeld, 32 beyng þ*er* present, þe King of Engelonde, þe King of Fr*a*unce & þe King of Scotlond, & [23]meny worþi noble[23] lordes. ¶ The xxxiij.

[1] an TR. [2] in a houge *om.* T. [3] the nombre T.
[4] aforesaid of T. oft passinge þe noumbre R. [5] slayne TR. [6] so *om.* T.
[7] þe *om.* TR. [8] in T. to R. [9] iiij. M† iiij. C. and xl^tl T.
[10] *leaf* 184, *back.* [11] oþer TR. [12] at T. [13] þat hit was T.
[14] þat *om.* R. [15] for hit was a roiall T. [16] and þat T.
[17] floreyns R. [18] wher of R. [19] ij mylions schulde T.
[20] anoon T. a noble *om.* R. [21] iij mylions of T. [22] in *om.* T.
[23—23] noble and worthi T. meny oþ*er* noble and worthi R.

ȝere of his regne þe same King Edward at Wyndesore, as wel for[1] loue of knyȝthood as for his owne worship, & at þe reu*e*rence of þe King of F*ra*unce &[2] o*þe*r lordeȝ þat were þere at þat tyme, he held[3] a wonder rial[4] and[5] costlow feest[6] of sent Gorge, passyng eny þ*a*t w*a*s hold eu*e*re afore.[7] wherfor þe King of F*ra*unce, in scornyng, sayd þ*a*t he saw neu*e*re ne herd such solempne festes ne ryalties holden ne done w*it*h taylles, wiþoute[8] paying[9] of gold or siluer.

[*The Marriage of Duchess Blanche.*]

¶ And in þe xxxiiij. ȝere of his regne, þe xiiij. k*a*l*e*nd of Iuyll, S*e*re Iohn, Erle of Richemund, Kyng Edwardes sone of Engelond, weddid dame Blaunche, duk Herryes douȝt*e*r of Lancast*e*r, cosyn to þe same Iohn, by dispensacioun of þe Pope. and in þe mene tyme were[10] ordey*n*ed iustes at London iij. dayes of[11] þe rogacions,[12] þat is forto sey, þe Maiere of London, wiþ his xxiiij^ti^ aldermen, aȝens al þ*a*t wold come. In whos name and stede þe King p*ri*uely wiþ his iiij. sones, Edwarde, Leonell, Iohn & Edmund, & o*þe*re xix. grete lordes, helden þe feld wiþ[13] worshopp.

¶ And þis same ȝere (as it was tolde & seyd of ham þat sawe hit) þ*e*re come out blood of þe toumbe of Thomas, sumtyme Erl of Lancast*e*r, as ffresshe as þat day þ*a*t he was done to þe[14] deþe. And in þat same ȝere King Edward chose h*is* sepulture & his liggyng at Westminst*e*r, faste by þe shryne of Sent Edward.

[*Edward III goes again to France.*]

And anon aft*e*r, þe xxvij. day of Octobre, he wente ou*e*re see to[15] Caleys, makyng protestaciou*n* þat he wold neu*e*re come aȝen into Engelond til[16] he had fully endid þe werre bytuene F*ra*unce and him. ¶ And so, in þe xxxv. yere[17] of his regne, in þe wynt*e*r tyme, King Edward was and[18] trauayled in þe Ryne costes; and aboute Seynt Hillere tyde he dep*a*rted his oste, and went to Burgoyne-warde; wiþ whom þan mette pesibely þe Duk of Burgoyne, byhotyng to hym lxx. Mt Floreyns þat he shold spare his men[19] & his peple. And þe King[20] g*ra*unted at his request, & dwelled þ*e*re vnto þe xvij. day of March, þe wiche day it come to King Edwardes ere þat straunge þennes on[21] þe see vnder þe Erle of Sent Paule, þe xv

[1] for the T. [2] and of T. [3] beheld C. he helde TR. [4] roiall feste T [5] and a T. [6] feest *om.* T. [7] bifore T. [8] oute eny R. [9] any paiying T. [10] *leaf* 185. [11] aftir R. [12] rogacion) Daieȝ R. [13] with *om.* T. [14] þe *om.* TR. [15] vnto T. [16] til that T. [17] yere of T. yer of R. yere *om.* C. [18] was and *om.* T. [19] lond T. [20] king it R. [21] were on TR.

day of Marche, liggyng aweyte oppon þe tounes of Hastynge, Rye, and o*þer* places & villages on þe see coostes, hadden[1] entred as enemyes into þe toun of Wynchelsee, & slowen al þat eu*er*e withstode ham and wiþseyd her comyng; wherfore þe King was [2]gretly 4 meved and wraithed. ¶ And he turned aȝen to Parys-ward,[3] co*m*maunded his ost to destroye & slee wiþ deynt & strengthe of swerd hem þat he had byfore hand y[4]sparid. and þe xij day of Aprill þe King come to Parys; & þ*er*e he departed his oost in ix diu*er*se 8 bataylles, w*ith* iiij^{c} of kny*ȝ*t*es* newe dubbed, on þe to[5] syde of hem.[6] And S*er*e Herry, Duk of Lancastr*e*, vnder pees & trewes wente to þe ȝates of þe Citee,[7] p*ro*fryng to hem þat[8] wold abyde a batayl in þe feld, vnder suche a condicioun, þat yf þe King of 12 Englonde were ou*er*come (þ*er*e as God forbede hit!), þ*at* þen he shold neu*er*e chalange þe kingdome of F*ra*unce. ¶ and whan he had of hem but a short & an[9] scornfull answer*e*, he told þe King & his lordes what he had herd, & wat þey saide. and þan fortwiþ 16 þe newe knightes, w*ith* meny o*þer*e, makyng assaute to þe Citee,[10] destroyeden hougily þe subarbes of þe Citee. And while al þese thinges were adoyng, þe Englissh men made hem aredy to be avengid vpon þe shame &[11] despit þat was done þat ȝeer at 20 Wynchelse, and ordeyneden a nave of iiij shippes of me*n*nes of London & of[12] o*þer* marchauntes, & xiiij M^{xx} of men of armes & archers, & wenten & destroyeden hem, & scymed þe see,[13] & manly token, & helde þe Ile of Caux; wherfore þe Frenssh men, þat is for 24 to sey, þe abbot of Cluyne, þe Erle of Tankervile & S*er*e Bursigand, þat than was stiward of F*ra*unce, wiþ meny of[12] o*þer* men of þe same cu*n*tre, by co*mmun*e assent of þe Lord Karoll, þat þo was regent of F*ra*unce, þey hasted hem, & wente*n* to[14] þe King of Engelonde, 28 askyng & bysekyng hym[15] stedfast pees, & eu*er*elastyng, vpon[16] certeyne condicions þat þer were wreten schewed.[17] ¶ The whiche, whan þe King and his councell had seen, it plesed ham neu*er*e a dele. [18]But seþ it wolde be non o*þer*e, in[19] tyme of bet*er*e acorde & 32 delib*er*aciou*n*, þe Frenssh men bysily & wiþ grete instaunce askede trewes for her see coostes; & þe King[20] g*ra*unted hem. and in þe

[1] and hadde TR. [2] *leaf* 185, *back*. [3] Parice warde and TR.
[4] y *om*. R. [5] that oon T. on þat o R. [6] him T. [7] of Paris R.
[8] that he T. þat he R. [9] a TR. [10] Citee and thei T. [11] & *om*. TR.
[12] of *om*. TR. [13] and skemed þe See and destroied ham R.
[14] vnto T. to to C. [15] hym of T. them of R. [16] vpon a TR.
[17] were schewid writen T. writen R. [18] *leaf* 186. [19] til. R.
[20] and he T.

morwe aft*er* þe ocptas of Pasche, þe King t*ur*ned hym w*ith* his ooste towardes Orlyaunce, destroyng & wastyng al þe cu*n*tre by þe wey. And as þey wenten þiderward, þ*er*e fil oppon hy*m* suche a
4 storme & tempest þat non of our nacio*un* herd ne sawe neu*er*e non such; thurght þe whiche, þousande*z* of our men & of hers (*sic*) horses in here[1] (*sic*) iourneying (as it were þorugh vangeaunce), sodenly were slayn & perisshed, þe which tempestes ful mich *z*et[2]
8 ferid not þe Kyng, ne myche of his peple, þat þey ne wenden forth in her (*sic*) viage þ*a*t þey had begu*n*ne.

[*Peace made between England and France.*]

¶ Wherfore, abute þe feest of Holy-Rode Day in Maii, fast by Carnocu*m*, þe forseid lordes of Fraunce, mety*n*g þer with þe King of
12 En[g]londe, a pesible acorde & a fynal, oppon c*er*teing condicio*un*s & g*ra*unte*z* articulerlich[3] gaderid & wryten togeder, eu*er*more to laste, ful discretly made, & to bo*þ*e kyngges profitable, & to her reume*s*, bo*þ* wi*þ* on assent of Karoll þe Regent and Gou*er*nour of Fr*a*unce,
16 and of[4] Parys of the same reaume, ywretyn & made vnder þe date, at[5] Carnacu*m*, þe xv day of May, þey offred & p*ro*fred to þe King of Engelond, requireng his g*ra*ce in alle thynges ywriten,[6] þ*a*t he wold benyngly admitte hem, and hold[7] hem ferme & stable to hem,
20 & to her eires for eu*er*more. þe wiche þinge*z* and articles, whan Kyng Edward had seyn, he[8] g*ra*unted he*m*, so þat bo*þ*e p*ar*ties sholde be yswore[9] on Goddis body and on þe holy eu*au*nglies, þat þe forsaide couen*au*nt*z* shold be stablysshed. & so þey acordeden
24 g*ra*ciously; þ*er*fore þ*er*e were ordeyned & dressid on eu*er*y syde too barons,[10] ij. baronettes, ij. knyghtes, to admitte & receyve þe othes of þe Lord Karoll, regent of Fr*a*unce, & of Sir Edward, [11]the first sone and Eyr of King Edward of Engelond; and þe x. day of Maii ther
28 was songen a solempne masse at Parys, and aftir þe iij 'agn*us* dei' yseid,[12] wi*þ* 'dona nobis pace*m*,' in presence of the forseid men, that there yordeynid[13] to admitte and resceyve the o*þ*es, and of all o*þ*er þat þ*er* myght be, the same Karoll leyd h*is* right honde on the
32 patene wi*þ* Goddis body, & his left hand on þe missale, and sayd: ¶ "We, N and N, sweryn on Goddis body and on þe[14] holy gospelle*z*, þat we schulle trewliche and stedfastly holden toward vs

[1] his R. [2] *z*et *om.* T. [3] articulerli was R. [4] of þe T. [5] of T. [6] writen R. [7] hold *om.* T. [8] hem he R. [9] swore TR. [10] too barons *om.* TR. [11] *leaf* 186, *back.* [12] was seide T. was seid R. [13] ordeynyd T. þat were þere ordeyned R. [14] this T.

þe pees and[1] þe acorde made bytuene þe[2] ij kinge3, and in no man*er*e to do the contrarie." & þ*er*, amonge al ij his[3] lordes, for more loue & streng[t]he of wytne3, he[4] deled & dep*ar*ted þe reliqes of þe croun of Crist to þe knight*es* of Engelond: and þey[5] curteysly token her 4 leve. And in þe Fryday next, þe[6] same man*er*e othe in p*re*sences of þe[7] knightes, & of[8] al[9] oþ*er* worthy men, Prins Edwarde made at Loners. Afterward, boþe Kynge3, and her sones, and þe moste noble men of boþe reaumes, wiþin þe same 3er maden þe same oþe. 8 & forto strengthe al þes forsaid þinge3 þe King of Engelond axed þe grettest men of Fr*a*unce; and he had his axyng; þat is forto seye, .vj. dukes, viij. Erle3, xij. lorde3, that is to seyn, baronys and worthy knightes. And whan þe place and þe tyme was assigned 12 in þe whiche bothe Kynges with her counceyll shold come togedir, al þe forsaid thynge3 bytwene hem yspoke, for to[10] ratifie and make ferme & stable.

þe King of Englond anone wente toward þe see, & at Houn- 16 flete he bygan to sayle, levyng to his ostes that were yleft[11] behind him (bycause of his absence) mych hevynes; & aft*er* þe xix day of Maii he come into Englond, & went to his paleys at Westm*inst*er on Seynt Dunstons day. & þe iij. day aft*er*, he visited John, þe 20 King of Fr*a*unce, þat was in þe Tour of London, & deliu*er*ed him frely from [12]al man*er*e prisou*n*, saue ferst they were acorded of iiij.[13] Milions of ffloreyns for his raunsom, and þe King comforted hym & chered him in alle places, wiþ all solaces & merþe3 that longen to 24 a king, in his goyng homward.

¶ And þe ix day of Iuyll in þe same 3er, þe same Iohn, King of Fr*a*unce, that aforhand[14] lay here in ostage, wente home a3e*n* into his owne lande, to trete of þo þinge3, & of oþ*er*e that longeden & 28 fillen to þe gou*er*nance of his reaume. And aft*er*ward metten and comen togedir at Caleys bothe ij Kinges, wiþ boþe hire counceyll, about Alhalwen tyde, and þ*er* were shewed the condicioun*s* and þe poy*n*tes [15]of þe pees, & of þe acorde of boþe sydes ywriten; & 32 ther,[15] w*ith*oute eny wiþseying, of boþe sides g*ra*ciously þey[16] þ*er*e acorded . and þ*er* [17]was done and sung[17] a solempne masse, and aft*er* þe iij. Agnus Dei, vppon Goddes body & also on þe Masse-book, boþe Kynge3, & her sones, & þe grettest lorde3 of boþe 36

[1] as C. and R. [2] þo R. [3] his *om.* R. [4] se he R. [5] þey *om.* T.
[6] aftir þe T. [7] þe forseide T. þe forsaid R. [8] of *om.*
[9] alle *om.* T. [10] to for to C. [11] left TR. [12] *leaf* 187.
[13] iij TR. [14] aforsaid þat R. [15—15] of þe pees . . . ther *om.* TR.
[16] þev *om.* TR. [17—17] was songe*n* and done T.

reaume3, and of hir counceill that þere were[1] þan p*r*esent, & not had yswore byfor, þe forsaide oþe that they[2] had made, & was titled bytwene hem, þey behighten þ*er*e to kepe, & all oþ*er* coue-
4 n*au*ntes þat were bytuene ham yordeyned.[3] ¶ And in þe[4] same 3er men, bestes, trees, & housyng, wiþ sodeyn tempest & strong light-nyng were yp*er*isshed[5]; & the deuel appered bodyly in man*n*is liknes to myche peple as they went in diu*er*ses pleces in[6] the
8 cu*n*tre & spake to hem.[7]

[*A Parliament at Westminster. Eclipse of the Sun; Marvels, etc.*]

Kyng Edwarde in þe xxxvj 3ere of his regne ano*n* after Cristemasse in þe feest of[8] Conu*er*cion of sei*n*t Poul, held his p*ar*lement at Westm*inste*r, in the which was put forþ and showed þe
12 acorde and the tretys þat was stablysshed and ymade[9] betwene þo ij. kinges; the which ac[10]orde plesid to[11] myche peple; and þ*er*fore, by þe Kynges comm*au*ndement, þ*er*e were gadryd and comyn togider in Westm*inster* cherche, the ferst Soneday of[12] Lente, that
16 is to sey, the ij. Kal*end* of Feu*er*ell, the forsaid English men and Frensshe men; wher was song a solempne masse of þe Trynyte, of[13] þe Erchbisshop of Caunt*er*bury, Mayst*er* Symond Islepe. And whan Agnus Dei was do, þo[14] King, beyng þ*er*e with his sones, and
20 also wiþ þe kynges sones of Fr*au*nce, and oþ*er* noble and g*r*ete lordes, with candels ylight,[15] and crosse ybrought[16] forth al þat were called þ*er*to that were not yswore[17] afor sworen[18] þat same othe that was writen oppon goddis body & oppon þe masse boke in þis wyse,
24 "We, N. and N., sweren oppon holy Goddes body, and on[19] þe gospels, stedfastly to hold and kepe toward vs þe pees and þe acorde made betwene the too kynges, and neu*er*e forto do þe contrarie." And whan they had þus swore,[20] þey token her scrowes that þe
28 othes were comp*r*ehendid in, to the[21] Notaries.

¶ And this same 3er, in þe Asce*n*ciou*n*, even about Midday, was seyn the Eclipse of þe sun*n*e; and þer folowed suche a newe[22] droght that, for defaut of rayn, þ*er* was grete bareynes of corn, froyt,[23] and
32 hey, and in þe same 3er*e*, the vj. k*alend* of Iuyn, þ*er*e fill a sang-wey*n* rayne, almoost like blood, at[24] Burgoyne; and a sangwey*n*

[1] were þere R. [2] that thei T. þ*at* þey R. they *om.* C.
[3] ordeynyd T. [4] þis TR. [5] perisshed R. [6] of T.
[7] ham. Cap*itulum* ccxxxij R. [8] feest of *om.* TR. [9] maad TR.
[10] *leaf* 187, *back.* [11] to *om.* R. [12] in T. [13] bi T. [14] the TR.
[15] light TR. [16] brought R. [17] Swore R. [18] sworen *om.* T.
[19] vpon T. [20] I-swore T. [21] the *om.* R. [22] newe *om.* R.
[23] of fruyt T. [24] in R.

crosse, fro morwe vnto pryme, was seyn and apperid at Boloigne in
þe eyr, þe whiche meny a man sawe; & aft*er*, it mevid & fill in[1]
þe myd see.

¶ and in þe same tyme in Fr*a*unce & in Engelond, & in oþ*er*e 4
meny[2] landes as þey had[3] duelled in[4] playn cuntres & desert bare
wytnes, sodenly þer apperid ij castels, of þe whiche wenten out ij.
ostes of armed men; and þe to[5] oste was helid and clothed in
white, and þe toþ*er*e[6] in blak; and whan[7] [8]batayl bytuene hem was 8
bygu*n*ne, the white ou*er*come þe blake, and anone [9]aft*er*, þe blak
token hert to he*m* & ou*er*come þe white; and[9] aft*er* þat, þey went
a3en into her castellis, and þat[10] þe castels & al þe oostes vanisshed
awey. and in þis same 3ere was a grete & a[11] houge pestilence of 12
peple, and namely of men, whos wyues, as wym*m*e*n* out of gou*er*-
naunce, token husbondes, as wel str*a*ungers as oþ*er*e lewed and
symple peple, þe whiche, for3ety*n*g her owne wurschip & berthe,
coupled & maried he*m* with hem[12] þ*a*t were of lowe degre & litel 16
reputacion.

¶ In this same 3ere deide Herry, þe[13] Duke of Lancastr*e*; & also
in this 3er*e*, Edward, Prins of Walys, weddid þe Cuntesse of Kent,
þ*a*t was S*er*e Thomas wyf[14] Holande, þe whiche was dep*ar*ted & 20
deuorsid su*m*tyme fro þe Erl of Salysbury, for cause of þe same
knyght. And about þis same tyme þ*er*e bygan & aros a grete com-
panye of diu*er*s nacions gaderid togeder, of wom her leders &
gou*er*nours were Englissh peple; & þey were clept 'a peple w*ith*out 24
an heed,' þe whiche deden mych harme in þe p*ar*tye of Fr*a*unce;
& not long aft*er* þ*er*e aros anoþ*er* cu*m*panye of diu*er*s nacions þat
was called 'þe white companye,' þe whiche, in þe parties & cu*n*tre
of Lu*m*bardye, dede myche sorwe. þis same 3ere S*er*e Iohn Gaunt, 28
þe sone of King Edwarde þe third, was made Duk[15] of Lancastre,
by resou*n* & cause of his wyf, þ*a*t was þe dou3t*er* &[16] eyr*e* of
Herry, su*m*tyme Duk of Lancastre.

Of the grete wynde, & howe Prins Edward, þe[17] lordship of 32
Guyene, of King Edward his fader toke of him,[18] & went thider.
Cap*itulo* cc. xxxij.[19]

[1] into T. [2] meny oþ*er* R. [3] þat R. [4] in the TR.
[5] þat oon T. and þat on R. [6] þat oþir T. [7] whenne the T.
[8] *leaf* 188. [9–9] aft*er* þe blak . . white and *om.* T. [10] þanne TR.
[11] An T. [12] with hem *om.* T. [13] þe *om.* R. [14] wyf of T.
[15] þe Duke T. [16] and the T. [17] had þe T.
[18] toke of him *om.* TR. [19] cc°. ccxxxiij R.

And in þe xxxvij ȝer of King Edward, the xv day of January, that is to sey, on Seynt Mauris day, about evesong tyme, *þer* aroos & come such a wynd out of þe suoth, wiþ such a fersnes, that he
4 brast &[1] blewe [2]doun[3] to ground hye houses, & strong byldynges, toures, cherches, &[4] steeples, & o*þer* st*ro*ng[5] þynges; and al o*þer* strong[6] werkes þat stoden still, were so yshake *þer*ewith, *þat* þey ben ȝett, and shol be eu*er*more, the febelere & weyk*er* while þey
8 stonde; & þis wynd lasted w*ith*oute eny cesyng vij. dayes continuels.

¶ And anon aft*er*, *þer* folowed such watres, in hey tyme & in hervest tyme, *þat* all feld-werkes were strongly let & left vndone, and in þe same ȝere P*ri*ns Edward toke þe Lordship of Guyene, &
12 dede to Kyng Edward his fad*er* feaute & homage *þer*fore, & went ou*er* see into Gascoigne, wiþ his wyf & his childryn; & anone aft*er*, King Edward made S*er*e Leonel, his sone, Duke of Clarence, &[7] Edmund, his o*þer* sone, Erl of Caumbrig. ¶ and in þe xxxviij ȝere
16 of his regne, hit was ordeyned in þe p*ar*lement, *þat* men of lawe, bothe of þe temp*or*all & of[8] holy chirche lawe, fro *þat* tyme forth shold plede in her moder tunge. And in þe same ȝere comen into Engelond thre kinges, that is to sey, þe King of F*ra*unce, the King
20 of Cypres, & þe King of Scotlande, by cause to visite & to speke wiþ þe King of Engelond, of whiche[9] þey were wonder welcomen[10] & myche yworshiped.[11] & aft*er* *þat* þey had ben her longe tyme, ij of hem wenten aȝen home into[12] her owne kingdomes; but þe
24 King of F*ra*unce, thurgh grete sikenes & malady *þat* he had, left still in Engelonde.

¶ and in þe xxxix ȝer of his regne, was a strong and an houge frost, & that lasted long, that is forto sey, fro Sent Andrewes tyde
28 vnto þe xiiij kal*end* of Aprill, that þe tilthe &[13] sowyng of þe erthe, & o*þer*e suche feld werkes and hand werkes, were myche yyet[14] & lefte[15] vndo, for colde & hardnesse of[16] erthe.

¶ And at Orrey in Brytayne *þat* tyme was ordeyned a grete
32 dedly batayll bytwene S*er*e Iohn of Mounfort, Duk of Bry[17]tayne, & S*er*e Charles of Bloys, but þe victorie fill to þe forseyd Sir John, thurgh help and socour of þe Englissh men; & *þer*e were take meny kniȝ*te*s & sqwyers and o*þer* men *þat* were*n* ynoumbred.[18] In the

[1] touris chirchis and T. [2] *leaf* 188, *back.* [3] down *om.* T.
[4] toures cherches and *om.* T. [5] strong *om.* T. [6] strong *om.* R.
[7] and s*ir* R. [8] of the T. [9] whom T. of whom R.
[10] home ayen to T. to R. [11] worshiped R. [12] to R. [13] and þe R.
[14] let R. [15] moche I left T. [16] of the T. [17] *leaf* 189.
[18] men of name R.

whiche bataill was slayn Charlis hy*m*self, with al þat stood about hym; & of þe[1] Englissh men *þer* were slayn but vij. And in this ȝere deid at Savey, Iohn, the King of Fr*a*unce, whose se*r*uise & exequyes King Edwarde lete[2] ordeyne, & dede in diu*er*ses places worschipfully to be done, and to douorre of worschipfull men ordeyned hym worthily to be ledde, wiþ his owne costes & expe*n*ses; from[3] þens he was fet into Fr*a*unce, & beried at Sey*n*t Denys.

[*Peter's Pence stopt. Rain, Sparrow-fights, Plagues.*]

¶ In the xl ȝeer of King Edward the vij, k*alend* of Feuerer, was born Edward, Prins Edwardes sone, þe whiche, whan he was vij ȝere olde, he deide. And in þe same ȝer hit was ordeyned that seynt Petris pens, fro þat tyme forþ shold not be payd, þe whiche Kyng Iva, su*m*tyme King of Englond, of þe cuntre of West-Saxons, that bygan to regne in þe ȝer of our Lord DClxxix, ferst g*ra*unted to Rome, for þe scole of Engelond ther to be continued. And in this same ȝer *þer*e fill so mich rayne in hey-tyme, that it wasted[4] & distroyed boþe corn & hey; and *þer* was suche a debate & fightyng of sparows, by diu*er*s places in thes[5] dayes, that men founden vnnum*er*able multitudes of hem dede in feldes as þey wenten. And ther fill also such a pestilens, that neu*er*e non such w*a*s sene in no[6] man*n*es tyme alyve[7]; for meny men, anone[8] as þey were go to bed hool[9] & in good poynt,[10] sodeinly þey deiden. also þat tyme a sikenes þat men callen 'þe pokkes,' slow boþe men and whym*m*en, þourȝ hire enfectyng. ¶ and in þe xli. ȝer of his regne[11] King Edwardo, was bore at Burdeux Richard the seconde, [12]sone of Prins Edward of Engelond, þe whiche Richard[13] King Richard of Amorican heved at þe funtston, aft*er* who*m* he was cleped Richard. & þis same Richard, whan his fader was dede, & Kyng Edward also, was crouned Kyng of Engelond þe xj ȝere of his age, thurgh ryght lyne & heritage, & also by c*ommun*e assent & desir of þe comnalte of þe reaume.

[*With Du Guesclin's help King Pedro of Spain is deposed, and King Henry elected,* A.D. 1366.]

¶ About þis tyme, at King Edwardes com*m*andement of Engelond, whan al þe castelles & tounes were ȝolde to him, that

[1] þe *om.* TR. [2] lete *om.* R. [3] And from T. And fro R.
[4] lasted T. [5] Tho T. [6] no *om.* R. [7] on lyue T.
[8] anone *om.* R. [9] hool T. [10] point anon R. [11] his regne *om.* TR.
[12] *leaf* 189, *back.* [13] Richard was C. Richard TR.

long[1] weren hold in Fr*au*nce by a grete cou*m*pany assembled togider, S*er*e Bertram Cleykyn, kny3t, and[2] a[3] orpid man & a good werreo*ur*, went & p*ur*posid hy*m* to put out Piers, Kyng of Spayne,
4 out of his kingdome wiþ help of þe most p*ar*tye of þe forsaide grete[4] cu*m*panye; trustyng also oppon help & fauour of þe Pope, for as myche as hit come to his eres that þe same Piers shold lede & vse the most[5] worst & synfullest lyf out.[6] ¶ The wiche Peris, King of
8 Spayne, ysmytyn[7] w*ith* drede of this tydyng, fled into Gascoigne to Prins Edward, forto haue help & socour[8] of hym. and whan[9] he was fled out of Spayne, Herry his broþ*er*, þat was a bastarde, by assent of þe moste p*ar*tie of Spayne, & þorughe help of þat
12 ferfull cu*m*pany þat y spak of arst, was made & crouned Kyng of Spayne: and þe noumbre of þat same cu*m*pany was rekened &[10] set at þe nou*m*bre of lx. M[t] fighting men.

[*A Danish Expedition against England.*]

¶ This same 3ere, in þe monþe of Iuyn, þ*ere* come a gret
16 companye & navee of þe Danes, & gaderyd hem togedir in þe Norþ See, p*ur*posyng he*m* to come into Engelond, to reue & to[11] robbe, and also to[11] slee; with[12] who*m*, countreden & metten in þe see, Maryners and oþ*er* orpyd fightyng men of the same cu*n*tre, &[13]
20 disparpled hem[14]; & þey,[15] ashamed, went home a3en into her owne cuntre. But amonge al oþ*er*e was[16] a boysto*us* and a strong vessell of her nauie that was ou*er*e-sayled of the[17] Englissh men, & was p*er*isshid & dreynt; in þe whiche, þe stiward & oþ*er* worthy &
24 grete men of Denmark, were take prisoners, &, by the Kyng of Engelo*n*d & his councell, yprisoned.[18] ¶ The whiche lordes, þe Danes aft*er*ward comen & soghte*n*[19] al about for to haue had[20] her goodes þat þei had lost; and þei, not wel apayed ne plesid of
28 þe answere þat þei had here,[21] turned homwardes[22] a3en levyng behind hem in her ynnes, pryvyly ywriten,[23] in scrowes and on walles, "*3et*[24] *shull Danos þes Wanes.*" Than happed þ*er*e an Englissh writer &[25] wrote a3ens þe Danes in þis mane*r*e wyse: *Her*
32 *shull Danes fett*[26] *banes.*

[1] long *om.* TR. [2] and *om.* TR. [3] an TR. [4] grete *om.* R.
[5] most *om.* R. [6] out *om.* R. [7] ysmytyn *om.* T.
[8] socoure and help T. socour and help R. [9] whan *om.* T.
[10] rekened & *om.* T. [11] to *om.* R. [12] *leaf* 190. [13] and thei T.
[14] hem *om.* T. [15] þey *om.* T. [16] þer was R. [17] the *om.* T.
[18] prisoned T. [19] sente R. [20] had with C. had TR.
[21] þei T. here *om.* R. [22] hoom R. [23] writen R. [24] þe T.
[25] & *om.* R. [26] sette her TR.

[*The deposed King Pedro of Spain appeals to the Black Prince for help.*]

And in þis tyme, Peirs, Kyng[1] of Spayne, w*ith* oþ*er* Kynges, þat is forto sey, þe King of Nauerne, &[2] þe King of Malogre, beyng menes, went*en* bitwene, & pr*a*yed counceyl[3] & help of S*er*e Edwarde, þe Prins þoneȝ, whose counceil, whan he had vnderstond her articles & desire þat he was requyred of ij.[4] kinges, lothe he was, and ashamed, to sey 'nay,' & contrarie hem; but noþeles he was agast lest it sholde be eny preiudice aȝens þe Pope.[5] Long he taried hem or he wolde gr*a*unte & consente þ*er*to, til he had bett*er* counceyl & avysement w*ith* good deliber*a*ciou*n* of King Edward, his geter and[6] his fader. ¶ But whan þ*at*[7] he was with eu*er*y dayes & continuele bysechyng*es* of so meny noble men yrequired[8] & spoken to, & wiþ meny pr*a*yers ysent[9] and made bituene þam, Prins Edwarde sent to his fader—boþe by pleyny*ng* l*ett*res, and also by confortable, conteynyng al her suggestions and causes, wiþ al þe toþ*er*[10] Kynges epistles & l*ett*res forto haue [11]comfort and helpe of þe wronges, not only to þe Kyng of Spayne ydo, but also for such þinges þat might fal to oþ*er*e kynges also, if it ner not þe sonner holpen & amendid, þurgh þe dome & help of knyghthood to he*m* that it asked & desired. ¶ The which l*ett*res, whan þe kyng and his wys counceyll had seyn & vndirstonden, he had gr*e*te compassiou*n* & heuynesse of such a kynges spoylyng and robbyng, wiþ myche v*er*maille[12]; and sent aȝen co*m*fortable lett*er*es to Prins Edward, his sone, and to þe oþ*er*e forsaide kynges, & warned hym forto arme hym & ordeigne hy*m* aȝens þat mysdoer, & to wiþstond hem, by þe help of God, that weren such enemyes to kynges.

[*The Black Prince undertakes to help the King of Spain.*]

¶ Whan this[13] noble Pryn3 had resceyued þes lett*er*es, hym-self, wiþ þe oþ*er*e kynges byfor all her counceyll clept togeder or þat he wold vndirtake þe querell be[14] bonde, & knet sore þe King þat was deposid wiþ a grete othe, þat is forto sey, þat he shold eu*er*e aft*er* maynteigne the ryȝt byleue and faith of holi chirche, & holy chirche[15] also wiþ al her mynistres, rightes & lib*er*tees, to defende fro*m* all her enemyes; and all eueles[16] & al þ*at* were þ*er*e aȝens,

[1] kyng *om.* T. [2] & *om.* R. [3] of counseH T. [4] þo TR.
[5] pope and T. [6] his geter & *om.* TR. [7] þat *om.* TR.
[8] required T. [9] sent T. [10] oþ*er* R. [11] *leaf* 190, *back.*
[12] m*er*vaiH R. [13] þe R. [14] he R. [15] & holy chirche *om.* R.
[16] & all eueles *om.* TR.

bytterly to ponysshe & destourble, & al þe rightes libertees & pryuileges of holy cherche encrece, mayntaigne & amende, & al þinges þat were wrongfully benome, wiþdrawe & bore awey, by hym
4 or by eny oþere by cause of hym, hastly to restore aȝeen, and to dryve & put out Saraȝins & al oþere mysbyleued peple out of his kyngdom, wiþ al his strenghe & power, & suffre ne admitte none such for no manere þing, ne cause to duell theryn; and þat whan he
8 had take a cristen womman to wyf, he shold neuere come in to[1] non oþer wommans bedde, ne non oþere mannes wyf to[2] defoule: al þes [3]forsaide þinges, trewlych forto kepe,[4] continue & fulfill al his lyf tyme, he was bound by othe afor notaries, in presence and witnes
12 of tho kynges wiþ oþere prins, & þan thilk[5] gracious Prins Edward vndertoke þe cause & þe querele of þe King þat was deposed, & behight hym, with[6] þe[7] grace of God, to restore hym aȝen to his kyngdome, and lete ordeigne & gadre to-gedir forthwiþ in all haste,
16 his nave, wiþ men of armes, to werre & fight in this forseid cause.

[*Fight of Eagles; Fall of Fiery Stars; Storms and Destruction.*]

¶ And in this same tyme, oppon þe sonde of the Scottyssh see, þat meny a man[8] hit sye ther[9] iij. dayes togedir þere were sene ij. Egleȝ, of þe which the tone[10] come out of þe southe, & þe toþer[11]
20 out of[12] þe North, & cruelly & strongly þey foughten togider & warstled togider; & þe south Egle ferst ouercome the Northe egle, & al[13] to-rent and tare hym wiþ his bille & his clowes, þat he shold not reste ne take no breþe; and aftir, the south egle flye home to
24 his owne coostes. and anone after, þere folowed & was seyn in þe[14] morne afore þe[15] sunne rysing; and after, in[16] þe last day of Octobre saf on, þat[17] meny sterres gaderid togedir on an hepe fel doun into þe erþe, levyng behind hem fery[18] bemes in manere of
28 lightnyng, whos flaumes & hete brent & consumed mennys cloþes & mennys here, walkyng on þe erþe, as hit was seen & knowen of meny a man. ¶ and ȝet thilk Northren wynd, that is euere redy & destinat to all evell fro Seynt Katerins even til iij. dayes aftir, lost
32 good wiþoute nombre vnrecouerable. and in þese same dayes þer fill & comen also such lightnynges, þundres, snowe & hayl, þat hit wastede and destroyed men, bestes, houses and trees.

[1] in TR. [2] to *om.* R. [3] *leaf* 191. [4] be kept R. [5] *þat* R.
[6] hym with *om.* T. [7] bi the T. [8] a man *om.* T. [9] it saw R.
[10] that oon T. *þat* on R. [11] that oþer T. [12] *þat* oþer com off R.
[13] al *om.* T. [14] in the T. in þe R. *om.* C. [15] þe *om.* R.
[16] in *om.* R. [17] þat *om.* R. [18] very R.

Of þe bataill of Spayne bituene Prins Edward & Herry þe Bastard of Spayne. Ca*pitu*lo CC^mo^ xxxiij^o^.[1]

[I]n þe ȝer of our Lord a M^l^CCC. lxvij, & of Kyng Edward xlij., þe thrid day of [2]Aprill, þer was a strong bataill & a 4
*gre*te, in a large felde yclept[3] Pryaȝers, fast by þe wat*er* of Naȝers in Spayne, bitwene Sir[4] Edward Pryns,[5] & Harry, þe Bastarde of Spayne; but þe victorie fill to Pryns Edwarde, by þe g*rac*e of God. & þis same Prins Edward had w*ith* hym S*er*e John, þe Duke of 8
Lancastre, his broþ*er*, and worþi oþ*er*[6] men of armes, aboute þe noumbre of xxx. M^t^. And þe King of Spayne had on[7] his side, men of diu*er*ce nacions, to þe noumbre of a[8] C. M^t^. & passyng.
¶ Wherfore þe sharpnes & þe fersnes of his adu*er*sarye, wiþ his 12
ful boystus & ful[9] g*re*te strengthe, made &[10] strevyn[11] þe ryȝtfull p*ar*tye abak a gret wey; but þurgh þe g*rac*e of Almyȝty God, passyng eny ma*nn*ys strengthe, thilk hougest ooste was desparbled myghtfully by þe noble Duk of Lancastre and his oste, or þ*at* Pryns 16
Edward come nye hym. ¶ And whan Harry þe Bastard sey þat, he t*ur*ned wiþ his men,[12] wiþ so g*re*te haste and strengthe, to fle, þat an houge cu*m*panye of him in þe forseyd flood, & of þe brigge þ*er*-of,[13] fill*en*[14] doun[15] & p*er*isshed. and þ*er*e were take, þe Erl of 20
Dene and S*er*e Bertram Cleykyn, þat was chefe[16] mak*er* and cause of the werre, and also chyueteyn of þe vauntward of þe bataill, wiþ meny oþ*er* lordes and knightes, to þe noumbre of ij. M^t^; of whom ij^c^ weren of Fr*au*nce, & meny of Scotlond; & þ*er*e were feld in þe 24
felde on our enemys side, of lordes and knyȝtes, w*ith* oþ*er*e mene peple, to þe nou*m*bre of vj M^t^ & mo; and of Englissh men but a fewe. ¶ And aft*er* þis, þat noble Prins Edward restored þe same Piers into his kingdom aȝen. þe whiche Piers aft*er*ward, þourȝ 28
trecherye & falsnes of þe forsaid Bastarde of Spayne as he sate atte þe table, he was strangled and deyde. but aft*er* þis victorye, meny noble and hardy men of Engelond, in Spayne, þourȝ the fflix & odir diu*er*s siknesses, toke her dethe. 32

& in þis same [17]ȝer in Marche,[18] was seyn 'Stella Comata' bitwene þe North costes & þe west, whos bemes strecched toward Fr*au*nce. and in þe ȝer next sewyng of King Edwardes regne

[1] Ca*pitulo* CC^o^ T. CCxxxiiij R. [2] *leaf* 191, *back*. [3] clept TR.
[4] sir *om*. R. [5] bitwene Pr*in*ce Edward T. þe Prins R.
[6] and oþ*er* worthi R. [7] in R. [8] an T. [9] ful *om*. R.
[10] made & *om*. R. [11] droof T. dryuen R. [12] wiþ his men *om*. TR.
[13] þ*er* of *om*. R. [14] fil a T. [15] A downe T. [16] chefe *om*. T.
[17] *leaf* 192. [18] in Marche *om*. T.

xliij., in Aprill, S*er*e Leonell, Kyng Edwardes sone, *þat* was duk of Clarence, went towarde Myleyn, w*ith* a chose meyne of þe gentils of Englond, forto wedde Galoys dou*ȝter*,[1] and haue her to wyf, by
4 whom he shold haue half[2] þe Lordship of Mileyn. But aft*er* *þat* þey were solempnly wedded, the[3] same Duke, about þe Natiuite of our Lady deid.[4] & in þe same ȝere þe Frensshe men breken þe pees & the trewes, ryding on þe Kinges ground and lordship of
8 Englo*n*d, in þe shire & cu*n*tre of Pountyf, & taken & helden castls & tounes, & bere þe Englisshe men on hond falsly[5] & sotilly,[6] *þat* þey were cause of breking of þe[7] truws. And in þis same ȝere deyd þe Duchesse[8] of Lancastre, & is beryed worschipfully in[9] Seynt
12 Poules Cherche.[10]

[*A Great Pestilence*, A.D. 1369.]

¶ The xliiij ȝere of King Edward regne, was þe grete pestilens of men and of g*re*te beestes; and by grete fallyng of wate*re*s *þat* fill *þat* tyme, *þer* fill grete hyndryng & destroyeng of corn, in so
16 mych *þat* þe next ȝere after, a busshell whete[11] was solde for xl d. and about þe laste ende of May, Kyng Edwarde held his p*ar*lement at West*minster*; in þe whiche *par*lement was treted & spoken of þe oþe & þe[12] trewes *þat* was broke bituene hem and þe King of
20 Fr*au*nce, & how he myȝte best oppon his wrong be avenged. ¶ In þis same ȝer, in þe Assu*m*psion of our Lady, deid[13] Qwene Philippe of Engelond, a ful noble and good woman; & at West*minste*r ful worschipfully is buried & entered.

24 And about Missom*er*e, þe Duke of Lancastre & þe Erle of Herford, wiþ a grete cu*m*panye of kniȝtes, wente*n* into Fr*au*nce, wher þey gete hem but a litell worship and name[14]; for *þer* was an houge oste of Frenssh men oppon [15]Chalkhul brigge, [16]& anoþer oste[17]
28 of Englisshe men faist by þe same brigge,[16] *þat* longe tyme had leyn þere; and meny worþy men & grete of þe[18] Englisshe men ordeyned & ȝaf counceyll forto fight & ȝeue bataill to þe Frensh men; but þe forsaide lordes wolde noþing[19] consente *þer*to, ne assent,[20] for no
32 man*er*e þing. ¶ Ther ano*n* aft*er*, hit happid *þat* þe Erl of Warwyke come þedirward forto werre; & whan þe Frenshmen herde

[1] Galeys þe Dukis sister of Mileyne R. [2] þe half R. [3] *þat* T.
[4] he died T. [5] men falsly on honde T. *þat* falsli R.
[6] sotilly *om.* T. [7] þe *om.* R. [8] Duke T. [9] at T.
[10] chirche at London R. [11] of whete T. [12] and of the T.
[13] died the T. [14] and name *om.* R. [15] *leaf* 192, *back.*
[16–16] & anoþer oste . . . brigge *om.* R. [17] oste *om.* T. [18] þe *om.* T.
[19] not R. [20] ne assent *om.* R.

of his comynge, or þat þey[1] come fully to londe, þey left her tentis and pavilons, wiþ al hir vetayles, & fledden[2] and wente*n* awey pre-veyly. And whan þe Erl was come to londe wiþ his men, he wente in al has[t][3] into[4] Normandye, and distroyede þe Ile of Cavs, þourȝ 4 dent of suerde & þourȝ fire; but allas, in his ret*ur*nyng into[5] Eng-lond-warde home aȝen, at Caleys he was take w*ith* siknes of pestil-lence, & deide, nowt lewyng behynde him, aft*er* his dayes, non[6] so noble a kniȝt, ne so[7] orpid of armes. ¶ In whiche tyme rayned 8 and werred thilk orpid kniȝt, Se*re* Iohn Hawkwode, þat was an Englisshman born, hauyng w*ith* hy*m* at[8] his gou*er*nance þilk white cu*m*panye þat ys abore[9] ynemned, þe whiche were[10] o tyme aȝens holy chirche, and anoþ*er* tyme aȝens lordes werryng, & ordeynede 12 gret batailes; & þ*er* in þat cu*n*tre he dede many mervayles þingeȝ.

And aboute þe Conu*er*sion of Seynt Poule, King Edward, whan he had ȝended and done þe entering and þe[11] exequites, wiþ grete costes and rialtees, aboute þe tombe[12] & buryng of Quene 16 Phillip his[13] wif, he held his p*ar*lement at Westm*inster*. In þe whiche p*ar*lement was axed of þe clergye a iij. ȝers disme, þat is forto sey, a gret dime to be paied .iij. ȝer duryng; and the clergye put hit of, and wolde not g*ra*unte hit vnto Est*er* next comyng; 20 & þan þey g*ra*unted wele þat in iij ȝere, by certeyne termes, þat disme [14] shold be payed; & also of þe lay fee, was a iij. ȝers xv. yg*ra*unted to þe King.

Hov sir Robert Knollis, wiþ oþ*er* ce*r*teyne[15] lordes of þe 24 reaume,[16] wente ou*er*e þe see into Fra*u*nce; & of here gou*er*nau*n*ce. Ca*pitul*o CC^mo^. xxxiiij^o^.[17]

And in þe xlv ȝere of King Edward, in þe bygenyng, King Edward, wiþ owne-wise[18] counceyll and vndescret, borwed a 28 g*re*te su*m*me of gold of þe p*re*latis and lordes, Marchauntes and oþ*er* riche men of þe[19] reaume, saynge þ*at* hit sholde be spende in deffendy*n*g of holy cherche & of his reaume; but neu*er* þe lat*ter* hit profited hit[20] not. Wherfore about Midsom*er* aft*er*, þe king 32 made a g*re*te oste of þe worthiest men of his reaume, amonges whom were som*m*e lordes, þ*at* is forto seyn, þe Lord Fitzwat*er*,

[1] he TR. [2] fledde þenneȝ R. [3] haste T. [4] haste toward R.
[5] to TR. [6] non *om.* R. [7] knyght and TR.
[8] and at TR. [9] afore R. [10] were *om.* TR. [11] þe *om.* R.
[12] sepulcure TR. [13] his wif T. his wiff R. wif *om.* C.
[14] *leaf* 193. [15] *cer*teyne *om.* R. [16] of þe reaume *om.* TR.
[17] CC^o^ T. CC xxxv R. [18] with vnwis R. [19] his TR.
[20] hit *om.* TR.

þe Lord Gromson, and o*per* worþi kniȝtes, of whiche kniȝtes þe King[1] ordeyned Se*re* Robert Knoll*is*, a proved kniȝt and wel assayed in dede of armes, forto be gou*er*nour; and þat, þourȝ his
4 gou*er*nnance and counceyll, al þing sholde be gou*er*ned & dressid. and whan þey come into Fr*a*unce, as long as þey duelled and helde him hole togider, þe Frensshmen þorust[2] nout falle oppon hym. & at þe[3] laste, aboute þe bigynnyng of we*nter*, for enuye and covetyse[4]
8 þ*at* was amonges ham, and also discorded, þey sunddered & partyd him into diu*er*s companyes, vnwysely & follely. But Se*re* Robert Knollis & his men went*en* and kept*en* ham saf[5] wiþinne a Castel in Britaigne. & whan þe frenshe men saw þat our men were
12 deuyded i*n*to diu*er*s cu*m*panyes & places, nouȝt holdyng ne strengyng ham togeders, as þey awȝte forto done, þey fel fersly on our men, & for þe moste p*ar*tey [6]tok*en* ham & slow*en*[6]; and þo þ*at* þey toke, ledde wiþ him p*re*soners. ¶ And in þe same ȝere
16 Pope Vrban come fro Rome to Avyoun, for enchesou*n* & cause þ*at* he shold acorde and make pees bytwene þe King of Fr*a*unce and þe King of Engelonde for eu*er*more; but allas, [7]or he bygan þis tretis, he deide wiþ sikenes, þe xxj day of Decembre, & was
20 yburied[8] as for þe tyme in þe cathedral cherch of Avyon, fast by þe hye[9] auter. & þe next ȝere after, whan he had leyn so, his bones were taken out of þe erþe, and beryed new in þe abbey of Seynt Victour, fast by Marcyle, of þe whiche abbey he was su*m*tyme
24 abbot hymself.[10] & in boþe places þat he was buryed yn, ther[11] bene meny grete miracles done and wroght, thurgh þe g*ra*ce of God, to meny a ma*n*nes help, and to þe worship of God. After whom folowed next, & was made Pope Gregore Cardynall, dekene,
28 þ*at* bifore was clept Piers Rogier.

[*The Black Prince takes Limoges, and comes back to England.*]

¶ In this same ȝere þe Citee of Lymage rebelled and faght aȝens þe Pryns, as o*per*e Citees in Guyene dede, for g*re*te taxes, costages & raunsoms, þat þey wer put-yn and ysette[12] to[13] by Prins Edward,
32 þe whiche charges were unportable, & to chargeable; wherfor þey t*ur*ned fro him, & fill to þe King of Fr*a*unce, & whan Pryns Edward sawe þis, he was sore ychaufed[14] & ygrevid; and in t*ur*nyng

[1] the kyng TR. the *om.* C. [2] durest R. [3] þe *om.* TR.
[4] and covetyse *om.* TR. [5] selff R.
[6–6] token hem or slowen hem T. or slowen ham R. [7] *leaf* 193, *back.*
[8] buried TR. [9] hye *om.* R. [10] hymself *om.* R. [11] ther *om.* T.
[12] sette T. [13] to *om.* T [14] chaufed R.

homward aȝen to Engelond, w*ith* sore skyrmisshes & fightyng and grete[1] assautes, fought[2] w*ith* hem, & toke þe forsaid Citee, & distroyed hit almost to þe[3] g*ro*unde, and slow al þat were [4]founde in þe Citee.[4] And þan, forto sey þe sothe, for diu*er*s siknesses and 4
maladies þat he had, and also for defaute of money þ*at* he myght not wiþstande ne tarie on his enemys, he hyed hym aȝen into Engelond. And about þe bygynnyng of Januarij he come into Engelond w*ith* his wyf and his meyne, levyng behind him i*n* Gas- 8
coigne þe Duk of Lancast*re* & S*er*e Edmund,[5] Erl of Caumbrigge, w*ith* op*er*e worþy and orpid men of armes.

¶ In þe xlvj ȝere of King Edwarde, at þe ordin*au*nce & sendyng of King Edwarde, þe King of Nauern come to hym to Claryngdoun, 12
to trete wiþ ham of c*er*teyn þinges touching his werre [6]in Normandye, wher King Edward had left[7] certen seges in his stede til he come aȝen; but King Edwarde myght*en* not spede of þat þ*at* he asked of hym; and so þe King of Nauerne, w*ith* g*r*ete worshup & g*r*ete 16
ȝeftes, toke his leue, & wente home aȝen. And about þe begynnyng of Marche, whan þe p*ar*lement at Westm*inster* was bygu*n*ne; þe King axed of þe clergye a subsidie of L. M[l] li,[8] þe whiche, by a[9] good avisement & by a gen*er*al co*n*uocaciou*n* of þe clergye, hit was 20
yg*ra*unted[10] & yordeyned[11] þ*at* hit shold be payede & reised of þe lay fee. And in þis p*ar*lement, at þe requeste & axyng of þe lordes, in hatered of men of holy chirche, þe Chaunceler & tho þ*at* were Bisshopes, þe Tresorer & þe Clerk of þe Pryue Sele, were remeued 24
& put out of hire office, & in hire stedes were seculer men put yn. And while þis p*ar*lement laste, þ*er* comen solempne ambassiatours, ysent[12] fro þe Pope to trete wiþ þe King, of pees, & saiden þat þe Pope desired to fullfille his p*re*decessours will; but for al hir 28
comyng þey spedden not of hir purpos.

Of þe sege of Rochell, & hov þe Erl of Penbroke w*as* take*n* of þe Spaynardeȝ. Cap*itulo* CC^mo^ xxxv^o^.[13]

The ix day of Juyn, King Edwarde, in þe xlvij ȝer*e* of his regne, 32
helde his p*ar*lement at Wynchestr*e*; & hit lasted but viij. dayes; to þe[14] p*ar*lement was sompned by wryt, of men of holy chirche, iiij. bisshopes &[15] iiij. abbotes, wiþoute eny mo. This p*ar*lement

[1] and g*r*ete *om.* R. [2] fightyng sautis foughten T. [3] þe *om.* T.
[4]–[4] founde þerynne R. [5] Iohn TR. [6] *leaf* 194. [7] lost R.
[8] l Ml pound T. [9] a *om.* R. [10] graunted R. [11] ordeyned R.
[12] sent R. [13] CC^o^ T. CC xxxvj R. [14] þis R. [15] & *om.* T.

was[1] holden for Marchauntis of London, of Norwych, & of o*þer* diu*er*s places, in diu*er*s þinges and poyntes of tresou*n* þat þey were diffamed of, þ*at* is forto sey, þat þey were rebelle, & wolde[2] rise
4 aȝens þe King.

¶ This same ȝere þe Duk of Lancastr*e* and þe Erl of Caumbrigge, his bro*þer*, come*n* out of Gascoigne into Englond, & token & weddid to hir wyues Petres doghters, su*m*tyme King of Spayne; of
8 which [3]ij douȝters þe Duke had þe elder,[4] and þe Erl þe ȝong*er*. And þe[5] same tyme *þer* were sent ij Cardinals fro þe Pope, þat is to sey, an Englissh Cardinal, & a Cardinal of Parius, to trete of pees bytwene tho ij. reaumes, þe which, whan þey had ben boþe longe
12 eche in his p*ro*vince, & in places & cu*n*tres fast by, tretyng of þe forsaid pees, at þe last þey toke wiþ he*m* her l*ett*res of p*ro*curacye, & went aȝen to þe court of Romeward,[6] wiþoute eny effecte of hir purpos. ¶ In þis ȝere also *þer*e was a st*ro*nge bataill on þe see
16 bytwene Englissh men & Flemmynges; & þe Englissh men had þe victorye, & toke xxv. shippes ycharged[7] wiþ salt, sleyng & drenchyng al þe men þat were *þer*in, vnwytyng hem þat þey weren of þat cuntre. and redily mych harme had fall by cause[8] *þer*of,
20 ne had pees þe[9] son*n*er be made bitwene hem. and in þis same ȝer þe Frenssh men byseged þe toun of þe[10] Rochell, wherfor þe Erle of Penbrok was sent into Gascoigne w*ith* a grete cu*m*panye of men of armes, forto destroye þe sege; þe which passeden þe[11] see,
24 & comen safe to[12] þe haven of Rochell. and whan þey were *þer*e at þe haven mouþe, or þat[13] þey myght entre, sodenly come*n* oppon hem a strong naue of Spayne, þe whiche ou*er*come*n* þo[14] þe Englissh men, in mych blemyshyng, hurtyng & sleyng of many
28 p*er*sones, for as miche as þe Englysse men were not þan redy forto fight, ne ware of hem. & in þis comyng oppon[15] of þe Spaynardes, all þe Englissh men, ey*þer* þey were take or slayn; & x. of hem were wonded to þe dethe; & all her shippes ybrent.[16] ¶ And *þer*e[17]
32 þey token þe Erle, with an houge tresour of þe reaume[18] of Engelond, & many o*þer* noble men also, on Missome*r* eve, þe whiche is seynt Mildredes day, &[19] ledden hem wiþ[20] him into Spayne. And of þis mysshif was no g*re*te wonder, for þis Erle was a ful euel lyuer, as

[1] was maad and T. [2] wolde *om.* T. [3] *leaf* 194, *back.*
[4] elder TR. Erle C. [5] þat TR. [6] ward *om.* R. [7] charged TR.
[8] bycause *om.* R. [9] þe pece T. [10] þe *om.* T. [11] in þe T.
[12] vnto T. into R. [13] þat *om.* T. [14] þo *om.* T. [15] on T.
[16] brent R. [17] *þere om.* T. [18] of þe reaume *om.* T. [19] þei T.
[20] hem wiþ *om.* R.

an opyn lechour; & also in a [1] certeyne parlement he stood and was aȝens þe [2] riȝtes & þe fraunche of holy chirche [2]; and also he counceyled þe King and his counceyle,[3] þat he shold axe more of men of holy chirch þan of oþer persones of þe lay fee. ¶ And for 4 þe King & oþere of his counceyl axcepted & token raþer evell opynions & causis aȝens men of holy chirch, þan he dede forto fende & maynteyne þe riȝt of holy chirch, hit was sen in [4] many tymes after, þourgh lakkyng of fortune and [5] grace, þey had not ne 8 bere awey so [5] grete victorye ne power aȝens hir enemyns as þey dede byfore.

Þis same ȝere, þe King, wiþ a grete ostee, entred þe see to remeve þe sege of [6] Rochell; but þe wynd was euen contrarye to 12 hem, and suffred hem [7] not longe tyme to [8] goo fer fro þe londe. Wherfore he abode a certeyne time oppon þe see costes, abyding after a good wynde for him; and ȝet come hit not. So at þe [9] laste he come þens wiþ his men to londeward aȝen; and anon as he was 16 a [10] londe, þe wynde bygan turne,[11] and was in anoþer coste þen he was byfore.

Hov þe Duk of [12] Lancastre, with a grete oste, went into Flaundres,[12] & passed by Parys, þoruȝ Burgoyne. Capitulo 20 CC^mo^ xxxvj^o^.[13]

Sone [14] after, in þe xlviij ȝere of King Edward, þe Duk of Lancastere, wiþ a grete oste, wente into Floundres, and passid by Parys, þourȝ Burgoyne, & þourȝ alle Fraunce, til he come to 24 Burdeux, wiþoute eny manere wiþstonddyng of þe Frenshe men. & he dede him but litel harme, saf he toke and raunseued many places & tounnes, & meny [15] [16] men lette hem goon after [16] frely.

¶ The same ȝer þe King sent certeyne enbassetours to þe Pope, 28 prayynge hem þat he sholde [17] leue of and melle-not [18] in his court of þe kepyngeȝ & reseruaciouns of benefeces in Engelond; & þat þo þat were chose to bisshopes sees [19] & dingnites, frely & wiþ ful right myȝte [20] Ioye haue,[21] & be confermed. [22] Of her Metropolanes and 32

[1] *leaf* 195. [2—2] rightis of holi chirche and þe ffraunchises T.
[3] and his connceyle *om.* TR. [4] in *om.* R.
[5—5] *grace* for þey hadde neuer so R. [6] at T.
[7] and suffred hem *om.* T. to him þat he myȝte not R.
[8] to *om.* R. [9] þe *om.* T. [10] at T. at þe R. [11] to turne T.
[12—12] lancastre wente into fflaundris with a greet hoost T.
[13] CC^o^ T. CC xxxvij R. [14] Anoon T. Anon R. [15] meny *om.* T.
[16—16] men and after lete hem gone T. men and let ham aftir go R.
[17] wolde T. [18] and not medle TR. [19] sees *om.* R.
[20] ful moche T. right myȝte R. [21] haue TR. and haue C.
[22] *leaf* 195, *back.*

Erchebisshops, as þey were went to be of old tyme of þes poyntes, & of oþer toching þe Kinge and his reaume. When þey hadden her answere of þe Pope, þe Pope enioyned hem þat þey sholde
4 certyfie hem aȝen by her letteres of þe Kinges wylle, and of his reaume, or þat þey deterмened out[1] of þe forsaide articles.

¶ In this same ȝer, deid John, þe Erchebisshop of ȝork, Iohn, bosship of Ely; William, bisship of Worsschestre, in whos stedes
8 folweding, and were made bisship by þe[2] auctorite of þe Pope, Mayster Alexander Nevyle to þe Erchebysshoprich of ȝork, Thomas of Arundell to þe Bisshop[3] of Ely, & sere Herry Wakefeld to þe bysshoprich of Worcestre. In whiche tyme it was ordeyned in þe
12 parlement þat all Cathedrall cherches shold ioy and haue her eleccions hool; & þat þe King, fro þat tyme afterward, sholde not write aȝens hem þat were ychosen,[4] but rather help ham by his lettres to her confirmaciou*n*. & this statut was kept, and dede
16 myche profet & good; & in þis parlement was graunted to þe King a dysme of þe clergye, & a xv of þe lay fee.

¶ The ȝere next[5] after, of King Edwarde xlix, þe v. day of Iuyn, deid Mayster William Wytlesey, Erchebisshope of Caunter-
20 bery. Wherfor þe monkes of þe same chirche asked & desired a Cardinall of Engelond to be Erchebisshop; and þerfore þe King was agreued, & had ment and purposed to have exiled þe monkes of þe same hous[6]; & so þey[7] spended mich good or þey myghte haue þe
24 Kingeȝ grace aȝen, & his loue; but ȝet wold not þe King consente ne graunte to her eleccioun of þe Cardinall, ne þe Pope also, ne his Cardinals.

& about þe bygynnyng of August, it was tretid & spoken at
28 Brugges of certeyn poyntes & articles hauyng bytwene þe Pope and þe King of Engelonde; & þis tretis lasted almoste ij. ȝere. At þe[8] laste it was acorded bytwene ham, þat þe Pope, fro þat ty[9]me forþe, shold nout vse ne dele wiþ þe reseruacions of[10] benefices in Engelond;
32 and þat þe King shold not graunte ne lete no benefices by his wryt þat ys yclept[11] 'Quare impedit'; but as touchyng þe eleccions aboue seyd, þere was noþing touchid ne do; & þat was ywyted[12] & put oppon certeyn clerkes, the[13] whiche raþer supposed & hoped[14]
36 to be auaunced & promoted to bysshopriches which[15] þey desired & coueyted, by þe court of Rome þan by eny eleccions.[16]

[1] ought T. [2] þe *om.* TR. [3] archebisshopriche R. [4] chosen TR.
[5] nexte yeer R. [6] chirche R. [7] þey *om.* T. [8] þe *om.* T.
[9] *leaf* 196. [10] of þe R. [11] clept TR. [12] wyted R. [13] the *om.* T.
[14] hoped & supposed R. [15] with that T. [16] þanne oþer wise R.

This same ȝer about Candelmasse, þe*re* comen & metten togider at Brugges, meny noble and worþy men of boþe reaumes, to treten of pees bituene þo ij. kingdomes. And this tretys lasted twey ȝer, wiþ g*re*te costes & houge spences of[1] boþe 4 p*ar*ties; & at þe laste þey went & dep*ar*ted þens wiþout eny accorde or effecte.

¶ The next ȝer after, þe xlix[2] ȝer of Kyng Edward, þe iiij. None of Maii, beyng ȝet void & vacaunt[3] þe Erchebisshop of 8 Caunt*er*bury, Maist*er* Symound Sudbury, Bysshop of London, was[4] made Erchebisshop of Caun*ter*bury; & Maist*er* Will. Courteneye, þat was Bisshop of Herford, was þan made Bysshop of London; & þe Bisshiop of Bangor was made Bosship of Herford. 12

And in þis same tyme, in a c*er*teyn tretys, & speking of pees, trews was take bytwene F*ra*unce & Engelond, fro[5] Missom*e*re vnto Missom*e*re come aȝen, al on hool ȝer. ¶ And about the bygynnyng of Aprill, þe Duke of Brytayne, wiþ meny Erles,[6] barons, and 16 noble and[7] worþy men of Engelond, went ou*e*re see[8] into Brytaigne, wher he had al his lust, desire & p*ur*pos,[9] ne had þe forsaide trws be so sone ybrake,[10] þe whiche letted hem myche. This same tyme, þe Ile of Constantyn, wher þat the castell of Sent Sauour is yn, þat 20 longe tyme was fought at & byseged of þe Frenshe men, [11]was þan ȝolden to þe Frenshemen,[11] wiþ al þe app*ur*ten*au*nces, into g*re*te harme & hyndryng of þe reaume of Engelond.

And þe[12] same ȝer þe*re* were so [13]grete & so passyng hetes, & 24 þe*re*wiþal a grete pestilens in Engelond, & in oþer diu*er*s p*ar*ties of þe world, þat it destroyed & slow, violently & strongly, both men & wymmen w*ith*out nou*m*bre.

¶ This same ȝer deid Sir Edwarde, þe lord Spencer, a worthy 28 knyȝt and a bolod; & in þe Mynstre of Teukesbury worschipfully is buried.

& lastyng this pestilens, þe Pope, at þe instaunce & p*ra*yer of a[14] Englissh Cardinall, g*ra*unted to al þe peple þat deid in Engelond 32 þat weren sory and repentaunt for her synnes, & also shryven, ful remyssiou*n*, by ij. bulles vnder lede, vj. monthes þan next to last.

In þis same ȝer þe Erl of Penbrook was take & raunsened by[15] Bertram Cleykyn, bytwne Parys & Caleys, as he come towarde 36

[1] on T. [2] TR. [3] vacaunt & void R.
[4] london was T. london þey R. [5] fro R. for C. [6] erlis & R.
[7] noble and *om.* R. [8] þe see T. [9] purpos and desire R.
[10] ybrake T. take RC. [11—11] was þan ȝolden . . . men *om.* T.
[12] this TR. [13] *leaf* 196, *back.* [14] an T. [15] bi for R.

Engelonde oppon Seint Etheldredis day; þe whiche Seynt, as hit was said, þe same Erl oft tymes had offended; & wiþin a while after, he deide. & in Noumbre[1] next after, þere metten at Brugges
4 þe Duke of Lancastre & þe Duke of Angeoy, wiþ meny oþer lordes & prelates of boþe reaumes, forto trete of pees.

Of þe deþe of prins Edward, & of dame[2] Alys Perers, & Piers de la Mare. Capitulo CC xxxviij°.[3]

[*A Parliament held at Westminster*, A.D. 1376. *Alice Ferrers and Lord Latimer.*]

8 Not[4] longe after þe lj. ȝere of þe regnyng of King Edward, he lete ordeyned & holde his parlement at Westminster, þe grettest þat was sen meny ȝere afore. In þe whiche parlement, he axed of[5] Communaltee of þe reaume as he had done byfore, a grete subsede
12 to be graunted to hem, for defendyng of hem and of his reame; but þe communes answered þat 'þey were so oft, day be day, ygreued & charged wiþ so meny talyageȝ & subsidies, þat þey myȝte no longer suffre non such berþes ne charges; ¶ and þat þey knewyn
16 & wisten wel þat þe King had ynov for sauyng of hem & of his[6] reaume, yf þe reaume wher wel and trewly gouerned, but þat[7] [8]it had be so long euel ygouerned[9] by euel officers, þat the reaume myȝt neither[10] be plenteuous of Chaffare and merchaundise, ne
20 also wiþ[11] richesse: & þese þingeȝ þey profered hem self, if þe King wold, certey[n]ly to preue & stonde by. and if it were found & proued after, þat þe King þan had nede, þey wold þen gladly, euery man, after his power and state, hem wold[12] helpe &
24 lene.'

¶ And after þis, þere were publisshed & shewed in þe parlement meny playntes & defautes of officers of[13] þe reaume, & namely of þe Lorde Latymer, þe Kingeȝ Chaumberlayn, of his evel gouer-
28 naunce, boþe[14] to þe King & eke to þe reame; & at þe laste also þer[15] was tretid & spoken of Dame Alys Pereis, for þe grete[16] wrongeȝ & evel[17] gouernaunce þat was done by her & by her counceyl in þe reame; þe whiche Dame Alys Perers, þe King had holde long
32 tyme to his lemman. Wherfor hit was þe lesse wonder thogh,

[1] MS. Noūbre. [2] dame *om.* T. [3] CC° T. [4] Not TR. Bot C.
[5] of þe R. [6] þe R. [7] þat *om.* R. [8] *leaf* 197. [9] gouerned TR.
[10] neuer T. [11] of R. [12] wold *om.* R. [13] diuers of R.
[14] boþe *om.* R. [15] þere it R. [16] grete *om.* T.
[17] yuyl T. evel R. wel C.

þurgh þe freelte of þe wo*m*man*n*ys exciting & her streyng, co*n*sentid to her lewednes & evell counceyll. ¶ The which Dame Alys, & also þe Lord Latymer, & also oþe*r*[1] such þat sterid þe King to evel gouern*au*nce, aȝens his p*r*ofite & þe reaumes. also al þe co*mmun*alte of þe reame desired & asked þat þei shold be meved & done[2] awey, & in her stedes, wyse men & worþy þ*a*t were trewe, & welle assayed & p*r*oued, and of good gou*er*n*au*nce, shold be put in her stedes. ¶ So amonge all oþe*r*e, þe*r* was on among þe co*mmun*es þ*a*t was a wys knyȝt, & a trewe, & an eloquent man, whos name was Piers de la Mare; & þis same Piers was chosen to be speker for the co*mmun*es in þe pa*r*lement.[3] & for þis same[4] Piers told & publissed þe trewþe, & rehersid meny wronges aȝens þe forsaid Dame Alys, & oþe*r* certeyne pe*r*sones of þe Kingeȝ counceyl, as he was bode by þe co*mmun*es, & also trustyng mych forto be supported & maynteyned in þis mate*r* by help & fauour of þe Pryns, anon as þe Pryns was dede, at þe instaunce and [5]request of þe forsaid Dame Alys, þis Piers de La Mare was iugged to pe*r*petuel p*ri*soun in þe Castell of Notyngh*a*m, in þe whiche he was ij. ȝere. & þe vj. k*al*en*d* of Iuyll, lastyng þat same pa*r*lement, deid Prens Edwardes ferst sone, þat is forto sey, in[6] Trynite Sou*n*day; in þe worship of[7] whiche feest he was wont eu*er*y ȝere, wher þat eu*er*e he were in þe worlde, to make & hold þe moost sole*m*pnyte þat he myght. ¶ Whos name & fortune of kniȝthood, but yf it had bene of anoþe*r*[8] Ectour, al men, both Christen & heþen, while he leuyd & was in good poynt, wondred mych, & dred him wonder sore; whos body is worshipfully beryed at Crycherche of[9] Caunt*er*bury.

And in þis same ȝe*r*e þe man & þe Erles ten*au*ntes of Warwyk arisen maliciously aȝens þe Abbot & þe Covent of Euesham & her ten*au*ntes, & destroyeden fersly þe Abbot & þe toun, & wounded & bete her men, & slowen of hem meny one, & wenten to her man*er*s & places, & dede myche harme, & brekyn doun her p*ar*kes & her closes, & brente*n* & slowen her wild bestes, and chaced hem, brekyng her fisshepond hedis, & lete þe wat*er* of her pondes, stewes & ryuers, renne out; & token þe fissh, & bere it with hem, & deden hem al þe harme þ*a*t þey myȝte. ¶ In so ferforth, þat forsoþe þey had be distroyed pe*r*petuely, þat abbay,[10] wiþ all her membres &[11] app*ur*ten*au*nces, but yf þe King þe sonner had

[1] oþe*r* *om.* R. [2] put R. [3] in þe pa*r*lement *om.* T. [4] same *om.* R.
[5] *leaf* 197, *back.* [6] on R. [7] of þe R. [8] of anoþe*r* *om.* T.
[9] in T. [10] þat abbay *om.* R. [11] & *om.* T.

holpen hit & taken heed þerto. and þerfore þe King sent his lettres to þe Erle of Warwyk, chargyng hym, & comaundyng, þat he shulde stynt, redresse & amende the evel doers & brekers of his
4 pees. and so, by menys of lordes & oþere frendes of boþe sides pece[1] & good acorde & loue was made bytwene hem. ¶ And for þis hurlyng, as hit was seyd, þe King wold not be gouerned at þat tyme by his lordes þat þere were in þe parlement; [2]but he toke and
8 made his sone, þe Duk of Lancastre, his gouernour of þe reaume; the which stood so still gouernour til tyme þat he deide.

The same ȝere, anon after Candelmasse, or the parlement was done, the King axede a subsidie of the clergie and of þe lay fee,
12 and hit was graunted him, þat is forto seye, that he sholde haue of euery persone of the lay fee, bothe of men and womman þat passed xiiij. ȝer age, iiij d.—outake pore beggers that were knowen opynly for[3] nede, beggers,[4]—and þat he shulde haue of euery man of
16 holy chirche þat was beneficed or promoted, xij d., and of al oþere þat were nout promoted iiij d., outake þe iiij. orders of the Frers beggers.

¶ This same ȝer, after Myghellmase, Richard, Prinȝ Edwardeȝ
20 sone, was made Prins of Walys; to whon þe King also ȝaf[5] þe Duche of Cornewayl, wyth þe Erldom of Chestre. and aboute þis tyme, þe Cardinallis of Engelond, þe forþe day bifore Mary Maugdalyne day, after mete, sodeynly was smete & take[6] wiþ a
24 palsie, & loste his speche; and on Marye Mawgdalyne day he died.

Of the deth of Kinge Edwarde; and hov Sere John Mounsterworþ, knight, was drawe and honged for his fals tresoun.
28 **Capitulo CC^mo^. xxxix^o^.[7]**

Ryght anon after, in þe lij ȝere of his[8] regne, of King Edward, in þe begynnyng of October, Pope Gregory þe xj. brouȝt and remeved wiþ hem his court from Aveyon to Rome.
32 And þe xij. day of Aprill, John Munsterworþe, knight, at London was drawen, hanged, and þen byheded; and after, his body quartered, and sent to þe .iiij.[9] chef tounes of Engelond, and his heed sette oppon[10] London Brigge. ¶ For þis same Iohn was

[1] pece and T. and C. [2] *leaf* 198. [3] for TR. fro C.
[4] nedi pouere beggers T. nedy poer beggars R. [5] yaf also TR.
[6] was take and suiyte T. & take *om.* R. [7] CC^o^ T. [8] þe TR.
[9] to foure the T. iiij þe R. [10] on T.

ful vntrewe to þe [1] King and to the reaume, and ful coveytous and vnstable; for he toke ofte tymes grete su*m*mes of money of þe King and his counceyll for men of armes wages, that he sholde haue payed ham; and take hit into his owne vse. and he, dreding 4 at[2] the laste he shold he shent and acused, for þe same cause fled pryuily to the King of F*ra*unce, and was swore to hem, and bicome his man, and behight hym to bringe a[3] grete nave of Spayne in confusion, and distroyende of[4] Engelonde. but rightful 8 God, to whom no pryvite is vnknowe, suffrede hym ferst to be shent and spilt, or that he sholde so trecherously & falsly, his leige lord, the King of Engelonde, and his peple and his reaume—in the whiche ground the same Iohn was bore wickedly, thourgh 12 bataill, destroye, or bryng his cursed purpose aboute.

In the feste of Seynt Gregore þo[5] next sewynge, King Edward ȝaf to Richard of Burdeux, his eyr, that was Pryns Edwardes sone, att Wyndesore, the ordre of knyghthood, and made hym knyght. 16 the which Kyng Edward, whan he had regned lj.[6] ȝere and more, the xj k*alend* of Iuyn, he deide at Shene, and is beried worshipfully at Westmynster; on whos soule God haue mercy! Amen!

[1] *leaf* 198, *back.* [2] þat at TR. [3] him a T. [4] of TR. al C.
[5] þe T. [6] lij R.

APPENDIX B.

[THE CHARACTER OF EDWARD III.]

[*MS. Harley* 753, *fol.* 146 *ff.* (*collated with MS. Harley* 331 = *X*, *Lambeth* 491 = *Y*, *and Lambeth* 738 = *Z*).]

Of þe description[1] of Kyng Edward. Capº. CC. xxixº.[2]

THis[3] Kyng Edward was forsoþe of a passyng goodnesse, and ful gracious amonge aH þe worthymen of þe world; for he passyd
4 and shone by ve*r*tue & *gr*ace[4] yeven to hy*m* fro God, above aH his p*r*edecessours þ*a*t were noble men & worthy. And he was a wele hard-herted[5] man, for he dred neue*r* of none myshappes, ne harmes ne evyH fortune, þat myȝt falle a noble warryour, and a fortunable,[6]
8 bothe[7] on lond[8] and on þe see.[9] And in aH batayle & assembles, w*it*h a passyng glory and worshyp[10] he had eue*r*e þe victory.

And[11] he was meke and benygne, homely, sobre, & softe to aH man*er* men,[12] as wele to straungres as to his owne subiect*es*, And to
12 oþ*er* þ*a*t were vnder his gou*er*naunce.[13] He was devoute & holy, boþe to God & holy[14] chirch; ffor he was worshipped &[15] mayntened holy chirch and her mynystres w*it*h aH man*er* reue*r*enc*es*.[16] He was treteable & wele avysed in temp*er*aH & worldly ned*es*, wyse
16 in counseH, and discrete, soft, meke,[17] & good to speke w*it*h. In hys ded*es* & man*er*e, fuH gentiH & wele ytaught, havyng pite on hem[18] þat were in dissese; plentevous in yevyng almesse,[19] Besy[20] & corious in bildyng; And fuH lyghtly he bare & suffred
20 wrong*es* and harmes. And whan he was yeve to any occupac*i*on, he left aH oþ*er* þynges in[21] þe mene tyme, and tent[22] þerto; semly of body, & of mene stature; havyng alwey, to high & lowe, a good chere. And þ*er* sprang & shone so moch *gr*ace of hym [23]þat, what

[1] distruction MS and Z. [2] heading *om.* Z. [3] The Z.
[4] vertue of grace YZ.
[5] a wel and a hardy hertid Y. a well and an harty hartid Z.
[6] and so fortunable X. a fortunate Y. a ffortynant Z.
[7] for bothe Y. [8] on þe lond X. [9] on se Z. [10] glory and Joy Z.
[11] And *om.* Y. [12] maner off men Z. [13] his owne Gouernaunce Z.
[14] to holy Z. [15] worshepid halpe and Z. [16] of reuerence Z.
[17] and meke Z. [18] to hem XY. [19] benefytes Z. [20] and Besy Z.
[21] for Z. [22] tent *om.* Z. [23] *leaf* 146, *back.*

man*er* man had byholde his face, or had dremed of hy*m*, he hoped þat day þat aH þyng shold hap[1] to hym Ioyfuh and lykyng. And he gou*er*ned gloriously hys kyngdom into his age. And[2] he was large in yevyng, and wyse in spences. He was fulfilled with[3] aH 4 honeste of good man*er*s, & vertuous; vnder whom to lyve,[4] hit was as for to regne; wherfor his name[5] & his loos sprang so fer*e* þat it came into hethenesse and Barbarye, shewyng and tellyng his worthynesse & manhode in aH lond*es*; And þat in[6] no lond vnder 8 heven had be[7] brought forth so noble a kyng,[8] so gentiH & so blessyd, or myȝt reyse such anoþer whan he were dede.

Neu*er*þelesse,[9] lecchery & mevyng of hys flesh haunted hym in his age; wherefor þe rather, as it was to suppose,[10] for vnmesur- 12 able fulfillyng of hys lust, his lyff shorted þe sonner. And herof takeþ good hede, lyke as hys dedys byfore bereth wytnesse; for, as in hys bygynnyng aH þyng*es* were Ioyfuh and lykyng to hym & to aH þe[11] peple, And in hys myd age he passed aH men[12] in high 16 Ioye and[13] worshyp*e* and blessydnesse, Ryȝt so, whan he drow in-to Age, drawyng downward þurgh lecchorye and oþ*er*[14] synnes, litiH & litiH aH þo Ioyfuh and blyssed[15] þyng*es*, good fortune & p*ros*p*er*ite decresed and myshapped, And Infortunat þyng*es*, & vnp*ro*fytable 20 harmes, with many evele, bygan for to sprynge, and, þe more harme is, conteyned longe tyme after.

[1] ffall Z. [2] And *om.* Z. [3] of Z. [4] þe lyffe Z. [5] fame YZ.
[6] in *om.* YZ. [7] be *om.* XYZ. [8] knyȝt Z.
[9] Neuere the latter Y. Neuyr þe latter Z.
[10] suppose for XYZ. [11] þe *om.* Z. [12] pepill Z. [13] and *om.* YZ.
[14] affter Z. [15] blisfull X.

[C]

[FROM THE CORONATION OF RICHARD II (A.D. 1377) TO THE CAPTURE OF ROUEN (A.D. 1419).]

[*Cambridge University Library MS. Kk.* 1. 12.]

[1]And aftir King Edwarde the thrid, þat was bore at Wyndesore, Regned Richard of Burdeux, that was Prynce Edwardeȝ sone of Walis; which Prince Edwarde was þe sone of[2] King Edwarde þe iij^de^.[3] Cap*itulu*m ccxxxix.

And aftir the gode King, King Edwarde the iij^de^, þat was born at Wyndesore, Regned Richarde þe ij, þat was þe gode Prince Edwardeȝ sone of[4] Walis; which King Richard was born yn þe cite of Burdeux yn Gasquoyn, and was crouned at Westm*inster* yn þe xj yere of his age. ¶ And yn ij[5] yere of his regne fil þe[6] debate þat was betuene þe Lorde Latimer and Syr Raaff Ferers, kniȝt,[7] þat were ayens Hawle & Schakele, squiers, for the prysoner þat was take yn the botayle of Spayngne [8]by þese ij squyers, þe[9] which þe sayde[10] Lorde Latym*er* and S*er* Raaff Ferrers wolde haue had; þe which prysoner was þe Erle of Deene, þat þay toke yn þe batayle of Spayngne.[8] ¶ Wherfore þese ij lordeȝ comyn yn-to Westm*inster* churche,[11] and founde þis on Squier heryng his[12] messe besyde Seint Edwardeȝ schryne; and there þei slow hym þat me callyd Hawle; and Schackele was arestid and put yn-to þe Tour of London; and þ*er*e he was long tyme, for[13] he wolde not delyu*er* þe Erle of Dene, his p*r*eson*er*, vnto þeȝe ij lordeȝ by S*er* Aleyn Buxhill, Constable of the tour, and be S*er* Raaff Ferrers, one of his adu*er*saryes, tyll þe tyme þat[14] þe king grawnted hym grace.

¶ In the iij^de^ yere of King Richarde come þe[15] galies of Fraunce[16] yn-to Engelonde, vnto dyuers porteȝ, and brent, & Robbyd, and slow moch pepyll of Engelond, þat is to sey,[17] Wynchilse, Rie, Hastynge,[18] Portesmouth, Hampton, Stormore, &[19] Grauysende, and dede moche harm, and wente hom ayen.

[1] *leaf* 110, *back*. [2] of þe T. [3] þe iij^de^ *om*. T. [4] Prynce of T.
[5] þe seconde R. [6] regne for TR. [7] the knyght T.
[8]–[8] *om*. T. [9] and þe R. [10] sayde *om*. R.
[11] into the Chirche of Westmynstre TR. [12] his *om*. T. [13] and T
[14] þe tyme þat *om*. TR. [15] þe *om*. T.
[16] yeer off his Regne þe galeys of ff*r*aunce come R. [17] seie at T.
[18] hastyng and T. [19] and *om*. T.

[*The Commons' Revolt led by Jack Straw and Wat Tyler.*]

And yn þis same yere was a p*ar*lement holden at Westm*inster*; and at þ*at* p*ar*lement was ordeyned þ*at* eu*er*y man, woman & childe, þat were[1] at þe age of xiiij yere & aboue, þorȝout all þe Reme, pore folke & Rich,[2] schulde pay to þe talage iiij d; wherfore come aftirwarde grete myschiff & moche deseȝe to alle[3] co*mmuni*alte of þe Reme. ¶ And yn þe iiij yere of þe regne of King Richarde þe comynes loked vp, &[4] arysyn vp[5] yn dyuers parteȝ of þe Reme, and dede moche harm, þe which þei callid[6] "hurlyng tyme." And þei of Kent & of Essex madyn hem ij cheveteyneȝ to rewle & gouerne þe compayne of Kent & of Essex: þat one[7] me[8] callid Jacke Strawe, and þat o*þer*, Watte Tyler; and þai comen and assembled ham vpon þe Blake-Heth yn Kent. And apon the[9] Corpus Christi day and after, þei comen doune yn-to Southwerk, and brekyn vp þe prison hous, þat is to wite, þe Kingis Bench, and þe[10] Marchalsy, & delyverde out alle þe p*ri*soners. And so þe same day þei comen yn-to London; a*nd* þ*er*e thay robbyd þe peple, and slowyn alle[11] alyens þat þay myȝt fynde yn þe cyte and aboute þe cite, and despoiled alle her godeȝ, and made havoke. ¶ And on the Fridai [12]next aftir, þat was on þe morowe, thei comyn vn[13]to þe Tour of London; and the king beyng þ*er*e-yn, þei sette out of þe Tour þe Archebishop of Caunt*ur*bury, Maistir Symond[14] Sudbery, and S*er* Robert Haleȝ, Pryour[15] of Saint Johnes,[16] and a Whit Frere þat was confessour vn to King Richarde, and brouȝt ham vnto þe Tour Hill; and þ*er*e þay smytyn of her hedys, and comyn ayen to London, & slowyn mo peple of men of lawe, and o*þer* worthi men yn dyuers p*ar*teyeȝ of þe cite. And þanne went þai[17] to the Dukeȝ place of Lancastre, beyonde Saint Mary Stronde, þat was callyd Savoy.[18] ¶ And þ*er*e þei deuoured & destroyed al þe godeȝ þ*at* þay myȝt fynde,[19] and bare ham away, and brent vp þe place. And þanne aftir þey went to Seint Johnes without Smythffelde, and destroyed þe godes,[20] & brent vp þat hous, and went to Westm*inster*,- and so to Sent Martyneȝ þe Graunt, and made hem go[21] out of

Nota Jacke Staw

[1] weren T. were R. *om.* Kk. [2] and o*þer* T.
[3] all þe T. al þe R. [4] loked vp & *om.* TR.
[5] vp *om.* R. [6] callid þe TR. [7] one *om.* R. [8] þat men T.
[9] Kent on TR. [10] þe *om.* T. [11] alle þe TR.
[12] *leaf* 111. [13] vn *om.* T. [14] s*ir* Edmunde TR.
[15] hospitaler p*ri*oure and maistir T. [16] Iohnes house T.
[17] þei wenten T. þey wente R. [18] þe Savey T. [19] fynde þere R.
[20] goodis there T. [21] to go TR.

þe sayntwarye, alle[1] þat were þe*re*[2] ynne for eny man*er* of[3] gryth.[4]

¶ And þanne come vnto þe Temple, and to alle oþ*er* ynneȝ of men
4 of lawe, & dispoyled ham and rebbed ham of[5] her godeȝ, and also taare hir bokis of law; and þai[6] come to London, and brake vp the pryson of Newgate, & droff out alle þe prisoners, felons, & oþir of[7] bothe countres, and alle þe peple þat was with-ynne ham, &
8 destroyed alle þe bokis of bothe countres; and þus þay contynued forth, both Saturday and Sonday,[8] vnto[9] þe Monday next folowyng, yn alle hir[10] malice & wickydnesse. And þanne,[11] on the Monday, King Richard, with his lordeȝ þat were w*ith* hym þat tyme, and[12]
12 with þe Meire of London, William Walworth, þe[13] aldermen & þe co*m*myneȝ of þe cite, come[14] yn[15] to Southwerk[16] to here &[17] know þe entenc*i*on of þese rebellis and misgou*er*ned pepil.[18] ¶ And þis Iak Straw þanne made an oyes in þe felde, þat alle þe pepyl of
16 accorde schulde come nere, & here his clamour and[19] his crye and his will, and þe lordeȝ, and þe Mayre and þe aldermen, with þe co*mmun*ialte, hauyng indignac*i*on of his Covetise and Falsnesse, and his foule p*re*sompcion; and anon William Walworth, þat tyme
20 beyng Mayre, drew out his knyff, and slow Iack Straw, and ano*n* ryȝt þ*ere* dede smyȝt of his hed, and sette it vp apon[20] a spere-schafte; and so it was bore þrouȝ London, & set on high vp on London Brygge. ¶ And[21] anon alle þe[22] rysers and mysgouernyd
24 men were voyded and[23] vanysched, as hit hadde not byn þay. ¶ And[24] þe king, of his grete godenesse, and by prayer of his lordeȝ, made þ*ere* vj knyȝtis of gode & worthi men of þe cite of London, þat is,[25] William Walworth—þat tyme was[26] Mayre and slow Iack
28 Straw,—& ij^de^[27] was Nicholas Brembre, þe[28] iij was[29] John Philypot, the[28] iiij was[30] Nicholas Twyfford, þe[28] fyffþe was[29] Robert Lawndeȝ, þe[28] vj, Robert Gayton. ¶ And þanne þe king, with his lordeȝ and his[31] knyȝt*es*, retourned ayen vnto the Tour of London;
32 and þ*ere* he restid hym tylle his[32] peple were bettir cecyd, & seet yn

[1] alle *om.* R. [2] with T. þ*ere* *om.* R. [3] of *om.* R. [4] gryth *om.* T.
[5] of TR. or Kk. [6] þanne þai T. þanne þey R. [7] and of TR.
[8] vnto þe Sonday T. [9] and vnto T. [10] her maner of T.
[11] þanne *om.* T. [12] and *om.* T. [13] þat was þ*at* tyme come with þe TR.
[14] and come T. [15] yn *om.* T. [16] Smythfelde R. [17] and to T.
[18] peple þat so reuyd and robbid T.
[19] and here his clamouris and T. and here his clamour and R. *om.* Kk.
[20] vpon T. it vpon R. [21] And *om.* T. [22] þese T. þiȝe R.
[23] and clene T. & clene R. [24] And thanne T. and þanne R.
[25] is to saie T. is to say R. [26] þat was þat tyme T. [27] þe ij^e T.
[28] and þe T. [29] was *om.* TR. [30] was *om.* T. [31] his *om.* R. [32] this T.

rest and peeȝ. ¶ And þanne, by processe of tyme, as þay myȝt gete and take þeȝe [1]Rebellis & rysers, they hanged ham vp on[2] the next galous yn eu*er*y lordesschippe throuȝ þe[3] Reme of Engelond,[4] be xl & be xxx, be[5] x. & be xij., eu*er* as þay myghte be goton & take[6] 4 yn eny p*ar*teys.

¶ And yn þe v. yere of King Richardeȝ Regne was þe grete Erthe quake; and þat[7] was do[8] gen*er*ally ovir[9] alle þe worlde,—the Wedynesday afftir Whitsonday, yn the yere after[10] incarnac*i*on 8 of our Lorde Ih*e*su crist, m[l] ccc. xx iiij xj,[11] where-of alle þe peple were sore agast, and drad[12] long tyme aftir, for þe grete[13] vengaunce and grete drede þat our Lorde God schewed and dede.

¶ In[14] þe vj ȝere of his regne,[15] S*er* Henri Spens*er*, Bischop of 12 Northwych, went w*ith* a croyserey ou*er* þe see yn-to þe contre of Flawndreȝ; & þ*er*e he[16] gate þe towne of Grauenyng, &[17] þe toun of Oldenburgh,[18] Dunkirk, and Newport; and þ*er*e þai ladde & fryȝt .Lj. schyppeȝ w*ith* peleage[19] for to haue come yn to Engelonde 16 w*ith* alle þese schippes and goodis,[20] and þe Bischop of Northwich and his counsel lette brenne þose schippeȝ, with al þe peleage, yn þe same havynne, all yn-to hard asches.

¶ And at Dunkirk was don a grete batayle betuene þe Flemyngeȝ 20 and þe Englisch men; and[21] at þat batayle was slayn a gret multitude of þese Flemyngeȝ, and a passyng noumbre. ¶ And þanne went þe bischop with his retynu vn-to Ipreȝ, and besegid it a long tyme; but it myȝt not be gote, and so he lefte þat sege, and come 24 ayen yn-to Engelond, for our Englischmen were foule destroyed, and mony deied on þe Flyx.

[*Anne of Bohemia comes to wed Richard II.*]

¶ And yn þis same ȝere come Quene Anne yn-to Engelond, for to be spoused vnto King Richard; and hir fadir was Emp*er*our 28 of Almayne, and King of Beeme. And with hir came þe Duk of Tassy and hir vncle, and mony o*þer* worthi lordeȝ & kniȝt*es*[22] of hir cuntre of Beeme, and of o*þer* Duch tungeȝ, to do hir reuerence

[1] *leaf* 111, *back*. [2] vpon T. [3] out þe TR. [4] of Engelond *om*. T.
[5] and bi T. [6] be take and gete T. [7] hit T. [8] do *om*. T.
[9] ou*er* T. [10] aft*er* the T. after þe R. [11] and xj T. [12] a dred T.
[13] girte *om*. TR. [14] And in TR.
[15] of þe reigne of kyng Richard T. of þe regne of king Richarde R.
[16] and þei T. þey R. [17] & *om*. [18] Broburgh T.
[19] pilage T. peseage Kk.
[20] with these shippis and goodis T. with þeȝe shippes & godis R. *om*. Kk.
[21] and *om*. T. [22] knyghtis and lordis T.

and worschip. ¶ And S*er* Symond Beuyrley, a worthi Knyȝt of þe Gartyr,[1] & oþe*r* knyȝtis and squyers þat were þe Kingiȝ embassetoures, brouȝt hir yn-to Engelond, and so ferthe to London.
4 ¶ And þe pe[p]le of þe cite, þat is to saye, þe Mayre & þe Aldermen and alle þe[2] comyneȝ, rydyn ayens hir to welcome hir; and eue*r*y man yn gode aray, and eue*r*y craft with his Mynstralcye, yn þe best mane*r*, mette with hir on þe Blak-Heth yn Kent, & so
8 brouȝt hir to[3] London þrouȝ þe cite, and so forth yn to[4] Westemystre, vn-to þe kingeȝ palice; and þe*r*e sche was spousede vnto King Richard, welle and worthily, yn þe Abbey of Westmynstre; and þe*r*e sche was crouned Quene of Engelond; and alle hir frendis
12 þat comyn w*ith* hir hadde gret yeftis, and hadde grete chere, and were wel refresched[5] as long tyme as þai abyden here.

¶ And yn þis same yere was a batayle do with-ynne þe kingeȝ Palys at Westmynstre, for certeyne poyntis of treson, betuene S*er*
16 Iohn of Ansley, knyȝt, defendaunt, and Karton, Squyere, þe appellaunt; but þis S*er* Iohn of Ansley ouyr-come þis Carton, & made hym [6]to yolde hym withynne þe listis, and anon þis Craton (*sic*) was[7] dispoyled of his harneȝ and drawe out of þe lystis,
20 and so forth to[8] Tyborne; and þe*r*e he was hangyd for his falsnesse.

¶ And yn[9] the viij yere of his Regne[10] S*er* Edmu*n*de of Langele, Erle of Cawmebrygge, þe kingeȝ vncle, wente vnto[11] Portingale with a Fayre manye of men of armeȝ and archers, yn helpyng & streyng-
24 thyng[12] of þe King of Portyngale ayens þe King of Spayngne and his power. and þe*r*e þe King of Portyngale hadde þe victory of his Enymyeȝ, þrouȝ help and comfort of our Englysch men. And whanne þat iornay was y[13]do, The Erle of Cawmbrige com hom
28 ayen with his peple yn-to Engelond yn haste; blessid be Gode and his gracious yeft! Amen!

¶ And þis same yere, Kinge Richarde hylde his Cristismesse yn þe Mane*r* of Esth*a*m (*sic*). And þe same tyme, þe King of Ermonye
32 fledde out of his owne londe, and come yn-to Engelond, for to haue socour and help of our King ayens his enymyeȝ, þat hadde dreve hym of[14] his Reme; and so he was brouȝt vn-to[15] þe King to Eltham, þe*r*e as þe King hylde his realle feest of Cristismasse; and

[1] MS. gartyd. [2] þe *om.* T. [3] into T. [4] vnto T.
[5] and weren wele cherid and refresshid T. & well were chered & refreshed R.
[6] *leaf* 112. [7] was *om.* T. [8] to þe T. [9] yn *om.* T.
[10] þe reigne of kyng Richard T. [11] into T.
[12] in strengthyng and helpyng T. in strengthinge & helpi*n*ge R.
[13] y *om.* TR. [14] out of T. [15] to R.

þere oure King welcomed hym, and dede hym reuerence & worschip, and co*m*mawnded alle his[1] lordeȝ to make hym alle þe chere þat þay cowthe. and þanne he besouȝt the King[2] of grace and help, and of his co*m*fort yn his nede, and þ*a*t he myȝt be broȝt 4 ayen yn[3]-to his owne kingedom and londe, for þe Turkeȝ hadde deuoured & destroyed moch parte of his londe; and for drede he fledde, & come hider for socoure and helpe. ¶ And than[4] þe King, hauyng compassion of his gret myschiffe and greuos deseȝe, 8 anon[5] he toke his Counsel, and axed what was best to do. and þai answered and sayde, 'yef it likyd hym to yeue hym eny gode, it were welle ydo: and as towchyng his peple, to Trauayle so fer yn-to out-londeȝ, it were a grete ieparde'; and so þe King yaf hym golde 12 and seluyr, and many richeȝ[6] and iewellis, and betauȝt hym to God; and so he passed ayen out of Engelond.

¶ And yn þis same yere King Richarde, w*ith* a ryall power, went yn-to Scotland for to war ayen[7] þe Scottis, for hir Falsnesse and 16 destrocc*i*on þat þay[8] hadde do ayens[9] þe[10] English men yn þe Marchis. And þe[11] Scottis come doun[12] for to trete[13] with hym[14] & with his lordeȝ for trewes, as for certeyn yeres; and so oure Kyng and his Counsel graunted hem trewes certyn yeres[15] v*n*to 20 her axyng, and our King turned hym hom ayen yn-to Engelonde. ¶ And whanne he was come vnto[16] Yorke, þ*er*e he aboode and restyd hym. and[17] þ*er*e S*er* John Helond, þe Erle of Kentis broþ*er*, slow þe Erlis sone of Staffarde and his heyre with a daggar 24 yn þe cite of Yorke, wherfor the King was sore amoued and grevid, & remevyd fro þenneȝ and come to London; and þe Meire and þe Aldermen and þe co*m*myns, with alle þe solempnite þ*a*t þay[18] [19]myghte do,[20] rydyn ayens þe King, and brouȝt hym ryally throuȝ 28 the cite, & so forth vnto Westmynstre vnto his owne Palis.

¶ And yn þe ix yere of his regne[21] he hadde[22] a p*ar*lement at Westm*inster*, & þ*er*e he made ij dukes, and a Markques & v. erleȝ:

[1] þe T. [2] the king *om.* T. [3] yn *om.* TR. [4] than *om.* T.
[5] and *om.* TR. and anon Kk. [6] riche yiftis T. rich ȝiftis R.
[7] vpon R. [8] þe Scottis T. [9] to T. [10] do vnto R.
[11] þanne þe T. [12] downe vnto þe kyng T.
[13] entrete T. [14] with him TR. hym Kk.
[15] yeeris, and so oure kyng and his counceile grauntid hem trewes certeyne yeris T. yeris and so þe king & his counsel *gra*unted ham trewis certayn yeres R. *om.* Kk.
[16] to T. [17] and *om.* TR. [18] þay *om.* [19] *leaf* 112, *back.*
[20] þ*at* myghte be do R.
[21] of kyng Richardis reigne T. yeer of king Richardis Regne he held R.
[22] helde T.

þe first þat was mad Duk, was þe Kinge3 vncle, S*er* Edmu*n*de[1] of Langeley and[2] Erle of Caumbrigge; and hym he[3] made[4] Duk of Yorke; and his oþ*er* vncle, S*er* Thom*a*s of Wodestoke, þat was Erle
4 of Bokingh*a*m, he made Duke of Gloucestre, and S*er* Lover, þat was Erle of Oxynforde, he[5] made Marques of Denelyn; and Henry of Bolyngbroke, þe Duke3 son of Lancastre, he[6] made Erle of Derby; and S*er* Edwarde, þe Dukes sone of York, he[6] made Erle of Ruth-
8 lond; S*er* John Holande, þat was þe Erle of Kentis brother, he[6] made Erle of Huntyngton; S*er* Thomas Mombraye, Erle of Notyngh*a*m, & Erle Marchall of Engelond; and Ser[7] Michell of Pole, kny3t, he[6] made Erle of Suffolke and Chaunceler of Engelond.

12 ¶ And the Erle of the[8] March, at þat same[9] p*ar*lement holdon at Westemynstre, yn[10] playne parlement among al þe Lorde3 and Comyns, was proclaymed Erle of the March, and heyre[11] parant vnto[12] þe croune of Engelonde aftir King Richarde. ¶ The which
16 Erle of the[13] Marche went ouyr[14] see yn-to Irelond vnto his lorde-schippe3 and londe3, for the Erle of[15] Marche is Erle of Vlcestre yn Irelonde, and[16] by ry3t lyne and heritage. and at[17] a[18] Castill of his he lay þat tyme; and þ*er*e come apon[19] hym a grete m*u*ltitude yn
20 buschmentis of wilde Iryschmen, hym for to take and distroye, and he come out ffersly of his Castell with his peple, and manly ffau3t w*ith* ham; and þ*er*e he was take, and hew al to pecis, and þ*er*e he[20] deied; on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen!

24 ¶ And yn the .x. yere of King Richarde3 regne, þe Erle of Arundell went to[21] þe see with a grete Naueye of schippe3, enarmed with men of arme3 and gode archers. And as[22] þai come yn to þe brode see, þei mette with þe hole flytte þat come lade with wyne[23]
28 from Rochell; and[24] the wyne3 were Enymye3 godes; and þ*er*on oure[25] Naueye sette apoin[26] ham, and toke ham alle, and brou3t hym yn to[27] diuers porti3 and hauons of[28] Engelond, & su*m* to London: and þere þe my3te haue hedde a ton of Rochel wyne of þe beste for
32 xx s. of sterlynge*s*; and so we hadde gret chep of wyne þrou3-out þe Reme at þat tyme, þankyd be God Almy3ty!

[1] Symonde T. [2] and *om.* TR. [3] he *om.* R.
[4] and he was made T. [5] him T. [6] him he T. [7] s*ir* TR. for Kk.
[8] the *om.* TR. [9] same tyme of þe T. [10] *in* þe T. [11] heir of R.
[12] to TR. [13] the *om.* TR. [14] ou*er* þe TR. [15] of the T.
[16] and *om.* R. [17] there at T. þere at R. [18] þe R. [19] vpon TR.
[20] he *om.* T. [21] vnto TR. [22] And as T. and Kk.
[23] comen wyne lade T. with wyne *om.* R. [24] and *om.* T.
[25] and þere oure T. þere our R. and þ*er*on Kk. [26] vpon TR.
[27] vnto R. [28] into T.

How þe .v. lordeȝ arysen at Ratcot brydge, ye schul here.[1] Ca*pitulu*m ccxl.[2]

And yn þe a.xj yere of King Richardeȝ regne,[3] þe .v. lordeȝ reson at Ratcote brygge, yn[4] destroccyon of the[5] Rebell*is* þat weryn þat tyme yn alle this[6] Reme. ¶ The first of the .v. lordeȝ was S*er* Thom*as* of Wodestoke, þe Kingis vncle, and Duk of Gloucestre; þe[7] ij was S*er* Richarde, Erle of Arundell; þe[8] iij was S*er* Richard, Erle of Warwic; þe iiij was S*er* Harri[9] Bolyngbroke, Erle of Derby, and þe .v. was S*er* Thom*as* Mouubray, Erle of Notygham. ¶ And þeȝe .v. lordeȝ sawe þe myschif, and mysgou*er*naunce, and þe Falsnesse of the Kingeȝ counsell; wherfor þai þat were of þe Kingeȝ kounsel chef,[10] ffleddyn out of þis londe ou*er* þe see, þat is to say, S*er* Alisaunder Neuyle, Archebischop[11] of York, S*er* Robert le Veere, [12]Marquis of Develyn and Erle of Oxynforde; S*er*[13] Michel de la Pole, Erle of Suffolke and Chaunceler of Engelond. and þese iij. lordeȝ went ouyr see,[14] and cam nevir ayen, for there þay deied. And þan[15] þeȝe .v. lordeȝ forsaide[16] maden[17] a p*ar*lem*en*t at Westmystre, and þ*er*e thay tokyn S*er* Robert Tresilian, þe Iustiȝe, and S*er* Nicholl Bre*m*bre, knyȝt an[18] citeȝein of London, and S*er* Iohn Salesbury, knyȝt of the Kingis housholde, & Vske, sergeaunt of armeȝ; and mony moo of o*þer* peple were take and Iuged vnto[19] deth by þe counsel of þese .v. lordeȝ yn hir p*ar*lement at West-m*inster*, for treson þat þai put apon ham, to be draw fro þe[20] Tour of London þrouȝ þe cite, and so forth to Tyburne; and þere to be hangyd, and þ*er*e her þrotis to be kut; and þus þei were s*er*ued, and deiden.

And aftir þat, yn þis same p*ar*lement, was[21] S*er* Symond of[22] Beverlay, þat was a Knyȝt of þe Garter, and S*er* John Beauchamp, knyȝt, þat was Steward of the Kingis housholde, and S*er* Iameȝ Berners, were for-Iuged vn-to[23] deth; and[24] þay wer ladd on fote vn-to[25] þe Toure Hille; and þ*er*e were her hedis smytyn of, and mony other mo, be þeȝe .v. lordeȝ.

[1] ye schul here *om.* TR. [2] CC° T. CCxlj R.
[3] in the reigne of kyng Richard þe xj^e yeer T. þe Regne of king Richarde þe xj yeer R. [4] in þe T. [5] the *om.* TR. [6] þe TR.
[7] and þe T. [8] And þe T. [9] henri of R.
[10] weren that tyme cheef of þe kyngis counceile T. were *þat* tyme chief of þe kinges counseil R. [11] the Erchebisshop T. [12] *leaf* 113.
[13] and s*ir* T. [14] þe see TR. [15] þan *om.* T. [16] forseide v. lordis T.
[17] aboue seide maden T. [18] and T. & R. [19] vnto þe T.
[20] þe T. þo Kk. [21] at Westmynstre was T. [22] of *om.* T.
[23] vnto the T. [24] and þan*ne* T. & þanne R. [25] to TR.

[*Jousts in Smithfield*, A.D. 1388.]

¶ In þis[1] forsaide p*ar*lement, and in þe xij ȝere of King Richardeȝ regne, he let crye and ordeyne[2] generalle Iustiȝe, þat is called a turnement, of lordeȝ, knyȝtis and skquiers. ¶ And þese
4 Iustes & turnement were holden at London in Smithfelde, for alle maner of strayngers, of what londe &[3] cunctre þei[4] were, and[5] þidir þei were riȝt welcome; and to hem and to alle o*þer* was holden opon housholde and grete ffestis; and also grete yftis were
8 yeue to alle maner of straungers. And þay[6] of the king*es* syde were[7] alle of on[8] sute: her cotis, her armyour, scheldeȝ, & her[9] hors &[10] trapure, alle[11] was white hertis, with crowneȝ about her nekkis, and cheyneȝ of golde hangyng þere vp-on, and þe croune
12 hangyng lowe before þe hertis body; þe which hert was þe kingeȝ lyveray þat he yaf to lordeȝ & ladieȝ, knyȝtis and skquiers, for to know his housholde from o*þer* peple. ¶ And at þis first comyng to her Iustes, xxiiij ladieȝ ladde þese xxiiij lordeȝ of þe Garther with
16 cheynys of goolde, and alle yn þe same sute of hertis as is afore sayde, from þe Tour on hors bak þrouȝ the cite of London yn-to Smythfelde, þ*er*e þe Iustes schulde be do.[12] And þis fest and Iustes was holde general, and[13] to alle þo þ*at* wolde come, of what land or
20 nacion þ*at* euyr he[14] were; and þis[15] was holde duryng xxiiij dayeȝ, of þe kingeȝ owne cost; and þese xxiiij lordeȝ to answere to[16] alle man*er* of[17] pepil þat wolde come þidir. And þedir come þe Erle of seint Poule of Fraunce, and mony o*þer* worthi knyȝt*es* with
24 hym of diuers p*ar*teys, fful welle arayed.[18] And out of Holand & Henaude come þe Lorde Ostrenaunde, þ*at* was þe Dukeȝ sone of Holande, & mony o*þer* worthi knyȝt*es* with hym, bothe[19] of Holand & Henaude[20] fulle welle arayede. And whenne þese feste and
28 Iustes was do and[21] endid, þe King þanked þese st[r]ayngers and yaf ham mony grete yeftis; and þanne þei token hir leue of þe King & of o*þer* lordeȝ and ladyeȝ, and went hom ayen yn-to her owne cuntre, with grete loue & moche þanke.
32 ¶ And yn þe xiij yere [22]of King Richardeȝ regne, þ*er* was a

[1] this same T. þis same R. [2] ordeyne a T. [3] or TR.
[4] what so eu*er* þei T. [5] of & T. off and R. [6] þay *om.* TR.
[7] þey were R. [8] on *om.* T. o R. [9] & her *om.* TR. [10] & *om.* TR.
[11] and alle T. & all R. [12] holde T. [13] and *om.* T.
[14] thei T. þei R. [15] þis *om.* T. [16] to *om.* TR. [17] of *om.* TR.
[18] MS. Kk. wrongly inserts here ¶ And þeȝ Fest & Iustes was endid, þe king thankyd þese. And þes ffest & . . . þese *om.* TR.
[19] bothe *om.* T. [20] henaude *om.* T [21] do and *om.* TR.
[22] *leaf* 113, *back.*

batayle y[1]do yn the Kingis palis at Westmynstre, betwene a skquyer of Nauerne þat was w*ith* þe king, and anoþ*er* skquier þat me callid John Walsch, of[2] poyntis of treson þat þis Nauerner put vp-on þis Walsch; but þis Nauerner was ou*er*come, and yelde hym craunt to his adu*er*sarye, and anon he was dispoyled of his armyo*ur*, and draw out of þe palis vnto Tyburne, and þ*er*e he was hangyd for his ffalsnesse.

¶ And þe xiiij yere of þe regne of King Richard, S*er* John of Gaunt, Duk of Lancastre, went ouyr se[3] yn-to Spayne,—for to chalenge his ryȝt, þat he hadde be his wifeȝ tytill, vnto þe croune of Spayngne,—with a gret ost of pepil, of men of armeȝ and archers. And he[4] had[5] with hym þe Duchesse, his wyff, and his iij douȝtreȝ, yn-to[6] Sp[a]yne, and þere[7] þay weryn a grete while. ¶ And at þe[8] last, þe King of Spayne began to trete with þe Duke of Lancastre, and þay were accorded to-gadir þrouȝ hir boþe counsel, yn þis maner: þat þe King of Spayne schulde wedde þe Dukeȝ douȝt*er* of[9] Lancastre, þat was þe[10] ryȝt-heire to Spayne, and[11] schulde yeue to[12] þe Duk of Lancastre golde and seluyr, þat was cast yn-to grete weggeȝ, and mony oþir iewellis, as mony as viij Charietis myȝt carye. ¶ And eu*er*y yere aftir, dury*ng* þe lyff of þe Duke of Lancastre and of the[13] Duchesse his wyff, .x. Mt Marke of golde, þe which golde auenture and[14] chargeȝ, þay of Spayne schulde aue*n*ture and bryng yerley to[15] Baione to þe Dukes assygneȝ, be surete made. ¶ Also þe Duk of Lancastre maried anoþ*er* of his douȝtres vnto þe King of Portingale þe same tyme. And whanne he hadde do þis,[16] he come hom ayen yn-to Engelond, and þe gode lady his wyff also; but mony a worthi man yn þat viage deid vpon þe Flix.[17]

¶ And yn þe xv yere of King Richardeȝ regne, he hilde his Cristismasse yn þe Man*er* of Wodestoke; and there þe Erle of Penbroke, a yong lorde, &[18] tendir of age, wolde lerne to Iuste with a kniȝt me[19] callid S*er* Iohn Saint-Iohn, & redyn to gadir yn þe park of Wodestoke; and þ*er*e þis worthi Erle of Pembroke was slayn w*ith* þat oþ*er* knight*es* spere, as he cast hit fro hym whanne

[1] y *om.* TR. [2] for T. [3] þe see T. [4] he *om.* T. [5] ladde R.
[6] ou*er* þe see with him into T.
[7] and there T. and þere R. and Kk. [8] þe *om.* T.
[9] of TR. *om.* Kk. [10] þe *om.* R. [11] and þe kyng of Spayne T.
[12] vnto TR. [13] his T. [14] and *om.* T. [15] vnto R.
[16] þus T. [17] viage vpon þe flixe died T. [18] and a T.
[19] þat men T. þ*at* me R.

he[1] had cowped; and þus þis gode Erle made þere his ende; for whose dethe[2] þe King and the Quene made moche sorow.[3]

¶ And yn þe xvj yere of Kyng Richard his regne,[4] Iohn Hende
4 beyng þat tyme Maire of London, and Iohn Walworth & Henry Vannere beyng scherreffes of London, þat[5] tyme a bakers man bare a basket of horsbred yn to Flet-strete, toward an ostrye hous; and þere come a yemon of þe Bischoppis of Salysbury, þat was callyd
8 Romayn, and he tok an horsloff out of þe basket of þe baker[6]; and he askyd hym 'whi he dede so.' And þis Romayn turned ayen, and brak þe bakers hedde; and neyboureȝ come out, and wolde haue restid þis Romayne; and he brak from ham and fledde yn-to þe
12 lordeȝ place. and þe counstablis wolde haue hadde hym out; but þe Bischoppeȝ men schitte þe ȝatis fast,[7] and kept þe place þat no man myȝte entre. And þanne moch more pepil gadryd þedir, & saide þat 'þai wolde haue hym out, or[8] ellis þei wolde brenne vp þe place,
16 and alle [9]that were with-ynne.' ¶ And þanne come þe Maire and[10] Schereffeȝ, with oþir myche pepill, and cecid þe malice of þe comyneȝ, and made euery man go[11] hom to his[12] hous, and kepe þe peeȝ. ¶ Thanne[13] þeȝ Romaynes lorde, þe Bischop of Salusbery, Ser
20 Iohn Waltam (þat was þat tyme treserer of Engelond) went to Ser Thomas Arundel,[14] Archebischop of York, and also Chaun[ce]ler of Engelonde, and to hym made his complaynt[15] vpon þe peple of þe cite of London. ¶ And þanne þeȝe ij Bischopeȝ, of grete malice
24 and vengeaunce, comyn vnto[16] the King to Wyndesore, and made a grete complaynte vpon the Maire and the Schereffes; and anon aftirward alle þe cite[17] was before þe King and his consel, and þai cast vn-to[18] ham a greuous herte, and wondir grete malice. ¶ And
28 anon sodenly þe King sent for þe Maire of London & for þe ij scherreffeȝ; and þai cam to[19] hym to þe Castell of Wyndesore. And þe King rebukyd þe Maire and þe scherreves fulle foule, for þe offens þat þai hadde do ayens hym & his officers, yn his chaumbir
32 of[20] London. ¶ Wherfore he deposid & put out the Mayre of

[1] þei TR. [2] eende and *þer*fore T. [3] sorow for his deeth T.
[4] of kyng Richardis reigne T. yeer of king Richardis regne R. his regne Kk.
[5] þe same TR. [6] þe bakers basket T.
[7] fast *om.* T. shette faste þe yatis R. [8] and R. [9] *leaf* 114.
[10] and þe TR. [11] to gone T. [12] her T. [13] And thanne T.
[14] of Arundell T.
[15] and þere þe bisshop made his compleynt vnto þe chaunceler T. an þere made his complaynt to him R.
[16] to T. [17] anoon all þe Citee aftirward T. [18] to T.
[19] vnto T. [20] at TR.

London[1] and þe ij[2] Scherreveȝ; and þis was don xiiij[3] dayeȝ afore þe Fest of saint Iohn the Baptist. ¶ And þanne þe King callyd to hym a kniȝt þat me called S*er* Edward Valyngrigge,[4] and made hym warden and gou*er*noure of þe cite, & Chaumbyr of 4 London, and ouyr alle his pepil þ*er*eynne; and so he kept þat office but iiij wokis, because he was so tendir and gentill vn-to þe ceteȝens of London; wherfore þe King deposyd hym, and made S*er* Bawdewyn Radyngton, knyȝt, þat was Countroller of þe Kingis Hous- 8 holde, wardeyne and gou*er*noure of his chaumbyr, and of his[5] peple þ*er*ynne; and chese vnto hym to worthi men of þe cite to be Scherevi*ȝ* w*ith* hym, for to gouerne & kepe þe kingeȝ laweȝ yn the cite; & on me called Gylbert Maghfelde, and þ*a*t oþ*er*, Thomas 12 Newenton, And þeȝe iij gode men hadde þe gou*er*naunce of þe cite vn-to þe tyme of þe Maires eleccion þanne next,[6] þat was called William Stawnden[7]; And þis Gilbert Maghfelde & Thomas Newneton, schereff. ¶ And þanne þe Mayre & þe ij schirreveȝ, 16 and alle þe aldermen, w*ith* alle þe worthi craftis of London, went on fote vn to þe Tour; and þ*er*e came out þe Counstable of þe Tour, and yaff þe Maire and þe Schereveȝ her othe, and charge,[8] as þay scholde haue take yn the Chequer at[9] Westmynstre yn 20 þe Kingeȝ Court of his Iustiȝes & Barons of the sayde[10] Cheker; and þanne went thay whom ayenne.

¶ And þanne þe King and his Counsel, for grete malice of þe Cite of London, and[11] despite, remevid alle his Courteȝ fro[12] West- 24 mynstre vn-to þe cete of Yorke, þat is to say, þe Chauncerie, þe Cheker, þe[13] Kingeȝ Bench, and also þe Comyn Place, and þ*er*e þay hilde alle her[14] Courtis of Law fro mydsom*er* vn-to[15] þe fest of Cristismesse next comyng. ¶ And þanne þe King & his counsel 28 sawe it not so p*r*ofitable þ*er*e, as it was at London; þ*a*nne anon he [16]removid hit ayen to[17] London, and so to Westmynstre, for gret ese of his officers and avauntage of[18] þe King and of[19] alle þe comyns of þe Reme. 32

¶ And whenne þe[20] peple of London sawe & knew þat þese

[1] of London *om.* TR. [2] and boþe TR. and for the ij Kk. [3] a xiiij T.
[4] Walyngregge T. Walingrugge R. [5] þe TR. [6] next þanne T.
[7] Wiliam Staundon) was chosen mayre T. nexte William Staundon) chosen meire R.
[8] hir charge and oth R. [9] of T. [10] sayde *om.* TR. [11] and for R.
[12] from T. fro R. for Kk. [13] and þe T. [14] þese T. his R.
[15] midsomer that is to saie þe feste of seynt Iohn) þe Baptist vnto T.
[16] *leaf* 114. *back.* [17] vnto TR. [18] for R. [19] of *om.* TR.
[20] þe *om.* TR.

courtis were come ayen, and þe King and his peple also,[1] þanne þe Maire and þe Aldermen, with þe Cheff[2] comyns, let gadir a grete su*m*me of goolde of alle þe comyns of the cite, & ordeyned & made
4 grete rialte ayens his comyng to London, for[3] to haue his grace and gode[4] lordeschip, and also her liberteis and Fraunchezes g*ra*unted vnto ham ayen as þai afore tyme hadde. And þann, by grete instaunce and praier of Quene Anne, and of oþ*er*[5] lordez and
8 ladez, þe King graunted hem grace: and þis was do at Schene yn Sothereye. ¶ And þan[6] þe King with-ynne ij[7] dayez aftir, com to London; and þe Maire of London,[8] schereuez, aldremen,[9] and alle þe worthi cite aftirward, redyn ayens þe King yn gode araye vnto
12 þe heth on þis syde þe maner of Schene, submittyng humyly hem self,[10] and mekely, with[11] alman*er* of[12] obeysaunce vn-to hym, as þay owed to[13] do. And þus þai brouzt þe King and þe Quene to London. ¶ And whanne þe King come to þe gate of þe Brygge of
16 London, þ*er*e þay p*r*esentid hym with a mylke-white stede, sadelled and brydilled, & trapped with white cloth of golde and red parted togadir, and þe Quene a palfraye alle white, trappid yn þe same aray[14] with white and rede, and þe[15] condite of London Ronnen
20 white[16] wyne and rede, for al man*er* pepill to drynke of. ¶ And betuene Seint Poulez and the Cros yn Chepe, þ*er*e was made a stage, a ryalle, stondyng vpon hygh; a[n]d þ*er*ynne were mony angelis, with dyuers melodiez and songe; and an[17] aungell come
24 doun[18] fro þe stage on high, by a vice, and sette a croune of golde & p*r*ecious stonez & p*er*les apon þe Kingez hed, and anoþ*er* on[19] the Quenez hed; and so the citezenys brought þe King and þe Quene vnto Westmynstre, yn-to his palice at[20] Westmynstre, & presentyd
28 hym w*ith* ij basyns of syluyr, & ovirgilte, fulle of coyned golde, the s*um*ma of xx m[t] li,[21] prayng hym, of his[22] mercy and lordschip and specialle grace,[23] þ*at* þay myzt haue his gode loue, and[24] libertee & Fraunchezes like as þay hadde before tymez, and by his lettrez

[1] also *om.* T. [2] cheff *om.* T. [3] and for T. [4] his good TR.
[5] of her T. hir R. [6] þan *om.* T. [7] a ij T. [8] london) with þe T.
[9] aldremen *om.* T. [10] hem humbely T. submittinge ham humbeli R.
[11] with *om.* T. [12] of *om.* TR. [13] for to T.
[14] white and in þe same aray trappid T. and in the same aray trapped R.
[15] also þe T. [16] with white T. alle þe R. [17] oon T.
[18] a downe T. [19] Crowne vpon T. croune vpon R.
[20] paleys And þanne on þe morne aftir þe mayre and þe sherefis and þe Aldermen of london) come vnto þe kyng into his paleys at T. Palis. And þanne on þe morow aftir þe meir and þe sherevis and þe aldermen of london) com vnto þe king in his Paleis at R. [21] xxM[l] pound T.
[22] his hie TR. [23] of his grace T. [24] and leve and R.

patentez confermed.[1] ¶ And þe Quene, and oþer worthi lordez & ladiez, ffillyn on hir[2] kneys, and besouȝt þe King of grace to conferme þis. Thanne þe King toke vp þe Quene, and grauntyd hir alle hir askyng, and þanne þei þanked þe King and þe Quene and 4 went home ayene.

¶ And yn þe xvij[3] yere of his regne,[4] certeyne lordez of Scotlande com yn-to Englonde to gete worschip, as by feet of armez: þese[5] were þe persons: þe Erle of Marre, and[6] chalanged the Erle 8 Marchall of Engelonde to Iuste with hym certeyn poyntez on horsbak with scharpe speris. And so þai redyn togadir, as ij worthi knyȝtis & lordes, certayne cours, but not þe fulle chalange þat þe Scottysche Erle made; for he was cast both hors and man, and ij 12 of his rybbis brokyn with þe[7] ffalle; and so he was born out of Smythfelde, hom yn-to his Inne; and with-ynne a litil while aftirward[8] he was caried homwarde yn a liter; & atte York he[9] deied. ¶ And Ser William Darell, knyȝt, and[10] banerrer of Scotland, 16 made anoþer chalange with Sire[11] [12]Piers Courteneye, knyȝt; and þe Kinges banerrer of Engelonde, of[13] certeyne coursez hit on horsbak yn þe same ffelde. ¶ And whanne he hed y[14]rede certeyne cours hit, and saw he myȝt not haue[15] þe bettyr, yaf[16] it ouyr, and wolde 20 no more of his chalang, and[17] turned his hors and rode hom vnto his owne in.[18] And one Kocborne, squier, of Scotland, chalanged Sir[19] Nicholl Hawberke, knyȝt, of certeyne cours, hit with scharp speris on horsbak; and redyn .v. cours hit togadir; and att euery cours 24 þe Scotte was cast doun,[20] both hors and man; and þus our Englisch lordez[21]—þankyd be God!—had þe felde.

¶ And yn þe xviij[22] yere of King Richardez regne, deied þe gode gracious Quene Anne, þat was wiff to King Richarde, yn þe 28 maner of Schene, yn þe schire of Surreie, vp-on Whitsonday. þanne[23] was sche broȝt to London, and so to Westmynstre; and þere was sche y[24]beryed and worthily entered, besyde saint Edwardez schryne; on whose soule Almyȝti God haue mercy and pite! 32 amen![25]

[1] and patentis And her chartir confermyd T. [2] hir *om.* TR.
[3] xvj T.
[4] of kyng Richardis reigne T. yeer of king Richardis Regne R.
[5] And þese T. [6] and he T. & he R. [7] þat T.
[8] litiH tyme after T. alitil tyme aftir R. [9] þere he TR. [10] þe T.
[11] *sir* T. sir R. sixe Kk. [12] *leaf* 115. [13] of TR. [14] y *om.* TR.
[15] not haue TR. haue Kk. [16] he yaf TR. [17] but T. [18] his Inne T.
[19] *sir* T. sir R. for Kk. [20] adoun TR. [21] men R. [22] xvij T.
[23] And þanne TR. [24] y *om.* TR. [25] amen *om.* T.

How King Richarde spoused dame Isabell, þe Kingis douȝtir of Fraunce, yn the towne of Caleys, and brouȝt hir yn-to Engelond, and let croune hir Quene yn þe Abbey of Saint Petris of Westmynstre. Ca*pitulu*m ccxlj.[1]

In þe xx^ti^ yere of King Richardeȝ regne, he went ouyr se[2] to Caleys, with dukis, Erlis, lordis, and Barons, and mony o*þer* worthi squyers, yn grete aray, and comyn pepil of þe Reme yn gode aray, as longith to such a worþi king and prynce, of his nobley[3] to do hym reverence and obseruaunce, as owed[4] to be do to[5] hir liege lorde, and so myȝty a King and Emp*er*our yn his owne, to abyde and resceyve there þat worthi & gracious lady þat schulde be his wif, a yong creature of ix yere of age, Dame Isabell, þe Kingis douȝtir of Fraunce, and mony[6] worthi lordiȝ of grete name, bothe Barons and knyȝtis, with moche o*þer* pepil *þat* comen vn to þe toun of Grauenyng, and ij Dukis of Fraunce: þat on was þe Duk of Burgoyne, and þat o*þer*, Duk[7] of Barre, þat wolde no fir*þer* lasse þanne þey hadde pleggeȝ for[8] ham. And þanne King Richarde delyu*er*ed ij pleggeȝ for ham to goo saaf and come saaf: his ij worthi vncleȝ, þe Duk of Glowcestre and þe Duk of York. And þei ij went ou*er* þe watir of Grauenyng, & abiden *þer*e as for[9] pleggeȝ, vnto þe tyme þat þe Maryage and þe fest were do.[10] ¶ And þanne þeȝe ij worthi Dukis of Fraunce[11] come ovir þe water at Grauenyng, and so to Caleis, with þe[12] worschepful lady, Dame Isabell, þe[13] Kingis douȝtir of Fraunce. And with hir come mony a worthi lorde and lady,[14] knyȝtis and squyers, yn þe best aray þat myȝt be; and *þer*e þai mette with our meyne at Caleys, þe which welcomyd hir and hir meyne with þe grettest[15] honour and reuerence þat myȝt be, and so brouȝt hir to[16] Caleys toun. And *þer*e sche was resceyvid with alle þe solempnite and worschip þat myȝt be do vnto[17] such a lady. And þanne þei brouȝt hir vnto þe King; and þe King toke hir, and welcomed hir and alle hir fayr mayne,[18] and made *þer*e alle þe solempnite [19]þat myȝt be do. ¶ And þanne þe King and his counsel axed of the Frensche lordeȝ[20] whethir alle þe conauntes and

[1] cc° T. ccxlij R. [2] went hi*m* ou*er* þe see T. þe See R.
[3] nobley and of his owen p*er*sone T. nobleie and of his owen) p*er*sone R.
[4] owith T. [5] vnto T. [6] many o*þer* TR. [7] þe Duke R.
[8] of R. [9] for þe Kk. þe *om.* TR. [10] was done T. was do R. were Kk.
[11] of Fraunce *om.* T. [12] this T. þis R. [13] þat is þe T.
[14] and eek lady and T. [15] beste TR.
[16] brought into T. hir into R. [17] to R. [18] maynce T.
[19] *leaf* 115, *back.* [20] men and lordis R.

forwardeȝ, with þe composicion þat were ordeyned and made on bothe parteys, schulde be trewly kept and holde betwene hem; and þai sayde "ye"; & þere þay sworon and token[1] hir charge apon a boke, and toke[2] hir oth welle and trewli it[3] to holde yn alle 4 maner poyntis and couenauntes, without contradiccion or delay yn euery[4] maner wyse. And þanne was sche brouȝt to[5] Seint Nicholas chirch yn Calis; and þere sche was worthili weddyd, with þe moste[6] solempnite þat eny king or[7] quene myȝt haue, with arche- 8 bischoppes and Bischopeȝ, and alle[8] mynystreȝ of holy churche. ¶ And þanne were þai[9] brouȝt hom vnto[10] þe Castell, and set[11] to mete, and þere[12] were serued with alle maner of delicaceȝ of alle[13] riall metis and drynkis plenteuously, to alle maner of strayngoureȝ 12 and al oþer. And no creature[14] warned þat Fest, but alle were welcome; for þere were grete halys & tentis sette vp on þe grene without þe castell, for[15] to resceyue alle maner of peple, and euery office redy to serue ham alle; and þus þis worthi mariage was 16 solemli do and ended with alle ryalte.

¶ Thanne[16] þese ij Dukys of Fraunce, with hir peple, tokon hir leue of þe King and[17] Quene, and went ayen to Grauenyng watir; and þere þe Frensch lordeȝ, þat is to say, þe ij Dukis &[18] hir meyne, 20 were comen ovir þe watir of Grauenyng, & þere þay mette, & euerych toke leue of oþer; and so þai departed, and our lordeȝ come ayen to Caleys, and þe Frensch lordeȝ went hom ayen[19] yn-to Fraunce. 24

And[20] anon aftir, þe King made hym redy[21] with þe Quene and alle his lordeȝ and[22] oþer pepil with ham, & comyn ouyr þe see yn-to Engelond, and so to London, and þe Maire and þe Schereveȝ, with al þe aldermen and worthi comyneȝ, ryden ayens ham vnto þe 28 Blacke-Heþ yn Kent; & þere þay mettyn with þe King and þe Quene, and welcomyd ham, and þat yn gode aray, and euery man in his cloþing of his crafte, and her[23] mynstrelles to-fore ham; and so þay brouȝt ham to Saint Georgeȝ Barre yn Southwerke; and þere 32

[1] and toke*n* T. and took R. and Kk. [2] made TR. [3] hir T.
[4] any T. eny R. [5] vnto TR. [6] with moche T. [7] and T.
[8] alle *om.* T. [9] þai *om.* TR. [10] to T.
[11] sett T. set R. for Kk. [12] þere þei T. [13] alle *om.* R.
[14] creature was T. [15] for *om.* TR. [16] and T. [17] and þe T.
[18] and all T. and alle R.
[19] wenten ouyr þe watir and so home T. wente*n* ouer þe watir and so hom in to ffra*u*nce ayeen). R.
[20] ayen And T. [21] him redy T. made him redy R. hym Kk.
[22] and ladies and T. & ladieȝ & alle R. [23] here T.

hy[1] tokyn hir leue, and þe King and þe Quene redyn to Kenyng-
ton; and þanne þe peple of London turned hom ayen. And yn
turnyng ayen to London brygge, þe*re* was so moche prees both on
4 fote & on hors,[2] þ*at* þe*re* were ded on þe brygge a[3] xj pe*r*sone*ȝ* of
men,[4] wymme*n* & chyldryn: on whose soule*ȝ* God haue mercy!
amen! ¶ And þanne aftirward þe Quene was brou*ȝ*t to the Tour
of London, and þere[5] sche was al ny*ȝ*t. And on þe morowe[6] sche
8 was brou*ȝ*t þrou*ȝ* þe Cete of London, and[7] so forth to[8] West-
mynstre, & þere sche was crouned Quene of Engelonde. þan[9] was
sche brou*ȝ*t ayen yn-to the Kingis Palis, and þe*re* was[10] holde
an opon & a ryall Fest aft*er*[11] hir coronacion, for al man*er* peple[12]
12 þat þedir come: and þus[13] was do þe Sonday afftir þe Fest of seint
Clement, in þe xx yere of King Richarde*ȝ* regne.

And þan, þe xxv day of august next folouyng, be euyl excita-
cion & ffals counsel, & for grete wrathe [14]and malice þat he had of
16 olde tyme vnto his vncle, þe gode Duke of Gloucest*er*, and to þe
Erle of Arundel, & to þe Erle of Warwic, ¶ The King, by is[15]
euylle counsell, late yn the Euenyng on þe same day aboue saide,
made hym redy with his streynthe, and rode yn-to Essex vnto þe
20 toune of Chelmesforde, and so come to Plassch*e* sodenly, þe*re* S*er*
Thom*as* of Wodestoke, þe gode Duk of Gloucestre, lay. And þe
gode Duk come anon to welcome þe King[16]; and þe King hym self[17]
arestid þe gode[18] Duke[19]; and so he was ladde doun to þe wat*er*,
24 and anon put yn to a schippe, and[20] had vnto Caleis, and brou*ȝ*t
vnto[21] capteynys warde, to be kept yn holde be þe King*es* co*m*-
maundement of Engelond: ¶ And þ*at* tyme þe Erle Marchal of
Engelond was capten of Caleis. ¶ And anon aftir,[22] be co*m*-
28 maundement of þe King and of[23] his fals Counsel, co*m*maunded þe
capten to put hym to[24] deth. ¶ And anon certeyn yemen[25] þat had
þe gode Duk yn kepyng, tooke her counsel how þei[26] wolde put
hym to[27] deth; and þis was her poyntment: þat þai schulde come
32 vpon hym whanne he were yn[28] bedde, and aslepe on a Feth*er*bed.
And anon þei bonde hym honde and[29] foot,[30] & chargid hym to ly

[1] thei T. þey R.
[2] on hors and on foote T. boþe on hors and on fote R. [3] a *om.* TR.
[4] men and T. [5] and þere R. and Kk. [6] morne TR.
[7] aꝗ ou*er* and T. [8] vnto T. [9] And þanne TR.
[10] was TR. was sche Kk. [11] at TR. [12] of peple T. [13] this T. þis R.
[14] *leaf* 116. [15] his T. [16] duke come to euyꝗ come þe kyng anoo*n* T.
[17] hym self *om.* T. [18] goode *om.* R. [19] duke him silf his owen bodi T.
[20] and aꝗoon T. [21] into þe TR. [22] after sende a T. [23] bi TR.
[24] to þe T. [25] anoon þo men T. [26] þat þei TR.
[27] to þe T. vnto R. [28] a R. [29] and *om.* R. [30] foot and hond T.

stylle; and whanne þai hadde þis[1] do, þe[2] tokyn ij smale tewellys, and made on ham[3] rydyng knottis, and caste þe tewellys aboute þe Dukis nek: and þanne þei token þe fetherbed þat lay vnder hym, and cast hit aboue hym; and þan þei drowen her towell*is* eche 4 waye3; and su*m* lay vpon þe fethir bed apon hym, vnto þe tyme þat he were ded, because þat he schulde make no*n* noyse. And þus þei strangled þis worthi Duk vn[to] the deth, on whose soule God, for[4] his pite, haue merci! Amen! ¶ And whenne þe King 8 hadde arestid þis worthi Duke, and his owne vncle, and sent hym to Caleis, he come ayen to London yn alle hast, with a wondir grete peple. And as[5] he was come, he sent for the Erle of Arundel and for the gode Erle of Warwic; and anon as þay cam,[6] he arestid 12 ham[7] his owne self. Sir Iohn Cobh*am* [8]& S*er* Iohn Cheyny, kny3tis, he arestid also yn þe same wyse,[8] til he made his p*ar*lement; & anon þei were put ynto holde. But þe Erle of Arundel went at large vnto þe p*ar*lement tyme, for he founde sufficient 16 surete to abyde þe lawe, & al maner of answere at þe[9] poynte3 þat þe King & his Counsel wolde put vp on hym.

[10] Off þe grete parlement, and of þe deth of þe Erle of Arundell; and how þe Erle of Derby and oþ*er* were exiled, and þe 20 sayde Erle come ayen ynto þis londe; and how King Richarde went ynto Irelond, and how he deide.[10] Cap*itulu*m ccxlij.[11]

And yn the xxj yere of King Richarde3 regne, he ordend a[12] p*ar*- 24 lement at Westmynstre, þe which was clepid 'þe Grete P*ar*lement'; and this p*ar*lement was made for to iugge þese iij worthi lorde3 and oþ*er* moo, as ham lust[13] at þat[14] tyme. ¶ And for þat iugement þe king let make in alle hast a long and a large hous of tymbir, 28 The which was called an hale, and cou*er*ed with tyle3 ouyr; and it was opu*n* al aboute on bothe syde3, and at þe endis, þat al man*er* of men my3t se þrou3out; and þ*er*e þe dome was holden [15]vpon þese forsaide lorde3, and Iugement yeue at this forsaide p*ar*lement. 32 ¶ And for to come to[16] þis p*ar*lement þe King sent his writtis vnto

[1] þus R. [2] do thus thei T. þey R. [3] hem ij T. ham ij R.
[4] of T. [5] as sone as T. [6] þei were come T.
[7] hem boþe T. ham boþe R.
[8—8] and he arestid also s*ir* Iohn) Cobh*am* and s*ir* Iohn) Cheyney knyghtis T. manere R.
[9] to alle T. [10—10] Off þe grete parlement . . . deide *om.* TR.
[11] ccxliij R. [12] him a T. [13] list TR. [14] this T.
[15] *leaf* 116, *back.* [16] vnto TR.

eu*er*y lorde, Baron, kniȝt and squier, in eu*er*y schire þrouȝout Engelond; and þat eu*er*y lorde schulde grade and bryng his retynu of peple with hym,[1] yn as schort tyme and the[2] best aray þat þay
4 myȝt gete, in maynteynyng and streyngthyng of þe King ayens ham þat were his enymys, and þat þis were do yn alle haste, and þei[3] to come to hym yn peyne of deth. ¶ And þe kyng hym self sent ynto[4] Chestirschire, vnto þe Chefteynes of þat cuntre, and þay
8 gagred and brouȝt a grete and an huge multitude of peple, bothe of knyȝtis & of[5] Squyers, & prynspally of yemen of Chestreschire, þe which yemen and archers þe Kyng toke yn-to[6] his owne court, & yaf ham bothe[7] boge[8] of court and gode wageȝ, to be kepers of his
12 owne body, both be nyȝt and be day, above alle o*þer* p*er*sons, and most ham[9] loued & best trust. ¶ The which sone aftirwarde turned þe King to gret losse, schame, hyndryng, and his vttirly vndoyng and destrocc*i*on, as ye schalle here sone aftirward.
16 ¶ And þat tyme come S*er* Henry, Erle of Derby, with a grete meyne of men of armeȝ and archers; and þe Erle of Ruthlande come with a strong pouer of peple, bothe of men of armeȝ and archers; and the Erle of Kent brouȝt with hym[10] a grete power of
20 men of armeȝ and archers; The Erle Marchalle come yn þe same wyse;[11] The Lord Spens*er* yn the same man*er*; The Erle of Northombirlond and S*er* Harry Peercy his sone, & S*er* Thom*as* Perci, þe Erleȝ bro*þer*; & alle[12] þeȝe worthi lordiȝ brouȝtyn a fayre mayne
24 and a strong power, & ech man yn his best aray; And þe Duk of Lancastre and þe Duk of York comyn yn þe same maner w*ith* me*n* of armeȝ and archers, folouyng þe King; and S*er* Will*ia*m Scrop, Tresorer of Engelonde, come yn þe same maner. ¶ And þus, yn
28 þis aray, comyn alle þe worthi men of þis londe vnto our King; and alle þis peple come to London yn on day, yn so moche *þat*[13] eu*er*y strete & lane yn London & yn þe sowthbarbeȝ weren fulle of ham logged, and .x or xij myle about London eu*er*y way. And
32 þis[14] pepil brouȝt þe King to Westmynstre, and went hom ayen vnto hir loggynge, bothe hors & man. ¶ And þan on þe Monday, þe xvij day of Septembre, þe parlement began at Westm*inster*, þe which was clepyd "þe grete parlement"; and on þe Fryday next
36 ffolowyng, þe Erle of Arundel was brouȝt yn-to[15] parlement

[1] retenu w*ith* him of peple R. [2] in þe T. in the R.
[3] þei *om.* T. [4] to T. [5] of *om.* R. [6] vnto T.
[7] bothe *om.* TR. [8] bouche T. [9] ham *om.* TR.
[10] with hym *om.* TR. [11] manere TR. [12] alle *om.* T. I alle R.
[13] in R. [14] þese T. [15] in to þe R.

among alle þe lordeȝ,—and þat was on[1] saint Matheweȝ day þe
Apostyll & eu*au*ngelist,—&[2] *þere* was[3] foriuged vnto the deth in
þis[4] hale, þat was made yn þe palis at Westmynstre. And þis was
his Iugement: he[5] scholde go on fote, w*ith* his handeȝ y[6]bounde 4
be-hynde hym, from þe place þat he was foriuged ynne, and so
forthe þrouȝ þe cite of London vnto þe Toure hyll, and there his
hed to be smetyn of; and so[7] it was do yn dede yn þe same place.
¶ And vj. of þe grete lordeȝ þat sat on his Iugement redyn 8
w*ith* hym vnto þe [8]place there he was do vnto[9] deth. And to se
þat[10] þe execussion were y[11]do aftir his[12] dome, and by þe Kingis
commaundement went with hem[13] on fote men of armeȝ and archers,
a grete multitude of Chestirschire men yn streyngthyng of the lordeȝ 12
þat brouȝt þis erle vnto his deth, for þai draddyn þat þe erle schulde
haue be rescued and take fro ham, whanne þay come yn-to London.
¶ Thus he passed forth þurgh þe cite vnto his deth; and þ*e*re he
toke it full paciently; on whose soul God haue mercy! amen! 16
¶ And þanne come þe frere[14] Austyns, and toke vp the body and þe
hed of þis gode Erle, and bare it whome yn-to[15] hir hous, and
buryed hym yn hir quere. ¶ And yn[16] þe morow[17] aftir, was S*er*
Richarde, Erle of Warwic, brouȝt yn-to þe p*ar*lement, þ*e*r*e* as þe 20
Erle of Arundel was foriuged; and þai yaf þe Erle of Warwic þe
same Iugement þat þe forsaide erle hadde; but þe lordeȝ had com-
passion on[18] hym because he was of grete[19] age, and relecyd hym to
perpetuall pryson, and put hym yn-to[20] þe Ile of Man. ¶ And 24
þanne the Mondaye next aftir, þe lorde Cobban of Kent, S*er* Iohn
Cheyne,[21] knyȝt, were broȝt yn-to þe p*ar*lement, yn-to[22] þe same
hale; and þ*e*r*e* þay were Iugid to be hangyd & draw; but, þrouȝ
þe prayer and grete Instaunce of alle þe lordeȝ, þat Iugement was 28
foryeue ham, and relecyd to perpetual prison.

¶ And þis same tyme was Richard Whityngton, Meyre of
London; and Iohn Wodekoc and Will*ia*m Askam, schereveȝ of
London; and þai ordeined, at eu*er*y yate and yn eu*er*y warde, 32
strong wacche of men of armeȝ and of archers, and prinspally at
eu*er*y yate of London, duryng þis[23] same p*ar*lement.

[1] on TR. of Kk. [2] & *om.* T. [3] he was T. [4] his T. [5] þat he T.
[6] y *om.* TR. [7] so *om.* T. [8] *leaf* 117. [9] vnto þe T.
[10] þat *om.* R. [11] y *om.* TR. [12] hir TR. [13] with hem wenten T.
[14] ffreres of T. [15] home vnto TR. [16] on R. [17] on þe morne T.
[18] of TR. [19] more TR. [20] to *om.* TR.
[21] s*er* Iohn Cheyne . . . . turned hem *omitted in* R *to page* 358, *line* 30.
[22] to *om.* T. [23] þe T.

¶ The King at þis p*ar*lement[1] made .v. Dukis, a Duchasse, & a Markeȝ, & iiij Erleȝ; & þe first of ham was þe Erle of Derby, & he was made Duke of Hereforde; and þe ij was þe Erle of Ruth-
4 land, and he was made Duke of Awmarle; þe iij was þe Erle of Kent, & he was made Duke of Surreye; and þe iiij was þe[2] Erle of Hontyngton, and he was made Duke of Excestre; and þe .v.[3] þe Erle of Notyngham, and he was made Duke of Norfolk; and[4]
8 þe Erle of Som*er*sete was[5] made þe Markeys of Dorset; & the Lord Spens*er* was made Erle of Gloucestre, and þe Lorde Neuyle of Rabye was made Erle of Westm*er*land; & S*er* Thom*as* Percy was made Erle of Worscetir, and S*er* Will*ia*m Scrope, þat was Treserer of
12 Engelonde, he was made[6] Erle of Salysburye. ¶ And whanne þe King had þis[7] do, he helde at[8] þe p*ar*lement a[9] rial ffest vnto all his lordeȝ, and to al man*er* of pepil þat þidir wolde come.

¶ And yn þe[10] same yere deyed S*er* Iohn of Gaunt, þe Kingeȝ
16 vncle, & Duke of Lancastre, yn the bischoppeȝ In yn Holborn,– and was brout fro þenneȝ to Saint Pouleȝ and þ*er*e þe King made & hilde his terement welle & worthily w*ith* all his lordeȝ,[11] and þ*er*e he was beryed besyde Dame Blaunch his wiff, þat was douȝtur &
20 heyre to þe gode Henry, þat was Duke of Lancastre.

[*The Fight between Bolingbroke and Norfolk stopt.*]

¶ And yn the same yere þer fil a discencyon and a debate betuene þe Duk of Herford & þe Duke of Norfolke, yn so moche þat þay waged batayle & cast doun her gloues; & þanne þey [12]were
24 take vp and[13] seled, and the day & þe place of batayle assygned at Couyntre.[14] and þedir come þe King and[15] alle his lordeȝ at þat[16] day, and was sette yn þe ffelde; and þan þeȝe ij worthi lordeȝ comyn yn to þe ffelde, clene armed and wel arayed with alle her wepon,
28 and redy to do her batayle, and were yn the place redy to fiȝt at þe vttrest. ¶ But þe King bade hem cese, and tok þe quarel yn-to his honde, and forthwith, þ*er*e p*r*esent, exiled[17] þe Duk of Herforde for þe terme of .x. yere, and þe Duke of Northfolk for evyrmore;

[1] kyng did T. [2] þe *om.* T. [3] þe v *om.* T.
[4] and dame Margrete þe oold ladi of Northfolk and T. [5] he was T.
[6] Englond made him erle of Wiltshire and s*ir* Iohn) Mou*n*tagew T.
[7] thus T. [8] þe T. [9] and a T. [10] þis T.
[11] lordes in the chirche of seynt Poules in london) T.
[12] *leaf* 117, *back.* [13] and a T.
[14] sealid and þe bataile synyd and þe day y sett and þe place assynyd and whanne þe day schulde be vttirli assynyd to be doon at Couentre T.
[15] with T. [16] þe T. [17] he exilid T.

and S*er* Thom*as* Arundel, Archebischop of Caunterbury, was exiled
þe same tyme for evyr, and deposed of his ssee, for malice of þe
King. ¶ And anon þese iij worthi lordeȝ were co*m*maunded and
defendid þe King*es* Reme; & anon þay gat hem schippeȝ at dyuers 4
hauens, and went ou*er* þe see ynto dyuers londeȝ, eche his way; &
þe Duk of Northfolke went to Veniȝe, and þ*er*e he deied: on
whose soule God haue mercye! amen!

¶ And þanne King Richarde made S*er* Roger Walden, a clerke 8
of his,[1] Archebischop of Caunt*er*bury.

¶ And yn þe xxij yere of King Richardeȝ regne, be fals
counsel and ymaginacion of ffals men and couetous[2] þat were
aboute hym, were made & ordeyned[3] blank Chartureȝ, and made 12
ham to be selid of alle man*er* of riche men þrouȝout þe Reme, in-
so-moche þat þai compellid dyuers pepill to sette to[4] her seleȝ;
and[5] þis was so[6] for gret couetiȝe; wherfore alle þe[7] gode hertis
of þe Reme clene[8] turned away fro hym[9] euyr eftir, and þat was 16
vtturli[10] destroccion & ende of hym[11] þ*a*t was so hygh and so
excellent a king, þrough couetyse and fals counsel: Alas, for pite,
þat such a king myȝt not se!

¶ And þanne King Richarde sette his kingdom and his riall 20
londe to fferme of Engelond,[12] vnto iiij p*er*soneȝ, þe which were
þese, Sir Will*ia*m Scrope,[13] Erle of Wilschire & Treserer of Enge-
lond, S*er*[14] Iohn Busch, Henry[15] Grene, and S*er* Iohn Bagot,
knyȝt*es*; þe[16] whiche[17] turned hem to moche myschef and deth 24
with-ynne a[18] lytil tyme aftir, as ye schal here[19] wretyn sone aftir.

[*Richard II's Expedition to Ireland.*]

¶ Thanne[20] King Richarde made gret ordynaunce, and went
ouyr see[21] Into Irelond, and mony grete lordeȝ with hym, with
grete ostes, for to streyngthe hir king, as men of armeȝ, archers,[22] 28
and moche grete stuff & riȝt gode ordynaunce, as longith to warre.
¶ And or he passid þe see, he ordeyned and made S*er* Edmu*n*de of
Langeley his vncle, Duk[23] of York, his Lieutenaunt of Engelond

[1] a clerke of his *om.* T. [2] of couetous men T.
[3] ordeynyd and maad T. [4] to *om.* T. [5] to and T. [6] do T.
[7] þe *om.* T. [8] weren clene T.
[9] hi*m* þat is þe kyng T. fro hym þe kyng Kk.
[10] and was vttirly his T. and þat vtturli Kk.
[11] of hym *om.* T. [12] of Englond to ferme T. [13] of Scrope T.
[14] and s*ir* T. [15] and s*ir* Harry T. [16] þe *om.* T. [17] whiche þat T.
[18] a *om.* T. [19] here fynde T. [20] And þanne T.
[21] wente him ou*er* þe see T. [22] *and* archers T. [23] þe duke T.

yn his absence, be[1] þe gou*er*naunce &[2] counsel of þese iiij knyȝtis
þat had take Engelonde to ferme of the King. ¶ And þanne he
passed þe see, and come ynto Irelonde, and þ*er*e he was welle and
4 worthily resceyved. And þese rebellis of Ireland bith[3] callid
'wilde[4] Irisch men'; and[5] anon her chefteyneȝ & hir[6] gouernoures
&[7] leeders comyn doun vnto þe King, & yolde ham vnto hym,
bothe body & godeȝ, alle at his owne wille, & swore to be his lige
8 me*n*, and þer-to dede to hym[8] homage & feaute, and gode s*er*uiȝe;
& þus he co*n*queryd [9] þe moste p*ar*ty of Irelond yn a litil tyme.

[*The Return of Bolingbroke.*]

¶ While þat[10] King Richard was þus yn Irelonde, S*er* Henry of
Bolingbroke, Erle of Derby, þat þe king hadde made before Duk
12 of Herforde—þe which Duk, þe King had exiled out of þis lande—
was come ayen yn-to Engelond, for to chalange þe Duchery[11] of
Lancastre as for[12] riȝt & trewe heritage. ¶ And he come doun out
of Fraunce by londe to Calis, and þ*er*e mette hym Ser Thom*a*s of
16 Arundel, þat was Archebischop of Caunturbury, þ*a*t was exiled out
of Engelond; and with hym come þe Erle of Arundell sone, & his
heire, þe which was yn warde and yn[13] kepyng of S*er* Iohn Selly,
kniȝt, su*m* tyme with þe Erle of Huntyngton, and with þe Duk of
20 Excestre, þe which was yn the Castell of Rygate yn Suthsex; and
þ*er*e he stale away from Shelly, & come to Caleys; & þ*er*e he was
kept welle and worthily til þis[14] oþ*er* ij lordeȝ were come to Caleys.
¶ And þan þis worthi Duk, & þe Archebischop of Caunturbury,
24 Arundel, schippid yn þe hauene of Caleis, and drow his cours
Norþewarde, and arryued yn Yorkschyre, Rauensporne, fast by
Brydlyngton; and þ*er*e he come, and entrid þe londe, & þese ij
lordeȝ with hym, and hir meyne. And þanne moche pepil of the
28 Reme, þat wist of his comyng and[15] where he was, anon drowyn
to[16] hym, and welcomyd þese lordeȝ, and socurred hym yn alle
man*er* þyngis, and passed forth yn[17] the londe, and gadryd myche
peple.
32 ¶ And whanne King Richard wist of þis, & herde[18] þat þese ij
lordeȝ were come ayen yn-to Engelonde, and were londed, þanne

[1] be *om.* T. [2] and þe T. [3] ben T. [4] the wilde T.
[5] and *om.* T. [6] hir *om.* T. [7] and her T.
[8] there to him diden T. [9] *leaf* 118. [10] þe T.
[11] dukedom T. [12] for his T. [13] yn *om.* T. [14] these T.
[15] and *om.* T. [16] anoon þei drewe vnto T. [17] into T.
[18] Richard herde and wiste T.

þe King left alle his ordynaunce yn Irelonde, and come yn-to Engelondewarde yn alle þe hast þat he myȝte, & come yn-to[1] þe Castell of Flynt; and *þere* he abode for to take his counsell, and what myght[2] best be do; but to hym com non. ¶ And þanne S*er* 4 Thom*as* Percy, Erle of Worcestre, þat was þe Kingis Steward, when he wist[3] and knew þis, anon he com yn-to the halle among alle þe pepil, and *þere* he brake þe yerd of þe Rial Kingis housholde; and[4] eu*er*y man went his way, and forsoke his maistir & 8 souereyne lorde, and left hym alone: [5]and þus was King Richard brouȝt adoun and destroyed, and stode alle alone,[5] without counsel, confort & socour[6] of eny man. Allas! for pite of þis ryal King! 12

¶ And anon come tydyngeȝ þat Harry of Bolyngbroke was vp with a[7] strong power of pepill, and þat alle þe Schyreveȝ of Engelond reysed vp þe Schires yn streyngthing of hym ayens King[8] Richard; and þus sone he was come out of þe Northcuntre 16 to Bristow, and *þere* he mette with S*er* Will*ia*m Scrope, Erle of Wilschire and[9] Tresorer of Engelond, and with S*er* Iohn Busch and S*er* Henry Grene, and Iohn[10] Bagot, but he ascapyd from hym, and went ou*er* þe see In-to Irelonde; & þeȝe o*þer* ij[11] knyȝteȝ were 20 take, and her hedis smytyn of; & þus þei deied for her fals couetiȝe.

¶ And þanne was King Richard y[12]take, & brouȝt vnto þe Duk; and anon þe Duk put hym y[n] saff[13] warde and strong 24 holde, vnto his comyng to London. ¶ And þanne was *þere*[14] a Rumore yn London, [15]and a strong noyse, *þat* King Richarde was come to Westmynstre; and the pepil of London ranne þider, and wolde haue don moche harm and scathe yn hir wodnesse, ne hadde 28 þe Mayre and þe aldermen, and o*þer* worthi men, cecid ham with faire wordes, and turned hem [16]hom ayen vnto London. ¶ And *þere* was[17] S*er* Iohn Slake, Dene of the Kingeȝ chapel of Westmynstre, take,[18] and brouȝt to London, and put yn[19] Ludgate; and 32 Bagot was take yn Irelonde, and brouȝt to London, & put yn p*ri*sone yn Newgate, *þere* to be kept and[20] abide his answere.

[1] vnto T. [2] what myghte T. what Kk.
[3] Steward whenne he wiste T. Steward wist Kk.
[4] and tho hit disparbelid and T. [5–5] *om.* T.
[6] withoute comfort or socoure or good counceile T. [7] a wondir T.
[8] þe king T. [9] and *om.* T. [10] s*ir* Iohn T. [11] iij T.
[12] y *om.* T. [13] into faste T. [14] and there was thanne T.
[15] *leaf* 118, *back.* [16] MS. R *begins again.* [17] was take T.
[18] take *om.* T. [19] in p*ri*son in T. [20] and to T.

¶ And sone aftir, þe Duk brouȝt King Richard pryuyly to London, and put hym yn the Tour, vndir sure kepyng as a prisoner. And þanne come þe lordeȝ of the Reme, with alle hir counsel, vnto þe
4 Tour to King Richard and saide to hym of his mysgou*er*naunce and extorc*i*on þat he hadde do, maade, and ordeyned, to oppresse alle þe comyn pepil, & also alle[1] þe Reame; wherfore al þe comyn peple of his Reme wolde haue hym deposed of his kingdom; and
8 so he was deposyd at þat tyme in þe Tour of London by alle his[2] lordeȝ counsel, and by[3] the common assent of al þe Reme. ¶ And þan[4] he was put fro þe Tour vnto þe castel of Ledis yn Kent, and-þ*er*e he was kept a while; and þan was he hadde fro þenneȝ vnto
12 þe kastell of Pomfret in þe Northcu*n*tre, to be kept yn pryson; and sone aftirward riȝt þ*er*e he made his ende.

¶ Whanne[5] King Richarde was deposed, and hadde resyngned his croune and his kingdom, and hym self kept fast yn holde, þan
16 alle þe lordeȝ of þe Reme, with þe comyns assent, and by one[6] accorde, chosyn þis worthi lorde, S*er* Henry of Bolyngbroke, Erle of Derby, Duk of Herford and Duke of Lancastre be riȝt lyne and heritage; and for his myȝtful manhode þat þe peple founde yn
20 hym, before al oþ*er* þei choson hym, & made hy*m* King of Engelonde.[7]

Of S*er* Henry of[8] Bolingbroke, Erle of Derby, þat regned aftir King Richarde, þe[9] which was þe fourth Henry after þe
24 **Conqueste. Cap*itulu*m ccxliij.[10]**

And aftir Kinge Richarde þe secu*n*de was deposed and put out of his kingdom, þe lordeȝ & þe comyns, alle w*ith* on assent, and alle oþ*er* worthi of þe Reme, chosyn S*er* Henry of Bolyngbroke, Erle
28 of Derby, sone & heyre of Iohn a Gaunt, Duke[11] of Lancastre, for his worthi manhode þat ofte tyme hadde be founde yn hym, and yn dede previd; vpon Saint Edwardeȝ Day þe Confessoure, he was crouned King of Engelond at Westmynstre, by alle þe Remys
32 assent, next aftir[12] deposyng of King Richard. ¶ Thanne he made Henry, his eldist sone & his heire, Prynce of Walis, Duk[13] of Cornewayle, and Erle of Chestre; and he made S*er* Thomas of Arundel, Archebischop of Caunturbury ayen, as he was before;

[1] to all T. [2] his TR. hir Kk. [3] by *om.* T.
[4] there T. þere R. [5] And þanne whenne T. And whanne R.
[6] one *om.* R. [7] Englonde amongis hem. T. [8] *om.* T.
[9] Richarde þe *om.* T. [10] cc° T. ccxliiij R. [11] Iohn) þe duke TR.
[12] aftir þe T. [13] and duke T.

and S*er* Roger[1] Walden, that King Richard had made Archebischop of Caunturbury, he made[2] Bischop of London, for þat time it stode voyde; and he[3] made þe Erleȝ sone of Arondel, [4]that come ouer the see with him from Caleys into Englond, he made him Erle of 4
ArundaH,[4] and put hym yn possession of alle his londeȝ; and þ*er*e he made homage and feaute unto his liege lorde þe King, as alle oþ*er* lordeȝ hadde do.

¶ And þanne anon deied King Richard in þe castell of 8
Pountfret yn the Northcuntre, for þ*er*e he was enfam*m*ed vnto the deth be his keper, for he was kept into[5] iiij or v. dayeȝ fro mete and drynke; and so he made is ende yn þis worlde. Yet moche pepil yn Engelond and yn oþir [6]landeȝ saide þat he was alyue 12
meny yereȝ aftir his deth; but wheþer he were a[7]lyue or ded, þei[8] hilde hir fals opynyons and beleue þat þay[9] hadde; and moche pepil aftirward comyn to myschif and to foule deth, as ye schulle here aftirwarde. ¶ And whanne King Henry wist and knew 16
warly[10] þat he was ded, he lete sere hym yn þe best maner þat he myȝte,[11] and[12] closed hym yn[13] lynnyn cloth, alle saue his visage, and þat was left opon þat men myȝt se and know his p*er*son from alle oþ*er* men; and so he was brought to London with torchis lyȝt 20
brennyng vnto Saynt Pouleȝ, and þ*er*e he hadde his masse and his dirige, with moche reverence and solempnite of s*er*uiȝe. ¶ And fro Pouleȝ was[14] brouȝt ynto þe Abbey of Westmynstre, and þ*er*e hadde[15] alle his hole s*er*uiȝe ayen; and fro Westmynstre he was 24
ladd[16] ynto[17] Langeley, and þ*er*e he was beryed: on whose soule God haue m*er*cy! Amen!

¶ And yn þe first yere of King Henryeȝ regne he hilde his Cristismasse yn þe Castell of Wyndesore; and on þe twelfthe 28
evyn come þe Duke of Awmarle vnto þe King, and tolde hym þat he & þe Duk of Surrey, þe[18] Duk of Excestre, þe[18] Erle of Salusbury, þe[18] Erle of Gloucestre, & oþir moo of her afinite, were accorded to make a mu*m*myng vnto þe King on[19] xij[the] day at 32
nyght; and þere þay cast to sle þe King yn hir revelyng; and þus þat[20] Duke warned þe King. And þanne þe King come þe same[21]

[1] Roger of T. [2] made him TR. [3] he *om.* R. [4—4] RT; *om.* Kk.
[5] in T. [6] *leaf* 119. [7] on T. [8] forth thei T.
[9] men T. [10] verily T. [11] þat he myȝte *om.* TR.
[12] and closid hit in a fayre chest with dyuerse spiceries and bawmes T. and closed him in a fair chiste with diuers spiceȝ and bameȝ and R.
[13] in a TR. [14] he was TR. [15] he hadde T. [16] ladde T. hadd Kk.
[17] to T. vnto R. [18] and þe T. [19] on þe T. [20] þis R.
[21] þe same TR. same Kk. þe *om.* R.

nyȝt to London[1] priuili, yn alle þe[2] hast þat he myȝte, to gete hym helpe, socoure, comfort[3] & counsel. And[4] anon þeȝe o*þer*, þat wolde haue do þe King to deth, ffleddyn yn alle þe haste þat þei
4 mȝghte,[5] for þei knewen welle þat her counsel was bewrayed. ¶ And þanne fled þe Duke of Surrey, and þe Erle of Salusberye with[6] alle hir meyne, vnto þe toun of Siscetre; and þ*ere* þe pepil of þe toun wolde haue arestid ham; and þey wolde not stonde to
8 her arest, but stodyn at her[7] defence, & fauȝt manly; but at þe[8] laste þey were ou*er*come and take;[9] and þere þei smote of þe Dukes hed of Surrey, and þe Erleȝ hed of Salusbury, & mony o*þer* moo; & þ*ere*[10] þay putte þe quarters in sackys, and her hedeȝ on[11]
12 poleȝ born on hy, and so[12] þei were brouȝt þrouȝ þe cite of London vnto London brygge; and þ*ere* her hedeȝ were sette vp an[13] hy, & her quarters were sent to o*þer* gode tounеȝ and citeȝ, and set vp þere.

16 ¶ At Oxynforde were[14] take S*er* Thomas[15] Blount, knyȝt, Benet[16] Sely, knyȝt, and Thomas Wyntirsell, squyer; and þese were behedid & quarterd; & the knyȝtes hedis were sette on poleȝ & brouȝt to London, & sette on London brygge, and þe quarters sent
20 forth to o*þer* placeȝ & tounеȝ. ¶ And yn þe same yere at Pritwelle yn[17] Essex, was take S*er* Iohn Holond, þe Duk of Excestre,[18] with þe[19] comyneȝ of þe cuntreye; and þay brouȝt hym fro þe mille vnto Plasche; and to þe same place þ*ere* King Richard hadde
24 arestid[20] S*er* Thom*as* of Wodstoke, þe Duk of Glowcestre. And riȝt þ*ere*, yn þe same place, þei[21] smytyn of þe Duk of Excestreȝ hed, & brouȝt it to London vpon a poole; and it was sette on London Brygge. ¶ And yn þe same yere, at Bristow, was take þe
28 Lorde Spenser, þat King Richard hadde made Erle of Glowcestre; & þe comyneȝ of the toune of Bristow [22]toke hym, and brouȝt hym in to þe Market place of the Toun; & ther thay smyte of his hed and sent hit to London, and hit was sette on London brygge.
32 ¶ And yn þe same yere was S*er* Bernarde Brokeys, kniȝt, take and

[1] to London TR. *om.* Kk. [2] þe *om.* R. [3] and comfort T.
[4] And *om.* T.
[5] haste þat þei myghte T. haste þat þey myȝte R. *om.* Kk.
[6] *and* w*ith* R. [7] her *om.* TR. [8] þe *om.* T. [9] took hem T.
[10] þere *om.* T. [11] vpon T. [12] so *om.* T. [13] on TR.
[14] were TR. we Kk. [15] *ser* Thomas *om.* T. Iohn) R.
[16] and Benet T. [17] in a mille in TR.
[18] Essexe there s*ir* Iohn) holande þe duke of Excestre was take T. Essex þere sir Iohn) holande þe Duke of Excestre was take R.
[19] þe *om.* R. [20] hadde arestid T. hadde arested R. arestid Kk.
[21] thei T. þey R. þe Kk. [22] *leaf* 119, *back.*

arestid, & put yn-to þe Tour of London; and S*er* Iohn Selley, kniȝt, & S*er* Iohn Mawdeleyne & S*er* Will*iam* Fereby, p*er*sons of King Richardeȝ, were[1] arestid and put yn-to þe Tour of London. and þedir come þe Kingeȝ Iusticeȝ, and saat vpon hem yn the 4
Toure; and þ*er*e were[2] dampned alle iiij vnto þe deth.[3] And the dome was yeue vnto S*er* Bernarde Brokeys, þat he shulde go on fote fro the Tour þrouȝ þe toun of[4] London vnto Tyburne, and þ*er*e[5] to be hangyd, & aftir his hed to ben[6] smyten of & sett on 8
London Brigge, & S*er* Iohn Selley, knyȝt, and S*er* Iohn Maudeleyn & Sir Will*iam* Feriby, p*er*sons, weir draw þrouȝout London to Tyburne, & þ*er*e hanged.[7]

¶ And yn þe[8] same yere King Henry sent Quene Isabell, þat 12
was King Richardeȝ wiff,[9] hom ayen yn-to Fraunce,[10] and yaff hir Golde & siluer and mony o*þer* Iewelleȝ; and so[11] sche was[12] discharged of alle hir dower, & sent out of Engelond.

¶ And yn þe secu*n*de yere of[13] King Henri þe iiij^th^, was S*er* 16
Rogg*er* of Claryngdon, kniȝt, & ij of his men, & þe Priour of Launde, & viij frere Menoures, and su*m* Maistres of diuinite, & o*þer*, for treson þ*at* þay wrouȝt ayens the King, were drawe & hangyd at[14] Tyborne, alle xij presoners & p*er*soneȝ.[15] 20

¶ Tha*n*[16] beganne þe[17] discencion [18]& debate yn þe cuntre of Walis betwene þe Lorde Grey Rithyn[18] & Oweyn of Glyndore, Squier of Walis. And þis Oweyn rerid a nownbyr of Walschemen, and kept þat[19] cuntrey about ryȝt strong, & dede myche harme, and 24
destroyed þe Kingis tounеȝ and lorschippeȝ þrouȝout Walis, & robbyd & slowgh þe Kingis pepil, both Englisch and Walsch; and þus he endured xij[20] yere large. And he toke þe Lorde Gray of[21] Rithyn presoner, and kept hym fast yn holde tylle he was 28
raunsonde of prysoners of þe March, and kept hym long tyme yn holde; and at þe[22] last he made hym wedde on of his douȝtris,[23] and kep[t]e hym stylle þ*er*e[24] with his wiff, and sone after he deyed.

[1] and þei weren T. [2] þey weren T. [3] vnto þe deth alle four R.
[4] þe tour of *om.* TR. [5] þere *om.* T.
[6] aft*ir* his heed T. aftir his hed R. his *om.* Kk.
[7] hangid and her heedis smyten of and sett on london) brigge T. hanged and hir hedis smyt*en* of and set on london Brigge R. & sett on London Brigge *om.* Kk. [8] þis T. this R. [9] þat was . . . wiff *om.* T.
[10] ffraunce þe which was kyng Richardis weddid wiff T. [11] so *om.* T.
[12] was so T. [13] of þe reigne of T. [14] at þe T.
[15] & p*er*soneȝ *om.* TR. [16] There T. Ther R. [17] a T. þe *om.* R.
[18—18] and a debate bitwene þe lord Grey Reffen in þe cuntree of Walis T.
[19] aH þat TR. [20] a xij T. [21] of *om.* T. [22] þe *om.* T.
[23] his douȝtris TR. douȝtris *om.* Kk. [24] there stylle T.

¶ And þanne þe[1] King,[2] knowyng þis myschef, destruccion and treson, þat þis Oweyn hade y[3]wrouȝt, þen anon he ordeyned a strong power of men of armeȝ and of archers, & moche o*þer* stuffe
4 þat longid to warre, for to abate & destroye þe malice of þe[4] fals Walschemen. And þanne þe King come yn-to Walys with his power, for to destroy þis Owen and o*þer* rebellis, fals Walschmen. And[5] anon þei fledde*n* yn-to þe mountayneȝ; and þ*er*e myȝte þe
8 Kinge do hem no*n* harme yn no maner of[6] wyse; but ofte þei toke þe Kingis cariage, and eu*er*y day destroyed his peple. But Oweyn and his men, þe moste p*ar*te, ascapid harmeleȝ; ffor þe King ne his meyne myȝt not come[7] to hem yn no man*er* of[8] wise
12 for þe mountayneȝ; and so the King come to[9] Engelond ayen, for lesyng of moo of his peple, and þus he[10] spedde not þ*er*e.

¶ In þis same yere was gret scarsite of whete yn Engelond, for a quarter of whete was at xvj s.; [11]and merchaunthes were sent out
16 of Engelond ouyr see[11] ynto Spruce for whete. anon[12] þay hadde lade & freight shippeȝ ynow, & came hoom yn saafte, blessid[13] be God of[14] alle his yeftis!

¶ And yn the iij[de] [15]yere of King Harryeȝ regne, ther was a
20 sterre seyne in þe firmament, þat schewed hym-self þrouȝ alle[16] þe worlde, for dyuers tokenns þat schulde befalle sone aft*er*; þe which sterre was named & called be clergie[17] 'Stella comata.' And on Seint Marye Magdaleyne day, next aftir,[18] yn þe same
24 yere, was þe Batayle of Schrouysbury; and þedir come S*er* Henry Percy, þe Erleȝ sone of Northombirlonde, with a grete multitude of men of armes & archers, and yaf[19] batayle to[20] King Harry þe iiij[the], –þrouȝ fals[21] counsel and wicked reede of S*er* Thomas Percy, is vncle,
28 Erle of Worcestre; and þ*er*e was S*er* Harry Percy slayn, and þe most p*ar*te of his mayne, yn the feelde,[22] and S*er* Thom*as* Percy take, and kept yn holde ij dayeȝ tylle þe King hadde sette rest among his peple on both sydes. And þanne S*er* Thom*as* Percy
32 was Iugid to be ded, þat is to wete, drawe, hangyd, & his hed

[1] þe *om.* T. [2] king Harry T. [3] y *om.* TR. [4] þese T. þis R.
[5] and *om.* T. [6] of *om.* TR.
[7] nought come T. not come R. not *om.* Kk.
[8] of *om.* TR. [9] into TR. [10] he *om.* R.
[11—11] and þanne was marchaundise of Englond sente ou*er* þe see T.
[12] and anoon T. and anon) R. [13] and comen in haste y blessid T.
[14] in R. [15] *leaf* 120. [16] out al R.
[17] & called be clergie *om.* T. [18] folowyng T. folowynge R.
[19] yaf a T. [20] to þe T. [21] the fals T.
[22] Percy slayn) in þe felde & þe moste part of his meyne R.

smyte of for his fals treson at Schrowesbery, & his hed brouȝt to London & set on London-is[1] Brygge. And al[2] o*þer* peple þat[3] were slayne *þere*,[4] on þe Kingeȝ syde[5] and yn boþe p*ar*teys,[6] þe King let bury: and *þere* was slayn on þe Kingyȝ syde yn the[7] 4 batayle, þe Erle of Staffarde, and S*er* Water Blount yn þe Kingys kote armyour, vndir þe Kingeȝ baner, and mony mo worthi men; on[8] whose soule God haue mercy! amen!

¶ And yn þe iiij^the^ yere of King Harryeȝ regne, come þe 8 Emp[*er*]oure of Constantynoble, with mony grete lordeȝ and knyȝtes and moch o*þer* peple of his cuntre, in to Engelonde, to King Harry, with hym to speke[9] and to disporte hym, and see[10] þe gode gouernaunce & þe condicioneȝ of our peple, and know[11] þe 12 *com*moditeȝ of Engelond. And our King, with alle his worthi lordeȝ, godely and worschepfully hym resceyved, and welcomed hym[12] and alle his mayne þat come with hym, and dede hym alle þe reuerence & worschip þat þay cowthe and myȝte. And anon þe 16 King commawnded al man*er* officers þat he schulde be s*er*ued as worthily & as[13] ryaly as it longith to[14] such a worthi lorde & Emp*er*our, on his owne cost, as long as þe Emp*er*our was[15] yn Engelond, and alle his men þat comyn with hy*m*. 20

¶ And yn þis same yere came dame Iohane,[16] þe Duchasse of Bryttayne, yn-to Engelonde, and landed at Falemouth yn Cornewayle; & fro þenneȝ she was brouȝt to þe cite of Wynchestre, and *þere* sche[17] was weddyd vnto King Harry þe iiij^the^ yn the Abbey of 24 Saynt Swythens of Wynchestre, with alle þe solempnite *þat* myȝt be do and made. ¶ And sone after, sche was brouȝt fro þenneȝ to London; and þe meyre, with[18] þe aldermen and þe comyns of þe cite of London, rydyn ayens hir, and hir welcomed,[19] and brouȝt 28 hir throuȝ þe cite of London vnto Westmynstre; and *þere* sche was crouned & made[20] Quene of Engelond; and *þere* þe king made a ryalle and a[21] solempne fest for hir, and for al maner men þat þedir wolde come. 32

¶ And yn þis same yere, Dame Blaunche, þe eldist douȝtir of

[1] is *om.* TR. [2] alł þe T. [3] that there T. þat *þer* R.
[4] *þere om.* TR. [5] side in þat Bataile R.
[6] slayne on boþe parties T. and yn boþe p*ar*teye *om.* R.
[7] kyngis side in þat T. þat R. syde *om.* Kk. [8] of T.
[9] to speke with him T. [10] to see T. to se R. [11] to knowe T.
[12] hym *om.* R. [13] as *om.* R. [14] vnto T.
[15] Emp*er*oure was T. Emp*er*our was R. was Kk. [16] Iane TR.
[17] sche *om.* T. [18] and T. & R. [19] welcomyd hir T.
[20] & made *om.* R. [21] and a TR. and *om.* Kk.

King Harry þe iiij^the^, was y[1]sent ouyr see[2] with þe Erle of Som*er*sete, hir vncle, and with Maist*er* Richarde Clyfforde, þanne [3]Bischop of Worcestre, and with mony oþ*er* lordeȝ and worthi
4 knyȝtis, ladieȝ,[4] and Squyers,[5] as longed to such a worthi lady, and come vnto Coleyne. And þedir come þe Dukeȝ sone of Barrey, with a faire mayne, and resceyved þis worthi lady, and þ*er*e the Bischop[6] of Worcestre wedded & sacred ham to-gedir, as holy
8 churche it[7] wolde; & þ*er*e was made a ryalle feest and a[8] g*r*ete Iustiȝe, yn[9] reverence and worschip of ham, and to alle peple þat þedir come. ¶ And whanne þis maryage and fest was do, þe Erle and þe Bischop, with alle hir meyne, token her leve of lordeȝ and
12 ladieȝ and come home ayen yn-to Engelond in saafte, y[10]þankyd be God!

¶ And yn þe .v. yere of King Harryeȝ regne, þe Lorde Thom*a*s, King Harryeȝ sone þe iiij^the^, and þe Erle of Kent went ouyr see,[11]
16 and mony oþ*er* lordeȝ and kniȝtes, and men of armys & archers, and went to[12] þe se to chastise þe rebellis þat afore hadde do moch harme to our Englisch[13] Marchauntes & to mony tounes and portis yn Engelond vpon þe se costis. ¶ And þe Lorde Thomas, þe
20 Kingis son, cam yn-to Flaundres, toffore a toun þat is callid þe Scluse, among alle þe schippeȝ of dyuers nacyons þat were þ*er*e; and after, þai rydyn with her schippeȝ among ham, and went alonde, & sported ham þ*er*e ij. daieȝ, and cam ayen to hir schippeȝ,
24 & token þe brode se, & þ*er*e þay mettyn w*ith* iij carrakeȝ of Iene, þat were lade with dyuers Marchaundiȝe, and welle y[14]manned; and þere þay fouȝtyn to-gadryȝe longe; but þe Englischmen hadde þe victorye, and brouȝt þe Carrakeȝ yn-to þe camere before
28 Wynchylse; and þ*er*e þay cantid þes godeȝ, and on of þeȝe Carrekeȝ was sodenly þere brent, & þe lordeȝ and hir peple turned hom ayen, and went no firthir at þat tyme.

¶ And yn that same yere, Serle, yoman of King Richardeȝ
32 Robys, come yn-to Engelond out of Scotland, and saide to diuers peple þat 'King Richard was alyve yn Scotlond'; and so, moch of

[1] y *om.* TR. [2] þe see T. [3] *leaf* 120, *back.* [4] and ladies TR.
[5] and worthi squyers T. worthi squiers R.
[6] the bisshop T. þe Bisshop R. bischop Kk.
[7] it *om.* TR. [8] a *om.* TR.
[9] in þe T. [10] y *om.* TR.
[11] iiij^e^ wente ou*er* þe see and þe Erle of kent T. w*en*te ovir see and þe erl of kent R.
[12] archers a greet meyne wenten to T. archers a greet meyne went R.
[13] Englisshe men T. [14] y *om.* R.

þe peple beleued yn his wordeȝ; wherfore mych of þe peple of þe Reeme were yn gret erroure and gruching ayens þe King, þrouȝ fals informacion[1] þat þis Serle hadde made, for moche peple beleuyd & trustid to[2] his seyng; but at þe[3] last he was take yn the North 4 cuntre, and by lawe juged to be draw þrouȝ euery cite & gode burgh toun yn Engelond; and so he was serued. And at þe[3] last he was brouȝt to London, vnto Gilde[4]-halle before þe justiȝe; and þere he was juged to[5] be brouȝt to þe Tour of London, and þere to 8 be laide vp[6]-on an hirdille, & þan to[7] be drawe þrouȝ þe cete of London to Tyborne, &[8] hangyd, & þan quarterde, and his hed smyte of & set on London Brygge, & his quarters to be sent to iiij gode townеȝ of Engelond, & þere set vp: & þus endid he his[9] fals 12 treson & desceit.

¶ And yn þe vj yere of King Henryeȝ regne, þe Erle of Marre, of Scotland, be saaf condit come ynto Engelond for to chalange Ser Edmunde, þe Erle of Kent, of certeyn cours of warre on hors-bak; 16 & so þis chalange was accept and graunted, and þe place take yn Smythfelde at London. And þis Erle of Marre, þe[10] Scot, com proudly [11]yn-to the felde, as his chalange asked. And anon com yn þe Erle of Kent, and rode vnto þe Scot, and manfully rydyn 20 togadir with scharp[12] speris dyuers cours; but þe Erle of Kent hadde þe Felde, and gate hym moch worschip & þanke of al maner of[13] men for his manful dedis.

¶ And þis yere[14] Ser Richard Scrope, Archebyschop[15] of York, 24 and þe lorde Mounbray, Erle Marchal of Engelonde, gadrid vnto hym a strong meyne yn þe North cuntre ayens King Henry. and þan King Henry, heryng[16] þerof, yn alle þe hast þat he myȝte, come with his power northwarde, and mette with ham at York; 28 and þere were þei[17] ij lordeȝ take, and brouȝt to[18] þe King, and anon þe Iugeȝ weryn sette, and þese ij lordeȝ brouȝt forth; and þere þai were dampned vn-to þe[19] deth, þat boþe her hedis schulde be[20] smyte of; and þere þay made her ende: on whose souleȝ God, for 32 his pete, haue mercy! Amen!

[1] thorugh informacion) of lesyngis and falslies T. þoruȝ informacion) of his lieȝ and fals lesingis R.
[2] peple trustid him and bileeuyed in TR. [3] þe *om.* T. [4] þe Gilde T.
[5] forto T. [6] vp *om.* TR. [7] to *om.* R. [8] and þere TR.
[9] for his TR. [10] a T. [11] *leaf* 121. [12] scharp *om.* T. [13] of *om.* R.
[14] And in þe same yeer of kyng Harries reigne þe iiij^t T. And in þe vi. yeer of kinge henries regne þe iiij^the R.
[15] þe Erchebisshop T. [16] þanne þe kyng heryng T.
[17] þese T. þeȝe R. [18] vnto T. [19] þe *om.* R. [20] heedis were T.

¶ And whanne[1] þis was do, þe King come to London ayen, a[nd][2] restyd hym. And anon, God, of his grete godenesse, wrouȝt and schewyd meny grete myracles for his worthi Clerke, þe[3] Archebischop of Yorke, þat þus was dovn to[4] deth.[5]

¶ And yn þe vij yere of King Henryeȝ regne come[6] Dame Luce, þe Dukeȝ sistir[7] of Millane, yn-to[8] Engelond, and so vnto London, and *þere* was weddid to S*er* Edmu*n*de Helond, Erle of Kent, yn þe priory of Saint Mary Ouerey yn Southwerke, with moche solempnite and grete worschip: and *þere* was þe King hym selfe, and yaf hir at þe churche dore. ¶ And whanne[9] þay were weddyd, and masse do,[10] þe King, his owne p*er*sone, brouȝt and ladde þis worthi lady yn-to þe Bischopis place of Wynchestre; and *þere* was a wondir grete fest helde, to alle man*er* of pepil þat come þedir.[11]

¶ In þis[12] same yere, S*er* Robert Knollis, kniyȝt, þe worthi warrio*ur*, deied at his Maner yn Northfolke: and fro þenneȝ he was brouȝt to London on[13] an hors beere, with myche torche lyghte; and so was he brouȝt to[14] þe Whit-Freris yn Flet-strete; and þere was do and [15]made a ryal &[16] solempne terement for hym, for þem[15] þat þidir wolde come, bo*þe* pore & rich; and *þere* he lyth beryed[17]; on whose soule God[18] haue mercy! Amen!

¶ And[19] yn the[20] same yere S*er* Thom*as* Ruston,[21] kniȝt, Constab[l]e of þe Tour of London, was dreynt yn[22] Themys[23] at London Brygge, as he com fro Westmynstre towarde þe Tour yn a barge; and al þrouȝ lewdenesse. And yn þe same yere Dame Phelyp, þe yongyr douȝtir of King Henry þe iiij^the^, was ladde ou*er* þe see with S*er* Richarde, þe Dukeȝ brothir of Yorke, and S*er* Edmu*n*de Courteneye, bishop of Norwiche, and mony o*þer* lordiȝ, kniȝtis and squyers, ladieȝ and gentil-wymmen, as[24] p*er*teyneth to[25] such a worthi Kingis douȝtir, and come yn-to Denmarke, to a toun[26] þat is callyd Elsyngborgh. And þedir come þe King of Denmarke, wiþe his lordis, and resceyvid þis worthi lady for his wiff, and welcomyd

[1] as T. [2] and there T. and þere R. [3] þe *om.* TR.
[4] vnto R. [5] vnto þe deeth T. [6] come *om.* T. [7] doughtir T.
[8] come into T. [9] And as sone as T. [10] and þe masse was doon T.
[11] þedir *om.* T. [12] þe TR. [13] vpon TR. [14] vnto T.
[15—15] maad for him a solempne feste and a roiall terment for tho T. þo R.
[16] and a R.
[17] buried bi dame Constaunce his wiff in mydde of þe bodi of the churche T. beried be Dame Constance his wiff in þe myddel of þe body of þe chirche R.
[18] god of his pitee T. god for his pite R. [19] And þus T.
[20] this R. [21] Rempston R. [22] in) þe R. [23] yn Themys *om.* T.
[24] þat TR. [25] vnto T. [26] Toure T.

þese worthi lordeȝ, and dede ham moche reuerence & gret worschip. ¶ And þanne þei were brouȝt to a toun þat is[1] callid London yn Denmark, and *þere* was this lady weddid and sacryd to þe King of Denmark with moche solempnite; and *þere* was sche crouned 4 Quene of Denmark, Norwey and Swethyn; & *þere* was made a rialle fest. ¶ And whanne þis Fest and mariag was do & endid, þeȝe lordeȝ [2]and ladieȝ tokyn her leve of the[3] King and Quene, and comyn home ayen yn-to Engelonde yn hast, þanked be Ih*es*u! 8

¶ And yn the viij ȝere of King Harryeȝ regne, *þer* was a man þat was clepid 'þe walsch clerke,' and[4] apelyd a knyȝt þat me callyd S*er* Perciuale Sowdon, of treson; and *þere* þey were ioyned to fiȝt vnto þe deth, within[5] þe listeȝ, & þe day,[6] tyme and place 12 assigned and lymytid to be do and ende, yn Smythfelde. At þe which day þe ij personeȝ comyn yn to þe felde, and fouȝtyn soore and myȝtili togadris; but at þe[7] last þe knyȝt ou*er*came þe clerke, and made hym yelde[8] creaunde of his fals plechement þat he sayde 16 on hym; and þan was he dispoyled of his armeo*ur* and drawe out of þe ffelde to Tyburne; & *þere* was he hangyd, and þe kniȝt take to grace, and was a gode man.

¶ And yn þis same yere, S*er* Henry,[9] erle[10] of Northombirlande, 20 & þe Lorde Bardolf, comyn out of Scotlande, yn preiudice & destruccion of King Harry; wherfore þay of the Northcuntre arysyn vp,[11] and[12] smytyn of her hedis, and[13] sent þe hed of the Erle, and þe[14] quarter of þe lorde Bardolfe, to London; and þere 24 þey were set vp on þe brygge, for fals treson þat þay had purposed ayens þe Kinge.

¶ And yn þe ix yere of King Harreȝ regne, was S*er* Edmu[n]de[15] Holonde,[16] Erle of Kent, made[17] Amerel of Engelonde, for to kepe 28 þe see. And he went to þe see with mony ryalle[18] schippis, þat were full well arayed and[19] enarmyd with mony a gode man of armeȝ & of[20] archers, and of gode defence of[21] warre yn þe Kinges name of Engelonde; and so he londit at þe[22] laste yn þe costes of 32

[1] men T. me R. [2] *leaf* 121, *back*. [3] the *om*. T. [4] and he TR.
[5] in T. w*ith* ynne R. with Kk. [6] day and T. [7] þe *om*. T.
[8] yelde him TR. [9] *ser* henry *om*. T. [10] þe Erle T.
[11] vpon hem T. vp on ham R.
[12] and faught with hem and sconcfitid hem and took hem and T. and fauȝt with ham and scomfited ham & took ham & R.
[13] and quartrid her bodies and T. and quartred hir bodies and R.
[14] a TR. [15] Edmū Kk. [16] of holonde T. [17] was maad T.
[18] a roiall T. [19] and apparellid and T. and appareiled & R.
[20] of *om*. TR. [21] in T. [22] þe *om*. T.

Brittaigne, in þe Ile of Bryak, with alle his peple; and he besegid
þe castel and assauted it. and þai with-ynne[1] with-stode hym with
grete defence & streinþe, and anon let sette his ordynaunce; & yn
4 þe leyngthe of a gune com a quarel, & smot þe gode Erle yn þe hed,
& þere he cauȝt his deth-wownde, but yet þei left not tylle þay
hadde gotyn þe Castell and alle þat was þere-ynne; and *þere* þis
gode lorde deid: on whose soule God haue m*er*cy.[2] ¶ And þanne
8 his[3] meyne comyn hom ayen in-to Engelond with þe Erleȝ body,
and was buried among his auncetryeȝ riȝt worthily. ¶ And yn þe
same yere was a gret frost[4] yn Engelond, þat dured xv wokeȝ.

¶ And yn þe[5] x yere of King Harryes regne þe iiij^the^, come þe
12 Senescall of Henaud, with o*þer* meyne, yn-to Englond, for[6] to
seke[7] auntreȝ, and to gete hym[8] worschip yn dedis of armeȝ, boþe
on horsbak and on foote, of al maner poyntis of[9] dedis of armeȝ
and[10] warre. And þe Senescal Chalanged þe Erle of Som*er*set; and
16 þe Erle delyuerde hym manfully yn al his chalangeȝ, and put his
adu*er*sari to þe worsse yn alle poyntis, & wanne hym *þere* grete
worschyp and degre[11] of the ffeelde. ¶ And þe next day come yn
to þe ffeelde a no*þer* man of armeȝ of the Seneschallys party; &
20 ayens hym com S*er* Richard of Arundell, knyȝt; and þe[12] Henauder
hed[13] þe bettyr of hym [14]on fote in on poynt, for he broȝt hym on
his kne. ¶ And þe thrid day come yn[15] a no*þer* man of armeȝ yn to
the felde; and ayens hym S*er* Iohn Cornewayle, knyȝt; and manly
24 & knyȝtly quyt hym yn alle maner of poynteȝ ayens his adu*er*sary,
and had þe bettyr yn the felde. ¶ And[16] þe iiij day come yn[17]
a no*þer* man of armys of Henaude, yn[18] þe felde; and ayens hym com
S*er* Iohn Cheynees sone,[19] and manly quyt hym ayens his adu*er*sary,
28 for he caste bothe[20] hors & man into þe feelde; and þe King, for his
manhode at þat tyme, dubbyd hym knyȝt. ¶ And þe v day þer com
a no*þer* man of armeȝ of[21] Henaudeȝ party yn-to þe ffel[d]e; and to
hym come Iohn[22] Stewarde, squyer, and manfully quyt hym þere yn
32 al man*er* of poyntis, and hadde þe bettir. ¶ And þe vj day come a
nother Henauder; & to hym come Will*ia*m Porter, squier; and
manfully he quitte [23]hym yn þe ffelde, and hadde þe bettir,[23] and þe

[1] with-ynne *om.* T. [2] mercy Amen TR. [3] his TR. þis Kk.
[4] forst Kk. [5] þe same T. [6] for *om.* TR. [7] seke T. seihe Kk.
[8] hym *om.* T. [9] and T. & R. [10] and of TR. [11] and þe gree T.
[12] þe he R. [13] hed *om.* R. [14] *leaf* 122. [15] yn *om.* T.
[16] And on TR. [17] yn *om.* T. [18] into TR. [19] his sone T.
[20] bothe *om.* TR. [21] of þe TR. [22] sir Iohn) T. to him yn sir Iohn R.
[23—23] quytte him and hadde þe bettir in þe ffelde and T. him and hadde
þe bettir in þe felde R.

King dubbid hym kniȝt þe same time. ¶ And þe vij day come a noþer Henauder yn-to[1] the felde; & to hym come Iohn Standisch, Squyer, and manly quit[2] hym on his aduersary, and hadde þe bettir yn þe ffelde; and *þere* þe King dubbyd hym kniȝt þe same 4
day. ¶ And yn[3] þe same day come a noþ*er* Henauder; and to[4] hym come a squier of Gasquoyne; and[5] proutly & manly he quitte hym on his adu*er*sarye, and *þere* hadde þe bettir, and anon þe King dubbyd hym kniȝt. 8

¶ And[6] þe viij day com yn-to þe ffelde ij men of armes of Henaude; and to ham come ij soudiers of Calis þat were breþryn, y[7]-Clepyd þe Boroughe3; and welle and manly quit hem on hir aduersarie3, and hadde þe bettir yn þo[8] felde; and þus endid þis 12
Chalanged with moche worschep. And þe King, at þe reuencens of the straungers, made a grete ffeest, and yaff rych yeftis; and þay tokyn hir leue, and went whom yn-to hir cuntre.

¶ And yn þe xj ȝere of King Hen[r]ye3 regne þe iiij^the^, *þere* was 16
a gret Batayle yn[9] Smythfelde betwene ij squiers; þat on[10] men callid Glowcestre, and[11] þat was[12] appelaunt, and[13] Arture, þat was[14] defendaunt; and welle and manfully fouȝtyn togadrys longe tyme. And the King, for hir manfulnesse and of his grace, toke 20
hir quarell yn-to his honde, and mad ham go[15] out of þe felde at[16] ones; and[17] so þay were dyvyded of hir bataile; and þe King yaf ham grace.

And yn[18] þe xij ȝere of King Henrye3 regne þe iiij^the^, Rys ap[19] 24
die, a Squier of Walis þat was a rebell & a ryser,[20] and[21] supporter of Owen of Glyndore þat dede moche destruc*c*ion to þe pepil yn[22] Walis, was[23] take, & brouȝt to London. And *þere* he come afore þe Iustiȝe, and was dampned for his treson; & þan he was leyde on[24] 28
an hirdyl, and so draw forth to Tyburne þrowghe the cite, and *þere* was hangyd, & lete doune ayen, and his hed smytyn of; and his bodi quarterde and sent to foure townes, and his hedde sette on London Brygge. 32

¶ And the[25] xiij ȝere of King Henrye3 regne,[26] deyed

[1] to *om.* T. [2] he quytte TR. [3] on TR. [4] vnto T.
[5] þat T. [6] And in T. [7] y *om.* TR. [8] þe TR.
[9] doon in T. do in R. [10] on *om.* R. [11] and *om.* R.
[12] was þe TR. [13] and þat oþ*er* T. [14] was þe TR. [15] to go T.
[16] boþe at T. [17] and *om.* R. [18] þanne T. yn *om.* R.
[19] rose vp oon T. of R. [20] & a ryser *om.* T. [21] and also T.
[22] of T. [23] Walis and at laste he was T. [24] vpon TR.
[25] in þe T. [26] of King harries T. of king henrie3 Regne þe iiij R. of his regne Kk.

S*er* Iohn Beauford, Erle[1] of Som*er*set, þat was [2]Capteyne of Caleys, and was beryed at þe Abbey of Tour-hille: on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen! And yn þe same yere þe Lorde Thom*as*, 4 King Harrye3 sone, wedded þe Countesse of Som*er*set. And þe[3] same yere come þe ambasceturs of Fraunce yn-to Engelonde, from þe Duk of Burgoyne, vnto the p*rin*ce of Engelonde, King Harrye3 sone and his[4] heire, for help & socour of men of arme3 and archers 8 ayens the Duk of Orlyauns. And he sent forth[5] þe Erle of Arundell, S*er* Gylbarde Vmfrauylle,[6] Erle of Kyme, and þe Lorde of Cobham, S*er* Iohn Oldecastell, and mony o*þer* gode kny3tis, and worthi squyers and men of arme3, and gode archers, ouyr see[7] yn-to 12 Fraunce, and comyn to[8] Parys, to þe Duk of Burgoyne, *þere*[9] he resceyvyd and welcomyde þese[10] Englisch lordis and alle hir meyne. ¶ And þanne it was do hym to wete þat þe Duk of Orlyaunce was come to Senclowe, faste by Parys, with a grete noumbre of men of 16 armys & arblasters; and þedir[11] went our Englisch men, and fou3tyn w*ith* ham, and gotyn þe brygge of Senclowe; & *þer*e þay slow mony[12] of the Frensch men and Armenacke3, and þe remenaunt fledde, and[13] wolde no lengir abide. And oure Englysch 20 men comyn ayen to Paris; & *þer*e þay tokyn hir leue of the Duke, and comen hom ayen yn-to Engelonde yn saafte, & he[14] yaf ham gret yeftis. ¶ Anon folowyng, the Duk of Orlyaunce sent ambassetours yn-to Engelond, to King Harry þe iiij^the^, besechyng hym of 24 his help & socour ayens his dedely enymye, þe Duke of Burgoyne. And þan þe King made Thom*as*, his sone, Duke of Clarance, & his o*þer* sone John[15] Duke of Bedforde, and his o*þer* sone Vmfray Duk of Gloucestre; & S*er* Thomas Beauforde, Erle of Som*er*set[16]; & þe 28 Duke of Awmarle he[17] made Duk of Yorke. ¶ And þan þe King ordeyned his sone Thom*as*, and[18] Beauford, Erle of Som*er*set,[19] and Sir Iohn Cornewayle, and meny o*þer* lordis, kni3tis[20] &[21] squyers, men[22] of arme3 and[23] archers, to go ouyr[24] yn-to Fraunce, yn

[1] þe Erle TR. [2] *leaf* 122, *back*. [3] þis T. in this R.
[4] his *om*. T. [5] And thanne ther went ou*er* þe see T.
[6] vmfrauylle *om*. T. [7] wente ou*er* þe see T. þe se R. [8] into T.
[9] and þere TR. [10] welcomyd wele and goodly these T.
[11] tho T. [12] moche peple T.
[13] and wente and T. [14] and þe duke T. Duk R.
[15] sone Iohn) TR. John *om*. Kk. [16] Dorsett T. Dorset R.
[17] þe whichche T. [18] and *om*. TR. [19] dorsett T. Dorset R.
[20] lordis and many o*þer* knyghtis T. and kny3tis R.
[21] & *om*. R. [22] and men TR.
[23] and many o*þer* T. [24] to gone ou*er* þe see T. to go over þe se R. to ouyr Kk.

helpyng & streyngthyng of the Duke of Orlyauuce. ¶ And þese worthi lordeȝ, with alle his retynu, schippyd at Hampton, and sayled ouyr yn-to Normandy, and landed at Hoggeȝ. And þere mette with ham þe lorde Hambe, at hir londyng, with vij M[1] men of armeȝ of Frenschmen[1]; and alle were put to flyȝt, and takyn of hem vij C men of armes & iiij C hors, with-out þo þat were slayn yn the felde. And so þei ryden forth þrouȝout Fraunce, and token Castell & tounеȝ, & slowȝ mych pepil of Frenschmen þat with-stode ham, and tokyn meny prysoners as þay roode; and so þai passyd[2] forth til þay comyn to Burdeux; and þere þay restid ham a while, and sette þe cuntre yn pees & rest tylle þe vyntage were redy to sayle; and þanne þe Duk with his mayne com hom yn-to Engelond yn saafte, þankyd be God! ¶ And yn þe same yere was þe Kingis coyne[3] chaynged þrouȝ-out Engelond, by þe King and his counsel, þat is to say, þe noble, half noble, & ferthyng of goolde.

¶ And þe [4]xiiij yere of King Harryeȝ regne þe iiij[the], he lete make galaieȝ of warre, for he hadde hopid to haue past þe grete se, and so forth to Ierusalem, and þere to haue endid his lyf. but God vised hym[5] sone aftir with Infirmyteeȝ and grete sekenesseȝ, þat he myȝt not wel endure no while, so feruentli he was y[6]tak. And he was[7] yn Bedde at Westmynstre yn a faire Chaumbre; and as he lay abedde, he axed his Chaumbirleyn what he[8] callyd that Chaumbyr þat he lay-ynne: he answarde and sayde 'Ierusalem.' þanne[9] he sayde, his prophecie sayde 'he[10] schulde make an ende and deye yn Ierusalem.' and þan[11] he made hym redy vnto God, & disposed alle his wille, and sone aftir he deyed, and was caryed be water fro Westmynstre yn a barge to Feuersham, and fro þennes to Caunturburye be londe, with moche torchelyȝt brennyng, yn-to þe Priorie[12] of Crichirch, and þere he was worthili entered & beried besyde saint Thomas shryne of Cawnturburye. And þus endid þis[13] worthi King Henry abowte myd Lent Sonday, in þe yere of our Lorde Ihesu Crist, M[1]CCCCxiij,[14] on whos soule God haue mercy! Amen!

[1] frensshmen þre sergeauntes of armes with him T. [2] riden R.
[3] yeer þe kingeȝ coyn) was R.
[4] *leaf* 123. [5] him so TR. [6] y *om.* TR.
[7] take and brought T. was brouȝt R. [8] thei T. þey R.
[9] and þanne T. and thanne R. [10] þat he T.
[11] þan *om.* T. [12] abbey T. [13] the T. þe R.
[14] and xiij T.

And aftir þis King Henri, regnyd his sone Henry, þe v^the^ aftir þe co*n*quest.[1] Ca*pitulu*m CC.xliiij.[2]

And aftir þe deth of King Harry þe iiij^the^, regnid King Harry
4 his sone, þat was born at Mu*n*moth yn Walis, þat was[3] a worthi King, and a gracious man, and a gret conquero*ur*. ¶ And yn þe firste yere of his regne, for gret loue & gedenesse, he sent to þe ffreris of Langeley, þe*re* as his Fadir hadde do burye King Richard
8 þe ij^de^, & let take vp his body ayen out of the erthe, and dede bring hym to Westmynstre, yn a ryal chare couert with blak veluet, & baners of diuers armeȝ alle aboute. & al þe horsses drawyng þe chare were trappid yn black, & bete with diuers armeȝ,
12 and mony[4] a torch brennyng, by alle þe wey, til he come to Westmystre. And þere he lette make for hym a ryalle & a solempne terement, and buried hym be Quene Anne his wiff, as his owne desire was, on þe firther syde of Seynt Edwardeȝ schryne,
16 yn the Abbey of Saint Petris of Westmynstre: on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen!

¶ And yn þis same yere weren[5] certeyne of Lollardeȝ and fals heritikis takine, þat hadde pu[r]sued, þrouȝ fals treson, to haue
20 slayn þe[6] King, and for to haue destroyed alle þe clergy of þis Reme. & þai myȝt haue hadde her fals purpos, but oure Lorde God wolde not suffre it; for yn hast þe[7] King hadde warnyng þe*r*of, & of alle hir fals ordinaunce & worchyng, and come sodenly with his power
24 to Saint Joh*n*es-without-Smythfelde; and anon þei tokyn a certeyn of þe Lollardeȝ & fals heritikeȝ, and brouȝt hem[8] vnto þe Kingis p*re*sens, & þe*re* þei[9] tolde all her fals purpos & ordinaunce, how þey wolde haue do & wroȝt, & þay myȝt haue regned &[10] hadde her
28 wylle, and þe*re* þei tolde which were her captens & her[11] gou*er*nours. & þan þe King commaunded ham to þe Tour of London; & þanne þey took moo of ham, boþe w*ith*in þe cite & w*ith*out,[12] and sent ham to Newgate and to[13] bothe[14] Countieȝ. And þan þe*re*[15] were [þei]
32 brouȝt yn[16] examynacion before þe clergy and þe Kingis Iusticeȝ; & þe*re* þei were co*n*uicte of[17] hir fals heresye, & dampned before þe Iusticeȝ for hir fals treson: & þus[18] was her Iugement, þat þay

[1] regnyd Harry h*is* sone T. [2] CC.xliiij *om.* T. CC.xlv R.
[3] Walis and he was T. [4] many TR. moy Kk. [5] weren a TR.
[6] oure TR. [7] oure T. þey R. [8] hem *om.* T. [9] þei *om.* T.
[10] and haue T. [11] her *om.* T. [12] *leaf* 123, *back.* [13] into T.
[14] bothe the T. [15] thei T. [16] into T.
[17] thei were com*m*ited bifore þe clergie for T. conuict befor þe clergie for R.
[18] þis T. this R.

schulde be drawe fro þe Tour of London, þrouȝ London, vnto seint Gyleȝ felde; & þe*re* to be hangid & brent on[1] þe galows. ¶ And also was[2] take S*er* Roger Acton, kniȝt, boþe for Lollardye & eke for treson ayens þe King and þe Reme. and he come afore þe 4
clergye, and was co*n*uict of[3] his[4] lewed Lollardye, and[5] [6]before þe Iustiȝe ydampned to be brent,[6] &[7] to be draw fro þe Tour of Lundon þrouȝ þe cite to Saint Gyleȝ felde, & to[8] be hanged & to be[9] brent. 8

¶ And þe[10] ij yere[11] of King Harryeȝ regne[12] þe v^the^, he hilde a counsel of alle þe lordeȝ of the Reme at Westmynstre; and þe*re* he put ham þe[13] demaunde, & prayed[14] hem of hir godenesse and of her gode counsel[15] to schewe hym, as touchynge þe titile &[16] ryȝt þat 12
he hadde to Normandy, Gasquoyne & Guyenne, þe which þe King of Fraunce withhilde hym[17] wrongefully and vnriȝtfully, þe wh[i]che his auncetreȝ before hym hadde holde be trewe titill of conquest, & riȝt heritage. ¶ The which Normandye, Gasquoyne & Guyenne, þe 16
gode King Edward of Wyndesore, and his[18] ansetryeȝ before hym, hadde holde alle hir lyveȝ tyme. And his Lordeȝ ȝaf hym counsel to sende ambassetours vnto þe King of Fraunce and his counsel, þat[19] he schulde yelde vp to hym his riȝt heritage, þat is to[20] say, Normandie, 20
Gasqueyne, & Guyenne, þe[21] which his p*re*decessoris had y[22]holde afore hym, or ellis he wolde it wynne with dunt of swyrde yn schort tyme, with help[23] of Ih*e*su. ¶ And þanne þe Dolfynne of Fraunce answeryd to our[24] ambassetours, & sayde yn[25] þis manere: 24
þat þe[26] King was ouyr yonge &[27] tendir of age to make eny warre ayens hym, and was not like yette to be no gede (*sic*) warryor to[28] make such a conqueste þe*re* vpon hym; &[29] yn scorne & despite he sent to hym a tonne fulle of teneys-ballis, be-cause he schulde[30] haue su*m*what 28
to[31] play with-alle, for hym & for his[32] lordeȝ; '& þat become hym bettir þanne to mantayne eny warre,' he sayd.[33] ¶ And þanne our[34]

[1] in R. [2] ther was T. [3] was com*m*ited for T. for R.
[4] his clergie and TR. [5] and *om.* R.
[6–6] to be brent and dampnyd bifore the Iustices T. Iustice to be brent & dampned R.
[7] and *om.* T. [8] þe*re* R. [9] to be *om.* TR. [10] in the R.
[11] And in the yeer T. [12] regne *om.* R. [13] this TR.
[14] praide and bisoughte T. praide & besouȝte R.
[15] counceile and good wille T. counsell and goodwill R. [16] and the T.
[17] hym *om.* TR. [18] his TR. hir Kk. [19] and þat TR.
[20] is to TR. is Kk. [21] Gascoigne and Gyene and Normandie þe T.
[22] y *om.* TR. [23] þe helpe T. þe help R. [24] oure T. our R. *om.* Kk.
[25] on T. [26] oure T. [27] and to T. [28] to do and to T. and to R.
[29] And su*m*what T. [30] wolde R. [31] forto T.
[32] for his TR. for Kk. [33] he sayd *om.* T. [34] anoon oure T.

lordeȝ, þat were ambassetours, tokyn hir leue & comyn yn-to Engelond ayen, & tolde þe Kinge and his Counsel of the vngodely answere þat þay hadde of the Dolfyn, and of þe present þat he hadde[1]
4 sent vnto the Kinge. ¶ And whanne þe King hadde herde here wordeȝ, and the answere of the Dolfyne, he was wondir sore agrevyd, & ryȝt evil payed towarde the Frenschmen and towarde þe King & þe Dolfyn, and þouȝt to venge hym apon hem as sone as
8 God wolde sende hym grace and myght; and anon lette[2] make tenysballis for the Dolfyn in alle þe haste þat þay myȝte be maad,[3] & þat þei were harde & grete gune-stonys, for þe Dolfyn to play with-alle. ¶ And þanne anon þe King sent for alle his lordeȝ, &
12 hilde a gret[4] Counsel at Westmynstre, and tolde vnto hem þe answere þat he[5] hadde of the Dolfyn, and of[6] his worthi present to[7] hym and to[8] his lordeȝ, to play with-alle. And *þere* þe King and his lordeȝ were accorded þat þay schulde be redy yn armys with
16 hir power, yn þe best aray þat myȝt be,[9] and gete[10] men of armes and arehers,[11] and alle o*þer* stuff þat longed *þer*to,[12] & to be redy with alle hir retynu to mete at Southhampton be Lammesse next folouyng, without eny delaye; for the King ordeyned is[13] Naueye
20 of schippeȝ, with al man*er* stuff[14] & vitaile þat longid to such a warrio*ur*, of al man*er* ordinaunce,[15] yn the hauen of Southhamton, in[16]-to þe nowmbir of iij^{c} xx^{ti} sayle. ¶ And *þere* fil[17] a grete deseȝe & a foul myschif; for þer were iij lordeȝ þat[18] þe King tryst moche
24 ynne, þat,[19] for fals couetiȝe purpoȝid[20] þe Kingis deth, & þouȝt to haue slayn hym and alle his breþryn or he hadde take þe see, þe which were named þus: S*er* Richarde, þe Erle of Caumbrydge, broþer to þe Duk of York; þe ij was þe Lord Scrope, Treserer of
28 Engelond; þe iij was S*er* Thom*as* Gray, knyȝt, of the Northcuntre. And þeȝe iij lordeȝ afore sayde, for lucre of Moneye, had made promis to þe Frenschmen to[21] haue slayne oure King and alle his worthi brethryn, by a false trayne sodenly, ere þay hadde be war.
32 But God, of his gret grace, hylde his holy hand ouyr ham, & saued

[1] whiche he hadde T. þe whiche he hadde R. þat hadde Kk.
[2] he lete T. [3] maad TR. padde (*sic*) Kk. [4] *leaf* 124. [5] thei T.
[6] of *om.* R. [7] that he sente to T. þat he sente to R. [8] to *om.* T.
[9] be done T. be do R. [10] to gete T.
[11] archers þat myghte be geten T. archers þat myȝte be goten R.
[12] longid toward it T. to it R. [13] þanne his T. [14] of stuff T.
[15] of ordinaun*c*is T. [16] in *om.* T.
[17] And thanne felle ther T. And þanne fil þer R. [18] which þat TR.
[19] ynne þat *om.* T. þat *om.* R.
[20] couetise þat þei hadde purposid & Iugid T. couetiȝe þat þey hadde purposed and iuged R. [21] forto TR.

hem from þis p*are*lous meyne. ¶ And for to haue do[1] þis, þei resceyued of þe Frenschmen a mylyon of golde, þat[2] was þ*ere* oponly previde; and for þer fals treson þey were all iij Iuged vnto deth[3]; and þis was þe Iugement: þat þai schulde be ladde þrouȝ Hampton, 4 and without þe[4] Northegate, þ*ere* to be hedid; & þus þai endide, for her fals couetyse and treson.

¶ Anon as þus[5] was do, þe King and alle his meyne made hem redy, and wenton to schyppe, &[6] sayled forth w*ith* xv^{c} schippeȝ, 8 and arryued with-ynne Sayne, at Kitcaws, vpon our Ladieȝ Evyn, þe[7] Assumpcion, yn Normandye, with al his ordynaunce; & so went[8] forth to Hareflyte, & besegid þe toun al aboute, by londe and[9] by watir, and sent to þe capteyne, and bade hym delyuer þe 12 towne: and he saide, 'non[10] he delyuerd hym, ne non he wolde to hym delyuer,[11] but bade hym do his beste.' ¶ And þan þe[12] Kinge leyde his ordynaunce vnto þe toun, þ*at* is for to saye, Gunneȝ, Engyneȝ,[13] Tripgettis, & schet and cast vnto þe wallis & eke yn-to 16 þe toun, & caste doun both toureȝ and toun, & layde ham vnto þe grounde: & þ*ere*[14] he played at[15] tenys with his harde gune-stoneȝ þat[16] were w*ith*ynne þe toune. ¶ Whanne þai schulde plai, þai songyn 'welawaye and allas þat[17] eny suche tenyeȝ-ballis were made,' 20 and cursed al þo þat warre beganne, & þe tyme þat[18] þei were born. ¶ And on þe morow þe King dede crye at eu*er*y gate of þe toun, þat eu*er*y man schulde be redye, on þe morowe erlye to make assaute vnto þe toun. ¶ And Gilliam[19] Bocher & Iohn Gaunt,[20] w*ith* 24 xij o*þer* worthi burgeȝ, comyn to þe King, and besouȝt hym, of his ryall mageste & power, to [21]withdrawe his malice and[22] destruccion þat he dede vnto hem, & besouȝt hym of viij dayeȝ respite and treweȝ, yef eny rescu myȝt come vnto hem, and ellis to yelde vp þe 28 toun vnto hym, with alle her godeȝ. ¶ And þan þe king sent forth þe Capteyne, and kept þe Remenaunt stille with hym. And þe lorde Gancort went fforth to Rone yn alle hast, vnto þe Dolfyn, for[23] help & soco*ur*; but þ*er* was non, ne no maner rescu[24]; for þe 32 Dolfyn wolde not abyde. ¶ And þus þis Capteyne come ageyne to[25]

[1] þo R. [2] and þat R. [3] the deeth T. [4] þe *om.* R.
[5] this T. þis R. [6] and token and T. [7] þe *om.* T.
[8] wente him T. [9] and eek T. [10] that noon T. [11] yelde TR.
[12] oure T. [13] Engynes and T. engyneȝ and R. [14] þ*ere* *om.* T.
[15] at the T. at þe R. [16] to hem that T.
[17] that eu*er* T. þat evir R. [18] that eu*er* T. þ*at* euer R.
[19] William T. And thanne William R. [20] Graunt R.
[21] *leaf* 124, *back* [22] and his T. & his R. [23] forto haue T.
[24] reson R. [25] vnto TR.

þe King, and yelde vp þe toun, and delyverde hym þe keyeȝ. And
þan he callyd his vncle, þe Erle of Dorset, and made hym Capteyne
of the toun[1] of Hareflete, & delyu*er*ed hym þe keieȝ, and bade hym
4 go put out alle þe Frensch peple, both man, wo*m*man and chylde,
& stuffe þe toun[2] with Englisch men. ¶ And þan þe King sent
yn to Engelonde,[3] þat what crafti man wolde come þidir, & ynhabit
hym þ*er*e ynne þe toune, he scholde have hous and housholde to
8 hym & to his heyreȝ for euyrmore. And þidir went mony dyuers
Marchauntes & Crafti men, & *in*habited ham þ*er*e, to streynth þe
toune, & weryn welcome. ¶ And whenne þe King saw þis, þat
hit was[4] welle stoffed both of vitaile & of men, þis worthi Prynce
12 & King toke his leve, & went hym to Caleys warde by londe.
¶ And þe Frensch men herde of his komyng, and[5] þouȝt to stoppe
his way, þat he scholde not passe þ*at* way; & yn hast broken alle
þe brygges þere eny passage was for hors & man, yn-so-moche þ*er*e[6]
16 myȝt no man passe ouyr þe see Ryuers, noþ*er* on hors ne on foote,
but yef he schulde be drounde. ¶ Wherefore our[7] King, with alle
his peple, went & souuȝte his way fer vp to[8] Paris warde; & þ*er*e
was alle þe ryal power of Fraunce redy to yef hym batayle, and to
20 destroy al his pepyl; but God[9] almyȝti was his gide, and saued
hym and alle his peple,[10] and withstode alle[11] his enymys purpos,
þankyd be God, þat so sauyd[12] his owne knyȝt & King yn his
riȝtfull tytyl! ¶ And[13] our King saw[14] þe multitude & nowmbre of
24 his enymys to withstonde his way & for to yeue hym bataile, þanne
þe King, with a meke hert and a gode spiryt, lyfte vp his handeȝ to
Almyȝti God,[15] besechyng hym of[16] help & socour, and þat dai to
saue his trew seruauntes. ¶ And þanne our King gadryd alle his
28 lordeȝ togadir,[17] and oþ*er* pepil aboute hym, and bade hem alle to be
of[18] gode chere, for þei schulde haue a[19] fayre daye and a gracious
victori, and þe bettir of al hir[20] enymys; and prayed hem alle to
make hem redy vnto þe batayle; for he wolde raþ*er*e be ded þat

[1] towne that is to seie T.
[2] stuffid this towne of Harflete T.
[3] Englond and dide crie in eueri good towne of Englond T. Engelonde and dede crie in everi good town of engelonde R.
[4] þat hit was T. saw þat it was R. þat is Kk.
[5] thei T. [6] þat ther T. þat þer R. [7] þe R. [8] ferre vnto T.
[9] god that is T. [10] meynee T. meyne R. [11] alle *om.* TR.
[12] that sauyd so T. saued so R. [13] And thanne TR.
[14] king biholdi*ng* and seyng T. beholdinge and seynge R.
[15] god and TR. [16] of his TR. [17] togadir *om.* TR.
[18] of TR. a Kk. [19] haue a TR. schulde a Kk. [20] his TR.

day, in batayle or yn felde,[1] þan be[2] take of his enymys; for he wolde nevir put þe rem of Engelond to no Rawnson for his persone. ¶ And þe Duk of Yorke fill on his[3] kne, and besauȝt þe King of a bone, þat he wolde graunte hym þat day þe vawnt-ward yn his 4 batayle: and þe King graunted hym his asking, and sayde, "gramarcy, Cosyn of Yorke!" and prayed hym to make hym redye. ¶ And þanne he bade euery man to [4]orden hym a stake of tre, and[5] scharp both[6] endis, þat þe stake myȝt be pyght yn[7] the 8 erthe a-slop, þat hir enymyeȝ schulde not ouyr-ryde hem,—for þat was hir fals purpos,—and arayed hem al[8] *þere* for[9] to ouyr-ryde our meyne at þe first comyng of ham sodeynly yn þe first bront.

¶ And alle nyȝt before þe bataile, þe Frenschmen made mony 12 grete fires, and moche revell with hontynge, and[10] played our King and his lordeȝ at þe dys, and an archer for[11] a blanke of hir moneye; for þei wende hadde[12] be heyreȝ.

[*The Battle of Agincourt.*]

¶ The morow[13] aros, þe day gan spryng, and þe King, be gode 16 avis, lette arme[14] his bataile and[15] wyngeȝ, and charged euery man to kepe hym hoole togadir, & prayed hem al to be of gode chere. And whanne þay were redy, he askid what tyme of þe day it was, & þay sayde 'pryme.' ¶ "Thanne," said our King, "nowe is gode 20 tyme, for alle Engelond prayeth for vs; and *þer*fore be of gode chere, & lette vs go to our iorney." And þanne he sayde with an hygh voyce: ¶ "In þe name of Almyȝti God and[16] Saynt George, avaunt banarer! and Saynt George, þis day þyn help!" 24

¶ And þanne þeȝe Frenschmen come prikkyng doun as þei wolde haue ouyr-rydyn alle oure meyne; but God and our archers—made hem sone to stomble; for our archers schet neuyr arowe amys, but it[17] perisched and brouȝt to grounde man and hors[18]; for þey 28 schet þat day for a wager; and our stakeȝ made hem top ouyr terve, eche on o*þer*, þat þay lay on hepis ij spere lengthe of heighthe. And our King, with his meyne and with[19] men of armeȝ, evir

[1] wolde rathir that day be deed in the feld T. þe feeld R.
[2] to be T. [3] his *om.* T. [4] *leaf* 125.
[5] of tre and *om.* T. [6] at bothe R. [7] into TR.
[8] hem alł T. hem alle R. al Kk. [9] for *om.* T.
[10] and shoutyng and T. and showtinge and R.
[11] all for T. al for R. [12] all hadde TR. [13] morne T. morn R.
[14] araie TR. [15] and his TR. [16] and of R. [17] that it T.
[18] hors and man T. [19] with *om.* R.

[1]layde doune; for he most fiȝt[1] with his owne hondeȝ; and our[2] gode archers lackid[3] on[4] arowes, and[5] layde on with stakeȝ. ¶ And þus Almyȝti God and Saint George brouȝt our enymys to grounde, and
4 ȝaf vs þat day þe victori; & *þere* were slayn of Frensch-men þat day yn þe ffelde of Agyncourt, moo þan a[6] xj M†, without prysoners þat were take. & *þere* were nowmbred *þat* day of Frenschmen yn the felde, mo þan vj xx M†, and of Englyschmen nouȝt vij M†; but God
8 þat day fauȝt for vs.

¶ And aftir come[7] þer tydyngeȝ to þe[8] King, þat *þere* was a new Batayle of Frenschmen ordeyned, redy to stele on hem, and comyn towarde hym. Thanne[9] anon þe[10] King lette crye þat eu*er*y
12 man scholde sle his prysoner þat he hadde take; and anon arrayed his bataile ayen redy for[11] to fiȝt with þe Frenschmen. ¶ Whanne þay say þat our men killyd doun[12] her prysoners, þanne withdrow þay[13] ham, and brak hir batayle and alle hir araye; and þus our
16 King (as a worthi conqueror) hadde þat day þe victory yn the ffelde of Agyncourt yn Pycardye.

¶ And þanne our King returned ayen *þere* þe Batayle was, to se what pepil was ded of Englyschmen, and yef eny were hurt þat
20 myȝt be holpe; and *þere* were ded yn þe ffelde, on þer p*ar*ty[14] þe Duk of Barry, þe Duk of Launson,[15] þe Duk of Braban, the Erle of Nauerne, þe Chief counstable of Fraunce, and viij o*þer* erleȝ, and þe Archebischoppe of Saumte, and of gode Barons C[16] and moo,
24 and of worthi kniȝtis of grete alyaunce of Cote armyours, M[1] C.[17] And of Englyschmen was ded þat day, þe[18] Duk of Yorke and þe Erle of Suffolk; and of alle o*þer* of Englisch[19] Nacyon *þere* were not ded passyng xxvj bodieȝ, thanked be God! And þis batayle was
28 on a Friday, þe[20] which was Crispyn & Crispinianeȝ day, yn the moneth of October. And ano*n* þe King co*m*mawnded to bery ham, and the Duke of York to be caried forth with ham, and þe Erle of Suffolke. And *þere* were tak[21] prisoners, þe Duk of Orlyance, þe
32 Duk of Burbone, þe Erle of Vandom, þe Erle of Ewe, þe Erle of Richmond, and S*er* Bursigaunt, Marchal of Fraunce. And mony

[1—1] leide downe for him bifeH to fighte that day T. laide doun) for him fil to figte R.
[2] our *om.* T. [3] þat lackeden T. [4] on *om.* T. [5] and *om.* T.
[6] a *om.* TR. [7] that come T. [8] oure T. our R.
[9] And T. Thanne *om.* R. [10] oure T. our R. [11] for *om.* TR.
[12] a downe T. [13] thei withdrewe T. [14] on þer p*ar*ty *om.* TR.
[15] Alaunsonn T. [16] an C T. [17] A M[1] and v C T.
[18] þe good T. þe gode R. [19] *leaf* 125, *back.* [20] þe *om.* T.
[21] take *om.* T.

o*þer* worthi lordeȝ were take yn þis batayle of Agyncourt, and brouȝt vnto þe toun of Caleys, and so ouyr se[1] with þe King yn-to[2] Engelond, and londid at Douer, yn Kent, with alle his prisoners in saafte,—þankid be Ih*e*su!—and so cam to[3] Caunt*ur*bury, and offred 4 at Saint Thom*a*s Schryne; and so roode forth þrouȝ Kent þe next way to Eltham, & *þer*e he restid hym tylle he wolde come to London. ¶ And þan þe Meire of London and þe Aldermen and[4] þe Schereffeȝ,[5] with alle þe worþi Comeners and craftis, comyn to þe 8 Blake-Heth, welle and worthilye arayed to welcome our Kyng with dyuers melodye, and[6] þanke Allemyȝty god of his g*ra*cious victory þat he hadde schewed to[7] hym.

[*Henry V's Reception in London.*]

¶ And so þe King and his prysoners passyd forth by ham, til 12 he com vnto[8] Seint Thomas watryng; and *þer*e mette[9] with hym alle þe Religious with precession, and welcomyd hym; and so[10] þe King come ridynge[11] with his prysoners þrouȝ þe cite of London, where *þer*e[12] was schewyd mony a faire syȝt at alle þe Conditeȝ and 16 at þe Cros yn Chepe, as yn heuynly aray, angelis,[13] archaungelis, Patriarchus, prophetis,[14] and virginis with dyuers melodieȝ, sensyng[15] and syngyng to welcome our King, and alle conditus[16] rennyng wyne. And þe King passyd forthe vnto Saint Pauleȝ; and *þer*e[17] 20 met with hym xiiij Bischopeȝ, reuersed and mitryd, with Censers to welcome þe King, and sungu*n* for his gracious victori *Te deum laudamus*. And *þer*e þe King offred, &[18] roode forth[19] to West-mynstre; and þe[20] Maire toke leue[21] of þe King, and rode hoom 24 ayen.

¶ And yn þe thrydde yere of King Henryeȝ regne þe v^the^, Came þe Emp*er*our of Almayne, King of Rome & of Hungary, yn-to Engelonde, and so to þe cite of London. And þe Maire, aldermen,[22] 28 and scherevi3,[23] with þe[24] worthi craftis of London, be þe Kingiȝ co*m*maundement, met with hym on the Blake-Heth yn þe best aray þat þay cowthe, on hors bak; & *þer*e þay welcomyd hym, and brouȝt hym to London with moche honour and grete reuerence. 32

[1] þe sea T. [2] king of T. [3] vnto T. [4] & R. and *om.* Kk.
[5] london with the sherefis and þe Aldirmen T. [6] & to R.
[7] for TR. [8] to T. [9] þei mette T. [10] so *om.* T. [11] MS. adynge.
[12] that ther T. [13] of Aungels TR. [14] prophetis *om.* R.
[15] of sensyng T. [16] þe Condites T. þe conditis R. [17] þanne T.
[18] & took and T. [19] forth *om.* T. [20] thanne the T. þenne þe R.
[21] his leue T. [22] and the aldirmen T.
[23] with the sherefis T. and shereues R. shereviz Kk. [24] and þe T.

And atte Seint Thom*as* watryng þ*er*e mette with hym the King and alle[1] his lordeȝ yn gode aray. And þ*er*e was a worthi metyng betwene þe Emp*er*our and þe King; & þ*er*e thay kussid togadreȝ,
4 & braced ech othir; and þan[2] þe King toke þe Emp*er*o*ur* be þe hande; & so þai come rydyng þrouȝt þe cite of London vnto Saint Pouleȝ; and þ*er*e þay lyȝte, and offred; and alle þe[3] Bischopeȝ stode reuersed, with censers yn here hondeȝ, censyng. ¶ Thanne[4]
8 þei tokyn hir hors, and ryden to[5] Westmynstre; and þ*er*e the King loggyd the Emp*er*oure yn his owne palis, & þere[6] restid hym a grete while, and alle atte þe Kingis cost.

¶ And sone aftir come þe Duk of Holond yn-to Engelond, to[7]
12 se þe Emp*er*our, and to speke with hym and with þe King; and he was worthily resceyved and loggyd yn the Bischopis In of Hely, and alle at þe Kinges cost. ¶ And whanne þe Emp*er*oure hadde wel restid hym and sey þe lande yn dyuers partees, and knew þe
16 co*m*moditees, þanne, be processe of tyme, he toke his leue of the King; but ere he went[8] he was made Knyȝt of the Gartir, & resceyved and weryd þe lyuerey; and þanne he thanked þe King and alle[9] his worthi lordeȝ; and[10] þe King & he went ou*er* þe see
20 to Calys, and abydyn þ*er*e longe tyme, to haue an onswere of the Frensch King. And atte þe[11] last hit come, and plesyd hym riȝt nought; and[12] þe Emp*er*o*ur* toke his leve of the King, and passyd forth yn Goddis name; and oure King come ouyr ayen yn-to
24 Engelond, yn alle þe hast þat he myȝt; and þ*a*t was on Saynt Lukes eue þat he come to Lambehithe; and on the Monday next ffoluynge he come yn[13]-to the p*ar*lement atte Westmynstre. And yn þis same yere was a gret derth of Corne yn Engelond, but,[14]—
28 thankyd be God!—hit lastid not long.

How the King went þe secunde tyme yn-to Normandy; & of þe sege of Roone.[15] Cap*itulu*m CC xlv.[16]

And yn þe forth yere of King Harryeȝ regne[17] þe fifthe, he
32 hilde his p*ar*lement at Westmynstre yn the begynnyng of[18] moneth of October, and lastid vnto þe purificacion of our Lady þanne next folowyng. And þ*er*e was grawnted vnto þe King, to maynetayne

[1] the kyng and alle T. hym alle Kk. [2] thanne T. þan *om.* R.
[3] þe *om.* R. [4] And þann*e* T. And þenne R. [5] *leaf* 126.
[6] þere he TR. [7] to come and T. [8] þede T. yede R.
[9] alle *om.* T. [10] And thanne TR. [11] þe *om.* T. [12] And thanne T.
[13] yn *om.* R. [14] but *om.* T. [15] How the king . . . Roone *om.* TR.
[16] CC xlvj R. [17] regne *om.* T. [18] of the T. of þe R.

his warres, bothe of[1] sp*irit*ualte & temp*or*alte, an hole taxe and a dyme.[2] ¶ And[3] anon þe King prayed al his lordeȝ to make hem redy to streynth hym yn his ryȝt; and anon he lette make a new retynu, and charged alle men to be redye at Hampton yn þe[4] 4
Whitson woke þanne next folowyng, w*ith*out eny delay. ¶ And[5] þe Kinge made þe Duke of Bedforde Protector & defender of his Reme of Engelond yn his absens, and charged hym to kepe his lawe3, &[6] mayntayne boþe[7] sp*irit*ualte and[8] temp*or*alte. ¶ And 8
whanne þe King hadde þus do, and sette alle þyng yn kinde, on Saint Markeȝ day, þat was þat tyme Hocwedynesday, he toke his hors atte Westmynstre, and come rydyng to Poulis; & þ*er*e he offred, and toke his leue, and[9] rode forth þrow þe cite, taking his 12
leve of alle man*er* of[10] peple, as welle of[11] pore as of[11] Rich, praynge alle hem[12] yn gen*er*all to pray for hym. And so he roode forth to Saint Georgeȝ, and þ*er*e he offred, and toke is leve of þe Maire, Chargyng hym to kepe welle his Chaumbre; and so rode forth to 16
Hampton, and þ*er*e abode tille his retynu was redy and come to hym; for þ*er*e was alle[13] his Naueye of schippeȝ, with his ordynaunce, gadred and welle stuffyd, as longyd to such a ryalle Kinge, with alle man*er* of[14] vitayleȝ for his[15] pepille, as welle for hors as for 20
man, as longyd for such a warriour, þat is to say, armure, Gonneȝ, tripgettis, Engyneȝ, soweȝ, Bastilleȝ, bryggeȝ of lethir, scaling laddres, mallis, [16]spadeȝ, schouylleȝ, Pykys,[17] boweȝ and[18] aroweȝ, bowstrynge3, scheftis,[19] &[20] pipis fulle of aroweȝ, as nede for such a 24
worthi warriour þat no þing was to sech. &[21] whanne tyme come, þedir come to hym scheppeȝ lade with[22] gunepowder.

[*Henry V's second Invasion of France.*]

¶ Whanne[23] þis[24] was rede, and his retynu come, þe King and his lordeȝ, with alle his rial host, went to schippe, & tokyn þe see & 28
sayled yn-to Normandye, and landed at Towk vpon[25] Lammas Day þan next; and þ*er*e he made xxviij[26] knightis at his londyng.

[1] of þe T.
[2] dyme in susteynyng of his warres T. dyme in susteynynge of his werris R.
[3] And þanne T. and thenne R. [4] þe *om.* T.
[5] And there T. and þere R. [6] and to T. [7] boþe the T.
[8] and þe T. [9] and so TR. [10] of *om.* T. [11] of the T.
[12] hem alle T. ham alle R. [13] alle *om.* T. [14] of *om.* R.
[15] for such a roiall T. for such a rial R. [16] *leaf* 126, *back.*
[17] Pikeyses Pavises T. Pikeys Pavis R. [18] and *om.* T.
[19] Tonnes Cheftis T. Tonnes Chiftis R. [20] & *or* T. [21] & *om.* TR.
[22] with Gonnes and T. [23] And whanne R. A[illegible] whenne T.
[24] all this T. [25] vpon þe T. [26] xlviij TR.

¶ And þanne þe King, hering of mony enymys vpon þe see, þat is to sey, ix grete Carylis, hulkys,[1] Galeyeȝ & schippiȝ, that were come to[2] destroye his Nauey, anon[3] he commaunded þe Erle of the
4 March to be chyff Capteyne, and mony worthi lor[d]eȝ with hym, with[4] men of armys and archers, to go to the see, þat non enmyes defouled his Nauye[5] ne entred his londe yn no maner party for to destrowble his viage ne[6] corneye. ¶ And anon þe erle toke his
8 meyne, and went to schyppe, and skimmed the see, and kepte þe see-costeȝ, þat no maner[7] enymys durste rowte[8] vpon þe see. ¶ And anon þe Kinge sent his heroudes vnto þe Capten of Towke, & chargyd hym to delyuer is[9] Castell and his toun, & ellis he
12 schulde leve neyþer[10] man ne child a[11]lyve. And anon þe Captene & iiij oþer burgeȝ brouȝt the keyeȝ vnto þe King, and besouȝt hym of grace; and þe Kinge delyuerd[12] to Ser Iohn[13] Kighley þe keieȝ, and made hym Capteyn, & commawnded hym to put out[14] alle þe[15]
16 Frenschmen, bothe of þe Castell and of the toun. ¶ And þere besyde was þe Castell of Louers; and þedir þe King sent þe Erle Marchall, with a faire mayne, and sawted þe toun; and anon it was yelded vp vnto[16] þe Erle, & brouȝt hym þe keyeȝ,[17] & he
20 brouȝt þe keyeȝ to þe King; & þe King toke to[18] hym þe keyeȝ, and made hym Capteyn of the Castell of Louers & of alle þat longed þerto, and charged him to[19] delyuer oute alle þe F[r]enschmen.

¶ And þan þe King[20] hilde forth his way to Cane, þat was a
24 strong toune and a faire, and a ryalle Castell þerynne. And anon he sent his herodde ȝ vnto þe Capteyn, and Chargyd hym to delyuer þe toun and his Castel, or ellis he wolde hit gete with[21] streynth of hond.

28 ¶ And þai answerd and sayd to him, 'non of hym he toke,[22] ne non þey[23] wolde delyuer vnto hym.'[24] ¶ And þanne[25] anon he leyde his sege to þe toun, and layde gunneȝ on euery syde, and bete adoun both walleȝ & toureȝ, and slow myche pepil yn hir[26] howseȝ
32 & eke yn stretes. ¶ And þe gode Duk of Clarens, he[27] layde doun[28]

[1] hulkis and T. [2] forto T. [3] And anoon T. [4] of R.
[5] his Navie T. his Naueie R. Nauye Kk.
[6] ne his TR. [7] maner of TR. [8] come T. [9] him his TR.
[10] neiþir leue T. neyther leve R. [11] on T. [12] dide delyuer T.
[13] Iohn of R. [14] putte out TR. put Kk. [15] þe *om.* TR.
[16] yolden to T. yolde to R. [17] and þe keies brought to him T.
[18] to *om.* TR. [19] him to T. to RKk. [20] And þe kyng þanne T.
[21] with dynt of swerde and T. [22] saide he took him noon R. [23] he R.
[24] and seide he took hem noon ne noon he wolde delyuer to him T.
[25] thanne *om.* T. [26] hir *om.* T. [27] he *om.* R. [28] a downe T.

þe wallis on his syde vnto þe grounde; and so with ynne a while
þe King be his counsel assauted þe toune alle aboute; and anon þe
Duk of Clarans had entyrd yn-to the toun, and slowȝ doun ryȝt til
þat he come vnto þe King, and spared neþer man ne childe; and 4
euyr þai cryed "a Clarans, a Clarans, Seint George!" & slouȝ doun
riȝt; and þere was ded on þe wallis,[1] on þe Kingis syde, a worthi
man þat me callid Sprengehose, þe which þe King commaunded to
be beryed yn þe abbey of Cane, fast by William Conqueroure: on 8
whose soule, God haue mercy! amen! [2]And thanne[3] þe King come
yn-to þe toun, with his Broþer þe Duk of Clarens, and mony oþer
worthi lordeȝ,[4] with moche solempnite and myrthe, and þanne þe
King commaunded þe[5] Capteyne to delyuer his[6] Castell; and he 12
besouȝt þe King þat he wolde yeue[7] hym xiiij dayeȝ of[8] respite,
yef eny rescu wolde come; and yf non come, to delyuer hym þe
keyeȝ and þe Castelle atte his owne commaundement. ¶ And
vndir þis composicion was the toun[9] & þe Castell of Bayons, with 16
oþer tounes, fortaliceȝ & villageȝ, yn-to þe noumbre of xiiij tounes.
And[10] vpon þe hylle before the castell of Cane, þe[11] King pyght
alle his tentis, þat semyd a toun as moche as Cane. & by þat
come tydyngis þat no rescu[12] wolde come þere; and[13] so, at þe xiiij 20
dayes ende, þe Capteyne come out, and delyuered þe keyeȝ and þe
Castell to our King; And Bayons and þe oþer xiiij tounes weryn
delyuerd vnto[14] hym also. and anon þe King delyuerd þe keyes to
þe Duk of Clarans, and made hym Capten, both of the toun and of 24
þe Castell, & made hym Capteyn of Bayons, & of al þe oþer tounes
also, and so[15] entred þe Castell & þe toun[16] also; and þere he hylde
his Seint Georgeȝ feste; and þere he made xv Kniȝtis of the Bath.[17]
And þe King commaunded to[18] put out alle þe Frenschmen, boþe 28
man & womman; and no man so hardy to defoule no womman, ne
take no maner gode away from ham, but late hem passe yn pees,
vpon[19] deth; and þere passed out of the toun, yn on day, moo þan
xv c wymmen. 32

[1] on þe wallis *om.* T. [2] *leaf* 127. [3] thanne T. þanne R. when Kk.
[4] and many oþer lordes T. [5] commandid þe kyng vnto the T.
[6] him his TR. [7] kyng to yeue T. þe kinge to yeve R. [8] of *om.* R.
[9] was the towne T. was þe toun) R. the toun *om.* Kk.
[10] And *om.* T. ac Kk. [11] oure T. oure R.
[12] rescue T. rescu R. [13] and TR. [14] to T. [15] so *om.*
[16] þe toun) and þe castell R.
[17] Bath there was ser lowes Robserd Salyn Cheyne Mongomeric and many oþer were maad knyghtis T. Bath and þere was sir lowis Robessart Salyn Cheyne Moungomery and meny oþer R.
[18] hem forto T. ham forto R. [19] vpon þe T.

¶ And þanne þe[1] King lete stuffe þe Toun and þe Castell with Englisch men, and ordeyned ij Capteyneȝ, on for the toun and a-noþ*er* for the Castell, and chargyd ham, vpon her lyf, to kepe wel
4 the toun and þe Castell. And or he[2] went þenneȝ, he gat valeys Newelyn, & leyde sege[3] to Chierburgh. And þat[4] sege layde þe Duk of Gloucestre with a strong pouer, and be processe of tyme gat it, and made þ*er*e a Capteyne. And þe[5] same tyme þe Erle of
8 Warwic layde sege[6] to Dounstount, & gat hit, and put þ*er*yn a capteyne.

¶ And for to speke moore of the Erle of the Marche, þat þe King hadde sette[7] to scom þe see and þe Cooste ȝ of Engelonde for
12 enymys, þe wynde aros so vp-on hem, þat þei wende alle for[8] to haue loste her lyveȝ; but þrouȝ þe grace of God, and goode gouernaunce, þey þat were within the Ile of Wight, ryden al þat storme þere.[9] ¶ And þ*er*e were lost ij Carrekeȝ & ij balyngers with
16 marchaundis godis, and alle þe pepyl þ*at* were þ*er*ynne; & anoþ*er* Caryk droff before Hampton, and drew his Mast ouyr the toun wallis; and þis[10] was on[11] saynt Barthelemeweȝ day. ¶ And whann alle þis storme was cecid, þis worthi Erle of the Marche
20 tooke his schippe with his meyne, and went ayen[12] to þe see, and londid yn Normandy at Hoggeȝ, and so rode forth towarde þe King; and euyr as he cam, þe Frenschmen fledde. ¶ And[13] there com to hym an Antony pygge, and folowed þe ost al þat way tyl
24 thay come tylle[14] a grete wasch; and þ*er*e[15] þay drad to haue be ded, for the wat*er* closed ham so þat þay myȝt noughere goo[16] out. ¶ But atte þe[17] last, þis pygge [18]and God[19] brouȝt hem out alle[20] saaf; and þ*er*e þay cauȝt a gyde that knewe alle the cuntre aboute,[21]
28 and he brouȝt ham þrouȝ quicsonde, and so yn-tille[22] an Ile; and þ*er*e they toke meny prysoners yn her way[23] toward the King yn her iourney[24] towarde[25] Cane.

And þ*er*e þe King welcomyd hym, and toke his iourney
32 towarde[26] Argenton, & anon it was yolde vnto þe King, and þai[27]

[1] oure T. our R. [2] And eer þat oure kyng T. þey R. [3] a sege T.
[4] at þat T. [5] þat T. [6] a sege T. [7] kyng took T. [8] for *om.* T.
[9] þei rid*en* withinne the Ile of wight there in all þat storme T. þey that were wight ryden al þat storme þere Kk.
[10] þat T. [11] vpon T.
[12] and wente ayen T. and wente R. went Kk. [13] And þanne T.
[14] to TR. [15] þ*er*e *om.* T. [16] gete T. [17] þe *om.*
[18] *leaf* 127, *back.* [19] and god *om.* T. [20] ham alle out R.
[21] aboute *om.* T. [22] to TR. [23] wey as thei wente T.
[24] yn her iourney *om.* TR. [25] vnto T. [26] to T. vnto R.
[27] there thei T.

hadde her lyues, & went hir way. ¶ And þanne þe[1] King remeued to a strong toun[2] callyd Cessy, and *þere* was a fayr Mynstre, and þay yelde it anon vnto[3] þe King. And[4] þe King went anon[5] fro þenne3 to Launson,[6] and gat[7] þe toun and[8] brigge. And[9] þe King 4 sent þe Erle of Warwic to a toun me[10] callith Belham, with a strong power; and anon þay yelde ham,[11] and put ham yn the Kingis grace[12]: and so dede mony mo stronge toune3 & castellis þat were in þo partee3. ¶ And fro þennes þey went to Vernyl in 8 Perche; and anon it was yolden to[13] þe King, bothe toun & castell, bodye3 and godes, at the Kingis grace. And so þe King gat and conquered alle the toune3 and Castell*es*, Pile3,[14] Streynthis, and Abbeye3,[15] vnto Pountlarge, & fro þenne3 vnto the Cite of Roone. 12

[*The Lollard, Sir John Oldcastle.*]

¶ And yn þe .v. yere of King Henrye3 reing þe v^the^, S*er* Iohn Oldecastell, knight, þat was þe Lorde of[16] Cobbam, was arestyd for Lollardye, and brou3t yn-to[17] the Tour of London. And anon aftir he brak out of þe Tour, and went ynto Walis; and there he 16 kept hym longe tyme. ¶ And at the[18] laste, þe Lorde Powis mette with hym and tooke hym; but he stode at grete defence longe tyme, and was soore wounded or he wolde be take; and so þe Lorde Powys meyne brou3t hym out of Walis to London yn a 20 whirlecole; & so he was brou3t to Westmynstre, & there was[19] examyned of certeyn poynte3 þat were put vpon hym. & he sayde not nay; and so he was co*n*uycte be[20] þe clergy of[21] Lollardye, & dampned before þe Iusti3e vnto[22] deth for treson; and so he was 24 hadde vnto þe Tour ayen, and þere he was laide on a hurdil, and draw þrough þe cite to Saint Gyle3 Felde, & *þere* was made a new paire of Galows, and a stronge chayne, and a coler of yron for hym, and *þere* he was hanged and brent on þe galous, & alle for his 28 lewdeness &[23] fals opynyons.

[1] oure T. our R. [2] towne þat men T. town) þat me R.
[3] to TR. [4] And þanne TR. [5] anon *om.* TR.
[6] Alaunsonn T. [7] wanne T. wan R. [8] and þe TR.
[9] And *om.* T. [10] þat men T. *þat* me R.
[11] ham *om.* T. [12] hem in his grace and in þe kyngis T.
[13] vnto TR. [14] Piles and T.
[15] and abbeies T. & Abbeye3 R. abbeye3 Kk. [16] of *om.* R.
[17] vnto T. [18] the *om.* T. [19] he was T. [20] of TR.
[21] for TR. [22] vnto the T. vnto þe R. [23] and for his TR.

[1] How the King sent his vncle Syr Beaufort, Duk of Excestre, before the cite of Roon, and there displayed his Baner.[1]

And[2] yn the vi^the^ yere of King Harrie3 regne þe v^the^, he sent
4 his vncle, Sir Thomas Beauforde, Duk of Excestre, w*ith* a fayre manye of men of arme3 and archers, a[3]fore þe cite of Roone, & þ*ere* displayed his baner, & sent herode3 vnto þe toun, and bade hem yelde it[4] vnto oure King, her lige lorde. ¶ And þai saide he[5]
8 toke hem non to kepe, ne no*n* he schulde haue þ*ere*, but yf it were ry3t dere bou3t and medid with hir hande3; for other answer wolde þey no*n* yeve.[6] ¶ And þere þe[7] Duk toke gode[8] avysement of the toun and[9] of the grounde al about; and anon þ*ere* yssued out of þe cite
12 a grete meny of me*n* of arme3, bothe on horsbak & eke[10] on fote; & anon our mayne mette with ham, [11]and ovirthrew an hep of hem; and there were slayn and take xxx^ti^ pe*r*sone3 of right gode menne3 bodie3; and þe rempnaunt fledde vnto[12] the toun. And þe
16 Duk went ayen[13] vnto Pountlarge vnto þe King and tolde hym alle how he hadde sped, and how hym lykyd þe grounde. ¶ And anon as he was go, þey cast adoun al her[14] subbarbe3 about þe cite, vnto þe harde grounde, for þe King schulde haue þ*ere*[15] no*n* refreschyng
20 at his comyng. ¶ And the Fryday before Lammas day þen next, our King w*ith* his ost come before Roone, and layde[16] his sege rounde about þe[17] cite, and anon leet leye his owne[18] ordinaunce vnto the toun. ¶ And þe King and his lorde3 were logged yn the
24 Charterhous, and gret streyngth about hym, and þat was yn þe est partye of þe cetey. And þe Duk of Clarans loggyd hy*m* at þe westende, yn a wast abbeye before þe porte of Caux. ¶ And the Duk of Excestre yn the North syde, before þe Port Denys; and
28 betwene þe Duk of Clarens & þe Duk of Excestre was þe Erle Marchal logged, with a strong pouer, before[19] þe castell Gate. ¶ And þan was þe Erle of Ormonde, and þe Lorde Haryngton, and þe lorde Talbot with his[20] retynu, next hym; and þanne S*er* Iohn
32 Cornewayle, and mony o*per* noble kni3tis of name with hir retynu, lay with þe Duk of Clarens. And from þe Duk of Excestre

[1–1] *om.* TR. [2] Of the Sege of Roone. And T.
[3] to R. [4] þat Citee T. yelde þ*a*t Cite R.
[5] þat he T. [6] yeue but Gonnes T.
[7] there the T. þere þe R. þ*ere* Duk Kk. [8] gode *om.* T.
[9] of the toun and *om.* TR. [10] eke *om.* TR. [11] *leaf* 128.
[12] ayen into TR. [13] ayen *om.* T. [14] þe T.
[15] there schulde haue T. [16] and anoo*n* he sette T. sette R.
[17] that T. [18] owne *om.* TR. [19] with a strower bifore T.
[20] her T. hir R.

towarde þe King weryn logged þe Lorde Roos, þe Lorde[1] Wylughby, þe Lorde Fitzhugh,[2] and S*er* Will*ia*m Porter, knizt, with hir retynu, before þe Port Seint Hillary. ¶ And þan was þe Erle of Mortayne, with his retynu, logged yn þe Abbey of Saynt 4 Kat*er*yne; and þe Erle of Sawlesbery with is retynu lay on þat on[3] syde of Saynt Katerynes; & S*er* Iohn Gray, knight, was logged at þe[4] Mount Saint Mychell; and S*er* Philippe Leiche, knight, þe Kingis tresorer, was logged betwene þe watir of Sayne and þe abbey, 8 and kepte þe warde vndir þe hille. And þe Baron of Carew was loggid[5] on þe watir syde to kepe þe passage, and Iemco þe skquier lay next hym on þe water syde; & þay[6] ij Squiers kept manly þe watir of Sayne, and fauzt w*ith* her enymys oft tymez. And on 12 þ*at* oþ*er*[7] syde of Sayne lay þe Erle of Hontyngton and Maistir Nevyle, þe Erlez sone of Westmerlonde, and S*er* Gilbert Homfrauile, þe Erle of Kyme, S*er*[8] Richarde of Arundell, and þe Lorde Ferrers w*ith* hir retynu, before þe Port de Pount; & eche of these 16 lordez hadde strong ordynaunce. ¶ And þe King dede make at Pountlarge, ouyr þe watir of Sayne, a strong and a myzty Cheyne[9] of Iren, & put it þrouz grete pilez ffast pyght yn the grounde; & þat went ouyr þe Ryver of Sayne, þat no vessell myzt passe þat way 20 in no kind. And aboue þat chayne þe King leet make a brygge ouyr þe watir of Sayne, þat man & horse & alle othir [10]Carrage myzt go to and fro, at[11] alle tymez whanne þat[12] nede were.

¶ And thanne come þe Erle of Warwic, and hadde gote Douns- 24 rount vnto þe King; and anon þe King sent hym[13] to Caudebeek, to besege it. And whenne he com before the toun, he sent hys heroudez vnto þe Capteyne, and bade hym yelde vp þe toun[14] on[15] payn of deth. And anon he layde his sege; & þan þe Capteyne 28 besouzt þe Erle þat he myzt come vnto[16] his presens & speke with hym; and so þe gode Erle graunted hym. ¶ Thanne[17] he come out, and iiij oþ*er* burgez with hym, and Entretyd so with þe Erle þat this toun was vndir composic*i*on to do as þe cite of Roone dede; 32 and þe Erle g*ra*unted and consentyd þer-to, vpon þis condic*i*on, þat þe Kyngez Nauey, w*ith* his ordynaunce, myzt passe vp by ham in

[1] lord of TR. [2] lord Phehew T. [3] oþ*er* T.
[4] þe abbey þat is called T. þe *om.* R.
[5] was loggid T. was logged R. was loggid *om.* Kk.
[6] and þo T. & þay *om.* R. & þay and þay Kk. [7] one R.
[8] and s*ir* T. [9] Brigge R. [10] *leaf* 128, *back.*
[11] at TR. and Kk. [12] þat *om.* TR.
[13] sent the Erle of Warwik T. sente þe erle of Warwick R.
[14] þe towne up T. [15] in T. [16] to T. [17] And þanne T.

saafte, without eny lette or dysturbaunce; and to þis composycion
þei sette her[1] seleȝ, and þe Schippeȝ passed vp by ham yn saafte,
& come before þe cite of Roon, into a C.[2] schippeȝ, and *þere* þay
4 cast her[3] anchors, and þanne þis citee[4] was besegid bothe be lond
& by watir.[5] ¶ And whanne alle þis was do, and þe schippeȝ
come vp, þanne come þe Erle of Warwic ayen vnto þe King, and
loggyd hym betwene þe Abbey of Saint Kateryneȝ & þe King, til
8 *þat* þe[6] abbey intret, and was[7] yolde vnto þe King; and þanne he
remeved fro þenneȝ, and loggyd hym before þe Poort Martevile.
¶ And þanne[8] was þe Erle of Salusberye c*om*mawnde be þe King
to make hym redy for to ryde; but *þere* come hasti tydyngeȝ and
12 made hym to abyde; & so he retourned ayen and logged hym
besydeȝ þe Erle of Hontyngton til þe sege was endyd. ¶ And
þann come þe Duk of Gloucestre, þe King*es* bro*þer*, from þe sege of
Chierborugh þat[9] he hadde wonne & gotoun, & stuffed ayen to[10]
16 þe Kinges behoue & pr[o]fit.[11] And whanne he[12] was come to[13]
the King before Roon, anon he logged hym w*ith* grete ordynaunce
before þe Port Saint Hyllarye, more nygh[14] þe toun and his enymys
þanne eny o*þer* man[15] be xl rodeȝ of lengthe, withynne schotte
20 of quarell; & with hym lay þe Erle of Suffolk & þe Lorde of
Bergeveny w*ith* alle hir retynu & strong ordynaunce, & manly &
proutly fauȝt eu*er*y day w*ith* hir enymys evere whanne þay issued
out of the Cete. ¶ And þanne com þe Pryour of Kylmaynon yn[16]
24 Irelond, ouyr the se vnto þe King, w*ith* a fayre mayne of men of
armeȝ of hir owne cuntre gise, vnto[17] the su*m*me of xv c of gode[18]
monneȝ bodyeȝ. And þe King welcomyd ham, and made ham ryȝt
grete[19] chere.
28 ¶ And þanne come tydyngeȝ to[20] the King þat þe King of
Fraunce, and þe Dolffyn and þe Duke of Burgoyne, [21]wolde come
doun[22] to rescu þe cite of Rone with a strong power of alle man*er*[23]
nacioneȝ, and[24] breke þe sege; and he cast hym to entre on þe
32 North syde of the oste, because þat *þere* was þe beste entre, and

[1] to her T. [2] ij C T. [3] þer T. [4] Citee T. cite R. sege Kk.
[5] boþe bi watir and bi londe. T. [6] þe *om.* T. [7] and was T. was Kk.
[8] And þanne T. And than*ne* R. And Kk.
[9] þe whiche TR. [10] vnto TR.
[11] and profit vnto þe crowne of Englond and T. profit to þe Croune of engelonde R.
[12] whanne he *om.* T. [13] vnto T. [14] nere T. nerrer R.
[15] lay RT. [16] of T. [17] vnto *om.* R.
[18] gise þe nombre of xv C goode T. [19] good TR.
[20] vnto T. [21] *leaf* 129. [22] a downe T. [23] of dyuerise T.
[24] and forto T.

most playne groun[d]e. And þerfore þe King assyngned þe Prio*ur* of Kilmaynon with is power, and logged hy*m* on þe northe syde of the oste, to stoppe hir passage, and was be þe forest of Lions; and of his[1] ordinaunce þei were fulle gladde. And þai[2] went forthe 4 yn haste, and kept the[3] grounde, and þe place þat þe King & his counsel hadde assygned vnto ham; and þai quitte ham as gode warrioures vnto þe[4] King.

¶ Now wyl y telle you which were þe Chyff Capteyneȝ & 8 gou*er*nowres of þis cete of Roone: Mouns*er* Guy Botelere was chyff capteyne, bothe of the cite & of the castell; and Mouns*er* Turmegan, he was capten of þe[5] Port de Caux; Mouns*er* le Roch was[6] capteyn de Syne; Mouns*er* Antony, he was lieutenaunt to Mouns*er* 12 Guy[7] Botelere; Henry Chaunfewe, he was capteyne of the[8] Port de Pount, Iohn Mat*ri*bas, he was capteyne of the Port de la Chastell; Mouns*er* de Peneux, he was capteyne of þe Port[9] Saint Hillary; þe Bastarde of Tyne, he was capteyn of the Port 16 Martivile; and graunt Iakeȝ, a worthi warryour, he was capteyn of alle[10] warryoures, and[11] gouernoure outwarde, bothe on horsbak & on foote, of alle men of armeȝ: whenne þei issued out of the cite, of alle þe portis, he hem arayed as þey schulde countre with 20 our meyne. ¶ And ech of these capteyneȝ hadde[12] v M† men of armeȝ, & some mo. And at[13] þe first comyng of[14] oure King, þ*er*e were noumbred be heroudes ynto an CCC M† of men,[15] wymmen, & childryn, what yong & olde. And among alle þese was many a 24 manful man of his hand; and so þay prevyd ham whanne þei issued out of þe cite, bothe on horsbak & on foote, for þay come neu*er* out at on gate alone, but at iij or iiij; and at eu*er*y gate .ij. or iij. M† of gode men of armeȝ, and[16] manfully counted with our Englisch- 28 men, & moche pople slayne dyu*er*s tymeȝ with Guneȝ, quarell, & oþ*er*[17] ordynauncеȝ. And þis sege endured xx^tl^ wokeȝ; and eu*er* þai of the toun hopyd[18] for to haue be rescued; but þ*er* come non. ¶ So at þe[19] laste, þei kept so longe þe toun þat þ*er*e deied mony 32 thowsandeȝ withynne þe toune for defaute of mete, of[20] men, wy*m*men and chyldryn; for þay had ete al her hors, doggis and

[1] þis T. [2] so þei TR. [3] kepte þe TR. kept Kk. [4] her T. hir R.
[5] þe *om.* T. [6] he was TR. [7] Guy de TR. [8] de T.
[9] Port de T. port of R. [10] alle the T. alle þe R.
[11] and he was TR. [12] ladde T. [13] And whenne at T.
[14] was of T. [15] men and T.
[16] goode men*n*es bodies y armyd and T. gode menneȝ bodieȝ yarmed and R. [17] oþ*er* *om.* R.
[18] hopid T. hoped R. hopyp Kk. [19] þe *om.* T. [20] boþe of T.

catte3, þat were yn the toun. And ofte tyme3 þe men of arme3 droff out þe pore pepyl at the gatis of the toune3, for spendyng of vitayle; and anon our Englischmen droff ham yn-to þe toun agayne.
4 So at þe[1] last, þe capteyne3 of the toun, seyng þe myschif þat þay were nou3t rescued, and also þe scarcite of vitayle, & þat þe peple so deied for defaute of mete, eu*er*y daye mony thowsande3, and also saue yonge childryn lye & sowke her modir pappis þat weryn
8 ded, þan anon þey sent vnto[2] þe [3]King, besechinge him [4]of his grete mercy & grace,[3] and brou3t þe keyes of[5] þe toun vnto the Kinge, and delyuered the toun to[6] hym; and alle[7] soudere3 voyded the toun, with hir hors & harne3; and þe comune3 of the toun for[8] to
12 abyde and dwelle stille yn the toun, yerely to pay hym[9] and to his successours, for al man*er* custome3, see[10] seruie3 & quateryme3 [*blank*] M*ar*c. ¶ And þanne þe King entred yn-to þe toun, & restyd hym yn the Castell tylle þe toun were sette yn rewle and
16 gouernawnce.

[1] þe *om.* T. [2] to TR.
[3—3] king bisekyng him of grace and mercy T. king besechinge him of his grace and m*er*cy R. besechinge him *om.* Kk.
[4] *leaf* 129, *back.* [5] of TR. to Kk. [6] vnto T. [7] alle þe TR
[8] for *om.* T. [9] to him TR. [10] and fee T. and see R.

APPENDIX C.

FULLER VERSION OF THE TIME FROM 1399–1401.

Compare p. 361, l. 16 ff.

[*MS. Rawlinson, B.* 173.]

[1]And at Oxonford were take S*ir* Thom*a*s Blounte, knizt, and Benet Cely, knigħt, & Thom*a*s Wyntershiħ, Squier. ¶ And these were be-hedyd and quarterd; And the knigħt*es* hedes were set on poles, and brought to Londoñ, and set on Londoñ Brygge; And 4 the quarters sent forth̄ to other places and townes. And in the same yere, at Priteweħ, in a Mille in Essex, there was S*ir* Ioħn Holand, the Duke of Excestre, take with̄ the co*m*mons of the Contre. ¶ And they brought him from that Mille vnto Plassh̄, 8 And to the same place þere as King Richard Arested S*ir* Thom*a*s of Wodestocke, Duke of Gloucestre. ¶ And right there, in the same place, they smote of the Duke of Excestres hede,[2] and brought hit to Londoñ vppoñ a pole, And hit was sett on Londoñ Brigge. 12 And in the same yere, at Bristowe, was take the Lorde Spencer þat King Richard hadde made Erle of Gloucestre. ¶ And the co*m*mons of the towne of Bristowe toke and brought him into the Market-place of the towne; And there þey smote of his hede, and sent hit 16 to Londoñ, & hit was set oñ Londoñ Brigge. ¶ And in the same yere was S*ir* Barnard Brokeys, knigħt, take and Arested, & putte into the Toure of Londoñ, And S*ir* Ioħn Shelley, [3]knigħt, and S*ir* Ioħn Magdaleyn), And Will*ia*m Ferby, p*er*sons of King Ric*hard*; 20 And þey were arested and put into the Toure of Londoñ. And there come the King*es* Iustices, and satte vpoñ them in the Toure; And þ*er*e they were dampned aħ iiij vnto deth̄. And þ^e^ dome yeue to S*ir* Barnard Brokeis, that he shulde come on fote from the 24 Toure, þrough̄ Londoñ, vnto Tyborne, And there to be hanged, and his hede smetyn of. And S*ir* Ioħn Shelley, knigħt, S*ir* Ioħn Magdaleyn) & S*ir* Will*iam* Ferby, p*er*sons, were drawe þrough̄-oute London to Tyborne, And there honged, and her hedes smetyñ of, 28 & set oñ Londoñ Brige.

And in the same yere King Henry sent Quene Isabeħ

[1] *leaf* 213. [2] 16 Jan. 1400. [3] *leaf* 213, *back.*

home ayene into Fraunce, the which was King Richard*es* wedid
wiffe, And yaff her golde and siluer And many other Iuellys;
And so she was discharged of aH her doure in Englonde. And in
4 the ij yere of King Henry the iiijth, was S*ir* Rog*er* of Claryndoñ,
knizt, and ij of his meñ, and the P*r*ioure of Launde, and vij
freris Minours, and so*m*me maistres of Diu*in*ite, and other, for
tresoñ þat þey wrought a-yenst þe King, were drawe and hanged at
8 Tyborne, aH xij p*er*sones to-gedyr. And þus was here ende there
for her treson.

And in the same yere bigañ a discencioñ and a debate in the
Contre of Walys, bitwene þ^{e} Lorde Grey Riffyñ and Oweñ Glen-
12 dore, [1]Squier of Wales. And this Owen arered a nombre of
Walshe-men, And kept aH the Contre Aboute right strong, and did
moche harme, & distroyed the King*es* townes and lordshjppis
þroughoute Wales, and robbed and slewe the Kingys peple, both
16 Englissh-men and Walshe-meñ: And thus he endured xij yere
large. ¶ And he toke þ^{e} Lorde Grey Ryffyñ p*r*isoner, And kept
him ffast in holde tyH he was Raunsomed. ¶ And in the iij yere
of King Henry, Oweñ brent a towne of the Erles of March in
20 Walys, þat hight Kinghton. ¶ And on the morowe after Seint
Albones day, was the batayle bitwene S*ir* Edmond Mortymere and
Oweñ; And þis bataile was on the blacke hyH beside Pymareñ.
And þ*er* Oweñ toke S*ir* Edmond Mortymer, þ^{e} Erles brother of the
24 Marche, prisoner, and kepte him long tyme in holde; And at the
laste he made him wedde one of his doughters, and kept him there
styH with his wiffe; and sone after he died. And þañ the King,
hering And knowyng that myscheffe, distruxioñ & tresoñ that þis
28 Oweñ wrought, ¶ Thañ anone he ordeyned him a strong power of
meñ of Armes & Archers, And moche other stuffe þat longeth to
werre, for-to abate and destroye þ^{e} malice of these false Walshmeñ.
And whañ [2]the King come into Wales for-to destroye thys Oweñ
32 and other rebelles, false Walshmen, Anone they fleddeñ into the
Mounteyns; And there might no mañ do hem harme In no man*er*
wise; but ofteñ-tymes they toke the King*es* Cariage, and eu*er*y day
destroyed his peple; but Owen and his meñ for the most p*ar*ty
36 scaped harmeles, For the King ne his meyne might not come by
him in no maner wise, for the Mounteynes. And so the King
come into Englond a-yene, for lesing of mo of his peple; and þus
he sped not there.

[1] *leaf* 214. [2] *leaf* 214, *back*.

[D]

CONTINUATION OF THE BRUT CONTAINING JOHN PAGE'S POEM ON THE SIEGE OF ROUEN.

FROM THE SIEGE OF ROUEN [1418] TO A.D. 1430.

[*Galba E. VIII.*]

[1] How kynge henry the v. leide sege to the Cite of Rone, and how he gate the Cite with strengthe and manhode well and worthily.

And in the vi. yere of Kynge Henryis Regne[2] the v; the 4
Kynge sent his vncle Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exeter, with
othir lordis and knyghtis, men of armys and archeris,[3] to the Cite
of Rone, and there displayid her baneris opynly byfore the cite of
Rone, and sent herodis to hem that were withynne the Cite, and 8
bade hem yolde vp the cite in alle haste,[4] that was the kyngis
righte, or ellis thei shuld deie an harde and sharpe dethe, and
withoute eny mercy or grace.

And there he be-hild the g[r]ounde aboute[5] the Cite, how thei 12
myght beste sette her sege to gete that Cite.

¶ And ansuere wold thei none yeue, but meuyd with her
hondis ouyr the wallis, as who seyth 'voydith the grounte and the
place that ye ben on'; and shotte tho many gunnys to hem. And 16
thanne[6] there Issewid out of the Cite many men of armys, of
Frensshe men on hors bakke, and countrid with oure Engelisshe
men, and ffaughten manlyche. And there were sleyne and take of
the Frensshe men a grete hepe; and the remanent fledden ayen 20
into the Cite.

¶ And thanne the Duke of Exetir turnyd ayen with his pepuꝗ,
and come to Pountlarge; and there he met with the Kynge,[7] and
told hym alle how he had spede and don in his message. 24

¶ And now for to telle how thei that weren withynne the cite
of Rone, had deuowrid and distroyid alle the subarbis rounde aboute
the Cite, into the bare grounde, for the Kynge shuld no refute
haue,[8] ne non refressynge haue there at his comynge; and how thei 28
had strongly newe dichid, with many othir dispiteffuꝗ and crueꝗ
ordynauncis that thei coude deuyse and ordeyne, with alle the[9]

[1] *leaf* 137. [2] Regne A. Regnyd G. [3] archeris come A.
[4] in haste A. [5] rovnd aboute A. [6] þus A.
[7] he fonde þe kyng A. [8] haue *om.* A. [9] the *om.* A.

ymaginacionys, congettis and sleythis, rounde aboute the cite, ayens the Kyngis hoste, yn-so-moche thei bite and keste adoun the perisshe-chirchis, abbeyis, and alle maner[1] of housyngis more and
4 lesse, in-so-moche that thei hewe adoune alle maner of treis that weren stondynge, in Gardeynys or yn eny othir placis, neighe the cite, and hewe a doune alle the [2] Busshis that weren stondynge, and made[3] aH playne vnto the harde erthe.

8 And thanne oure Kynge remouyd him from Pountlerge with alle his pepuH, and come before the cite of Rone the Friday beforn Lammesse day. And he made ordynaunce, and leide and set a sege rounde aboute the cite, with moche strengthe and grete ordynauncis,
12 so that the Frensshe-men myght no where in no parties ascape away but if thei weren dede and take. And furste the Kynge loggid hym-self in a Geste howse that is callid an hous of charite, with many lordis and strengthe[4] of pepuH aboute hym; and that
16 was in the Este partye of that cite. And thanne the Duke of Clarence, his brothir, loggid hym wyth his pepuH at an abbey withoute the cite, in the weste ende by the port Kaux. And thanne was the Duke of Exetur loggid with alle his pepuH at Port
20 Denyse in the northe syde of that cite. ¶ And thanne, betwix the Duke of Clarence and the Duke of Exetur, was the Erle MarchaH loggid, with alle his retenewe and strengthe, bi the casteH gate. And thanne was the Erle of Vrmonde and the Lord Aring-
24 don and the Lord Talbot, with alle her retenewe and ordynauncis, next hym. ¶ And thanne Sir John Cornewale, and many othir knyghtis of name, with alle her retenewe and ordynauncis, lay with the Duke of Clarence in his strengthe. And ffrom the Duke of
28 Exetur toward the Kynge, weren loggid the Lord Roos, the Lord Wilby, and the Lorde Fytz-Hugh and Sir William Portere, knyght, with alle her retenewe, and loggid hem before the Porte Seint Hillari. And thanne was the Erle of Mortayne loggid, with alle his
32 retenewe and ordynauncis, in the abbey of Seint Katerynys. ¶ And thanne the Erle of Salusbury, with alle his retenewe and ordynauncis, was loggid on that othir syde of this abbey. ¶ And thanne Sir John Gray, knyght, with aH his retenewe and
36 ordynauncis, was loggid at the abbey that is callid Mount Seint MycheH. And thanne Sir Philip Leche, knyghte, the Kyngis tresorer, with alle his retenewe and ordynauncis, was loggid

[1] all maner A. maner *om.* G. [2] *leaf* 137, *back.*
[3] & made A. made and G. [4] & oþer grete strength A.

betwene the watir of Sayne and the abbey, &[1] kepte that ward vndir the hille. ¶ And thanne the Baron of Carewe, with alle his retenewe and ordynauncis, was loggid with his compeny alone by the watir-side, to kepe the passage there. And Ienyco the Squyere 4 lay there nexte hym, with his retenewe and ordynauncis, and helpe to kepe the watir syde of Sayne: and manly and worthili he werrid and faught with his enemyes at alle tymes. ¶ And on that othir side of the watir of Sayne, lay the Erle of Huntyngdon, and 8 the Lorde Neuyle (the Erlis sone of Westmerlond), Sir Gilbert Omffreuyle, Sir Richard of Arundeꝗ, and the lord Ferreris, with alle hir retenewe and ordynauncis, at Port de Pount.

¶ And thanne the Kynge lete ordeyne and make at the Pount- 12 large, ouyr the watir of Sayne, a stronge and a myghti cheyne of Iron, and put it thorough piles[2] faste pite in the grounde, ouyr the ryuer of Sayne, that no vesseꝗ myght rowe that wei in no kynde. And thanne, aboue that chayne, the Kynge lete make a brygge 16 ouyr the watir, that man and hors and aꝗ othir cariage myght passe to and fro at alle tyme whanne nede were.

¶ And tho come the Erle of Warwike, and had goten Domfferauncte,[3] and come doun there the Kynge lay at the sege of 20 Rone; and the Kynge comaundid hym with his pepuꝗ to gon to Cawde-becke[4] and besege hit. ¶ And whanne he come before the toune, the gouernouris of the toune come oute, and tretid with the Erle of Warwike, and seid that thei wolde don and be 24 gouernyd aftur the Cite of Rone; and so thei grauntid in composicion, and asselid it vp, in fuꝗ condicion that thei shuld suffre and lette passe alle oure flete of Shippis by hem, with-oute eny lette or disturburaunce. And so oure Shippis passid alle yn, 28 and come be hem, and comen before the Cite of Rone, and there keste ankre as thikke as thei myght stonde; and so they segid the Cite of Rone bothe be watir[5] and by londe.

¶ And whanne the Erle of Warwike had thus endid and don 32 with the toune of Cawdebecke, and alle the Engelysshe shippis were come vp in the watir of Sayne, and set before the cite of Rone, ¶ Thanne the Erle of Warwike turnyd hym ayen with alle his pepuꝗ, and come to the Kynge, and loggid hym with alle his 36 pepuꝗ betwyxt Seint Katerynys and the Kynge, tille that an abbey

[1] & A. of G. [2] þorugh grete piles A.
[3] Domfferauncte A [*i. e.* Domfront]. do in ffraunce G.
[4] Caudebeck A. [5] *leaf* 138.

that was in trete there, was yolden to the Kynge; and thanne anon aftur he went thens and loggid hym, with alle his pepuꝗ and ordynauncis at Porte Morteuyle, to kepe that porte of the Cite.

4 ¶ And thanne was the Erle of Salusbury comaundid by the Kynge to make hym redy to ryde. And tho hasty tithyngis come, and returnynge[1] hym ayen, and did hym byde; and there he bode be sidis the Erle of Huntyngdon, tille that the sege was endid, and 8 wonne vp in-to the Kyngis hondis.

¶ And thanne come Sir Vmfrey, Duke[2] of Gloucestre, the Kyngis brothir, from the sege of Cherborugh, wiche he had wonne and gotyn be sawte and good fete of werre, and aftur lete hit stuffe 12 with Engelisshe pepuꝗ, and with vitaile, and with othir stronge ordynauncis, as longid to werre and to worship[3] and prophite to the Kynge of Engelond. ¶ And whanne he was come doune to fore the Cite of Rone, he loggid hym with his pepuꝗ and ordynauncis 16 at the Porte Seint Hillare, more nere his enemyes to the toune thanne eny othir man by xl. rodis of lengthe, with-ynne shotte of Gounne and quareꝗ. And with hym lay the Erle of Suffolke and the[4] Lord Begeyne, with alle[5] her retenewe and alle her[6] 20 ordynauncis; and manfully euyry day they[7] ffaughten with her enemyes whanne they issewed oute of the Cite.

¶ And thanne come[8] the Pryore of Kylmayne, oute of Irlond, ouyr the see, with a feyre compeny of men of armys on her Guyse,[9] 24 the summe of xv. c., good bodyes and manfuꝗ men to werre, and come with-ynne[10] Sayne Mouth, and aryuyd and landid at Hareflete, and spede hem in alle haste to the Kynge, and come vnto the sege of Rone: and the Kynge tho welcomyd the pryore of Kilmayne 28 and alle his pepuꝗ.

¶ And thanne come tydyngis to the Kynge[11] that the Frensshe kynge, with an huge powere of pepuꝗ of dyuerse nacionys, and the Duke of Burgoyne with hym, with an huge compeny of Burgoynys, 32 of Flemmyngis, and of othir Duche tungis, wold come doun to breke the sege, and keste hem to entre on the northe syde of oure hoste, because that there was lefte entre and moste pleyne grounde.

36 ¶ And thanne the Kynge assyngnyd the Pryoure of Kylmayne,

[1] tidyngis returnyd A. [2] vmffray þe duke A. [3] unto worship A.
[4] the *om.* A. [5] alle *om.* A. [6] alle her *om.* A. [7] they *om.* A.
[8] þanne come A. þanne G. [9] on her contre quyse A.
[10] with ynne A. with G. [11] kyng of Englond A.

with alle his pepuH, to logge hem on the northe side, for to stoppe and kepe the weyis and passagis by the foreste of Lyonys, that none enemyes might come doune that weyis to the sege, with-oute that thei countrid with hem in fight: and of that ordynaunce thei 4 weren fayn and glad; and thei yeden forthe in haste, and kepten the grounde and the[1] place that the Kynge and his counseile had asingnyd hem to; and as good warriouris and as prowde men of armys they shewid hem at alle tymes vpon her enemyes, wherefore 8 the Kynge had hem in heighe cherite for her grete manhode.

¶ Now wolle y telle you who weren the cheeff capteynys and gouernouris of the cite Rone.[2] Furste, Moune-seighnour Guy de Botelere, cheef Capteyne, bothe of the[1] cite and of the[1] CasteH; 12 Moune-*seighnour*e Ternagon, and he was Capteyne of the Porte Cauxs; Moune-*seighnour*e le Roche was capteyne of Porte Denysine; Moune-*seighnour*e Antony, he was leue-tenaunte to Moune-*seighnour*e Sir Guy the Botelere, Henry Chamfewe was capteyne 16 of Porte de Pount; Iohn Matreuas was captayne of Port de la CasteH; Moune-*seighnour*e Peneuxe was tho captayne of Port Seint Hillari; the Bastard of Teyne was tho captayne of Port Marteuyle. ¶ And Graunde Iakis, a worthi warrioure, was 20 capteyne of alle the ordynauncis of[3] oute-warde on hors backe, and on ffote of men of armis, and[4] Issewid oute of the Cite at alle the portis, to don there ffetes yn the poyntis of werre ayens her enemyes; and euyry[5] of these Captaynys led v. M^{li}. men of armys 24 and moo.

¶ And whanne alle the comenmalte weren with-ynn the Cite, men myght sen many a M^{li}; for the heraudis nombrid hem that weren with-ynne the Cite at the bygynnynge of the sege, of men, 28 women and childeren, iij C. M^{li}. and x. M^{li}. bodyes, yonge and olde. And amonge hem weren many manfuH pepuH and hardy, for[6] often tymes they Issewid oute of the Cite, pepuH welle yarmyd, on hors backe and eke on ffote, oute of[7] euyry yate an ij or iij M^{li}. men of 32 armys, welle arayed, and manfully countrid and foughten with oure Engelissh pepuH yn dyuerse parties of the sege. And tho that myght ascape, turnyd into the cite home ayen; and thus thei endurid longe tyme; and moche werre come fro the Cite wallis, as 36 shott of Gounnys and quareH, for thei shot euyry day from the wallis[8] and touris of the cite, with-ynne the space of an houre, an

[1] the *om.* A. [2] of þis Cite of Rone A. [3] of *om.* A. [4] þat A.
[5] *leaf* 138, *back.* [6] for A. for hai G. [7] at A. [8] wall A.

C of Gonne-stonys and moo, and quarellis with-oute nombre; and so thei sloughe and hurte moche Engelisshe pepuꝗ.

¶ And oure Kynge lete make an[1] diche aꝗ withoute, Rounde
4 a-boute the cite, and strongly stakid it, and heggid it, for these prykeris oute on hors backe, and comaundid Syr Robert Babthorp, knyght and Countroller, to ouyr-se that this werke were don; and he did it make in alle haste. ¶ And thanne they issewid oute
8 on ffote, and fought manly[2] as good werriouris; and tho myche pepuꝗ weren slayn on[3] bothe sidis. And they at the wallis and at the touris of the Cite shotten eu*er*[4] Gounnys, quarellis, Trepgettis, Spryngollis[5]; and alwey on[6] the Duke of Gloucestreis side thei
12 diden moche[7] harme, for thei weren loggid nexte of alle pepuꝗ to the Cite. And euyr ther come tydyngis newe that the Burgoynys wold come and reskewe the Cite; and for ioye thereof they ronge alle the bellis in the Cite; and fro the ffirste tyme of shittynge of
16 the yatis of the cite they ronge neuyr bellis but for tho tydyngis tille the cite was goten and yolden to the Kynge of Engelond.

¶ And tho the Kynge wende the Frensshe hoste had byn come, and with good wordis comfortid his pepuꝗ, and bad hem ben of
20 good chere. And anon tydyngis[8] come ayen that thei were turnyd to Paris-ward ayen. ¶ And thanne with-ynne ffewe dayes thei were come to Pounteyse, the nombre of iiij. M^{li}[9] good ffightynge men, and welle arayed. ¶ And thanne the Kynge made a kry,
24 and comaundid that euyry mane shuld ligge yn his herneys, and byn at alle tymes redy whanne her enemyes come. And tho the Kynge lete make a lerge duche, alle withoute his hoste, and pight it fuꝗ of stakes ymade sharpe, that wold perisshe, and with turne-
28 pykes, and leid there-by Gounnys redy bent in euyry partye rounde aboute this diche. And the kynge tho comaundid his countroller Sir Robert Babthorp, knyght, to spede in alle haste this were don by his ouyr sight; and so anon this werke was endid.

32 ¶ And anon come tydynges to the Kynge, there as he lay at seege; and this was on the[10] Thorisday, that the ffrensshe hoste lay but xx. myle from hym, and wold byn there on the morough on the Fryday; and the same tydynge[11] come to hem that were
36 with-ynne the Cite. ¶ Of these tydynge oure Kynge made moche[12] ioye and myrthe, and artely[13] thankyd God. And so on

[1] a A. [2] manfully A. [3] in A. [4] eu*er* A. eu G.
[5] & engynys A. [6] vpon A. [7] most A. [8] tidyng A.
[9] iij M^{li} A. [10] a A. [11] tidyngis A. [12] grete A. [13] hertily A.

the Fryday oure Kynge rode to the Erle of Huntyngdon, and told to hym a wile and a good ffete of werre, and made hym ordeyne ij. Bateillis of men of armys. ¶ And the ffirste bataiH thei and he reden*n*, and her backes[1] toward the Cite; and that othir bataiH 4 come oute of the wode, with standerdis and baneris of the Duke of Burgoynys armys. And these ij hostis metten, as thei had countrid, and foughten to-gederis; but non did othir harme. And this was ordeynyd and don by the kyngis deuyse and conseile, for 8 thei that weren with-ynne the Cite shuld haue vtturly hopid and trustid that reskewis had be*n* come,[2] and that thei that weren with-ynne the Cite of men of armys shuld boldely haue issewid oute, and ffoughten vtturly with the pepuH of the sege; but thei dorste 12 not come oute of that[3] Cite at that tyme, for thei doutid and drad, and supposid to hem but trayne, and wold not issewe oute for drede of dethe, as for that [4]tyme, but abodyn and lokid aftur helpe, socoure, and reskewis of these Burgoynes, but ther come no com- 16 forte to hem. but yet tho afturward the men of armys issewid oute ayen of the Cite as thei did beforn, and ffoughten manfully with oure Engelisshe-men, and myche pepuH weren slayne on bothe sydis at dyuerse tymes. 20

¶ And tho it drewe nere Cristemesse; and by that tyme her vitailis scarsid sore with-ynne the Cite, for they[5] hade nothir bred, ale, nor wyne, but watir and vynegur, that was her drynke. And flesshe nor fisshe they had non, but eten hors,[6] [7]doggis, Mis, Rattis 24 and Cattis; for an quarter of an horse, were he lene or[8] fatte, was tho sold[9] in the Cite amonge the pepuH for an C. s. good payment, and an hors hede[10] for xx. s., and a[10] Ratte for xl. d.; [11]and for xiij. s. iiij. d. thei sold a Catte,[11] and a mows for xx. d.; and these 28 wormys weren bought and eten so faste that vnnethe thei fonde eny for[12] to selle[13] for no money. ¶ And tho[14] was[15] a ferthynge lof boght in the Cite[16] for a ffranke. And thanne hem failid bothe whete, and mele, and alle othir graynys that thei myght make of 32 eny brede[17]; but[18] branne and broken wo[r]tis, and nepe-rotis, and lekis, was to hem mete of grete valewe; for a leke was sold for

[1] reden*n* & her bakkis A. reden*n* & her *om.* G. [2] to hem A.
[3] þe A. [4] *leaf* 139. [5] þay A. the G. [6] hors fflessh A.
[7] *From here to page* 402, *line* 21, *to word* "trayne," *missing in* A.
[8] or were he B. [9] sold þo B. [10] a dogge for B.
[11—11] and . . . Catte *om.* B. [12] for *om.* B.
[13] to selle B. to slee selle G. [14] tho *om.* B. [15] þas a B.
[16] in the Cite *om.* B. [17] make eny brede of B. [18] but of B.

xij. d., and an[1] Egge for ix d., and an appuꝗ for x d.: siche merchaundyse was there with-ynne the Cite a gret while; and ther was many a carefulle creature, for her[2] vitailis were alle wastid and
4 spent, and þey[3] myght come to no new by[4] no maner wey; for the sege that[5] lay withoute, rounde aboute the Cite, wold[6] suffre no vitaile come in, to hem, neythir by watir neythir[7] be londe.

¶ And thanne be-ganne the pepuꝗ with-ynne the Cite to deie
8 faste, bothe smale and grete, for the passynge hungur and enfamen that was amonge hem, by[8] C.C. personys and moo day by day; and there as was firste ioy and pryde, and grete boste, tho was there amonge hem weylynge, sorow and[9] care, and wepynge, and wryng-
12 ynge with[10] hondis. ¶ And though a child shuld deie, the modir wold yeue it no brede ne nought ellis of[11] othir fode, ne wold not departe no morselle though she myght saue the lif of her[12] child of[13] hir body borne, but wold saue her selfe while she myght; for loue
16 and hertly kyndenesse was tho from hem passid. Nor the child wold not profir the modir; for eche of hem caste hymself to leue; for alle kyndenesse and loue tho was[14] sette beside[15]; for euyr the childe wold hide his mete[16] and his drynke[17] fro his modir and from
20 alle his othir ffryndis, for his mete thei shuld not see, for thei ete hit alle in pryuete. ¶ And we may preue by that pepuꝗ there, that houngir passithe kyndenesse and eke loue, that made her[18] vnrightwesnesse and her cursid leuynge and pryde that regnyd
24 amongis hem in tho dayes, wherefore God sent hem a yerd of chastisement. But yet thei that kept the wallis and[19] touris of the Cite rounde aboute, be-cause the pepuꝗ withoute shuld not knowe nor wete of her grete nede and myschef that thei weren ynne, euyr
28 to[20] hold her courte and[21] contynaunce of opyn werre, bothe with shot of Gounnys and quarellis.[22]

¶ But amonge ther issewid summe pepuꝗ of the Cite oute; and they come forthe, and weren take of the wacchemen withoute
32 at the[23] sege Cite. ¶ And they affraynyd hem how it stode with the[24] pepuꝗ that weren lefte with-ynne the Cite. ¶ And they ansuerid and told to the Engelisshe pepuꝗ of the grete nede,

[1] and an B. and G. [2] theyr B. [3] and þey B. and G.
[4] in B. [5] þat þer B. [6] wold not B. [7] nor B. [8] by *om.* B.
[9] and *om.* B. [10] of B. [11] nought ellis of *om.* B.
[12] her owne B. [13] of of G. [14] was þo B. [15] a syde B.
[16] hys mete wolde hyde B. [17] and his drynke *om.* B.
[18] her grete B. [19] and the B. [20] to B. to and to G.
[21] and cursed B. [22] querell and gonnes B. [23] the *om.* B. [24] hys B.

scarste, hungir and[1] dethe, that was euyry day[2] amongis hem.
[3]But our folke wold not beleue nor truste hem,[3] be cause that the
pepuꝗ with-ynne hilde[4] alle tymes contynaunce like in werre, day
be day,[5] as thei did beforne vpon the sege withoute; wherefore thei 4
had[6] hem in[7] no truste in no degre.

And thanne with-ynne a lituꝗ[8] while aftur, the worthi men
that weren with-ynne the Cite, gederid alle the pore pepuꝗ that tho
weren with-ynne the Cite, man, woman, and child, and brought 8
hem to the yatis, and put hem oute at euyry porte by an C
personys on[9] a rowte, and bad hem helpe hem-self in her beste
maner that thei myght, for there thei shold no lenger abyde yn no
wyse with hem. ¶ And thanne thei come forthe toward[10] the 12
Engelisshe seege, knelynge on her kneis, and wepynge sore, bothe
man, and woman with yonge sowkynge children [11]in her armys, and
olde febuꝗ men knelynge besyde hem, makynge there a dilfuꝗ
crye; for alle they cryed there atonys "haue mercy on vs, ye good 16
and[12] Cristen and worthy men."[13] ¶ And thanne oure Kynge
had[14] rewthe on hem and pite,[15] and yaf hem brede and drynke,
and made hem turne ayen to the Cite; and there thei kepte hem
in the diche, that thei shold not knowe nor here the ordynaunce 20
nor counseile of the seege, ne of her wacche in no wyse, for trayne
and treson that myght falle.

¶ And whanne these pore pepuꝗ shuld turne[16] ayen, thei made
high sorough and grete murmuracion amonge hem-self, and seyden 24
they had leuyr byn sleyn there thanne go ayen into the Cite,
and dilfully, with high voycis[17] bannynge and cursynge her[18] owne
nacion, for thei that weren with-ynne the Cite wold not suffre hem
come in ayen; wherefore y trowe thei diden grete synne and mys- 28
chieff to hem-self; for meny of him deiden there for colde, that,
and thei had byn with-ynne, her lifis[19] might haue byn sauyd and
kepte.

¶ And tho was come the tyme of Cristmesse, in whiche oure 32
Kynge did tho grete mercy and relef to his enemyes, at the reuer-
ence of that Glorious feste of the byrthe of oure Lorde Ihesu
Criste and of his blessid modir, oure Lady Seynt Marye, that

[1] and *om.* B. [2] day new B. [3–3] But . . . hem *om.* B.
[4] hilde at B. [5] day by day in werre B. [6] had of B. [7] in *om.* B.
[8] litull *om.* B. [9] in B. [10] wolking to B. [11] *leaf* 139, *back.*
[12] and *om.* B. [13] englyssh man B. [14] had grete B.
[15] & pytee on hem B. [16] shuld algatis turne A. [17] voice A.
[18] her A. he G. [19] lyuys A.

gracious and mercifuꝗ virgyne. For, of high pite, mercy and[1]
grace, and at the reuerence of[2] that tyme of the holy feste, the
Kynge, of high compascion that he had in hert, and of his worthi
4 and excellente manhode, sent oute his heraudis in good araye, bothe
to hem that weren wyth-ynne the Cite as welle as with-oute the
Cite, on the Cristemesse day self, to hem[3] that lackid vitaile, that
thei shold come and haue mete and drynke ynow, in worship of the
8 Feste, and sauf-condite to come and to goo. And thei seiden
alle 'gramersis' lightly, as thei had no nede there-to, and set no
pryce by his sonde. And vnnethe thei wold graunte space vnto
the[4] pepuꝗ of her owne nacion to ben releuyd that layn in the diche
12 vndir the Cite wallis, that thei had drouen and put oute of grete
myschieff. But two preestis and iiij seruauntis for[5] to brynge hem
vitailles, mete and drynke; and if ther come eny moo personys,
thei wold shete to hem and sle hem to dethe. ¶ And thanne
16 weren alle these pore pepuꝗ set arowe; and these two preestis with
her iiij. seruauntis broughten hem plente of mete and drynke, of
the Kyngis gracious almys; and so thei weren at[6] that tyme made
welle at eese; and replete of mete and drynke. And as thei sete
20 her mete to fonge, this talkynge thei had amongis hem. ¶ "A,
almyghty God," thanne thei seide, "the[7] Engelisshe-men by[8] of
good and treue[9] herte! Lo, how here this excellent Prynce and
Kynge that we thought neuyr to[10] obey vnto, ne neuyr profre ne
24 don hym homage, now hathe he on vs more pite and compassion by
a M^ii^[11] thanne hathe oure owne nacion; therefore, oure Lord God,
that art fuꝗ of myght, graunte hym grace to wynne and gete his
trewe right!" Thus the pore pepuꝗ for the Kynge prayde; that
28 God kepe and mayntene hym in alle his nedis. ¶ Whanne thei
had thus seruyd alle the pore pepuꝗ with mete and drynke, and
were welle reffresshid, oure folke turnyd ayen to[12] the Kynge, for
the trewse lastid no lengur but that same day.
32 ¶ And whanne the nyght be-ganne to apere and shewe, thanne
thei on the wallis beganne newe werre ayen vpon the seege, and
wacchidden a ward that[13] fuꝗ streyte bothe day and nyght with
hungir smerte, for that tyme her vitaiꝗ weren alle wastid and
36 spente. And meny a worthy body for defaute of lyuelod of mete

[1] and A. an G. [2] of *om.* A. [3] þeym A. [4] the pore A.
[5] for *om.* A. [6] at *om.* A. [7] þese A. [8] ben A.
[9] treue A. treue of G. [10] to *om.* A. [11] M^ii^ parte A. [12] vnto A.
[13] þat was A.

and drynke was[1] spent and ded, for euyr grete houngir brekithe herd stonen waH yn hir grete nede; for euyr the lif is dere and suete.

¶ Thanne alle the Capteynys of that Cite, bothe Baillis, Bur- 4
geses and comunnalte, toke her counseiH with-ynne hem self to trete with the Kynge; and with the pepuH the cause pryncipaH for the high myschieff that tho was amongis hem[2] of enfamenynge for hungir; for thei knewe welle thei myght note longe endure so; 8
and for the sodeyne and [3]multitude dethe that was euyry day amonges hem for lakke of ffode, vpon the New Yeris Euyn at nyght, the pepuH with-ynne come to the wallis at euyry porte to the seege, and clepedyn a knyght to speke with hem; and there 12
was non man that tyme that hem herd tille thei come to the Porte de Pounte of Sayne. ¶ And that was on that side[4] as the Erle of Huntyngdon kepte the ward. And there thei weren herd, and answerid tho ayen, and askid what thei wold: and thei ansuerid 16
and seid, and prayed at the[5] reuerence of AHmyghty God,[6] if ther were eny gentiH knynght that wold here her complaynte, and bere her erende vnto the Kynge. ¶ And thanne oon ansuerid and seid, he was a knyght; and thei preyd hym to telle hys name. And 20
he seid, "my name ys Vmfreuyle;" and thei thankid God and oure Lady that thei had mette with hym, for he was of the old blode of that contre of Normandye; "and we praye you to helpe vs haue an ende betwene youre Kynge and vs." And he seid, "what is youre 24
wille?" and thei seid at fewe wordis: "we haue byn at euyry porte of the[7] City there these Pryncis loggyn before, and haue callid aftur speche of hem; but we coude haue non ansuere: ffirste at the Duke of Clarence, the excellente prynce; and from thens to 28
the Duke of Gloucestre, his worthi brothir; and ofte we clepid, and longe there stode; and so we come doune to the Duke of Exeture, and there we gate non ansuere.

The starving Roueners can't get Lord Warwick or the Earl Marshal to listen to them.

"And at Warwike, that Erle so fre, 32
We callid ofte: it wold not be;
And at the Erle MarchaH we were.
ther was no wight that wold us ansuere.
And we haue clepid at aH these so moche, 36
But non ansuere we coude gete truliche;

[1] was þere A. [2] hem A. *om.* G. [3] *leaf* 140. [4] side þere A.
[5] the heigh A. [6] god almyghty A. [7] þis A.

therefore we pray these p*rin*cis, for Mari sake,
And for that Lordis loue that did vs make,
As thei ben dukis of high dyngnyte,
And cheeftaynys of cheualrye, 4
Vnto the Kynge to prey for vs,
And we may fynde hym so gracious;
And we wolle gon with you also
Vnto the Kynge, and speke hym to, 8
And beseche hym, for loue of that Kynge
That made heuen, erthe, and alle thynge,
With his witte and his good auyse,—
Aboue alle pryncis he is pryse,— 12
And for his owne high pryncehode,
and also for his owne worthy manhode,
And as he is kynge moste excellent,
and to God, but to non othir, obedyent, 16
That regnythe here in erthe by ryght,[1]
But only to oure[2] Ih*es*u fuꞧ of myght,
And with-ynne hym selff Emperoure,
and also[3] Almyghti kynge and conqueroure, 20
That he hym-self wold graunte vs space,
and sauf-condite, and alle his grace,
Nought-withstondynge oure offence,
That we myght come to his presence, 24
xij. men of vs by on assent,
That lordly Kynge to telle fully oure entent.
May we come hym onys to se,
With the myght of God so fre, 28
We shuꞧ hym shewe, withoute distaunce,
that shaꞧ hym turne to grete plesaunce."
Quod[4] Vmfray: "this y [as]sent;"
and[5] toke his leue, and forth he went, 32
And come to the Duke of Clarence there,
and told hym[6] this mater aꞧ in ffeere.
he thankid God and his modir eke,
that oure enemyes were be-come so meke, 36
and[7] that he wold, with good wille,
Speke for hem oure Kynge vntille.

The Roueners want English nobles to beg Henry V to

be gracious to them,

for his manhood's sake,

and grant them safe-conduct for

12 of em to come to him.

Umfraville agrees, and asks the Duke of Clarence

to speak to Henry V.

[1] right A. nyght Kk. [2] oure lord A. [3] also a A.
[4] Ox A. [5] he A. [6] hym *om.* A. [7] & seide A.

lo, so sone this good lord hem vndirtoke,
and her mekenesse he nought forsoke.
he is a prynce forto[1] comende;
but aꝗ to fewe of siche ben founde; 4
he is manfuꝗ, whanne werre dothe laste,
and mercifuꝗ whanne hit is paste;
Manhode, mekenesse, witte and grace,
Is conteynyd with hym in a lituꝗ space; 8
he wantith nothynge a prynce shold haue;
Almyghti God mote hym saue!

Umfraville goes to the Duke of Exeter and to Gloster,

Thanne Vmfrey[2] toke his leue,
and his message he went to meue. 12
To Gloucestre thanne did he goo,
To Exetur the Duke also,
and told hem the tydyngis how it was.
thei thonkyd God of his high grace, 16
that her enemyes, ayens her wille,
ffor nede of socoure wold yold him tille;

who promise him help.

and seid thei wold, for Goddis sake,
helpe for hem a good ende to make. 20
loo these pryncis of high mekenesse,—
God kepe hem yn hele and from sikenesse!— [lf. 140, bk.]
Though thei haue suffrid peynys smerte,
yet haue thei mercy and pite in herte. 24

Then he goes to other nobles,

Thanne Vmfreuyle, his leue he tace,
and passid forthe in his space
To erlis and to lordis be[3] name;
and thei hym seid aꝗ the same. 28
Lo! these cheefenteynys of cheualrie,
how thei weren come in cherite!
therefore God, of his grete grace,
yef hem good spede in euyry place. 32

and then to Henry V.

thanne on[4] Newe Yeris Day in the morny[n]g,
Sir Gilbert Vmfreuyle come to the Kyng,
and aꝗ this mater to hym he[5] seid:
And there of the cite mekely hym prayed. 36
oure Kynge seid thanne, be good auyse,
and also at his owne deuyse,

[1] to A. [2] vmfrevile A. [3] by A. [4] a A.
[5] he *om.* A.

to graunte that cite aꝗ her wille :
" let xij of hem come me tille."
of aꝗ his lordis euyry-chone.
ayens it was neuyr oone. 4
lo ! that high[1] prynce and kynge so felle,[2]
of aꝗ erthely creaturis he is welle ;
lo ! how he hathe prouyd hym self manfuꝗ,
and as[3] a prynce right mercifuꝗ ; 8
thei that had hym so ofte[4] meuyd,
and also hym had gretely greuyd,
and also[5] put hym yn grete coste,
and of his pepuꝗ fuꝗ meny loste, 12
And[6] withstonde hym of his right,—
And now thei byn falle in his myght,
and at his wille hem to greue,
yf he wol put hem to myscheue ; 16
and thanne hym-self to light so lowe,
of her wille to wete and knowe,
and also to graunte hem to trete :
that was heigh mercy and cherite. 20
Sithe that thei had hym so[7] agilte,
and lithe in hym to don hem ben spilte ;
he grauntid hem[8] grace and m*er*ciful mekenes :
ffor-sothe, a child of God, y wot[9] he is ;[10] 24
of goodnesse and uertu he wantith no thyng ;
that his[11] preisynge for a kynge.
therefore Criste, for his passion,
kepe hym in[12] right compassion ! 28
whanne the kynge had g*r*auntid, as y haue told,
to Vmfreuyle, the knyght so bolde
The Kynge seid, " sir, whanne shalle this be ?
If thei wille to-morrowe, let see." 32
Thanne[13] Vmfreuyle of the Kynge leue hent.[14]
And to that[15] cite anon he went.
and whanne he kome at that[16] gate,

Henry V will see the 12 Roueners.

How manful and merciful he is,

when he has em in his power!

He is truly a Child of God.

Umfraville goes back to Rouen.

[1] he A. [2] p*r*incipaꝗ B. [3] is B. [4] so oft had B.
[5] also had B. [6] and had B. [7] so grevously B.
[8] hem of hys B. [9] wot wele B.
[10] is þat doth good ayenst mysse B. [11] is B.
[12] in hys B. [13] tho B. [14] toke leve B. [15] þe B.
[16] that *om.* B.

the statis of the cite he fonde the[r]ate.

Umfraville says Henry V will see the

he seid: "y haue be with oure Kynge,[1]
and he hathe grauntid youre askynge.
to-morowe, be-tymes loke ye be yare, 4

12 Roueners to-morrow.

ffor xij of yow shuꝗ to hym fare:
and syn ye shuꝗ gon hym to,
My counseiꝗ y rede that ye do.
to-morow y wote that ye shulle se 8
The rialliste prynce of Cristiante;
To[2] syche a prynce neuer ye spake,
ne so loue a worde can take.

They must take care their tongues are not too long, but speak few words.

Theynke with hert byforn youre tonge, 12
leste youre tongis[3] byn to longe:
speke but fewe, and welle hem sette
To that prynce whanne ye byn mette;
ffor a word wronge oute of ward 16
Might make you to[4] fare fnꝗ herd,
Therefore, of wordis loke ye ben wise,
and sei no thynge withoute good avise."
thanne thankked thei hym fuꝗ curtesly, 20
and of his god lore seid, "gramercy;
that ye wold vs so moche good teche,
or that we come to that worthi princis speche."
he seid "adieu!" and went his wey, 24
the seturday aftur neweyeris day.

Next day at prime he meets the

and at[5] that houre of day be[6] pryme,
Sir Gilbert Vmfreyuyle come that[7] tyme;
of the Kyngis squyeris weren sent, 28
that tyme wyth[8] hym verayment,[9]
[10] and yomen of the crowne also,
with hym assyngny were to goo,[10]
thei went to Sein Hillariis Gate: 32

12 Roueners: 4 knights, 4 clerks, and 4 burgesses.

anon the xij men come oute there-ate:
iiij knyghtis and[11] iiij clerkes,
and[11] iiij burgeys, wise[12] of werkes:
alle[13] thei were clothid in[14] blacke, 36

[1] kynge *om.* B. [2] *with* B. [3] wordes B.
[4] to *om.* B. [5] and on B. [6] at B. [7] by B.
[8] with B. wyth be G. [9] hym assigned were to go B.
[10—10] and yomen . . . goo *om.* B. [11] and *om.* B.
[12] wise B. with wise G. [13] & B. [14] aꝗ in B.

comly of chere, and feire thei spake.
whanne thei were come to the[1] hous of charite,
thenne oure Kynge, at messe was he; — Henry V is at Mass.
with-ynne the chirche thei did lend 4
the[r]tille that the messe was at the[2] end.
tho[3] come forthe the Kynge withoute let, — He comes out.
there as he had knelid in his closet,
with chere so cheuetayneliche, 8
with[4] so lith light[5] a loke, and lordliche,[6]
and so right solent senblaunt, and sad:
[7] to se that lord men mygh[t] be glad.[7]
as sone as the Frensshe-men hym did[8] see, 12 — The Roueners kneel to him,
To-forn hym thei fille on kne. [leaf 141]
he blenchid on hem with stately chere;
he[9] ne wiste what thei were:
thei enclinyd hem with meke speche, 16
And a bille to hym thei did reche. — hand him a Petition,
he taught a lord to take her bille,
and sumwhat he turnyd hem tille:
what it ment, y hard say; 20
tretise thei wold, be eny way;
Thei be-soght hym, for Goddis sake,— — and pray him to hear them.
that heuen and erthe and alle did make,
Bothe este, weste, northe and southe,— 24
'that ye wolld here oure speche be[10] mouthe.'
the Kynge bad hem speke and sey her wille;
and thei were fayn, and knelid stille.
Thé seid, "we you beseche[11] and prey, 28 — They beg him
ffor His loue that deid on good Friday,
And for his Modiris loue so fre,
considre now on[12] vs now, for charite! — to pity them.
the pore pepuH that byn withoute, 32 — Their poor are starving.
In our dichis rounde aboute,
Thei lien there for faute of breed;
and for defaute many byn dede. — Many are dead.
haue ye pite hem vppon, 36

[1] to þe B. to G. [2] the *om.* B. [3] to B. [4] And with B.
[5] hygh B. [6] lordshyppe B. [7–7] to . . . glad *om.* B.
[8] did *om.* B. [9] As he B. [10] by B.
[11] byseche yow B. [12] consider & tender B.

and yeue hem leue[1] thens to gon."

Henry V tells the 12 Roueners

ffuH still the Kynge stode aH[2] that while,
and nouthir did[3] laugh nor smyle;
but with a countynaunce so clere, 4
and also with a cheuetaynly chere,
nothir[4] to myld nothir[5] to straunge,
But ay in oon withoute chaunge,
his countenaunce did not abate, 8
but alwey stode in oon astate.

And tho hym luste to yeue ansuere,

that he didn't put their poor folk in the city ditch.

he seide: "y put hem not there,
into the diche of that cite; 12
I put hem not there; and that wote ye.
Thei were not put there at myn ordynaunce,
ne non shuH passe at my suffraunce;
Thei abode there while thei mought;"— 16
and so he seide to hem fuH ryght;[6]—
"and as to you, ye knoue welle this:

They have offended him, and kept his city from him.

ye haue offendid me with mys,
and from me kepte my cite, 20
the whiche that is[7] heritage fre,
and[8] shuld be my liege men."

They plead

They ansuerid and seid thanne:
"Off this cite that we here kepte, 24
we haue a charge, and that a depe.
hit vs bitak[9] oure souyrayn liege.[10]
For to deffend hit from saught or[11] sege;

that they are the lieges of their king,

and we ben his liege men born, 28
and also holesy to hym we ben sworn.
and also of the Duke of Burgoyne so fre,
A grete charge of hym had we;
but wold ye now, of youre highe grace, 32

and ask leave to warn him and the Duke of Burgundy of their state.

Graunte vs alle lif and space,
that summe of vs myght to hem goo,
and warne hem botho of oure woo,
and of oure ferthe vs to excuse; 36

[1] hem leve B. heue G. [2] stode all B. all G.
[3] noþer did B. nouthir G. [4] not B. [5] nor B.
[6] ryght B. sothe G. [7] is myn B. [8] and ye B.
[9] hit was bytake B. hit vs bite G. [10] liege B. kynge G.
[11] & A.

ffor many of vs woꝗ hem refuse,
and to you yelden oure[1] cite,
and alle youre owne liege men be."

The Roueners will yield Rouen to Henry V.

The Kynge seid, "y do you oute of doute, 4
My cite y wolle not gon withoute.

He says he will not go without his city.

and as touchynge to[2] youre Frensshe liege,
ye[3] wote welle that y hold this sege;
and the Duke of Burgoyne also, 8
alle thei wete welle, bothe two;
ffor alle the[4] while that y here haue byn,
Messageris haue go betwene;
and yf thei like to neigh me nere, 12
thei weten welle to ffynde me here;
ffor y wolle not hens goo
withoute my right, for frynde nor ffoo,
sith thei so longe beforn it knewe. 16

Their French King and the Duke have known of the siege.

and nowe to sende hem message newe,
it were to[5] hem no newelte,
and to us[6] but superfluite.
Siche message wol y non sende; 20
it is no nede, so God me amende!"

It's no use to send em a message,

and by God he'll not send one.

And whanne the Kynge had yeue that ansuere,
of the[7] mater spake thei no more;
þay[8] seiden, "feire it is to wynne 24
Rone, with the men that[9] ben ther-ynne."

The Kynge seid: "it is myn owne londe;
I woꝗ it wynne, though ye it with-stonde,
and ye mowe there-ynne so deserue, 28
ye shuꝗ be reward aftur[10] as ye serue!"

He'll win Rouen; and if they oppose him, they'll suffer.

with that word thei weren aflayid.

thanne spake a clerke, and thus he seid:
"souyrayne lord, if[11] ye woꝗ take hede 32
In stori that ye may rede,
how ij sheuetaynys a day had set,
and with ther[12] hostis thei weren met,
bothe arayid in a felde, 36

A clerk tells him a story:

2 hosts met to fight.

[1] youre A. [2] to *om.* A. [3] he A. [4] þay A.
[5] to A. to no G. [6] us now A. [7] þat A.
[8] þay A. then G. [9] that A. that that G.
[10] after *om.* A. [11] y A. [12] her A.

and weren redi batalle to yelde :

The weaker brought the stronger bread and wine, to make them merciful.

The weyker party of the men
thanne brought the biger parti brede and wyn,
In tokenyng that thei shold be 4
Grace, mercy, and eke pite : [leaf 141, back]

We Roueners bring you the same, and Rouen.

and nowe we brynge you bred and wyn,
and Rone that cite feire and fyne."
"Rone," he seid, "is my herytage, 8
I wille haue it withoute fage.
And fro this tyme y rede ye do,
that mercy and grace may come you to.
And at the reuerence of god aƗmyght 12
and of Mary his modir, that maiden so[1] bright,
Of trety[2] y graunte you space ;

Henry grants them time,

And if ye wille ye may haue grace."
thanne seid thei, "sir, pur charite, 16
how wille ye to youre pore pepuƗ be,[3]
that in diches suffryn pyne,
and for defaute deie as suyne ?"

and will consider how he'll treat the starving outsiders.

The Kynge ansuerid hem with wit fuƗ wise : 20
"Thereof woƗ y take myn a-vise,
as God put hert, mynde,[4] and wille,
So wiƗ y do that pepuƗ vntille :
as he me redithe, y wille hem rewe." 24
with that he went and seid "adieue !"

The[5] ffrensshe men, that same while,

The Roueners go homewards,

fforthe thei went with Vmfreuyle ;
And toward the cite as thei yode, 28
thei spoken of oure Kynge so goode :

and praise Henry V.

Thei seiden, "he is, to oure advise,
of alle erthely kyngis moste vise,
takynge reward to his chere 32
and to his contynaunce in fere,
To his person and propurte,
to his ffeturis and[6] beaute,
And to his depe discrecion 36
that is in his possession,
and to his passynge pryncehode,

[1] so *om.* A. [2] tretise A. [3] see A. [4] mynde herte A.
[5] These A. [6] & his A.

and to his discrete and worþy[1] manhode;
ffor he is mercyfuꝗ in sight,
and askithe nothynge but his right:
These vertuis byn a passynge thynge, 4
That byn with-ynne siche a kynge.
how shuld he do[2] but wynne honour?
how shuld he be but a conquerour?
welle he dothe[3] withoute dene; 8
God hym loue, and that is sene."

The Rouen delegates praise Henry

Thus the Frensshe men, of the Kynge talkithe,
Toward the cite as thei walkithe.
her leue at Vmfreuyle[4] thei toke, 12
Into the Cite, and hym forsoke.

and enter Rouen.

On that othir day nexte, erliche,
the Kynge made two tentis to picche,—
On for the[5] Englisshe, and on[6] for the[5] Frensshe; 16
And bothe thei stode in Gloucestre[7] trenche,—
Though the stormys were neuyr so grete,
drie-hedid that thei myght trete.

Henry V has 2 tents pitcht for the English and French to treat in.

whanne bothe pauylownys weren pight, 20
thei went to trete with aꝗ her myght.
Warwike, that erle so wise,—
ffor in our partye he bare the pryce;—
Salusburi, that erle so treue, 24
and also the Lord Fithe-hughe,
and the Kyngis steward, Hungurford,
By name y can no moo record;

Our men are Lords Warwick, Salisbury, Fitzhugh, and Hungerford.

and from that cite come hym to mete, 28
xii. of the Frensshe that weren discrete.

They meet 12 Roueners.

hit was a sight of solempnite
ffor to behold bothe partë;
To see the riche in her araye; 32
and on the wallis the pepuꝗ that laye;
and on oure pepuꝗ that weren withoute,
how thike that thei walkid aboute;
and the herowdis, semely to sene, 36
how that thei went ay betwene;

It is a solemn sight.

[1] & worþv A. and G. [2] be A. [3] with A.
[4] vmfreuyleuyle G. [5] the *om.* A. [6] & an o*þer* A.
[7] Gloucescestre G.

The Heralds

the Kyngis horoudis and pursiuauntis
In cotis of armys amyunauntis;
The Englisshe a beste, the Frensshe a floure,
of Portyngale bothe caste and toure, 4
and othir cotis of dyuersite,

were drest like lords, adornd with gold.

as lordis beren in her degre.
Good-liche with gold thei were be-gon,
Right as the sonne on hem shon. 8
this sight was to hem a sory chere;
of sorow and pyne thei weren full nere;

The poor French had hardly a clout.

of that pore pepuH that weren put oute;
thei had[den][1] vnnethe a cloute; 12
The clothis that weren on her backe,
kept hem there from reine and racke;
The wethur was to hem a peyne,
ffor alle that tyme it stode be[2] neyne. 16
There men myght se a[3] grete pite,

A child of 2 begd bread,

a child of two yere or thre
Goo aboute and begge his brede,

its parents lay dead.

ffor ffadir and modir bothe lay dede. 20
and vndir hem the watir stode;
and yet thei lay cryynge aftur foode.

Some had starvd to death.

Summe storuen to þe[4] dethe,
and summe stoppid bothe yen and brethe; 24
And summe crokid in the kneys,
and as lene as eny treis;

Mothers held dead children up.

and women holdynge in her arme
a dede child, and nothynge warme; 28
And childeren soukynge on the pappe
Withynne a dede womanys lappe; [leaf 142]
There men myght ffynde ffuH ryue,

10 or 12 dead to 1 living.

x. or xij. deie, ayens on alyue. 32
and thei knewe not of dethe,
So preuely thei yolden vpe the brethe,

They died noiselessly, as if they slept.

withoute noyse or eny cry;
as thei had slept, so did thei dey. 36
These were sightis of differaunce,
that on of ioye, that othir of penaunce,

[1] had hem A. [2] by A. [3] see a A. se G. [4] to þe A. to G.

as heuen and erthe had partid on twoo,
that on to wele, that othir to woo.
ther was neuyr[1] kynge so straunge,
To see that sight, but his hert wold chaunge, 4
and wold considre to that syght,
he shuld be pensiff, and moche light.

The sad sight would change any king's heart.

there men myght lerne in her lif,
what it is, ayens right to strif; 8
ffor while it lay in her lotte,
thei were ffuH crueH (God it wotte),
and mercy they wold non haue
tille nede come that thei moste craue; 12
and yet, for alle her wikkid wille,
Mercy thei were take vntiH.
Now of that pepuH let we be,
and of oure tretis speke we. 16

Yet the Roueners had no mercy on us till their need came.

we hem chalengithe and accusithe,
and thei ansuerithe and excusithe.
we askid mykiH, and thei proferid smaH,
that is yuyH to accord with aH; 20
tho thei tretid an xiiij nyght,
and yet accordid thei ne myght.

We discuss with em for a fortnight in vain,

thanne the tretise thei broken in haste,
and bethe tentis adoun were caste. 24
thanne the Frensshe men hem be-thought,
her owne bale that thei had wrought.
whanne thei shuld her leue take,
thei preyed oure lordis, and this thei spake: 28
"For the loue of God Almyght,
contenew this tretise to mydnyght;
And yf we clepyn, that ye wille speke
with-ynn that tyme, we you be-seke. 32
that we mowe[2] haue eudyence
fforto here oure euydence."

and break off treating. They pray for delay till midnight.

Quod[3] the Englisshe lordis, "that, we assent."
thei toke her leue, and forthe thei[4] went. 36
to the Kyng our lordis passid,
and tolde hym aH these materis faste,

Our lords agree, and report to Henry V.

[1] neu*er* þe A. [2] may A. [3] Ox A. [4] þay A. the G.

how thei lefte, and in what issewis,
and how[1] thei contynuyd the trewis.

Henry V approves his lords' action.

yet the Kynge was mercyfuH in mode:
That thei had grauntid, he not withstode. 4
Thei passid forthe with simpuH chere,
Into that cite alle in fere.

In Rouen,

Sone in the toun it was yspoke
that the trewis was tho broke. 8

the poor abuse the rich,

the pore pepuH alle aboute,
on the riche thei made a showte,

call em 'murderers,'

and seiden, "ye fals cherlis!
and also ye murtherreris and manquelleris! 12
will ye take no reward
to vs tha[t] suffren here so herd,
and deiden here euyry day?
welle we thanne telle may; 16
and also rennyth vpon oure coste,
and in youre defaute we ben loste.

and appeal to God against them.

we pray to God that ye[2] mote ansuere,
be-fore that iuged that suffrid sore 20
on Caluery, vpon the rode,
and bought vs with His blessid blode,
that ye ben gilty in this case.
we you apele byfore His face! 24
wold[3] ye obeye you to youre liege,
thanne wold he come[4] lere his[5] sege;
but for youre goodis ye abide,
and for youre pompe and for youre pryde 28

If they won't yield to Henry V

ye nyH enclyne to oure Kynge,
but rathur lese vs for hungerynge.
but ye accord with oure wille,

the poor 'll kill em.

right here anon we shuH you kyH; 32
and he shaH come into his right.
and yf[6] ye it withstonde, we shaH fight,
leuyr thanne thus to lye here,
and be enfamenyd alle in ffere." 36
they seide they dede it for a skylle.
alle that we do ys for a wile,

[1] how þat A. [2] *þat* ye A. that G. [3] wlod G.
[4] sone A. [5] þis A. [6] yf *om.* A.

to excuse vs to that fode,
[1] that we pay hym but lituH goode.[2]
thei semblid thanne aH that cite;
and euyry man seid in his degre: 4 — The Roueners say they must either give up their city
"no nede is to counseiH goo;
ther is no moo but of two:
ffor to dellyuyre vp this clos,
or to be dede here: this is to[3] chos." 8 — or die.
to the Porte of Seynt Hillary thei went,
and clepid oute by on assent.
tho ansuerid hem[4] a knyght anon,
that was clepid Robesard, Sir Iohn: 12 — They ask Sir John Robsart
"sirrys," he seid, "what is youre wille?"
thei ansuerid and seid hym tille:
"we you be-seche, pur charite,
And for the honoure of cheualrye, [leaf 142, back] 16
that ye for vs woH speke youre speche
to the Duke of Gloucestre, and hym beseche — to get the Duke of Gloster to tell Henry V
So for us to[5] the Kynge to prayne,
That we nought mowe[6] trete ayayne. 20
we wolle submitt[7] to his wille, — that they'll submit to him.
and alle that longith hym vntille,
oure prosonys and oure possessionys,
alle to dispose at his discrescionys." 24
whanne that[8] Robesard the Duke had told, — The Duke tells the King.
ffor hem to speke in haste he wold:
he meuyd hit vnto oure Kynge,
and he hym grauntid newe tretynge 28
Of Caunturbury the Erchebisshop fre: — The Archbishop of Canterbury
at Seynt Katerynys thanne lay he.
whanne he was knowynge of that care,
at his herte he toke it sare; 32
to the kynge sone he wente,
and hym be-sought with good entente, — has leave to speak to the
that he myght wende[9] to that cite,
and speke with her spryrytuate, 36 — Religious of Rouen.
and to be meue of that trete;

[1] & þat A. [2] litil goode A. lituH G. [3] þe A.
[4] hem answerid A. [5] to *om.* A. [6] now A.
[7] submytte vs A. submittis G. [8] þat A. the G.
[9] myght wende A. myght G.

and help a fynaH pees to be.
the Kynge hym grauntid anon right.

Tents are pitcht.

two pauylonys anon were pight,[1]
with-ynne the trenche that thei had ben. 4
the erchebisshop pight his owne betwene;
So was that state of[2] spiritualte
there for to make an vnity.

Negotiations go on for 4 days,

They tretid day, they tretid nyght, 8
with candiH and torchis bryght;
thei tretid iiij dayes in that place,

and then end.

and tho made an ende, thorough Godis grace.
whanne they knewe a clousion, 12

The Roueners

the Frensshe men made a peticion;
her worship for to saue,

ask for 8 days,

But viij dayes forto haue,

to send to the French king at Burgundy.

That thei myght send to tho[3] Frensshe Kynge 16
and to the Burgoynys, this tydynge,
In what degre they stode, and howe,
willynge hem to haue reskowe.
it was a poynte of cheualre; 20

Henry V grants them.

The kynge hem grauntid with hert fre,
that thei myght bothe knowe and kenne
how that it shuld be, and whanne.

The Agreement is, that if no rescue comes in 8 days,

Now to my tale wiH ye tende, 24
and y shaH you teH her poyntemente:
In viij dayes, as y you tolde,
yf no reskowis come to that hold,

Rouen is to be given up to Henry V,

They shuld dellyuere that cite, 28
And alle the burgaysis, Englisshe to be,
and to oure Kynge, of money sounde,

with £50,000,

to pay oure Kynge .l. M^{li}. ti.;

and they are to build Henry a castle

and more, they shuld vndirtake, 32
a casteH for oure Kynge to make,
withynne in half yeris, withoute let;

on the Seine,

and vpon Sayne it shuld be set.
and thei to haue her ffraunchisis fre, 36
as it was wonte in olde tyme to be.
And no man withynne her cite selle,

[1] prght G. [2] state of A. state G. [3] þe A.

But citezenys that ther-ynne duelle,
And he that was a Normaunt borne,
And an Englisshe man sworne;
prysoner and[1] othir, as hit was skille, 4
oure Kynge to raunsom at his wille;
and alle the sowdyouris that there were,
her goodis to lese,[2] and goo bare
In her dowbelettis oute of the toune; 8
and yet oure Kynge yaf euyry ma*n* a goune.
This was the compasicion,
and made be[3] good discrecion.
thanne Graunde Iakis anon present, 12
aftur reskewe he was sent;
and of that message he was fuꝗ fayne.
to Rone he come nought ageyne;
but a messagere thedur he did sende, 16
and bad hym haue do, and make an ende,
and did hem to wete (y telle you trewe,)
Ther was no reskewe that he knewe.
the viij day (the trowthe to telle), 20
in the feste of Seint Wolston, that day befeꝗ,
and this was vpon a Thorysday.
oure Kynge thanne, in good aray,
ffuꝗ rialliche in his astate, 24
as a conquerowe, there he sat*e*,
with-ynne a[4] hous of cherite,
to resseyue the keyis of that cite.
mou) sir Guy the botelere, 28
and burgeisis of that cite i*n* fere,
to the Kynge the keyis they brought,
and of legaunce hym besought.
to Exet*er*, oure Kynge souerayne, 32
comaund the keyis, and to be capteyne;
and the Duke tho charchid he
to resseyue that cite,
and entre in his name that nyght, 36
and assygnyd to hym many a knyght.
thanne the Duk of Exet*er*, withoute bode,

The French soldiers in Rouen are to go home bare.

Henry V gives each a gun.

The Rouen deputy to the French King

sends a message that they'll not be rescued.

So on the 8th day of the truce

Henry V

receives the keys of Rouen

and hands them to the Duke of Exeter,

and bids him enter the city that night.

[1] or A. [2] goodis to lese A. goodis G.
[3] by A. [4] an A.

The Duke of Exeter rides into Rouen

toke his hors and forthe he rode
to Benysyn that porte so stronge,
That he had lay before so longe. [leaf 143]
To that yate sone he cam, 4

with a brilliant suite.

and with hym many a worthi man;
There was neyinge of many a stede,
And shynynge of many a gay wede;
There was many a geton gay, 8
with mychiH and grete aray.
and whanne the yate was opynnyd there,
thei[1] weren redy, in to fare:

He is welcomd by music,

Trompis blewe her bemys of bras, 12
pipis and clarionys, for-sothe ther was;
and as thei entrid, thei yaf a showte
with her voyce: thei were[2] fuH stowte. 15

and shouts

"Seint Gregori! Seint Gregori!" thei cride on hight,
and seide "welcome oure kyngis right!"
the Frensshe pepuH of that cite

from thousands of the French.

were gederid be[3] thousandis hem to se:
thei criden alle "welcome" in fere; 20
"in siche tyme mote ye entre here,
plesynge to God that it may be,
and to vs, pees and vnyte."
and of that pepuH, to teH the trewthe, 24

But it is sad to see the

yt was a sight of ffuH·grete rewthe:
mykiH of that folke ther-ynne,

skin-and-bone folk,

thei weren but very bonys and skyn,
with ey-on holow, and nose sharpe, 28
vnnethe thei myght brethe or carpe;

pale as lead,

ffor her colour was wan as lede,

some dying,

not like to lyf, but sone byn dede;
disfigurid patrouys and quantite, 32
and as a dede Kynge thei weren paynte.
there men myght se an exampleyre
how foode makithe the pepuH feyre:
In euyry strete, summe lay dede, 36

and hundreds crying for bread.

and hundris cryinge aftur brede;
and aftur longe, meny a day,

[1] & þay A. [2] þat was A. [3] by A.

thei died as faste as thei myght be laid away.
In-to that wey, God hem wisse,
that thei may come to his blisse! Amen!
Now wille y more telle[1] spelle, 4
and of the Duke of Excestre to telle.
to that casteH firste he rode,
and sithen the cite alle abrode,
lengthe and brede he it mette, 8
and riche baneris he upsette,
vppon the Porte Seint Hillary,
a banere of the Trynyte;
and at the Porte Baux[2] he set euyn 12
a banere of the Quene of Heuen;
and at Porte Martuyle he vp pight
Of Seint George a baner bright.
he set vpon the casteH to stonde, 16
The armys of Fraunce and of Engelonde.
And on the Fryday, in the mornynge,
Into that cite come oure Kynge,
And alle the bisshopis in her[3] aray, 20
and vij abbotis with crucchis gay:
xlij crossis there were of religion,
and seculer; and alle thei went in[4] prosession
ayens that Prynce withe-oute the toune; 24
and euyry cros, as thei stode,
he blessid hem with mylde mode;
and holy watir, with her honde,
They yaf the Prynce of oure lande. 28
and at the Porte Cauke[5] so wide,
he passid yn[6] withoute pryde;
withoute pype or bomys blaste;
oure Kynge, worthili he[7] paste, 32
and as a conqueoure yn[8] his right,
thankynge euyr God Almyght.
and alle the pepuH in that cite,
"welcome oure lord!" thei seid so fre, 36
"welcome into thyn owne right,

The Duke o Exeter rides thru Rouen,

and sets English banners on its gates,

on its castle the arms of France and England.

Next day, Henry V comes,

and is met by bishops, abbots, etc.,

and sprinkled with holy water.

He rides in quietly,

like a Conqueror,

and all the folk cry 'Welcome!'

[1] telle *om.* A. [2] kany*er* A. [3] her A. he G.
[4] a A. [5] kaux A. tauke G. [6] in passid A.
[7] he in A. [8] in A. lyn G.

as it is the wille of God Almyght!"

The Rouen folk cheer Hen. V on his brown steed.

with that, thei cryed alle 'nowelle'
as high as thei myght yelle.
he rode vpon a browne stede; 4
of blake damaske was his wede;
a peitreH of[1] gold fuH bright
aboute his necke hynge doun right.
and a pendaunt be-hynde hym did honge 8
vnto the erthe, it was so longe.

He alights at the Minster,

and thei that neuyr byforn hym[2] did se,
thei knewe by chere whiche was he.
To the mynstur did he fare, 12
and of his hors he light thare.
his chapeH mette hym at the dore there,
and went before hym alle in fere,
and songe a responde fuH glorious, 16
'Quis est magnus dominus.'

hears Mass,

Messe he hard, and offryd þoo,[3]

and goes to the Castle,

and thanne to the casteH did he goo,
that is a place of rialte, 20
and a paleis of grete beaute.

and lodges in the city,

there he hym loggid in the toune
with riaH and grete renoune.
and the cite faste did[4] encrese, 24

which is soon plentifully fed.

of bredde and wyn, fisshe and flesshe;
and thus oure gracious liege

So the siege is ended.

Made an ende of his sege.
and alle that haue herd this redynge, [leaf 143, back] 28
To his blisse, Criste you brynge,
That for vs deied vpon a tree!
Amen! sey we alle pur charite.

And in this yere was quene Iohna, that was Kynge Henryis 32 wiff[5] the iiij[e], arestid be[6] John, Duke of Bedfford, thanne Lewtenaunt of Engelond, and sent to the casteH of Ledis in kent, to abide the wille and grace of the Kynge.

¶ And in the same tyme maystur Randolf, the gray ffrere, was 36 taken in the yle of Gernesey, and was brought to the casteH of

[1] gf G. [2] hym A. hym hym G. [3] offryd þoo A. offryd G.
[4] dide faste A. [5] henreis wiff A. Henryis G. [6] by A.

Chirbourne in Normandye, for treson that she[1] wrought ayens the Kynge.

¶ And at Wittesontyde the Kynge lay at Maunt with alle his
4 lordis; and there he hild his rialte and feste at that tyme amonge alle his pepuH. and tho was maystir Randulf the Grey ffrere, and his beaupere, brought fro the casteH of Cherborugh to Maunte there the kynge lay; and from thens the[2] ffrere Randulf was brought
8 to London, and put in-to the Toure in prison, by comaundement of the Kynge. And so by processe longe aftur the persone of the Toure and this ffrere Randulf fillen in debate and stryffe with-ynne the Toure ward; and there this persone smote this ffrere
12 Randulf, and sloue hym; and thus he made his ende of the world.

¶ And at this same feste of Wittesontide, the Kynge made two newe lordis[3] in Normandye: that on was the Capdowe of Burdeux, and he was made Erle of Langle;[4] and Sir John Grey, Erle of
16 Tankyruyle.

¶ And in the same tyme come the Embassitorys of Fraunce into Maunte, there the Kynge of Engelond lay, to haue a day of trete to the whiche trete the Kynge of Fraunce shuld come hym self
20 and hys Quene, and Dame Katerene his doughtir, and the Duke of Burgoyne, with the othir counseile of Fraunce. And there the day and place was assignyd and take for bothe pertyes besyde this toune of Melange. And there was the feld rially apparaylid of
24 tentis and pauylownys on bothe sidis, bothe for Engelisshe and Frensshe; and this fild was listid and palid alle rounde aboute in bothe sidis. ¶ And in the Frensshe side stode a pale dichid, for mistruste that they had of the Engelisshe pepuH,[5] and on bothe
28 sidis serteyne men of armys weren assyngnyd for to kepe the fild, and in the myddis of this felde stode a pauylowne rialle, with a large EguH gilte, for Kynge Henry of Engelond. ¶ And a tente stode aforn ayens it, for the Frensshe kynge. And in this
32 pauylown and tente, by ordynaunce made, shuld no pepuH come but tho that werne sworen on bothe sidis to the Counseille, vp peyne of dethe.

¶ And on the Engelisshe partye was ffirste, Henry the King of
36 Engelond, and Thomas his brothir, the Duke of Clarence, and Sir Vmfray, his othir brothir, Duke of Glou*cestre*, and Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exetir, and the nobuH Erle of the Marche, and

[1] he A. [2] þis A. [3] Erlis A. [4] langvile A.
[5] And þe Englissh side was not but barrid A.

the Bisshop of Wynchestir, Sir Henry Beauford, the Kynges vncle, and othir Bisshoppis, and erlis, barony and lordis, and othir clergye,[1] knyghtis and squyeris, that weren assyngnyd to the nombre of this trete. 4

¶ And on the Frensshe partye ther shuld be the Frensshe Kynge; but he come not, for his infirmyte was come on hym, that he myght not come there at that tyme. ¶ But the Quene come, and Dame Kateryne hir doughtir, and the Duke of Burgoyne, and 8 xxvj ladyes in good aray, with othir lordis of the counseiH of Fraunce. And vij dayes they tretid and they myght not accorde; and tho weren the[2] pauylonys and the tentis taken vp and born awey, and the ffeld broken vp, and euyry man went his wey. 12

¶ And tho the Kynge of Engelond, with alle[3] his lordis and all his pepuH, turnyd ayen and come to Maunte. ¶ And thanne this Erle of Gascoigne toke his retenewe with othir Engelisshe men, and come be[4] nyght, and stale the toune of Pounteyse of the 16 Frensshe men, and drof hem oute; and so thei fled; and so the toune was wonne; and there-ynne was myche rychesse. ¶ And whanne the Kynge[5] herd this, he sent his brothir Thomas, the Duke of Clarence, with his pepuH thidur to Pountese, and made 20 hym captayne there-of. And thanne he toke his pepuH and issewid oute, and come to-fore the Cite of paris with x. M^{li}. men of armis;[6] and there they lay two dayes and two nyghtis, and no pepuH proferid oute to hem; and tho they turnyd and went ayen to 24 Pounteyse.

¶ And thanne[7] the Duke of Burgoyne, seynge[8] that they myght not accorde with the Engelisshe party; tho the duke of Burgoyne and his counseile come to the Dolfyn, there he lay, to 28 trete with hym, to se and knowe how they myght beste voyde[9] the Kynge of Engelond with alle his pepuH oute of the Rewme of Fraunce by theyre good counceiH. ¶ And thanne the Dolfyn and his counseiH tho answerid and seide, "like as he had brought,[10] he 32 shuld brynge hem oute:" and so they fille in altercacion and strif with-ynne hem self; and there they sloue the Duke of Burgoyne and othir lordis that come with hym, in her counseiH chambre.

¶ And whanne tydynges come to the Frensshe kynge and to 36 his counseiH, and to alle the Burgeysis of Paris, that the Duke of

[1] clergie & A. [2] the A. the the G. [3] alle *om.* A. [4] by A.
[5] *leaf* 144. [6] of armis *om.* A. [7] þo A. [8] seyng þis A.
[9] beste voyde A. beste G. [10] brought hem in A.

Burgoyne was thus slayne and dede, and his othir ffelawship, thanne were they sory and yveH payde, and weren tho redles, and wiste not what to don. ¶ And thanne the Frensshe kyngis counseiH,
4 and the grete and worthiest Burgeysis of Parys token her counseiH with aH the countre aboute Parys, and come and tretid with the Kynge of Englonde and his lordis and grauntid hem her askynge, that Henry the Kynge of Engelond shuld haue dame Kateryne the
8 Frensshe Kynges doughtir to wif, with aH his othir askyngis, and the Kynge of Engelond toke his lordis and othir of his men, and made grete puruyaunce and ordynaunce that he wold haue for his maryage.

¶ And so the Kynge wente into[1] Troys in[2] Champeyne there
12 they shold byn weddid; and thedur was Dame Kateryne brought with grete rialte; and there they were worthiliche welcomed and resseyued of aH the pepuH there. ¶ And there the Erchebisshop of Caunturburi, Sir Henry Chichele, and othir Engelisshe Bisshoppis
16 and Frensshe Bisshoppis diden this solempne seruyce there, and weddid hem togederis there by ordynaunce of God and holy chirche, with honoure and grete ioye. And there he made a rialle and a passynge worthi solempne feste to alle the pepuH that come,
20 the Monday nexte aftur the Trynyte day in the yere of his regne the vij^{e}.

¶ And aftur this rialle and solempne weddynge, the Kynge and the Quene, with her pepuH, come doune to Rone, and there they
24 dullid a longe tyme, and in the contre aboute Roone, tiH he sawe his tyme to come in-to Engelond with Dame Kateryne the Quene, his wif; and ordeynyd, or he come oute of Normandye, Thomas his brother, the Duke of Clarence, to be his leef-tenaunte of Nor-
28 mandye, and of alle othir londis that he had in that contre of Fraunce, and lefte hym pepuH and stuffe ynow to maynteyne and kepe his right that he had goten, vnto his ayencomynge, and byraught hym to God.

32 ¶ And tho aftur the Kynge and the Quene come to Caleys, and so ouyr the see into Engelond, and Dame Katerine his Quene with hym. And they landid at Douyre in Kente; and there come a grete multitude of men of the contre aboute, and in goode aray on hors-
36 backe, and welcomyd hem with alle honoure and reuerence that thei myght, and so brought hem to the cite of Caunturbury; and there were thei[3] worthily welcomyd of alle the pepuH of alle the contre of Kent, and yoven vnto hir grete yeftis, and so come

[1] to A. [2] in A. and G. [3] þay weren A.

ridynge with hem thorough Kente, and brought the Kynge and the Quene to his maner of Eltham, and there restid hem awhile tylle they wold come to London.

¶ And the meyre and aldremen, with alle the commnalte of the 4 Cite of London, lete ordeyne and make many[1] diuerse shewyngis and sightis thorugh the high stretis in the Cite, with many othir presentis and yeftis, bothe [2]to Kynge and Quene at the comynge into the Cite. ¶ And that day that the Kynge and the Quene 8 remeuyd from the maner of Eltham, the Meyre and aldremen, and the communis of London, in good araye of white garmentis and rede hodis or rede kappis,—and euyry crafte, a dyuersite on her garnement to knowe euyry crafte be[3] hym-self;—and aH on hors 12 backe, with clarionys and aH maner of[4] lowde mynstrelsie, in honoure and comforte of the Kynge and of the Quene, and to the glorious and riaH sight of straungeris that come with hem ouyr fro*m* the see, and for the grete worship of the worthi Cite of 16 London, the Meyre and his aldremen, with the worthi pepuH of the cite, the nombre of xxx M^{ti}. men and moo, abyden and houyd on her hors on the Blake-Hethe in Kente, abydynge the Kynge and the Quenys comynge. ¶ And tho, whanne they were come, they 20 weren reseyuyd reuerently and worthyli, with alle humylite and obeysaunce of alle pepuH and me*n*,[5] with[6] alle the melodye that they had, and so brought hem into the cite, and so to the Toure of London; and there the Kynge and the Quene restid hem. 24

And on the morow, aftur Quene Kateryne come fro the Toure to her coronacion to Westm*inster*, and tho the Meyre and the[7] aldremen and alle the Commnes of the cite,[8] that is for to seye, euyry crafte in her beste clothynge, with alle her melodye and 28 mynstralsie, went alle on ffote tho, and brought the Quene thorugh the Cite. And there was don and shewid to hir alle the rialte of sightis that myght be don to her comforte and plesaunce, and euyry strete hongid rychely[9] with riche clothis of gold and silke, 32 and of velewettis and clothis of araas, the beste that myght be gotyn; and so the pepuH brought hir thorugh the cite to Westm*inster*, to the Kyngis paleys.

¶ And thanne the nexte day sewynge the Sonday aftur the 36 feeste of Seynt Mathy apostiH in lente, Dame Kateryne the Quene

[1] many riall A. [2] *leaf* 144, *back*. [3] by A.
[4] of o*þer* A. [5] and me*n om.* A. [6] & A. [7] and the *om.* A.
[8] of the cite *om.* A. [9] richely hongid A.

was crounyd in the Abbey of Westem*inster*, with alle the grete and worthi Bisshoppis of this londe, with alle the solempnite and rialte that myght be don and ordeynyd; and the ffeste holden in the
4 paleis opyn to alle pepuH, straungeris and othir that wold come, of alle maner rialteis of metis and drynkys.

1421 Eo. 3 March

¶ And on the efter-euyne nexte sewynge, Thomas, the Duke of Clarence, tho issewid oute from the place there he lay, with a
8 lytuH meyne, to knowe and se the place and grounde where the Dolfynnys pepuH, Armynackis and Scottis, had ordeynyd to mete and to fight with the Engelisshe men, and to yeue bataiH. ¶ And as the Duke of Clarence come with his folke by the watir of Leyre
12 vpon this eftur euyn aforn seide, the Erle of Armynacke with the dolfynys meyne and his and a grete nombre of[1] Scottis mette with the Duke of Clarence and his meyne by this watir of Leyre; and there they foughten to-gederis; and at the laste there
16 was the Duke of Clarence slayne, and othir moo with hym; and there was take prisoner the Erle of Huntyngdon and the Erle of —Somersette and his brothir, and the Fytz-Watir, and othir moo.

¶ And aftur, the Bastard of Clarence come and gate his ffaderis
20 body, and did so brynge it into Engelond, and so to the abbey of Criste-chirche of Caunturbury, and was there enterid and buryed —besides Kynge [Henry] the iiij^e. his ffadir, on whos soule oure Lord God haue mercy! Amen!

24 ¶ And also in the same yere, betwene Cristemesse and Candilmasse, the toune of Milon was yolden to the Kynge; and all the cheueteynys, with the soudiourys, were taken, and led to the Cite —of Paris in the croke of the mone, they myght sey; for of hem ther
28 scapid thens but a fewe on lyue. And sone aftur, Kynge Henry the vj. was born in the casteH of Wyndesore, the day of seynt Nicholas the Bisshop, the yere of oure Lord Ihesu Criste .M^li. cccc. xxj., whos godfaderis and godmodris at the fontstone weren these: sir
32 Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestir, and Iohn, Duke of Bedford; and the Duchesse of Holond was his godmodir; and at[2] his —confirmacion the Erchebisshop of Caunterbury was his god ffadir.//

How whanne Kynge Henry herd of his brotheris dethe, Thomas,
36 **the Duke [3] of Clarence, ordeynyd a newe retenewe, and wente ouyr the see in grete haste, & leid sege to Mewis in Bry, with his pepuH.//**

[1] of meyne G. of A. [2] and G. and at A. [3] *leaf* 145.

And in the vj. yere of Kynge Henryes regne the v÷, come tydyngis in-to Engelond how that Thomas his brothir, the Duke of Clarence, was sleyne by the watir of Leyre, wherefore the Kynge was heuy and wrothe; and in aH the haste that he myght, he 4 ordeynyd hym a newe retenewe of men of armys and archeris, with alle maner of othir stuffis that bylongid therto at aH maner nedis, and went ouyr the se with his pepuH, and come into Fraunce, and bysegid Mewis in Bry, a grete toune and a stronge, with a 8 Castelle. And that Towne and the Castelle weren welle vitailid and eke mannyd; and grete strengthe they had with-ynne hem, and manly they deffendid hem, and kep[t]e Towne and CasteH longe tyme.[1] 12

¶ And in this tyme, while the Kynge hild his sege of Mewis yn Bry, ther come goode tydyngis oute of Engelond to the Kynge, how that Dame Kateryne his wif, the Quene, was dellyuyryd of a feyre sone, a lord and prynce, to[2] the Rewme ese, profite and worship, 16 and gladnesse in hert, whiche with high[3] and grete worthynesse[4] was brought forthe, and cristenyd in his colage withynne his Castelle of Wyndesore. And of this worthi tydyngis the Kynge was glad, and thankyd God, and so diden alle his pepuH whanne 20 they herd there-of: and that day of this worthi pryncis birthe was on Seynt Nycholas day in the yere of oure Lord God[5] .M^hi^. CCCC. xxj. and the Regne of the Kynge the ix^e^. ¶ And aftur these good tydyngis, the Kynge, with alle his pepuH, busied sore 24 to gete this towne and CasteH, bothe by watir and by londe and leid therto his grete Gounnys, Trepgettis and Engenys, and bete adowne the wallis in dyuers placis; and so at the laste they entrid yn with strengthe, and gate the Towne; and there was 28 moche pepuH slayne and dede; and tho was the toune wonne and the casteH eke.// ¶ And there the Kynge toke many riche men prysoneris, and sent hem afturward into Engelond.

¶ And thanne the Kynge sent aftur the Quene, and aftur Iohn 32 his brothir, the Duke of Bedford, and that they shuld brynge with hem more stuffe of pepuH in all haste. And anon as these[6] tydyngis come to, the Quene Kateryne went to Hampton, and the Duke of Bedford also, with a feyre meyne, and wente to Shippe, and come 36 ouyr the se, and landid at Hareflete in Normandye the vij. day of

[1] tyme for all her enemyes A. [2] to all A.
[3] hert whiche and with high G. hert with high A.
[4] worthynesse & solempnyte A. [5] God *om.* A. [6] these *om.* A.

May in saufte, and alle her pepuꝗ,—thankyd be God!—and in alle haste reden forthe vp in the londe tille thei come there as the Kynge was.// ¶ And sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Glouc*estre*, his othir
4 brothir, was tho made the Kyngis Lefetenaunte of Engelond in his absence, to kepe and gouerne the Rewme in alle degreis, in saufynge of the pepuꝗ and of the lond, that God maynten and kepe in good pees and reste, with good loue and charite to endure!
8 Amen! //

¶ And in the lettur ende of the monythe of Apriel, in the .x. yere of Kynge Henry the V. is regne, was the toune and casteꝗ of Mewis in Biri gotyn and wonne by[1] grete strengthe, by the Kynge
12 and his pepuꝗ, oute of the Frensshe mennys hondis. ¶ And in the firste day of Iuyꝗ the same yere, the Kynge sent ouyr the see his prisoneris that he had take at Mewis in Bry, the ffuꝗ nombre of xxviij. personys; and they weren brought in-to Engelond, and
16 londid at Hampton; and aꝗ his prisoneris weren caryed in cartis to London, and so brought into the Toure of London, to kepe hem there-ynne saufly.//

¶ And tho anon the Kynge remouyd from Mewis in Bry, and
20 come ayen to Parys. And with ynne awhile aftur, the Kynge beganne to waxe sore sike, and tho remouyd hym to[2] haue the betir Eyre and hele of body; and his sykenesse come to hym so sore þat[3] he myght not welle endure it. ¶ And so he sent aftur his lordis
24 that weren there, and his counsaiꝗ, and deuysid his wille, and made his testament fuꝗ, and sette his executoris, and deuysid his tresoure and his Iewellis to ben solde, and to pay[4] his dettis, as weꝗ to his sowdyouris as to othir dettouris.// [5]¶ And he ordeynyd
28 Iohn, the Duke of Beedford, his brothir, to byn there Regent Gouernoure of Fraunce and of Normandie, vnto good gouernaunce and profite vnto Henry his[6] sone, and good kepynge in reste and pees of his pepuꝗ there, vnto the tyme the good Counseiꝗ of Enge-
32 lond myght dresse it and amende it, to set it in pessabuꝗ poynte and reste.// ¶ And he comyttid thanne[7] the kepynge of Henry, his yonge sone, to Syr Henry Beauford his vncle, the Bisshop of Wynchestire, and to Sir Thomas Beauford, his othir vncle, Duke
36 of Exetre, and[8] charged hem bothe to his good gouernaunce and

[1] with A. [2] forto A. [3] hym sore G. him so sore þat A.
[4] to ben and to pay G. to ben solde to pais A. [5] *leaf* 145, *back*.
[6] his yong A. [7] And þane he comyttid A.
[8] & charged hem bothe to hie gou*ernaun*ce and kepyng A.

kepyng in his tendir age, for alle the louys that euyr were betwene hem, that no preiudise nor wronge were do to hym thorough noo fals couetous counseiH nor nede.// ¶ And tho the Kynge disposid hym to Godwardis, and toke aH his rightis of holy 4 chirche, and toke his leue of aH his ffre[n]dis, and comendid his soule to God, and deid, the xxix[1] of Auguste in the x. yere of his regne: on whos soule God haue mercy! amen! //

¶ And thanne was his body enbawmyd and dight with riche 8 Spicerie and oynementis, and closid in shire clothe, and closid faste in a cheste; and he was cariid doune to Rone, and there he had his dirige and his messes don for hym, with aH the moste solempnite that myght byn ordeynyd and doon in holy chirche; and from 12 thens he was brought doune by londe to Caleis. And with the Erchebisshop of Caunturbury[2] come the Quene of Engelond his wif, Dame Kateryne, and many othir grete lordis, and knyghtis and Squyeris, and brought the body ouyr the see into Engelond, 16 and come vp at Douir, and so to Caunturbury, and so thoroughe Kente to London.//

¶ And thanne[3] the Meyre and aldremen, with aH the Craftis of London, weren clothid in blacke, abydynge the body of the kynge 20 on the Blacke-Hethe in Kente; and so come doun to seint Thomas Waterynge, withoute[4] Sougthwarke, and there met aH the religious pepuH with þe[5] body, prystis and othir, and brought the cors to London, and so thorough the Cite to Seint Poulis. And there was 24 Dirige don ouyr euyn, and messe of Requyem on the morowe, and whanne the seruyce was doun at aftur mete, bothe the lordis and knyghtis and othir, with aH the Commnes of the Cite of London, brought hym from Seint Poulis to Westm*inster*, and there was his 28 Dirige don ouyr euyn, and messe on the moroughe of Requyem,[6] with aH the Bisshoppis; and there was he burye[d] by Seint Edwardis Shryne, the .vij^e^ day of the monythe of Nouembre, in the yere of oure Lorde Ih*es*u criste, M^xi^. CCCC. xxij.// 32

¶ And yn that same yere it byfeH so that thoroughoute aH Engelond was a grete yere of ffrute. And in that same yere deiden the moste partye of alle the lory treis thorugh aH Engelond.//

[1] xxix day A. [2] with his herce A. [3] thanne *om.* A.
[4] withoute w*ith*oute A. [5] the þe G.
[6] messe of Requiem on þe morowe A.

How aftur the dethe of Kynge Henry the v^e^, Regnyd his sone Kynge Henry the vj^e^, and was borne at the CasteH of Wyndesore.//

4 ANd aftur the dethe of Kynge Henry the v÷, Regnyd Henry his sone, that was[1] borne in Wyndesore, that me*n* callid Kynge Henry the vj^e^. And for his tendir and yonge age, Henry his ffadir comyttid hym to the kepynge of Sir Henry Beauford,
8 Bisshop of Wynchestre, and to Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exetre, bothe his bele vnclys; and the kepynge of Fraunce and Normandie to Iohn the Duke of Bedford, to ben regent and gouernoure of bothe there, tille that Henry, his yonge sone, by
12 his good counseile wold set it in bettur gouernaunce.// ¶ And the kepinge of Engelond to sir Vmfray, the Duke of Gloucestre, to ben Proptectour and deffendour of the Rewme tille that Henry his yonge sone, by alle the good counseile of Engelond, wold set
16 and put it[2] into bettur gouernaunce, and to moste profite of[3] the Kynge and of the Rewme.

¶ And in the seconde yere of Kynge Henry the vj ÷ Sir Iohn Mortymere, knyght, brake pryson oute of the Toure of
20 London, and was take ayen vpon the Toure-wharf; and there he was foule woundid and bete, and brought on the morow to Westem*inster* byforn the Kyngis Iusticis; and there for his treson Iuggid[4] to byn brought ayen to the Toure of London, and there
24 leide vpon an[5] hurduH, and so drawe thoroughe the Cite to Tibourne, and there [6]hongid, and his hed smeton of, and sette on London Brigge; and thus endid he his lif: on whos soule God haue m̃erci! //

28 ¶ And in the iij^e^ yere of Kynge Henryis Regne, Sir Edmonde Mortymere, Erle of the Marche, wente oute of Engelond into Wallis, and so ouyr into Irlond, to se his londis and lordshippis there, And anon withynne a lituH processe of tyme there, he deid
32 in Irlond.

And also in the same yere Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, the Kyngis vncle, and the Duches of Holond, his wif, went ou*er* the see oute of Engelond into Henaud, for to take there possession
36 of his wifis heritage of lordshippis and londis. ¶ Wherefore[7] thei were worshipfully welcomyd and resseyuyd for chief lorde

[1] that was *om.* A. [2] put G. put it A. [3] to G. of A.
[4] Iuggid to þe deth A. [5] and G. [6] *leaf* 146. [7] where A.

and lady of the lond. But not longe aftur, hit happid so that he was fayne to retourne ayen into Engelond, and lefte his lady byhynd hym, with aH the tresoure that he[1] brought oute of Engelond with hym, in a toune that me callid Mouns in Heuland, 4 the whiche was sworen to hym to be goode and trewe, and to kepe this lady in sauf ward tille he come ayen to here. But at the laste thei weren fals, for thei delyuyryd the lady to the Duke of Burgoyne; and he sent hir[2] to the cite of Gaunte yn Flaunderis, 8 to be kepte there.// ¶ But, as God wold, in a shorte tyme aftur she ascaped thens in mannys clothynge, and come to a toune of her owne in Selande, that is callid Seryse, and fro thens she went to a toune of her owne in Holand, that is callid Tragowe, where, 12 with help of her ffryndis that there were, she withstode the Duke of Burgoyne and alle his malice.//

¶ And in the iiij^e^ yere of Kynge Henryis regne the vj^e^, there aros a grete debate[3] betwene Sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, 16 and Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestir; and this Henry[4] bare tho heuy herte ayens the pepuH of the Cite of [5]London; And þis debate bygan on þe day of þe Meyris tidynge of London,[5] whanne thei come to Westm*inster* paleis; and the Meyre of London 20 that tyme me callid Iohn Couentre, mercer. And on the nexte morow folowynge, the Bisshop of Wynchestre hadde gaderyd a grete pepull in Soughthewerke, of men of armys and archeris; and they of the Cite kept tho strongly London Brygge-gate with men of 24 armys [&] archeris, that no man myght[6] in, nothir oute, for to kepe the pees in bothe partyes. ¶ And anon, vpon viij. of the clokke in the mornynge, alle the Cite was vp with her wepyn, and shette in her howsis, and drewe hem dounward to Temyse- 28 side, and wold haue apassid ouyr the watir, forto haue taken the Bisshop. ¶ But the Erchebisshop of Caunturbury, Sir Henry Chichele, and the Bisshop of Bathe, Sir Iohn of Stafford, and the Prynce of Portyngale—that in the same tyme were in the Cite of 32 London—went betwene hem and the Cite, that aH was cessid and set in reste by none;[7] blessid be[8] God! //

¶ And in the same yere, the .x. day next aftur that Iohn the Duke of Bedford, and his lady, his wiff, that was the Dukis 36

[1] he þo A. [2] hir þo A. [3] debate & diss*en*cion A.
[4] this sir henry A.
[5—5] London And þis debate bygan on the day of þe Meyris tidynge of London A. *om.* G.
[6] myght nor A. [7] noone y A. [8] by G. be A.

sustur of Burgoyne, come out of Fraunce ouyr the see into Engelond, to here and to[1] se the welfare of oure Kynge, and to se also the gouernaunce of this Rewme. and whanne he come
4 nygh London, the Meyre and Aldremen, and many crafty men of the Cite, riden ayens the Duke and the Duchesse, and welcomyd hem, and brought hem into the Cite. ¶ And at the Bisshoppis place of Dereham, there thei were herborowid; and with hem
8 tho come the Bisshop of Wynchestre ridynge thorough London, to right grete greuance of the pepuꝗ, saue for the displesaunce and presence of the Duke.

¶ And in the .v. yere of Kynge Henry the vj^e., anon aftur
12 the Feste of Seint Hillary, the Kynge held his parlem*e*nt at the toune of Leycestre. And at that parlement Sir Vmfray, the Duke of Gloucestre, and Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestire, weren[2] made at on, and accordid, by the Kynge and the Duke
16 of Bedford, and othir lordis that weren there presente.// ¶ And in that same parlement the kynge made two Dukis: my Lord Sir Richardis[3] sone of Caumbrigge, Duke of Yorke, and Sir Iohn [4]of Mombray, Erle Marchaꝗ, Duke of Northeffolke, and there the
20 kynge made also many knyghtis of the Bathe.

¶ And in this same yere deid Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exetur, the kyngis beꝗ vncle, in a place there he lay in the toune of Grenewiche, iiij. myle oute of London; and thanne he was
24 brought into London to Seint Poulis, and there he had Dirige and messe; and from thens thei caried hym to Seint Edmondisbury; and there he was worthili enterid and buryid in Cristemesse woke in the yere of oure Lord Ih*e*su criste, M^tⁱ. CCCC. xxvj: on whos
28 soule God haue mercy! amen! //

¶ And in the same yere, aboute Shroftide, Iohn, the Duke of Bedford, and his lady the Duchesse, passid ouyr the [see] to Caleis. And a lituꝗ byforne [they] passid ouyr the see to Caleis,
32 Henry the Bisshop of Winchestre, and vpon oure lady day[5] the Anunciacion, the yere of Grace M^tⁱ. CCCC. xxvij, the Bisshop of Wynchestre was made Cardynaꝗ in Seint Marye Chirche in Caleis fuꝗ solempnely; where weren the same tyme the Duke of
36 Bedford, Regent of Fraunce, and his duchesse.// ¶ And byforne the messe was bygonne, whiche the Bisshop of Wynchestre shold do, tho the Popis cosyn brought the Cardynallis hatte, and with

[1] to *om.* A. [2] wer þen A. [3] Richard þe Erlis A.
[4] *leaf* 146, *back.* [5] lady G. lady day A.

grete reuerence he set it vpon the high auter, and there it stode aH the messe tyme.// ¶ And whanne the Bisshop had don his[1] messe and wa[s] onreuersid, thanne was don on the Bisshop an abbite in maner of a ffreris Cope of fyne Scarlet furrid with purid werke; and whanne he was thus arayid, he knelid there vpon his kneys beforn the high auter; and there the Popis bullis weren radde to hym.// ¶ And the firste buH was his charge of his dyngnyte of Cardynalship; and the seconde buH was that he shuld haue the reioysynge of alle the Benefisis Sp*irit*uaH and TemperaH that he hathe in Engelond. And whanne this was don, the Duke of Bedford, Regent of Fraunce, went vp to the high auter, and toke the high Cardinallis hatte, and set it vpon the Bisshoppis hed of Wynchestre; and he bowid and obeyid the Bisshop, and toke hym byfore hym.

¶ And in the vj. yere of Kynge Henryis Regne the vj.e, went the Erle of Salusbury, with a grete retenewe of men of armys and archeris, by comaundement of the Kynge and of alle the Counseile of Engelond, & made hym the Leftenaunt or alle the partyes of Fraunce and of Normandye, forto distroye the Kynges enemyes, and to chastice the rebbellis in the[2] pertyes by his strengthe, myght and power.// ¶ And so he depertid, and toke his leue oute of London, with aH his pepuH and ordynauncis, the morow aftur Mydsomyr Day, in the yere aboue seid, and come ouyr the see with alle his pepuH in saufte; thankid be God in aH his yeftis! and anon as he was come into Fraunce, he set sore on the Frensshe men that weren the kyngis Enemyes, and slowe and destroyid many of hem, and toke vilagis, Tounys and castell*es*, and made hem be suoren to the Kynge of Engelond. And afturward he leid sege to the toune of Orlyaunce; and that sege endurid longe tyme, for the toune of Orliaunce was so stronge, and well ymannyd and vitailid, that it myght not be goten for no crafte of werre that was don therto; where[of] he was wond[er] heuy and wroth, for he myght note spede of his purpos.// ¶ And tho at the[3] laste, as he was busi to sete and loke vpon his ordynauncis, forto gete it yf he myght, a fals thef, a traitour withynne the toune, shotte a Gonne, and the stone smot this good Erle of Salusbury, that he was dede thorough the stroke; wherefore was made grete doole[4] and sorow for his dethe longe tyme afturward, for the grete doughtynesse

[1] þe A. [2] þo A. [3] the *om.* A. [4] grete G. grete doole A.

and manhode that was founde in hym, and in his gouernaunce at aH tymes. And thanne was his body[1] brought ouyr the see into Engelond, and his body was caryid and leid amonge his
4 aunseteris there as thei byn buryid of holde tyme: on whos soule oure God[2] haue mercy! Amen!

¶ And also in this same yere fro the begynnynge of the monythe of AppryeH into the feste of AH-Haloue, was so grete
8 haboundance of Reyne, where-thorough not only heigh was distroyid, but also aH maner of cornys, for it reynyd almoste euyry othir day, mo[3]re or lesse, durynge the tyme aforeseid.

¶ And forthirmore, durynge the sege of Orliaunce, at the
12 begynnynge of Lenton nexte ffolowynge, vij. M^{ti}. of Frensshe men and moo, with many othir Scottis, fiH vpon oure men as they went toward the Toune with vitaiH that is callid 'yamuyle,' where Sir John Steward of Scotlond and his brothir, with moo thanne
16 vij. c. Scottis and they weren gouernouris they lighten on ffoote, and they weren, euyry modir sone, slayne by Sir John Folstalff and Sir Thomas Rampston, and othir Capitaynys of oure side, the whiche had not passynge .v. c. of ffightynge men with hem at aH,
20 with Carteris and aH othir.// ¶ But Charlis of Burgoyne and the Bastard of Orliaunce, with aH the Frensshe men sittynge on hors backe and seynge this Gouernaunce, trussid hir packe and went her wey. Also a lituH beforne Witsontide nexte folowynge, was
24 the foreseide sege of Orliaunce broken vp by the Duke of Launsom and his power; and alle othir lordis and Capitaynys of the same sege weren disparkelid, that is so seye, the Erle of Suffolke and his brothir, and the Lord Talbot and the Lord Skalis, with many
28 moo of Engelisshe pepuH, the whiche sone afture weren taken euyrychone, at grete myschief, prysoneres.

¶ And in the vij. yere of Kynge Henry the vj^{e} the viij day of Nouembre, the Duke of Norfolke, with many gentiH men of
32 knyghtis and Squyeris and yemen, token a barge at Seint Mari Ouereyis Brygge, bitwene iiij. and .v. of the clokke ayens nyght; and they purposid tho to passe thorough London Brigge, where the foreseide barge, thorough mysgouernaunce of sterage, fiH vpon
36 the pilis thorough mysgouernaunce, and ouyrwelfid, the whiche was cause of distruccion of moche pepuH thereynne, that was the more rowthe.// ¶ But as God wold, the Duke hym-self, and .ij.

[1] body y A. [2] oure lord A. [3] *leaf* 147.

or .iij. othir gentiH men, tho seyynge that myschief, lept vpon the pilis, and so thei weren sauyd thorough help of hem that weren aboute the brygge, wyth castynge doune of ropis, blessid be God!

¶ And in this same yere, the firste day of the monith of 4
Septembre, Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestre and beH-
vncle to the Kynge, come to London fro the Pope of Rome.
CardynaHes, and alle the prestis and religious of[1] London, and
neyȝ London, went ayens hym yn prosession withoute the Cite, 8
and there they met with hym, and did hym aH the[2] honour and
reuerence as longith for[3] siche estate to ben don.// ¶ And the
Meyre and Aldremen, with many worthi craftis of London, met
with hym on the Blake-Hethe in Kent; and there thei welcomyd 12
hym, and did hym reuerence and worship, and brought hym
þorugh þe Cite,[4] and so to Charinge Crosse and there the Meyre
and the men of London toke her leue of hym, and he rode forthe
to the casteH of Wyndesore to the Kynge. 16

¶ And in the same yere, at the ffeste of Mydsomyr, Sir Henry
Beauford, CardynaH, and Bisshop of Wynchestir, went[5] ouyr the
see into Fraunce for the Kyngis nedis; and Sir John Radclif,
knyght, went ouyr the se that same tyme, with a grete compeny of 20
men of armis and archeris, to helpe and to strengthe John, the
Duke of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce and of Normandie, and
the Engelisshe pepuH that weren lefte there in the right of the
Kynge of Engelond. 24

¶ And in the[6] same yere was Henry Barton, Meyre of
London. And tho was, thoroughoute Engelond, grete scarste of
corne and of othir vitaiH, for oxen and shipe, deiden stronglyche,
and a busshеH whete was at xx d°. longe tyme: blessid be God in 28
alle his yeftis of amendement!

¶ And in the viij yere of Kynge Henryis regne the vj^e; was
hold a grete parlement at Westem*inster*; and that beganne the
morow aftur Michelmesse-Day, and it endurid tille Shroftid. And 32
on Seint Lethenardis day byforn Cristemesse, and that was on the
Sonday (and Sonday went by lettur A. that yere,) the Kynge was
crownyd at Westem*inster*, with honoure, of Henry Chichele,
Erchebisshop of Caunturbury, and with moo othir Bisshoppis, with 36
alle the solempnite that myght be made and doon. ¶ And in[7] the

[1] in A. [2] the *om.* A. [3] to A.
[4] hym G. hym þorugh þe Cite A. [5] *om.* G. went A.
[6] þis A. [7] in *om.* A.

same day, come fro byyonde the see to his coronacion and feste, Sir Henry Beauford, CardynaH, and Bisshop of Winchestre, [1] and the Prynce of Portyngale with a feyre meyne of pepuH, in reuerence
4 and worship of the Kynge; and byforne that weren come and abedyn at London a bisshop of Fraunce, and serteyn knyghtis and squyeris with her meyne, to se that rialte, and the Coronacions of the kynge. [2]And the even bifore þe coronacion, þe kyng[2] lete
8 make xxxvj. Knyghtis of the Bathe, withynne the Toure of London. ¶ And in the same [time] in[3] Cristemesse wike, bi ordynaunce and comaundement of the Kyng*e* and of his CounseH, the Bastard of Clarence and Sir Iohn Kyzelei, knyght, and moo
12 o*þer* knyghtis and squyer*is* þat were made peti capteynes, with men of armes ande archer*is*, the nombre of a M^{t}^{i} personys and moo, shippiden at dyuerse portes in Kente and in Southesex, and seilid ouyr into Normandie forto helpe and strengthe the Duke of
16 Bedford, Regent of Fraunce and of Normandie, and in releuynge and comfortynge of aH the Kynges pepull that haue eny kepynge of Ceteis, townys, Castell*es*, or eny holdis tha[t] bilongen to the Kynge in the parties of Fraunce and of[4] Normandie: the whiche,
20 Criste maynteyne and kepe, for his high mercy!

¶ And in this same yere was a[5] bataiH doon in Smythffeld, at London, the Tewisday the xxiiij. day of Januare, betwene two men of the toune of Feuyrisham in Kente: that on me callid maistir
24 John Vpton, notarye, that was the appellaunte; and that othir, John of Downe, JentiHman, the deffandaunte. And thei two ffoughten togederis, armyd at aH poyntis, to the vtterist; but the Kynge, of his riaH power and grete grace, kryid 'pees,' and toke it
28 vp in his hand, and yaf hem bothe fre grace: and this was the cause of her bataiH, for this Maistur John Vpton put-of[6] on John of[7] Downe, that he and othir moo of his compeny ymagenid and purposid the Kyngis dethe at the day and tyme of his coronacion:
32 whom God kept and saue from aH mysauenturis. Amen!

¶ And in the same yere, the xxvij. day of Januare, Sir Henry Beauford, CardinaH, and Bisshop of Wynchestre, went ouyr the see to Caleis, and so to Bryggis in Flaundris, in embassitrie for
36 Henry, Kynge of Engelond and of Fraunce, vnto the Duke of Burgoyne, and also to se the mariage betwene the Duke of

[1] *leaf* 147, *back*.
[2–2] And the even bifore þe coronacion þe kyng A. *om.* G. [3] in þe A.
[4] for G. of A. [5] a ki G. a A. [6] of *om.* A. [7] o A.

Burgoyne and the Kynge of Portyngalis doughtir, that is cosyn to the Kynge of Engelond.

¶ And in the same yere and day, Thomas of Borough, and Gray, two esquyeris, by ordynaunce and comaundement of the 4 Kynge and of his Counseiꝗ, had a grete retenewe of pepuꝗ, of men of armys and archeris, that weren sent ouyr the see into Fraunce, to the Duke of Bedford, Regent and Gouernoure of the parties of Fraunce and Normundie, in releuynge and helpynge and strength- 8 ing of the Kyngis pepuꝗ in oure liege lordis right, Kynge[1] of[2] Engelond and of Fraunce.

¶ How that Kynge Henry the vj^e^ went ouyr the see into Fraunce, the viij yere of his regne; and of the whiche 12 [of] Fraunce that was callid the 'Pusheꝗ': how she was take prysonere.

And in the viij. yere of Kynge[3] [Henry the sixt] his Regne, on Seint Mathi day the Apostuꝗ, and that was on the Fryday, the 16 xxiiij. day of Feuyrere in the yere aboue seid, Kynge Henry the vj^e^, aftur his coronacion at Westem*inster*, and ende of his parlement holden the same tyme at Westem*inster*, that the Kynge, by counseiꝗ and ordynaunce of aꝗ the lordis and commu[n]es of Engelond, that 20 the Kynge shuld wende ouyr the see into Fraunce, to resseyue[4] his heritage, and bere the Crowne as rightfuꝗ lord and kynge of the londe.// ¶ And the Kynge, by his good and wise counseiꝗ, ordeynyd and made his vncle Sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, 24 Leftenaunte of Engelond aftur his passage ouyr the see, for to gouerne and kepe the londe ayen his enemyes of aꝗ partyis, and to se that right and lawe be mayntenyd in alle degreis, in sauacion of his pepuꝗ and good kepynge of his Rewme. 28

¶ And on Seint Mathi day the[5] Appostiꝗ, as is aforne seide, the Kynge come fro Westem*inster* to London, with his lordis and his pepuꝗ, and come to Seint Poulis, and there of[6]frid, and toke his hors, and rode thorugh the Cite, and toke his leue of aꝗ the 32 Commualte of London; and so he rode to his maner of Eltham in Kente, and there he duellid alle the Lenton tiꝗ it was ayens Palme Sonday, and thanne he rode to Caunturbury, and abode there tille estur was passid, tiꝗ his retenewe was made and ordeynyd, that 36 shuld gon and passe ouyr the see with hym into Fraunce.

[1] kynge *om.* A. [2] & A. [3] kynge *om.* A. [4] resseyue & A.
[5] the *om.* A. [6] *leaf* 148.

¶ And thann the Kynge come to Douyre, and on Seint Georges euyn, withynne nyght, the wethur and wynde was feyre and menabuH, and the Kynge was brought to ship withoute Douyre in
4 the roode.// ¶ And whanne tyde of passage come, thei toke the see, and passid ouyr, and come to Caleis, and landid there in the mornynge at vij. of the clocke in Seint Georgis Day; and that was on the Sonday; and the domynycaH lettur went[1] by . A.// ¶ And
8 whanne he was landid, the Kynge went to the Castell of Caleis; and there he abode tille aH his retenewe and ordynaunce were come ouyr the see. And withynn iij. wikis aftur Estur aforne seid, aH his pepuH, with alle his[2] ordynauncis, weren come ouyr to the
12 Kynge.// ¶ And the Kynge anon aftur, bi his CounseiH, sent dyuerse lordis,[3] knyghtis and capitainys, with her men of armys and archeris and ordynauncis, to dyuers tounnys, CasteH*es* and Garnysonys of his in Fraunce and in Normandie, for kepynge and
16 strengthynge of his liege pepuH, and kepynge of his tituH and right.

¶ And in the same yere, the xv. day of May, ther was made a Journey in Fraunce bisidis the toune of Compyne; and at that
20 Journey were slayn of the Frensshe men, Armynakkis and Scottis the nombre of .viij. c. of good mennys bodyes; and there were take also of the[4] Frensshe[5] and of her compeny, many Cote armuris. And at that same Journey was take the wicche of Fraunce that was
24 callid th[e] 'PussheH'; and she was take alle armyd as a man of armys; and by her[6] crafte of sorserie alle the Frensshe men and her compeny trystid for to haue ouyrcome alle the Engelisshe pepuH. But God was lord and maistir of that victorie and
28 scomfiture, and so she was take, and brought and kept in hold bi the Kynge and his counseiH aH tymes at his comaundement and wille.

¶ And at that Journey, of Englisshe men weren Capitaynys, Sir
32 John Monuntegomere and Sir John Steward, knyghtis of the Kyngis houshold, with her retenewe. ¶ And there was Sir John Mountegomere smyte his arme vn two; and Sir John Steward was shotte unto the thye with a quareH, and yet God sent hem good
36 hele and welfare, and Scomfiture of aH her enemyes: blessid be God!

[1] wente þat tyme A. [2] þe A. [3] dyuerse G. diu*er*se lordis A.
[4] þese A. [5] ffrensshe men A. [6] her & by hire A.

APPENDIX D.

ADDITIONAL MATTER FOR THE PERIOD 1420–28.

[*MS. Hh.* 6. 9, *University Library, Cambridge.*]

And þis was doon þe Monday next aftir the Trinity Sonday, In the yere of *grace* M[l] IIIIe XX[ti]. And anone aftir this mariage was done, the Kyng hym-self [Henry V], with his English lordes and Retenue, And þe Duke of Burgoigne with many grete lordes of Fraunce, with his strength and gou*er*nance of people, leyde sege to dyuers Citees townes & castelles which wer' holden of the Dolphynne, with strength of his meyney, And of the Armenakkis and Scottis. And the Kyng with his people gat theme, and had the victorie of his enemyes.

And in this same yere, And in þe yere of *grace* a M[l] IIII[c] XX[ti], by-twene Cristemesse and Candilmasse, the Towne of Milloyne was yolden vp to the Kynge; And all þe Chiftains, w*ith* þe Souldeours, were take and ledde to þe Cite of Parys, 'in þe Croke of þe mone' þei may say for theme; ffor þer escapede fro thens of þeme but a fewe on lyue, for þei of Paris did theme to dethe.

Will*elm*us Cambrigge, M[ayor]	Joh*ann*es Wellis, Joh*ann*es Botiller, drap*er*	vic' VIII[o] [A.D. 1420–21].

And in þis same yere [1 Hen. VI] þe Wednysday, þe XXI day of Octobr*e*, in þe first yere of Kyng Henry þe VI, at þe houre betwene VI & VII in þe mornyng, died Charles, þe French Kynge, In his Inne of saint Paules w*ith*-Inne þe Cite of Paris, And is buried in þe chirche of Saint Denyse w*ith*oute þe cite of Paris: On whos soule, God haue m*er*cie! Amen!

And in þis same yere, in þe moneth of Februarie, James Stewarde, Kyng of Scott*es*, spousede Dame Joan, the Duchesse Doughter of Clarence, of hir first housbond, Erl of Som*er*sette, in þe churche of Saint Marie Overey in Suthwerk.

And in þis same yere, Maist*er* William Tailour, clerk of Oxenforde, was a-fore the clergie at Saint Paules in London, And þ*er*

he was convicte in heresie; and aftir, by Tempo*r*all lawe he was brought into Smythfelde, & there was he brent for his heresie.

And in þis same yere, þe XVII day of Auguste, was done the
4 bataill of Vernoun in Perche, betwene the Duk of Bedforde, þan Regent of Fraunce, & þe Armenakkis w*ith* Scott*es*; but, thanked be God! the victorie fell to þe Englishmen, for *þer* were slain of our adu*er*saries the Erle of Bough*a*m, þe Erle Douglas, þe Erle of Morre,
8 þe Erle of Tonnare, þe Erle of Vendoun, the Vicounte of Narbone (*þat* traiterously slough the Duke of Burgoine knelyng be-fore the Dolphyn of Fraunce at þe towne of Monstrall,) & mony moo, þe nombre of X M[1] moo. But þe moste vengeance fell vpon þe
12 proude Scottes, for thei went to Dog-wash the same day, mo than XVII[c] of cote Armoures of these proude Scottes; So that they may say wele "In the croke of þe mone went thei thidre warde,— And in the wilde wanyende come þei homewarde."

16 William Crownes, M[ayor] — Nicho*la*us James, Thomas Wandefford — A° II. [A.D. 1423–4.]

And in this same tyme the Kynge [Hen. VI], of two Erles made two Dukes: þe Erle of Cambrige he made the Duke of
20 Yorke, & þe Erle Marshall Henaud, þe Duke of Northefolke.

And in þis same yere was Shedeswik draw and hangede & quartered at Tiborne, & his hede smyten of & sett vpon London Brigge, & his quartires vnto dyuers yatis of London, for his treason.

24 And whilles þe Duke of Bedforde was here in Englande, þe Erle of Warrewik was made Lieutenant of Fraunce & Normandye, for to kepe & garde both in werre and peace vn-to þe comyng of þe Duke of Bedforde again oute of England in-to Fraunce.

28 Joh*ann*nes Reynowell, M[ayor] — Robert*us* Arnold, Joh*ann*nes Hyngham. — A° V[to]. [A.D. 1426–7.]

And þe Duke of Bedforde & þe Duchesse his wife went vp to Paris, And so to other dyuers partees of Fraunce *þer* as hym list
32 best to abide; And þan þe Erle of Warrewik come In-to Englande— again.

Off the takyng off Will Wawe; And how he was done to dethe.

36 And in this same yere was Will Wawe take for an [a]rannt beef, and was brought to London to þe Kyng*es* Bench, & so brought to Westmynster a-fore þe kyng*es* Justices, & *þer* Jugede to

þe dethe. And so he was brought again from Westmynster to Suthwerk, & þen he was put in a carte, stanndyng, & faste bounde; & so he was cariede thorugh þe Cite to Tiborne, that all men myght see hym & knowe hym, And so he was caried the thirde day of 4 Juyll, And there hangede for his trespass.

Joh*an*nes Gedney M[ayor] Robertus Oteley vic' A° VI. Henric*us* Frowik [A.D. 1427–8.]

How that there ffill grete habundaunce off Rayn; And how 8 dyu*er*s sowdio*ur*z went ou*er* the see.

And in this same yere, & in þe yere of *gra*ce M[1] IIII[c] XXVII, from þe begynnyng of þe moneth of Aprile vnto the feste of All Halowen, was so abundaunce of Rayn that, not only hay was 12 distroied, but Also all maner of Cornes; for it Raynede all-moste eu*er*y day, more or lesse, duryng this terme a-for-said.

And anone aftir, as þe Erle of Warrewik, s*er* Thomas Beauchampe, was sennd oute of Fraunce from þe Duke of Bedforde 16 by all the worthy & discrete counsaill of Englande, he was made maist*er* & gou*er*noure vn-to the Kynge duryng his non-age, & hym to gou*er*en, teche & norish, as oweth to be done to such a worthy prince, to his lernyng of all maner worthynesse to good gou*er*nance, 20 discretion and reason.

And in þis same yere, an old man, a girdeler of Norwiche, which count*er*fetede the Kyng*es* grete seale, And esealled charters & p*ro*tections w*it*h þat count*er*feit seall, in disseit & p*re*iudice of þe 24 Kynge & of his liege peple, was iugede to þe deth, to be drawe thorugh the Citee of London vnto Tiborne, and þ*er* hangede; & þ*us* he died for his treason.

How that A Breton had mordrede a widdow w*it*hout Algat. 28 Ca II[c] LXII.

And in þe same yere, a fals Breton, betwen Ester and Witsontyde, mordrede a good wedowe in hir bedde, the which hadde found hym, for Almesse, w*it*houte Algate, In the suburbes of 32 London; & he bar a-way all that sche hadde, And aft*er* toke girth of holy churche at Saint Georges in Suthwerk; but at þe last he toke the Crosse, & for-suore þe Kyng land. And as he went his way, it

happid hym to come by the same place wher he did that cursede dede; And women of þe same parish come oute to hym with stones & w*ith* canell dong & þ*er*e made an ende of hym in þe high streit, so
4 þ*at* he went no ferþ*er*e, not-w*ith*-stondyng þe Constablis & oþ*er* men also, which had hym in gou*er*naunce, to convey hym forth in his way; for þ*er*e was a grete companye of them; & on hym thei had neither m*er*cie nor pite; & thus this fals thefe endede his life in þis
8 worlde, for his falsnesse.

How that An Erityk was take And co*n*victe; And how Kyng Henry ordeynyd to go in to Fraunce, to resceyue þe crown. Ca. II^c LXIII^c.

12 And in þis same yer, & in þe yer of g*r*ace a-foresaid, Richerde Woll-pakker, of Marc Lane, þ*at* was convicte a-for þe clergie, & dampned of heresie, was led to þe Tour-Hill of London; & ther he was brent for his fals & cursed opynions þ*at* he helde & mayntened
16 in p*r*esence of þe Duke of Gloucestre, & of þe Duke of Northfolk, & þe Erl of Warrewik, & þe Erle of Stafforde, & oþ*er* lordes & Jentilles, & afore all þe comuners þ*at* were there present of þe roialme a grete multitude.

20 And in this same yere, þe Satirday, þe XXI Day of Februarie, one Fenables, a Jentilman of Chestre, & Thomas Clement a Drap*er* of London was dampnede atte Westmynst*er* for treason & for þift þ*at* thei had done to þe Kynge & to his liege peple, to be drawe fro
24 þe Toure of London thorugh þe Citee to Tiborne, & þ*er*e hangede & quartrede, And there hedes sett vpon London Brugge.

And in þis same day & yere, Embassitoures of Spayne, þ*at* is to say, a Bishoppe, with other grete & worthy clerkis, And an Erl
28 w*ith* knyghtes & squyers,—& these people come to þe Kynge in to Westmynstre Hall the day aboue-saide.

And in þis same yere, on Saint Mathie day, Apostill, which was on a Friday, Kyng Henry the Sexte aft*er* his coronation & ende of
32 his p*ar*lement holden at Westm*inster*, by the advise of all the lordes & comons of England, was ordeyned in þis p*ar*lement a-forsaid þ*at* þe Kyng shulde wende ou*er* the see in to Fraunce for to resceyue the Crowne þ*er*e.

[E]

CONTINUATION OF THE BRUT FROM THE CAPTURE OF ROUEN (1419) TO 1430.

[*MS. Egerton* 650.]

[1]In þat same yere þe Kyng lay at þe sege of Roon; and þe xvij day of Ianuuere it was yoldyn to oure Kyng. on Chyldermesse Day come tythyng to London þat the vj day of Feuery ere the Duke of Bedford, Leuetenaunt of Englond, and the Chauncelere, and many 4 oper bysshoppis, and þe Maire and hys aldermen, with all þe Cetizins, made a generaH procession from Paules to Westmynstre, þonkyng God of the good and gracius spede þat he had gyff to oure Kyng. 8

And in þat yere was Ludgate for-do, And aH the prisoners remeved from Newgate. And per died lx and x with-in xv days. And þis was done for one Olyuer and iij false harlottes, And per þai died. 12

And in þat same yere Quene Iahan was a-rested And broght to Retherhyde; And a gray frere was a-rested in Gernesie and lad to Chyrburgh, And sone aftre was broght before oure Kyng; and oure Kyng commaundit hym to the Toure of London, And per he was 16 do in prisone.

Richard Whyttyngton Maior.	Wylliam Boteler · Robertus Whyttyngham	Anno Ottauo H. V^ti. [A.D. 1419–20.] 20

In þat yere come þe Duke of Gloucestre in-to Englond, and forth so to London; And per was rescayved and made Leuetenaunt of Englond.

And þe Duke of Bedforth, with a fayr meyne, went to Hampton, 24 And per he shyppit and sayled ouer in-to Normandy.

And in þat yere our Kyng weddit Dame Kateryne, þe kynges Doghter of Fraunce, vppon þe Monday next afore þe Trinite Sonday.

And in þat yere was Pount Melayne wone, and oper fortises 28 many moo: þonked be God!

Williamus Cambryge Maior.	Iohannes Welles Iohannes Boteller.	Anno nono H. quintus. [A.D. 1420–1.]

[1] *leaf* 111, *back.*

In þat yere was a wom*m*an brent at Cotehyꝗ for sleying of hyr husband.

And in þat yere oure Kyng and Dame Kateryne hys wyfe come
4 from Parise in-to Englond, and so forth to London; And þ*er* were þai ressaued wurshypfully w*ith* þe Maire & þe Aldermen, and all þe Citezins of London.

And vppon þe xij day of Feue*r*yere, þat feꝗ vppo*n* a Sonday in-
8 Lente, Dame Kateryne was crou*n*ned Quene at Westmynstre. And whene þe Solempnite was done in þe chyrche, sho was broght fuꝗ solemply þrogꝗ þe Paleis in-to the grete haꝗ, whe*re* þe fest was holdyn Off þe Coronac*i*on of Quene Katerine.

12 **Off þe statis at þe Coronac*i*on of Kateryne, þe Quene of Englond, And of þe seruyce þat was done in þe same fest.**

Fyrst, þe Quene Sate in hyr estate;

The Archbysshop of Cannctbury, The [1] Bysshop of Wynchestre,
16 vppon þe ryght syde of the Quene; And þai were se*r*ued next þe Quene, couerd at eue*r*y course;

The Kyng of Scotland in hys estate, vppon the left syde of þe Quene, whech at eue*r*y course was se*r*ued next aftre þat þe Quene
20 and the bysshoppes were se*r*ued.

The Duchesse of York, The Countesse of Hunttyngdon, The Duke of Gloucestre, vppon the same syde;

The Erle of Marche knelyng vppon þe desse on þe ryght syde
24 þe Quene, And held up a septre of the Quenes;

The Erle of Stafford, knelyng vppon þe left syde of the Quene vppon þe desse, and held a-noþ*er* Septre of the Quenes;

The Countesse of Kent was syttyng at the ryght fote vndur the
28 table;

Syr Rit*chard* Nevyle, keru*er*e before þe Quene;

The Erles broþ*er* of Southfolk, Copp-berrer;

Syr Iohn Steward, sewer*er* to the Quene;

32 The lord Clyfford, Panter, in the stede of Werwyke;

The Lord Wylloghby botelere, in þe stede of þe Erle of Arundaꝗ, The Lord Grey Ryffyn, Napperer;

The Lord Audeley, Aumerer, In the stede of þe Erle of Caum-
36 bryge;

The Erle of Warwyke, Steward of Englond, *in* þe stede of þe Duke of Clarence;

[1] *leaf* 112.

The Erle of Worcestre, Marchall of Englond, in þe stede of þe Erle Marchall.

The nounbre and sittyng in þe hall fyrst at þe tables:

The Barons of the .v. Portes begone þe table in þe hall on þe 4
ryght hand Of the Quene; And be-neyth þaim, at þe same table, setten þe Bonchers of þe Chauncery;

The Maire of London And hys Aldermen begone þe table in
þe hall on þe left syde of þe Quene, with oþer commynners of 8
the cete;

And beneth þaim at the same table, in þe myddyst of the hall, next þe table of þe .v. portys, vppon) the ryght hand of the Quene, The Bysshop of London satt withyn þe table, The Bysshopp of 12
Bath, The Bysshop of Excester before hym, The Bysshop of Norwych, The Bysshopp of Salesbury, The Bysshopp of Saynt Dauid, The Bysshopp of Bangore before hym.

The bysshop of Lyncolne, The Abbot of Waltham, The 16
bysshop of Carlyle before þaim.

And þen next þaim, at the same table syttyng, þe Iustices; And afftre þe Iustices at þe same table Satt Wurshyppfull knyght and Sqwyers; 20

And þe ladys beyone þe tables in þe myddys of þe hall, ffor agayns þe Maire and þe Aldermen of Londone, The Countesse of Stafforde, Doghtter of Sere Thomas, som tyme Duke of Gloucestre; The Countesse of Marche, hyre doghtter; The Countesse of Arun- 24
dell, [1]The Countesse of Westmerland, The Countesse of Northumberland, hyr doghtter; The Countesse of Oxenford; The lady Nevell, some tyme þe Lordys wyfe Nevell, doghtter of the Erle of Somersette; Dame Margarete, þe Dukes doghter of 28
Northfolk; The Lady Clyfford, Suster of the Erle of Northumberlande; The lady Burgeyne; The lady Talbot; The lady Wylloghby; The lady Manley; The wyfe of Syr Richard Nevyle, doghtter of the Erle of Salesbury, and no mo ladys of estate. And 32
þat table was ocupied with ladis and damesels, and a quarter of the bysshoppis table also.

There lordys sewying were assigne to do þe ryall seruyce to the Quene: 36

The Erle of Northumberland The Erle of Westmerland.
The Lord Fehughe..... The Lord Furnevall.

[1] *leaf* 112, *back*.

The Lord Feris of Groby ..... The Lord Gray of Wyltton.
The Lord Poynynges ..... The Lord Haryngton.
The Lord Darcy ..... The Lord Dacrys.
4 The Lord Delaware.

The *ser*uyce of þe ffyrst course.

Brawne wyth mustard ..... Dedelys in Burueux.
ffirment w*ith* Baleyne ..... Pyke.
8 Lamprey Poudered..... Troute.
Codlyng ..... Plays.
Merlyng ffryed ..... Grete Crabys.
Leych lumbard ..... A bake mete in past.
12 Tartis A Sodelte.

The seruyce of the secu*n*d course.

Gele ..... Blaundesore.
Breme..... Cungre.
16 Soles ..... Millet.
Chevan ..... Barbeн.
Roche ..... ffreche Samon.
Halybut ..... Gurnard rosted.
20 Roget broyled..... Smelt ffryed.
Lopsters ..... Leyche Damask.
Laumpray in past ..... fflampau*n* ryaн.

A Sotelte.

24 [1]A Panter and a damesseн before The *ser*uyce of þe þryde course.

Dates in Composte..... Grene motteley.
Carpe dere ..... Turbutt.
Tenche ..... Perche.
28 Gogenos [Gudgeons] ..... Sturgeon frech and powderd.
Welkys ..... Porpas rosted.
Munse fryde ..... Crevis douse.
Grete Scrymppys ..... Elys and lampryns rosted.
32 A leyche called 'whyte leyche' A bake mete i*n* past, w*ith* iiij Angels.

A Sotelte : a tyger, and Saynt George ledyng it.

And in þe Ester weke foloyng, þe Duke of Clarence was slayne
36 in Fraunce, fast by the wat*er* of Leyre, wyth Scottes, Frenc*h*e men, Armynakkys, be-cause he wold not be gou*er*ned, and haue take hys–

[1] *leaf* 113.

ost *with* hym. And *þer* was take þe Erle of Hunttyngton, The Erle of Som*er*sette and hys bro*þer*. And *þer* was lost þat day in-to a iiij good knyghttes: on whos soules God haue mercy! Ame*n*!

And in þe same yere our Kyng, vppon the thred Day of Iune, Schyppit at Douere, And londit at Caleis, and rode forth in-to Fraunce.

And in þat yere was grete queraunce in London for vsures; And some of *þaim* left money, Iohn Sadeler, Wat*er* Chyrchey, and many o*þer*; And in þat tyme money was skarse.

Robert Chycheley, maior. Wilelm*us* Weston. Anno decimo h. v^ti^ Ricardus Crosby. [A.D. 1421–2.]

In þat tyme, vppone saynt Nicholas evyn, come tythyng*es* from Wyndyssor*e* to þe Maire, þat our*e* Quene, Dame Kateryne, had borne a p*r*ince, a fayre sone. And a-none aH þe belles in London were re[n]gon; 'Te Deum' was songone at Paules; And *þer* was the Chauncelere and many bysshoppys, And *þe* Maire and hys Aldermen, And aH þe craftes of the Cite.

And in þat tyme þe gold of þe realme went by weght; And eu*er*y man had a payr ballaunce And weghttes in hys sleve for þe gold.

And in þat yere Qwhenne Kateryne went to Hampton, And *þer* made hyr redy to go ou*er* the see vn-to þe Kyng. And w*ith* hyr went *þe* Duke of Bedforth*e* w*ith* a fayr*e* meyne; And þe viij day of Maij sho landit at Hereflete, And so went forth vn-to our*e* Kyng.

And in þat same tyme Mewes Embry was getten in þe last ende of AprylH. And fyrst day of Iule our*e* kyng sent to the Tour*e* of Londone xvij Cartes chargit w*ith* Frenche men þat were hys p*r*esoners, þat he toke in Mewes [1]Embry: the nombre of *þaim* into viij.

And in þat yere *þer* come a[2] wrytte from *þe* Kyng vn-to the Mair*e* of London, for to a-rest certayne p*er*sones þe whech were fou*n*d defectyfe in certayne poynt*es* of Erysy and Lollardy, And *þeis* bene *þair*e names: Eston, Mercer, and o*þer* moo.

And þat yere died Kyng Henry the fyft in Fraunce, vppon *þe* evyn of *þe* decollac*i*on of Saynt Iohn Baptyst; And *þen* was hys sone Henri made Kyng.

[1] *leaf* 113, *back.* [2] MS. and a

And in þat yere þe Shryves of London went by barche to Westmynstre, And dyuerse craftes of London with þaim; And in þis maner þai come home agayne, all in blak. And þis was done be-
4 cause of our Kynges deth: on whos soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And on þe Monday before Saynt Symond Day and Iude, The Bysshop of London, Mayster Iohn Kempt, was stalled at Paules.

Thes ben þe names of Maire and Shrevis of London in þe tyme
8 of Kyng Henri þe vj, in þe age of hym not xij monethys fulli:

Wylelmus Walderne, Maior. Iohannes TedershaH. Thomas Estfelde. } Anno primo Henrici viti [A.D. 1422–3.]

In þat yere þe Maire and þe Aldermen and aH þe craftes went
12 to Westmynstre by barge, aH in blak, þe v. day of Nouember; And þer he toke hys oth in þe eschekere, as þe maner is. And whene he had done, he toke hys barge with aH þe craftis, And come home agayne.

16 þe vj day of Nouember, The cors of Kyng Henri the .v. was broght to London; And a-none the Maire and þe Aldermen & aH þe Citezins resceyved hym, aH in blak, and broght hym to Paules; And þer he had hys dyryge and masses, and was entered, as it feH
20 for a kyng. And þis was done vppon þe Fryday. And aftre mete he was broght to Westminster; And vppon þe Setterday he was beryd before Saynt Edwardys shryne: on whose soule Almyghtti God haue mercy! Amen!

24 And in þat yere, come Frenche bysshoppys oute of Fraunce; And oþer Frenche lordys and worthy knyghttes of Fraunce come to þe Kyng to do homage to hym, as for heyre of Englond and Fraunce: And þis was aftre Crystynmasse foloyng.

28 And þat same yere, þe secund day of Marche, þer was brent in Northfolk a prest þat was dysgated of hys clergy for hys mys-byleue and hys herysy. And hys name was Master Wylliam Tayloure.

Also Richard Whyttyngton, mercer, died þe xiiij day of Marche:
32 on whos saule Almyghtti God haue mercy! Amen!

Wylelmus Crowmere, Maire. Thomas Wandeford, Nicholas Iames. } Anno ijdo H. sexti. [A.D. 1423–4.]

[1] at xx li þe parysshesens shuld pay xl s; And yf it were of
36 more valewe, þen pay more.

And in þe same yere, on Saynt Gylis day, come þe CardinaH, þe Bysshop of Wynchestre, to London; And þe maire and þe

[1] *leaf* 114.

Shryves and þe Alderdirmen, w*ith* aH the craft*es* of the cite, ryddyn agaynst hym, and wurshypfully ressaued hym And Welecom*m*ed hym, and breght hym to Paules, And from Paules to Westmynstre; And þ*er* he a-bode aH þat nyght. And on þe morow he toke hys 4 hors and rode to Wyndysore vn-to our Kyng.

Henricus Barton maior. Ioh*ann*es Abbot. Anno vij^{tio} henrici vj^{ti} Thom*a*s Duffons. [A.D. 1428–9.]

In þis yere was þe good Erle of Salesbury, S*er*e Thomas Mountague, slayn at the sege of Orlyaunce w*ith* a gonne, wheche was a noble lord and a worthy werreor emong aH Crystyn men: On whose saule, God, for hys pete, haue mercy! Amen! And he ys 8 –bered at Bryssham. 12

And in þis same yere, at Mydsom*er*tyde, Henry Beauford, Cardinale, And also bysshop of Wynchestre, w*en*t ou*er* þe see in-to Fraunce w*ith* a fayre meyne of Archers and men of Armes; And þe Lord Wylloghby was made Capten of hys werris. The wheche 16 Cardynale was ordined and purpast for to haue gone in-to Prage, to haue dystroyed and gyf batayle vn-to the fals herytyk*es* and Lollordys. And whene he was rydy, tydyng*es* come þat þe sege of Orlyaunce was brokyn, And þe Lord Talbot takyn, and oþ*er* worthy 20 lordys. And a-none, in aH þe hast, þe CardinaH w*ith* hys meyne, –And S*er* Iohn Ratclyff w*ith* hys meyne, þat was purposed for to haue gone in-to Gyene, went ou*er* in-to Fraunce to help and strengh*e* þe Regente, The Duke of Bedford, in þe Kyng*es* rygt of Englond. 24

And in þe same yere fell sodanly a derth of whete, þat a BussheH of whete was at xx^{d}; And xxiiij Days, brede was ryght skantt in London, in-so-moch þat vnneth Any myght be gete; bot in short tyme,—þonked be Almyghtti God!—hit was a-mendit; 28 And befe and motu*n*, and Al man*er* of ffleshe, þat same tyme was ryght dere and scarse vn-to Lammasse; And þen sone aftre,—þonked be Ih*es*u, of hys ȝeftis![1]—it was a-mendid.

Wilelm*us* Estfeld, Maior. { Wilelm*us* Rous, Rad*ulph*us Holand, schereffy*es*. } Anno vj^{ti}. Octauo h. [A.D. 1429–30.] 32

[2]The fi[f] day of Nouember, þe Kyng, wyth hys lordys, ryally rode frome Kyngstone ou*er* London Bryge. And so forth Fenchyrch*e* strete, evyn vn-to the Toure, to hys mete. And þe 36 Mair*e* and þe Aldermen, aH in Scarlete hodys, rode to mete the

[1] MS. þeftis. [2] *leaf* 114, *back*.

Kyng, And so rode forth w*ith* hym to þe Toure The Set*er*day next aftre; wher-of were þe Erle of Denshyre, þe Lord Spenc*er* sone, the Erle of Warwyk, þe Lord Beamounde. And aftre none,
4 þe Kyng, in a riaH araye, w*ith* aH hys lordys Ryally a-rayed in cloth of gold for þe most p*ar*t, w*ith* the said xxiiij newe knyght*es* aH in blew, the prestes rode a-fore þe Kyng ij and ij, from þe Toure to Westm*ynstre*. And þe Maire and þe Aldermen, aH in
8 Scarlet, rode also, and broght þe Kyng to Westmynstre. And at London Bryge was made a toure fuH of Angels And þe grete Condyte and þe lytiH Condite in þe Chepe, rially arayed, rynnyng both*e* rede wyne and whyte. And at the Crosse in þe Chepe was
12 made a riaH casteH, And þ*er*in was grete Wurshyp shewed to þe Kyng.

On þe morne, þe Sonday, þe vj day of Nouem*ber*, þe Kyng was crowned at Westmy*n*stre fuH rially. And aH Bysshoppys and
16 Abbot*es* Copitt and mytred ryally; And aH temp*er*aH lordys rode in þaire estate; And aH o*per* knyght*es* (for most p*er*ty) aH in cloth of gold rially. And Henri of Wynchestre, Cardinale, as a CardenaH sate in a sete by þe ryght hand of the Kyng. And þ*er* was
20 Quene Kateryn*e*, moder of the Kyng, And a grete noumbre of ladis and gentiH-wem*m*en rially arayed. And also þ*er* come sodanly to þe coronac*i*on one of þe king*es* sones of Porttyngale, And he was Wurshypfully resceyved. And þat day was a far*e* day and a clere,
24 blessed be God!

Also þat yere þe p*er*lement was eniourned tiH aftre Crystynmasse. Also þe Fryday, þe xx day of Ianuuer*e*, Richard Hunden, wolpakker, was brent at þe Toure-hyH for hys Lollardy and herysye.
28 The Tuysday next aftre, Iohn Vpton, þe appellaunte, and Iohn Downe of Feueressham, defendaunt, Armed, faght w*ith*-yn lystis in Smythfelde nygh*e* an our*e*. And þen þe Kyng toke it in-to hys awne hand; And þe Set*er*day aftre, at Kenyngton, þe Kyng made
32 an[1] ende be-twene þai*m* both*e*; And so þai rode at large.

The p*er*lement began agayn þe Monday aftre, þe xij day. And in þe meyne tyme The CardinaH went ou*er* þe see on þe Kyng*es* message.

36 And also þe same yere, in Estre Weke, þe Kyng went to Caleis, And so to Roon, w*ith* the substance of aH þe lordes and gentyls of Englond, And left þ*er* þe Duke of Glaucestr*e*, Leuetenaunte.

Nicholas Watton maior.

(M. cccc. xxxi.)

[1] MS. and

APPENDIX E.

ANOTHER VERSION OF THE TIME FROM 1422–31.

[*MS. Rawlinson, B.* 173. *Bodleian Library.*]

[1]And in that yere [Nov. 1422] come Frenssh Bisshoppes oute of Fraunce, & þis was Cristmas folowyng.

¶ Will*iam* Crowmere, Maire

¶ Thomas Sandeford[2] } ¶ Shreues, anno ij°. 4

¶ Nicholas Iames } [1 *Sept.* 1423 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1424.]

¶ And in that yere the King was brought fro Windesore in a chare to Londoñ, and his modre the Quene sitting in the same chare, and he in her armes, and so he was brought to Westm*inster*. 8 and on the morue bigañ the p*ar*liament. And in that same yere, on the Wednesday bifore Seint Mathewes day, Syr Iohn Mortymere, knight, brake p*r*isoñ, and went oute off the Toure of Londoñ; but sone he was take vpon þ^e^ Toure-wharfe, bitwene the 12 Toure & the Temysse, & there he was euyH wounded. And forthwi*th*-aH he was brought forth bifore the Duke of Gloucestre; And vppoñ the Saturday he was brought to hys answere, and there he was dampned to be drawe & honged, And his hede smetyn of at 16 Tyborne. And thañ his hede was take and sett vpoñ Londoñ Brygge, and his body was beried at Iones, bicause he [3]was a knight of the Sepulcre; And hys hede was take downe, & beried w*ith* the body: & þat licence gate frei*er* Winchilsey. 20

¶ Iohn MicheH, Maire.

¶ Iohn Bithewater } ¶ Shreues, anno iij°.

¶ Symkyñ Semañ } [1 *Sept.* 1424 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1425.]

¶ And in that yere was a generaH p*r*ocessioñ, And a p*ar*doner 24 Riding vpoñ an horse, and his face to the horse taile, and his billes hanging a-bought hys necke by-hynde and bifore. And whañ he

[1] *leaf* 225. [2] *i.e.* Wandesford. [3] *leaf* 225, *back.*

come to þe Southñ dore of Poules, there was Made a grete fire, and aH his billes were brent.

¶ Iohn Couentre, Maire.

4 ¶ Will*i*am Mildrede } ¶ Shreues, Anno iiij^to^.
¶ Iohn Brockeley } [1 *Sept.* 1425 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1426.]

¶ And in that yere was a grete discencioñ bitwene the Duke of Gloucestre and the Bisshop of Wynchestre; And this was on
—8 the same day that þe Maire rode. And on the Tuesday was mekle of the bisshoppes retenewe gadered in Southwerke, w*i*th bowes and arowes and other herneys. And thañ the Brige gate was kept w*i*th strength of meñ of armes. And sone after, vppoñ viij of the
12 clocke, aH the Cite was vp, and drewe hem to the wat*er*-side, and wolde haue passed ouyr Thamyse. But the P*r*ince of Portingale,— the Bisshop of Caunt*er*bury, the Bisshop of Bath, entreted, þonked be God, aH was cesed, or none. And the x day of Ianyvere next,—
16 þe Duke [1]of Bedford and his wiffe the Duchesse come to Londoñ; and the Maire and aH the Aldermen, & the craft*es*, ridde a-yenst him, and welcomed him vnto the Cite, And the Bisshop*e* of Winchestre come with him. And in this same yere was the p*ar*liament
20 at Leicestre.

¶ Iohn Reynewe,[2] Maire.

¶ Robert Arnolde } ¶ Shreues, Anno quinto.
¶ Iohn Higham } [1 *Sept.* 1426 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1427.]

24 And in the same yere, in the lattere ende of December, died the goode Duke of Excestre. and in the same yer*e* were founde many false vessels of Romeney, the whiche were made by gadered Galgenet, into the nombre of vj buttes, the which the hedes were
28 smyt oute of in diu*er*se places of the Cite: the falsest gode that euyr any mañ see.

¶ Iohn ReynweH,[3] Maire.

¶ Robert Otele } ¶ Shreues, anno vj^to^.
32 ¶ Henry Frowyke } [1 *Sept.* 1427 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1428.]

¶ In his tyme there was a lone of iij þousand marke; And it was for the Erle of Salesbury for-to meyntene the King*es* werres in Fraunce; And therto payed diu*er*se peple, aswe H þe mene as the—
36 riche; som more, som lasse; but the leste was x s. ¶ And after that, was g*r*aunted bi the p*ar*liament, þat aH the chirches of the ralme shulde be stent at a so*m*me; and the Chirche were at xx li,

[1] *leaf* 226. [2] *i. e.* Raynwell. [3] *i. e.* John Gedney.

the paresshens shulde paye xl s.: and iff it were of more valewe, thañ[1] to paye more.

[2]¶ Henry Bartoñ, Maire.

¶ Iohn Abbot } ¶ Shreues, Anno vij°. 4
¶ Thomas Duffons } [1 *Sept.* 1428 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1429.]

¶ And in this yere was the gode Erle of Salesbury, S*ir* Thomas Mountague, slayne at the sege of Orliaunce w*ith* a Gonne; the whiche was a noble lorde, and a worthi werrioure amonge aH Cristeñ 8 meñ: On whos soule God for his pite haue mercy! amen! And he was beried at Brish*am*. In this same yere, at Midsomertide, Henry Benford, CardinaH, and also Bisshop of Winchestre, went ouyr the see into Fraunce w*ith* a faire meyne of Archers and meñ 12 of armes; ¶ And the Lorde Welouby was made Capteñ of his werres; the whiche CardinaH was purposed and ordeyned for-to haue go into Prage, to haue distroyed and yeue bataile vnto the false heretikes and lollars. And whañ he was redy, tidinge*s* come 16 that the sege of Orliaunce was brokeñ, and the Lorde Talbot take, and other worthi lordes. And anone in aH haste, the CardinaH w*ith* his meyne, and S*ir* Iohn Radclyff with his meyne, þat was p*ur*posed to haue go into Gienne, went ouer into Fraunce to helpe 20 and strength þ^e^ Regent, the Duke off Bedford, in the Kingis right of Englond.

¶ Will*ia*m Estfelde, Maire.

¶ Will*ia*m Rouse } ¶ Shreues, anno viij°. 24
¶ Richard Holand } [1 *Sept.* 1429 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1430.]

¶ The Friday, the iij^de^ day of Nouember, the King with [3]his lordes, Rialli rode fro Kingestoñ ouer Londoñ Brige, And so forth Fanchirch strete, eveñ to the Toure, to his mete. And the Maire 28 and the Aldermeñ, aH in scarlet hodes, Rode to mete the King, and rode forth with him to the Toure. the Saturday next after, the King made xxxiij knightes of the Bath, in the Toure of Londoñ; wherof were the Erle of Deuenyssh-shire, the Lorde Spencers sonne, 32 the Erle of Warrewike, the Lorde Beaumond. and after none, the King, in riaH aray, with aH his lordes rialli arayed in clothes of golde for the moste p*ar*tie, with the saide xxxiij knight*es* aH in blewe like prest*es*, rode a-fore the King ij and ij fro the Toure to Westm*inster*. 36 And the Maire & þ^e^ Aldermeñ aH in scarlet, rode also, and brought the King to Westm*inster*. And on the Morue, the Sonday, the vj

[1] *MS. has* þañ thañ *with the first* þañ *underlined for erasure.*
[2] *leaf* 226, *back.* [3] *leaf* 227.

day of Nouembre, the King was crowned at Westm*inster* rialli; and Henry of Winchestre, CardinaH, as a CardinaH sate in a sete by, oñ the right honde of the King. And there was Quene Kat*er*in,
4 moder of the King, And a grete nombre of ladies and gentilwemeñ rially arayed. And ther come sodenly at þe Coronacioñ, one of the King*es* sonnes of Portingale; and he was worshipfully resceyued. And that daye was a fayre day, & a clere, blessid be God!

8 ¶ Nicholas Wottoñ, Maire.

¶ Water Chirtesey } ¶ Shreues, anno ix°.
¶ Robert Large } [1 *Sept.* 1430 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1431.]

[1]¶ In that yere come the CardinaH oute of Normandy from
12 Roañ; And there was the King, and helde Cristmasse. ¶ and after Cristmas, after Seint Hillaries day, bigañ the p*ar*liament at Westmynstre. and in that yere come to Londoñ the Ambassiatours of Spayne, to trete of pees.

[1] *leaf* 227, *back.*

[F]

CONTINUATION OF THE BRUT FROM 1430–1446.

[*MS. O* 9. 1. *Trinity College, Cambridge.*]

[1] Nich*ola*us Wotton, Maior. Walterus Chertsey, Robertus Large — *Vicecomites.* *anno* ix°. [A.D. 1430–1.]

And in this yere, and in the yere of g*rac*e M[t] cccc xxx[ti], John Ostillere, at the Crowne in Fanchirchestrete of[2] London, debadet w*ith* the ambassitours of Spayne, and rered blode of oon of theym[3] þ*at* was a gentleman; wherfor the hosteler was arested and brought to the Countou*re*, and his wife bothe, for she beganne the debate; and then the Kyng and his consayle remeved hym from the Countou*re*,[4] and brought hym in[5] the Flete p*ri*son. And on the Monday next after, the Maire and bothe the Shirreff*es* of London, by the comaundment of the Kyng[6] and his consayle, brought hym fro the Flete, fetered, colered, and manacled w*ith* yron strongly, thurgh the Cite till[7] they come to Leden-hall, for he shuld haue goon to the Toure to[8] abyde his Iugement for the grete offence þ*at* he had doon, brekyng of the Kyng*es* sauf-condite, ayenst his peas and comaundment. And there these ambassiato*ur*s of Spayne mette w*ith* the Maire and his company in Greschirchstrete, as they were goyng toward[9] the Toure, and prayed the Maire of grace for the man; and so he was brought ageyne þ*at* same nyght[10] to Flete prison.

And in this same yere, on Seint Gregoryes day, a preste of Essex was brought to London afore[11] the clergye at Seint Paules, and there he was conuicte in heresy and false Lollardy, þ*at* he mayntened and helde ayenst holy chirche; and so he was brent in Smythfeld for his heresy.

And in this same yere, on the Tuesday next after Palme Sonday, all the prison*er*s þ*at* were in Ludgate were brought into Newgate prison by Walter*e* Chirtesey & Rob*er*te Large, shirreffes of

[1] *leaf* 207. [2] in U. [3] ye Embassitoures, gentilmen U.
[4] toure of London U. [5] in to U. [6] kynges counsaill U.
[7] to the come U. [8] for to haue abiden U. [9] to the Toure warde U.
[10] *leaf* 207, *back*. [11] to fore U.

London; and the Friday, the xiij^th^ day of Aprell then[1] next folowing, the same shirreffes fette oute of Newgate, by the false suggestion and compleynt of oon[2] Iohn Kyngescote, Gaolere of
4 Neugate, .xviij. presoners of fremen. And the[3] oon half of these xviij. presoners were ledde to the[4] oon Counter, and þat oþer half to[5] þat other Compter, by[6] malice and compleynt of þe seid Iohn Kyngescote. And these[7] were ledde to the Compters, braced as
8 though[8] they had be[9] felons and theves, openly in euery mannys sight.

And in this same yere, vpon þe Whitsonday, a man of the towne of Abyngdon þat is in Oxenfordshire, þat called hym-self
12 Iak Sharp, was take, with oþer mo of his company, for risers and distourbours of þe Kynges peple, and for his false ymaginacion and treson þat he[10] began to make and werk in that Cuntre aboute; and þerfore he was drawe, and hanged and quartered at Abyngdon,
16 and his hede smyten of, and set vpon London Brigge, by the[11] comaundment of the Duke of Gloucestre, Lieutenaunt of England, an[d][12] by alle the good and worthy lordes of the Kinges Consayle beinge that[13] tyme in the Reame.

20 And in this same yere, the xvj. day[14] of Iune, the preson of Ludgate was made, and opened ageyn[15] for fremen þat be presoners for dette. And the[16] same day they entred in first[17] ageyn by ordynaunce and comaundment of the Maire, alder[18]men and
24 comyners. And Herry Dene, Tayloure, was[19] made keper of Ludgate prison, by the Maire and all the communialte in the Guyldhall.

And in þis same yere, the .xiij. day of Iuyll, John Russell,
28 wollepakkere, was dampned at Westmynstre, and brought to the Kynges Benche, and leyde on a[20] hirdell, and drawen thurgh the Cite to Tybourne, and quartered; and his quarters set vpon dyuers gates of London, and his hede[21] set vpon London Brigge.

32 John Welles, Maior. Stephanus Broun, John Athirley } vicecomites anno x°. [1 *Sept.* 1431 *to* 31 *Aug.* 1432.]

And þen Kyng Henry was brought from Caleys, þurgh

[1] then *om.* U. [2] ye said U. [3] y^t^ one U. [4] y^t^ U.
[5] vnto U. [6] by ye malice U. [7] þese prisoners U.
[8] though *om.* U. [9] bene for felonie & thefte U. [10] he he U.
[11] the *om.* U. [12] and U. [13] beyng in the roialme at y^t^ tyme U.
[14] day *om.* U. [15] and ageyn Tr. and opened again U. [16] y^t^ U.
[17] first *om.* U. [18] *leaf* 208. [19] was *om.* U. [20] an U.
[21] hede smytt of and set U.

Normandy, to þe Cite of Roan, w*ith* strenght of his lordes, and w*ith* men of armes and archers; and there the kyng abode, and rested hym in the Castell and[1] the Cite of Roan, from Seint Iames tyde the Apostell, [2]vnto the secund day of Decembr*e*.[2] And when 4
he come first into Rone, he was receyued and welcomed for theire liege lord and Kyng, w*ith* all reu*er*ence, solempnite, gladnesse and worship, þ*at* myght be ordeyned and made; and also they presented hym with ryche and roiall giftes, and thanked God of his comyng. 8
And in the tyme of his abidyng in þe Cite of Roan, there were many io*ur*neyes done in dyu*er*s p*ar*tyes of Fraunce and Normandy, which be not titled in this boke; for y haue not full conusu*au*nce of theym, how, ne in what place nor where they were doon.[3] 12

[4]Here is the begynnyng of Kyng Herries comyng the Sext, from Roan to Parys; and how worthely they of Parys receyued the Kyng in his first comyng thider.[4]

And when Kyng Henry the Sext was goon from the Cite of 16
Roan toward þe Cite of Parys, and first to Seint Denys the .ij. day of Decembr*e*; and þ*er*e he was worthely receyued as eu*er* was any kyng to any Cite; and þe village cleped 'Chapell,' betwene Seint Denys and [5]Parys, there mette with the Kyng and his lordes, the 20
Provost of Parys, w*ith* the March*au*ntez, and iij. other estates w*ith* hem,[6] clothed in oon sute, in rede fyne saten crymsyn[7] furred w*ith* Martrons, and w*ith* blewe hodes, to a grete[8] notable nombr*e*. And whan the Kyng was passed the village, þ*er*e mette w*ith* hym the 24
Provost of Parys aforeseid,[9] in a blewe gowne of velwet, and[10] the .iij. Maisters of the chastlet w*ith* theym, alle clothed in blewe w*ith* blak hodes; and next after theym[11] come[12] the ix worthy Emp*er*oures, w*ith* Kynges and Quenes, and iche of[13] them armed, 28
sauf the Quenes, and theire horses[14] trapped w*ith* theire armes, [15]and the quenes hors trapped w*ith* theire armes;[15] and then come the Maister of the Chamber, w*ith* the acomptes all clothed in violet, ermyn,[16] scarlet hodes, a notable nomber; and after come the 32
P*r*esident, with alle the maysters of þe p*ar*lem*en*t, all clothed in

[1] and in ye U. [2—2] *om.* U.
[3] dcon. And y^e for I leue theme vn writynne. U. [4—4] *om.* U.
[5] *leaf* 208, *back.* [6] hym all clothede U. [7] and crymsyn U.
[8] grete *om.* U. [9] aforeseid *om.* U. [10] and all the U.
[11] hym U. [12] come ridynge U. [13] of Tr. of theme U.
[14] horses U. [15—15] *om.* U. [16] violet Tr. with crymsyn. U.

scarlet, w*ith* furred hodes, and round standynge cappes of Trype; and these were the iiij estates w*ith* alle the ix worthies.

And at comyng to þe gate of Seint Denys of Parys, there was
4 afore[1] the fronte of the gate þe armes of the towne in gowles, a chieff of asure, w*ith* the flourdelice of gold in asure; and also þ*er* was a verrey shippe, w*ith* alle the app*ur*ten*aun*ce[2] þ*er*to belongyng, cou*er*ed with silu*er* foyle, and certeyne p*er*sones standing þ*er*in.
8 And at the Kynges comyng to the gate, they henge ou*er* the shippe borde iij. blody hertys like vnto mennys hertys, bot þey were gretter. And as the Kyng come to the gate, these thre hert*es* opened; and oute of hem[3] flewe white dovys and o*þer* briddes, and
12 certeyn scriptures made, shewyng vnto the Kyng þ*at* they[4] receyued hym w*ith* alle hertys, and for theire souereyn Lorde and Kyng. And at the comyng in of[5] the gate was ordeyned a clothe of gold, and vj men beryng it[6] vpon vj. spere-shaftes, and eche of the men
16 bare heded; and on theire hodes,[7] garlaundes of gode[8] foyle, and they clothed in blewe. And in the[9] same strete was a condit, and iij. meremaydes swymmyng aboue on[10] the water; [11] and oute of the condite come rennyng [12]dyu[er]s wynes; oon ypocras; the
20 second rede wyne, the thridde, with mylke.[12] And eu*er*y Englissh man þ*at* wold drynk ypocras, had ynough; and alwey men redy to s*er*ue theym w*ith* cuppes and pecis. And iij wodewoses playing vpon the toppe[13] of þe condyte; and other wodewoses benethe,[14]
24 playing to kepe this[15] condite.

And then in the same strete was made a scaffold; and þ*er*upon men disgysed after the weddyng of oure Lady, and of the birthe of oure Lorde Ih*es*u Crist, fro the begynnyng to the ende. And þ*er*e
28 was neyder man nor childe þ*at* any wight myght p*er*ceyue, þ*at* eu*er* chaunged any chere or counten*aun*ce alle the tyme duryng; bot held theire conten*aun*ce, as they had been ymages peynted; so þ*at* all peple þ*at* sawe hem, seyd þ*at* they sawe neu*er* in þeire lyves
32 suche a-noder sight.

And after that, comyng in at[16] þe Inner gate of Seint Denys wh[e]re þ*at* he was in Chatere, there was made the life of Seint Denys, and of many other dyu*er*s persons in grete estate aboue hym,

[1] afore at U. [2] appurtenaunce U. [3] theme U. [4] the U.
[5] at U. [6] it vp vpon U. [7] hedes U. [8] golde U. [9] this U.
[10] vpon U. [11] *leaf* 209.
[12–12] iij stremes one of ypocraers an o*þer* w*ith* rede wyne and ye thrid w*ith* mylk.
[13] Cupp U. [14] playing bynethe U. [15] the U. [16] of U.

bothe sp*irit*uell and temporall, after[1] Cristen men and hethen, as they were in theyre tyme þ*at* is passed. And so comyng to the founteyn of Seint Innocent*z*, there was made a hegge of grene holme-busshes; and þ*er*out stert an hert, and houndes rennyng 4 after hym, cou*er*ed in þe armes of England and[2] Fraunce. And at þe Chastelet, þ*er*e was made a stately ordyn*aun*ce of scaffoldes, hanged w*it*h clothes of golde and w*it*h arras, w*it*h the King*es* armes of England and of Fraunce; and a man lykened to þe Kyng 8 sittyng in a sete, kepyng a state in scarled[3] w*it*h a furred hode and w*it*h .ij. buylhons made w*it*h the armes of England and of Fraunce; and vpon the right hande, knelyng, my Lord of Bedford,[4] my[5] Lord of Gloucestr*e*, my Lord Cardynall,[6] and many oþer lordes 12 [7]of England, iche man[8] after his degre, armed with his cote of armes vpon hym;[9] and then the Duke of Burgoyne, knelyng[10] on the lifte hande, offeryng vp the armes of Fraunce, and alle the other lordes of Fraunce in theire degre, knelyng, and offeryng[11] vp 16 their armes; and dyu*er*s scriptures made, þ*at* all they requyre the Kyng of rightwisnesse. And after was p*r*esented to þe Kyng a wylde hert, trapped w*it*h the armes of the towne.

And so þe Kyng rode forth to oure Lady Chirche, and made 20 his offryng. Alle[12] the stretes from Seint Denys Gate were hanged w*it*h cloþes of arras and with clothes of tapissery werk; and for þe most p*ar*ty all the stretes were cou*er*ed w*it*h lynnen clothes.

And so from thens the Kyng that same tyme[13] went to To*ur*ney, 24 and[14] because it was ill[15] ridyng, for the grete froste þ*at* was that tyme in the towne, and the stretes were strawed thurghout for slidyng of theire horses vnto þey come to To*ur*ney; and there the[16] Kyng souped w*it*h my Lorde of Bedford, and lay there all nyght, 28 and dyned there on the morowe ere [he] passed any ferther.

And so vpon the morowe the Kyng went to[17] speke w*it*h his grandmoder, þe Quene of Fr*aun*ce. And there she made hym[18] chere, and welcomed hym w*it*h all the dalyaunce, counten*aun*ce, 32 and chere þ*at* she coude or[19] myght; and seid þ*at* 'she was neu*er* so gladde as she was then, sith she sawe þe Kynge of Fr*aun*ce in

[1] and aftir U. [2] and of U. [3] in a sete of Estate in Scarlet U.
[4] my Lord of Bedford knelyng U. [5] and my U. [6] the Cardinall U.
[7] *leaf* 209, *back*. [8] man *om*. U. [9] theme U. [10] sittyng U.
[11] Fraunce kneling in ther degre and offeryng U. [12] and all U.
[13] y^t^ same tyme þe Kyng U. [14] and for U. [15] p*ar*illous U.
[16] there Tr. þ*er*e the U. [17] and spak. [18] hym grete U.
[19] and U.

good plyte.' And so from the Quene he rode streight to Boys in Vyncent; and there he rested hym[1] vnto þe tyme of hys Coronacion, þe which shuld be holden and [2] doon on þe Sonday, the .viijth day
4 afore Cristmasse, by the grace of God.

And þen the Saterday, the xv. day of Decembre, the Kyng come on the after-none from Boys in Vyncent vnto þe palays of Parys; and he rested hym there all þat nyght. And þe next
8 morowe, the Sonday, was he brought worthely from the palyce to the Chirche of oure Lady in Parys; and there he was crowned Kyng of Fraunce by the Cardynall, þe Bisshop [3] of Winchestre and oþer Englissh Bisshoppes, and by .vj. of þe worthiest Bisshoppes
12 of Fraunce. And this coronacion was worthely doon, with all the solempnite þat myght be doon and ordeyned.

And when the Kyng was crowned, and the seruice doon, then the Kyng was brought ageyn to his palyse, and there set to mete
16 with all delicacye of metes and drynkes þat myght be ordeyned, and open fest to all men þat wold com, bothe pore and riche. And after his coronacion at Parys, the Kyng come doun to þe Cite of Roan. And so, by candelmasse next, the Kyng came to Caleys.
20 And the Marchauntes of the Staple, with the peple of the towne, welcomed hym with all reuerence and honoure, and presented hym with giftes.

And within .xiiij. dayes after, the Kyng come ouer the see
24 into England, and landed at the towne of Dover in Kent; and there were redy the Burgeys of the .v. Portes, and bare the Kyng on lande. And then come moche peple of Kent and Sussex, of good gentelmen and yomen on horsbak and in good aray, and they
28 welcomed the Kyng, and brought hym to Canterbury; and þere þe Kyng rested hym a day. And then the peple of all the Cuntre aboute come on horsbak and good aray to þe Kyng, and welcomed the Kyng with all theire hertys, and brought the King fro[4]
32 Canterbury vnto his Maner of Eltham þat is .v. myle oute of London. And there the Kyng rested hym .v. or .vj. dayes, vnto his comyng to the Cite of London.

And in this same yere the xxjth day of Februare, Kyng Henry
36 the .vj. come from his Maner of Eltham toward the Cite of London; and the Maire and aldermen, with the comynalte of

[1] hym all nyght U.
[2] There is a break in U here from *doon* on p. 461 to *foloyng* on p. 462, l. 8.
[3] *leaf* 210. [4] for Tr.

London, roode ayenst the Kyng on horsbak, in the best aray *þat* they myght, in the reu*e*rence of the Kyng and in worship and gladnesse of the worthy name of the Cite of London, thurghout the world in worthynesse co*m*mended and p*r*aysed. For the Maire 4 hym-self was clothed in rede Crymsyn velwett, and a grete velwet hatte furred royally, and a girdell of gold aboute his mydell, and a bawdrik of gold aboute his neck, trillyng doun behynde hym; and his .iij. hensmen on [1].iij. grete Coursoures [2] foloyng hym, in oon 8 sute of a good aray, in rede,[3] all spangled in silu*er*; and then all the Aldermen in gownes of scarlet,[4] w*ith* sangwyn cappes. And all the co*mmun*ialte of the Cite were [5] clothed in white; bot eu*er*y crafte w*ith* dyu*er*s devices enbrowded[6] vpon the white gownes, *þat* 12 eu*er*y craft myght be knowen, oon from a-nother, w*ith* scarlet hodes or cappes. And all they hoved still on horsbak on [7] the Blak-Heth in Kent, on both sides, as a strete, vnto the Kynges comyng.

And when they sawe the Kyng come, the Maire w*ith* the 16 aldermen rode to the Kyng, and welcomed hym w*ith* all reu*e*rence, honour and obeys*au*nce.[8] And the Kyng thanked hem, and [9] he come ridyng thurgh all the peple; and they obeyed, and seid, "Welcom oure liege [10] and Kyng! welcom! [11] and thanked be God 20 in all his giftes, *þat* we se you in good quart!" and so the Kyng rode streight the high wey to London.

And when the Kyng had riden thurgh Suthwerk, and come to the stulpes w*ith*out [12] London Brigge, *þere* stode a gyaunt in [13] a 24 toure, w*ith* his swerd drawe in his hande, shewed w*ith* countena*u*nce, doth manace all foreyn enemys to the death w*ith*out m*er*cy, *þat* seith or doth [14] ayenst the [15] Kynges right. "And y, the Kynges Champyon, in full myght and power." 28

And then the Kyng come to London Brigge; and there was made a roiall hevenly toure; and therin was shewed .iij. ladyes as Emp*e*rice, worthely app*a*raylled in theire aray, which were called by name 'Nature, Grace, and Fortune.' And theire girdelles were 32 blewe, shynyng like to sapheres, which shewed to the Kyng, in his comyng, all goodnesse and gladnesse in [16] vertuous lyvyng; and w*ith* o*þe*r .vj.[17] virgynes celestial, in tresses of gold, and w*ith*

[1] *leaf* 210, *back.* [2] U *begins again.* [3] in rede *om.* U.
[4] scarlet gownes U. [5] all U. [6] enbrandrede U. [7] vpon U.
[8] honour, reuerence and obeisaunce U. [9] and so U.
[10] liege lorde U. [11] welcom *om.* U. [12] þorugh U.
[13] w*ith* Inne U. [14] doth or saith U. [15] his U.
[16] and U. [17] vij. U.

coronall*es* on theire hedes, all clothed in white, as virgines, w*ith* sonnys[1] of golde on theire garment*es*, shewyng as hevenly creatures, mekely salewyng the Kyng, and gaf hym .vij. giftes, *þat* were
4 toknes of oure Lord God of heven, *þat* were[2] white dowves, betokenyng the giftes of the Holy Gost, a spirite of intelligence, a spirite of sapience, and a spirite of strenght and of connyng, and of consayle, pite, drede, and lowlynesse. And on the lifte side of
8 these .iij. Emp*er*esses, were .vij. o*þer* virgyns, clothed[3] all in white, w*ith* sterres of gold on[4] theire garment*es*, w*ith* coronall*es* on theire hedes, which p*re*sented the Kyng w*ith* [5]royall giftes: first, they endewed the Kyng with the crowne of glorye, and w*ith* the septre
12 of mekenesse[6] and of pite; a swerd of myght and victorie, a mantell of prudence, a shelde of feith, a helme of helth, a girdell of love and of p*ar*fite peas. And all these ladyes and virgines welcomed the Kyng with all hono*ur*e and reu*er*ence.[7]

16 And then the Kyng p*ro*cedyng forth to the Condyte in Cornhill; and *þer*e was made in serkelwyse a Trone; and in the myddes sittyng, a yonge child arayed as a kyng, whom to gou*er*ne were .iij. ladyes, Mercy, Trouthe and the Lady[8] Clennesse; and
20 .ij. Iuges of lawe, and .viij. sergeauntes, to shewe the kyngdom lawe and right. And then the Kyng rode forth, and entred into Chepe, and come to the grete Conduit, *þat* ranne plente of good wyne, bothe white and rede, to all peple *þat* wold drynk. And
24 aboue, ou*er* the Condite, was a royall toure likned to Paradyse, w*ith* many dyu*er*s trees[9] beryng eu*er*yche dyu*er*s frutes. And in this same gardeyn was dyu*er*s welles of dyu*er*s wynes, w*ith* bokett*es*; and .iij. glorious virgines wounde vp the wyne, p*ro*-
28 feryng the Kyng there full habundaunce, fulsomnesse, and high plente. And the names of these virgines been 'Mercy, Grace, and Pite.' And in the ende of this gardeyn *þer*e appered to the Kyng .ij. olde men,—*þat* oon, Enok; and *þat* o*þer*, Ely,—*þat* shewed the
32 Kyng chere and grete preysing[10] ministryng his gou*er*nance.

And[11] the Kyng passed forth, and come to the Crosse in Chepe;

[1] soñs U. [2] were vij U. [3] all clothede U. [4] vpon U.
[5] *leaf* 211. [6] clennesse U.
[7] with alle melodie & roalte of songe. And than ye Kyng rode forth, comes to redenhall in Cornhill, & þer was made a roiall thyng like vnto a tabernakle & þere in satt þat lady dame sapience with the vij sciences euery in þere degre shewyng þere craftis werkis & konnynges & made grete Ioie melodie & songe vnto ye Kyng & welcomede hym w*ith* all honoure & reuerence U.
[8] lady of U. [9] dyuers thynges and trees U. [10] praisyng and U.
[11] and þan U.

and there was made a castell roiall; and on the Est syde stode .ij. grene treeȝ, which bare the armes of England and of Fraunce, the libardes and the flouredelice, which been the King*es* right and trewe armes be lyne. And vpon this castell, toward Seint Paules, 4 there was the tree of Iesse, w*ith* all the braunches, shewyng the kynrede of oure Lorde Ihesu[1] and of our Lady,[2] Seint Marye, to the comfort of the Kyng, and for the grete solempnite of þe worthy cite of London. 8

And then they[3] passed forth from þe[4] Castell and come toward Seint Paules at the Litell Conduit; and þ*er*e was made an heven indivisible of the Trinite; and a trone compassed his roiall See w*ith* a grete multitude of angellys hym aboute, w*ith* dyu*er*s 12 melodyes and songe, to hertly ioye and [5]comfortyng of the Kyng and all his peple. And whan he was come to Seint Paules, there[6] he alight doun of his hors; and þ*er*e come þe Archebisshop of Caunt*er*bury, and the Archebisshop of York,[7] and þe Bisshop[8] of 16 Lincoln, and the Bisshop[es] of Bathe, Salesbury, Norwich, Ely, and Rochestre, and the Dene of Paules w*ith* his couent, in p*r*ocession, in theire best araye of holy Chirche, and met w*ith* hym, and did hym obs*er*uaunce as bylongeth[9] to hym, and censed hym at his 20 comyng in; and so brought the kyng to the high auter*e*, w*ith* roiall songe. And there the kyng offred; and then he come oute ageyn, and toke his hors, and come to Westm*inster*; and thider brought hym the Maire, Aldermen, and all the co*mmun*ialte of the 24 Cite of London.

And when the kyng was come to Westm*inster* w*ith* all his peple, the Abbot and all the Couent come oute, coped roially, in p*r*ocession, w*ith* high solempnite and gladnesse. And the Abbot 28 brought to the Kyng, Seint Edward*es* septr*e*; and so he come into the Abbay w*ith* all solempnite, ioye and songe, and offred to Seint Edward; and then come oute ageyne, and went to his palace. And then the Maire and Aldermen, w*ith* all the co*mmun*ialte of London, 32 toke theire leve of the Kyng and of the lordes, and thanked God highly of his welfare and comyng.

And on the Seturday next suyng, the Maire and þe Aldermen come ageyn to Westm*inster* to the palays, w*ith* a riche hanaper of 36 gold, and p*r*esented it to the Kyng, and a M[t] .ti. of gold therin, to

[1] Ihesu Criste U. [2] of his moder U. [3] the Kynge U. [4] that U.
[5] *leaf* 211, *back*. [6] there *om*. U. [7] yorke his chaunceler U.
[8] byshoppis of lyncolne Bathe U. [9] bylongede to theme U.

his bien venewe and welcom hoom; and p*ra*yed hym of his high myghty g*ra*ce, lordship and love to his Chambr*e*.

And þen anon after Ester next folowyng,[1] the Kyng held his
4 p*ar*lement at Westm*inster*; and it lasted till seint Jametyde þe Appostell. and at þe begynny*ng* of the p*ar*lement, the Cardynall, the Bisshop of Wynchestr*e*, come ou*er* the see into England, and so to London to þe Kyng, to excuse hym of the offence*ȝ* and blames
8 þ*at* were put vpon hym for thing*es*[2] doon in Fraunce, by the compleynt of certeyn lordes; wherof he hath worthely excused hym to the Kyng and to his consayle; and so he was[3] fully excused, and the p*ar*ties at oon.

12 And also to this p*ar*lement come Frenssh lordes, bothe sp*irit*uall and temp*or*ell and ambassatours of Spayne, and o*þer* diu*er*s lordes of dyu*er*s[4] [5]landes, to trete for peas and other certeyn maters. And the xxvj. day of Juyn come the Dukes son of Bretayn ou*er* the
16 see into England, and so to London[6] to the Kyng; and w*ith* hym come a Bisshop of that lande, and certeyn knyght*es* and Squyers and theire meny.

20 Joh*ann*es Parneys, Maior. — Joh*ann*es Olney, Joh*ann*es Paddesley — vice*comites* *anno* xj° [A.D. 1432–3.]

And this[7] same yere, the Lord Camoys,[8] Sir Walter*e* Hunger-ford son, went ou*er* the see into Normandy, w*ith* knyght*es*,
24 squyers, men of arme*ȝ* and archers, to the Nombr*e* of xv^c^. peple and mo, by ordyn*au*nce of the Kyng and his Consayle of[9] the Reame, in strengthing and helpyng of the Duke of Bedford, Regent in tho p*ar*tie*ȝ*, and of all the Kyng*es* liege peple, and for
28 keping of the Kyng*es* title and right.

And in þis same yere the Kyng*es* sonne of Naverne, w*ith* o*þer* dyu*er*s peple w*ith* hym, come in ambassiatry to the Kyng and to[10] his Consayle.

32 And in þis same yere the Kyng let intere the Duchesse[11] of Bedford, which deyed in Fraunce, [12]at Seint Paules in London,[12] w*ith* moche royalte and solempnite as myght be doon in holy Chirche.

And in this same yere, anon after Cristmasse, þe Bisshop of
36 Acres in the land of Navern, come to the Kyng in ambassiatry.

[1] next folowyng *om.* U. [2] thinges Tr. for thinges U. [3] is U.
[4] and of other dyuers U. [5] *leaf* 212.
[6] into *þis* lande over the see and so to london U. [7] in this U.
[8] Cannys and U. [9] and of U. [10] to *om.* U.
[11] entre at saint paules in london the duchesse U. [12—12] *om.* U.

And in þis same yere on Seint Wolstans day, Sir Robert Fitzhugh was stalled Bisshop of London in the see[1] of Seint Paules.

And in this same yere, anon after Cristmasse, the grete conuocacion and consayle of all the landes [2]in Cristendom, and also of all 4
o*þer* seculer lordes, and Clerk*es*,—*þat* is to say, Bisshoppes and other[3] consayle began in the Cite of Basyle in Duchelande, for to make vnite and peas emong all Cristen peple, and for to destroye heretik*es* and erresye *þat* then reigned emong the peple.[2] 8

And in this same yere, anon after Ester,[4] þe Archebisshop of Caunt*er*bury and o*þer*[5] Bisshoppes w*ith* othe*re* clergy, and the Duke of Gloucestr*e* w*ith* o*þer* lordeȝ, knyght*es* and squyers, went ou*er* the see to Caleys, for trety, and made *þer*e a consayle [6]betwene[7] þe 12
Frenssh and þe Englissh. And þider come out of Fraunce þe Duke of Bedford, Regent, w*ith* many other Frenssh[8] lordes, bothe sp*irit*uall and temp*or*all; and also þider come þe Cardynall, þe Bisshop of Wynchestr*e*. 16

And in this same yere, the xxij^th^ day of Aprell, the Erle of Huntyngton, w*ith* other dyu*er*s lordes, knyght*es* and[9] squyers, w*ith*[10] men of armes and archers, shipped at Hampton, and went ou*er* the see into[11] Normandy and so[12] to Fraunce, for to mayntene, 20
kepe and gou*er*ne the right of oure Kyng and þe p*ar*ties of Fr*au*nce and Normandy.

And in this same yere, Herry Beauford, Cardynall, Bisshop of Wynchestr*e*, come[13] ou*er* the see into England, and so to London, 24
the xth day of Iuyn, to his Man*er* of Seint Mary Ou*er*ey in Suthwerk.

And[14] in this same yere was the Clipse in þe after-None, *þat* Asshewell þe white frere, and o*þer* clerk*es*, spake of longe tyme 28
before; which all peple dowted and were sore aferd of, thurgh the speche of þe seid frere.[15] And this clipse was the xvij.[16] day of Iuyn.

And in this same yere come Iohn, Duke of Bedford, with his 32

[1] chirch U.
[2—2] of Cristiance of all ye spiritualte & temporallte and of all secular lordes and clerkis þat is to say Bisshoppis & other was holden & begonne in ye Citie of basile in Ducheland for to make peace & vnite betwix all cristen peple & for to destroie heretikes & heresie *þat* now reigneth amonge the peple U.
[3] other which Tr. [4] Ester *om.* U. [5] oþer *om.* U. [6] *leaf* 212, *back.*
[7] to trete of peace and made a counsaill at Caleis betwene U.
[8] grete U. [9] and *om.* U. [10] with *om.* U.
[11] to Caleis and so into U. [12] so *om.* U. [13] come frome.
[14] In U the next few lines down to *xix of June* are transposed.
[15] þer of þorugh the freres speche. [16] xix U.

newe wedded wife, þe Erles doughter of Seintpoule; and they come from Fraunce ouer the see into England, and so come to London, the xxiij^th^ day of Iuyn, þat was Mydsomer Even. And
4 þe Mayre and aldermen, with many worthy comouns of London, brought theym from the Blak-Heth in Kent, and so to London into Fletestrete, vnto þe Bisshoppes Inne of Salesbury, with all honoure and reuerence.

8 John Brokley, Maior. Thomas Charlton / John Lynge vicecomes } vicecomites Anno xij° [A.D. 1433–4.]

And in this same yere, and in the yere of grace M^t^ ccccxxxiiij^ty^, þe viij. day of Iuyn, Iohn, Duke of Bedford, and his lady þe
12 Duchesse,[1] went ageyn[2] ouer þe see to Caleys, and so into Normandy and Fraunce, with a grete nombre of peple, in[3] strengthing and mayntenyng of oure[4] Kynges right in [5]Fraunce and Normandy.

And in þis same yere was[6] a grete pestilence in London, bothe
16 of men, women and childern; and namely of worthy men, as aldermen and oþer worthi communiers; and also thurgh England þe peple deyed sore, bothe pore and riche,[7] which was grete hevynesse to all peple.[8]

20 Robertus Otley, Maior. Thomas Bernewell / Symon Eyre } vicecomites anno xiij° [A.D. 1434–5.]

And in this yere, and in þe yere of grace M^t^. cccc. xxxv^ty^, þe xxij^th^ day Nouember, the grete and hard frost bygan; and it
24 endured vnto the fest of Candelmasse next, which distroyed þe olde peple, bothe men and women, and also yong childern. And also in that same tyme deyed many bay trees, and rosemary, Sauge, tyme, and many oþer herbes.

28 And in this same yere, Sir Herrye Beauford, Cardynall, Bisshop of Wynchestre, and Maister Iohn Kemp, Archebisshop of York, and the Erle of Huntyngton, with oþer lordes, knyghtes, and Squyers, and Clergye, went ouer the see into Fraunce, to þe Cite
32 of Reynes, to trete for a fynall peas betwene England and Fraunce. Bot it was sone disquat, for þe grete highnesse, pride, and couetyse of þe Frenssh party. For oure Englissh peple abode there from Midsomer till it was nygh Michelmasse. And so they departed
36 from hem, and come ageyne into England in saufte, thanked be God!

[1] & the Duchesse his wife U. [2] ageyn *om.* U. [3] in the U. [4] the U.
[5] *leaf* 213. [6] þer was U. [7] both men women & children U.
[8] Here closes U [=MS. Un. Libr. Camb. Hh. VI. 9].

And in this same yere, anon after these lordes comyng out of Fr*aun*ce from this trety of peas, Iohn, Duk of Bedford, was seke, and deyed in the Roan in Normandy; and there he is buryed: vpon whos soule, God haue m*er*cy! amen! 4

Henricus Frowyk, Maior. Robertus Clopton } vice*comites* a*nno* Thom*as* Catworth } xiiij° [A.D. 1435–6.]

And in this same yere, and in the yere of g*ra*ce M† ccccxxxvj^ti^, Kyng Henr*e* þe vj^th^ held his p*ar*lement at Westmynst*er*. And in 8 þis p*ar*lement was gr*aun*ted a [1]disme for holy chirche, and a xv^th^ thurghout the Reame, to mayntene þe Kyng*es* werres and to deffende oure Enemyes. And also they gr*aun*ted to þe Kyng in this p*ar*lement, of all peple, pore and riche, both of sp*irit*uell and 12 temp*or*ell, to pay of theire landes and rentes, and of all freheld þ*at* they haue w*ith*in this Reame of England, vj d. of þe pound; and þis treuly to fecche and geddr*e*, to help in þe Kyng*es* nedes as at this tyme. 16

And anon, in the begynnyng of Lent next folowyng, þe King, w*ith* his conseyle, borowed a so*m*me of gold þurghout þe Reame, of temporall peple, þ*at* amounted a c. M† marc of money, to sende his peple ou*er* the see; to kepe, mayntene, and gou*er*ne his landes 20 byyonde the See: of which so*m*me, the peple of London lent x M† marc in olde and in newe, þ*at* is to sey, .iiij. M† v^c^ marc of olde, and iiij M† v^c^ marc of newe prest. So these ij. so*m*mes drawen x M† m*a*rc and more, ou*er* the good peple of þe Cite of London, þ*at* 24 is to sey, certeyn craftes found both men of armes and archers to Caleys, forto kepe the towne in saufgarde from oure enemys, þ*at* is to say, the Duke of Burgoyne and his strenght. And also the Cite of London sent stuff to Caleys, as Gonnes, Gonnepouder, w*ith* 28 other co*m*moditees for the werre, to kepe þ*at* place sauf, to þe worship of oure Kyng and of þe Reame, and to þe welfare and p*ro*fite of all England.

And this same yere, deyed iiij bisshoppes in England, þ*at* is to 32 say, the Bisshop of Ely, the Bisshop of London, the Bisshop of Lincoln, and the Bisshop of Bangore, and o*per* mo p*re*lat; of worthynesse and state, in dyu*er*s partyes of the Reame of England.

And in this same yere, the Erle of Morteyn*er* went ou*er* þe see 36 to Caleys w*ith* a grete peple of men of armes and archers, in þe Passion Weke, in the defence of oure Kyng, and to destroye oure enemys.

[1] *leaf* 213, *back*.

And in this same yere, the iiijth day of Maye, the Erle of Salesbury, and his broder the Lord Faukonberge, went ou*er* the see into Normandy w*ith* a fayre company of knyght*es* and squyers, 4 w*ith* men of armes and archers, in defence of þe Kyng and of þe Reame of England, for to destroye oure enemys.

And in this same yere, in þe Moneth of Maye, the Duke of York and þerle of Suffolk, w*ith* oþ*er* lordes, [1]knyght*es* and squyers, 8 men of armes and archers, and all oþ*er* stuff and necessaryes þ*at* þ*er*teyneth to werre, went ouer the see into Normandy and Fraunce, as lieften*au*nt vnder the Kyng of England, forto gou*er*ne and kepe þe landes of Fraunce and Normandy ageyns the Kynges 12 enemys, and in saluacion of the Kynges peple.

And in this same yere aboute Midsom*er*, the Duke of Burgoyne, w*ith* all his pusance of peple, bothe of F*ra*unce and of Flaundres, and of oþ*er* dyu*er*s contreys, come and byseged þe towne of Caleys, 16 and þe garrysons þ*at* belongen þ*er*to. And þ*er*e they destroyed both Mark and Oye, and of þe Kyng*es* peple many oon. And þey come thider w*ith* so grete strenght and ordyn*au*nce of werre, þ*at* it was impossible any creatures to conquere theym, sauf þe g*ra*ce of 20 God oonly; wherfore þ*at* the Kyng of England, with his consayle, let ordeyn and send ou*er* þe see to Caleys, for þe Rescues therof, and for his peple lying þ*er*e, and for his right, his vncle þe Duke of Gloucestr*e*, the Duke of Norffolk, þe Erle of Warwyk, and þe Erle 24 of Stafford, and þe Erle of Ewe, his broder, and þe Erle of Huntyngdon, and þe lord Fawnehope, Sir John Cornwayle knyght, and many oþ*er* lordes, knyght*es* and Squyers, and many oþ*er* men of armes and archers, to þe nombr*e* of Lx. M^{t} peple, w*ith* many 28 dyu*er*s wepenys þ*at* belongeth to batayle. And then come the Navy of Spayne, w*ith* oþ*er* dyu*er*s shippes, which were grete vessels, and stronge and well-manned, and byseged þe towne of Caleys by water. Then come þe Erle of Devenshire w*ith* his 32 Navye out of the west cost*es*, and w*ith* oþ*er* dyu*er*s shippes of England well-manned; and they herd of his com*myng*, and they voided, and went their wey thens, and wold no lenger abide. And then the Erle of Morteyn*er* and þe Lorde Camoys, w*ith* a certeyn 36 of theire peple, issued oute of Caleys, and brake the sege þ*at* the Duke of Burgoyne had ordeyned ayenst the towne of Caleys, and come to þe Bastyle of strength, and slewe þe most p*ar*ty þ*at* were þ*er*in, and destroyed moche peple, and toke his ordyn*au*nce, and

[1] *leaf* 214.

the remen*aun*t fledde away. And this was doon ere the Duke of Gloucestre come ou*er* þe see to Caleys [1]with his Navye and people.

And after this, aboute our Lady Day þe assu*m*pcion, the Duke of Gloucestre, the Duke of Norffolk, w*ith* Erles and lordes, w*ith* all 4 theire o*þer* people and ordyn*aun*ces, come vnto Caleys forto rescue it, and forto destroye the sege; bot it was doon and ended ere they come, thanked be God of his g*rac*e! And þen þe Duke of Gloucestre, w*ith* all his peple, abode in Caleys till he had take his 8 consayle what was best to doon. And þen he toke all his peple and went into Flaundres, and slowe and brent all þ*at* they myht, and toke .ij. townes, Poperyng and Bell. And anon whan this was doon, he comanded all his peple to t*ur*ne ageyn to Caleys, vpon 12 peyn of deth, in all haste. And so þey taryed not longe there, bot come ageyn in all hast into England.

And in þis same yere, whils all this doyng was at Caleys and in Flaundre3, the Kyng of Scott*es* come w*ith* an huge powere of peple 16 and ordyn*aun*ce, and biseged þe towne of Berwik, and after, the Castell of Rokesburgh, and did moche harme þ*er*e as he come. And þen come þe Erle of Northumb*er*land and þe Erle of West-m*er*land, w*ith* lordes and peple of the Cuntrees, and distroyed and 20 brake his seges; and he fledde w*ith* his peple, and turned ageyn into Scotland.

Joh*ann*es Mychell, Maior. Thomas Mustum / Willelmus Gregory { Vicec*omites* / A*nno* xv° / [A.D. 1436–7.] 24

And in this same yere, and the yere of g*rac*e Mt CCCC. xxxv[ti] the grete, hard, bityng frost bygan the vij. day of Decembr*e*, and endured vnto þe xxij. day of Feu*er*ere next, which greved þe peple 28 wonder sore; and moche pepel deyed in þ*at* tyme, for colde and for skarcite of wode and cole. And tender herbes were slayne w*ith* þis frost, þ*at* is to say, Rosemary, sauge, tyme, and many o*þer* herbes. 32

And in þis same yere deyed good Quene Kat*er*yn, þ*at* was moder to Kyng Henr*e* the Sext, and wife to Kyng Henr*e* the .v[th], the þursday þe .iij. day of [2]Ianuar*e*, in þe Abbey of Bermondesey without Suthwerk, in þe counte of Surr*e*. And the Friday, the 36 viij. day of Feu*er*ere next after, the body of the Quene was brought to Seint Kateryns beside the Toure, and so thurgh London to Seint Paules, w*ith* lordes and ladyes, and w*ith* the Maire and Aldermen,

[1] *leaf* 214, *back*. [2] *leaf* 215.

and the Craftes in London and *with* all the religious peple, as chanons, prestys and freres; and there was a solempne dirige and masse on the morowe. And from thens she was brought to West-
4 mynstr*e*, and þere was hir terement holden and doon rially; and þ*er*e buryed in the Chapell of oure Lady, on whos soule, God haue m*er*cy! Amen!

And in this same yere, duryng the hard frost, þe Monday the
8 xxiij. of Ianuar*e*, the gate of þe Cite at London Brigge ou*er*-threwe- and fell doun into Tamys to þe hard ground, and drewe the houses after hym, bothe w*ith*in and w*ith*out, to grete harm to þe Cite and to þe brigge.

12 And in this same yere, the walles of chirches, howses, and of Selers, þ*a*t were made of chalke, broke in many places, and fell in smale pecys to the grounde as dust.

And in this yere þe Kyng held his p*ar*lement at Westmynstr*e*;
16 and it byganne at þe Fest of Seint Hillary, and ended at Ester next folowyng. And in þe begynnyng of Lent, tydyng*es* come to þe Kyng and to the Reame, how þ*a*t þe Kyng of Scott*es*, Sir Iames Steward, was slayn at Seint Johnes Towne w*ith* treson, by a Squyer
20 of Scotland. And to this p*ar*lement come many dyu*er*s straungers, som*me* of Aragon in Spayne, som*me* of Spruce, som*me* of Beam, and som*me* of Fr*au*nce and Normandy. And þe Bisshop of Tyrwyn, w*ith* dyu*er*s knyght*es* and Squyers, come to this same
24 p*ar*lement.

And in this same yere, the ixth day of Iuyll, deyed Quene Iohan in the Maner of Haueryng-at-Bour in Essex, which was wife to Kyng Henry the iiijth; and from thens she was brought to
28 Cau*n*t*er*bury, and there is she buryed: on whose soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And in this yere, anon after Midsom*er*, the Lord Willoughby, and other lordes w*ith* hym, knyght*es* and squyers, men of armes
32 and archers, were sent ouer the see into Fr*au*nce, forto strenght, mayntene, and kepe the Kyng*es* title and right þ*a*t he hadde in Fr*au*nce and Normandy.

And in this same yere, at þe Natiuite of oure Lady Seint Mary,
36 þe Erle of Warwik was ordeyned [1] and comaunded ou*er* the see into Fraunce and Norma[n]dy, forto be lieften*au*nt and gou*er*nour in the Kynges name, w*ith* strenght of all þe p*ar*tyes and landes þ*a*t the King hath byyonde the see, as in Fraunce, Normandy, and

[1] *leaf* 215, *back*.

Gascoyne. And then the Duke of York come hoom ageyn, þat longe tyme had been there; and so the same tyme he toke his iourney w*ith* lordes, knyght*es* and squyers, men of armes and archers, a royall and a worthy company, and toke w*ith* hym þe lady his wife, and the yonge Lord Spencer, his sonne and his heire, and shipped in Goddes name, and toke the see. And when they were forth in the see, there arose grete tempest*es*, stormes and wyndes; and then they stode in p*er*ill of deth; and so, as God wold, he was dryven ageyn into England costes, and were saved; and so, at Allhalowentyde next, the good Erle of Warwyk toke his shippyng ageyn, and passed ou*er* the see, and come w*ith* his peple to Roan in saufte, thanked be God!

Will*el*m*us* Estfeld, Maior. Will*el*m*us* Hales / Will*el*m*us* Chapman — vice*comites* *anno* xvj° [A.D. 1437–8.]

And in this same yere, and in the yere of *grace* Mt CCCC xxxviij, a woman of Highgate, þat was a tayllours wife, lete sle hir husbond; and þ*er*fore she was Iuged to be brent at the Toure hill, þe Monday þe xxvij^th day of Ianuar*e*.

And in this same yere, on Esterday, a gardyner þat wonned at Seint Mary at Nax in London, receued þe glorious sacrament our*e* Lord*es* body, and toke it oute of his mouth, and hidde it in a clowte, and wold haue brent it. And the p*ar*son took the sacrament, and receyued it reu*er*ently, and brought it to þe high auter ageyn, and sent þe gardyn*er* to prison. And þe Bisshop of London and o*þer* Bisshoppes and clergye sate vpon hym, and Iuged hym, for lollardry and erresye, to be brent in Smythfeld.

And in this same yere, the xiij. day of Iuyn, .v. men of the Cuntre of Tynderden in Kent, were founden and taken for heresyes and destroyers of the King*es* peple; and so they were brought to [1] Maidston in Kent, and there Iuged to deth, to be drawe, hanged, q*uart*er*d*, and theire hedes smyten of.

And in this same yere, the Erle of Morteyn went ou*er* the see into Fr*aun*ce by the Kyng*es* comaundment and consayle, forto strenght and kepe in the King*es* name c*er*teyn p*ar*tyes in Fr*aun*ce and Normandy, w*ith* knyght*es*, squyers, men of armes and archers.

And all this yere duryng, was grete scarcite of corn; for a busshell whete was at xx d. and ij s., and in the last ende of the yere at xxvj d. þe busshell; and a busshell of rye was at xvj d. and

[1] *leaf* 216.

xviij d., and barly at x d. and xij d.; and then was right feble brede made for þe comon peple; and a galon of rede wyne at x d., and all o*þer* swete wynes at xvj d., as Romney, Malvesyne, Clarry, Tyre; 4 and flessh and fyssh was longe tyme at an high price, which was grete charge to all the comons þurghout þe Reame. And in all þe North Cuntre a busshel of whete was at xl d. the most part of þe yere. And moche worthy peple deyed in the yere of pestilence, 8 and of o*þer* co*mmun*e peple of men, women and childern, thurghout þe Ream, and principally at York and in the North Cuntre; on whos soules God haue mercy! amen!

And in that same yere, in the Moneth of Iuyll, were made .vij. 12 Sergeauntes of Lawe; and they held theire gen*er*all fest the day of the T*ran*slacion of Seint Thomas, in the Bisshoppes Inne of Ely in Holbourne.

16 Stephen Broun, Maior. Hugo Dyke, Nicholaus Yoo { vice*comites* *anno* xvij° [A.D. 1438–9].

And in this same yere, and the yere of *grace* M† CCCC xxxix^ti^, on Seint Clemen*tes* day, betwene .iij. and .iiij. after None, *per* 20 fell such wedring of wynde and rayne, thondyr and lightnynge*s*; and a grete smoke of the lightnynge, þat all peple were sore agast *per*of, for þe hydous noyse *þat* was herd in the Reame. And *per*with an erthquake, *þat* shoke all the grounde.

24 And in this yere on Seint Georg*es* Even, [1] the holy Martir, from .ij. after mydnyght vnto .v. of the clok in þe morny*ng*, *per* was so huge and so grevous wedryng of thundir and lightnyng, hale, wynde and Rayne, *þat* the peple were hugely agast and dred of it; 28 bot oure Lord God and his blessed Moder, oure Lady Seint Marye, saved and kept all his hande-werk at all tymes,—blessed myght He and she be! amen!

And in this same yere, on the Monday next after Trinite 32 Sonday, the Erle of Huntingdon, w*ith* o*per* lordes, knyght*es* and Squyers, men of armes and archers, went out of London toward the see for to gou*er*ne and kepe the Cite of Burdeux, and also the Cuntreyes of Gascoyne and Guyan, to the p*ro*fite of oure liege Lorde 36 the Kyng, and to the welfare of the Reame of England.

And in this same yere deyed Sir Richard Beauchamp, Erle of Warwyk, in Normandy; and his bonys were brought into England,

[1] *leaf* 216, *back*.

and buryed at the towne of Warwik: on whos soule, God haue mercy! amen!

And in this same yere, the .v. day of Iuyn, the Erle of Stafford, *with* lordes, knyghtes, squyers, men of armes and archers, 4 in good aray, went ou*er* the see to Caleys, for tretice betwene England and Fraunce. And w*ith*in .ij. dayes after, went ou*er* the see to Caleys, the Archebisshop of York, þe Bisshop of Norwiche, and the Bisshop of Seint Dauy, w*ith* a grete meyne of clerke*s*, and 8 moche o*per* peple w*ith* theym, in good arraye, to Caleis, to this same tretice. And the Friday next after that, went the Cardinall, the Bisshop of Wynchestr*e*, w*ith* a grete multitude of peple, ou*er* the see to Caleys, to the same tretice. And the Seturday next, 12 went out of the Cite of London toward Caleis, to that same tretice, the Duke of Norff*olk*, w*ith* o*per* grete lordes, knyght*es* and squyers, and moche o*per* peple w*ith* hym, in good araye; And Sir Richard Wodevyle, knyght, and Sir Roger Chamb*er*layn, knyght; and 16 many o*per* worthy stat*es* of knyght*es* and Squyers, w*ith* men of armes and archers, went ou*er* the see into Normandy, to kepe the Kyng*es* title and right. And þere þe Cardynall and these Bisshopp*es*, and the Duke of Norff*olk*, abode þ*er*e, and treted w*ith* 20 the Frenssh p*ar*ty vnt*o* þe t*er*me of Michelmasse [1] next folowyng.

And in all this yere, all greynes of corne were at an high price; for whete was at xxxij d., barly at xvj d., and rye at ij s., vnto the t*er*me of Michelmasse next; and then was whete at xviij d., barly 24 at x d., and Rye at xiiij d.

Rob*er*tus Large, Maior. Rob*er*tus Marchall / Philippus Malpas { vice*comites* / *anno* xviij° / [A.D. 1439–40]. 28

And in this same yere, and in the yere of g*rac*e Mt CCCC xl., a s*er*u*aun*t þ*at* was with a man of Hakney, .ij. myle from London, come w*ith* his mayst*er* to London, and bought vitayle and must for deynte, forto sende hoom to his wife, for she was grete w*ith* childe. 32 And the fals creature, when he come hoom, slewe þe wife and the child w*ith*in her, and an o*per* damysell and a no*per* yong felawe þ*at* was w*ith*in his hous, and robbed theym of all theire Iewels and tresoure þ*at* they hadde within theym. And so he fledde, and wold 36 haue goon his weye; but God wold not so; for murdour woll comoute; and so he was take and brought to London, and so to West-m*inster*; and þ*er*e he had his dome, to be brought to þe Toure of

[1] *leaf* 217.

London, and *þere* leide on a hirdell, and drawen thurgh the Cite to Tyburn, and *þere* hanged for his falshede.

And anon after in this same yere, þe Cardynall and o*þer*
4 Bisshopp*es*, and the Duke of Norff*olk*, w*ith* all o*þer* lordes, bothe sp*irit*uall and tempo*r*all, had ended theire trete, and made a trewes betwene England and Fr*aun*ce and Flaundres for iij. yere; and thus was this matere ended.

8 And in this same yere, Pope Eugeny, of the high g*rac*e and gifte of God, and of his grete avise and gou*er*nance, conu*er*ted and brought all the land of Grece, and o*þer* pr*o*vynces and kyngdoms, into Cristen lawe and feith, and to hold the lawe and feith of Rome
12 and of the Pope, as we doon at all tymes.

And in this same yere, on the morne after Seint Martyns Day, Kyng Henry the Sext held his p*ar*lement at Westm*inster*, [1] and it endured there vnto Cristmasse next, and myght not acorde. And
16 the morowe after xij. day, the Kyng and his lordes removed it to þe towne of Redyng; and *þere* the p*ar*lement was holden and ended, to the welfare of the King and of the Reame, as we trust and hope in oure Lord God, in tyme comyng.

20 And in this same yere, aboute Cristmasse, went the Erle of Som*er*sett ou*er* the see into Fr*aun*ce and Norm*an*dy, with a roiall peple of lordes, knyght*es*, Squyers, men of armes and archers, forto gou*er*ne there þe Kyng*es* peple and landes, and to strenght the
24 lordes and theire peple *þat* hadde been þere long tyme, savyng and mayntenyng the Kyng*es* right and title.

And in *þis* same yere, the Duchesse of Clarence deyed in the Abbey of Bermondesey without Suthwerk in Surr*e*. And sho was
28 caried to Caunt*er*bury, and buried beside the Lord Thomas hir husbond, which was Duke of Clarence, on whos soule, God haue m*er*cy! amen!

And in this same yer deyed the Countesse of Warwik, and is
32 buried beside hir lord, Sir Richard Beauchamp, Erle of Warwik: on whos soules, God haue m*er*cy! amen!

And this same yere, in the tyme of Lent, come .vj. p*er*sones with theire shippes from byyonde the see, w*ith* dyu*er*s fyssh forto
36 vitayle the Cite of London. And when they were delyu*er*d, and goyng homward, *þer* come a company of fals men, and p*ur*sued theym in a barge, and come vpon theym in the nyght, as þey were aslepe in theire vessel*es* and rode by anker in Tamys, and slewe all

[1] *leaf* 217, *back*.

þat were there in the shippes, and cutte *þeir* throtes and cast theym in the water, and after drowned theire shippes,—and the shippes sank in the water,—for no man shuld espye theire falsnesse. And so, w*ith*in a while after, two of these theves were take and 4 dampned, for theire trespasse, *þat* they brake the Kyng*es* trewes and peas, to be ledde to Seint Kat*er*ins byyonde the Toure of London, and *þer*e a payre of Galowes to be sett vp, and hanged w*ith* cheynes and colers of Iron, till they be wasted and spent. 8 And this was doon on a Friday, in the mornyng, *þe* xix[th] day of Aprell.

And in *þis* same yere, [1]a fuller of Shordiche apeched of treson many worthy men of Kent, bothe Squiers, and o*þer* worthy men of 12 gentelmen; wherof he was atteint, and proved fals of his fals apechement; And so he was brought afore the lawe, and dampned to be drawe and hanged, and his hede smyten of, and sett on London Brigge, and his qu*ar*ter*s* set on .iiij. gates of London: and 16 this was doon the iiij[th] day of Maye.

And in this same yere, Sir Richard Wyche, vicar of Hermondesworth in Midd*lesex*, *þat* somtyme was vicar of Depford in Kent; and oon Rog*er* Norman, of Normandy born, was take and brought 20 before the Bisshop of London, and tofore the clergie, in the Chapitr*e* hous of Seint Paules; and there they bothe were conuicte in heresye. And then there come a writte from the Chaunceller to the Maire and Shirrefs of London, to do execucion on theym; and 24 so they were brought to the Tow*r*e Hill on Seint Botulphes Day, and *þer*e brent, bothe in oon tonne; and thus they ended theire lives in this world. And *þe* peple *þat* sawe theym dye, had grete compassion on theym, for the confession and ende *þat* they made 28 in theire good byleve, and thanked God of his sonde.

And in this same yere, the xij. day of August, *þer* fell such wederyng of rayn, thunder and lightnyng in *þe* after None, *þat* it was hydous, and wonder to se; wherof the peple were sore agast; 32 for the lightnyng fell in Bredstrete, on *þe* Inne *þat* is called the Sterre; and there it did moche harme, for it fell in a hey hous where *þer* was .L. cartfull of heye, and more; and it was all lost and distroyed, and was caried into Chepe; and had not been the 36 high m*er*cy and g*ra*ce of God, and the grete Rayn, the peple dred it shuld haue brent moche of the Cite and destroyed moche good in that p*ar*tye.

[1] *leaf* 218.

Joh*ann*es Paddesle, Maior. Will*elm*us Whetenhale / Joh*ann*es Sutton } vice*comites* *anno* xix° [A.D. 1440–1.]

4 And in this yere, and the yere of g*rac*e M† CCCC xlj, the iiij^th^ day of Nouembr*e*, the Duke of Orliaunce went out of the Reame of England to Caleys, and so forth into Fraunce, and was receyued at Seint Omers of þe Duke [1] of Burgoyne and of the Duchesse his 8 wife, and of many o*þer* lordes, knyght*es* and squyers, and of o*þer* comons of Fraunce; and so he come into his owne lordship.

And in this yere, the xxvj. day of Nouembr*e*, a knyght of Spayne chalenged Sir Richard Wodvyle, knyght, in certeyn poyntes 12 and courses of werre, on foote, w*ith*in listes, w*ith* polax*e*, swerd and dagger. And thys feet was doon in Smythfeld betwene these two knyght*es* well and worthely, and bothe good men and worthy in their dedys of armes. And so the Kyng, of his roiall mageste, 16 cryed 'hoo,' and toke their quarell into his g*rac*ious handes.

And in this same yere, the xvj^th^ day of Maye, the Duke of York, the Erle of Oxenford, the Erle of Ewe, Sir Richard Wodvyle, knyght, w*ith* o*þer* Barons, lordes, knyght*es* and squyers, men of 20 armes and archers, went ou*er* the See w*ith* all good aray, as armour*e* and all o*þer* stuff þ*at* belongeth to werre, to gou*er*ne and kepe the Kynges right in Fr*aun*ce and Normandy, and in all Cuntrees in those p*ar*tyes, to the worship and p*ro*fite of the Kyng and of the 24 Reame of England. And with theym went ou*er* the see the Duchesse of York, the Duchesse of Bedford, the Countesse of Oxenford, the Countesse of Ewe, and many o*þer* mo ladyes w*ith* theire lordes, and other gentelwomen and damysels þ*at* bilonged to theym: 28 Almyghty God gou*er*ne theym all, and kepe in his saufgard! Amen!

And in this same yere, the xv^th^ day of Iuyll, Kyng Henry the vj^th^ come oute of Essex*e* to London, in at the port called Algate, 32 and went ou*er* London Brigge, and so thurgh Suthwerk to his Maner of Kenyngton. And at his comyng in at Algate, the Maire, Aldermen and Comons, in theire best aray, welcomed the Kyng into the Cite; and made grete Ioye of his comyng. And godely 36 the Kyng thanked the Maire and his brethern and all the Comons. And the Kyng was not so sone passed the Cite, bot þ*at* it hayled, rayned and eke lightned, þ*at* well was hym þ*at* was w*ith*in house; and so ayenst even it fared in the same Man*er*, wherof the peple

[1] *leaf* 218, *back*.

were sore agast, and aferd of the grete tempest. And so it was spoken emonges the peple, þat þer were som wikked fendes and spirites arered out of helle by coniuracion, forto noy þe peple in the Reame, and to put theym to trouble, discencion [1] and vnrest. An 4 þen was it knowen þat certeyn clerkes, and women þat ar called 'wicches,' had made theire operacion and theire craft to destroy men and women, or whom they list, vnto deth by theire fals craft and worching. Wherof Dame Alianore Cobham, which was þe 8 Duchesse of Gloucestre, was named principally of these actes and fals dedes forto destroy the Kyng, whom God saue and kepe! Bot as God wold saue his hande-werk and seruaunt, made it be knowen openly, all theire fals werkys and tresoun þat they ymagyned and 12 wroght, which was openly shewed afore all peple þat wold com to Seint Paules Crosse on the Sonday, the xxiij. day of Iuyll, by Roger þat was hir Clerk, a Nigromancier, by the deuels crafte and ymaginacion in his worching, which was shewed openly in þe 16 sermon-tyme, the day aboueseyd, to all peple þat wold come to se it, of here scriptures, ymages of siluer, of wexe, and of oþer metalles, and swerdys, with many oþer dyuers instrumentes of this fals craft of Nigromancy and the devels powere. And þere Roger, this 20 Clerk, stode vpon an high stage, with all his Instrumentes about hym, spoyling of his garment; and did vpon hym a surplyce, with a crowne of papir vpon his hede, forto forsake all his fals craft of the devell, and for to relapse all þat he had doon and wrought by 24 the devyll and his powere, in presence of the Archebisshop of Canterbury, the Cardynall, þe Bisshop of Wynchestre, þe Bisshop of London, the Bisshop of Salesbury, and many oþer grete clerkys beyng there present; and of oþer lordes temporalles, therle of 28 Huntingdon, therle of Northhumberland, and therle of Stafford, and moo oþer lordes of the Kynges Consayl, and the Maire and Aldermen, with þe Comons of the Cite of London, and many moo people of dyuers partyes, and straungers of the Reame, and aliens 32 of oþer straunge landes beyond the see, beyng in þe [2] Cite of London þat tyme.

And on þe Tewesday, which was Seint James Day þe Apostell, Dame Alianore Cobham come out of the seintwary at Westminster 36 into the Kinges Chapell which is within the Kinges paleys, to the high autere of the same Chapell, which is of Seint Stephen, before the principall clergye of the Reame which were þere present, þat is

[1] *leaf* 219. [1] *leaf* 219, *back*.

to sey, the Archebisshop of Caunterbury, primate of all England, the Cardynal of Wynchestre, the Cardynal of York, the Bisshops of London, Bathe, and Salesbury, and of other many principall
4 Clerkes of the Reame which were there present, and examyned Dame Alianore Cobham of xxviij. dyuers poyntes, bothe of felony and of treson, which þey opened and shewed there to hir. And she ansuered to the Clergye, and sayde 'not gilty'; and so they let
8 hir go sauf ageyn to the Seintwary vnto the morowe, þat was Seint Anne day. And thider she come ageyn as she was charged of the Bisshops; and there was Roger hir Clerk, present, and vouched all these poyntes vpon hir þat were shewed the day aboueseyd to hir,
12 wherof she knowleched somme poyntes at that tyme, the nombre of .v.,—and so she went ageyn into Westmynstre for a certeyn tyme tyll þat the Kyng, with his Consayll, wold do correccion and remedy of all this fals actys and dedys, thus ymagyned and doon
16 to his persone, and his lordes and lieges.

And on þe same day the Kyng sent to London to the Maire and Aldermen and Comons of the Cite, and also to therle of Huntingdon, þe Erle of Stafford, therle of Northumberland, the
20 Tresorer of England, Sir Rauf Cromwell, the Lord Fawnehop, Sir Iohn Cornwayle, Sir Walter Hungerford, and oþer knyghtes and Squyers, to fele and see what was to be doon to amende and destroy this fals dede and cursed ymagynacion to the Kyng and to þe
24 Reame. And they, of theire good discrecion and wysedom, as trewe liege peple ordeyned .iiij. enquestes within the Cite, of substantiall peple; to brynge and shewe trewe inquisicion of all crymes and trespasses þat she was accused of. And they found hir
28 gilty bothe [1] of treson and of felony; and so, thurghout Middelsex, the questes were charged at Westminster of knyghtes and Squyers, to brynge in their verdite; and they indited her in the same poyntes, bothe of felony and of treson. And so, the .xj. day of
32 August, Dame Alianore was take into the handes and ward of Sir Iohn Steward and Sir William Wolff, knyghtes, and to oþer persones as the Kyng and his consayle ordeyned and devised to her, and to oþer of hir consayle and affinite, as they haue deserued,
36 after his tyme and leyser; and she to be kept in holde strongly in the Castell of Ledes in Kent, vnto þe wille of the Kyng and of his Consayle, and all þe oþer persones, bothe men, women wicches, and oþer, to be kept in the Toure of London to his likyng, leyser, and

[1] *leaf* 220.

tym to do to theym as they haue deserued. And so, the .xix. day of Octobre next, by the Kynges comaundment, and his Consayl, Sir Iohn Steward, knyght, with strenght of peple, brought Dame Alianore Cobham from the Castell of Ledes to Westminster, into 4 the Kynges paleys; and there she was put and kept in warde of þe Constable vnto hir answere and examynacion. And the Friday next she was brought into Seint Stephens Chapell, called 'the Kynges chapell,' and 'the Kynges college,' afore the Clergye; and 8 þere was examyned of hir sorcery, and wicchecraft and treson. And so all the poyntes were opened and shewed there to hir by certeyn Bisshops and clerkys, þat is to sey: the Bisshop of London, þe Bisshop of Lincoln, the Bisshop of Salesbury, and the Bisshop 12 of Norwiche, with moo oþer doctours and maysters of diuinite, beyng þere present. And then she withneyed and withseyd all the poyntes þat were put and shewed to hir þat tyme. And than she had respite and day of ansuere till the Monday next. And þere 16 she come ageyn to the same chapell, tofore all the Clergye and Bisshops and doctours, and maystres of diuinite. And then come Roger, hir Clerk, with all his Instrumentes þat were shewed at Seint Paules Crosse aforetyme, and they were shewed to Dame 20 Alianore Cobham; and she withneyed, and seyd 'it was not so; bot þat she did it forto haue borne a child [1] by hir lord, the Duke of Gloucestre,' and þere was Maister Thomas Suthwell, parson of Seint Stephens in Walbroke, and Chanon of þe Kynges Chapell, 24 þat was of hir craft and consayle ayenst hir; and the wicche of Eye, beside Westminster, ayenst Dame Alianore Cobham; and seid þat she was causer and doer of all this werk and dede; And so they were all put vp ageyn as for that tyme. And the xxvj^th^ day 28 of Octobre next suyng, deyed the seid Mayster Thomas Suthwell, in the Toure of London. And the Friday next, the wicche of Eye was brought from the Towre of London into Smythfeld, and there brent for hir fals beleve and wicchecraft þat she had vsed of longe 32 tyme.

Robertus Clopton, Maior. — Willelmus Combes, Ricardus Riche — vicecomites — anno xx° [A.D. 1441–42.] 36

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M^l^CCCC xlij., the vj. day of Novembre, the Archbisshop of Canterbury and the .ij. Cardynalles of Wynchestre and of York, and þe Bisshops of

[1] *leaf* 220, *back*.

London, Lincoln, Salesbury and Norwiche, w*ith* dyu*er*s doctors and maistres of diuinite, deuorsed and departed the Duke of Gloucestr*e* and Dame Alianore Cobh*a*m, as for matrymony made
4 before betwene theym two. And so Dam Alianore Cobh*a*m, by ordyn*aun*ce and charge of the Archebisshop of Cant*er*bury and his brethern, was Joyned to hir pen*aun*ce for þe grete offence and trespasse þ*at* she had doon ayenst God and holy Chirche, and for
8 the fals sorcery and wicchecraft þ*at* she vsed and longe tyme had wrought, þ*at* she shuld go from Westm*inster* to London .iij. market dayes in the weke, Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, w*ith* a taper brennyng in her hande: oon to Seint Paules, an other to
12 Cristchirch, and þe thridde to Seint Michell*es* in Cornhill. And the Monday, the xiijth day of Nouemb*re*, Dame Alianore Cobh*a*m come by water from Westm*inster* to the Temple brigge, forto do hir charge of penance, on fote thurgh Fletestrete [1] to Seint Paules;
16 and þ*er*e she offred hir first taper. And the Wednesday next she come from Westm*inster* by Water to the Swanne in Tamystrete, and come on fote w*ith* a taper in hir hande, and come vp Tamystrete to Seint Magnus corn*er*, and vp Briggestrete, and Eschepe and
20 Graschirch, and so to the Corn*er* of Leden-Hall, and so to Cristchirch; and there offred the secund taper. And the Friday next, she come from Westm*inster* by water to the Quene-Hithe, and so vp þurgh Bredstrete into Chepe; and thurgh Chepe into Cornhill,
24 to Seint Michell*es* chirch, and þere offred a tap*er* of a pound wex*e*; And then was she brought ageyn to Westm*inster*, into the Constable-ward.

And the Seturday next, þe xvij. day of Nouembr*e*, Roger
28 Bultyngbrok, Dame Alianore Cobh*a*ms Clerk of Nigromancy and sorcery, was brought to the Guyldhall of London, and þ*er*e dampned for his fals treson, and for his fals tresoun, and sorcery and Nigromancy ayenst all holy Chirch; wherthurgh he was dampned
32 to deth by landes lawe. And he was ledde to the Toure of London, and leyd vpon a hirdell, and drawen thurgh the Cite to Tybo*ur*ne galowes, and þ*er*e hanged, and let downe ageyne all quyk, and his bowell*es* cutte out of his body, and brent afore hym. And then was
36 his hede smyten of, and his body q*uartered*; and oon sent to Oxenford, the secund sent to Cambrigge, the thridde to Bristowe, and the fourth to [ ][2]; and his hede was set vpon London Brigge: and þus he ended his life in þis world.

[1] *leaf* 221. [2] Blank space left in MS.

And Dame Alianore Cobham yet kept in warde in þe Constablery of Westm*inster*, vnto the Wednesday, the xxiiij. day of Ianuare; and then she was brought thens to þe Maner of Neyte, which is the Abbot*es* of Westm*inster*; and þere she was kept 4 Wednesday, Thursday, and Friday till noon. And when she was brought first out of Westm*inster*, þ*er*e was such wedryng of thonder, lightnyng, hayll and rayne, þ*at* the peple were sore adredde and agast of the grete noyse and hydous of þe weder, [1] þ*at* sodenly was 8 doon and shewed þ*er*e at theire passage at þat tyme. And on the Friday at after-None, she was had at the Kyng*es* comaun*d*ment and wille, forth to the Cite of Chestre, in an hors-bere, with strenght of peple; and fro Chestre into þe Ile of Man, to be kept þ*er*e in sauf 12 gard, etc.

And in this same yere was a batell doon, the xxx^th^ of Ianuare, in Smythfeld, betwene .ij. worthy men, and bold in armes and fight: þ*at* oon men called Sir Philipe Beef, a knyght of Cateloyne; 16 and on þat oþ*er* party, a Squyere of þe Kyng*es* of England, þ*at* men called Iohn Astley. And at þe comyng to þe feld, eyþ*er* of theym toke theire tent; and then was þe knyght*es* son of Cateloyne brought to the Kyng, and the Kyng made hym knyght; and then he was 20 brought ageyn to his faders tent. And then, w*ith*in a while after, the heraudes of armes called theym bothe oute, to do their fight; and so þey come in bothe armed w*ith* all theire wepen about theym; bot the knyght come w*ith* his swerd drawe, and the Squyere w*ith* 24 his spere. And the Squyer cast his spere to þe knyght; and the knyght avoyded it w*ith* the swerd, and cast it to the ground; and the Squyer hent his axe, and went to the knyght at onys, and smote many strokes hard and sore vpon his Basenet and on his 28 hande, and made hym lese his axe. And it fell from hym to þe grounde, and brast vp his vmbrere .iij. tymes, and kaught his daggere, and wold haue smyten hym in the face forto haue slayne hym in the feld. And then the Kyng cryed 'hoo!' and so they 32 were dep*ar*ted; and eyþ*er* of theym went hoom ageyn to his tent. And then the Kyng sent for his squyere Iohn Astley, and made hym to be dubbed knyght, for his worthy and good Iou*r*ney þ*at* he did and wrought at þ*at* tyme on his enemy in his noble presence, 36 etc.

And in this same yere, the xviij^th^ day of Maye, began a huge storme of sodeyn wederyng, anon after .iij. of þe clok at after-None,

[1] *leaf* 221, *back*.

vnto .vj. of the clok, of hayle, rayne, thundre and lightnyng, þat the peple wondred þervpon. And þe hayle bete doun all the blossomes of trees, þat the frute was all goon for this yere, at
4 London and aboute London, for þe multitude of watere [1] þat come of þe hayle and rayne.

And in this yere, the xxv day of Maye, the Lord Talbot toke his iourney fro London toward Normandy and Fraunce, for to help
8 to gouerne and kepe vnder the Duke of York, the partyes byyond the sce, with knyghtes, Squyers, men of armes and archers, and all maner stuff þat longed to werre: which, Almyghty God gouerne, save, and kepe, and all þe Kynges trewe peple, bothe in that party
12 and in oures! And er he toke his iourney out of this lande, þe Kyng made the Lord Talbot, Erle of Shrovesbury, and his son and heire Lord Talbot.

16 Johannes Atherley, Maior. Thomas Beaumond, Ricardus Nordon } vicecomites anno xxj° [A.D. 1442–43.]

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M† CCCC xliij., þe Tewesday the xiiij. day of Maye, oon Botiler Steynour, and a
20 Baker, and two oþer men and a preest, which were strong, errant theves, robbyng and quellyng the Kynges peple, were dampned at Westminster to be ledde in a Cart standyng vpright from the Kynges Benche in Suthwerk, and so thurgh the Cite of London,
24 tyll they come to Tyburn, and there to be hanged. And so they deyed, all .v. persones; and at the comyng of þem into the Cart, þere fell suche wedryng from the skye, þat folke were sore adredde and agast, it was so horrible and grete, what of rayne, thondere and
28 lightnyng and hayll, in theire passage to þe deth. And on the Tewesday next suyng, two strong theves, and a woman thefe, were hanged at Tyborn for theire fals offences and trespasseȝ, and murdryng of the Kynges peple.

32 And in this same yere, þe Monday next folowyng, the woman of Kent þat met with the Kyng at þe Blak-Heth in Kent, and spake to hym boldly, and reviled hym vngoodly and vnwisely for Dame Alianore Cobham, þat he shuld haue hir hoom ageyn to hir
36 husbond, the Duke of Gloucestre. And with these wordes the Kyng wexe wroth, and toke it to hert; and [2] she was arested and brought into prison by the lawe, and so broght to Westminster afore the Iusticeȝ of the Kynges Benche. And þere she was repreved

[1] *leaf* 222. [2] *leaf* 222, *back*.

for hir vngoodly langage, and fole-hardynesse to speke so to hir liege lorde, the Kyng. And she ansuered not, bot asked the Kyng*es* g*r*ace. And fro þ*at* day she was put vp ageyn in the Kyng*es* Benche till Wednesday next, and then was brought ageyn 4 to Westm*inster* afore the Iustices. And when she was examyned, she wold not speke ne ansuer*e*; and þ*er*fore þe Iustic*es* gafe hir dome, þ*at* she shuld stand in a cart vpright, from the Kyng*es* Benche, and so thurgh London, þ*at* all peple myght se hir, w*ith* a 8 paupir*e* about hir hede, of hir proude and lewed langage þ*at* she had spoke and shewed to þe Kyng. And so she was caryed ageyn þurgh London and Suthwerk, in þe same Cart, tyll she come to þe Blak-Heth þ*er*e as she seide these wordes vnto þe King; and then 12 was caryed ageyn to Suthwerk, and delyu*er*d ageyn to þe kepers of þe Kynges Benche, for to haue hir Iugement as þe Iuge had ordeyned it for her offence, forto lay as moche yron vpon hir body till she be deed: and thus she ended in this world, for hir proude 16 langage to hir Kyng and sou*er*ayn lord.

And in this yere the Kyng made the Erle of Som*er*set, Markes— Dorsett, and ordeyned hym w*ith* a grete Navy of peple, of lordes, knyght*es*, Squyers, men of armes and archers; w*ith* all man*er* stuff 20 of werre, forto gou*er*ne, kepe and mayntene his landes in Fraunce, Normandy, and Guyan. And he abode longe tyme after in England, vpon the coost*es*, to abide for shipping and peple þ*at* were not come to hym. And so, the xxj. day of Iuyll, he toke his 24 shipping ou*er* the see into Fraunce and Normandy, w*ith* his Retenew in good aray and in good spede, þurgh the grace of God and his Moder, oure Lady Seint Mary, and by the comfort of Seint George. And in this yere, the vj. day of August, Gyles, the Duk*es* 28 broder of Bretayn, come to London, and so to þe Kyng, as for his sou*er*ayn lord and best beloued frende, forto play and sporte hym here in this lande, for a tyme, [1] and bysought þe Kyng of his grace and good lordship at all tymes. And so he and his were loeged at 32 the Crowne in Fanchirch Strete, for the tyme of his abidyng here, and of the Kynges grace and gode wille.

Thomas Catworth, Maior. Nicho*la*us Wyfold / Joh*an*nes Norman { *vicecomites* / *anno* xxij^do^ / [A.D. 1443–44.] } 36

And in this same yere, and the yere of g*r*ace Mt CCCC xliiij^ti^, anon after Ester, the Duke of Som*er*set come out of Fr*a*unce and

[1] *leaf* 223.

Normandy into England, and deyed at a Maner of his owne in the west cuntre: vpon whos soule, God haue mercy! amen!

And in þis same yere, on the Wednesday in the Whitson weke,
4 þe Kyng made the Erle of Huntyngdon, Duke of Excestre, in the Castell of Wyndesore; and in the fest of the Exaltacion of the Holy Crosse next folowyng, the Kyng made the Erle of Stafford, Duke of Bokyngham, and the Erle of Suffolk, Markeys of Suffolk
8 and of Norffolk.

And in this same yere, the ambassiatours come out of Fraunce, and oþer partyes byyonde the see, vnto the Kyng, for a mariage for hym, which was a worthy Kynges doughter, þat is called
12 Kyng of Cisile and of Ierusalem. And then the Kyng sent his ambassiatours ouer the see, which was þe Markes of Suffolk, with oþer lordes, Clerkys, knyghtes and Squiers, out of England, to knowe of this worthy mariage, and forto make a finall peas betwene
16 the Reames of England and Fraunce.

And in this yere, the xxijth day of August, Iohn Kerver of Redyng, gentleman, vntruely and vngoodly, and ayenst feith and lawe, depraued the Kyng; wherfore he was take and brought
20 before þe Kynges Consayle, and þere examyned of his vngodely speche and wordes. And he ansuered, and knowleched hym gilty; wherfore the Kynges Consayle Juged hym to deth as a traytour. And this was his full dome: þat he shuld be ledde ageyn to the
24 towne of Redyng, and drawen and hanged, and let downe ageyn all quyk, and then brought ageyn to þe Cite of London, to þe Toure, and from [1] thens drawen to Tyborn galowes, and hanged, and let down ayen all quyk, and then bowayled and quartered, and his
28 bowayls brent, and þen his hede smyt of, and set on London Brigge; and oon quartere to be set vp at Redyng, and the oþer in dyuers townes in þe Reame. And then the Kyng, of his grete grace and mercy, sent in all haste his Charter of pardon of his
32 offence and trespasse þat he had doon ayenst his persone, and so delyuerd hym quyte, and sent hym to Redyng in sauf garde.

And then the xxv. day of Maye next suyng, þe Kyng of Cisyll and of Ierusalem, with the Quene his wife, brought with theym
36 Dame Margaret theire doughter, to þe Cite of Toures in Turyn, in Fraunce, and þere met the Kyng of Fraunce and the Quene his wife. And the Kyng of Fraunce toke the Kyng of Cisill and of Ierusalem by the hande; and so they yede forth togeder; and the

[1] *leaf* 223, *back.*

Quene of Fraunce toke the Quene of Cisill and of Ier*usa*lem by the hande, and so they yede forth togeder thurgh the Cite till they come to the chief Chirch of þe Cite of Tours in Tureyn. And then come this Dame M*ar*garete as for Quene of England, and ledde 4 betwene the Dolphyn of Fr*au*nce and an-o*þer* grete Prince of Fr*au*nce; and they ledde Dame M*ar*garet to þe chief Chirche, which is of Seynt Martyn, w*ith* .vij. dukes and .xiiij. Erles, w*ith* o*þer* grete lordes and ladyes folowing theym, into the same Chirche. 8 And þen come þe Markeys of Suff*olk*, and all þe o*þer* ambassatours of England. And *þer*e Dame M*ar*garet made suraunce to þe Markeis of Suffolk, and principally to the Kyng of England, and to all these ambassatours; and she was made *þer*e Quene of England. 12 And þe Markeis of Suff*olk* and þe o*þer* ambassiatours made surance to Dame M*ar*garet, in presence of þe kynges and quenes, dukes, Erles, lordes and ladyes, and also in p*re*sence of a legate of Rome there beyng at *þat* tyme. And then the Dolphyn and the o*þer* 16 prince[s] ledde Dame M*ar*gerete, as Quene of England, to þe place *þat* was ordeyned for hyr worship at that tyme, and these kynges, and þese .ij. quenes folowyng theym, w*ith* all the dukes, Erles, lordes and ladyes, w*ith* þe ambassiatours of England. And *þer*e 20 Quene M*ar*garete was set in þe [1] myddes of the halle, as principall of this fest, and ryally by hir oone, as Quene of England. And these .ij. o*þer* quenes were at a table togedir vpon the right side of Quene M*ar*garete. And lordes and ladyes were worthely served 24 thurgh all the Court; and all þe peple of comons *þat* folowed theym had grete chere of mete and drynke; and they made ioye and myrth, and song (all with high voyce) Nowell! Nowell! Nowell! and peas, peas, peas be to vs! Amen! 28

Henricus Frowyk, Maior. Steph*an*us Forster / Hugo Wyche. { vice*comites* / *anno* xxiij^cio / [A.D. 1444–45.]

And in this same yere, and the yere of g*ra*ce M^t.CCCC. xlv., 32 þe vj^th day of Nouembre, whan all man*er* stuff of ordyn*au*nce was made and doon for the Quenes comyng into England, *þat* is to sey, mete, hors, harnesse, chares, w*ith* all stuff *þat* belonged to theym,—and þen þe Markeis of Suff*olk* and þe lady his wife, w*ith* o*þer* 36 ladyes and gentelwomen, lordes, knyght*es* and squyers, and all o*þer* s*er*uitou*r*s *þat* bylonged to theym, and to þe ordyn*au*nce, for oure Kynges honure and worship went out of London to þe see-costes,

[1] *leaf* 224.

forto shippe theym and all theire ordyn*aun*ces, forto mete w*ith* Quene M*ar*garet and w*ith* hir company, beyng in Fraunce, and condite hir into England in sauf gard to hir lord, Kyng Henry of
4 England and Fraunce, by the gift and g*ra*ce of oure Lord Ih*es*u Crist. Amen!

And in this yere, the first day of Februar*e*, was grete wedryng of wynde, hayle, snowe, rayne, thunder and lightnyng, at the after-
8 None; and it endured iiij. oures; and it did grete harme to þe Cite of London, for it brent Seint Paules grete steple, bothe on þe west syde and on þe south syde. And þe peple espied þe fyre, and come to Seint Paules forto quenche the fyre in þe steple. And goodly
12 they laboured, and quenched þe fyre as ferre as they kouth serche and fynde. And it was quenched w*ith* vyneger. And so the Maire herd of this grete hurte, and come w*ith* grete peple to Seint Paules, to here and se how it stode there, and to help þem, if nede
16 had been. And þen þe peple w*ith*drowe theym, and went hoom ageyn, and trusted to God it had been in rest and peas.

And then anon after, betwene viij. and ix. of þe clok, þe fyre brast [1] oute ageyn of the steple, more feruent þen it did before, and
20 did moche harme to the lede and tymber of the steple. And anon come þe Mayre and moche peple, and w*ith* vynyger, and staunched þe fyre þat was right fervent,—blessed be God of all his giftes! Amen! And þen after, at the Ledenhall in Cornhill of London, a
24 standard of tre was set in myddys of the pavement fast in the grounde, nayled w*ith* holme and Ive, for disport of Cristmasse to þe peple of the Cite. And it was þ*a*t tyme torne vp and cast downe w*ith* þe malign spirite, and the stones of the pavement all about
28 cast in þe strete to dyu*er*s houses, so þ*a*t the peple were sore agast of the grete fervent tempest*es* þat shewed that tyme.

And in this yere, the xviijth day of Feuerer*e*, þ*er*e was a bataylle ordeyned in Smythfeld, and set to fight w*ith*in lystes for life and
32 deth, betwene Thomas Fitz-Thomas, Pryour*e* of Kylmayn in Ireland, which appeled Sir Iames Botiller*e*, Erle of Ormond, of treson þ*a*t he did in þe Cuntre of Ireland ayenst hym. And this Priour*e* withdrowe hym, and come not to batayle, where thurgh, as
36 leude, he was convict. And the Erle of Ormond was redy in his tent to ansuer*e* hym; bot the Priour*e* come not.

And in this yere, the .xxiij. day of Feu*er*er*e*, the Kyng held his p*ar*lement at Westm*inster*, to Archbisshops, bisshops, abbot*es*

[1] *leaf* 224, *back*.

and Priours, and to dukes, Erles, lordes and Barons, knyght*es*, squyers, and to Citezens, Burgeises, and comons. And this p*ar*lement endured vnto Palme-Sonday; and then it was adio*ur*ned by þe King, and his Consayle of his lordes of the p*ar*lement, vnto the 4 fest of Seint George was passed. And then, the .xxix^th^ day of Aprell, þe p*ar*lement bygan ageyn at Westm*in*ster w*it*h archbisshops and o*þer* lordes, as is beforeseid.

And in this same yere, about Midlent, they brought Quene 8 M*ar*garet out of high, douce Fra*u*nce, into the p*ar*tyes of Normandy by hir frendes; and the Frenssh p*ar*tye was there as well as þe Englissh lord*es*, and abode hir w*it*h theire peple, w*it*h all worship and reue*r*ence þ*at* myght be doon in worship and reue*r*ence of oure 12 Kyng. And so þey brought hir into the Cite of Roan in sauf garde; and þ*er*e she abode vnto þe fest of Este*r*e and lenger, by .xiiij. dayes, w*it*h these lordes and ladys of England, þ*at* is to say, the Duke of York, the Duchesse his wife, þe Markes of Suffolk, the 16 lady his wife, the Erle of Shrovesbury, þe Countesse his wife, w*it*h o*þer* lordes and ladyes þ*at* abode in Fraunce and Normandy, w*it*h knyght*es*, squyers, men of armes and archers, þ*at* abode þ*er*e to kepe [1] the Kynges right in all landes of the p*ar*tyes in Fraunce and 20 Normandy.

And then, after hir restyng þ*er*e in þe Cite, she was conueyed to þe towne of Houndflete by lande, þ*er*e to haue shipping to com into England to hir lord þe Kyng, hir husband; and w*it*h hir come 24 the Markeys of Suffolk, w*it*h lordes and ladys, knyght*es*, squyers, and gentelwomen, men of armes and archers, and o*þer* peple, and brought M*ar*garete sauf into the Reame of England. And she landed at þe towne of Hampton; and þ*er*e she was worthely 28 receyued of þe peple of Hampton and of þe peple of the Cuntre aboute, w*it*h all reue*r*ence and worship þ*at* they couthe do. And after, oure Kyng come, and met with Dame M*ar*garete, the Quene, and brought hir to an abbey in þe newe Forest, þ*at* men calle þe 32 abbey of [ ][2]; and there þe Kyng was wedded to Dame M*ar*garete the Quene, w*it*h the Bisshop of Salesbury þ*at* men called Maister William Ascu. And then the Kyng and his lordes dep*ar*ted from hir, and then met þe Cardinall of Wynchestre w*it*h 36 the Quene, and co*n*ueyed hir w*it*h all reue*r*ence and hono*ur*e þ*at* he kouth do, to a Maner of his; and there she abode all nyght w*it*h all hir peple. And there was doon grete chere, w*it*h chargeable

[1] *leaf* 225. [2] Blank space left in MS.

costes, to hir and to all the peple þat come w*ith* hir þat tyme, in reu*e*rence and worship of þe Kyng. And so Quene M*a*rgaret was co*n*veyed in the Cuntreyes of Sussex*e* and Surr*e* till she come to þe Archbisshop of Cant*er*buryes Man*er* in Croydon, in Surr*e*; and there she rested hir all nyght w*ith* grete worship and reu*e*rence, and w*ith* all the chere þat myght be doon to hir p*er*sone as for þat tyme. And on þe morowe after, she went to þe Man*er* of Eltham; and þ*er*e she restid her after hir grete io*ur*nay and t*ra*vayle .viij. dayes, till she wold com to se the Cite of London.

And þe Friday, þe xxvj*th* day of Maye, the Mayre of London, w*ith* the aldermen and Shirrefs and comons of the Cite rode to þe Blake-Heth in Kent; and þere they abode and hoved on horsbak vnto the Quenes comyng. And so they come w*ith* hir to London; and she was brought to þe Toure of London; and þere she rested hir all nyght. And þ*er*e the Kyng, at the reu*e*rence of þe Quene, and the first comyng, made .xlvj. Knyght*es* of the Bath. And þen on þe morowen at after None, the Quene come from the Toure in a hors-bere, w*ith* .ij. stedes trapped all in white damask poudred w*ith* gold; and so was the vesture þat she had on; and þe pylowes and all þe bere in oon sute; and hir here combed downe about hir shulders, w*ith* a coronall of gold, riche p*er*les and precious stones, w*ith* all lordes on horsbak, and ladyes in chares, þat is to sey, xix. chares of ladyes and theire [1] gentelwomen, and all the craftes of the Cite of London goyng*e* on fote in theire best aray vnto Seint Paules. And by þe wey, as she come þurgh þe Cite, there were shewed and made many devises and storyes, w*ith* angeles and oþ*er* hevenly thinges, w*ith* songe and melody in dyu*er*s places; and þe condites ran wyne, bothe white and rede, for all peple þat wold drynk. And then she was had oute of þe bere, and went on fote vp to þe high auter of Seint Paules; and þ*er*e she offred, and come oute ageyn to the bere at the west dore of Seint Paules; and so she passed forth till she come to Westm*inster*, w*ith* lordes and ladys, and w*ith* the Maire and Aldermen and Comons of þe Cite of London. And there they toke theire leve, and went hoom ageyn.

And on þe morowe, þat was Sonday, þe .xxx. day of Maye, was þe Coronacion and fest rially and worthely holden at Westm*inster* in þe Kynges palays; and iij. dayes after, hold open Iustes and revell w*ith*in þe seintwary, of lordes, knyght*es*, and oþ*er* þat wold com at þe reu*e*rence of this fest royal.

[1] *leaf* 225, *back*.

And in this yere, þe .xvij. day of Iuyll, come þe ambassatours of Fr*au*nce to London, forto trete for peas betwene England and Fr*au*nce, þ*at* is to say, the Archbisshop of Reynes, þe Erle of Gudo*a*m,[1] w*ith* o*per* lordes, knyght*es*, squyers and clerkes of Fr*au*nce, by the grace of God for a fynal peas.

Simon Eyre, Maior. Johannes Derby, Galfrid Feldyng } vice*comites* anno xxiiij^to^ [A.D. 1445–46.]

[1] ? MS. Gudo*a*m, Eudo*a*m, Endo*a*m.

[G]

FROM THE CAPTURE OF ROUEN (1419) TO THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD IV (1461).

[*Addit. MS., Brit. Mus.* 10,099, *leaf* 181.]

How þe king of Englond, Henry þe v^te^,[1] was made heritier & Regent of Fraunce, & how he weddid Quene Katerine. ca. ccxlv.[2]

4 Anone[3] after þat Rone was goten, Depe, & many other townes in baas Normandie yafe þeme ouer with-out stroke or siege, when þei vnderstode þat þe Kyng had goten Rone. Also þis same yere had bene A pees made & sworen bitwen þe Duke of Burgoyne &
8 þe Dolphyn, which wer sworne vpon[4] our Lordes body þat þei[5] shold love & Assist eche other ayenst þer enmyse. [6]And after þis, contrary to þis othe, þe Duke Iohn of Burgoyn was slayn & pitousely murthred in[7] presence of þe Dolphyn; wherfor þe Frensh
12 men wer gretly devided, & of veray necessite labored to haue A traitie with þe King of Englond, ffor þe King of Englond wan dayly of þame, townes, casteles & fortresses. Also þis same yere was Quene Iane Arested & brought to þe Castel of Ledys in Kent,
16 and one, frere Randolf, A doctour of Divinitie, hir confessor, which afterward was slayn by þe person of þe Tour falling at wardes & debate. And after Quene Iane was delyuered, In[8] þe vij^te^ yeer, bothe þe[9] kinges of Englond & of Fraunce[10] wer Accorded; &
20 Kynge Henry was made Heir & Regent of France, & wedded dame Kateryn, þe Kyng of Fraunce Doughter,[11] at Troyes in Champayn, on Trinite Sonday. And þis was made bi þe mean of Philipp, newly made Duke of Burgoyn, which was sworn to
24 King Henry for tavenge his fadre deth, & was become Englissh. And þan þe King, with his new wife, went to Paris, wher he was rially receyved. And fro thens he, with his lordes & þe Duke of Burgoyn, & many other lordes of Fraunce, laid seige to diuerse

[1] henry þe v^te^ *om.* HC. [2] ca. ccxlv. *om.* H.
[3] And A non H. and anone C. [4] of H. [5] þe H.
[6] *leaf* 181, *back.* [7] in *þe* H. in the C. [8] Also H. [9] þe *om.* C.
[10] kynges of fraunce & of Englond C.
[11] þe kinges Doughter of fraunce H. the kynges doughter of fraunce C.

townes & Castels þat held of þe Dolphyns part, & wan þam; bot
þe town[1] of Melun held long, for *per*-in was gode defenders.

In þe viij yere of his regn,[2] þe King & Quene came ou*er* þe[3]
see, & landed on Candelmasse day in þe morow, at Dov*er*; and [the] 4
xiiij[4] day of Feu*er*yere, þe King com to London; & þe xxi day
of þe same moneth þe Quene come thid*er*[5]; And þe[6] xxiiij day
of the same,[7] she was crowned at Westmynst*er*. Also þe same
yeer, Anon after Ester, þe King held a p*ar*lement at Westm*ynster*, 8
at which[8] it was ordeyned *þat* þe gold in Englissh coygne shuld
be weyed, & none receyved but by weght. And Anone aft*er*
Wittsontyde, þe King sayled to[9] Caleys, & so forth passed[10] in-to
Fraunce. And in Marche, þe xxij day, before þe King come ou*er*, 12
þe Duke of Clarence was slayn in Fra*un*ce, diu*er*se[11] other lord*es*
take p*ri*soners, as þerl of Hu*n*tyngdon, þerle of Som*er*sett, w*ith*
diu*er*se other: & al was because þei wold not take Archers w*ith*
þam,[12] bot thought to haue do[13] w*ith* þe Frensshmen þer[14] self, 16
w*ith*out [15] thame. And[16] yett, when he was slayn, þe Archiers
come & rescued þe body of þe Duke, which þei wold have caried
w*ith* þame: God haue m*er*cy of[17] his soul; for[18] he was A valiant
man! And[19] þe same yeer, bitwene C*r*iste'mas & Candelmas, 20
þe town of Melun was yholden to þe Kynge.

In[20] þe ix yere of his regn,[21] vpon[22] saynt Nicholas Day in
Dece*m*ber, was borne Henry, þe Kyng*es* first begoten son[23] at
Windesore, whose god-fadres at fou*n*t-stone was Henry, Bisshop 24
of Wynchestr*e*, & Iohn, Duke of Bedford; & þe Duches of
Holande was[24] god-moder; And Henry Chicheley,[25] Erchebisshop
of Cant*er*bury, was[26] god-fad*er* at co*n*firmyng. And in þe x yere
of his regn,[21] þe Cite of Mewes, in Brie,[27] was goten, which hadd 28
bene longe besegied. And þis same yeer þe Queen shipped at
Hampton, and sayled ou*er* to þe King in Fra*un*ce, wher she was
worsshypfully receyved of þe King, & also of þe Kynge of
Fraunce, hir fadir, & of hir modir. And thus Kinge Henry wan 32

[1] tour H. [2] of his regn *om.* HC. [3] þe *om.* HC.
[4] xiiij Ad. the xiiij C. [5] thider *om.* HC. [6] þe *om.* H.
[7] same moneth H. [8] which p*ar*leme*n*t H. which p*er*lement C.
[9] sayld in to H. [10] & passed so forth HC.
[11] & many H. and diuerse C.
[12] take w*ith* þame Archers H. take with hem Archers C. [13] do *om.* H.
[14] them HC. [15] *leaf* 182. [16] Bot H. [17] on C. [18] for *om.* HC.
[19] in An) And H. [20] And in H. [21] of his regn *om.* HC.
[22] on HC. [23] henry the king*es* fyrst begoten son was born H.
[24] hys H. [25] Chicheley the H. [26] was hys H.
[27] in Brie *om.* H.

fast in Fraunce, & held gret Astate, & satte at Dyner at A gret
feste in Parys, crowned, & þe Queen also, which had nat ben
seen to[1]-fore; And al[2] peple resorted vnto his court. But as
4 for[3] þe Kyng of Fraunce, he held none Astate ne reule, but was
left almoste Allone.

Also þis yeer þe weder-cokk was sett vpon Poules staple at
London.[4] And þis yeer, in[5] þe moneth of Auguste, þe Kyng
8 wex sike at Boys de Vincent. And when he saw he shold dye,
he made his testament, and ordeyned many thinges nobley for
his soul, And Devoutly receyved al þe rightes of holy churche,
in so fer-forth, þat[6] whan he[7] was enoynted, he said þe seruice with
12 þe preste; And at þe verse of þe psalme 'Miserere mei deus' þat
was "Benigne fac dunc in bona voluntate tua, Syon, ut edificentur
muri Ierusalem," he bad tarie þer, and said þus: "O good Lorde,
þou knowest þat[8] myne entent hath bene, & yet is,[9] if I might
16 lyve, to reedify þe walles of Ierusalem." & þen þe preest proceded
forth, & made An end; & Anone aftre, þis moste noble prince &
victoriouse kynge, flour in his tyme of Cristen chiualrie, whom al
þe[10] world dovpted, gaf his soul in-to þe handes of God, & died,
20 & made An end of his naturel lif, at þe said Bois de Vincent
beside [11] Parys, þe xxxvj yere of his Age: on whose soul, God
haue mercy![12] þan was þe body enbawmed & cered, & laid in A
rial chare, & an ymage like unto him was leyd vpon þe corps,
24 open, with diuerse baners & horse couered rychely with[13] Armes[14]
of Englond & Fraunce,[15] and also[16] tholde Armes of seynt Edwardes,
seynt Edmond, & oþer, And with gret multitude of torches; with
whome went þe Kyng[17] of Scotland, & many oþer lordes,[18] which
28 accompayned þe body til it come to[19] Westmynster, bi London, in
Englond. And in euery town by þe way he had solempny his Dirige
on þe evyn, & masse on þe morne[20]; & moche Almesse was giffen
to[21] þe[22] pore peple bi þe way. And þe vij^te day of Nouembre after,
32 þe corps was brought to[23] London with[24] gret reuerence & solemp-
nice,[25] & had[26] to Westmynster, wher he[27] now lieth: it was

[1] A H. [2] all the H. [3] to C.
[4] was sett up a poulys steple at london the wethercok H.
[5] in *om.* H. [6] þai Ad. that C. [7] þat whan he *om.* H. [8] wel H.
[9] is yett H. [10] this H. [11] *leaf* 182, *back.*
[12] mercy Amen HC. [13] with the H. [14] tharmes C.
[15] & Fraunce *om.* H. [16] also *om.* H.
[17] kyng HC. ũyng Ad. (scribe's blunder). [18] lordes the H.
[19] vn to C. [20] morow H. [21] vnto H. [22] þe *om.* C.
[23] thurgh H. through C. [24] was H. [25] *for* solempnite?
[26] & had *om.* HC. [27] he *om.* H.

worshipfully[1] buried; & aft*er*, was[2] leyd on his tumbe A rial ymage like to him-self, of silu*er* & gylt, which was made at þe[3] cost of Quene Kat*er*ine. And thus ended, & was[4] enteired & buried, þe noble King Henry þe Fyft: on whose soul,[5] God have 4 m*er*cy![6]

Of þe lawds of King Henry þe Fyft, & what he ordeyned for Kyng Richard & for him self aft*er* his deth. Ca*pitulu*m CC xlvj.[7] 8

HEre is to be noted þ*a*t þis King Henry þe Fyft, was A noble p*r*ince aft*er* he was King & crowned. how-be-it, tofore[8] in his youth he had bene wilde &[9] recheles, & spared nothing of his lustes &[10] desires; but Acco*m*plisshed þam) aft*er* his lykyngs; but as sone as he 12 was crowned, enoynted & sacred,[11] Anon) sodenly he was chau*n*ged into A new man), & sett al his entent to lyve vertuously, in mayntenyng of holy church, destroyng of heretikes, keping Iustice, & defending of his Ream*e* and[12] s*u*bgect*e*s. And for-as-myche as his 16 fad*er* had deposed by his labour[13] þe[14] gode King Richard, & pitousely made him to dye, & for þe offense done to hym Ayens his legeance, he had sent to Rome to be Assoiled þ*er*-of, for which offense, our holy fad*er* [the] Pope[15] enioned hym to 20 make him be p*r*ayed-for p*er*petuelly, &, like as he gert[16] be taken from him his[17] naturel lyfe, þ*er*for he shold do fynd iiij tapers to bren) p*er*petuelly Aboute his body, þ*a*t, for þe extinccion of his bodely life, his soul may[18] be reme*m*bred and lyve in heven 24 in sp*irit*uel lufe; & also þat he[19] sholde, eu*er*y weke, on þe day as it cometh About of his deth, have A solempn) masse of Requiem on þe Eveyn), to-fore A dirige w*ith* ix lessons, and A dole to poure peple[20] al-wey on þ*a*t day, of[21] xj^{s} viij^{d}, to be delyd pe*n*ny 28 mele. At[22] ones in þe yere, at his Anniu*er*sarie, his entierment to be holden) in þe moste honest wise; & to be delyd þ*a*t day[23] xx^{ti}[24] in pens to poure peple; And to[25] eu*er*y monk to haue xx s.: which al this thinges p*er*fo*r*med[26] þis noble Kynge, for his 32

[1] Rially H. [2] ward H. [3] þe *om.* C. [4] & was *om.* H.
[5] soule And all cristen soules HC. [6] m*er*cy Amen HC.
[7] CC xlvj *om.* H. [8] Afore H. [9] & *om.* HC. [10] ne HC.
[11] sacred and anoynted H. [12] A H.
[13] by hys labour has deposyd H. [14] þe *om.* H.
[15] the pope our holy fadyr H. the pope our holy fadre C.
[16] had don to H. had done to C. [17] his his Ad. [18] may eu*er* HC.
[19] *leaf* 183. [20] poure Ad. pore peple H. poure peple C.
[21] of *om.* H. [22] And HC. [23] þ*a*t day *om.* H. [24] xx pounde C.
[25] toke Ad. to HC. [26] w*ith* all p*er*formyd thes thinges H.

fader[1] King Henry þe Fowrt, seth he[2] performed it[3] nat during his life, whom, as it is seyd, God towched, & was A lepre er he died.

4 Also þen þis noble prince lete do caH al þabbottes & poures of Seynt Benett ordre in Englond, & had þame in þe chapiter house of[4] Westmynster, for þe reformacion of þe ordre, wherin he had communicacion; And also with bisshoppes & men of þe spirituelitie,
8 in so fer forth þat þei doubted sore þat[5] he wold haue had þe Temperalties out of per handes; wherfor, by þauis, labour, & procuring of þe spiritualtie, [þei] Encoragied þe King to chalenge Normandy & his right in Fraunce, to pend to sett hym A werk per, pat he
12 shold nat seke occasion to entre in-to[6] such matere; And perfor[7] al his life[8] after, he labored in þe Werres,[9] in conquering gret part of þe Reame of Fraunce, þat bi þe[10] Agrement of þe[10] King Charles had all[11] þe gouernaunce of þe Ream of Fraunce, And was proclamed
16 Regent & heir of Fraunce. And so, nat-with-stonding al þis gret Werre þat he had, yett he remembred his soul, & also þat he was mortal, & must dye; for[12] which he ordeyned by his life, þe place of his sepulture, wher he is now buried; & euery day iij
20 masses perpetuelly to be songen in A fair chapel ouer his sepulture, of[13] which þe middel masse,[14] þe fyrst & þe last,[15] shall be as is Assigned by him. As it Appereth by þise verse[16] folowyng:—

Henrei misse quinti sunt hic tabulate,
24 Que successiue sunt per monachos celebrate.
Die dominica.[17] Prima sit[18] Assumpte de festo Virginis alme;
Poscit *Christus* postremam[19] de morte resurgens.
Feria ij^a^.[20] Prima salutate in[21] festo Virginis extat;
28 Nunciat Angelicis laudem postrema choris,
[22]Feria iij^a^.[23] Esse Deum natum de Virgine, prima facetur,
Commemorat natam, sic vltima missa Mariam.
Feria iiij^a^.[24] Prima celebretur ad honorem neupmatis Almi;
32 Vltima conceptam denunciat esse Mariam;
Feria v^ta a^.[25] Semper prima coli debet de corpore *Christi*.
Vltima sit facta de Virgine purificata;

[1] fader for H. fadre for C. [2] hys fader H. his fadre C.
[3] it *om.* H. [4] at H. [5] lest H. þat *om.* C. [6] to *om.* H.
[7] þerfor *om.* HC. [8] life *om.* H. [9] in þe Warres *om.* H.
[10] þe *om.* H. [11] at Ad. aH HC. [12] for the H. [13] of the H.
[14] masse & HC. [15] last messe HC. [16] these verses H.
[17] Die dominica *om.* H. [18] sit affinite H. [19] xpc' postremā Ad.
[20] fferia ij^a^ *om.* H. [21] in *om.* C. [22] *leaf* 183, *back*.
[23] fferia iij^a^ *om.* H. [24] fferia iiij^a^ *om.* H. [25] fferia v^ta^ *om.* H.

Feria vj^{ta}.[1] Condecet ut p*ri*ma celebret*ur* de cruce sancta,
Atq*ue* salutate fiet postrema Marie.
Om*n*es alii s*anc*tos est p*ri*ma colenda sup*er*nos:
Sabb*ato*[2] Vltima de Requie p*ro* defunct*is* petit esse; 4
Semp*er* erit media de p*ro*prietate diei.

And yet þe Noble King Henry þe Fyft fou*n*ded ij houses of Religion: one called Syon, beside Braynford[3] of þe ordre of Seynt Brigitt, both of men &[4] women; And on þat[5] o*þer* side of þe 8 ryver of Tamyse, an house of monk*es* of[6] Chartrehouse: In which ij places he is co*n*tinuelly p*r*ayed for, night & day; for eu*er*, w*h*en they of Syon rest,[7] þei of þe Chartrehouse done þe[8] se*r*uice; And in[9] like wise, whan þei of þe Chartrehouse rest, þe o*þer* gon to. 12 And bi þe ryngyng of þe[10] belles of eyther place,[11] ayther[12] knowweth when þai[13] haue ended *per* se*r*uice, which be nobly endowed, & done dayly *per* great Almesse ded*es*; As in þe Charetrehouse ce*r*teyn childre be fou*n*d to[14] scole; & at Sion, ce*r*teyn Almesse 16 gyve*n* dayly.

And yet beside al this, he had fou*n*ded A recluse, which shal be alway A preste, to p*r*ay for him, by þe said[15] Chartrehouse, which[16] preste is wel & sufficiently endowed for him & A se*r*uau*n*t. 20 Loo! here may al p*ri*nces take ensample bi þis noble p*ri*nce *þat* regned so lytel tyme, nat fully x yere, *þat*[17] did so many noble Actes, as wel for his soul to be p*er*petuelly reme*m*bred & p*r*ayd fore, as in hys worldly conquest*es*. And he, beyng in his moste 24 lusty Age, despised & eschewed synn, & was vertuouse, & A g*r*et Iustyser, in so mych *þat* al þe p*ri*nces of Cristendome, & also of hethenes, dradd him,[18] & had[19] dete*r*myned in þe*r*[20] self—if God wold haue spared him—*þat* he wold haue werred Ayenst þe 28 Sarazenes. And for to know þe Ayed of other p*ri*nces, & al þe passage in *þat* Iorney, he sent a knight[21] of Henaude, named Se*r* Hugh Delanoy, vnto Ier*usal*em; but er he ret*ur*ned, he died at Boys du Vincent, in þe xxxvj^{te} yere of his Age, vn[22] whose soul, 32 God haue me*r*cy! Amen![23]

[1] fferia vj^{ta} *om.* H. [2] Sabb*ato* *om.* H. [3] Brayford Ad. Braynford C.
[4] & of H. [5] the H. [6] of the H. [7] rest then H.
[8] their C. [9] in *om.* H. [10] there H. [11] of eyther place *om.* H.
[12] ech H. eche C. [13] o*þer* H. [14] to the H.
[15] syde the H. [16] the which H. [17] *þat* *om.* HC.
[18] Cristendome drad hym An also of heythenes H. Cristendome dradde him & also of hethenes C.
[19] had *om.* H. [20] hym HC. [21] knyght H. [22] of H. on C.
[23] Amen *om.* HC.

[1] [2] **How King Henry þe Sixt regned, beyng A childe, nat one yere of age; And of þe batail of Vernoyl in Perche. Ca*pitulum* CC xlvij.**[3]

4 After King Henry þe Fyft, regned Henry þe Sixt[4] his son,[5] A childe, & nat fully A yere olde; whose regn̄ began̄ þe first day of Septembr*e*, the yeer[6] of our Lord God[7] M[l] iiij[c] xxij.[8] This King, beyng in his[9] Cradel, was moche doubted & dradd,
8 bicause of þe gret conquest of his fadre, & also of[10] þe wisdom̄ & guyding of his vncles, þe Duke of Bedford & þe Duke of Gloucestr*e*. This yeer, þe xxj day of Octobr*e*, died Charles,[11] King of Frau*n*ce, and was[12] buried at seynt Dionise[13]; And þa*n* was
12 þe Duke of Bedford made Regent of Frau*n*ce, & þe Duke of Gloucestr*e* was made p*r*otect*o*ur & defendour of Engl*o*n*d*. And the first day of Marche after,[14] was Ser Wil*l*iam Taillour, p*r*este, deg*r*aded of his p*r*estede; and on þe morne after he was brent
16 i*n* Smythfeld for heresie. þis yere Sir James Styward, King of Scott*es*, maried Dame Iane þe Duches, Dought*er* of Clarence, of hir first housbond, þerle of Som*er*sett, at seynt Mary Ouerays. Also þis yere, þe xvij day of August, was þe batail of VernaiH in
20 Perche, bitwene þe Duke of Bedford, Regent of Frau*n*ce & the Duke of Alanson̄; which was A g*r*et bataiH. þe Duke of Bedford had on his side w*ith* him þerle of Salesbury, Montagu, & þe Lorde Talbot, & al þe power þ*at* þei couthe make in Normandie—
24 þe garnisons kept,—And also many Capitaynes, w*ith* moche peple of þe Duke of Burgoyns. And on þ*at* other side was þe Duke of Alaunson, þe Duke of Touron, þ*at* was þerle Douglas, þerle of Boughan, w*ith* many lord*es* of Frau*n*ce, & gret company of Scott*es*
28 & Arminakes. And þan þerle Douglas[15] called þe Duke of Bedford "Iohn w*ith* þe[16] leden sw*e*rd." And he sent hym worde Ageyn̄ þ*at* he shuld fynd þ*at* day þ*at* hys sw*e*rd shold be[17] off steel; And so þe batail Ioyned on both sides, & þei[18] fought long,
32 so[19] þ*at* per wist no man who shold haue þe bett*er* A g*r*et while; but at þe last, as God wold, þe victorie fil vnto þenglish p*ar*tie, for þ*er* was slayn̄ þerle Douglas, which A litel before[20] was made[21]

[1] *leaf* 184. [2] Cap. iiij. H. [3] Ca. ccxlvij *om.* H.
[4] þe sixt *om.* HC. [5] son̄ but H. sone but C.
[6] yere Ad. the yere H. the yere C. [7] A H. God *om.* C.
[8] Ml cccc And xxij H. [9] in to Ad. in his HC. [10] of *om.* C.
[11] Charles the H. [12] lyeth H. lieth C.
[13] Denys in fraunce H. denys C. [14] after *om.* H.
[15] Douglas *om.* H. [16] þe *om.* H. [17] swerd was H. [18] þei *om.* HC.
[19] so *om.* HC. [20] *leaf* 184, *back.* [21] made the H.

Duke of Tounar, þerle of Bewghare, þerle of Almarre, þerle of Tounar, þerle of Vaundore, & þe Vycount of Nerbornne,—which was one of þame þat slew Duke Iohn of Burgoyn, knelyng tofore[1] þe Dolphyn,—& many moo,[2] to[3] þe nombre of xM† & mo. 4
And þer was taken prisoner þe Duke of Alaunson, & many oþer lordes & gentiles of Fraunce; but Scottes þat day wer slayn down right the[4] s[u]bstaunce of þame aH.

In þe iij yere of King Henry þe vj[te], þe Duke of Gloucestre 8
maried þe Duches of Holand, & went ouer þe[5] See with hir to[6] Henaude, for to take possession of his wife enherytaunce; wher he was honorably taken & receyved[7] for[8] lorde of þat[9] land. But sone after, he was fayn to returne home Ageyn, & left his wife, 12
& his tresour þat he brought, with[10]-in a town þat[11] is called Mounse in Henaude, which promised for[12] to be[13] trew to him; nat-with-stonding, þei deliuered þe lady to þe Duke of Burgoyn, which sent hir to Gaunt; And fro þens she Ascaped in A mannes 16
Aray, & come in to Zeland, to A town of his[14] Awun called Zierixee. And fro þens she went to A town in Holand called þe Ghowde, & þer she was strong enough, & withstode þe said Duke of Burgoyn. And sone after, þe Duke of Gloucestre sent ouer 20
vnto[15] Zeland þe lorde Fitz-Water, with certeyn men of Werre & Archiers, for to help & socour þe fore-said Duchesse of Holand, which londed at a place in Seland called[16] Brewers-haven, wher þe[17] lordes of þe contre come down & fought with him; & in 24
conclusion, he was fayn to withdraw him & his meyney to þe see Ageyn. But yett he slew and hurt diuerse lordes & moche peple of þat same contre, And so returned home Ageyn with his meyne, & preualed nothing. 28

Also þis same yere þerl of Salisbury, þerle of Suthfolk, the Lorde[18] Willeby & Lorde[19] Scalys, with þer retenu, leid seige to þe Cite of Mauns, which[20] Cite was yholden to þem in short tym, with many oþer strong townes & castels, to þe nombre of xxxvj. Thys 32
tyme al Normandy & A gret part of Fraunce vnto Orliaunce, was vnder thobeiansce of the King[21] of Englond; And al þe remanent of Fraunce was in gret[22] tribulacion & mischief.

[1] A fore H. [2] & many moo *om.* H. [3] vnto C.
[4] right Ad. rygt the H. right the C. [5] þe *om.* C. [6] in to C.
[7] receyued and takyn H. honourably receyued and taken C. [8] of for H.
[9] the HC. [10] with hym H. with hym C. [11] þat *om.* CH. [12] for *om.* H.
[13] to haue ben H. [14] hir C. [15] into C. [16] called the H.
[17] fore H. [18] Lorde Ad. the lorde H. the lord C. [19] the lord HC.
[20] the which HC. [21] king Ad. the kyng C. [22] gret *om.* H.

[1] **How þer was A gret Affray like to haue bene[2] bituene the Cardinal & þe Duke of Gloucestre; And of þe Coronac*i*on of King Henry þe vi^te^, both in England & in Frau*n*ce.**
4 **Ca*pitulum* CCxlviij.[3]**

IN þe iiij^te^ yere, þe same night *þat* þe Mair of London,[4] Iohn̄ Coventre, had taken his charge, was A gret watche in London for Affray þat was[5] bitwene þe Bisshop of Wynchestre & þe Duke of
8 Gloucestre, P*r*otectour' &c'. ffor þe Mair, w*ith* þe peple of þe Cite, wold Abide by þe Duke of Gloucestre as P*r*otector of þe Reame, but bi[6] labour of lordes *þat* went bitwen), & in especial bi þe labo*u*r of þe P*r*ince of Portyngale, *per* was Apoyntme*n*t taken so *þat* þe*r*[7]
12 was no harme done. And aft*er* þe batail of Verneil in Perche, þe Duke of Bedford come ou*er* into Engl*o*nd; & on Witsonday þe[8] same yere, at Leycestre, he dubbed King Henry knight; And forth-w*ith* þe said King Henry dubbed al thise[9] knightes whose names
16 folowes, *þat* is to say[10]: Richard, Duke of York, Also þe son*e* & heir of þe Duke of Northfolk, þerle of Oxenforth, þerle of West-m*er*land, þe son*e* and heir of þerle of Northu*m*breland, þe son*e* & heir of þerle Wormond,[11] þe lorde Rose, S*ir* Iames Botler, þe Lord
20 Natrauas,[12] S*ir* Henry Gray of Tankeruille, S*ir* Will*i*am Nevile, Lorde Fawconbrigge, S*ir* George Nevyl, Lorde Latimer, Lord[13] Welles, Lord[13] Berkley, þe son*e* & heir of Lord[13] Talbot, S*ir* Rauf Grey of Werk, S*ir* Rob*ert* Ver, S*ir* Ric*hard* Gray, S*ir* Edmond
24 Hu*n*gerforde, S*ir* Rob*er*t Wynkford, S*ir* Iohn) Botler, S*ir* Reynold Cobham, S*ir* Iohn) Passheley, S*ir* Thom*as* Tunstal, S*ir* Iohn) Chydiok, S*ir* Rauf Langeford, Sir Will*i*am Drury, S*ir* Willi*am* Ap-Thom*as*, S*ir* Richard Carbonel, S*ir* Ric*hard* Wydeuiłł, S*ir* Iohn)
28 Shirdelowe, S*ir* Nichol Blonket, S*ir* Rauf Ratclyff, S*ir* Edmond Trafford, S*ir* Willi*am* Cheyne, S*ir* Will*i*am Babyngton, S*ir* Iohn) Iune, &[14] S*ir* Gillebert Beauchampe. þan) in þe v^te^[15] yere þe Duke of Bedford, w*ith* þe Duchesse his wife, went ou*er* þe[16] see to Caleys,
32 & A litel tofore went[17] ou*er* Henry,[18] Bisshop of Wynchestre. & on our Lady day Annu*n*ciac*i*on), in our Lady churche at Caleys, þe Bisshop of Winchestre, when[19] he had songe*n* masse, [20]was made

[1] *leaf* 182. [2] bene A grete Affraye H. [3] Cap. iiij. H.
[4] þe mair of London *om.* H. [5] þat was *om.* H. [6] bi the H.
[7] *þat* Ad. þat *þer* H. that ther C. [8] this C. [9] *þes* H.
[10] *þat* is to say *om.* H. Wite C. [11] Ormond C.
[12] matrauas C. [13] the lord HC. [14] & *om.* HC.
[15] Item my v^th^ H. [16] þe *om.* C. [17] where H. [18] henry the H.
[19] que*n* H. [20] *leaf* 185, *back*.

Cardinal; &, he knelyng tofore[1] þe high Altere, þe Duke of Bedford sett þe hatt on his hede; & þer wer his bulles red, as wele of his charge As þe reioysing of his benefices spiritueH & tempereH.

And þis same yere was gret habondance of Rayn, þat þe sub- 4
stance of hey & of[2] corne was destroyed, for it rayned almoste euery other day. þis same yere þe gode Erle of Salesbury, Sir Thomas Mountagu, leyd Seiege vnto[3] Orlyaunce; at which segie he was slayn with A gvn þat[4] come out [of] þe town.[5] And[6] sith 8
forth þat[7] he was slayn, English men neuer gat ne preuailed in Fraunce, bot euer after[8] began to lefe, bi[9] litel and lytel, til al was lost. [10]Also þis same yere A Breton murthered A gode wedow[11] without Al-gate, which wedow fond him for almesse; & he bare away 12
al þat she had; And after þis he toke grith of holy church at Seynt Georges in Suthwerk, & þer toke þe crosse, & forswore þis land. And as he went, it happend þat he came bi þe place where he did þis cursed dede in þe subbarbis of London; & þe women of þe same 16
parissh come out with stones and[12] CaneH dunge, & slew & made an ende of him, nat-withstonding þe constable & many other men beyng present to kepe him; for þer wer many women, & had no pite.[10] Also [t]his same yere þe Duke of Northfolk, with many 20
gentil men & yomen, toke his barge, þe viij day of Nouembre, at Seynt Mary Oueryes, for to haue go thrugh London Brigg; & thrugh misguydynge of þe barge, it ouer-threw on þe Pyles, & many men drowned; but þe Duke him-self, with ij or iij, lepe vpon the piles, 24
and so wer saued with[13] help of men þat wer Aboue þe brigge, which cast down Roopes, by[14] which þei saved þam-self.

This same yere, on Seynt Leonarde day, King Henre, beyng vij yere old[15] of Age, was crowned at Westmynster: at whose cora- 28
nacion wer made xxxvj knightes. þis yere, on Seynt George day, he passed ouer þe see to[16] Caleys, toward Fraunce. Aboute þis tyme & Afore, þe Reame beyng in gret [17]misery & tribulacion, þe Dolphin, with his partie, began to make Werr, & gett certeyn 32

[1] Afore H. [2] of *om.* H. [3] to H. [4] which HC.
[5] town on whos saule god haue mercy H. oute of the toune, on whos soule god haue mercy C.
[6] ffor H. [7] þat *om.* H. sith that C.
[8] after *om.* H. [9] bi *om.* HC.
[10–10] Also þis same yere breton murthered . . . many women & had no pite *om.* H.
[11] Wedowe in her bedde C. [12] stones Ad. stones and C.
[13] through H. [14] by the H. [15] old *om.* HC. [16] in to H.
[17] *leaf* 186.

places, & make destres vpon Englissh men by þe meanȝ of his Capytayns, þat is to wete, La Heer and Potonde, Sayntralles, and especial A maid, which[1] they named "la PuceHe[2] de Dieu." This
—4 maid rode like A man, & was A valyant Capitaynȝ Among þame, & take vpon hir many gret[3] enterpryses, in so myche þat þei had A[4] byleve to haue recouered al þer losses by hir; nat-with-stonding, at þe last, after many gret feates, by þe help & prowesse of Sir Iohnȝ
8 Luxemburgh, which was A noble capitaynȝ of þe Dukes of Burgoynȝ, & many English men, Pykerdes and Burgones, which wer of our partie, before þe townȝ of Compyne, þe xxiij day of May, þe forsaid PuceH was taken in þe felde, Armed like A man, & many oper
12 Capitaynes with hir, & wer al brought to Roanȝ; & þer she was put in prisonȝ, & þer she was Iuged by þe law to be brent. And þen she said þat she was with childe, wherby she was respited A while; but in conclusionȝ it was found þat she was not with child,
16 & þen she was brent in Roane, & þe other Capitaynes wer put to raunȝson, & entreted as men of werre bene Acustomed &c'.

This same yere, About Candelmesse,[5] Richard Hunder, A wolle-packer,[6] was dampned for an heritike, & brent at Tour-HiH. And
20 About midlente, Sir Thomas Baggely, preest, & vicar of Mauen in Est-sexe, beside Walden, was disgraded & dampned for an herytike, & brent in Smythfeld. Also[7] þis[8] same yere, whiles þe King was in Fraunce, þer wer many heretikes & lollardes, þat had pur-
24 posed to haue made A rysing; & þei[9] casten billes in many placeȝ; but,—blessed be God almighty!—þer Capitaynȝ[10] was takynȝ, which was called[11] William Maundeuil, A wever of Abyndonȝ, & also[12] bayly of þe same townȝ, which named him-self 'Iack Sharp of
28 Wigmoreslande in Walis'; & after-ward[13] he was beheded at Abendonȝ in þe Wittsone weke, on þe Twesday.

This same yere, þe vj^te^ day of December, [14]Kyng Henry þe Sext was crowned King of Fraunce at Paris, in þe chirch of our
32 Lady, with gret solempnite, per beyng present þe Cardinal of Englond, þe Duke of Bedford & many oper lordes of Englond & of Fraunce.[15] And after þis coronacionȝ, a[16] gret fest holden at Paris,

[1] the which H. [2] Puce Ad. pucelle H. pucelle C.
[3] gret *om.* H. [4] had a *om.* H. [5] About Candelmess *om.* H.
[6] packer about candelmasse H. [7] And also HC. [8] in this C.
[9] þei *om.* HC. [10] þe Capteyn of theme H. the Capitayn of hem C.
[11] whos name was H. whos name was C. [12] also *om.* HC.
[13] ward *om.* H. [14] *leaf* 186, *back.*
[15] of fraunce and of England H. of fraunce & of englond C.
[16] & C.

the King retu*r*ned from) thens to Roan, & so toward Caleys. And[1] þe ix day of Feue*r*yer, he[2] landed at Dover, whom) al þe comones of Kent met at Beramdon, bitwen) Cante*r*bury & Dover, al in rede hoodes; & so come forth til he come to þe Blak-Hethe, wher he was mett w*ith* þe Mayr*e* of London,[3] Iohn) Wellis, w*ith* al þe craft*es* of London) clad al in white; & so þei brought him to London) þe xxj day of þe same moneth. This same yere[4] was A restreynt of þe wolles of Caleys made by þe soudiours, by cause þei were nat payed of þ*er* waagies; wherfor þe Duke of Bedforth, Regent of Frau*n*ce, beyng þan Capytain), come to[5] Caleys þe Twesday in þe Est*er* weke; And on þe morne aft*er*, many[6] sowdiour*es* of þe town) wer Arested & put in warde. And in[7] þe same weke he rode to Terewyne; & bi þe mean) of[8] Bisshop of Terewyn), he wedded þerles dought*er* of Seynt Poul, & came ageyn) to Caleys. And þe x[9] day of Iune, on Seynt Barnabe day, þ*er* wer four[10] soudiour*es* of Caleys, þ*at* wer chief Causers of þe restreynt, beheded, þ*at* is to say: Iohn) Maddesley, Iohn) Lunday, Thomas Palmer, & Thomas Talbot, & C & x[11] ba*n*nisshed þe town) þ*at* same[12] tyme: & before wer ba*n*nisshed C xx[13] soudiour*es*. And on[14] Mydso*m*mer evyn aft*er*,[15] come þe Lorde Regent & his wife to London.

[16] Of þe heresie of Praghe, & of [þe] Cou*n*sel of Aras. *&c.*[16] Ca*pitulum* CC xlix.[17]

Aboute þis tym*e* Pope Martyn) died; & Aft*er* him, Eugeny þe Fourt was Pope, þ*at*[18] was pesably chose*n* in Rome by þe Cardinalles, and was very & vndoubted Pope; but shortly aft*er*, he was put out[19] & expulsed fro[20] Rome,[21] i*n* suche wise þ*at* he was fayn to flee naked. In þis same tyme was þe Cou*n*sel of Basile, to which Cou*n*sel he was cited [22]to come; And because he come nat, they deposed hym); but he forsed[23] nat, ner sett[24] þ*er*by, but[25] gat þe Cite of Rome, & Abode Pope stil[26] xvij yere.

This yere, About Witsontide,[27] þe heretikes of Praghe wer destroied; for at two Iourneys wer destroyed of þame mo þan[28]

[1] And þ*er* H. [2] he *om.* HC. [3] of London *om.* HC.
[4] yere þ*er* H. [5] into H. [6] many of the H. [7] in *om.* H.
[8] of the HC. [9] xi HC. [10] four principall H.
[11] Talbot and other H. Talbot And an Cx C. [12] same *om.* H.
[13] An C & xx H. and xx C. [14] of H. [15] after *om.* H.
[16]—[16] *om.* HC. [17] Cap iij H. [18] þis H. This C. [19] out *om.* C.
[20] out of C. [21] he was expulsed out of Rome H. [22] *leaf* 187.
[23] rought HC. [24] sett nought H. sette not C. [25] but he H.
[26] styll pope H. still Pope C. [27] about Witsontide *om.* H.
[28] mo þan *om.* H.

xxij M†, w*ith* þ*er*[1] Capitayns, þ*at* is to say,[2] Procapius, Saplico, & Lupus p*res*biter. Also þ*er* was taken on[3] lyve, maist*er* Piers, clerk,—an Englisshman &[4] heretike. Also þis same yere was A gret
4 frost & A strong, during xj wekes; for it began on[5] seynt Kat*er*ines evyn, & lasted vnto[6] Seynt Scolastica Day in Februare: In which tym*e* þe vyntage þ*at* come fro Burdeux come over Shotters Hill.

This yere was þe cou*n*sel of Aras, & A gret treaty bitwen þe
8 King of Englo*n*d & þe King of Frau*n*ce, wher was[7] Assembled many gret lordes of bothe p*ar*ties: At which cou*n*sel was offred to þe Kyng of Engl*ond*, many gret thing*es* by þe meane of A legate þ*at* come fro Rome, which was Cardinal of Seynt Crosse, which
12 offres wer refused by þe Cardinal of Englond, & other lord*es* þ*at* wer þer for þe Kinge. Wherfore þe Duke of Burgoyn, which had bene long English sworne, forsoke ou*r*e p*ar*tie, & reto*ur*ned Frensh, by meane of þe said[8] legate, & made A pees w*ith* þe Frensh kyng,
16 receyving of þe King, for reco*m*pense of his fad*er* deth, the counte[9] Pontien, þe lordeshipp of Macon, w*ith* mych other þ*at* was[10] specified in þe said[8] treety; And so our Embassatour*es* come home Ayen in wers case þa*n*[11] þei[12] went forth,[13] ffor þei lost þer[14] þe
20 Duke of Burgoyn, which had bene, w*ith* his Burgoynons & Pycardes, A singler help in al þe Conquest of Normandy & of Frau*n*ce.

This same yere was A gret batail on þe See, bitwen þe
24 Ienewense3 & þe King of Aragon; of which batail þe Ianeuens*es* had þe victori, for þei toke þe Kinge of Aragon, þe King of Naverne, & þe gret Maist*er* of Seynt Iames in Galise, w*ith* iij^C^ knightes & squyers & moche other peple: & this was of[15] seynt
28 Dom*ini*ces day.

This same[16] yeer wer seen thre [17]Sonnes (soles) at ones, & Anone folowed þe threfolde gou*er*nance[18] in þe chirch, þ*at* is to wete, of Eugeny þe Pope,[19] of the Cou*n*sel, & of þe nevtralitie. Also þis same
32 yere M† iiij^C^ xxxiiij, was A passing gret wynd, by[20] which steples, houses &[21] trees wer ou*er*throwen. About þis tym*e* was an holy maid in Holand, called Lydwith, which lyued onely bi miracle, not etynge any mete. This yere þe Duke of Burgoyn began his

[1] hir C. [2] wete C. [3] of H. a C. [4] And an H.
[5] of H. [6] tyll H. [7] was *om.* H. [8] same H. [9] counte of H.
[10] as is HC. [11] þan *om.* H. [12] the H. [13] forth *om.* HC.
[14] ffor *per* þei lost H. [15] in HC. [16] same *om.* H.
[17] *leaf* 187, *back.* [18] rule and gouernance H.
[19] þe Pope *om.* HC. [20] by the H. [21] & *om.* H.

ordre at Lyle of 'þe golden Flyes' & ordeyned certeyn knightes of
þe ordre, & made statutes & ordinances moche Acordinge vnto[1]
þe ordre of þe Garter. Also þis same yere þe Frenshe men had
enterprised to have stolen Caleys in þe fysshing tyme, for many 4
botes of Fraunce held[2] saufe conduyt to come to Caleys for to take
hering; And þe Sowdiources of þe town had A custome to come to[3]
chirch, & leve þer staves stonding at þe[4] chirch dore, which staves[5]
þe Frenshemen, which wer Araied like fissheres, had purposed to[6] 8
haue taken so[7] þere wepon, & wynn þe town. But one of þame
lay with A comon woman[8] þe night to[9]-fore, & he[10] tolde to
hir þare counsel; And she on þe morne told þe lieutenaunte,
which forth[11]-with commaunded þat euery man shold kepe his 12
wepen in his[12] hand, sacryng tyme and other. And when þei Aperceyved þis, þat[13] þei wer myspoynted, they sayled streght to[14]
Depe, & stale & toke þat town. And on[15] Newyeres even after,
þei toke Harflete; And thus Englishe men began to losse A litel 16
and[16] liteH in Normandy.

[17]How Caleys and Guyhenes wer beseged by þe duke of Bergoyn, & how þei wer rescued by þe duke of Gloucester.[17] Capitulum CCl^mo.[18]

20

This yere was A gret noyse thrugh aH Englond, how þe Duke
of Burgoyn wolde come & besegie Caleys. Wherfore perle of
Mortayn, with his Army þat he had for to haue gone with[19] in-to
Fraunce, was contermaunded, & charged þat he shold go to Caleys, 24
which was at þat tyme wel vitailed & manned; ffor Sir Iohn[20]
Ratcliff was lieutenaunt of þe King in þat town, And þe Baron of
Dudlay, lieutenant of þe Castel. And þe ix day of IuyH, þe Duke
of Burgoyn, [21]with al þe power of Flaundres & moche other peple, 28
come before Caleys, & sett his[22] siege About þe town; & euery town
of Flaundres had per tenttes bi þame self. And þis Siege endured
thre wekes. In þe mean while þe Duke of Gloucestre, beyng
Protector of England, toke þe moste parte of þe lordes of Englond, 32
& went ouer þe See to Caleys, for to rescu þe town, or for[23] to feght

[1] on to H. [2] had HC. [3] to the H. [4] þe *om.* C.
[5] which staves H. which stauis C. *om.* Ad.
[6] so to H. [7] so *om.* H. [8] woman *om.* H. [9] be H.
[10] he *om.* HC. [11] for H. [12] his *om.* H. [13] þat *om.* H.
[14] forth H. [15] of H. [16] and a C. [17]—[17] *om.* H.
[18] Cap. iij vice iij H. [19] on H. [20] Iohn of H. [21] *leaf* 188.
[22] sette his C. [23] for *om.* HC.

with þe Duke & his hoste, if they wold haue bidden. This tyme, London & eu*er*y gode towu*n* of Engl*ond* sent ou*er* þe[1] See to þis rescuse *cer*teyn) peple wel Arayed, of þe best & chose men for þe
4 Were. And þe ij day of August, the said Duke of Gloucestre Arriued at Caleys *with* al his Army & v^C shippes & moo. And þe Duke of Burgoyn)[2] & al his ooste þat lay in þe[3] Siegie, As sone as þei espyed þe Sayles in þe See, before þei[4] App*ro*ched Caleys
8 haven, sodenly in A morny*n*g dep*ar*ted fro þe Siege, levyng behind þame moche stuffe & vitailes, & fled in-to Flau*n*dres & Pycardy. And in likewise did þe Siege *þat* lay tofore Guynes, wher-as they of Guynes toke þe gret gonnes of brasse[5] called Gedcon,[6] & many
12 other g*re*t gonnes & s*er*pe*n*tines. And þen when þe Duke of Gloucestre was Arryved *with* all his oost, he went into Flau*n*dres, & was þe*r*in xi dayes, & did but litel harme; except *þat*[7] he brent ij fair villagies, Popering & Belle, & oþer houses *þat*[8] wer of no[9]
16 strenght, & so he[10] ret*ur*ned home Ageyn). Also þis same yere þe King of Scotland beseged Rokesburgh[11] *with* myche peple; but S*ir* Rauf Gray dep*ar*ted fro þe Castell, & ordeyned for rescouse; but as sone as þe Kyng vnde*r*stode his dep*ar*tyng, he sodenly brak his
20 siege & went his way,[12] levyng moche ordyn*n*ance[13] behinde him; wher he gat no worsship*e*.

This same yeer, þe ij Day of Ianiuer, Quene Kat*er*ine, *þat*[14] was þe Kinges mod*er*, & wife to Kyng Henry þe Fyft, dyed, & dep*ar*ted
24 out of þis world, & was brought rially thrughe London to[15] West-mynst*er*; & *þer* she lyeth worsshipfully buryed[16] in our*e* Lady Chapel. Also[17] þis same yere, þe xiiij day of Ianiuer, fill down) þe yate *with* þe[18] towr on it,[19] on London Brigg [20]towarde Southwerk,
28 *with* two Arches, & al *þat* stode *þer*on). This same[21] yere was A gret treaty holden bitweene Grauenyng & Caleys, bitwen) þe King [22]& Duke of Burgoyn), In which was þe Cardinal of Englond & þe Duke of Northfolk, for þe King, *with*[22] many othir lordes. And
32 for þe Duke, was[23] þe Duchesse, having ful power of hir lorde as

[1] þe *om.* HC. [2] of Burgoyn) *om.* HC. [3] *þat* H. [4] the H.
[5] brasse which was H. [6] Dygeon) H. digeon C. digeo (*in margin*) Ad.
[7] *þat om.* C. [8] which HC. [9] of Add. of no HC. [10] he *om.* H.
[11] Rokesbrught H. burgh Ad. [12] way and C.
[13] stoff H. [14] which HC. [15] And so to HC.
[16] And *þer* lieth buryed worschippfully H. [17] And H. And also C.
[18] A H. [19] on it *om.* H. [20] *leaf* 188, *back.* [21] same *om.* H.
[22—22] And the Duke of Burgoyn where for the king was displesyd And sent for *þe* Cardinall of Englond *þe* Duke of Norfolk And H. Bourgoyne where for the king was the Cardinall of englond the duke of norfolk and C.
[23] was duble H.

Regent & lady of his landis, wher[1] was taken, by trewes[2] of both p*ar*ties, An Abstine*n*ce of Werre for A ce*r*teyn) tyme in þe name of
þe Duchesse, & nat of þe Duke, because he had gone from) his othe
& legeance þat he had made to King Henry; þ*er*for King Henre 4
neue*r* wold[3] write, ne Apoynt, ne[4] haue to do with him aft*er*, but
al in þe Duchesse name.

Also þis same[5] yere, Quene Iane died, þe ij day of Iuyl, which
had ben) King Henry þe iiij^te^ wife; & was caried fro Carmondsey 8
vnto Cau*nter*bury, wher she lieth buried by[6] King Henry þe iiij^te^,
hir houseband. This same[5] yere died al þe lions in þe Toure of
London), which[7] had nat ben) seen) many[8] yeeris before out of
mynde. 12

[9] How Owayne, a squyer of Wales *þat* had wedded Quene Kateryne, was Arested; And of þe Scisme bitwene Eugeny & Felix.[9] Ca*pitulu*m cclj.[10]

IN þe xvj yere of King Henry, died Sigismond, þemp*er*oure of 16
Almaign), & Knight of þe Garter; whos entierme*n*t þe Kyng kept
at Seynt[11] Poules in London ryally, wher was made a ryall hercie;
and[12] þe King in his Astate, clad in blew, was at even) at dirige. &
on[13] þe morne at masse, &c'.[14] And aft*er* hym was elect & [15] chosen 20
Albert,[16] Duke of Ostrych, which had wedded Sigismond*es* doughte*r*,
forto be Emp*er*our; &[17] also was Albert[18] taken & receyved to be
Kinge of Beme & of[19] Hungarie bi reson)[20] of his wyfe; for he
left[21] aft*er* him none other heir. þis Albert was Emp*er*our bot 24
one yere, for he was poysond, [22] & died þ*er*of.[22] Some say he
dyed of A flixx: but he was A vertuouse man & A[23] piteful, so
moche þat al þe peple þat knew him[24] said þat[25] þe world[26] was
nat worthy to haue his p*re*sence.[27] 28

[1] which H. [2] sadenes H.
[3] the kyng neuer wold C. the king wold neu*er* H.
[4] w*ith* hym bot ne H. [5] same *om.* H. [6] w*ith* H.
[7] the wich H. the which C. [8] in many H.
[9—9] How Owayn . . . Eugeny & Felix *om.* H. [10] Cap iij 21 H.
[11] Seynt *om.* H. [12] in Ad. [13] in H. [14] &c'. *om.* H. [15] An H.
[16] Albert *om.* H. [17] & *om.* C. & also *om.* H.
[18] also was Ad. Albert was H. This was C.
[19] of *om.* HC. [20] bicause H. because C.
[21] his wyfe *þat* was Sygysmo*n*ds doughte*r* which lefte H. his wife that was Sigismu*n*dis doughter whiche lefte C.
[22—22] and so he died HC. [23] A *om.* HC.
[24] him *om.* H. [25] *þat om.* H. [26] worde H.
[27] hys p*re*sence. In þis yere was þe Kynge of Scott*es* murthered in his chamb*or* by night pytously which king had ben prisson) xv yere in Englond And thei þat slew hym were takyn aft*er*ward and hade cruel Iustice H.

This same[1] yere, one Owayn), A squyer of Walez, A man of low
byrth, which had many A day[2] to-fore secretly wedded Quene
Kat*er*ine, & had by hir iij so*n*nes & a doughte*r*, was taken &
4 com*m*au*n*ded to Newgate, to p*r*ison), bi þe[3] lorde of Glowcestre,
P*r*otect*o*ur of þe Reame. And þe same yere[4] he brake p*r*ison by þe
mean) of A preest þ*a*t was his Chapelayn). And aft*er*, he was
[5] taken) ageyn) bi þe[3] Lorde Bemond, & brought Ageyn) to Newgate,
8 which afterward was delyu*e*red at large; & one of his so*n*nes aft*er*-
ward was made Erle[6] of Richemou*n*t, Another,[7] Erle of Penbroke,
& þe third, A monk of Westmynst*er*, which monk died sone after.
This same[1] yere also, on New-yere day, at Baynard CasteH, fiH
12 down A stakk of wod sodenly at aft*er*none, & slew iij men[8]
mescieuously, & foul hurt othir. Also at Bedford, on AshH-
twesday,[9] wer iij men[10] murthred w*ith*out strok, by falling doun) of a
steir, as þei come out of þ*er*[11] comon) haH, & many foul hurt. In
16 þe xviij yere, S*ir* Ric*hard* Beauchamp, þe gode Erle of Warwick,
died at Rone, he beyng þ*a*t tyme lieutenau*n*t[12] of þe King in
Norma*n*die; and fro þens his body was brought to Warthewick,
where he lieth worsshipfully in a new chapel on þe South side of
20 þe Queer. Also þis[13] yere was A gret derth of Corne in al[14]
Englond; for I[15] busshel of whet was worth iij^{s} iiij^{d} in many
places of Engl*ond*,[16] & yet men might nat haue ynoghe[17]; wherfore
Stephen Brown), þ*a*t tyme Mair of London, sent vnto[18] Pruse, &
24 brought to[19] London) ce*r*teyn) shippes laden) w*ith* Rye, which eased,
& did myche gode to þe peple; for korne was so skarce in
Engl*ond* þat in some placez[20] pore peple made þame brede of
braken
ferne[21] rotes.

28 This yere þe gene*r*al Cou*n*sel of Basile deposed Pope Eugeny; &
þei chese Felix, which was Duke of Sauoy; & þan began þe Scisme
which[22] endured vnto þe yere of oure Lord Ihesu C*r*ist[23] M^{l} iiij^{c}
xlviij.[24] This Felix was A devout p*r*ince, & saw þe so*n*nes of his
32 so*n*nes, & aft*er*, lyued An holy &[25] deuoute lyfe, & was chosen Pope

[1] same *om.* H. [2] A day *om.* H. [3] my HC.
[4] And *þis* yere H. And this yere C. [5] *leaf* 189. [6] the Erle H.
[7] And on o*þ*er the H. & anothir C. [8] m^{l} Ad. men HC.
[9] schyrday H. a shrireday C. [10] m^{l} Ad. xviij men HC.
[11] the H. [12] levtenannt þ*a*t tyme H. [13] þis same H.
[14] al *om.* H. [15] a C. [16] for 1 busshel . . . of Englond *om.* H.
[17] thought H. [18] in to C. [19] in H.
[20] þat in some placez *om.* H. places of Englond C.
[21] braken) *om.* HC. *interlined as a gloss* Ad. [22] the which H.
[23] Ihu c*r*ist *om.* H. [24] M^{l} CCCC & xlviij H.
[25] holy & *om.* H.

by[1] þe Counsel of Basile. Eugeny [was] deposed; & so þe Scisme was long tyme. And þis Felix had no[2] moche[3] obedience, bi-cause of þe Nevtralite for þe moste parte; & wel nygh al Cristendome obeid & repute Eugeny for verey Pope:—God knoweth who was 4
þe[4] verey Poper of þame both; for both occupied, during þe lyfe of Eugeny. This same[5] yere, Sir Richard, which was[6] vicare of Hermetesworth, was degraded of his prestehode at Poules, & brent at Tour [7]Hill, as for an heretike, vpon[8] Seynt Botulphe day; 8
how-be-it,[9] at his deth he died A gode Cristen man; wherfor, after his deth moche peple come to þe place wher he was[10] brent, & offred, & made an hepe of stones, & sett vp A crosse of tree, & held him for A Seynt, til þe Mair & [11] shereves, by þe commaundment of þe 12
Kyng & of[12] bisshopes, destroyed it, & made þer A dong-hill. Also þis same yere þe shyreves of London sett out of Seynt Martyns þe Grannt, þe sanctuarey, fyve persones, which afterward wer restored Ageyn to þe[4] same[13] sanctuarye by þe Kinges Iusticez. After 16
Albert þe iij, Frederike was chosen Emperoure. This Frederike, Duke of Osterike, was long Emperoure, & differred for to be crowned at Rome because of þe[4] Scisme; but after þat vnion was had, he was crowned with Emperial Diademe, with gret[14] glorie & 20
trivmphe, of Pope Nicholas þe Fourt: this was A man peseble, &[15] of singular pacience, nat hatyng þe chirch: he wedded þe King of Portyngale doughter &c'.

[16]How þe Duchesse of Gloucestre was Arested for treson, & committed to perpetuel prison in þe Ile of Mann; And of þe deth of Maister Roger Bolingbroke.[16] Ca. cclij.[17] 24

IN this yere,[18] Elianour Cobham, Duches of Gloucestre, was Arested for certeyn poyntes of treyson leyd Ageynst hir, wher-vpon 28
she was examyned in Seynt Stephens Chapel at Westmynster, before þerchebisshop of Canterbury; & þer she was enioyned to open penaunce, forto go thrugh Chepe, bering a tapere in hir hand, & aftir in[19] perpetuel prison in[20] þe Ile of Man, vnder þe keping 32
of Sir Thomas Stanley. Also þat same tyme wer Arested Maister Thomas Southwell, A chanon of Westmynster, Maister Iohn Hune,

[1] at H. [2] not C. [3] grete H. [4] þe *om.* H.
[5] same *om.* H. [6] was *om.* C. [7] *leaf* 189, *back.* [8] on HC.
[9] how well HC. [10] had been H. he had be C. [11] & *om.* H.
[12] of *om.* H. [13] same *om.* HC. [14] gret *om.* H.
[15] pesebly quiete and HC. [16–16] *om.* H.
[17] Capitulum 22 H. [18] yere dame H. [19] to HC. [20] into H.

[1]A chappeleyn) of þe said ladys,[1] Maist*er* Roger Bolynbroke, A clerk vsyng Nygromancie, & one M*a*riery Iurdeman), called 'þe wyche of Eye' beside Westmynst*er*. Thise wer Arested as for beyng of
4 cou*n*sel w*ith* þe sayd [2]Duchesse of Gloucestre. And as for Maist*er* Thom*a*s Southwel, he died in þe Towr þe night before he[3] shold have ben*n*e regned on þe morow[4]; for so he said him self þ*at* he shold die in his bedd, & nat bi Iustice. And in þe[5] xx yere,[6]
8 Maist*er* Iohn) Hune & M*aister* Roger Bolyngbroke wer brought to[7] þe Guyldhalle in London, & þer, before þe Mayr, þe lordes &[8] chief Iustice of Engl*ond*, wer þei[9] rayned, & da*m*pned both[10] to be draw*en*, hanged & quartred; but M*aister* Iohn) Hune had his
12 chartre, & was pa*r*doned by þe King; but M*aister* Roger was drawen to Tiborne, wher he co*n*fessed þ*at* he died gyltles, & neu*er* had t*r*espassed in þ*at* þ*at* he died fore; nat-w*ith*standing he was hanged,[11] heded, & q*u*artred;[12] And Margery Iurdemain was brent in Smyth-
16 felde. Also þis yere[13] was A gret Affray in Flet Strete by night tyme, bitwen) men of court & men of Londo*n*, & diu*er*se men slayn), & many[14] hurt: & one Herbotel was chief[15] cause of þe misgou*er*nance & Affray. Also þis yere, at chesing of þe Mair of London, þe
20 co*m*mones named Rob*er*t Chapton), & Raulyn*e* Holand, taylo*r*. & þe Aldermen*n* toke Rob*bert* Clapton, & brought him at þe[16] right hond of þe Mair, as þe custome is. And þan ce*r*teyn) talyoure*s* & other[17] hand-crafty men cried "nay! nat þ*at*[18] man, but[19] Raulyn
24 Holand!" Wherfor þe Mair, þat was Padesly,[20] sent þo þ*at* cried so[21] to Newgate, where they Abode a gret while, & wer wel[22] ponysshed.

In this same[23] yere wer diu*er*se Embassatoure*s* sent in to Guyan
28 for A mariage for þe King for þerles doughte*r* of Arminak, which was co*n*cluded; but, by þe mean of[24] þerle of Suthfolk, it was lett & put Aparte. And afte*r* þis, þe said Erle of Southfolk went ou*er* þe[25] See vnto[26] Frau*n*ce, & þ*er* he treted þe mariage bitwen) þe King

[1–1] *om.* H. [2] *leaf* 190. [3] *þat* he H. [4] morne HC. [5] þis H.
[6] yere þe xx H. the yere xx C. [7] into H. [8] and the H.
[9] þei *om.* HC. [10] both *om.* H. [11] hanged *om.* H.
[12] quartered, on whos saule God haue mercy H. quartred, on whos soule God haue mercy C.
[13] yere the lord talbott leyd feire to Deype, But þe Dolphyn rescowed it And wan þe Bastell þ*at* Englishman hade made. Also þis yere H.
[14] som H. somme C. [15] chief *om.* H. [16] þe *om.* C.
[17] other *om.* H. [18] this HC. [19] no H.
[20] þat was padesly H. that was padysly C. *om.* Ad. [21] so cried HC.
[22] wel *om.* H. [23] same *om.* H. [24] þe mean of *om.* H.
[25] þe *om.* H. [26] into HC.

of Eng*lond* & [1] þe Kinge*s* doughte*r* of Cecil & of Ier*usal*em. & þe next yere it was *con*cluded fully, þis [2] mariage; by which [3] mariage þe [4] Kyng shold delyu*er* to hir fad*er* þe Duchie of Angeo & þerldome of Mayn), which was þe key of Normandy. Then dep*ar*ted þe 4 Duke of Suthfolk, w*ith* his wife & diu*er*se lordes & knightes, in þe moste rial astate [5] þat might be, out of Englond, w*ith* new charez & palfreys, which went thrugh Chepe, & so went ou*er* þe See, & receyved hir, & sith brought hir in Lent [6] aft*er* to Hampton, wher 8 she landed, & was ryally receyved. And on Candelmes evyn) before, bi A gret tempest of thondr*e* & lightenyng at aft*er*none, Poules steple was sett A fire on þe middes of the [7] shafte in þe tymbre, which was qwenched bi force [8] of [9] labo*ur*, [10] & specially bi 12 þe labour [10] of þe morow masse preste of þe Bow in Chepe, which was thought inpossible, saufe only bi [11] þe g*r*ace of God.

This yere was þerle of Stafford made & create Duke of Bokyn-h*am*; þerle of Warewik, Duke of Warwike; þerle of Dorsett, 16 Marques [12] of Dorsett; & þerle of Suthfolk was [13] made [14] Marquys of Southfolk.

[15] How King Henry þe Sext [16] wedded Quene Margaret; And of hir Coronacion). [15] Cap*itulu*m CCl[i]ij. [17] 20

IN this yere Kyng Henry maried at Southwyke Quene Margaret; & she come to London) [þe] xviij day of May; And bi þe way al þe lordes of Eng*lond* receyved hir worsshipfully in diu*er*se places, & in especial þe Duke of Gloucestre. And on þe [18] 24 Blakhethe, þe Mair of London), [19] Alder*men*, & al þe crafte-men [20] in blew gowu*n*nes browdred w*ith* þe deuyse of his craft, þ*at* þei might be biknowen, mett w*ith* hir, with rede hoodes, & brought hir to London), where were diu*er*se pagentis & con*n*tinance of 28 diu*er*se histories shewed in diu*er*se placez of þe Cite Rially, & castell*es*. And þe xxx day of May þe forsaid Quene was crowned at Westm*ynster*; and þ*er* was Iustes iij dayes during, w*ith*-in þe sayntuarie tofore þabbey. This yere þe Pr*i*or of Kilmain Appelled 32

[1] And Marget H. [2] þ*at* H. that C. [3] the which H.
[4] by the which the H. [5] *leaf* 190, *back*. [6] the lent H. the lente C.
[7] of Ad. of the C. [8] bi force *om*. H. [9] by H.
[10—10] and . . . labour *om*. H. [11] bi *om*. HC. [12] þe marques H.
[13] was *om*. H. [14] þe H. [15—15] How . . . Coronacion) *om*. H.
[16] þe sext *om*. C. [17] Capitulum 23 H.
[18] þe *om*. H. [19] of London *om*. C.
[20] men *om*. HC.

þerle of Vrmond of treson), which had A day Assigned to þame forto
feght in Smythfeld. And þe listes wer made, & þe feeld dressed;
but when it came to poynt, þe King commaunded þat þei shold nat
4 fight, but toke þe quarel in-to his own) hond. & þis was[1] done at
þe Instance & laboure[2] of certeyn prechiours & doctoures of London,
as Maister Gilbert Worthington), parson[3] of [4] Seynt Andrews in
Holborn), & other. Also þis same yere come A gret Enbassate into
8 Englond out-of Fraunce, forto haue concluded A perpetuel pees;
but in conclusion it turned vnto[5] A trewes of A yere. About þis
tyme dyed Seynt Bernardyne, A gray frere[6] which began) þe new
reformacion of þat ordre in many places, In so myche þat þei þat
12 wer reformed bene called 'Obseruantes,' which Obseruauntes bene
encrecid gretly in Italie & in Almaigne. This Bernardin was
canonized bi Pope Nicholas þe Fyft In þe yere Mt CCCCl.[7] Iohannes
de Capestrauo was his disciple, whiche profited moche[8] to þe
16 reformacion of þat ordre; for whome God shewed many a fair[9]
miracle. Also here is to be noted, þat fro þis tyme forward, King
Henry neuer profited[10] ne Went forward; but Fortune began) to turn)
fro him on al sides, als[10] wel in Fraunce, Normandy, Guyan, as in
20 Englond. Some men hold opinion þat King Henry gaf commission
plenerly[11] to Sir Edward Huhe, Sir Robert Roos, Dean[12] of Seynt
Seuerynes, & oþer, to conclude A mariage for him with þerle of
Arminakes suster, which was promysed (as it was seid) & concluded;
24 but afterward[13] it was broken, & he wedded Quene Margarete, as
A-fore is seid; which was A dere mariage for þe reame of Englond;[14]
[15]ffor it is knowen verely þat, for to haue hir, was delyuered þe
Duchie of Angeo & þe Erldome of Maign), which was þe key of
28 Normandie, for þe Frensh men tentre. And Aboue þis, þe[15] said[16]
Marquys of Southfolk axed in playn) parlement A fyftenth & an
half for to feche hir out of Fraunce. Se now[17] what A mariage was
þis, as to þe comparison) of þat oþer mariage of Armynyke! for þer
32 shold haue ben) delyuered so many castels & townes in Gwyhen);
And so moche gode shold haue bene yiffen) with hir, þat al Englond
shold haue bene enryched þer-by,[18] but contrary-wise feH. Wherfor

[1] was *om.* H. [2] & laboure *om.* H. [3] the person H. [4] *leaf* 191.
[5] to H. [6] ? MS. frerer. [7] yere of our lord Mt CCCC and fyfty H.
[8] moche *om.* H. [9] a fair *om.* H. [10—10] *om.* H. als = as C.
[11] plenerly *om.* H. [12] þe Dean H.
[13] afterward it was broken for by the mene of *þe* marquyus of suffolke H.
[14] englond as it schewed before H. [15—15] *om.* H.
[16] & for H. [17] lo HC.
[18] ben *þer* by encreased H. *þer* by *om.* C.

euery gret [1] prince ought to kepe his promisses; [2] for, bicause of
breking of þis promisse,[2] & for mariage of Quene Margaret, what
losse hath þe reame of Englond had,[3] bi losyng of Normandy and
Guyan, bi diuison of [4] þe reame, þe rebelling of commines Ageynst 4
þer princes & lordes; what diuison Ayen [5] þe lordes, what murdre
& sleying of þame! what feldes foughten & made! in conclusion,
so many,[6] that many a [7] man hath lost his life; And in conclusion,
þe King deposed, & [8] þe Quene with hir sonn fayn to flee into 8
Scotland, & fro þens to [9] Fraunce, & so to Lorayn, þe place wher [10]
she come first [11] fro! Many men deme þat þe breking of [12] þe
Kinges promisse to þe suster of þerles of Armynak, was cause of
this gret losse & Aduersite. 12

How þe gode Duke of Gloucestre, Humfrey, þe Kinges vncle, was Arested at þe parlement of Bury; And [13] of his death; And how Anges in Mayn was deliuered.

In [14] þe xxv^te^ yere [15] of King Henry þe VI^te^,[16] was A parlement 16
at Bvry called seynt Edmundes Bury; About which was com-
maunded alle þe communes of þe cont[r]e to be per in per most
defensable Aray, to [17] A-wayt vpon þe King, to which [18] parlement
come þe Duke of Gloucestre, Humfrey, þe Kinges vncle, which had 20
bene þe [19] protector of Englond al þe nonn-Age of þe King. And
Anone after þat [20] he was come to [21] his logyng, he was Arested bi
þe Viscount Bemond, þe Constable of Englond, acompanyed [22] with [23]
þe Duke of Bokyngham & many oper lordes, and forth [24] with al 24
his [25] seruandes wer commaunded for to depart fro him; And xxxij
of [26] þe chief of them wer arested also,[27] & sent to diuerse prisones.
And anone, after þe [28] said Arest,[29] þe said Duke was on þe mornn-
found [30] dede: on whos soul, God haue mercy, Amen! [31] But how 28
he died, & in what maner, þe certentie is nat knowen to me.[32]
Some said he died for sorow; some said he was murthred bitwene ij

[1] *leaf* 191, *back.* [2–2] *om.* H. [3] had *om.* HC. [4] in HC.
[5] emong H. amonge C. [6] so many *om.* H. [7] a *om.* H.
[8] and *om.* H. [9] into H. that C. [10] þat H.
[11] first *om.* H. [12] of *om.* H. [13] of *om.* C. [14] Also in H.
[15] yere xxv C. [16] þe vi^te^ *om.* HC. [17] for to HC. [18] to the which H.
[19] þe *om.* C. [20] þat *om.* C. [21] come in H. was in C.
[22] whome Acompanyed H. whom accompanied C.
[23] with *om.* HC. [24] for H. [25] his *om.* H.
[26] also of H. [27] also *om.* H. were also arested C. [28] this C.
[29] And v or vj days after þis seid arest H.
[30] was . . . found *om.* H. found *om.* C. [31] Amen *om.* H.
[32] to me *om.* H. to me knowen C.

federbeddes; other said þat an hote spytt was put in his foundement; & so,[1] how [2] he died, God knoweth, to whome is no thing[3] hidd. And when[4] he was thus[5] dede, he was leid open, þat al
4 men might se him, And so both lordes & knightes of þe shires, with burgesses, come & saw him[6] ded; but þai coud nat perceif wound ne token[7] how he died. here may men mark what þis world[8] is! this Duke was A noble man & A gret clerk, & had worsshippfully
8 rewled þis reame to þe Kinges behove, & neuer coude be found faute in[9] him,[10] but envy of þame þat wer gouernoures, & had promised[11] þe Duchis of Anges & perldome of Maignn, caused[12] þe destruccion of þis noble man; for thei drad him, þat he wold haue
12 enpesshed þat deliuerance. And after, þei sent his body to seynt Albones [13]with certeynn lightes for to be buried; And so Sir Geruase of Clifton had þan[13] þe charge to convey þe corps[14]; & so it was buried at Seynt Albons in þe Abbey; & v persones of his houshold
16 wer sent to London, & þer wer reyned & juged to be drawen, honged & quartred; Of wome þe names wer Sir Roger Chammbrelaynn, knight, one[15] Midelton, A[16] squyere, Herbard, A squyer, Arthur,[17] A squyer, & Richard Nedham: which v persons wer drawen fro þe
20 Toure of London thrugh Chepe to[18] Tiburnn, & þer honged, & lat downn quyck, & þen striped for to have bene heded & quartred. And þan þe Marquys of Southfolk shewed þer for þame þe Kinges pardonn vnder his gret Seale; & so þei wer pardoned of þe rem-
24 anent of thexecucion, & had þer lyues, & after[19] war brought agen ynn to London, & [20] frely deliuered. this began þe trouble in þe reame of [21] Englond for þe deth of þis noble Duke of Gloucestre; & [22] al þe communes of þe reame began forto murmure [23] for it,[24] &
28 were nat contente.

After þat[25] Pope Eugeny was dede,[26] Nicholas þe Fyft was elect Pope. This Nycholas was chosen for Eugeny, yet honggyng þe

[1] but H. so *om.* C. [2] *leaf* 192. [3] nothing is H.
[4] þen when H. thenne whan C. [5] so HC.
[6] him lye H. hym lye C.
[7] but wond ne token colde the not perceyue H. but wounde ne token coude they perceyue C.
[8] worde H. [9] to C. [10] found be hym Any faute H.
[11] promised to deliuer H. [12] for thei caused H.
[13–13] *om.* H. [14] in the charge of the corpus to convoy H.
[15] And H. [16] A *om.* H. [17] or Archure H.
[18] vnto H. [19] and so þei H. And so they C.
[20] And after H. and after C. [21] þe reame of *om.* H.
[22] of Gloucestre & *om.* H. & *om.* C. [23] to mourne H.
[24] for it *om.* H. [25] þat *om.* HC. [26] was dede *om.* H.

Scisme. natw*ith*stondying he gat þe obedience of al Cristen Reames; for aft*er* þat[1] he was electe & sacred [2] Pope, ce*r*tayn lordes of Frau*n*ce & of England wer sent vnto[3] Sauoy, to Pope Felix, for to entrete him to cese of þe[4] Pepecy. And bi þe special[5] labour 4
of þe[6] Bisshop of Norwich & þe lorde of Seynt Iohn*es*, he cessed þe ij[de] yere aft*er* þat Pope Nicholas was sacred. And þe seid Felix was made Legate of Frau*n*ce & Cardinal of Sauoye, & resigned þe hole papacy to[7] Nicholas; aft*er*,[8] lyved an holy lyfe, & died 8
an holy man; And as it is said, Almighty[9] God shewed miracles for him. This was þe xxiij Scisme bitwen Eugeny & Felix, & dured xvi yere. þe cause was þis: The[10] general Cou*n*sel of Basil deposed Eugeny, which was only Pope & vndoubted, for- 12
as-myche as he obse*r*ued nat & kept[11] þe decrees & statutes of þe Cou*n*ceyl of Constance, as it is A-fore[12] said; nethir[13] he rought not to gyve obedience to þat gene*r*al Cou*n*seH in no maner wise;[14] wher-of Arose A gret Alt*er*cacion emong Writer*es* of þis 16
mateer, p*ro* & contra, which kan nat Accorde vnto[15] þis day. one pa*r*tie seith þat[16] 'þe Cou*n*sel is Aboue þe Pope,' þat o*þer* pa*r*tie seith "nay, but þe Pope is Aboue þe Cou*n*sel." Godd, blessed Aboue aH thinge*s*, gif & graun*t*[17] his pees in[18] holy chirche, 20
spouse of Criste, Ame*n*! This Nicholas was com*m*en of Iene,[19] of low burth; A doctour of dyvynite, an Actif man, he reedyfied many places þat wer b*r*oken & ruynouse, & did do[20] make A gret waH About þe Palays, & made þe[21] wall new About Rome, 24
for drede of þe Turkes. And þe peple won*n*dred of þe eresing[22] &[23] resignyng of Felix to[24] him, considering þat he was A man of so humble[25] burth; And þat othir was of Affinite to al þe moste pa*r*te of C*ri*sten p*r*inces; wherof þe*r* was A verse publisshed in 28
Rome, þ*us*:[26] hic fulsit mundo; cessit Felix Nicholas.

[27] How S*ir* Frau*n*ceys Aragonoys toke Fogiers in Norma*n*dy; & of þe losse of Constantinoble by the Turks.[27] Ca. ccliiij.[28]

[1] þat *om.* H. [2] *leaf* 192, *back.* [3] in to H. into C.
[4] þe *om.* H. [5] special *om.* H. [6] þe *om.* H.
[7] vnto H. [8] afterward H. [9] Almighty *om.* H.
[10] þat the H. [11] And kept not H.
[12] A-fore *om.* H. [13] Neu*er* H. [14] in no maner wise *om.* H.
[15] on to H. [16] þat *om.* H. [17] send H. [18] among H.
[19] was young of Iene comyn H; was of Iene come*n* of C. [20] to H.
[21] A H. [22] ceysyng H. ceesing C. [23] and of the H.
[24] vn to H. [25] lowe H. [26] in þ*is* man*er* H. in this maner C.
[27]—[27] *om.* H. [28] Cap*itulum* 25 H.

In þe xxvij yere of King Henry þe vj^te^,[1] beyng trewes bitwen Engl*and* & Frau*n*ce,[2] A knight of þe Englissh p*ar*tie named S*ir* Frau*n*ceys Aragonys, toke A town of Normandy, called[3] Fogiere,
4 Ayens þe trewes; of which takyng began moche sorow & losse, for þis was þe occasion bi which[4] þe Frenshmen gat al Normandy *&c.*[5] [6]About þis tyme þe Cite of Const*an*tinoble, which was Imp*er*iall [7]Cite in al Grece, was taken bi þe Turkes infideles, which was
8 betrayed (as som*e* hold Opinion), & þemp[er]o*r* taken & slayn, & þ*at* ryal chirch of Sancta Sophia robbed & despoyled, & þe reliques & ymages & þe Rode drawen Aboute þe strete; which was done in despite of C*ri*sten feith. And sone aft*er*, al Cristen feith in Grece
12 perisshed & cessed. Ther wer many C*ri*sten men slayn, & innumerable solde & put in Captiuite. by þe takyng of þis towne, þe Turkey gretly[8] enhau*n*sed in pride; & it is A g*re*t losse vnto all C*ri*stendome.[6]

16 [9]In þe xxviij yere[10] was A p*ar*lement holden at Westmynst*er*, & fro þens Adiourned to þe Blakfreres of[11] London, And aft*er* Cristen*n*masse, to[12] Westmy*n*st*er* Ageyn. And þis same yere, Rob*er*t of[13] Cane, A man of þe West contre, w*ith* A few shipp*es*, toke A
20 gret[14] flote of shippes comyng out of þe baye, laden w*ith* salt,—which shippes wer of Prays, Flau*n*dres, Holand & Zeland,—& brought þame to Hampton. Wherfor þe m*er*chant*es* of Engl*and* beyng in Flau*n*dres, wer Arested in Bruges, Ippre, & oþer places,
24 & might nat be deliu*er*ed, ner þ*er* dettes dischargied, til þei hadd made A poyntm*en*t for to pay for thamend*es* & hurtes of tho shippes; which was payed bi þe m*er*chand*es* of þe staple, eu*er*y pen*n*y. And in like wise, þe m*er*chaunte3 & gode3 beyng in
28 Danskę wer also Arested, & made g*re*t[15] Amendes.

This same yere the[16] Frenshmen in A mornyng toke, bi A trayn,[17] þe town of Pont*er*alargee, & þ*er*-in þe Lorde Faucou*n*brigge was taken p*ri*soner. And aft*er* þat,[18] in Decembr*e*, Roan was
32 taken & lost, beyng þ*er*-in þe Duke of Som*er*sett, Edmu*n*d, þerle[19] of Shrewsbury, whiche bi A-poyntment left Pleges, & left al[20]

[1] tho in the yere of kyng harry xxvij H. In the yere of kyng henry xxvij C.
[2] fraunce and Englond C. [3] named HC. [4] bi the which H.
[5] &c *om.* H. [6—6] *om.* H. [7] *leaf* 193. [8] is gretly C.
[9] This yere A squiere of Englond named Chalons du*er* armes w*ith* A kny3t of fraunce named Sir leuys de buyell to fore þe french kyng And ranne þe french knyght through wyth A spere And slew him in þe feld H.
[10] yere xxviij C. [11] at HC. [12] on to H. [13] of *om.* H.
[14] an hole H. [15] Agrete H. [16] the *om.* H. [17] by A trayn toke H.
[18] þat *om.* H. [19] Erle H. [20] lost H. loste C.

Normandye, &[1] come home. And during þe said[2] parlement þe
Duke of Suthfolke was Arested & sent to[3] þe Towre; & þer he[4]
was A moneth. And after, þe King did do feche him out, for which[5]
cause all þe commones of England wer in A gret rumor, what for[6] 4
deliueraunce of Anges & Maignȝ, & after,[7] losing of al Normandie,
And in especial for þe deth of þe gode Duke of Gloucestre; In so
myche þat, in some placeȝ, men gadred togedre, & made þame
capitaynes—as Blew-Berde & oþer, which wer resisted, taken, & 8
had Iustice, & died. And þen[8] þe said Parlement was adiourned to
Leycestre; and thidder þe King brought with him þe Duke of
Southfolk. & when[9] þe Comon house vnderstode þat he was oute
of þe Toure, & come thider, þei desired to haue execucion on[10] þem 12
þat wer cause of þe delyuerance of Normandy, & had bene cause of
þe deth of þe[11] Duke of Gloucestre, & had sold Gascoygnȝ & Guyhanȝ,
of which þei named to-be gylty, þe Duke of Southfolk as chief, þe
Lord Say, þe Bisshop of Salesbury, Danyel, & many moo. And 16
for to Apease þe comons, þe Duke of Southfolk was exiled out of
Englond v yere; & so, during þe Parlement, he went in to North-
folk, & þer toke shipping forto go out of þe Reame of Englond[12]
vnto[13] Fraunce. And þis yere,[14] as he sayled on þe See, A shipp of 20
Werre called[15] Nicholas of þe[16] Tour mett with þis[17] shippe, &
founde him þer-in; whome þei toke out, & brought hymȝ into þere
shipp tofore þe Master & Capitayns; & þer he was examined, & at
last Iuged to þe[18] deth. And so þei put him in A Cabone, & his 24
chapeleynȝ for to shryve him; And þat done, þei brought him in to
Dover Rood, & þer sett him in-to þe boot, & þere smote of his
hede, & brought þe body Alonde, vpon þe sondes, & sett þe hede
þer-by. And þis was done þe fyft day of Maye. loo! whatt 28
Availed him now, al his[19] deliuerance of Normandy &c.[20] And
here yhe may leer[21] how he was rewarded for þe deth of þe Duke
of Gloucestre. This began sorow vpon sorew, & deth for deth.[22]

[23] **How this yere was thensurrexionȝ in Kent of þe communes, 32
of whome Iake Cade, On Irishman, was Capitaynȝ.[23]
Ca. cclv.[24]**

[1] A H. [2] same H. [3] in to HC. [4] he *om.* H.
[5] for which of Ad. of which HC. [6] for the HC. [7] after for H.
[8] þen *om.* H. [9] *leaf* 193, *back.* [10] of H. [11] þe *om.* H.
[12] of Englond *om.* H. [13] into HC. [14] yere *om.* H.
[15] called the HC. [16] þe *om.* HC. [17] hys H. his C. [18] þe *om.* H.
[19] þis H. [20] &c *om.* H. [21] se H. here C. [22] deth &c. C.
[23]—[23] *om.* H. [24] Capitulum 26 H.

This yere of our Lorde M^l^ cccc l, was þe gret grace of þe Iubilee at Rome; wher was gret p*ar*don), in-so-mych þ*at*, frome[1] al place; in[2] C*ri*stendome, gret m*u*ltitude of peple resorted thider.

4 Þis yeere[3] was A gret Assemblee &[4] gadering togedr*e* of þe[5] comons of Kent in gret nombre, & made an Insurrexion), & rebelled Ageynst þe Kyng & his lawes, & ordeynd þame[6] A capitayn) called Iohn Cayd, An Irish man, which named him self Mortym*er*, Cosyn)

8 to þe Duke of Yorke. And þis Capitayn) held thise men togedre, & made ordinance; Among þame, & brought þame to Blak-Heth, where he made A bill of peti*ci*ones to þe King & his Cou*n*sel, & shewed what iniuries & opp*r*essions þe Poer comons suffred; & al

12 vnder colour forto come[7] to his Abone; & he had A gret m*u*ltitude of peple. And þe xvij[8] day of Iuyn), þe King,[9] many lordes, [10]Capitaynes & men of Werre, went toward him to þe Blakk-heeth. And when þe Capitayn*e* of Kent vnderstode þe com*m*yng of þe

16 King w*ith* so gret[11] puysau*n*ce, he[12] w*ith*-drew him w*ith* his peple to Seuenoke, A litel village. And þe[13] xxviij[14] day of Iun), he[15] beyng w*ith*-drawen) & gone, þe King come, w*ith* his Armee sett in ordre & enbatailed, to þe Blak-Heth, And, by Aduise of his Cou*n*sel,

20 sent Sir Vmfrey Stafford, knight, & Will*ia*m Stafford, squyer, two valiau*n*t Captanes, w*ith* *cer*teyn) peple, to feght w*ith* þe Capytane, & to take[16] & bryng him & his Accessaries to þe King, which went to Seuenoke; & *per* þe Capytane w*ith* his felisshep*e* mett

24 w*ith* hem), & fought Ayenst þame,[17] & in co*n*clusion slew þame bothe, & as many as Abode & wold nat yheld þame ner flee. Duryng þis sharmysh fill[18] A grete variau*n*ce Amonges þe[19] lordes men, & þe[20] comon peple beyng on Blak-Heth Ayens þe[21] lordes & Capitayns,

28 sayng playnly þ*at* þei wold go to þe Capitayn) of Kent, to Assist and help him,[22] but if þei might haue execu*ci*on of þe *tray*tour*es* beyng[23] About þe King, to which[24] þe King said nay; And þei said playnly þ*at*[25] þe Lorde Say, Tresourer of Engl*and*, the Bisshope of

32 Salesbury, [26]þe Baron) of Dudley,[26] þabbot of Gloucestr*e*, Danyel, & Trevillian, & many mo, wer t*ray*tour*es*, & worthy to be dede.

[1] in H. [2] of H.
[3] yer*e* was s*ir* Thomas Oryell ouerthrown) At Fermygny And many Englisch men slayn and takyn) p*ri*soners This same yere H.
[4] A H. [5] þe *om.* H. [6] hym C. [7] haue come H. [8] vij H.
[9] king with H. [10] *leaf* 194. [11] grete A H. [12] he *om.* Ad.
[13] þe *om.* H. [14] xxvij^ti^ H. [15] he *om.* H. [16] take hym HC.
[17] them Ayenst H. [18] *per* fell H. [19] þe *om.* H. [20] þe *om.* H.
[21] *per* H. their C. [22] him *om.* H. [23] beyng *om.* H.
[24] to where H. wher to C. [25] þ*at* *om.* H. [26—26] *om.* H.

herfore, forto[1] please þe lordes menys & also some of þe Kinges house, þe Lorde Say was Arested & sent to þe Toure of London. And þan þe King, hering tydynges of þe deth & ouerthrowing of þe Staffordes, with-drew him to London, & fro thens[2] to Kylling- 4
worth; ffor þe King ne þe lordes durst nat trust þer own household meney &c.[3] Then, after þat þe Capytan had þis victory vpon þise[4] Staffordes, Anone he toke Sir Humfrey Salett, & his brigantines smytten ful of gylted nayles, & also his gilted sporres, & 8
Araied him like A lorde & a Capi[5]tayn, & resorted with al his meyney, & also mo þan he had tofore, to þe Blak-Heth. Ageyn to whome come þerchebisshope of Caunterbury & þe Duke of Bokyngham to þe Blak-Heth, and spake with him; &, as it was said, þei 12
found him [6]witty in his talkynge &[7] request; & so they departed.[6] And þe third day of Iuyl he come & entred into London with al his peple, &[8] did make A[9] cry þer[10] in þe Kinges name & in his name,[11] þat no man shold robb ne take no mannes gode bot if he 16
payd for it; & come ridyng thrugh þe Cite in gret pride, & smote his swerde vpon London stone in Canwykstrete. And he, beyng in þe Cite, sent to þe Towre forto haue þe Lord Saye; & so þei sett him & brought him to þe Guyld-Hall before þe Mayre & þe 20
Aldremen, wher he was examined. And þe lorde[12] sayd þat[13] he wolde & ought to bene Iuged by his peres. And þe communes of Kent toke him by force fro þe Mair &[14] officers þat kept him, & toke him to A prest to shryve him. & er he might be half 24
shryven, þei brought him to þe Standard in Chepe, & þer smote of his hede:[15] & thus died þe Lorde Say, Tresourer of England. After þis, þei sett his hede on[16] A spere, & bare it Aboute in þe Citee. And þe same day, Aboute[17] þe[18] Mylle-Ende, Crowmer was beheded. 28
And þe[19] day before, at afternone, þe Capytan, with certeyn of his meyney, went to Philipp Malpas house, & robbed him, & toke Away moche gode. And fro thense he went to Seynt Margret Patyns, to one Cherstis hous, & robbed him, [20]& toke A way moche 32
gode.[20] Also, At which robbyng diuerse men of London of þer neghburse wer at it, & toke part with him.[21] For þis robbyng þe

[1] to H. [2] thens vn to A. [3] &c. *om.* H. [4] the HC.
[5] *leaf* 194, *back.* [6–6] *om.* H. [7] and his C.
[8] And *þer* H. and there C. [9] A *om.* HC. [10] *þer om.* HC.
[11] name *om.* H. [12] And he HC. [13] *þat om.* HC. [14] And the H.
[15] hede on whos saul god haue mercy Amen H. hede on whos soule Almyghty god haue pite and mercy Amen. C.
[16] vp on H. [17] Aboute *om.* H. [18] at H. [19] þe same H.
[20]—[20] *om.* H. [21] them H.

peples hertes fiH fro him, & euery thryfty man was A-forde[1] forto[2] be serued in like wise. for þer was many A man, in London þat Abbayted and wold fayn)[3] haue seen A comon) robbery, which
4 Almighty[4] God for-bidd! for it is to suppose þat,[5] if he had nat robbed, he might haue gone ferre er he had be with-stonde; ffor þe King & al the [6]lordes of þe Reame of Englond wer departed, except the Lorde Scale3 þat kept þe Toure of London.[7] And þe
8 fyft day of Iuyl he gert[8] smyte of A mannes hede in Southwerk. And þe night after, þe Mair of London, þe Aldermen & þe[9] communes of þe Cite, concluded to dryve Away þe Capytane & his hoste, and sent to þe Lorde Scales in[10] þe Toure, & to Mathew
12 Gogh, A Capitayn) of Normandie, þat þei wold þat night Assail þe Capitayn) with þem of Kent. & so þey did, & come to London Brigge, in to Southwerk, er þe Capitan) had any knowleage þer-of; & þer[11] þei fought with þem) þat kept[12] þe brigge. & þe Kentissh men
16 went to harnoys, & come to þe brigge, & shott & fought with þame, & gàt þe brigge, & made þame of Londone to flee, & slew many of þame, & þis endured al þe night, to & fro, til ix of þe[9] clokk on þe morne. & at[13] last þei brent þe drawbrigge, wher many of þame of
20 London) wer drowned. In which night, Sutton, an Alderman, was slayn; Roger Hesant, & Mathew Gogh, & many oþer. And, after this, þe Chaunceler of Englond sent to þe Capytane A general pardone[14] for him, & Another for all his meyney. And þan þei
24 departed fro Southwerk, euery man home to his hous. And when þei wer al departed & gone, þer wer proclamacions made in Kent, Southsea, & in[15] oþer places, þat what man coude take þe Capytane, quyk or ded, shold have A m[l] mark. And after þis, one Alexander
28 Iden, A squyer of Kent, toke him in A gardyn) in Southsex; & in þe takyng þe Capytane, Iohn) Cade was slayn), & after beheded, & his hede sett on London) Brigge. And þan Anone after,[16] þe King come in-to Kent, & did his Iustices sitt at Canterbury, & enquire
32 who wer Accessaries & chief cause of þis Insurreccion). And þer wer viij men Iuged to dethe in one day, & in othir places, mo. And fro þens þe King went vnto[17] Sucessex, & so[18] in-to þe West

[1] Arested H. [2] to H. [3] fayn) *om.* H. [4] almighty *om.* H.
[5] þat *om.* HC. [6] *leaf* 195. [7] of London *om.* H.
[8] he did do H. he dide done C.
[9] þe *om.* H. [10] to HC. [11] þer *om.* H. [12] And H.
[13] at the H. [14] pardon generall H. pardon general C.
[15] in *om.* H. [16] And Anon after then H. And anone after thenne C.
[17] in to H. [18] so *om.* HC.

— contre, where A litel before was slayn) þe Bisshop of Salisbury. And þis[1] yere so many wer[2] Iuged to deth, þat xxiij hedes stode [3]vpon[4] London Brigge at ones.

[5]**Of þe felde þat þe[6] Duke of York toke at Brenthethe in Kent; And of þe birth of Prince Edwarde; And of þe first batail of[7] Seynt Albones, wher þe Duke of Somersett was slayn).[5] Ca. cc lvi.[8]**

1452 In þe xxx yere of King Henry þe vi^te^, þe[9] Duke of York came out of þe Marche of Walys, with þerle of Devonshire &[10] Lorde Cobham, &[11] gret puysannce, for reformacion of certayn) Iniuries & wronges, & also[12] to haue Iustice of[13] certeyn) lordes beyng[14] About þe King; and toke A[15] felde at Brentheth beside Derthford in Kent, which was A strong feld. For which cause þe King, with al þe lordes of the land, went vnto[16] Blakheth with A gret & A strong[17] multitude of peple, armed & ordeyned for þe werr in þe best wise. And when þei had musteried on þe Blakheth, certeyn lordes wer sent to him for to trete & make A-poyntment with him, which wer, þe Bisshope of Ely &[18] þe Bisshop of Wynchestre, & þe Erles of Salesbury & of Warrewick. And þei concluded þat þe Duke of Somersett shold be had to warde, & to Aunswer to such Articles as þe Duke of York sholde put on[19] him; and þan þe Duke of York shold brek his felde, & come to þe King, which was[20] promised bi þe Kynge. And so þe King commaunded þat þe Duke of Somersett shold be had in warde; & þen þe Duke of York breke vp his felde, & come to þe King. And when he was commen, contrary to þe promisses tofore[21] made, þe Duke of Somersett was present in þe felde, Awayting & chief about þe King, & made þe Duke of York ride tofore as A prisoner thrugh London; & after þei wold haue put him in holde. But A noyse Aroose þat þerl of Marche, his son), was commyng with[22] x m^l^ men to London-ward, wher-of þe Kyng & his counsel fered. And þan they concluded þat þe Duke of York sholde departe at his will.

[1] þis same H. this same C.
[2] were so many H. were soo many C. [3] *leaf* 195, *back.*
[4] on H. at C. [5–5] *om.* H. [6] þat Ad. that the C. [7] at C.
[8] Capitulum 27 H. [9] In the yere xxx the HC.
[10] & *þe* H. and the C. [11] with H.
[12] also *om.* H. [13] on HC. [14] beyng *om.* H.
[15] An H. [16] vn to the H. vnto the C. [17] & A strong *om.* H.
[18] and *om.* H. [19] to H. [20] was all H. was al C. [21] Afore HC.
[22] *Here* H *breaks off imperfect.*

About þis tyme began gret diuision in Spriusse bitwene þe gret Maister & þe knightes of þe Duche ordre, which wer lordes of þat Contre; ffor þe communes & townes rebelled [1] Ageynst þe lordes, & made so gret werre þat, at þe last, þei called þe King of Pole to be þer lorde; which [2] King come, & was worsshipfully receyved, & laid siege to þe castel of Marienburgh (which was þe chief Castel & strenght of al þe land), & wan it, & drove out þe Maister of Dansk & al othir places of þat land. And so þei þat had bene lordes many yeres, lost al þere seygnorie & possessions in þo landes.

And in [3] þe yere of þencarnacion of our Lord M^t iiij^c liij, vpon [4] Seynt Edwardes day, Quene [5] Margaret was delyuered of A fair prince, which was named Edwarde. þat same day Iohn Norman was chosen for to be Mair of London, And on [6] þe day þat he shold take his othe at Westmynstre, he went thider by water with al þe craftes, wher Afore-tyme þe Mair, Aldremen, & al þe craftes rode on [7] horse back: which was neuer vsed afore, [8] but seth [9] þat tyme þei haue gone euer bi water, in barges.

Yhe haue wel vnderstond before, [10] how þat, contrary to the promise of þe King, & also þe conclusions taken bitween þe King & þe Duke of York at Brentheth, þe Duke of Somersett went nat to warde, but Abode about þe King, & had gret rewl. And Anone aftir, he was made Capytayn of Caleys, & rewled þe King & his reame as he wold. Wherfor þe gret lordes of þe Reame, & also þe communes, wer nat pleased, for which cause þe Duke of Yorke, þerles of Warrewick & of Salesbury, with many knyghtes & squyers & moche peple, come for to remeve þe said Duke of Somersett & othir fro þe Kyng. And þe King, hering of þer commyng, thought by his counsel forto haue gone Westward, & nat for to mete with þame: and he [11] had with him þe Duke of Somersett, þe Duke of Bokyngham, þerle of Stafford, þerle of Northumbreland, Lorde [12] Clifford, & many oþer. And what tyme þat þe Duke of York & his felisship vnderstode þat þe King was departed with þise said lordes fro London, Anone he chaunged þe [13] way, & costed þe Contre, & come to Seynt Albons [14] þe xxiij day of May, & [15] mett with þe Kyng, to whome the Kyng sent certayn lordes, & desired him to kepe þe peax, & departed, but in

[1] *leaf* 196. [2] the which C. [3] in *om.* C. [4] on C.
[5] the quene C. [6] on *om.* C. [7] a C. [8] after C. [9] syn C.
[10] tofore C. [11] he *om.* C. [12] the lord C. [13] his C.
[14] *leaf* 196, *back.* [15] & there C.

conclusion), whiles þei treted on þat one side, þerle of Warwik, with
þe Marchemen & with othir, entred þe town on þat other side, &
fought Ayenst þe King & his partie: & so began þe batail &
feghtyng, which endured A gode while, but in conclusion þe Duke 4
of York apteyned & had þe victorie of þat Iorney; In which was
slayn þe Duke of Somersett, þerle of Northumbreland & þe Lorde
Clifford, with[1] many knightez & squyers, & many[2] hurt. And on
þe morne after þei brought þe Kinge in gret Astate to London, and 8
he was[3] looged in þe Bisshop paleys of London. And sone[4] After
was A gret parlement; In which parlement þe Duke of York was
made Protector of Englond, & þerl of Warwick Capytane of Caleys,
& þerle of Salesbury Chaunceler of Englond. And al suche 12
persones as had the rewl tofore About þe King, wer sett Aparte, &
might nat reul as þei did Afore.[5]

In this same yeer died Pope Nicholas þe Fyft; & after him was
Calixt þe Third. This Calist was A Catalane, & an olde man 16
when he was chosen, & continuelly seek; wherfore he might nat
performe his zele & desire þat he had conceyved Agenst þe Turke.[6]
& þe cause of lettyng þirof was his Age & sekeness. This Calixte
instituted & ordeyned þe Feste of þe[7] Transffiguracion of our Lorde 20
to be halowed on Seynt Sixt day in August, bicause of þe gret
victory þat þei of Hungary had Ayenst þe Turkes þat same day he
was chosen Pope, in þe yeer of our Lord Ml iiij^c lv, and died þe
yere M^t iiij^c lviij, þat same day þat he ordeyned þe Fest of þe[7] 24
Transfiguracion to be halowed.

In þis same yere fiH A gret Affray in London Ayenst þe
Lumbardes. The cause began for[8] A yong man toke A dagger fro
A Lumbard, & brake it; wherfor þe yong man on þe morne was 28
sent fore to come tofore þe Mair & Aldermen, & per, for þe offense,
he was commytted to warde. And [9] then þe Mair departed fro þe
GuyldhaH for to go home to his dyner, but in þe Chepe þe yong
men of þe mercerie, for þe moste parte Apprentises, held þe Mair 32
& Shyreves stil in Chepe, & wold nat suffre him to departe vnto
þe tyme þat þare felow, which was commytted to warde, wer
delyuered; & so by force þei rescued per felowe fro prisone, & þat
done, þe Mair & Shyreves departed, & the prisoner was[10] delyuered, 36
which, if he had be put to prisone, had be in Iubardie of his lyfe.

[1] And C. [2] many mo C. [3] which was C. [4] anone C.
[5] tofore C. [6] he had agenst the turke conceyued C.
[7] of Ad. of the C. [8] bycause C. [9] *leaf* 197. [10] was *om* C.

And þan[1] began A Rumor in þe Cite Ayenst þe Lumbardes, And
þe same evenyng þe handcrafty peple of þe town) Arose, & come[2] to
the Lumbardes houses, & dispoyled & robbed[3] diuerse of þame;
4 wherfore þe Mair & Aldremen come with þe honest peple of þe
town, & drofe þame thens, & sent some of thame þat had stollen, to
Newgate. And þe yong man þat was rescued bi his felowes saw
þis gret Rumor, Affray & robbery, folowed[4] of his first mevyng to
8 þe Lumbard; he[5] departed & went to Westmynster to sanctuary,
or els it had cost him his lyfe, ffor Anone After come down) An
oþer determyne for to do Iustice on al þame þat so rebelled in þe
Cite Ayens þe Lumbardes, vpon[6] which satt with þe Mayr þat
12 tyme William Marow, þe Duke of Bokyngham, & many oþer
lordes, for to se execucion) done, bot þe comons of þe Cite secretely
made þame redy, & did Arme þame in þer houses, & wer in purpose
forto haue rongen þe comon beH which is named Bow BeH; but þei
16 wer lett bi sad men, which come to þe knowlege of þe Duke of
Bokyngham & othir lordes. & forthwith[7] þei Arose, for þei durst
ne lenger Abide, for þei doubted þat þe hole Cite shold haue risen
Ayenst þeme, but yett neuer-þe-lesse, ij or iij of þe Cite were Iuged
20 to deth for þis robbery, & wer honged at Tiburn.

Anone After, þe King, þe[8] Quene, & othir lordes, rode to
Covente, & with-drew þame fro London for this cause And a liteH
[9]to-fore, þe Duke of Yorke was sent fore to Grenewiche, & þer Feb 1454
24 was dischargied of þe protectorshipp, & þerle of[10] Salesbury of þe[11]
Chauncelershippe. And after þis þei wer sent for by privey seal
forto come to Covente, where þei wer almoste deceyved, & þerle of Oct 1454
Warwick also, And shold haue bene destroyed if þei had nat seen)
28 wele too.

How Lord[12] Egremond was take by þerle of Salesbury sonnes. And of þe robbyng of Sandwyche. ca^m^. cclvij.

This yere wer taken iiij gret ffisshes bitwen) Greth & London:
32 one[13] was called 'mors marine,' þe secund, A 'swerd fyssh,' & þe
other tweyn wer whalles. In þis same yere for certeyn, þer was
An[14] Affray in[15] þe North contre bitwene Lorde[16] Egremond &
þerle of Salesbury sonnes; & when thay had taken him, was had to

[1] þan *om.* C. [2] ran C. [3] & robbed & despoylled C.
[4] ensyewed C. [5] he *om.* C. [6] on C. [7] incontynent C.
[8] þe *om.* C. [9] *leaf* 197, *back.* [10] And my lord of C. [11] his C.
[12] the lord C. [13] that one C. [14] was An *om.* C. [15] done in C.
[16] the lord C.

London), & þer[1] condempned in a gret somme of money to þe said Erle of Salesbury, & þerfor committed to prison in Newgate, in London, wher, whan he had be A certayn space, he brak þe prison), & iij prisoners with him, & ascaped & went his way. 4

Also þis yere þerle of Warrewikk & his wife went to Caleys with A fayr ffelaushipp, & toke possession of his office. About þis tyme was A gret reformacion) of many monasteris of Religion, in diuerse parties of þe worlde, which wer reformed after þe first 8 Institucion), & continued in many Places. Also About þis tyme þe craft of enprinteng was fyrst found in Magvnce in Almaign, which craft is multiplied thrugh þe world in many places, & bokes ben) had gret chepe & in gret nommbre, bicause of þe same 12 craft.

July 1456 This same yere was A gret batail in þe marches bitwen Hungary & Turkey, at A place called Septedrade, where innumerable Turkes wer slayn, more by miracle þan bi mannes hond, ffor onely 16 þe hondes of God smote þeme. Seynt Iohn of Capestrane was þer present, & prouoked þe Cristen peple, beyng þen Aferde after to pursew þe Turkes, wher ane Infinite multitude wer slayn) & destroyed. þe Turkes said þat A gret nombre of Armed men 20 folowed þame, þat þei wer Aferde to turn Ageyn: [2] they wer holy Aungels.

1456 bot 7 This same yere þe prisoners of Newgate in London brake þer prisone, & [3] kept þe gate A long while; but at þe [4] last þe town gett 24 þe prison one them), & þen þei wer put in feteris & Irons, & were sore punisshed, in example of other. In this yere also was A gret erthquake in Naples, in-so-moche þat þer perisshed xl M[t] peple þat sanke þer into þerth. Item, in þe yeer xxxvj, Seynt Osmunde, 28 somtyme Bisshope of Salesbury, was Canonized at Rome bi Pope Calixt; & þe xvj day of Iuil he was translated at Salesbury bi þerchebisshope of Caunterbury & many other bisshopes. And in 1457 August after, Sir Piers [5] de Breisey seneschal of Normandy, with 32 þe Capytane of Depe & many oþer Capitaynes & men of Werre, went to þe See with A gret Navy, & come to Downes by night; & on þe morne erly, before day, þei londed & come to Sandwych, both bi land & water, & toke the town), & ryfled & dispoyled it, & 36

[1] sones, the sayd lord Egremond whome they had taken was C.
[2] *leaf* 198.
[3] prison, & wente vpon the leedes / & fought agenst them of the cyte / & C.
[4] þe *om.* C.
[5] *There is a gap in C from here to p.* 527, *line* 1.

toke many p*ri*soners, & left þe town) al naked,—which was A rich town) & mych gode þer-in,—& had w*ith* þame many ryche p*ri*soners. In this same yere, in many places of Frau*n*ce, Almaign,
4 Flau*n*dres, Holand & Ze[land, men, women &] children gadred þame by g*re*t Companyes forto go on pilg*re*mage to Seynt Micheles Mount in Norma*n*dy, which come fro fer contrees; wherof þe peple me*r*vailed; & many supposed þ*at* som*e* wicked spirite meved þame
8 so to doo; but it endured nat long, by cause of þe long way, & also for lak of vitail as þei went.

In this yere Reynold Pecok, Bisshop of Chiches*ter*, was fou*n*den an heretike, & þe iij day of Decembr*e* was Abiured at Lambeth, in
12 þe p*re*sence of þerchebisshop of Cau*n*te*r*bury & many bisshoppes & doctour*es* & lord*es* te*mper*el; & his bokes brent at Paules crosse.

Yhe haue herd tofore how c*er*tayn lordes wer slayn at Seynt Alboyns, wherfor was eu*er*more A grutche & wrath had, by þe
16 [1] heires of þame þ*at* wer so slayn; Ayenst þ*e* Duke of Yorke, þerles of Warwick & of Salesbury. Wherfor þe Kyng, by þavise of his Cou*n*cel, sent for thame to London: to which place þe Duke of York came, þe xxvj day of Ianyuer, w*ith* iiij^{c} men, & logied at
20 B*er*nardes Castel in his own place, And þe xv day of Ianiuer come þerle of Salesbury w*ith* v^{c} me*n*, & was logged in therber, his own) place. And þe*n* come þe Duke of Excetr*e* & of Som*er*sett, w*ith* viij^{c} me*n*, & lay w*ith*out Temple Barr. & þerl of Northu*m*bre*land*,
24 Lord Clifford & Lord Egremond, w*ith* xv^{c} men, & loged w*ith*out þe town). And þe Mayr þ*at* tyme, Ieffray Boleyn), kept g*re*t watche, w*ith* þe comons of þe Cite, & rode About þe Cite by Holborn) & Flete Strete w*ith* a v M^{t} men wel Armed & Araied for to kepe þe
28 pees, And þe xiiij day of Feuerer, þerle of Warwick come to London fro Caleys, wel beseen) & worsshypfully, w*ith* vj^{c} men in rede Iaquett*es*, browdred w*ith* A ragged staff behynd & Afore; & he was logged at þe Gray Freres, And þe xvij day of Marche þe
32 King come to London & þe Quene; & þ*er* was A concorde & pees made Among those lord*es*, & þei wer sett in pees. And vpon o*ur* Lady Day, þe xv day of Marche þer [2] of o*ur* Lorde M^{t} iiij^{c} lviij, þe King, Quene, & al þise lordes went in p*ro*cession at Poules in
36 London. And Anone aft*er*, þe King & þe lord*es* dep*ar*ted. In þis yere was A gret Affray in Flet Strete bitwen men of Court & men of þe same stret: In which Affray þe Quenes Attorney was slayn.

[1] *leaf* 198, *back*. [2] þer = the year.

How þe Kingₑₛ howshold mad Affray Ayenst þerle of Warrewikk; & of þe Iourney at Blorehethe. Caᵐ. cclviij.

Also þis same yeer, als þerle of Warwyk was at A Couₙceiłł in Westmynsₜₑᵣ, al þe Kingₑₛ houshold meyney gadred þame to-gedre 4 for to have slayn þe said Erle; bot, bi help of God & of his frendₑₛ, he recouered his barge, & escaped þare evyl enₜₑᵣprise, how wel þe Coques come renyng out wₒₜₕ spyttₑₛ & pestelles Ayenst him. And þe same Day he rode to-ward Warrewik; And sone Afₜₑᵣ he 8 gate him A comₘₘission), & went ouₑᵣ þe see to Caleys. Sone afₜₑᵣ þis, þerle of Salesbury comₘₘyng to London, was encouₙtred at Bloreheth [1] wₒₜₕ Lorde Awdeley, and moche oₚₑᵣ peple ordeyned forto haue destressed him; bot he, having knawlege þₐₜ he shold 12 be mett, was Accompanied wₒₜₕ his ij sonₙₑₛ, Sir Thomₐₛ & Sₒᵣ Iohn Neviłł, & A gret felawshipp of gode men. & so þei mett & fought to-gedre; wher þerle of Salesbury wan) þe feld; And þe Lorde Awdley was slayn, & many gentilmen of Chesshire, & moche 16 peple hurt; And therles ij sonₙₑₛ wer hurt; & goyng homeward afₜₑᵣward, þei wer taken, & had to Chesₜᵣₑ bi þe Quenes meyney.

Afₜₑᵣ, Calixt Pius was Pope, & was chosen þis yere Mᵗ iiijᶜ lvii./ And he was called before, 'Eneas'; An Eloquent man & A 20 poete laureat; he was embassatoure of þempₑᵣor Afore tymₑ, & he wrote in þe Couₙcel of Basile A noble tretise for þe Auctorite of þe same; Also he Canonized Seyₙₜ Kaₜₑᵣine of Senys. This Pope ordeyned gret Indulgₑₙces & pₐᵣdon to þem þₐₜ wold go Werre 24 Ayenst þe Turke, & wrote An Epistle to þe gret Turke, exorting him to be-comₑ Cᵣₒsten. & in þe ende he ordeynd A passage Ayenst þe Turks at Ancone, to which moche peple drew, out of al pₐᵣties of Cᵣₒstendomₑ; of which peple he sent many home Ayene, 28 be-cause þei suffised nat. And Anone afₜₑᵣ, he dyed at þe said Ankone, yere of oᵤᵣ Lord Mᵗ iiijᶜ lxiiij, xiiij day of Auguste.

How Andrew Trollop & þe Soudioure of Caleys forsoke þe Duke of Yorke, & þₑᵣ Maisₜₑᵣ þerl of Warrewik, in 32 the West contre. Cap. cclix.

The Duke of York, þerles of Warwik & of Salesbury, saw þₐₜ þe gouₑᵣnance of þe Reamₑ stode moste by þe Quene & hir Couₙsełł, & how þe gᵣₑₜ pᵣₒnces of þe lond wer nat called to 36 Couₙceil bot sett A-pₐᵣte; & nat onely so, but þₐₜ it was seid

[1] *leaf* 199.

thrugh þe reame þat the[1] said lordes shold be destroyed vtterly, as it[2] openly was shewed att Bloreheth bi þame þat wold haue slayn
þerl of Salesbury, þan þei, for saluacion) of *þer* lyves, & also for
4 þe comon) wele of þe reame, thought forto remedie thise thinge*s*, Assembled þame to-gedre w*ith* moche peple, & toke A feld [3]in þe West cont*re*; to which þerle of Warwik come fro Caleys, w*ith* many of þe olde soudioure*s*, as Andrew Trollop & other. In whose
8 wisdome, as for þe werre, he mych trusted. And when þei wer thus Assembled, & made *þer* feld, þe King sent out his com*m*issions & p*ri*vey seales vnto al þe lord*es* of his realme, to come & Awayt on him in *þer* moste defensable wise. And so eu*er*y man come, in
12 suche wise þat þe King was stronger, & had moche more peple þa*n* þe Duke of York & þerles of Warrewik & of[4] Salesbury. For it is here to be noted þat eu*er*y lord in Eng*lond* at þis tyme durst nat disobey þe Quene, for she rewled pesibly al þat was done About þe
16 Kyng, which was A gode, simple, & Innocent man, And þa*n* whe*n* þe King was com*m*en to þe place wher al[5] þei were; þe Duke of York & his felasship had made *þer* felde in þe stronggest wise, & had p*ro*posed verely to abyden & have fought*en*; bot in þe night
20 Andrew Trollop & al tholde soudioures of Caleys, w*ith* A gret felasship, sodenly dep*ar*ted out of þe Duk*es* oost[6] & went strayt vnto þe King*es* feld, wher þei wer receyved joyously, for þei knew þe entent of þe othir lord*es*, & Also þe man*er* of þer felde. And
24 þen þe Duke of York, w*ith* þe o*per* lordes, seyng þame so descevyd, toke A cou*n*cel shortly *þat*[7] same night, & dep*ar*ted fro þe felde, levyng behynde þame þe moste p*ar*te of *þer* peple to kepe þe feld til on þe morne. Then þe Duke of York, w*ith* his second son),
28 dep*ar*ted thrugh Walez toward Ireland, levyng his eldest son þerl of[8] Marche, w*ith* þerles of Warwyck & of[9] Salisbury, which to-gedre w*ith* iij or iiij p*er*sones, rode strait vnto Devenshyre, & þar, bi help & Ayd of one Denham, A squyer, which gat for them
32 A shipp which cost xccxx[10] nobles, & w*ith* þe same shipp sayled fro þens in to Garnesey, & *þer* refresshed þame, & fro þens sayled to Caleys, wher þei wer receyved in-to þe Castel bi þe postern, er þei of þe town) knew of it; & þe Duke of York toke ship in Wales, &
36 sayled ou*er* in-to Ireland, wher he was wel receyved.

[1] tho C. [2] it *om.* C. [3] *leaf* 199, *back.* [4] of *om.* C
[5] as C. [6] hooste C. [7] in that C. [8] of the C.
[9] of *om.* C. [10] cc xx C.

[1] How therles of Marche, Warrewik & Salesbury, entred into Caleys; & how[2] þerle of Warwik went in to Ireland. ca. cclix.[3]

Then King Henry, beyng w*ith* his oost in þe felde, nat knowing 4
of þis sodeyn dep*ar*ting, on þe morne fond none in þe felde of þe
said lordes, sent forth in al haste men to folow & p*er*sue aft*er*, to
tak þame; but þei mett nat w*ith* hem, as God wolde. Then[4] þe
King went to Ludlow, & despoiled the Castel & þe town, & sent 8
þe Duches of York, w*ith* hir child*er*, to þe[5] Lady of Bokingh*am*,
hir suster, where she was kepte long aftir. & forthw*ith* þe King
ordeynd þe Duke of Som*er*sett Capitayn of Caleys; & thise othir
lord*es* so dep*ar*ted as Afore is said, wer p*ro*clamyd rebelles & gret 12
traytour*es*. Then the Duke of Som*er*set toke to him al þe
sowdiour*es* þ*at* dep*ar*ted fro þe felde, & made him redy in al haste
to go to Caleys, & take possession of his office. And wh*en* he come,
he fou*n*de þerl of Warwick þ*er*in as Captayn, & þerles of Marche & 16
Salisbury also; & þ*an* he londed by Scales, & went to Guysnes, &
þ*er* he was receyved. And it fortuned þ*at* some of þe shippes þ*at*
come ou*er* w*ith* him come in-to Caleys haven bi þ*er* fre wiłł, for þe
shipmen ought more fav*our* to þerl of Warwik þan to þe Duke of 20
Som*er*set. In which shipp*es* wer taken diu*er*se men, as Ieuyn
Fynkhiłł, Iohn Felaw, Kaylles & Parser, which wer beheded sone
aft*er* in Caleys. And aft*er* þis, dayly come men ou*er* þe[6] See to
þise lordes to Caleys, & began to wex strenger,[7] And þei borowed 24
moche gode of þe Staple. And on þ*at* othir side þe Duke of
Som*er*sett, beyng in Guysnes, gat peple to him, which come out
& scarmusshed w*ith* þam*e* of Caleys, & þei[8] w*ith* þame; which
endured many dayes; and[9] moche peple dayly come ou*er* þe see 28
to[10] these lordes. Then on A tym*e*, by thavyse of cou*n*cel, þe lordes
at Caleis sent ou*er* Maister Denham, w*ith* A gret felawship, to
Sandwych, &[11] toke þe town, & þ*er*-in þe Lorde Ryvers, & þe Lorde
Scales his son, & toke many shipp*es* in þe haven, & broght þam al 32
to Caleys; w*ith* which shippes, [12] many mariners of þ*er* fre wiłł
come to Caleys to s*er*ue þerle of Warrewik.

And aft*er* þis, þerle of Warwik, bi þavise of þe lordes, toke al

[1] *leaf* 200. [2] as Ad. how C. [3] cclx C. [4] And thenne C.
[5] my C. [6] þe *om.* C. [7] stronger & stronger C.
[8] they of Caleys C.
[9] many dayes / During thus this same scarmuchyng / C.
[10] come over vnto C. [11] which C.
[12] *leaf* 200, *back*.

his shippes, & manned þam wel, & sayled his[1]-self into Ireland fro to speke with þe Duke of York, & to take his Advice how þei shold entre in-to England ageyn. And when he had ben þer, & done his
4 erandes, he returned toward[2] Caleys, & brought with him his moder, þe Countesse of Salesbury. Tho was[3] commyng in þe west contre, vpon þe See, þe Duke of Excestre, Admiral of Englond, beyng in þe Grace of Dieu, Accompanied with many shippes of werre;
8 which[4] mett with þe flete of þerl of Warwik[5]; but þei fought nat, for þe substance of þe peple beyng with þe Duke of Excestre ought better wiłł & more fauor to þerle[6] þan to him; & þei departed & come to Caleys in saufte, blissed be God! Then þe Kinges councel,
12 seyng þat these lordes had goten these shippes fro Sandwiche, & taken Lorde[7] Ryvers & his son, ordeyned A Garnyson at Sandwich, to Abide & kepe þe town, & made one Mountforte, Capytan of þe town, & warned[8] þat no man, ne vitail, ne merchant þat
16 shold go vnto[9] Flaundres, shold nat go vnto[10] Caleys. Then þei of Caleys seyng þis, made out Master Denhame & many oþer, to go to Sandwich. & so þei did, & Assayled þe town by water & by lond, & gat it, & brought Mountforte þer Capitayn ouer þe See to
20 Risebanke, & þer smote of his hede; & yet dayly men come ouer to þame fro[11] al parties of Englond.

How þerles of Marche, of Warwik & of Salesbury entred in to England. And of Northampton felde[12] wher diuerse
24 **lordes wer slayn. Cap^m^. cclxj.**

After[13] þis, þe said Erles of Marche, of[14] Warwik & of Salisbury come ouer to Dover with moche peple, & landed þer[15]; to whome al þe contrey drew, & come to London Armed; & for to lat þe
28 lordes of þe Kinges Counceil know þer entent & thought, þei[16] assembled þame, & told þame þat þei entended no harme vnto the Kinges person, sauf þat þei wold put fro him such persones as wer About him, & so departed fro London with A gret puysaunce
32 toward Northampton, wher þe King was, Accompayned with many lordes, & had made A strong felde with-out þe town. & [17] there bothe parties mett, & was foughten A gret batail, In which wer[18]

[1] hym C. [2] ayenetoward C. [3] And C. [4] which *om.* C.
[5] met with therle of Warwyck & his flote C.
[6] therle of Warrewyk C. [7] the lord C. [8] warned *om.* C.
[9] in to C. [10] in to C. [11] out of C.
[12] And of the felde of Northampton C. [13] And after C. [14] of *om.* C.
[15] ther londed C. [16] knowe theyr trouth and also theyr entent C.
[17] *leaf* 201. [18] batayll were C.

slayn þe Duke of Bokynham, þerl of Shrewesbury, Vicount[1] Beamont, Lorde[2] Egremond, & many knyghtes & squyers, & other Also; And þe King his[3] self taken in þe feld, & afterward brought to London. And Anone After[4] was A parlement at Westmynster, 4 During which parlement þe Duke of York come out of Ireland, with þerle of Rutland rydyng with A gret ffelasship in-to þe paleys at Westmynster, & toke þe Kinges paleys, & come in-to þe parlement chamber, & þer toke þe Kinges place, & clamed þe 8 Crown as his propre enheritance & right, & kast forth in writing his title, & also how he was rightful heyr; wherfor was moche to doo; but in conclusion it was Apoynted & concluded þat Kyng Henry shold regne & be King during his Naturel lyfe, for-as-myche 12 as he had be so long King, & was possessed; & after his deth þe Duke of York shold be King, & his heires after him; & forthwith he shold be proclamed heyr Apparent, & shold also be Protectour of[5] Englond during þe Kinges lyfe, with many oþer thinges 16 ordeyned in þe same parlement. And if King Henry during his life went fro þis Apoyntment, or any Article concluded in þe said parlement, he shold be deposed, & þe Duke shold take þe Crown & be Kyng: Al thise[6] thinges wer enacted bi þe Auctorite of þe said 20 parlement. At[7] which parlement þe commones of þe reame being Assembled in þe common house, comonyng & treting vpon þe title of þe said Duke of York, sodenly fill doun þe crown which hang þan in[8] myddes of þe said hous, which is the ffraytor of þe Abbey 24 of Westmynster, which was take for A prodige or token þat þe reign of King Henry was ended. And also þe Crown which stode on þe highest toure of þe steple in þe Castel of Dover, fil down þis same yere. 28

How þe Duke of York was slayn; And of Wakefelde felde,[9] & of þe ij^te^ jorney at Seynt Albones bi þe Quene & Prince. ca. cclxij.

Then, for-as-moche as þe Quene with þe prince was in þe North, 32 & Absented hir fro the King, & wold nat obey such thinges as was concluded in [10]þe parlement, Itt was ordeyned þat þe Duke of York, as Protector, shold go Northward for to bring in þe Quene, & subdew such as wold nat obey; with whome went þerl of 36

[1] the Vysecounte C. [2] the lord C. [3] hym C. [4] afterward C.
[5] & regent of C. [6] whiche C. [7] at the C. [8] in the C.
[9] and of the feld of Wakefeld C. [10] *leaf* 201, *back*.

Salesbury, S*ir* Thom*as* Nevile his son), w*ith* myche peple. And at Wakefeld, in C*ri*stmasse weke, þei wer al ou*er*throwen) & slayn) bi þe lord*es* of þe Quene p*ar*tye, þ*at* is to say,[1] þe Duke of York was
4 slayn), þerl of Rutland, S*ir* Th*omas* Nevil, & many mo. þerl of Salesbury was / taken[2] Alyve, & other, as Iohn Harow of London, Capitayn) of þe foot-men, & Hanson) of Hull, which wer brought to Pou*n*tfret, & aft*er* þ*er* beheded, & þ*er* hedes sent to York, & þ*er*
8 sett vpon þe yates, &c.

And þis tym*e*, þerl of Marche beyng in Shrewesbury, hering þe deth of his fadre, desired Assistence & Ayd of þe town) for tavenge his fadres deth; & fro þense went to Walys, wher, at Candelmasse
12 aft*er*, he had A batail at Mortimess Crosse Ayenst þerles of Penbrok & of Wilshire, where þerl of March had victorie. Than þe Quene, w*ith* lordes of þe north, Aft*er* þei had destressed & slayn) þe Duke of York & his felowsship, come southward w*ith* A gret m*u*ltitude
16 of peple & A gret puissance of peple, for to com*e* to þe King, to defeet such c*on*clusions as had bene taken before bi þe p*ar*lement. Ageynst whos co*m*myng, þe Duke of Northfolk, þerle of Warewick, w*ith* moche peple & ordinau*n*ce, went vnto Seynt Albones, & lad
20 King Henry w*ith* þame; & þ*er* encou*n*tred to-gedre in suche wise, & fought, þ*at* þe Duke of Northfolk & þerl of Warewick, w*ith* other of þ*at* p*ar*tie, fledd & lost þ*at* felde; wher King Henry was takyn), & went w*ith* þe Quene, & Pr*i*nce his son), which tho had
24 goten þ*at* felde. Than þe Quene & hir p*ar*tie, beyng at þ*er* Above, sent Anone to London), which was on Asshwodenesday, þe fyft day of Lent, for vitail, which þe Mayr ordeynd, bi chanes of þe Aldremen, þ*at* c*er*tayn) cartes laden w*ith* vitail shold be sent to
28 Seynt Albones to þam*e*. And whe*n* þo Cart*es* com*e* to Crepilgate, þe com*m*ones of þ*e* Cite þ*at* kept þ*at* gate, [3] toke þ*e* vitailles fro þe Carters, & wold not suffre it to passe. Then wer þ*er* c*er*teyn Aldermen & comoners Apoynted to go to Barnett forto speke w*ith*
32 þe Quenes Cou*n*sel for treatie, þ*at* þe Northeryn) men shold be sent home vnto þ*er* con*tre* Ageyn); ffor þe Cite of Londo*n* dred fore to be robbed & dispoyled if þei shold come. And thus, during þis tretye, tydinge*s* come þ*at* þerle of Warrewick mett w*ith* þerle of
36 Marche on Cotteswold, comyng fro Walys w*ith* a gret meyney of Walesshme*n*, & þat þei both wer com*m*yng to London ward.

[1] wete C.
[2] Here is a gap in C from *taken* to *men* þ*at* *wer* þ*er* (page 533, line 5).
[3] *leaf* 202.

Anone as thise tydinges wer knowe*n*, þe treaty was broken; for þe King, Quene, P*r*ince, & al þe othir lord*es* þ*a*t wer w*it*h þame, dep*ar*ted fro Seynt Albones northward, w*it*h al þ*er* peple yet or þei departed fro þens. Þei beheded þe Lorde Bonevil & S*ir* Thomas Kyriel, which wer taken in þe Iourney done on Shroft-Tuesday. Then þe Duches of York beyng at London, & hering of þe losse of þe felde at Seynt Albones, sent ou*er* þe See hir ij yong son*n*es, George & Richard, which went to Vtrecht; & Philip Malpas, a riche m*er*chant of London, Tho*m*as Vaghan, Squyer, & Will*i*am Hatteclif, & many o*þ*er, fering of þe com*m*yng of þe Quene to London, toke a-shipp of Andwarpe for to haue gone in-to Zeland; And on þ*a*t other coste wer taken of one colompne of Frenshme*n*, A shipp of Werr*e*; & he toke þame p*ri*soners, & brought þame in-to France, wher þei payd gret godes for þ*er* raunson; & þer was myche gode & rychesse in þ*a*t shipp*e*.

Of þe deposic*i*on of Kyng Henry þe vj^te^; And how King Edward þe Fourt toke possession; And of þe batail of Palme Sonday; and how he was crowned. C*ap*. cclxiij.

Than when þerle of Marche & þerl of Warwick had mett togedre on Cotteswold, In-co*n*tinent they co*n*cluded to go to London, & sent worde Anone [1]to þe Mair & to þe Cite þ*a*t þei shold come. Anone þe Cite was glad of þ*er* com*m*yng, hoping to be releued bi thame. And whe*n* þei wer com*m*yn to London, & had spoken w*it*h þe lord*es* & Astates þ*a*t wer ther, þei co*n*cluded, for-as-mych as King Henry was gone w*it*h þame Northward, þ*a*t he had forfeted his Crown, & ought forto be deposed, According to þe Actes made and passed in þe last p*ar*lement. And so, by thavice of þe lordes sp*irit*uel & temp*er*el þen beyng At London, þerle of Marche, Edward, bi þe g*ra*ce of God þe oldest son of Rich*ard*, Duke of Yorke, As rightful heir & next enheritour to his fad*re*, þe iiij^te^ day of Marche, þe yere of our*e* Lorde God M^l^ cccclix, toke possession of þe Reame of Eng*land* at Westmynst*er* in þe g*re*t hall, & aft*er*, in þabbey church; & offred as King, bering þe Sceptr*e* ryal, to whome al þe lordes, both sp*irit*uel & temp*er*el, did homage & obeisau*n*ce, to þ*er* sou*er*eyn liege & lawful lord & Kyng; & forthw*it*h it was p*ro*clamed thrugh þe Cite, Kinge Edwarde, þe Fourt of þ*a*t name. And Anone aft*er*, þe King rode in his royall Astate Northward, w*it*h al his lordes, to subdue his subgett*es* þ*a*t

[1] *leaf* 202, *back*.

tyme beyng in þe North, & tavenge his fadre deth, And vpon Palme Sonday after, he had A gret batail in þe north contre at A place called Towton, nat ferre fro Yorke, where, bi þe help of
4 God, he gat þe felde & had þe victorie; & per wer slayn) of his Aduersaries xxx^ml men & moo, As it was said by men þat wer þer. In which batail was slayn) þerl of Northumbreland, þe Lorde Clifford, Sir Iohn Nevil, þerle of Westmerlandes broþer, Andrew
8 Trowlopp, & many oþer knightes & squyers.

Then King Henry, þat had be King, beyng with þe Qvene & Prynce at York, hering þe losse of þat felde, & so moch peple slayn) & ouerthrowen), Anone forthwith departed al thre, with þe Duke
12 of Somersett, þe lorde Roos & other, toward Scotland. And þe next day King Edward, with al his Army, entred into York, & was þer proclamed King, & obeyed as he ought to be; And þe Mair & þe[1] Aldremen come in, &[2] swore to be his liege men. And
16 whan he had taried A while in þe Northe, [3]& þat al þat contre was[4] turned to him, he retorned Southwarde, levyng þerle of Warrewyck in þoo parties, for to kepe & gouerne þat contre. And About Midsommer after, þe yere of our Lord God[5] M† iiij^c lx, &
20 þe first yere of his regne, he was crowned at Westmynster, & ennoynted King of Englond, having þe hole possession of al þe hole reame; whome I beseche[6] God to preserue,[7] & send him þe Accomplisshment of þe remanent of his rightful enheritance beyonde
24 þe see, so[8] þat he may regn) in þame to þe pleyasor of Almighty God, helth[9] of his soul, honor & worsship in þis present life, & wel & profet of al his subgettes, And þat þer may be A verry final pees in al Cristen reames, þat þe Infidelis & miscreantes may be
28 withstanden & destroied, & our feith enhaunced, which in thise dayes is sore mynnshed by þe puissaunce of þe Turkes & hethen men; And þat after þis present & short life we may come to þe euer-lastyng life.[10] Amen!

32 Explicit.[11]

[1] & þo *om.* C. [2] & aldermen & comyns C. [3] *leaf* 203.
[4] & that al the countre ther had C. [5] God *om.* C. [6] pray C.
[7] god saue & kepe C. [8] & C. [9] hath Ad. helthe C.
[10] lyfe in the blysse of heuen / C. [11] Explicit *om.* C.

[H]

EXTRACTS FROM HARLEIAN MS. 53.

I.

[*The Foundation of Battle Abbey by William the Conqueror.*]

[1] When William Bastard had[2] conquert aH Englond, and was crownet kyng, and had receyvet his homages and stablisshet his pees, he passet ouer see ageyn in-to Normaundy. And att Ester next folowynge he come ageyn in-to Englond, and landit at Dover, 4 and brought with hym Maude his wif, and many faire ladies and gentiHwemen with hir, and from thens so to London, with gret nobley. and on the Wittesonday after folowyng, she was crownet be the Archbisshope of Euerwik at Westemynster, with gret 8 solempnyte and wurshipe. And þe[3] Kyng William, by counsail of his baronry, ordeynt how his Reame shuld be gouernet for the wele of the land. And he bethought hym howe he had causet gret shedynge of bloode wrongfully; wherfore he foundet an Abbay in 12 the same place where-as the batail was, & made for to clepe it þe Abbay of Bataile; and he gave there-to gret lordshippes, londes and rentes, for to pay for al the sawles that were slayn ther for his love.

¶ And after the discomfiture of the batail, ich wurthy knyght 16 of Normaundy that was there, laft a scochon of his armes, with his name peyntet, in a place of the batail clepit Southope, which was clepit 'the peyntit chamber,' in remembraunce of their[4] honour and wurshipe[5] [6]for euer; and there thei stode so long, tiH þei feH 20 doune to the erth, and many of hem were lost.[6] And In that same tyme there was one Thomas Sayntlegerd, squyer, dwellynge with the Abbot of Batail, and sawe þe gret myschef and periH that myght aftirward faH of disherytyng of hem of whome the Armes 24 were lost.[7] And of aH the scochons and names that were lafte clere, and not lost, he made for to make a faire boke, and peyntet hem therin, for cause they shuld be there founden in remembraunce for euer,[8] that al men myght fynde there their armes if thei hem not 28 knewe. And that same boke was kept in the Abbay of Bataile vnto the tyme that Kyng Henry the .Vte. shuld passe in-to Normaundy,

[1] *leaf* 76. [2] duke of Normandy had L. [3] there L.
[4] the L. [5] wurship & honour that they had there L.
[6—6] *om.* L. [7] were falle doune & lost L.
[8] be fonden therein euremore in remembrance L.

to conquere his right, and toke w*ith* hym al the gentiłł-men which had forgetoⁿ their armes; wherfore þe said Kyng sent vnto the Abbot of Bataile for to sende hym that boke of Armes; And the
4 Abbot sent to hyme the boke at his comaundement, the which boke was neuer brought ageynⁿ; and the chambre where þe armes were was not repeiret, nor none hede taken to hem; wherfore a gret part of the Armes fełł doune, and was lost and forgetenⁿ;
8 but then łłł the names and armes that were founden clere were writtonⁿ [1] in a table which is of recorde in the Abbay of Batail, the which names ben rehersit in this table next folowynge in ordre. that is to say: *

12	[-*ard*]	Purcełł	Baywałł [8]	Hanet
	Bastard	Chamełł	Meynił	Lynet
	Baynard [2]	Ridełł	Darił	Hachet
	Brassard	Russełł	Rocheł	Haket
16	Maignard [3]	Blounde	——	Truret
	Berard	Mauncełł	[-*et*, -*ot*]	Burdet
	Maureward	Torchappełł	Toret	Bret
	Beygnard [4]	Charneł	Tanet	Trevet
20	Hansard	Tireł	Tupet [9]	Bigot
	Hasard	Toreł	Bratet	Bagot
	Ayelard	Oreł [7]	Boynet	Tallebot
	Achard	Saintbreneł	Malet	Tibot
24	Swyward [5]	Tramełł	Bluet	Tabot
	Saylard	Clareł	Brachet	Lincot
	Bereward	Freseł	Belet	Lonetot
	Wishard	Wadeł	Ledet	Pigot
28	Musard	Trusseł	Pilet [10]	Tiptot [11]
	Lyard	Coudreł	Palet	——
	Giffard	Burneł	Tuchet	[-*aunt*, -*ent*,
	Picard	Busseł	Basset	-*ount*]
32	Pipard	Peverełł	Buket	Gaunt
	Gerard	Auneł	Duket	Passauaunt [*col.* 3]
	Fossard	Veeł	Piket	Niuelent
	——	Spigurneł [*col.* 2]	Mulet	Duredent
36	[-*ał*, -*eł*, -*ił*]	Loveł	Baret	Richemount
	Moreł	Crieł	Mounfichet	Nepount [12]
	Marteł	Furnyvałł	Pounchet	Neyrount [12]
	Pameł	Drutałł	Pachet	——
40	Pineł	Surdevałł	Corbet	-[-*act*]
	Ducreł [6]	Orivałł	Birset	Pountfract

[1] *leaf* 76, *back*. [2] Barnard L (Lambeth MS. 6). [3] Maynard L.
[4] Boigmard L. [5] Swyaud L. [6] L. adds Putnell.
[7] Torell L. [8] *om.* L. [9] Tapet L. [10] Pelet L.
[11] Tiptot comes 4th in the next list.
[12] These two come at the end of the *-court* list.
* The same names are given in alphabetical order on pp. 605–607.

[*-court*]
Harecourt
Bricourt
Phanecourt
Deynecourt

——

[*-y*]
Lucy
Lacy
Luncy
Darcy
Sunely
Mounteny
Barry
Berry
Curty
Tracy
Bracy
Aubeny
Perly
Cunly
Curly
Crecy
Arcy
Percy
Vescy
Verly
Soldeny
Mountanasy
Meisy[1]
Gaugy
Hercy
Mongomery
Semery
Akeny
Pleisy
Panely
Audeny
Quincy
Tuny
Massy
Welby

——

[*-ay, -ey*]
Hay
Say
Aubray[2]
Morley
Mansey
Candrey
Sancey [*col.* 4]
Curecy
Anney
Bussey
Lescey
Moubray
Gurnay

——

[*-ile, -iH*]
Morvile
Sechevile
Bernevile
Graynvile
Bontvile
Frivile
Longevile
Fresvile
Folvile
Berevile
Cannevile
Carevile
Cardevile
Asprevile
Colvile
Torevile
Barevile
Scutevile
Butevile
Vmframvile
Nevile
Grenevile
Turbevile
Arvile
Sandervile
Amondevile
Spynevile
Widvile
Wivile
Ofvile
Gorunvile[3]
Abvile
Somervile
Sonevile
Baskervile
Hanvile
Hautevile
Audevile
Dansterville
Maundevile
Souppiн *or* Soupeiн

——

[*-ampe*]
Longchampe
Nunchampe
Feschampe
Beauchamp

——

[*-er, -ere, -our*]
Passamere [*col.* 5]
Mortymer
Poer
Renger
Roter
Beler
Boner
Butteler
Despenser
Budler
Saucer
Chaucer [*]
Ferrer
Gorger
Miler
Saunzaner
Gower
Leverer
Sainteler
Saintomer
Ascher[4]
Malynoler
Hurfer
Veer
Saintleger
Gunter
Gamager
Gauter
Banaster
Venour
Vauesour

——

[*Fitz-*]
Fitz[5] Geffray
Fitz[5] Water
Fitz[5] Piers
Fitz[5] Symond
Fitz[5] Vise
Fitz[5] Hu 4
Fitz[5] Brian
Fitz[5] Garin
Fitz[5] Herbert

—— 8

[*-ace, -ars, -as, -aus; -eis, -ers, -es, -eus, -euse; -oris, -os, -urs,* 12
-uce; -is, -oise, -ose; -euges, -euse, -us, -ux]
Curteis 16
Santemareis
Beaumeis
Bleis
Greis 20
Wasteneis (*or* -eils)[6]
Curteneis[7]
Mareis 24
Seygnes
Raynes
Keynes [*tf.* 77, *col.* 1]
Freynes 28
Roos
Curthose[8]
Trauers[4]
Matroners 32
Vilers
Prers[4]
Ferrers
Moreus[9] 36
Valeus[10]
Chalurs
Saintclus
Saintmoris[11] 40
Pus
Bruce
Chalenges
Auerenges 44
Parles
Huscharles
Setvaus[12]
Taillois 48

[1] Mersy L. [2] Ambray L. [3] Gounrvile L. [4] *om.* L. [5] Filz L.
[6] Wasteneis L. [7] Cartenais L. [8] See 537, 1, 3. [9] Morens ? L.
[10] Valens ? L. [11] Saintmorioris L. [12] Setvans ? L.

Camois	[-*an*]	Veisyn	Plevien
La Heuse	Brian	Mamelbarin [2]	Saintmore
Courtheuse [1]	Baucan	Comyn	——
4 Breuse	Truan	Warenne	Wildbef [*col.* 5]
Chaundos [*col.* 2]	——	Dulapenne [*col.* 4]	Pantulf
Sainterois	[-*oun*]	——	Bardulf
Tailepas	Britou*n* [*col.* 3]	Meyne	Sanctclou
8 Marcimas	Frisou*n*	Cheyne §	Gantlou
Ferebrace	G*r*auntsou*n* [2]	Penire [*or* Pemre]	Mountegu
Fetepace	Vernoun	Tenere	——
Bars	Piroun [2]	Lysle	Rosynis [2]
12 Quatremars	Heiroun	Burle	Heris
Fyneux	Peisoun [3]	Rusak	Brok
Punegis	Leoun	Murdak	——
Eurons	Motoun [2]	Gorg*e*	Hubert
16 Manus (*or*	——	Saintgorge [2]	Lambert
Manns)	[-*yn*]	——	Foliambe [2]
Grace	Cosyn	Dalamare	——
——	Rosyn	Mire	Escot
20 [-*ayn*, -*eyn*]	Sainthelyn)	Saunzire	Kirlecot
Morteyn	Costentyn	Lunar	Trusbut
Butvileyn	Formentyn	Orrewar	Ynogre
Malemayn	Manyn [2]	Clare	Saintnoyre
24 Foleyn	Iardyn	Savage	——
Chambreleyn	Taryn	Neomarch	Zoochh [? MS.] [2]
Chastelleyn	Saintq*u*intyn [2]	SaintIohn)	Cornor
	Hamelyn	Chene § [2]	

[The Lambeth MS., leaves 111–112, leaves out a few names, spells others with slight differences, and puts in 'Putrell.']

[1] See 536, IV, 30. [2] *om.* L. [3] Tyson L.

II.

[*The battle of Crecy and the Siege of Calais,* A.D. 1346.]

28 [4]¶ And in the xix yere of his regne he went in-to **Britayne**, and into **Gascoyne** & **Gian**,[5] & w*ith* hym the Erle of **Huntyngtou***n*, þe Erle of **Warrewik**, þe Erle of **Suffolk** [6]and þe Erle of **Arundell**, and w*ith* many oþ*ir*e lord*es*, w*ith* CC
32 and .xl^ti^. shippes, onon aft*er* Mydsom*er*, to avenge hym on the wrong*es* and harmes þ*at* was done be **Philip***e* Valoys,[7] Kyng of **Fraunce**, agaynes þe truyce beforesaid made; which truys he falsly and vntrewly brake by cauelacio*un*. And he
36 come ageyne in-to **Englond***e* with-in the same yere.

[4] *leaf* 138. The words in large type are underlined in red in the MS. In other pages of the text, no difference of type is made.

[5] & Gian *om.* L. [6] *leaf* 138, *back.* [7] de Valoys L.

¶ **Of the bataile of Cressy, and of the seege of Caleys; and of the bataile of Durham where-as the Kyng of Scottes was taken; and alle in one yere.** [*This heading is underlined in red in the MS.*]

IN the yere of oure Lord. M^{t}. CCC. xlvj^{ti}. and in the xx^{ti} yere of the regne of Kyng Edward of Wyndesore, he held a parlement at Westmynster, where-as were al the lordes of the reame, spirituell and temperall.[1] At which parlement were proclame þe gret iniuries and wronges þat was done be the Kyng of Fraunce and Frenshmen in the parties of be-yonde the see, and on þe see-costes in Kent, and specialy be theym of Caleis. Wherfore þe Kyng, be the counseil of his lordes spirituall and temperall, and of al his reame, ordeynt hym to passe ouer see ageyne, to chastise the rebelles of Fraunce, and to lay seege to Caleis, which did gret harme about al þe see-cost; wherfore it was þat tyme kept with saudiours, to gret cost to þe King and the reame. And þerfore þe Kyng sent to al his frendes be-yonde the see, þat were to hym assuret, as before is said, to mete with hym in Fraunce with al þeire power and Alliaunce. And the whiles he purveid hys navey, and made his retenewe in Englond, in al þe hast he myght; of which þe namez of the chef lordes and capteyns, with their retenewe and the noumbre, folowith heraftir in this table, that is for to say:

¶ Prynce Edward with xj banerettes, C. ij. knyghtes, CC lxiiij. men of armes, CCC $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ iiij Archers on horsebak, $\overset{xx}{\text{iij}}$ ix. Archers on foote, vj^{c} Walshmen, wherof on was a chapeleyn, & anoþer a leche, and anoþer a crier. And in his retenewe was xxv^{ti}[2] vynteners, & $\overset{c}{\text{iiij}}$ & $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ footmen, & v standart berers.

¶ Henre, Erle of Lancastre, with an Erle, xj banerettes, C. $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ xiij. knyghtes, v^{c} xiij. men of Armes, and vj^{c} xij. Archers on horsebak.

¶ William Bohome, Erle of Northamptoun, with ij banerettes and xlvj^{ti} knyghtes, C and xij. men of Armes, And C. lxj of Archers on horsebak.

¶ Thomas Beauchampe, Erle of Warrewik, with iij banerettes, and lxiij knyghtes, and C and xxx^{ti} men of Armes, and C. xlj^{ti} Archers[3] on horsebak.

[1] lordes spirituall & temporal of þe reame. spirituall and temperall *om.* L.
[2] xxvj L. [3] men of armes L.

[1]¶ Richard, Erle of Arundell, *with* iij banerett*es*, and xlj^{ti}. knyght*es*, and C and .vj. men of Armes, and C liij^{ti}. Archers on horsebak.[1]

4 ¶ Robert Dufford, Erle of Suffolk, *with* on baneret, and xxvj^{ti} knyght*es*, and lviij^{ti} men of Armes, and lxiij Archers on horsebak.

¶ William Clynton, Erle of Huntingtou*n*, *with* ij.

8 banerett*es*, and xxx^{ti} knyght*es*, and $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ and xiij. men of Armes, and $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$. viij. Archers on horsebak.

¶ John Veer, Erle of Oxenford, with on baneret and xxij knyght*es*, and xliiij^{ti} men of Armes, and lxiiij Archers on

12 horsebak.

¶ Laurence Hastyng*es*, Erle of Penbrok, with on baneret, and xxxvj^{ti}[2] knyght*es*, and $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$[3] vj men of Armes, And C xxij^{ti}[4] Archers on horsebak.

16 ¶ The Erle of Kildare, *with* on baneret, and on knyght, and xxiiij^{ti}[5] men of Armes, and xxviij^{ti} hobilers.

¶ Maistre Thomas Hattefeld, bisshop*e* of Dureh*a*m, *with* iij banerett*es*, and xlviij^{ti}. knyght*es*, C lxiiij men of

20 Armes, and $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ and xv Archers on horsebak.

¶ Hugh*e* Spens*er* as an Erle, with .ij. banerett*es*, and xl^{ti} knyght*es*, and $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ and xvj[6] men of Armes, and $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ and xv Archers on horsebak.

24 ¶ [7]Rauf, Baron of Stafford, *with* ij banerett*es*, and xx^{ti} knyght*es*, & $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ and xij men of Armes, and $\overset{xx}{\text{iiij}}$ and xv Archers on horsebakke.

¶ Richard Talbot,[8] Barou*n*, Stuard of þe Kynges house, *with*

28 xiiij knyght*es*, and lx of men of Armes, and lx Archers on horsebakke.

¶ Iohn Darox[9] the fadir, Baron, with xj knyght*es*, and xlviij^{ti} of men of Armes, and lx Archers on horsebakke, and

32 xx^{ti} Archers on foote.

¶ Berthelemew Burewassh, Ban*er*et, the Kyng*es* Chamberleyn, with one ban*er*et, and xxvj^{ti}[10] knyght*es*, lxxxj of men of Armes, & lviij^{ti} Archers on horsebak, & xix on foote.

36 ¶ Waulter Manny, *with* o*þer* xxv^{ti}[11] ban*er*ett*es*, with theyre

[1—1] *om.* L. [2] xxv^{ti} L. [3] C & L. [4] CC L.
[5] xl^{ti} L. [6] xv L. [7] *leaf* 139. [8] Talbot *om.* L. [9] Barox L.
[10] & vj & xx^{ti} L. [11] xxxvj^{ti} L.

retenets, that is to say, with C xxiiij^ti knyght*es*, D[1] iiij^xx xiij of[2] men of Armes, and D iiij^xx xij archers on horsebakke, and of hobillers and Pavysers, and C xix Archers on foote.

¶ **Sir William Wareyne**, knyght*e*, with o*þ*ir iiij^xx and xv knyght*es*, CCC iiij^xx xiiij[3] pavis*er*s and hobelers on horsbakke, and xvj archers on foote. 4

¶ **Sir Waulter Wetewang**, the Kyng*es* wardrop*er*, with ij knyght*es*, and xxv^ti of men of Armes, and xxxvj^ti Archers on horsbakke. 8

¶ **Maistre Symond Islep*e***, P*r*ivey Seal, with xvij[4] men of Armes, and xij Archers on horsebakkè, and iiij Archers on foote. 12

¶ **Philip Westoñ, Clerk**, with iij knyght*es*, and xxvij^ti of men of Armes, and xxx^ti Archers on horsebakke.

¶ **William Keldesby, Clerk**, with iij knyght*es*, and lxxiij of[5] men of Armes, and lxviij Archers on horsbakke, and xij Archers on foote. 16

¶ **Sir William Daltoñ, Countroller** of þe Kyng*es* house, with o*þ*er xix Clerk*es* of dyuers officers, with an C xiiij vndir-Clerk*es* and squyers, and C xxv^ti Archers on horsebakke, and ij Archers[6] on foote. 20

¶ **William at Wode**, the Kyng*es* banerer, with o*þ*er iiij ban*er*ers, and C xxxij^ti of S*er*giaunt*es* to meñ of Armes, Scutifers of þe Kyng*es* house, s*er*geaunt*es* of diu*er*se office, and mynstrell*es*, CClxviij Archers, hobelers, ban*er*ers, messagers and yemen of þe Kyng*es* Chambr*e*, and of diu*er*se offices in þe Kyng*es* house. 24

¶ **Sir Thomas Haukestoñ**, knyght, w*ith* an C lxj of men of Armes, and CCC xiij Archers on horsbakke, and CC xlj^ti Archers on foote. 28

¶ **Maistre Siluestre Benet**, and o*per* CCC xiiij Masons, Carpent*er*s, Smythes, pavylers, mynours, Armerers, Gun*n*ers, and Artillers. 32

¶ **Sir Iohñ Ward**, knyght, with x Centenaries and l^ti men of Armes, and D[7]CC iiij^xx, and viij vyntenaries, and CC iiij^xx xviij[8] Archers on horsbakke, and D hobilers, and xv[9] M† iiij Archers on foote. 36

[1] and L (D = 500, misread as &). [2] of *om.* L. [3] & xv L.
[4] xxvj L. [5] of *om.* L. xx [6] on horsebakke and ij Archers *om.* L.
[7] D (500) *om.* L. [8] viii viiij L. [9] xvj L.

¶ Sir Howell Griffith, knyghte, with oþer ij knyghtes, and xx iiij men of Armes of Walshemen of Northwales and Southwales, and ij C and iij vintenares, and iiij M† CC Walshmen).

4 ¶ Maisters of Shippes, and Constables, maryners, and pages, þe nombre of DCC: þe nombre of maryners, bargers, and balyngers and vitailers, xvj M†.

¶ And thes ben þe names of the Aliens which were þe
8 Kynges frendes, and in his Sande that same tyme, and halp hym in his werres in Fraunce. *scilicet*:—

[1]¶ Lodewik, the Emperoure of Rome, with a certeyn men of Armes.

12 ¶ Reynold, Duke of Gildre, with a certeyn-men of Armes.

¶ Iohn̄, Duke of Braban, with a certeyne men of Armes.

¶ William, Erle of Henawde, with a certeyne men of Armes.

¶ Tederik, lord Faukemand, with a certeyne men of Armes.

16 ¶ Corald of Marke, with a certeyne men of Armes.

¶ Bertold, Erle of Baiespath, Maurchion de Brandesburghe, and othir knyghtes and squyers, straungers, witholden) with þe Kynge.

20 ¶ Baudewyn̄, Archbisshope of Treeue, with a certeyn) men.

¶ Archbisshope[2] of Magunenser with a certeyn) men.

¶ Guilmyn, Marchion Iuliacen, with a certeyn) men.

¶ The Erle of Helsteyn), with oþer xxiiij^ti knyghtes alieyns,
24 clepit 'Nethirbandes,' and C xx iiij viij of men of Armes, and C lxvj pavisers.

¶ The Erle of Freyburghe, with oþer xl^ti knyghtes alieyns, clepit 'Euerbandes,' &[3] CC xxxiiij^ti of men of Armes and C
28 xx iiij ix[4] pavisers.

¶ The nombre of þe retenue, without Alieyns, that is to say, of erles, barons, banerettes, knyghtes, men of armes, Constables, Centeners, capteyns, vynteners, Archers on horsbak, hobelers,
32 Archers of[5] foote, and Walshmen, as þe rolles of þe retenu make mencion, is xxv^M. CC xx iiij. ¶ The nombre of Masone, carpenters, smythes, pavilloners, Armerers, Gunners and artillers, is CCC xiiij.

¶ The nombre of þe maisteres of shippes, Constables, maryners
36 and pages of shippis, bargers, balyngers, and vitteilers is xvj. M^l.

¶ When Kyng Edward had made his retenu and his Armee

[1] *leaf* 139, *back*. [2] The erchbisshop L. [3] & *om.* L.
[4] clxvi L. [5] on L.

in þis wise as before is said, and his navey was redy, he shippit the xij^{te} day of Iule, the yere of our Lord M.^{t} CCC xlvj^{ti}, and saylet toward **Normaundy**, and londit at **Hogges**, and restet hym ther vj daies, and vnshippit his pepiꝗ; and þen went he 4 toward **Cane**, brennyng & distrying eu*er* as he went by þe way. And þe xxviij^{ti} day of Iuyle, at þe brigge of Cane, that was strenghet be Normaund*es*, he had there a gret bataile, and long*e* duryng, thrugh*e* g*r*et multitude of pepil þat was þ*er* slayn); and þ*er* 8 was take þe Erle of **Elbe**,[1] the Lord **Tankervile**, and an C knyght*es* and men of Armes, and vj^{C} footemen; and al þe sub-barbes to þe hard walles was born) and cariet away, al þ*at* couth be cariet. And so þe Kyng passet forth in þe cuntrey, and wastet 12 and distryet xx^{ti} myle in brede.

¶ **Philip of Valois**, Kyng of **Fraunce**, was fast by w*ith* a gret host, and hard þ*er*of, and wold not come ou*er* þe wat*er* of **Seyne**, but brake al the brigges beyonde þe wat*er*, from **Roan** to **Parise**, 16 and fled w*ith* his host to Parise. ¶ When Kyng **Edward** come to þe wat*er* of **Seyne**, he fand al þe brigg*es* broken; but w*ith*in ij daies he made a brige ageyne. and on þe morowe aftir oure Lady day Assu*m*pcion, he passet ou*er* þe **Water of Seyne**, and 20 went toward **Cressy**, & distryet by þe way, townes, and þe pepiꝗ in hem. And in þe Fest of Saynt **Berthelemewe**, he passet the wat*er* of **Su*m*me** vnhurt, w*ith* al his host, where-as neuer was no passage before þat tyme; And yet þ*er* ware ij Mt Frenshmen to 24 haue lette his passage. And þen, þe xxvj^{ti}[2] day of August, **Edward** faught beside **Cressy**, in a feld, havyng iij batayles of Englishmen, & Philip*e* of Valois iiij batailes: þe lest batail passet þe nomb*er* of Englishmen. And when þe ij hostes mette to-gedre, 28 ther [3]fell in-with the host of **Fraunce**, the Kyng of[4] **Beame**, þe Duk of **Loryn**, And o*þer* Erles, as of **Flaundres**, **Dalison**, **Blois**, **Harecourt**, **Aunard**, and[5] **Navers**, and many o*þer* lord*es* and barons, knyght*es* and men of Armes, the nombre of j 32 Mt CCCCC and xlij^{ti}, without footemen. And yette for al this, **Phelip** the Kyng[6] withdrowe hym with the residew of aꝗ his pepiꝗ; wherfore it was said among his oune mewe "**Nostre beal retreit**," that is to say, 'Oure faire withdrawethꝗ hym.'[7] 36 ¶ And thus Kyng **Edward** had þe Victory; and there he and his pepiꝗ hem restet, and thanket God. and on þe morow after, þe

[1] þe Erle of Elbe *om.* L. [2] vj L. [3] *leaf* 140. [4] kyng Ha. king of L.
[5] Aunard and *om.* L. [6] þe king Phelipe L. [7] hym *om.* L.

Frensh*e* men come ageyne with a gret host to gyve Kyng **Edward** bataile; but the Erle of Warrewik mette with hem, and þe Erle of Norhamptou*n*, and þe Erle of **Suffolke**, w*ith* theire meyny, and
4 slowe of hem ij M^{t}, and toke many of the gentils prison*er*s; and al þe remenaunt fled iiij lekes thens. And thrid day after, the[1] Kyng **Edwerd** went toward **Caleis**, distrying al þe cuntrey as he rode, and laide[2] seege to **Caleis**[3] þe iij^{de} day of **Septembr*e***, with
8 the CasteH, and contynuet þe sege stiH[4] from that day vnto þe iij^{de} day of Aust the next yere folowyng.

¶ Whiles Kyng Edward lay at Seege of[5] **Caleys**, a gret power of Scottes come in-to **Englond**, to Nevilcros, about **Saint**
12 **Luyk** day, wenyng to haue founden al þe land destitute and voide of men, because the Kyng was beyonde þe see with a gret host; [6]þei wend *per* had be non lafte at home, but prest*es*, men of religion, plowmen and laborers;[6] but, thanket be God! they fand[7] enow to
16 wiststonde hem: they robbit and made gret distrucc*i*on; And so ther was a day of Batail sette betwene hem and certeyn lord*es* and meñ of holy chirch that were in that cuntrey, and þe comyn pepiH; at which batail, throw Godd*es* myghte, [the Scottes] were[8]
20 discomfit, notwithstondyng they were iij meñ ageyne one of Englissh*e* meñ.[9] And þere were slayne the chiualry of **Scottelond**; and there was Dauid, the Kyng of **Scottes**, taken fleying, smytte thrugh*e* þe nose with an Arowe, be a yoman that was
24 callet **Copeland**; and there was take, the Erle of **Moriss**, Sir **William Douglas**, and many o*per* gret meñ. And this batail was done beside **Dereham**, the xvij day of Octobr*e*, the yere of oure Lord aboue-said. And when þe bataile was done, þe Englissh*e*
28 men hem restet a fewe dayes, and ordeynt kepers of the north countrey, and after came to London, and broȝt w*ith* hem þe Kyng of **Scottes**, and o*per* lord*es* that were take p*ri*soners, and led hem to þe Toure, where-as they abode of þe comyng of Kyng **Edward**
32 out of Fraunce; and aftir that was raunsont at C M^{t} marc*s*, to be payde in x yere, ich yere x M^{t} marc*s*.

[1] the *om.* L. [2] laide þerto L. [3] to Caleis *om.* L.
[4] Septembre which seege continued still L. [5] att L.
[6—6] *om.* L. [7] fande men E. [8] were þe scottes L. were Ha.
[9] of englissh*e* meñ *om.* L.

¶ Of the Conquest of Caleis by Kyng Edward of Wyndisore; and of the tresou*n* that was ordeynt for Caleis by one Sir Geffrey Charney. [*Big writing underlined in red in the MS.*]

EDward, Kyng of Englond contynuet at þe seege stiH aH the wynte*r*, and Philip Valois, Kyng of Fraunce, purpaset hym w*ith* some fraude to putte hym fro þe seege, and come the xxvij^ti^ day of Iuyle, þe yere of oure Lord M† CCC xlvij^ti^ to CalkeweH, a myle and an half from Caleis, with a g*r*et host; and sent to Kyng Edward, and askit hym whedir he durst feight w*ith* hyme the iij^de^ day, about euensonge tyme, and leve þe seege. And Kyng Edward onon, w*ith*-out eny counsaile or avisement, acceptet gladly the day; and yette much of his pepiH wer seke and ded on þe fflux. ¶ When þe Kyng of Fraunce wist verely that he wold feight, with-out eny avisement or long tarying he sette his loggynge*s* on fyre, and went cowarly his way.

III.

[*From Bolingbroke's return*, A.D. 1399, *to* A.D. 1405.]

[1]¶ When Kyng Richard had tithynge*s* in Irlond, that Henry of Boleynbroke, Duyke of Herford, was comynꝯ into Englond, he lafte al his ordynaunce in Irlond, and hastet hym into Englond, in al that he myghte, and come vnto the casteH of [2]Flynt in Wales, and there he abode, to take his counsaile what was best for to done; but ther come no counsaile to hyme. And in the menewhile, Henry Boleynbrok [3]come [to] Herford, and [þe] Erle of Derby[3] come to Chestre, and loggit in the CasteH, [3]with-in the Inner ward þe*ro*f, which casteH Kyng Richard had riolly repeiret, and made w*ith* hert*es* of frestone betwene ich lope, with crownes and cheynes about theire nekk*es*, for he lovit wele that place[3] // And then was there sent vnto the casteH of Flynt, Maiste*r* Thomas ArundeH, Archbisshope of Caunterbury, and Sir Henry P*er*cy, Erle of Northu*m*brelond, and othir lord*es*, both spirituaH and temp*er*aH; and there was much thyng spoken of betwene þe Kyng and hem, by gret othis and suyrtees made, that he shuld come vnto Chestre savely, and[4] spek with the Duyk, and be delyu*er*t savely ageynꝯ to the said casteH: which othis and suyrtees were not al parfowremet.

[1] *leaf* 152, at foot. The red underlines are not now markt by difference of type.
[2] *leaf* 152, *back*. [3—3] *om.* L. [4] to L.

And so come the Kyng ridyng vnto Chestre [1]and yong Henry with hyme, that was þe eldest sone of the said Duyk of Herford[1] // and was loggit in the vtterward of the casteH of Chestre.[2] Then
4 Kyng Richard vndirstood and knewe wele that it was not wele on[3] heire[4] syde. And the same nyght, after that[5] Kyng Richard was gone to Chestir, Sir Thomas Percy, Erle of Wircestre and stuard of the Kynges howsold, come into the haH amonges the pepiH, and
8 there he brak the rodde of his office, and bade enery mañ do his best; And so went ich man his way.

¶ Then þe Kyng and[6] the Duyk mette and spake to-gedirs in þe haH of þe said CasteH, [1]that was in the vtterward,[1] a longe
12 while, and aftir departet; and in[7] the departyng, Henry, the sonne and heire of the said Duyk, come to his fadir, and knelit doun before hym, and welcomet hym, as hym aught to do; And there forthwith his fadir hym charget the next day to come from the
16 Kyng, and waite vppon) hym. ¶ Then this yong knyght Henry brought þe Kyng to his chambre with a sorowfuH hert, for cause he shuld depart from his godfadir and his Souerayne Lord, for he louet hyme enterely. And when he come into the Kynges
20 chambre, he tolde the Kyng how he most, the next day aftir, wayte vppon) his fadir, be streyt and hard comaundement. And then þe kyng said to hym) the[s]e wordes: ¶ "Good sonne Henry, I gyve thè good[8] leve to do thy fadirs comaundement; but I knowe
24 wele there is on Henry shal do me much harme; and I suppose it is not thowe. Wherfore I pray thè be my frende, for I wot now howe it wil go." And so on the next day aftir, Henry toke his leue of þe Kyng his godfadir with an hevy hert, and went to his
28 fadir, Duyk of Herford. And after that, was the Kyng arestet in the same CasteH by the said Duyk, and al his meyny that were about hym put away; and such men were put about hym as the Duyk wold. Then from thens he was broughte to London), and, by
32 assent of al þe lordes, putte in þe Toure. [1]And on Saint Laurence even, þe hed of Perkyn) of Lee was smyt of vnder the Iubet[9] of Chestre.[1]

[1–1] *om.* L. [2] of Chestre *om.* L. [3] in L. [4] his L.
[5] that *om.* L. [6] þe kyng and *om.* L. [7] at L.
[8] good *om.* L. [9] gibbet L.

[1] ¶ **Of the deth of Kyng Richard, and of othir dyuers Duke*s*, Erles, and barons moo.** [*Big writing, underlined with red.*]

IN the first yere of the regne[2] of Kyng Henry the iiij^te^, Kyng Richard, which þat was put doune of[3] his Rialte, was in þe 4 CasteH of Pountfret vndir þe ward of Sir Robert[4] of Watirton, knyght[5]; and þere he was ich day servet [as] a[6] Kyng aught to he, that he myght se it; but he myght come to non *þer*of; wherfore sone aftir he deyd for honger in prisoñ in þe same CasteH[7]; and so 8 he made his ende. ¶ And when Kyng Henry wist verely that he was ded, because much pepiH said he was on lyve many a day after, he made to sere hym, and cloþe hym in[8] lynnen Cloth, al saave onely the visage; and that was lafte open, that men myght se and 12 knowe his p*er*sone from al o*þer*; and so was he brought with torch-light vnto Paulis at Londoñ, and had þere his masse and dirige, and þe same wise at Westemynster; and þen from Paules he was brought*e* to Langeley, and þere he was enteret. 16

¶ That same yere Kyng Henry the iiij^te^ held his Cristemas in þe CasteH of Wynnessore: and on the xij^te^ even come to hym the Duke of Awmarle, and told hym how þat he and þe Duke of Surry, þe Duk of Excestre, and þe Erle of Salesbury and þe Erle 20 of Gloucestre,[9] and o*þer* moo of theyre Affynyte, were accordit to make a mu*m*my*n*g vnto þe said Kyng Henry on xij^te^ day at nyght, in[10] which mu*m*myng þei purpaset to sle hym. ¶ When[11] Kyng Henry þe iiij^te^ was thus warnet, he rode in hast þat same 24 nyght pryvely to London, to gete hym socoure and counsaile. But assone as þe forsaid lord*es* wist and knewe that their counsaile were discou*er*t openly, they fled, eu*er*y man his way; And aftirward thei were taken in certeyn places of Englond be þe comyns, and hedit, 28 and þeire hedis sette on London Brigge, [12]and theire bodyes quartert, and sett vp in dyu*er*s townes of Englond.[12] Whos names folowen her*e* aftir[13] in þis table, and the places where þei wer taken, and hedit: 32

Att Circestre were taken with hem of þe toune	The Duke of Surry and Erle of Kent[14] The Erle of Salesbery The Erle of Oxenford	quart*er*et[15] and hedit.

36

[1] *leaf* 153. [2] of the regne *om.* L. [3] from L. [4] Henry L.
[5] knyght *om.* L. [6] a Ha. as a L. [7] in þe same CasteH *om.* L.
[8] on L. [9] and þe Erle of Gloucestre *om.* L. [10] on L.
[11] And when L. [12—12] *om.* L. [13] aftir *om.* L.
[14] and Erle of Kent *om.* L. [15] And þes thre were quartered L

At Oxenford were take *with* hem of þe toune . { Sir Thomas Blount, Sir Rauf Lu*n*nay, Sir Benet Sely } knyghte*s* ; Thoma*s*[1] Wynte*r*sshiH squyer } quate*r*et and hedit.

4

At PritweH in a mylne was take by th[e] Comyns . . . . . { Sir IohN Holand, Duyk of Excestre } And quarte*r*et,[2] and hedit at Plasshe in Essex.

8 At Bristow was take by hem of þe toune . . { The Erle of Gloucestre and Lord Spencer. } quarte*r*et and hedit.[3]

[4]And aftirward in that[5] same yere, was Sir Bernard[6] Brocas, knyght, [7]and Sir IohN Shelley, knyght*e*, And Sir IohN Mawde-
12 leyne and Ferby, p*ar*sones of Kyng Richard ChapeH,[7] take, and put in þe Toure of Londone; and there they were iuget to the deth[8], [7]theire hed*es* to be smyttoñ of, and sette on Londoñ Brigge: and so they were. ¶ That same yere, Queene IsabeH, that was the
16 wiff of Kyng Richard the Secunde, was dischargit of hir dowery, and sent home in-to Fraunce ageyne with many rich gyftes.[7]

¶ Of the werre of Wales betwene the Lord Gray of Rithen and Oweyn of Glyndore of Wales, and of the bataile of
20 Shrewisbury. [*Big writing, underlined with red.*]

IN the secunde yere of the regne of Kyng Henry the iiij^te^, was Sire Rog*er* of Claryntou*n*, knyght, and the Pryoure of Launde, and viij Freres Mynoures,—[7]wherof som*me* were maisters of
24 dyvinite[7]—and o*per* moo, were, for tresone, drawe and hanget at Tiburne.[9] ¶ That same yere ther began a gret discenc*i*on and a debate in Wales betwene þe Lord Gray of þe RithyN and Oweyne of Glyndore, Squyer of Wales, for bying of an hare in the market.
28 This Oweyne Arerit a gret nombre of Wa[l]sshe-men, and distroyet þe lordeshipes of the Lord Gray, and of þe Kynge*s* also, and did much harme through-out Wales, and robbet and slowe the Kynges pepiH, both Englissh and Walsh. and the Lord Gray distroyet, on
32 his party, al þat held with þe said Oweyne; And this werre endurit xij yere. ¶ And at last this Oweyne toke the Lord Grey, Prisoner, and were raunsont for V^C^[10] prisone*r*s of Walsh-men of the March[11];

[1] And Thomas L. [2] And quarte*r*et *om.* L.
[3] quarte*r*et and hedit *om.* L. [4] *leaf* 153, *back.* [5] þe L.
[6] Tho*m*as L. [7]—[7] *om.* L. [8] Iuged & put to deth L.
[9] at Tiburne *om.* L. [10] vj C L. [11] of the March *om.* L.

and þe Lord Gray at last to wedde his doughter, and kept hym there with his wiff; and sone after he dyet. ¶ Then went the Kyng in-to Wales with a gret power, to distry this Oweyne and þe rebelles of Wales; but þe Walssh men fled vp on hye mounteynes, 4 where-as þe Kyng couth in no wise come to hem; and so þe Kyng sped not þere; wherfore he retournet home ageyne. [1]And þat same yere was a gret drourth and a scariste of whete, so that a quarter was wurth xvj^{s}. 8

¶ That same yere Sir William Sawtre, preest, was brent in Smythfeld, for eresy; and that yere Sir Roger Waldeyne and Sir Richard Clidrowe qvytte[2] by a quest of men of Londoñ. and that same [yere] was a bataile on Halydoun Hylle betwene 12 Englissh-men and Scottes, where-as was taken þe Erle Douglas, and his one ey smytte out, and þe Erle of Moriss, and many othir lordes, knyghtes and squyers; and so, as God wold, thenglissh men had þe feld and þe victory.[1] 16

¶ In the iij^{de} yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry the iiij^{te},[3] Apperit a sterre in þe firmament [1]in the west, in þe monyth of Feueryere,[1]— which wes clepit the 'blasyng sterre,' [1]and of clerkes it was clepit 'stella Comata.'[1] Anon after, feH a debate betwene þe Kyng and 20 Sir Henry Percy, that was callet amonge þe Scottes 'Henry Hatespurre.' This Syre Henry come vnto þe Kyng, and asket of hym certeyn wages that he was behynde, for þe kepyng and wardeynshipe of þe Marches, and þe kyng hym gave but a light Answare. 24 And Sir Henry Percy said 'he quyt hym not to hym as he shold do, for,' he said, 'ne had he ben, he had neuer be Kyng of Englond.' The Kyng then, with that word was sore mevyt, and with his fist stroke Sir[4] Henry Percy on þe cheke. And þen Sir Henry, sore 28 aggrevid, said the[s]e wordes vnto the Kyng: "In faith, this shal be the derrest-boght buffet that euer was in Englond"; and with þat word [1]turnet the bakke, and[1] toke his hors, and rode his way with his meyny [1]that come with hym.[1] When þe Kyng had smytten 32 Sir Henry thus, as before is said, yet he was sory þerof, and hym repentet, and sent for Sire Henry ageyne; but he wold come to þe Kyng in no wise, but rode forth, and rayset a gre[te] pepiH of diuers shires, and specialy of Chestre-shire; and on Saynt Mary 36 Mawdeleyne eueñ next folowyng, the yere of owre[5] Lord I .M^{t}. CCCC. iij.,[6] was a gret bataile besydes Shrewesbery, betwene Kyng

[1—1] *om.* L. [2] qvytte = were acquitted. [3] the iiij^{te} *om.* L.
[4] Sir *om.* L. [5] *om.* Ha. owre L. [6] & iij L.

Henry þe iiij^te[1] and þe said Sir Henry Percy, by false counsaile and
wikket steryng of Sir Thomas Percy, Erle of Wircestre, and vncle
vnto the said Henry Percy. in which bataile was slayne, first, Sir
4 Henry Percy hym self,[2] and þe moost party of his pepiH; and Sir
Thomas Percy, Erle of Wircestre[3] was taken, [4]and was kept ij
dayes, and after was drawe[4] and[5] hanget, [4]and his hed smytton
of, and sette on Londoñ Brigge. And in that same batayle,[4] on[6]
8 þe Kynges party, was slayne The Erle of Stafford, and Sir Waltere
Blount in þe Kynges cote Armure [4]vnder þe Kynges baner,[4] &
[7]many othir wurthy knyghtes and Squyers and good yemen.[8] And
in that same bataile þe Prynce was smytte thrugh þe hed with an
12 Arowe; and yet God fortunet that he lyvit. [4]And Sir Iohn of
Stanley, knyght, was smytte in the throte with an Arowe; and
when þe bataile was done, the Kyng sent to hym, and to wete of
hym what he shuld do with Chestirshire, for-as-much [as] they
16 were ageynes hym. And he Ansuard þe messager, so as he myght
speke rattelyng in þe throte, and said, "Brenne and sle! Brenne
and sle!" And þe Kyng asket what he said; and he þat was sent
to hym said to þe Kyng that he shuld take hem to grace; and so
20 the Kyng þen hem toke to grace; and al þat wold ask grace þat
were taken, had grace and forgyvenes; but aftir þe bataile the
Kynges meyny come into Chestirshire, and dispoylet þe cuntre in
euery part, and bare away the goodes that couth be caryet.[4]
24 ¶ This bataile was þe heviest, and vnkyndest and sorest batail þat
euer was before that tyme in Englond; for ther was þe sonne
ageynes þe fadir, and the brothir ageynes brothir,[9] and kynne
ageynes kynne; [4]and þer was beriet in on pitte xj^C men; in which
28 place is nowe a ĊhapeH of oure Lady, & prestes syngyng for the
sawles. And thys bataile was the yere of oure Lord aboue-sayd,
wherof a versifier makith mencion, And sayth on thys wyse:

Anno Milleno quadracenteno-*que* trino,
32 Bellum Salopie fuerat in Mag[ne] Mari[e] nocte.

How Dame Iaňne, Duchess of Britayne, come into Englond, and weddit vnto Kyng Henry the iiij^te. And of the comyng of þe Emperoure in-to Englond.[4] [*Big writing, underlined with red.*]

[1] MS. þer^te. [2] and hym self Ha. hym self *om.* L.
[3] Erle of Wircestre *om.* L. [4]—[4] *om.* L. [5] And aftirward L.
[6] And on L. [7] *leaf* 154. [8] and good yemen *om.* L.
[9] the broþer L.

IN the iiij^te yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry the iiij^te [the] Emperoure of Constaigynnople come in-to Englond, to se þe gouernaunce and þe conveyaunce of þe land, and þe comoditees, on þe Kynges cost; and when he had seyne al þat he wolde, he went 4 ageyne. And þat same yere, Dame Iahne, Duches of Britayne, come into Englond, and landet at Falmouthe in Cornewaile, and was weddit vn-to Kyng Henry þe iiij^te at Wynchester, in the Abbay of Saynt Swithyn, and sone aftirward was crownet at 8 Westemynster. ¶ And þat same yere, Dame Blaunche, the eldest daughter of Kyng Henry þe iiij^te,[1] was sent with Sire Iohn Beaufort, Erle of Somerȝed, hir vncle, and with Maistre Richard Clifford, that tyme Bysshope of Londone, and oþer notable persones, vnto 12 Coleyne; and þer was she weddit vnto þe sone of þe Duke of Barry; and after þe ffest of þe mariage was done, þe saide Erle and Bisshope come into Englonde ageyne.

Of the bataile of Mark. [*Big letters, red underlines.*] 16

¶ In þe v^te yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry þe iiij^te, þe Lord Thomas, þe sonne of Kyng Henry, and þe Erle of Kent, with many oþer wurthy men, went to þe see; and they landit at Scluys, and made þere a gret assaut, and brent [2]in þe Ile of Cageant, and token[2] 20 iij karrikkes of Geene, lade[3] with diuerse[4] Marchaundise, and hem brouȝt into þe Cambre[5] before Winchilsey; [2]and þere þe goodes were cantet, and one of þe karrikkes was sodanly brent; and so þe said lordes went no ferther at þat tyme.[2] 24

¶ And that yere, in þe xxiiij^ti. day of Iunij, the Erle of Saynt Paule laide seege to þe CasteH of Mark, iiij myle out of Caleys, with iiij M^l men, and diket hem stronge with-in þe toune of Mark,[6] Iohn[7] Beaufort, Erle of Somerȝed, that tyme beyng Capteyn of Caleis, [2]and 28 Sir Richard of Asshton, knyghte, his leotenaunt; which Richard,[2] with the garison of Caleis, allonely[8] went to Mark, and faught with þe Frensshmen long, and entirt in on hem at þe Northgappe, [2]and at þe west gappe,[2] and slow and toke al that wolde abide. And þe 32 Erle of Saynt Paule hym-self fled his way, [9]be þe marreys; and or þe bateH wes done, Sir Iohn Beaufort, Erle of Somerȝed and Capteyne of Caleys, come out of Englond, and landit at Caleys,

[1] þe eldest doughtir of king henry dame Blanch L.
[2—2] *om.* L. [3] with lade Ha. [4] diuerse *om.* L.
[5] into þe Cambre *om.* L. [6] of Mark *om.* L. [7] But Iohn L.
[8] of Caleis allonely *om.* L. [9] *om.* L to line 2, next page.

and went to Mark, and come to þe ende of þe discumfiture of þe Frenssh-meñ[9]: And þer was taken the Lord Hanget and[1] many wurthy prisoners of[2] knyghtes, squyers, [3]and meñ of Armes. and
4 þis bataile was done þe yere of oure Lorde aboue [said, Mł] CCCC v,
? and on saynt Crispyne and Crispianes day, as a versifier makes þerof mencion, and saith[3]: [*No verses follow in the MS.*]

IV.

[*From the first year of Henry V*, 1413, *to the third year*, 1415.]

[4]And in þat same yere, on Twelft Night, certeyne lollardes were
8 arested at the signe of þe Ax, without Cripilgate, at London, which had purposet, thrugh þeire false treson, to haue made a mummyng at Eltham, where þe Kyng was; and vnder þe coloure of the mummyng, they wold have distryet þe Kyng, and þe lordes spirit-
12 uał and temperał, and all þe clergy of þe Reame. And þey had cast to haue taken þe feld be-side Saint Giles; but, as God wold, þe Kyng þerof had warnyng, and come to London, and with hym þe Bisshope[5] of Caunterbery, and toke þe feld beside Saint Iones
16 and Clerkyn-wełłe, and made to kepe al þe hye wayes to London; and so were thei taken ay as they come thidirward. And in London was tak Sire Roger Acton, knyghte, and was drawe & hanget be-side Saint Giles, where þe Kyng lete do make iiij paires
20 of gallous, þat were callet 'þe lollers galowes.' And þer wes take, Syre Iohn Beuerlay, a prest, and Iohn Broune, a squyere, and many oþer moo, þe nombre of xxxviij persons and moo, and were draw, hanget and brent. ¶ And Sir Iohn Oldcasteł, þe Lord
24 Cobbam, was arest at Wyndesore for heresy, and was sent to þe Toure of London; and sone after, he was examynt at þe[6] ffrere prechours, before al the[7] clergy of þe wurthiest of religion, and bisshoppes, and doctours of dyvinite; and þer were temperal lordes
28 to here hys opynions. and after, he was sent vnto þe Toure ageyn; but sone after he brake out of þe Toure, and went in-to Walis. ¶ And þat same yere Iohn Sere, a squyer, slowe Tibey,[8] a prest in [9]London, beside Aldrichgate,[10] and þen toke the chirch of Saint

[1] the Lord Hanget and *om.* L. [2] prisoners of *om.* L.
[3—3] *om.* L. [4] *leaf* 155, *back.* [5] erchbisshop L.
[6] þe *om.* L. [7] al Ha. al the L. [8] Tibey *om.* L. [9] *leaf* 156.
[10] beside Aldrichgate *om.* L.

Anne; wherfore þe Kyng made þe Cite to wach hym þ*er*, day and nyght, duryng iij wok*es*; and þen was he muret vp in the chirch̄: þen he and iij of his mene forswore þe londe, and went in-to Fraunce, and there he dyet. 4

¶ And in þe seconde yere of his regne, he helde a gret counsaile at Westmyn[s]t*er*, with al þe lord*es* of his Reame, spirituall and temp*er*all: where it was tretit and spoken of his title þat he had to Normaundy, Gascoyn*e* and Gyan, which was his enheritaunce of 8 right*e*. and after, he held a gret p*ar*lement at Leicestre, where, be thavice of al his lord*es* of his Counsaile, and of þe comyns of his land, he sent in-to Fraunce his enbassato*urs*, to þe Kyng there and to his Counsaile, requirynge hem to yelde vp to him his said 12 enheritaunce, or elles he lete hem wete he wold it gete with þe sword, by þe help*e* of Ih*es*u Crist. ¶ Then þe Dolfyn of Fraunce, Charles, ansuard to þe Kyng*es* enbassatours, and said: "youre Kyng of Englond is ou*er*[1] yong and tendre of age to be a good 16 werrioure, and not like to make such a conquest on Fraunce."

¶ Then þe Kyng*es* enbassatours, heryng this scornfull ansuare, retournet in-to Englond ageyn*e*, and told þe Kyng and his Counsaile the ansuare and þe entent of þe Dolfyn and of þe Counsaile of 20 Fraunce. ¶ The Kyng then was þ*er*with sore amevide; and onon in al hast made redy his ordinaunce necessary for þe werre, and lete make .iij. gret shippes—one of xv^{c} tonne þat was clepit þe 'Gracedieu,' and þe 'gost' and þe 'trynite,' smaller shippes. and 24 he lete ordeyn*e* and make gret gunnes, and al oþ*er* ordynaunces, and made his retenewe, And comaundet his lordys, duk*es*, erles and[2] barons, knyght*es*, squyers,[3] and al oþ*er* comyn*er*s, masons, carpenters, and al[4] artificers, to make hem redy to go with hym 28 into Fraunce, to help hym wynne his heritage and his right*e*, and to mete with hym on Lam*m*as Day at Southampton, where he ordeynt his navey to be þ*er*, redy to abide his comyng: [5]whidir come many shippes out of Holynd.[5] And when þe kyng was redy, 32 he come to Southampton on Lam*m*as day,[6] where-as mette hym al his pepill; and þ*er* was he redy[7] to take his viage [5]in-to Normandy.

At which day[5] it was puplisshit, and openly knowen, þat iij 36 lord*es*, þat is to say, Richard, Erle of Cambrigge, broþ*er* to Edward,

[1] ou Ha. ou*er* L. [2] and *om.* L.
[3] & squyers L. [4] al oþir L. [5—5] *om.* L.
[6] on Lam*m*as day *om.* L. [7] And as he was redy L.

Duyk of York, and þe Lord Scrope, Tresourer of Englond, and Sir Thomas Gray, knyght, had receyuet a gret somme of money, þat is to say, a M[t] pounde of gold,[1] and had sold þe Kyng vnto þe
4 Frensshmen) and his brether.[2] Wherfore they were onon taken) and Iugit, their hedis to be smytton) of; and so they were, [3]without þe Southgates at Southampton).[3] And when that was done, þe Kyng shippit with his host, and so saylet in-to Normaundy[4] with
8 xv[c] shippes, gret and smaH, And arryvet at Kittance one oure Lady even), þe Assumpcion. And from thens he went streight to Harflewe, and besegit þe toune be londe and be watir.

How kyng Henry the Vte wanne Harflewe; and of the bataile
12 of Agincourt, and how the Emperoure come into Englond.

When Harflewe was besegit be londe and be water, þer were in þe toune viij[c] men of werre, with-out lordes and states. And thes were þe names of þe lordes: Sir Iakes de Harecourt, capteyn),
16 þe Lord Gawcourt, the Lord of Hakvyse, the Lord of Florry, the Lord of Bleynvile, the Lord of Tiptot, the Lord of Combrevyle, the Lord of Beushvyle, and oþir moo which shal be reherset herafter ¶ The Kyng þen sent to Sir Iakes de Harecourt, Capteyn) of Har-
20 flewe, and hym comaundit to delyuer þe toune. And Sire Iakes ansuard and said, 'he toke hym none to kepe; nor none he shuld haue þere.' And when this ansuare was brought vnto þe Kyng, he made to lay 'goodgrace,' his gret gune, and al his oþer gunnes, on
24 ich a side, and comaundit his gunners to bete doune þe walles. and so thei shotte on ich side, and brak doune þe walles, and þe houses with-in the toune. ¶ When thay of þe toune þat saw, they sent to Kyng Henry, besechyng hym of viij dayes of respite, if eny maner
28 rescouse myght come to hem in þe menewhile. and if so were there come none rescouse to hem with-in þe viij[te] dayes, they wold deliuer to hym the keyes and þe toune: and þer-vppon) þai wold deliuer hym xxiiij lordes in hostage, and of the wurthyest men of
32 þe toune.

¶ The Kyng then grauntet wele þerto; and so [5]they delyuert xxiiij[ti] hostages, whos names ben written) in this table [3]next folowyng, þat is to say:[3]—

[1] receyued the somme of M[l] li of gold L.
[2] and his brether *om.* L. [3]—[3] *om.* L.
[4] shipped & sailed toward Normandy L. [5] *leaf* 156, *back.*

The Lord Tuttevile,
The Lord of Clere,
The Lord of Chasteleyn, De Beauvise,[1]
The Lord Blowset,
The Lord Burnet, of Langchampe,[2]
The Lord Iohn[3] of Malevile,
The Lord Charles[4] de Saint Claleyn,
The Lord Caradouse[5] Deskesewis,
The Lord Iakes[6] de Bankvyle,
Guilliam de Pount,
Thomas de Asses,
Iohn Malherbe,
Iohn Harrard,
Stephan Heuband, 4
Guilliam Buchier,
Laurence Robyn,
Iohn̄ Buchier
Aleyn Ligne, 8
Iohn Graunt,
Robyn Walkyle,
Iohn le Mare,
Ianyn le Duyk, 12
Guilmot Guillias.
Colyn[7] Langloys,

¶ And when thes xxiiij^te^ hostages were sent out of þe toune to
þe Kyng, al thoo viij dayes after they of þe toune loket after 16
rescouse; but *þer* come none. Wherfore Sir Iakes de Harecourt,-
[8]þat was Capteyn of þe toune of Harflew,[8] *with* lordes and states
of þe toune, brough[t] þe[9] Kyng þe keys at the viij^te^ dayes ende,
and deliuert hym þe toune. ¶ Then þe Kyng made þe Erle of 20
Dorset, Beaufort his vnkill, capteyn of þe toune, and hym com-
aundit to put out al the Frensshe pepiH þat were *with*in, man
woman and child, and stuff þe toune *with* Englisshemen, and so
he did. ¶ Then þe Kyng remevit from þens with his pepiH, and 24
come doun to Caleis-ward be land, to þe noumbre of viij M†.; but
þe Frensshe-men hade breken alle the brigges where he shuld haue
passit ouer. Wherfore he sought his way in o*per* places, and
come dounward to a place clepit Agincourt; where-as al þe power 28
of Fraunce wer gedirt, and redy to stoppe hym þe way, and to
gyve hym bataile. ¶ And when þe Kyng this sawe, he praid God
be his helpe; and with þe pepiH þa[t] he had, which was but scarse
viij M†, made hym redy, and hym enbatailt. ¶ The Kyng þat 32
tyme had a mys-trust in Edward, Duyk of York; and þat the
Duyke wele perceyuet, and come to þe Kyng, and hym besoughte
that he myght haue þe vaward þat day. and þe Kyng hym

[1] De Beauvise *om.* L. [2] of Langchampe *om.* L.
[3] Iohn *om.* L. [4] Charles *om.* L.
[5] Caradouse *om.* L. [6] Iakes *om.* L. [7] And Colyn L.
[8]–[8] *om.* L. [9] to þe L.

graunted. Then þe Duyk went forth, and comaundit and charget euery man to ordeyne hym a stake of tre, sharpet at both endys, and pight an ende asslope in þe ground before hem, that þe
4 Frenshemen shuld not ouerride hem; for thair purpose was to haue ouerriden hem; for they were nombret xx vj M[t] and moo. And þe Frenshmen, al þe nyghte before or þat the bataile was, made muche reveH, and cryeng and shoutyng,[1] al þe nyghte, and plaiet
8 Englisshemen at þe[2] dyce, euery archer for a blank. ¶ And on þe morowe about pryme, þe Kyng comaundit euery man to make hym redy to bataile, and said thes wordes: "Sirres! thenkes this day to quyte youe as men, and feightes for þe righte of Englond! and,
12 in the name of Almyghty God, avaunt baner! and Saynt George, this day thyn helpe!" Then oure men knelit doune al attones, and made a cros on þe grounde, and kissit it, and put hem in þe mercy of God.

16 ¶ The Frenshmen þen come with[3] gret pride ferisly, and oure archers shotte frely; and att last, both þe battailes Ioynet and mette, and sore foughton togedirs. And þe Frenshe men presit so fast and so thikke on oure pepiH, þat they feH on þe stakes þat
20 were pighte in the ground, horse and man, so thikke, ich ouer[4] othir, þat gret pepiH of hem were slayne with-out eny stroke. And þe Kyng þat day fuH manfully faughte [5]that same day, his oune handys[5]; so that 1 pece of his croune was broken, which afterward
24 was founden and[6] broughte to hym. and so at last, Almyghty God gaue grace that he had þe victory of hys enmys, for al theire pride, and slowe xij M[t]; of the which, þe lordes and þe states of name, theire names folowen in þis table herafter:

28 The Bisshope of Sayntis,
The Duyke of Brabane,
The Duyk of Barry,
The Duyke of Launson,
32 The Erle of Douers,
The Erle of Marle,
The Erle of Russe,
The Erle of Almartyne,
36 The Erle of Vandemound,

The Erle of Brene,
The Erle of Sannes,
The Erle of Grauntpre,
The Erle of Fallyngberge,
The Lord Dalabret,
The Lord Heyle,
The Constable of Fraunce,
The Lord of Dampiere,
The Lord of Beaufremound,

[1] and shoutyng *om.* L. [2] þe *om.* L. [3] in L.
[4] on L. [5—5] *om.* L. [6] founden and *om.* L.

The Lord of Danssy,[1]
The Lord Damnery,[2]
The Lord Robert[3] Frere,
The Lord of Ranavile,
The Lord Waryn,
The Lord of Kemeram,
The Lord of Bakevyle,
The Lord Senal of Henawe,
The Lord of Mongangies,
[4]The Lord Coursy,
The Lord Oudard of Rant,
The Lord of Hemes,
The Lord Symond of FragneH,
The Lord of Cramys,
The Lord Robert[5] Monerigny,
The Lord of Quemes,
The Lord Daunchy,
The Lord Gerard of Herbanes,
The Lord Iohn of Gres,
The Lord of Soile,
The Lord Dauphyan,
The Lord Mounteney,
The Lord Burcy and his sonne,
The Lord Reynold Dagincourt,
The Lord Mayhewe[6] of Humes,
The Lord Philipe of Fosseins,
The Lord Burian[7] of Rubenpre,
The Lord of Poys,
The Lord Launcelet of Clarre,
The Lord of Hemede,
The Lord of Coresques,
The Lord of Marquet,
The Lord Robert of Poys,
[8]The Lord of Noel,[8]
The Lord Robert of Waryn,
The Lord Haucon[9] of Croan,
The Lord of Eroun and his sonne,
The Lord Colard of Fessenis,
The Lord Cheyny,
The Lord of Beauford,
The Lord of Branen, 4
The Lord Raulond of Grotuse,
The Lord Philipe of Lens,
The Lord William Eriche,
The Lord of Saint Clos, 8
[8]The Lord Iohn of Poys,[8]
The Lord Iakes of Coriamble,
The Lord of Caunkesy,
[8]The Lord Colard Somanyng,[8] 12
The Lord Colard of Frenys, [col. 2]
The Lord Gaumot of Burnvile,
The Lord Ronale of Flaundres,
The Lord Bidamue of Lannoys, 16
The Lord John of Garonns,
The Lord Dacoy,
The Lord Colenchet,
The Lord Doo, 20
The Lord Iohn of Beaumont,
The Lord Iohn of Drouy,
[8]The Lord Charles,[8]
The Lord Philipe Lynberk[10] 24
and his sonne,
The Lord Iohn of Calkevile,
The Lord of Bryoile,
The Lord William of Granevile, 28
The Lord Humers,
The Lord Iohn of Monteuey,
The Lord of Harlyn and his
broper, 32
The Lord Malare of Gurnay,
The Lord of Cankers,
[8]The Lord of Houncious of
Poys,[8] 36
The Lord of Long,

[1] Anvy L. [2] Amery L. [3] lord of L. [4] *leaf* 157.
[5] lord of L. [6] Mayhewe *om.* L. [7] Burian *om.* L. [8–8] *om.* L.
[9] Haucon *om.* L. [10] Lynberk *om.* L.

The Lord of Tenys and his sonne,
The Castelyn of Lens,
4 The Baron) of Mary,
The Stuard of Henawde,
The Baily of Dauneus,
Iohn) Guryn),
8 Damset Dannay,
Iohn of Lesele,
Fort-escu,
Robert of[1] Savage,
Brian of Geromes,
Iohn) of[1] Gardyn),
Dorn dez Pres,
Iohn) of Sempy,
Pier Bonenfaunt,
[2]Burgu of Rony,[2]
Pers of Fossenis.

And many othir moo, as before is saide. And thes were þe names of þe Frenssh lordes þat were take prisoners in þat batail:—
12 The Duyk of Orlyaunce, The Duyk of Burboyn), [2]The Erle of Eawe,[2] The Erle of Richemond, The Erle of Vandome, Sir Iohn) of Bare, þe [2]Dukes broþer of Bare, Sir Bursigaunt,[2] stuard of Fraunce, [2]Sir Iohn) de Roche,[2] And many oþer[3] moo, to þe nombre
16 of viij^{c}.

And þes were þe names of þe lordes þat were slayn) on oure party:—The good and noble Edward, Duyk of York, in þe vaward, The Erle of Suffolk, and oþer moo yemen to þe nombre of xxviij^{ti}.
20 and þis bataile was done þe xxv^{ti} day of Octobre, on Saint Crispyn) and Crispians day, the yere of oure Lord, Mt CCCC xv. [2]¶ Of which a versifier makes mencion), and saith "Crispini multos strauit gens anglica Francos." ¶ Then come tithynges to þe Kyng
24 þat a newe bataile of Frenshmen were redy to feight with hym) ageyn). Then þe Kyng onon chargit and comaundet euery man) to sle his prisoner. And when the Frensh men þat sawe, they withdrowe hem, and went their way.[2]

28 ¶ Then come þe Kyng to Caleys with his prisoners, and thankit God of þat gloriose victory, [4]and Saint George, which halpe hym to fighte, and was seyne abouen in þe eyre, þat day they fauȝt. And when þe Kynge come to Caleys, he restet hym þere awhile,
32 and after shippit, and come into Englond, and landet at Dovir, and passit so forth to Berehamdoune, where-as mette with hym þe v portes, with x M^{t} men clenly harnesshit and arrayet. And þen said þe Duyk of Orlyaunce: "¶ what! shal we now go ageyne to
36 bataile?" And þe Kyng hym ansuard, and said: "Nay: thes ben childer of my cuntre come to welcome me home." And there[5] þe

[1] of *om.* L. [2–2] *om.* L. [3] oþer *om.* L.
[4] *leaf* 157, *back.* [5] their Ha. there L.

v portes presentit þe Kyng *with* a shippe, & gold therin. And so rode he forth to Caunterbery, where-as þe procession hym mette *with*-out þe toun, and hym broght to Cristischirche; and the Kyng offert at Saint Thomas shryne. And from thens he rode to Eltham. 4 [1]And fro thens he toke his way to London; [1] and on Blakke-Heth mette *with* hym þe Meyre and the Aldermen, with al the craft*es* of þe Cite clothet al in rede, to þe nombre of xx^{ti} M^{t}; and þer they welcomet hym home, and þe Kyng hem thanket. And so rode he 8 forth to London [1]on Saint Clement day,[1] where-as he was riolly receyuet *with* precession, And song "Aue Anglor*um* flos, mu*n*di miles *Christi*!" And when he come to London Brigge, where-as were ij turrett*es* on þe draw-brige, and a gret Geaunt, and on þe 12 turrett*es* stondyng a lyon and a Antlope, with many angeles syng-yng "Be*n*edictus qui venit in no*mine* D*omi*ni!" And so rode he forth in-to London; and þe strete*s* were rially hanget with rich clothes; [1]And in CornhyH was made a rioH toure, full of pat*ri*- 16 arches syngyng "Cantate Domino cantic*um* nouu*m*! laus laus eius, in eccl*e*sia *sanctorum*!" and kest doun quyk bridd*es*, which flawe thikke about þe Kyng.[1] And when he come into Chepe, þe Condit*es* ranne wyne. And on þe gret condit were xij Apposteles, 20 syngyng "Benedic, Anima mea, Domino!" and xij kyng*es* knelyng, castyng doune oblays, and welcomet hym home. And þe cros in Chepe was riolly arrayet like a CasteH, with toures pight fuH of baners, and *per*-in Angeles syngyng 'NoweH, noweH!' gyvyng 24 besand*es* of gold to þe Kyng. And so rode he forth to Paules, where-as mette hym xiiij[2] bisshopes; and al þe belles ronge agaynes hym; and þere he alight and went to þe hye awter. And there þei song "Te Deum laudam*us*." And from thens he rode 28 forth to his palice at Westmynst*er*; And after, he rode about in the land on pilgremage, and ordeynt be holy Chirch þat Saint George day shuld be kept hye and holy: and so was it neu*er* before þat day. 32

¶ In þe iij^{de} yere of þe reyne of Kyng Henry þe v^{te}, Segewyn, þe Emp*er*oure of Almayn, come in-to Englond, and was right wurshiply receyuet at London [1]with þe Meyre, alderme[n] and craft*es*,[1] and broght*e* to þe Kyng*es* paleys at Westmynster, where-as 36 was þe gret haH assignet to hym, which was ryolly hanget *with* clo*þ*es of gold and of Arras. And eu*er*y AngeH in þe haH-rof

[1]–[1] *om.* L. [2] xij L.

holdyng a torch*e* in his honde; [1]and iiij angeles at þe hye deece, ich holdyng iiij torches.[1] And þe Kyng gave þe Emp*er*oure þe Gart*our*. And sone aftir, þe Duyke of Holand come in-to Englond,
4 and was loggit in Holborn, and abode a long tyme in þe lond, on þe Kyng*es* cost; and aft*er*, they went home. And þe Kyng went w*ith* the Emp*er*oure to Caleys, where-as was a Counseyle; at which Counseyle was both þe Kyng and þe Emp*er*oure, and þ*er*
8 taried to haue ansuare of þe Frenssh party. And thider come the Duyk of Burgoyn; but he wold not come þ*er* til Humfrey, Duyk of Gloucestr*e*, lay plegge for hym. And aft*er*, the Emp*er*oure went home in-to his cuntre, [1]and many Englissh men with hym
12 made officers, for he trustid hem better þen his oune nacion.[1] ¶ And when þe Kyng had his ansuare of þe Frensh*e* party, þat liket hym not, he come in-to Englond ageyn, and ordeynt a gret army.

V.

[*From the Capture of Rouen*, 19 *Jan.* 1419, *to the Defeat of the Ghent men at Calais, and the Death of Watkin* RUSKIN, A.D. 1436.]

16 [2]And then þe Kyng entret in-to þe toune of Roane, and hym restit in þe CasteH till þe toune was sette in ruyle and in gou*er*naunce; and aft*er* þat, was Caudebek, and o*þ*er garisons þ*er*negh, yolden to þe Kyng [1]vnder the same appoyntement.[1]

20 ¶ **Of the trety of pees þat was betwene Kyng Henry of Englond and Kyng Charles of Fraunce; and of þe mariage of Kyng Henry þe Vte and Dame Kateryn, þe Kyng*es* doughter of Fraunce; and so þe pees was made[3] and**
24 **fynysshit.** [*Big writing, with red underlines.*]

WHen Kyng Henry of Englond had goton Roane, as before is said, the Dolfyns enbassat*o*res, as it was accordit before—with fuH power to do al thyng*es*, as he were þere hy*m*self p*r*esent,—
28 comen to þe Kyng to þe said Cite of Roane; and aft*er* many tretise had, thus it was appoyntet: þat a certeyn day sette, þe Dolfyn shuld come to þe toune of[4] Dreux, and Kyng Henry to Aueraunchis, and

[1]–[1] *om.* L. [2] *leaf* 158, *back.* [3] made Ha. was made L.
[4] toun Ha. toun of L.

þere chese a mene place betwene both assent, where they myghte peasbely tret of þe pees. Which appoyntement truly to be kept, þe Kyng and the said Ambassatoures sette-to þaire seales. at which day þe Kyng come; but þe Dolfyn) com) not: wherfore þe pees was 4 broke as for that tyme.

¶ In this mene while, Iohn), Duyk of Burgoyn), which had þe ruyle of þe Kyng of Fraunce because of his sekenes, be letteres and ambassatouris sought Kyng Henry grace; and þe Kyng sent 3 Ambassatoures ageyn) to Charles, Kyng[1] of Fraunce, and to þe said Duyk, to Province, of which ambassatours þe Erle of Warrewik was chef;[2] and in þe way as he shuld go, lay a gret busshement of Frenshe men, to take hym, and let hym þe way and his purpose; 12 but he slogh and toke the moost party of hem), and come to Province, and purposet his ambassiat. And so was it þere appoyntet and accordit, that Henry of Englond and Charles of Fraunce, with þe Quene his wif, and þe Duyk of Burgoyn), shuld 16 come to a mene place, & trete of þe pees. And to do þis message, þe Erle of Saint Paule, and þe sonne and heire of þe Duyk of Burgoyn), come to þe Kyng as Ambassatours. ¶ Then Kyng Henry of Englond, of þe mater be relacion of Ambassatoures of 20 both partyes, appoyntet with his enmys that, at a certeyn) day, he shulde come to Maunt, and Charles, Kyng of Fraunce, and Iohn), Duyk of Burgoyn), shuld come to Pounteys; and þe mene place of this trety should be Melan) sus Sayn); to þe which, noþer party 24 shuld come with moo þen M^{t} v^{c} men); and in þe mene tyme truyce shulde be on both parties: which mene place was aftirward arayet betwene ij villages, and lymytit and market betwene ij gret diches, where-in no man shuld come, but onely such as shuld trete. 28 And þer þe Kynge tentes were riolly pighte and arrerit, and þe Kynges tentes of Fraunce. And Kyng Henry lete arere ij tentes betwene .ij. diches, where-in both þe Kynges myght trete apart with theire secret Counsaile, [3]and þe astate of boþe Kynges observet and 32 kept.[3] and a stake was pighte in þe myddes of a faire playn), to þe which, and no ferther, eythir Kyng shuld come to oþer. And þe day appoyntet,[4] Kyng Henry come to Maunt, And Kyng Charles, because of his acustumet sekenes, came not; but þe Quene his wif, 36 and þe Duke of Burgoyn), with oþer notable prynces of theire

[1] Ambassatours to the king L.
[2] the king made chef the erle of Warrewik L. [3—3] *om.* L.
[4] assigned L.

alliaunce, and with[1] M† v^c men), comen to Pounteys, and aftir, to þe mene place. And Kyng Henry first kisset þe Quene, and þen Dame Kateryn), hir doughter, [2]for at þat tyme þe Kyng sawe hir
4 first.[2] ¶ Then Kyng Henry, þe Quene and hir doughter, and þe Duyk of Burgoyn), with oþer, went into a tent to trete of pees, where they were almost iij dayes; but it toke non) ende [3]at that tyme.

In the menewhile, the Dolfyn), with letters and messagers,
8 sterid the Duyk of Burgoyn) that he, nor non of his, shuld assent to þe pees. And at þe v^te nonas of August, in þe which þe said Kynges shuld haue semblet, þe Kyng of Fraunce, þe Quene, þe Duyk of Burgoyn), nor non) of hem, come. Wherfor it was
12 openly knawe that þe Frensh party was cause[4] þat the pees was not endit at that tyme.

Then Kyng Henry went vnto Pounteys, and gat it. And sent Thomas his broþer, Duyk of Clarence, with a notable power, to
16 Parise, and gate it, And retournet ageyn to þe Kyng. And þen þe Kyng went to Bokend-villers and[5] Gysours, and gate hem.[6] And whiles this was in doyng, þe Duyk of Burgeyn), þat first sought þe Kynges grace, went to þe Dolfyn) to Motreux, vnder
20 sav-condit of comyng and goyng, and þere, by þe said Dolfyn), was traytosely and vnmanly slayne, As he knelit before hym, and after, put in-to a pitte, botit and spurret. ¶ And when Philip, his sonne and his heire, þerof had knawlege, he sought Kyng Henry grace,
24 and become his man). ¶ The same tyme, certeyn ambassatours of Kyng Charles and of þe Duyk of Burgoyn), & of Citizyns of Parise, come to Kyng Henry vnto Maunt, to trete of pees; but because the Kyng was so besily occupiet in his werres, and also he supposet
28 þat the Frenshmen were not fully enclynet to þe pees as than, þis trety toke non) ende at þat tyme,[7] but aftirward at Roan it was fully fynesshit.

¶ Aftirward, whiles Kyng Henry held his Cristenmas in[8]
32 Roan, the Ambassatours of Kyng Charles and of þe Dukes of Burgoyn) come þidir to hym; to whom Kyng Henry[9] sent ageyn) Richard, Erle of Warrewik, with oþer wise men, and a notable power of men of armes,[10] wiþ fuH power to concluyde the pees;
36 and aftir many wise tretise had, pees was on both sides concludit, by þe affinite and wedlok of Kyng Henry and Dame Kateryn),

[1] *with* a L. (Ha has 'M^l. M^l.' for 1000.) [2–2] *om.* L. [3] *leaf* 159.
[4] cause *om.* L. [5] Bokend-villers and *om.* L.
[6] it L. [7] at þat tyme *om.* L. [8] att L. [9] þe king L.
[10] of men of armes *om.* L.

Kyng Charles doughter. But be-cause certeyn thynges were necessary, for þe which þe presence of both þe Kynges most nedis be had, what for settyng-to of their seales, what for the mariage sewyng, And also Charles was so feblet for age, and oft tymes was 4 vexit with his sekenes. ¶ Thus it was betwene hem appoyntet, þat Kyng Henry shuld come at a day lymyt, vnder truyce, with suche puysshaunce as hym liket, to Nogent vpon Sayn, to perfourm fynally al thyng that to þe pees was nedfuH; and if he 8 come not, al thyng shuld be had as for noughte. Aftir this appoyntement þus made, þe Erle retournet to þe Kyng, notifying vnto hym in writyng al þe affecte of his enbassiat. ¶ Then þe Kyng from thens went to Nogent; and *per* mette *with* hym 12 Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyn, *with* a gret company of men of Armes. Then, after many and diuerse tretise, þe xij^te^ kalendes of Iune, þe xl^ti^ yere of þe regne of Kyng Charles, in þe CathedraH chirch *per*, Kyng Henry, *with* Thomas, Duyk of Clarance, his broþer, and oþer 16 princes and nobles, and IsabeH, Quene of Fraunce, with þe Duyk of Burgoyn beyng *per* for Kyng Charles laboryng þen in his forsaid affirmite; and in þeir oune names, and þe iij states of Fraunce, pees betwene þe ij remes of Englond and of Fraunce was made, 20 and with certeyn condicions approvit. And Kyng Charles charget al his legemen, on payn of fforfeture of þaire legeaunce, to kepe þe said pees; And *per*to þai mad their gret oth, and plight þeir trouthis in þe handes of Kyng Henry. And onon, Quene IsabeH 24 of Fraunce, & Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyn, in þe name of Kyng Charles, swore vppon þe Euangelistes to kepe this pees, þus concludit, for theym, for theire heires, & their[1] successoures, *with*outen fraude or male engyne, for euermore. And this same othe 28 made Quene IsabeH, and the Duyk of Burgoyn, and þe iij states of Fraunce, to Kyng Henry, his heires and his sucessoures. And at the ix^te^ kalendes of Iune, before Quene IsabeH and Kyng Charles Counsaile in þe parlement, and þe iij states of Fraunce, and oþer 32 Englisshe prynces and lordes, contracte of Matermony be present wordes, betweene Kyng Henry and Dame Kateryn, Kyng Charles doughter, there was solempnet and made. And as sone as this was enditet in writyng, as it was accordit, Kyng Henry, Kyng Charles, 36 and þe ij Quenes, [2] IsabeH and Kateryn, and þe Duyk of Burgeyn, went to Saynluys and gate it; and fro thens vnto Melon, and beseget þe toune. and þe seege enduret from þe first Idus of Iuyle vnto

[1] their Ha. & for þeyre L. [2] *leaf* 159, *back*.

Nouembre aftir. and at that seege, lay with Kyng Henry, Iames, Kyng of Scottes, as presoner. And þei within þe toune suffert gret duresse; but at last, for diffault of vitaile, thei yolde
4 vp the toune. ¶ Then þe Kynges and þe Quenes, and Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyn, with theire hostes, went to Parise; and the Citiȝyns of þe Citee mette with hem in[1] fuH noble array, and riolly hem receyued. ¶ And at þe viij^te^ Idus of Ianuare, Kyng Henry
8 and Dame Kateryn comen in-to Englond, and laft at Parise Thomas Beaufort, Duyk of Excestre, his vncle, and Thomas, Duyk of Clarence, his broþer, Regent of Normaundy. And þe xiiij day of Feueryere, [2]þat feH on þe Sonday,[2] Dame Kateryn was crownet at
12 Westemynster with gret solempnyte.

¶ And in this while Thomas, Duyk[3] of Clarence, with oþer certeyn lordes, made a iournay, and lefte at home þe yomanry, but toke with hym gentels and speris; at which iournay he was
16 slayn with þe Scottes, and al þat come with hym; and þe Erle of Huntyngton was þer take, and oþer moo, [2]and þat was gret routh.[2] ¶ And when tithinges þerof come to Kyng Henry, he was sorowfuH and hevy, and made hym redy to go ouer see; and at
20 Mydsomer next aftir the coronacion,[4] he went ouer[5] into Fraunce ageyn, [2]and left the Quene in Englond,[2] and gat certeyn garisons þat were rebeH, and besegit þe toune of Meux; at which seege tithynges come to þe Kyng þat þe Quene was deliuert of a sonne
24 at Wyndesore þat was clepit Henry. ¶ And whene þe Quene[6] was purifiet, she went ouer into Fraunce to þe Kyng. And after þat Meux was yoldon, Kyng Henry went to Parise, makyng ordynaunce to be-seege þe toune of Cane. And þen a sore and a fervent malady
28 hym toke, and fro day to day hym vexit til he deyed in þe CasteH of Bois de Vincent, the last day of August, when þat he had regnet ix yere, v monithis, iij. weekes and iij days; and aftirward he was brought in-to Englond Riolly, and enterid at Westemynster.

[*The Accession of Henry VI.*]

32 AFter the noble[7] victoriose prynce, Kyng Henry the vth, regnet his sonne, Henry the vj^te^, [2]that was bore at Wyndesore in the fest of Saint Nycolace the Confessoure,[2] and began to regne in þe age of ix monithes and xv dayes. And to Richard, Erle of

[1] with L. [2—2] *om.* L. [3] Duyk Ha. duyk of L.
[4] the coronacion *om.* L. [5] ouer *om.* L. [6] quene Ha. þe queene L.
[7] noble & L.

Warrewik, was com*m*yttit þe kepyng of hym, for-as-much he was countet and hold þe best-nurturet man) of Englond; and þe Bisshope[1] of Caunterbery and the Bisshop*e* of Wynchester were his godfaders; and þe Duches of Holand was his godmoder; [2]and 4 so forth-with-al he was sette to howsold. and þat same yere þe Duches of Holand was weddit to Humfrey, Duyk of Gloucestre.[2] and the first yere of his regne, dyet Charles, þe Kyng of Fraunce, [2]att Bois de Vyncent, and was entered at Parise,[2] and þe Quene 8 his wif with[3] [2]hym). And þat same yere was one Sir William Tailoure, prest, brent in Smythfeld for heresy.

¶ And þe second yere of his regne, Sir Rog*er* Mortym*er*, knyght, brak out of þe Toure of London), be counsaile of certeyn) p*er*sones 12 of þe same Toure, and was tak ageyn) on þe Toure-wharf, and aft*er* brought to Westmynst*er*: and þere was he iuget to þe deth, and was draw and hanget at Tiburn), and quartert, and his hed set on London) Brigge; and his hert and his bowelles were beryet in 16 þe Grey Freris in London, on the north side of þe chirch.[2]

¶ Of the Bataile of VernuH in P*er*ch*e* be Iohn), Duyk of Bedford, and Regent of Fraunce. [*Big letters, red underlines.*]

In the second yere of þe reyn*e* of Kyng Henry the vj^te^ aboue- 20 said, Iohn), Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce, &[4] the Erle of Salisbery; Mountegu,[5] the Erle of ArundeH, the Lord Scales, the Lord Poynyng*es*,[6] with þe nombre of xij M^t^ of Englissh*e* men, laid seege to Ivory in Normaundy. And whiles they lay att that 24 seege, the Duyk of Launson) gadert a g*r*et host of Frensshmen), and Scott*es* and lumbard*es*, þe nombre of lij M^t^, to rescowe Ivory, and to give bataile to þe said Duyke of Bedford. But when they herd that þe Duyk of Bedforde had with hym) xij M^t^ men), thay 28 lafte Ivory, and come to VerniH in Perch*e*, which was þat tyme in þe hand*es* of Englissh*e*-men), [2]And the Lord Scales therof beyng capteyn), and was att þe said seege of Ivory.[2] ¶ Then þe Frensh*e* men) chargit þe Englissh*e* men) to delyu*er* þe toun) of VerniH vp to 32 hem), And [7]the said Duyke of Bedford and aH his power were ou*er*thrawe and slayn) before Ivory. And they of the toun) of VerniH wend it had ben trewe, And gave vp þe toune to þe Frensh-men. And þus[8] by this trayn), VerniH was lost, vnknowyng of 36

[1] Archbysshop L. [2–2] *om.* L. [3] also L.
[4] & *om.* L. [5] Mountegu *om.* L. [6] the Lord Poynyng *om.* L.
[7] *leaf* 160. [8] þus *om.* L.

the Duyke of Bedford and þe lord*es* whieh lay att þe said seege of Ivory[1]; neu*er*þeles at last it was yolden vp to hem. ¶ Then iij M^{t}. men toke theire leve of the Duyk of Bedford and Regent of
4 Fraunce,[2] and departet from thens[3] hom to their garisons. And they were not passet thens xij lekes, but tithyng*es* come to þe Duyk how þe Frensshe had geten VernyH, and were therin. Wherfore he onon, w*ith* þe Erle of Salesbery, Mountegu, þe Erle
8 of ArundeH, þe Lord Scalis, and þe Lord Poynyng*es*, with[4] ix Mt Englisshe men, retournet[5] to VernyH, and toke thair feld a myle from the toune, to gyve the Frensshe men bataile; but þe Frensshe men nor þe Scott*es*[6] wold not beleve þat the English men
12 wold[7] feight with hem, for they had redy knowlege þat iij M^{t} men were gon hom to their garisons, and þey were[8] but ix M^{t} men, and they were lij M^{t}: notwithstondyng, a day of batail was sett. ¶ Then oure Englisshe men pichet theire stakes;
16 and on þe day of batail when þai shuld feight, they knelit doune and kissit the ground; and þen the Duyke of Bedford bade 'auaunt ban*er*!' And so they Ioynet to-gedris and faught*e*; and the Duyk of Bedford faught*e* þat day manfully with his oune
20 hondis. And whilis they were besy feightyng, the Lumbard*es* of þe Frensshe host comen behynde the batail of þe Englisshe men, and slowe theire pag*es*, and went away w*ith* thaire horses. And on Yong, an Englisshe Capteyn, fledde away with v^{c} men in his
24 felissh[ip]e, and told how Englisshe men had lost the feld; which was aftir taken, and was hanget, drawe and quartert, as he was wele wurthy; for God fortunet so, that þe Duyke of Bedford had the vi[c]tory and the felde[9] of his enmyse, and put þe Frensshe
28 men to the flight, and chasit he*m* to þe toune dikes of VernyH, where-as many of hem were drownet. [10]And when þey retournet agayn to the bataile, thay fand þe Scottes feghtyng stiH with þe Erle of Salisbery whiles þei were folowyng þe chase of the Frensshe
32 men. And so then onon þe Scott*es* were aH discomfit and slayne, þe Englissh men cryynge "A Clarens, A clarans!" for cause þe Scott*es* before that tyme [ferede] þe Duyk of Clarans. ¶ And the[s] were þe names of þe lord*es*, kny*ȝtes* and swyers, and men of
36 name of þe Scottes þat were slayne in þat batail: that is to say,

[1] Bedford þat lay before Ivory L. [2] and Regent of Fraunce *om.* L.
[3] Ivory L. [4] Salesbury the lord of Arundel & þe lord Scalis w*ith* L.
[5] went L. [6] nor þe Scottes *om.* L. [7] durst L.
[8] were Ha. þey were L. [9] and the felde *om.* L.
[10] There is a gap in L from here to *batail* on p. 567, l. 15.

The Erle Douglas, þat was att þe bataile of Shrewisbery new made Duyke of Turreyn),

The Erle of Bugham,
Iames Douglas,
The Lord Sauyton),
The Lord Dondas,
Sir William of Seton,
Sir Thomas of Murray,
Sir Gye Ferard,
Sir Iohn) Saintclere, [col. 2]
Sir Archbald Goumerston)
Sir Gauter Berton),
Sir Gauter Lynnesey,
Alexander Hume, 4
Adam Dalgleis,
Alexandre Stuard,
Iames Lunieston), [col. 3]
Robert Serand, 8
Andrewe Murray,
Thomas Grenston),
Huchon Candy,
Dauid Murray. 12

¶ And many oþer Scottes moo of gentilmen), and þe men) were there slayne that ben not namet here.

¶ And þes ben þe names of þe lordes and men of name of þe Frensshe men that were slayne in þat same bataiH before the toun) 16 of VernyH in Perche: that is for to say:

The Erle of DaumaH, [col. 1]
The Erle Bendtadom),
The Erle Romier, [col. 2]
The Erle DaubinaH,
The Lord Manny, [col. 3]
The Lord Gravile,
The Lord Flenogin,
[1] The Lord Mountenay,
The Lord Camelhart,
The Lorde Chargeron),
The Lord Mesilate,
The Lord Dauterme,
The Lord de la Frait,
The Lorde de Cathemagez,
The Lord de le Forge,
The Lord de Bellay,
The Lord de le Champayn),
The Lord Gamagez,
The Lord Dassail Raboule,
The Vicont of Nerborn),
Sir Lowis de Trye,
Sir Charles de Guesines,
Sir Iohn) de Murrak, 20
Sir Gyles Deschavile,
Sir Iohn) Bonnestablez,
Sir Giles de Camegez, [col. 2]
Sir Boit de Turnbun, 24
Sir Tristrem) Coiseron),
Sir Charles DesneuaH,
Sir Robert de Layre,
Sir Charles de Bruyne, 28
Sir Iohn) Poyngaunt,
Sir Peris de Bellay,
Sir Peris BottereH
And his brother, 32
Sir Fraunceis de Gryngoux,
Sir Emery de la GrissiH,
Sir Prunele Fraunceis,
MarshaH de la Fait, 36
Peris de Guyssay,

[1] *leaf* 160, *back*.

Peris de Trusselle3,
Robynet de Cleremou*n*t,
Lowis de Osternard',
4 Colvile le Vicont, [*col.* 3]
Druet Desson),
Geffray de la GressiH,
Andrewe Poyngaunt,
8 Iohn) de Tonevile,
Moriard de la Mote,
Iohn) Frere,
Iohn) de la Famruner,
Heton) de Guesme3,
Geffrey Paillam,
Regnaulton) G*re*nault,
Godffray de Soubres,
Hewe de Beaussault,
Le Camus de Frisendy,
Guylliam Remon) de la Maiser,
Lowis de Bagard,
Peron) de Luppe,
Ion) de Puche.

12 Thes were þe names of lord*es*, knyght*es*, squiers, and gentilmen of name þ*a*t were slayn in þe said bataile, of Frensshmen), and many oþ*er* moo þ*a*t ar not here namet. And the nombre of al þe Frensshemen and Scott*es* that were slayn) in þ*a*t batail, be[1] 16 herawd*es* accompted', xij M^t^ v^c^ xxx, with[2] hem) þ*a*t were drounet in þe dik*es* of VernyH. ¶ And thes were the names of hem) þat were taken) prison*er*s:[3] The Duyke of Launson), Iohn) Boutevile, Sir Peris Henson, Vidain Lannoye.[4] ¶ And when þis bataile was 20 don)[5] and þe Englissh men had þe victory, they lovid' and[6] thanket God gretely of his grace, And forthwith went to þe toun) of VernyH, which was onon)[7] deliu*er*t vpe[8] to hem), [9]and had' aH þe stuff that þe Frensshmen) ther-in hade.[9] And þen went þe Duyke 24 of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce peasably to Roon), thankyng God of þat victoriose battaile.

¶ In the iij^de^ yere of þe Regne of Kyng Henry þe vj^te^, the Prince of Portyngale come in-to Englond; which was of þe Kyng 28 and þe[10] lord*es* wurshiply receyuet. And aftirward, at Saynt George Fest att Wyndesore,[11] the said Prince was made[12] Knyght of þe Garture. ¶ In the iiij^te^ yere of his regne þer fiH a gret discord' betwene Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucester, and Henry, Bisshop*e* of 32 Wynchester; wherfore the Comyns of London) aros with þe said Duyke, which lay þat tyme at his oun) place [9]at Baynard*es* CasteH, ageynes þe saide bisshop*e*, which lay þ*a*t tyme in his place[9] besides saynt Mary-ou*er*heis in Suthwerk. but the Prince of Portyngale, 36 beyng that tyme[13] in Englond, labourt so betwene hem), as God

[1] And in this taile were slayn be L. [2] w*ith* out L.
[3] And there was taken L. [4] Lannson and many moo gret lordes L.
[5] don Ha. was don L. [6] lovid and *om.* L. [7] anon up L.
[8] vpe *om.* L. [9—9] *om.* L. [10] of þe L. [11] att Wyndesore *om.* L.
[12] made att Wyndesore L. [13] same tyme L.

wold, to kepe þe pees; wherthurghe þere was non harme done,—thanket be God!—[1] And so were the comyns of London) pesite.[1] And þat same yere come Iohn), Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce, in-to Englond, with þe Duches his wif, [1] þat was the suster 4 of Philipe, Duyke of Burgoyn); and was fuH rially receuet of þe Maire and of þe Citizins of London).[1]

¶ In the v^te^ yere of his regne a parlement was holden) att Leycestre; att which parlement the Duyke of Bedford made [2] yong 8 Kyng Henry the Sixt, knyghte; and xxiiij knyghtes were made with hym). And when þe Kyng wes made knyght, he made with his oune hande*s* other xxiiij knyghte*s*. And att þat parlement were made many statutes and ordynaunces, and many newe officers. 12 [1] And in þat same yere there was one William Wawe, an Outlawe, taken) out of þe sayntuary of the Abbey of Bewley, and broughte to London) to the Kynge*s*-benche, and after, to Westemynster, and was þere dampnet, and had into Southwert, and sette in a cart, and 16 was broughte so thrughe-out London), and so forth to Tyburn), and þe*r* was hanget; And after, his hed smytten) of and sette on London) Brigge.[1]

¶ In the vj^te^ yere of his regne, Herry, Bisshope of Winchester, 20 went ou*er* see to Caleys, and so forth to Rome, where-as þe Pope hym) made CardynaH, and gave to hym) þe cros, to be born) before hym) alway where he went; but it was afterward taken away and laide doun) by commaundement of þe Pope, for cause he shulde 24 haue comyn) into Praage with a certeyn) nomber of men) of werre, whiche cuntre was out of beleue of Christen faith. but he failet his promyse, and come not there, but changet his purpos for þe wele and þe worshipe of al the Reame of Englond, and went into 28 Normaundy with a notable meyny of Archers, the best þat couth be geton) in eury place of Englond [1] for ix^d^ on þe day, euery archer ij or iij bawes in a cace.[1] And so, by his comyng theder, was savid aH that lande; and elles þat tyme it shuld haue ben lost. ¶ Then 32 afterward, he come ageyn) into Englond, and was there wurshiply receyvide [1] with the Meire, Aldermen), and craftes of London), and brought so forthe to Westemynster, and lay þe*r* in the Abbottes place within the Abbay.[1] ¶ In the vij^te^ yere of his regne þe*r* was 36 a great derth of corne. for a busshell of whete was at iij^s^ sterling; and aH oþe*r* cornes were dere þat yere.

[1]—[1] *om.* L. [2] *leaf* 161.

How Kyng Henry the VI^te^ was crownet att Westemynster; And after, be counseil of his lordis of Engelond, was crownet Kyng of Fraunce att Paryse.[1] [*Underlined with red.*]

4 IN the viij^te^ yere of the regn) of the said[2] Kyng Henry the vj^te^, he was crownet at Westemynster in Nouembre, on Saynt Lethenard*es* day; and on þe nyght*e* before, he made xxiiij^ti^ Knyght*es* of the Bath in þe Toure of London), which rode before
8 hym) on the morowe, al in blewe, toward his coronac*i*on, to his paleis att Westemynster. Att which coronacion) was gret rialte seyn); for al þe condit*es* in Chepe ranne both of rede wyn) and white; and the condite Also in þe palice of Westemynster rann)
12 w*it*h rede wyn); take therof, who-so wolde. And þ*a*t same yere, sone after, he went ou*er* see into Fraunce with a faire felesship*e* of duk*es*, erlis and barons, [3]in the monyth*e* of May, and with the nombre of iiij M^t^ men,[3] and landet att Caleis, and went so forth be
16 londe thrugh*e* Pikardy to Roane, where-as he was right*e* Rially recevid and welcomet. ¶ In the ix^te^ yere of his regne, the Erle of Perch, the Erle of Morteyn), the Lorde Fitz-Hewe, and þe Lord of Audelay, shippit att Sandewich*e* with iiij M^t^ men, and landet att
20 Caleis, and went so forth thrugh*e* Picardy[4] to Roane. And onon) aft*er*, Henry, Cardinal, Bisshope of Wynchester, the Lord Clynton)[5] and Sir Thomas Donstable, shippit then) att Portesmouth*e*, and sailet so to Kittecaux, Harflewe, and to Roane. ¶ And in þe x
24 yere of his regne he was crownet att Paris, Kyng of Fraunce, [3]on oure Lady day þe Conception, in Decembre; where-as was hold as rial a fest as eu*er* was had of eny kyng.[3] And in þ*a*t same yere was Lou*er*s geton), & the [6]walles beton doun), and made an open
28 village, for all man*er* of pepil, both Englissh*e* and Frensh*e*.

And þ*a*t same yere the Kynge come to Caleys out of Fraunce, and shippit there, and londet att Dovir, and was wurshiply receyuet with the barons of the v portes. And[7] [3]so was he
32 brought forth vnto London), and receyuet by þe Meire and Aldermen), the first day of M*a*rche; and so brought*e* to Eltham: And ich crafte of London) had his liu*er*ey braudert, that eu*er*y crafte myght be knowen) from) othir.[3] ¶ In the xj yere of his regne, the
36 Duches of Bedford, þ*a*t was that tyme clepit Madame Regent, and

[1] kyng of Englond and aft*er* in Parise kyng of Fraunce L.
[2] the said *om.* L. [3—3] *om.* L. [4] thrughe Picardy *om.* L.
[5] the Lord Clynton) *om.* L. [6] *leaf* 161, *back.*
[7] And fro thens he com to London L.

suster to the Duyk of Burgoyn), dyet att Roan); whos deth turnett Englissh men) aftirward to much trouble; for al þe whiles þat she was on) lyue, hir brothir, Duyk of Burgoyn), was eu*er* holdyng vppon) the Englissh*e* party; but sone after þat she was ded, his 4 hert was cast clene away from) Englissh*e* men, and turnet to þe Frensh*e* party, and become enmy to Engelond, as ye shall here aftirward. ¶ In the xij^te^ yere of his regne, the Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce weddit the doughter of the Erle of Saynt 8 Paule, a faire lady.[1] And þat same yere fill a gret discord betwene Sir William Oldhall, Knyght*e*, Leotena*u*nt of Caleys vnder þe said Duyke, and sawdiers of Caleys, for askyng of þaire wages; where þe said sawdioures were to-gedirs sworn), and kept hym) out 12 of the toune, and wold not suffere hym) to come with-in, [2]notw*ith*-stondy[ng] his wiff beyng w*ith*in the toun).[2] And so went he then to Roan), and compleynet hym) to þe Duyk of Bedford, and capteyn) of þe said toun),[3] Caleis, and made hym) hevy lord toward[4] þe said 16 sawdioures[5]; in so much þat he come doun) out of Normaundy, with his lady þe Duches, the Erle of Saint Paules dought*er*, and þe Bisshop*e* of Tirrewyn) her vncle, and Sir William Oldhall his leoten*a*unt, to þe Castell[6] of Balyngham), a myle from þe toune of 20 Arde. And there he lay vnto[7] Richard Bukkeland, Tresourer of Caleis, and Capteyn) of the said Castell of Balyngham, had entretid þe saudiours of Caleis, and aggreyt with hem), and gyven) hem) obliga*c*ions of customs. And when he had made agrement with 24 hem, the Duyke and Capteyn) come in Peasably to Caleis, w*ith* his lady the Duches, her vncle, and Sir William Oldhall his leoten*a*unt, and was[8] riȝt wurchiply recevid of þe burgeis, ma*r*chaund*es*, and sawdiour*es*, [2]and brought to þe Castell with al the Sawdioures of 28 þe toune.[2]

¶ On þe next morawe after, he sent for þe porters, and for þe keys of al þe gates of the toune, into þe Castell. And after sent forth sergeaunt*es*, and arestit dyuers Constables and vinteners, and 32 putte some in prison) in the Castell, and some in the Marshall prison); and made onon also to Arest all the obliga*c*ions of Custome that couth be founden in eny Saudiours hand*es*, and toke hem fro hem). ¶ And after, made Richard Veere, þat tyme beyng Meire, to 36

[1] a faire lady *om.* L. [2—2] *om.* L. [3] toune of L.
[4] to L. [5] sawdioures of Caleys L.
[6] Normandy w*ith* þe said Oldhall to þe Castell L.
[7] vnto þe [? time that] Ha. vnto L.
[8] w*ith* þe said leotenaunt and was L.

gyue Iugement on[1] iiij Soudeoures to be hedyt vnder þe pillery; for the which was made gret mone amonges the pepiH. And after, he come to the toune haH hym self, and sate there with þe Maire, 4 and þe Kyng*es* swerd beyng þ*er* p*re*sent, and hade al the saudioures of þe toun) before hym). And al þ*at* were billet, stoode before hym) vngird; at whiche tyme iiij were banshit, and al their wag*es* forfette. And they stode on þe lifte syde; and al þat abode within 8 the toun) stode on þe right syde; but a gret part[2] of hem were putte out of wag*es*, [3]and lost al that hem) was owyng.[3] And when al this was done, he went to Roan) ageyn) with his lady the Duches,[4] and had neu*er* after bodily hele till he dyet.

12 ¶ **Of the trety of Arras, and howe the Duyke of Burgoyn) turnet to the Frensshe party; and howe he laide Seege to Caleis, [3]And howe he withdroughe hym in-to Flaundres or þat Ony rescous come, in the nyghte.[3]**

16 IN the xiij^the^ yere of the regne of Kyng Henry the vj^te^, was the grettest froste that was in many a day before; for it began) vppon) Saynt Kateryn) even), and lastit to þe iiij^te^ day of Marche, the space of xvj wek*es*. And Te*m*mes þ*at* tyme was so sore frosen, 20 that the vintage of Burdeux went ou*er* Shoters HiH: for þe shippis w*ith* wyne myght come no nerre then Sandewiche. [3]and þat froste þ*at* tyme distroyet oisters, and muskelles, and fresshe-water fissh, thrugh þe moost party of Englond.[3] ¶ In þat same yere was þe 24 trety of Arras betwene the Kyng of Englond, Henry the vj^te^, And Philip*e*, Duyke of Burgoyn); and Charles de Valoice, Dolfyn) of Fraunce, that tyme beyng there in enbasshat for þe Kyng of Englond, Henry, Cardynal of Englond, Bisshop*e* of Wynchester, Iohn) 28 Kemp*e*, Erchbisshop*e* of York, Iohn), Erle of Huntyngton); Pole,[5]— Erle of Suffolk, [3]P*re*vey Seale, Sir Waulter Hongerford, Sir Iohn) Poppahm,[3] with a faire feleshipe w*ith* hem), to þe nomber of viij^C^ men). att which trety, þai wold the Kyng of Englond shuld have 32 putte out þe floure de lice out of his Armes; and many oþ*er* thyng*es* was spoken) of; but to say shortly, þei couth not accord; wherfore they departit thens, and come home ageyn) into Englonde. but thay of þe toun) of Popperyng in Flaundres demenet hem) 36 vngentilly, and entretid hym) vnman*er*ly as he[6] come rydyng

[1] to L. [2] *leaf* 162.
[3]—[3] *om.* L. *Heading in big letters, underlined with red.*
[4] with his lady the Duches *om.* L. [5] & Paule L. [6] þey L.

thrughe the toun from the saide trety of Arras[1]; wherfore he[2] was
sore amovid and grevid with hem, for they made his men[3] to bere
out of toune þeyr horses dong, mawegre their tetter; neuerþeles
he[4] suffirt it, and rode on his[5] way; but he[2] quytte hem that foule 4
and gret dispite, as ye shall here afterwardes.

¶ Then, as sone as thenbassetoures were departet from Arras,
and home,[6] the Dolfyn and the Duyke of Burgoyn were accordet,
and made att one [7]for deth of the Duyk of Burgoyns fader, þat was 8
slayn att Muttereux by þe same Dolfyn; and þerwith endit all that
trety.[7] And then 'onon after, þe Duyk tok in-to his handes Abvyle
and Amyas, and oþer tounes and Castelles; and after, by a kyng of
heroudes, he sent the Kynges lyueray to Caleis, [and, by][8] the 12
counsail of his lordes and hem of Flaundres, he made[9] redy his
ordynaunce and his pepill,[10] to come and lay seege to Caleis. And þe
Flemmynges were þen so proude and hawteyn þat they sette by
none Englisshe men, but hem hade in gret despite, thrughe-out all 16
Flaundres. And grete noice þere was of comyng of þe seege; neuer-
þeles Marchaundes yette went al this while into Flaundres to and
fro, but thai hade evill chere in al plases. And they of Brigges
made payntet clothes, howe[11] þe Flemmynges were att seege att 20
Caleis, and howe þai wann þe toune; and hanget out Englisshe men
by the helis out at lopes: and well was hym þat myght by of þes
clothes! And þai made entirledes and plaies in Brigges, of þe
Cardynall of Wynchester And of the Dolfyn, of thaire purposyng 24
and Ansuaryng att the trety of Arras, And all in dispite and
hoker[12] of Englissh men; thei were so glad and fayn þat they
shuld lay seege to Caleis, and wynne the wulles of þe staple of
Caleis,[13] and to departe it amonges hem; And bostet and said þat 28
þe steevan Caleis was but a [14]male tyde, þat is to say, A mele tyde;
And mony othir scornefull wordes thai had that tyme Amonges
hem. And that same yere, in þe heryng tyme, þere come iij C botes
out of Normaundy to Caleis on fisshyng fare, as they were wont ich 32
yere; and euery bote hade in xvj[15] men. and they come as
ffisshers, and in ffisshers clothyng; but a gret part of hem were
men of werre, and had cast to haue geton þe toune. but att last,
as God wolde, the[y] were aspiet by their fyne smale shirtes and by- 36

[1] of Arras *om.* L. [2] þey L. [3] made an englissh yemen L.
[4] they L. [5] þeir L. [6] and hom *om.* L. [7–7] *om.* L.
[8] Sir so Ha. [9] and made L. [10] and his pepill *om.* L. [11] who L.
[12] and hoker *om.* L. [13] of Caleis *om.* L. [14] *leaf* 162, *back.*
[15] xv L.

their poyntes; wherfore Richarde Woodvile, Squyer, leotenaunt of
þe said toun of Caleis vnder the Duyke of Bedford,[1] charget euery
souldioure to bere his staff in his hand, as wele in þe cherche and
4 att sacryng tyme as in þe market, and not to leve stondyng att þe
chirch durre, as they were wont to do; and so thaie bare thaire
stavis in þeire handes in þe chirch, and ouer al. Then the Frensshe
men vnderstood wele þat they were aspiet, and sawe wele þey[2]
8 couth not brynge theire entent[3] nor purpos about; And wenth
their way out of Caleis hauen in a tide, and went streight to þe
toune of Deepe, and come in þere as ffisshers, and so gate þe toun.
And in þat same yere dyet the Duyke of Bedford in Roan, [4]on
12 Holy-Rode even in May, which had layn longe seeke;[4] for whos
deth was made muche mone amonges Englisshe men that were þat
tyme in Normaundy; for as long as he levit, he was doutet and
dred amonges the Frensh men.

16 ¶ In the xiiij yere of the[5] regn of þe said Henry the vj^te^, Hum-
frey, Duyke of Gloucester, Protectour and Deffendour of Englond,
was made Capteyn of Caleis; and he was Capteyn of Guysnes before
that tyme; [4]And so he was both Capteyn of Caleis and of Guysnes.[4]
20 And he made Sir Iohn Radcliffe his Leotenaunt of Caleis,[6] and
sent hym thedir[7]; which was a wurshipful knyȝt, and was wel-
belouet amonges þe sawdiours [4]there: for he kept and helde A gud
and open housold to who þat wolde come, and welcome.[4] ¶ Then
24 come tithynges ich day more and more of þe seege comyng to Caleis.
Then Sir John Radecliff, þe Leotenaunt of þe toune, Robert
Clidrowe þe Meyre, and Thomas Thirland, Leotenaunt of þe staple
of Caleis,[6] with þe sawdioures, marchaundes, and burgeses and
28 comyners, kest vp a faire brode dike on þe south side of the toune,
and made iij stronge bulwerkes of erthe and cley, one att þe
corner of þe Castell with-out þe toun, anoþer att Bulleyn gate, and
anoþer att þe postern be þe Princes Inne; And att Mylke gate was
32 a faire bulwerk made of breke, þat Richard Woodevile had do make
or he was discharget of his leotenauntshippe. And þai fortifiet þe
walles, toures, and dikes on ich a side of the toune, with-in and without,
And dresset theire lopes and theire gunnes to shote both hye
36 and lawe. [4]And the vj Castell in the Marche ȝ pere þat Englisshe
men were in hem, fortifiet as strongely as they couthe, that is to say,

[1] vnder the Duyke of Bedford *om.* L. [2] þou Ha. þat þey L.
[3] not brynge theire entent *om.* L. [4—4] *om.* L. [5] of Ha. of þe L.
[6] of Caleis *om.* L. [7] to Caleis L.

the CasteH of Guysnes, the CasteH of Balyngham, the CasteH of Ha*m*mes, the CasteH of Sandgat, the CasteH of Marke, and the CasteH of Oye. And Sir Iohn Radcliff, Leoten*au*nt, warnet and charget al þe cuntre þ*a*t was of þe Englisshe pale, [þat þey] shuld 4 come and bring a[l] thaire goodes, and breke doun theire houses; and so, many of hem did, and many of hem stale away, some into Picardy and some into Flaundres. And þere[1] was a cry made in þe market-place[2] of Caleis, þ*a*t al man*er* of men beyng in Caleis, or 8 lyvyng vnder biH vnsworn, þ*a*t they shuld come to þe toune-haH, and[3] there to be sworn the Kyng*es* trewe leege men; And þai that wold not be sworn, to take þeire goodes and go theire way where þay wold. And so þere come many, and were there sworn; and many 12 went theire way into Flaundres, and wold not be sworn. ¶ And on Saynt George day, Sir Iohn Radcliff sent word prevely to þe Daywach of þe toune in þe nonetyme to rynge[4] out the larom beH, vnwetyng to the sawdioures of þe[5] toune. And so *þer* was a grete 16 Alarom, and saudioures were onon in thaire harneys, and comyners with hem, And wende þ*a*t enmys hade comen to haue fechet the bestys þ*a*t were pasteryng about the toun; but þere was non; for Sir Iohn Radclif did it for a sport, because it was Saint George 20 day; And for þat he wolde se howe saudioures wold bokkeH and dresse hem to þeire harneys.

¶ And sone afterward, Edmond, Erle of Morteyn, and the Lord Camys, Sir William of Asshton, knyght*e*, [6] And Sir Geffrey 24 Werburton, knyght*e*,[6] shuld haue shippit att Wynchilsey to haue gon into Fraunce with the nomber of iij M† men of sper*es* and Archers; but because there was so gret a noys of þe seege comynge to Caleis, þei[7] were contirmaundit be þe Kyng [6] and þe Duyke of 28 Gloucestre[6] to go thider, and strengh*e* þe toun tiH rescous myght be had. And so went þe Erle with his Armee to Caleis. ¶ Then Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucestr*e*, Protectoure and Deffendoure of Englond, and Capteyn [6] of Caleis and of Guysnes,[6] send for al þe 32 lord*es* of the Reame, both sp*irit*ueH and temp*er*eH, and for al his feede men, and desired of hem an eyde for þe rescowe of þe saide toune of Caleis. And þe lord*es* temp*er*aH hym graunted to go with hy*m* hem-self in p*r*opur person, and fynde a certeyn meyny with 36 hem vppon þeire oune cost; And bisshoppis, Abottes and priours also graunted to fynde a certeyn meyny to go with hym; And al

[1] And sone aftir there L. [2] place *om.* L. [3] and *om.* L.
[4] *leaf* 163. [5] of Ha. of þe L. [6–6] *om.* L. [7] that þei Ha. þei L.

his feede men) hym) graunted eke to go with hym); And he thonket aH. And then was it criet in al þe port tounes and haven) tounes in Englond, þat al man*er* shippis þ*at* were able to saile be þe see[1]
4 shuld come into[2] Sandewich haven) be a certeyn) day; and so thei were þe nomber of ij^{c}[3] sailes and moo. ¶ Philip*e*, Duyke of Burgoyn), made hym) redy, and the Fle*m*mynge*s*, al this while, and toke dyu*er*se m*ar*chaund*es* p*ri*sone*rs*, as they come homward out of
8 Flaundres to Caleis, [4]and specially they of Dunkirke.[4] And when þe Erle of Morteyn) was comyn) w*ith* his Armee to Caleis, as before is saide, he made a iournay of Bulleyn), xx^{ti} myle from) Caleis, and brent the subbarbes of þe toune, and come to Caleis ageyn) on þe
12 next day after, vnfoghten) withe, and broughte with hem) þaire pray of bestes and theire pillage. And onon) after, he made anothir iournay in-to West Flaundres, to a place clepit þe Lawe. And whiles they ryfelt and spoilet that cuntre, and praiet in cateH, al
16 þ*at* cuntre gedert, and come doune to Gravenyng, to mete w*ith* hym there. And when) þe Erle and his meyny come dryvyng theire pray of bestes before hem), on þe sandes betwene þe toune of Gravenyng and þe see, thay issuet out of þe toune prudly, and
20 faught w*ith* hym); but þai were sone discomfit, & slayn) of hem) iiij^{c} and moo: then thai fledde in-to þe toun), and þe Englyshe men) hem) foloet, and toke many prisone*rs*. [4]And þer was an Englisshe man), a gentiH man), and a spere on) horsebake, folowet þe chase of hem)
24 right to þe hard gates of þe toun), so nere that his hors bare hym) into þe toun) of Gravenyng, wheder he wold or no; which aft*er* ward was delyu*er*t be raunson).[4] ¶ The Erle þen, w*ith* his pepiH, drove ou*er* þe havon) of Gravenyng thaire pray of bestes, att lowe
28 water, in spite of al þe Fle*m*mynge*s*, and brought hem) w*ith* al thaire prisone*rs* to Caleis, and lost neu*er* a man; thonket be God! and [4]þai brought so gret plente of Cowes w*ith* hem, þ*at* a man) myght haue þe best melche cowe þat was, for xij^{d} sterlyng.[4] ¶ And
32 when þe Kyng and þe lorde*s* had tithynge*s* of þis iournay of Gravenyng, the Kyng sent to þe saide Erle of Morteyn) to Caleis, the Gartur. And onon) aftirward, the Lord Camys, Sire William Asshton), And Sir Geffrey Weckton), w*ith* þe garnyson) of Caleis and
36 of Guysnes, made þe iij^{de} iournay, both of horsemen) and [5]footemen, and rode before the toune of Arde, and ryfelt aH the cuntre about þe said toun). And in the mene while, Sire Robert Savois, Capteyn)

[1] be þe see *om.* L. [2] and in Ha. into L. [3] ij^{c} L. [4—4] *om.* L.
[5] *leaf* 163, *back.*

of Fynes, had gedirt of Pykard*es* to þe nombre of iiij M† speris on horsbake, And laide hem) pryvely in Camp*e* Grove besides the Casteꝗ of Balyngham. And when þe Lord Camoys with his peple was comyng homward in the feld*es* be-syde the said grove, 4 the[i] stert iij hares, and þerwith þay gave a gret showte; And so both horsemen and footemen), w*ith* h*u*ntyng of hem), were stragelt abrode ou*er* aꝗ þe feldys, and were al out of array, and wist nothyng of þe Pikard*es* þ*at* lay in þe grove besid*es* hem), but eu*er* 8 stiꝗ showtet and huntet after þe hares, which were att last slayn) among*es* hem). ¶ And as þay were so stragelt and out of Array,- the Pikard*es* sodeynly brake out of þe Grove, and rode thrugh*e* oure meyny, in and out agayn), and smote doun) many fotemen). 12 and þen), many of oure horsemen), seyng this, fledde to þe Casteꝗ of Balyngham; but the Lord Camoys and þes ij knyght*es* kept þe feld; And as God wold, the fote-mene relev*i*d ageyn) to þe standart,- And, þe horse-men) also, And sett frely on) þe Pikard*es*, and hem) 16 discomfyt, and slowe many of hem), and drof hem) to the gat*es* of Arde, [1] where-as one Lucas, a squyer, folowet hens w*ith*in theire barreers, and was slayn); for whome was made much mone.[1] And þus,—thonket be God!—þe Lord Camoys had þe victory of his 20 enmys, [1] þe Pikard*es*, in a feld callet þe Golden) Dale, besidde þe Casteꝗ of Balyngham,[1] And come to Caleys, with þeir pray.

¶ Onon) after, the Duke of Burgoyn), Phelip*e*, was redy, and come doune to Gravenyng with his ordyn*au*nce, and Flem*m*ynge*s*, 24 þe nombre of an CL M†, and xij M† cart*es*; and [1] ich cart had his cokke to craw*e* among*es* the host.[1] ¶ Then þai made a brigge ou*er* þe water of Gravenyng, [1] into a place callet þe Hoke, þ*at* was partenyng to þe saide Duyke.[1] And so come þey ou*er*, and shewet 28 hem) before þe Casteꝗ of Oye, and sent to Nicolas Horton), squier, -and Capteyn) of þe same Casteꝗ, an heraude, chargyng hym) to delyuer vp þe Casteꝗ. And he sent hym wo*r*de agayn), and said he toke hym non to kepe; nor non) he wold delyu*er*: Neu*er*þeles, 32 afterward, by a fals trety, þai had hym) out of þe Casteꝗ to come speke with þe Duyk. And in þe mene while þe Casteꝗ was wonnen) by a grate of Iron), þ*at* was lafte open) in þe buttery, where-as a gune lay whiles þe saudiers were in þe haꝗ aboven), 36 tretyng of a poyntement with an heraud of þe said Duyk*es*; And sodeynly þe Flem*m*ynge*s* come in, and toke hem) in þe haꝗ, and

[1]—[1] *om.* L.

hanget lvj on þe gallows vnder þe Casteł,[1] w*ith*out eny pite, And slowe al þe remen*aunt*, except Nicolas Horton, Capiteyn of þe said Casteł, and one William Bullion,[2] Constable, And Willi*am* Bullion, his cosyn[2]: thes iij[3] were p*rison*e*rs*, but [2]Nicolas Horton þe Capteyn was long afterward[4] raunsonet, and come home in-to Englond; And þe Constable dyet in prison for sorowe; And his cosyn William[2] Bullyon[5] was so beknowe and welebelouet w*ith* þe Pikard*es*, þat thay gave hym his raunson, and lete hym go where he wold, so þ*at* he shuld go to Caleys, and espy when þe Duyk of Glouceste*r* shuld come ou*er* with his Navey from Sandewich, And sende hem worde. ¶ When this William Bullyon come to Caleis, þe pepił had gret m*er*vaile þ*at* he was letton go w*ith*out paying of eny rownson; wherfore Edmond, Erle of Morteyn, made to arest hym, and put hym in prison, and bare hym on hond þ*at* he was a spy. And þ*er*[6] he knowlegit þat he promyset hem to give hem warnyng of þe comyng of þe Duyk of Glouceister, because of his deliu*er*aunce, but he sware he thought*e* neu*er* to haue warnet hem; neu*er*theles, for þat he was brought*e* vnder þe pillery in þe market of Caleis, and there his hed was gird of: for whom much*e* mone was made, for he was a gud Arche*r*.

¶ When þe Fle*m*mynge*s* had þus wonnen þe Casteł of Oy be a trayne, as before is said, [2]which was on Saynt Petirs even in Iuyne,[2] thai brake vp al þe lede of the halle and of þe toures, and brent vp eu*er*y stykke; And after, vndermynet þe walles and [7]þe toures, and sette shores vndernethe, And after, sette þe same shores on fyre, and brent hem, and so lete þe walles and toures[8] fał doune[9] into þe dik*es*. ¶ Then, þe second day of Iuyle, the Fle*m*mynge*s* laide seege to þe Casteł of Mark, þ*at* was next þe Casteł of Oye; but þe Erle of Morteyn had sent thider before, Christofer of Barton, squyer, with a certeyn felesship*e* with hym, to helpe[10] to strenghe þe Casteł. ¶ The Fle*m*mynge*s* laid þeire gonnes to þe walles, [2]& beete doun þe vawmures and þe walles,[2] and gave þe Englisshe men w*ith*-in many stronge assawt*es*; and they manfully hem diffendit, and beet hem of, and fortifiet þe walles ageyn with tymbre and donge, & w*ith* such thyng as they had within hem, And kept it be strenghe vj dais. And when þay sawe þai couth haue no rescowe, thay gave it ou*er*, and yolde hem-

[1] vnder þe Casteł *om.* L. [2–2] *om.* L. [3] ij L.
[4] afterward was Ha. [5] þis Bullion L. [6] þei Ha. *per* L.
[7] *leaf* 164. [8] toures & walles L. [9] doune *om.* L.
[10] to helpe *om.* L.

self prisoners. ¶ Then þe Flemmynges spoilet þe Casteꝗ, and brake of al þe lede, and brent it, and vndermynet þe walles and toures[1], [2]and sette shores þer-vnder; and after brent hem, and lete þe walles and toures faꝗ into þe dike, as þai hade done þe Casteꝗ of Oye.[2] ¶ Then, þe ix^te^ day of Iuyle, In þe yere of oure Lord Ihesu Crist M† iiij^c^ xxxvj, Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyn, with þe Flemmynges, come to Caleis, and laid seege þerto be landꝑ, and pight his tentis[3] before þe toune, on þe playne of Saint Peters, a myle nere out of þe toun. And þe Duyk hym-self lay a litiꝗ from Newname brigge, And þai of Gaunt beside hym, And þey of Brugges, with þe comyntee of Flaundres, lay besides Saynt Peters Chirche. but the Duyke lay not þere but ij days, but þat he remeveꝑ from thens, and al þe Gaunteners with hym, to þe Est ende of þe toun, And þere he pichet his tentes; for he woldꝑ ly no lenger att þe west ende of þe toun, for cause a gune shotte thrugh his tent. And then þei of Gaunt onon made a strong bulwerk on an high hiꝗ of þe downe, of pipis & tymber, betweene þaire loggynges and þe toun, and shott gunnes in-to þe toun; and many tymes þai shot al ouer þe toun; but al þeire gunshot did neuer harm, thanket be God [2]and þe Holy Virgyn Saint Barbara![2] ¶ In þe mene whiles, whil þe Duyke lay att seege at Caleis, with þe Flemmynges,[4] Sir Robert Savois, knyght,[5] with iiij M† Picardes, come before þe Casteꝗ of Balyngham. And one Richard Sellyng, beyng þerof leotenaunt vnder Richard Bokelond, Squier, and Capteyn of þe same Casteꝗ; which Richard Sellyng gave ouer þat[6] Casteꝗ shamefully, without eny stroke, vppon apoyntement to go to þe Castell of Guysnes in thaire doublettes; and so thai did; and lafte al theire goodes, and þe stuff of þe Casteꝗ behynde hem, which was þe[7] best-stuffet place in al þoo marches.

And when Richard Sellyng come þus to Guysnes with his feleshippe, William Picton, Leotenaunt of Guysnes [2]vnder Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucester,[2] putte hym in prison in þe said Casteꝗ of Guysnes. And when þe Picardes haꝑ þis Casteꝗ, þe[i] spoilet it, and brake of þe lede, and brant al þe place, and vndermynet þe walles[8] and toures, and lete hem faꝗ in þe dike, as the Flemmynges hade done with þe Castelles of Oye and Mark. ¶ Then þe Picardes come before þe Casteꝗ of Guysnes, and laide seege þerto, and

[1] toures so þat al þe Castel fell to þe grounde L. [2–2] *om.* L.
[3] tentis L. *om.* Ha. [4] with þe Flemmynges *om.* L. [5] knyght *om.* L.
[6] þe same L. [7] þe be Ha. þe L. [8] places L.

broughte *with* hem a gret brasen gune of Dogeon),[1] with iij chambers, and ij othir grete gunnes of Iron callet bumbardes; and paye laide þe brasen gune in A seller of þe toune of Guysnes, on þe
4 dikeside of þe Casteꝗ, and shotte att a ward next a toure callet þe Faanetoure, and brake it doune in-to þe dike. but William Picton, Leotenaunt of þe Casteꝗ, with his felesshipe with-in, fuꝗ manfully and discretely hym gidet, and it fortifiet ageyn with tymber and
8 dong. ¶ And in this while, anoþer meyny of Picardes come before þe Casteꝗ of Sandgate, and bade hem deliuer vp þe Casteꝗ; for þai said aꝗ oþer Castelles were gyven ouer. Wherfore Sir Thomas Knevet, [that] was sent thidir wiꝗ A crewe, and made þerof
12 leotenaunt be þe Kyng, [2]Wist not what for to do; And so,[2] [3]by[4] þe counsaile of one Sir Thomas Heneley, Preest, A traitour, he gave vp þe Casteꝗ of Sandgate, shamefully and cowardly, with-oute eny stroke, and hym-self and all þat were with-in þe Casteꝗ, prisoners,
16 except þe fals preest, which was letton go where he wold; but[5] he went vp into Fraunce, and neuer man wist after where þat he become. ¶ And when þai had þe Casteꝗ, þai brake doun þe lede, and sette fyre on al þe place, and vndermynet þe walles; but þe
20 Dongeon was so strong, þay couth not vndermyne it, but brake it a litiꝗ abouen; and so þey lefte it, and lete it stande.

¶ Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyn, lay stiꝗ all this while, *with* his host of Flemmynges, before Caleis; and þei of þe toune had letten
24 in the see, and drownet al þe cuntre about hem. And ich day þai of þe toune and þe Flemmynges skarmysshet to-gedirs. And when þai had leyn þer xiiij daies, þe Duyke lete ordeyn .xx. shippis out of Flaundres, wherof vj old shippes were lade with hard ston,
28 chalke, and brekes masont in hem with morter, to droune hem in þe haven of Caleis, *þat* no shippis shuld come þer-in. And when it was fuꝗ see, about noone, þey bulgit hem, some in þe haven-mouthe, and some be-sides the haven, to no purpos; for þei durst
32 not tary, nor þei had no gret leysere to droun hem, for fere of gun-shotte; And so þei went þeire way ageyn; and on þe next day after, at lawe water, wel was hym of þe toun *þat* myght bring an Ax to breke þe shippis; and so þai did, al to peces, and broughte
36 hem in-to toune, and refresshid wele þe pouer pepil; and al þe brekstones were gyven to Saynt Mary Chirch; [2]and so were þai al cariet in-to toun.[2] And whilis þis was in doyng .I. thowsand

[1] of Dogeon *om.* L. [2—2] *om.* L. [3] *leaf* 154, *back.* [4] but be L. [5] and L.

Fle*m*mynge*s* stoden) on þe downes and beheld it, and were fuꝗ sory in þeire herte*s*, and were fuꝗ gretely þ*er*with[1] abasshit; for þai hadꝑ wendꝑ þ*er* shuldꝑ no shipp*is* haue comen) in þe haven) afterwardꝑ. ¶ Sone after þ*at*, it feꝗ þ*at* they of Brugges that lay at Saint 4 Petirs, come from) þeire tent*es* doun) to Bulleyngate ward, some w*ith* pavis, and some with crossebawes, a grete meyny stragelynge. And þei of þe toune ordeynt sper*es* on horsebakke prevely in Bulleyngat bulwerk, so þ*at* they were not seyn); and sent out 8 certeyn) fotemen) to scarmysshe w*ith* hem), til þey sawe theyre tyme to breke out on hem). And when þe horsemen) sawe þaire tyme, þei sodenly prikkit to hem); and þen) þe Fle*m*mynge*s* fledde to þe tent*es*; but or þai couth come there, þai were ou*er*thrawen), and 12 brought in-to þe toune, xxxvj^{ti} of hem) prisoners; and þe host with-in þe tent*es* fledꝑ out at þe est side,[2] and wendꝑ al þe worlde had comyn) on hem): And þis was on a Thursday; wherfore þe Fle*m*mynge*s* it clepit the 'Quade Thursdagh.' ¶ When þis Iourney 16 wes done vppon) hem) þ*at* were of Brugge*s*, [3]and of þe comynte of Flaundres,[3] the Gaunten*er*s þ*at* lay w*ith* þe Duyke at þe est ende of þe toune, loghe hem) to scorn); for þe which fiꝗ[4] a gret debate amonge*s* hem), and faught with-in hem)-self, so þat noþ*er* party 20 come to othir after þat tyme. ¶ And on þe Setirday sevennyght, & ij daies afterward, they of þe toune of Caleis, w*ith* certeyn) horsemen) & fotemen), Issuyt out sodenly on þe afternoone, and went streight to theire bullewerk on the hye hiꝗ in þe dounes, and man- 24 fully it wanne and toke, and slowe al þ*at* eu*er* were in hit, and brake doune þe bullewerk, and went hamwardꝑ with þeir p*r*isoners; but þe Erle of Morteyn) mette hem) without þe toune, and made to sle al þe prison*er*s, for cause of one Watkyn) Ruskyn), a gentiꝗ man) 28 and a gud spere, was slayn) at þe wynnyng of þe same bullewerk. And when) þis bullewerk was þus wonne vppon) hem) of Gaunt, they of Brugge*s* were glad, and logh hem) of Gaunt to scorn.[5]

[1] þ*er*w*ith* full gretly L. [2] ende L. [3]–[3] *om.* L. [4] fell L.
[5] Gaunt Ha (*last word of the incomplete MS.*). Gaunt to scorn L.

[I]

[*Lambeth MS.* 6, *col.* 2.]

[*The Siege of Calais abandoned. The Englishmen's Mocking Song against the Flemings.*]

[1]And þis Seturday at night, the Lord Welles wes sent ouer to Caleis by the Duyk of Gloucestre w*ith* a certeyn meyny, to strength̄ the toun till he come w*ith* his nauey; And he landed
4 behynd þe toure of Ryesbank. And his peple made so gret noice in þe londyng, that þe Duk of Burgoyn & they of Gaunt, which lay at þe Est ende of the town, wend the Duk of Gloucest*er* had londid w*ith* his nauey þ*at* sam nyght; wherfore þe Duk & they of
8 Gaunt brake vp þeire tent*es* sodeynly & p*ri*uely, & went ouer Grauenyng watir þat same nyght, and lafte behynd hem much of þeire vitaile & of þeir ordynaunce; and gu*n*nes were founden beried vndir þe erthe. And thay of Brugg*es*, þat lay at Saynt
12 Petirs with þe comy*n*te of Flaundres, knewe no-þyng of theire goyng til þe Sonday in the mornyng aftir; on which Sonday, at the releuyng, iiij. Englissh trumpett*es* blewe vp on hye vppon Milkgate toure, as [2]they were wont to do eu*er*y day at þe releuyng
16 of the wach duryng the seege. And then they aspyed þat aH̄ þe Gaunteners were gon; but þey at Saynt Petirs lay stiH̄. but as sone as they sawe þat the Duyk, þeire lord, & they of Gaunt, were gon, þey brake doun*e* þeire tentes, & sette þeire loggyng*es* on fyre,
20 and fled þeir way in aH̄ that euer þey myght, and laft behynd hem much̄ of þeir vitailes for hast. And they of the towne wold haue folowed aftir; but þe Lord Welles had brought a p*ri*uey seal from þe King, chargyng, on payn of their lyues, the[y] shuld not passe
24 gunneshotte w*ith*out toun til þe Duyk of Gloucestre come w*ith* his power; And ne had þat ben, there had ben gret good geton þat tyme.

¶ AH̄ þis while þe Pycardes lay at seege at Guysnes, and had
28 smytte doun*e* þe ward next þe Faane toure, w*ith* þe gret brasen gunne, as before is said. And when they of the CasteH̄ sawe þe

[1] *leaf* 255, *back.* [2] *leaf* 256.

Flem*m*ynge*s* sette þeire loggynge*s* on fyre, thay made to ry*n*g the larome beH in al that þey myȝt. Wherfore the Pycardes were sore abasshid, and wend the Duke of Gloucestre had ben landed w*ith* his power, & wes comyng to rescowe the Castel, And anon [1]brake 4 þe seege, and carted þeire ordynaunce, & fled in al that eu*er* þey myȝt. And they of þe Castel yssued out, botH on horsebak & on foote, aftir he*m*, and ou*er*toke the gret brasen gu*n*ne carted, & two oþir gret bombardes of yron; but the iij. chambres of þe brasen 8 gunne were scaped fro*m* hem with þe hoost. Then they of Guysnes hewed in sonder the cartwheles, and aftir, w*ith* strengH of men & horses, they wer brought into þe said Castel of Guysnes; & aftir they were brought in-to the toun*e* of Caleis. ¶ And on this wise, 12 Phelip, Duk of Burgoyn*e*, & the Flemmynge*s*, departid from Caleis, and þe Pycardes fro*m* þe Castel of Guysnes, w*ith* gret shame & gret diswurship, & w*ith* gret losse. Wherfore amonges Englisshmen were made many rymes of þe Flemmynges; among the whicH, one 16 is here sette for a remembraunce, that saith on this wise:—

When þe Flem*m*yng wer fressh, florisshid in your flouris,
And had we[l]th at your will, ye wolde be conquerouris
Of Caleis, þat litill toun*e*: as it come in your mynde; 20
But ye, to conquere Caleis, it comeþ you not of kynde.

[2]Remembres on þat wurship ye wa*n*n the first day,
When the Erle of Mortein come passi*n*g with his pray
Before youre toun*e* of Grauenyng, wher ye, as men bold, 24
Com*e* rennyng on hym fersli, as lyons of Cotteswold,
With habirgeons & hounsculles, & rusti kettiH hattes,
With long pykes, goden daghes for to stikke the rattes,
With messis & meskins, & eke w*ith* side Iakes, 28
Doun*e* vnto mydde þe leg, of kanuas lyke to sakes;
Stoppid al w*ith* hempen tawe, and þ*at* in straunge wise,
Stiched like a matrace, al of þe newe gyse,
Ye laid vpon þenglisshmen so myghtily w*ith* your handes, 32
Til of you iij. hundrid lay strechid on the sandes.
Ye fled þen in-to Grauenyng, and wold no lenger bide,
And gaue þe Erle leue to passe ouer that same tyde
In saafte with his p*ri*soners, & lost neuer a man: 36
This was þe first wurship, of Caleys that ye wan.

[1] *col.* 2, *leaf* 256, Lambeth MS. 64. [2] *leaf* 256, *back*.

Remembres how ye laide seege, with gret pryde & bost,
[1]To Caleis, *þat* littil toune: the noumbre of youre host
Was a hundrid thousand & fifty, to reken by þe pollis,
4 As it was þat same tyme founden by youre rollis;
And yette, for al youre gret host, erly nothir late,
Caleis was so ferd of you, þey shitte neuer a gate.

Remembres how ye drowned att fuH see for þe nones,
8 With shippes, Caleis hauen, massoned w*ith* stones,
And how that þe Calisers hem brake the next day,
When it was lawe watir, and bare lxiii clene away,
Eu*er*y stikke & stone, & lafte not ther one log.
12 Remembres eke on Goby, the watir-bailiffes dog,
How he scarmysshed w*ith* you twyes vpon the day,
And among you, on þe sandes, made many a fray.

Remembres ye of Brugg*es*; how ye ferst wan youre shon*e*,
16 How ye com*e* forth to scarmyssh vpoñ an aftirnon*e*
With pauyses & crossebowes, on Saynt Petirs playn*e*,
And how sone the Calisers made you to turn*e* agayn*e*,
[2]And ou*er*threwe you sodey*n*ly, or euer that ye wist,
20 And brought you in-to Caleis, tyed fast by the fist.

Remembres ye of Gaunt eke: for al youre pride & bost,
Wonneñ was youre bulwerk, beside your gret host,
And slayn*e* all that was therin: & ye, that same night,
24 Fled ou*er* Grauenyng watir; but go *þat* go myght,
And youre lord w*ith* you, for dreed and for fere
Of the Duyk of Gloucester; & yette was he not *þer*.
Wel was hym might go before w*ith* pison*e* & w*ith* paunce,
28 And laft behind you, for hast, al youre ordynaunce.

Reme*m*bres, ye Picardes, at seege eke as ye lay
Of Guysnes, that strong Castel, how ye fled away
For ryngyng of the larum*e* beH, sha*m*fulli in a morowe,
32 As ferd as þe Flem*m*yng*es*, w*ith* hertes full of sorowe.
Ye lost there your ordynaunce, of gu*n*nes that was cheff:
To you & to al Pycardis, shame and gret repreff.

Reme*m*bres now, ye Flemmyng*es*, vpon youre own*e* shame;
36 [3]When ye laide seege to Caleis, ye wer right still to blame;

[1] *col.* 2, *leaf* 256. [2] *leaf* 257. [3] *col.* 2, *leaf* 257.

For more of reputaciou*n*, ben Englisshmeñ þen ye,
And comen of more gentiłł blode, of olde antiquite;
For Fle*m*mynge*s* come of Fle*m*med men ye shal wel vndirstand,
For fflemed men & banshid men enhabit first youre land. 4

Thus proue I þat Flemmynge*s* is but a flemed man,
And Flaunders, of Flem*m*ynge*s*, the name first began.
And þe*r*fore, ye Flemmynges, þa*t* Flemmynge*s* ben named,
To compare wi*th* Englisshmen, ye aught to be ashamed! 8
Ye be nothing elles worth, but g*r*et wordes to camp;
Sette ye stiłł, & bith in pees: God gyue you quadenramp!

¶ Such & many oþir rymes were made amonge Englisshmeñ, aftir the Flemmynges were thus shamfully fled frome Caleis, & þe 12 Picardis from Guisnes fledd, & gon þeire way, for drede & fere of þe comy*n*g of the Duyk of Gloucestre, whiche by þat tyme was redy at London wi*th* his power & armee to come to þe rescows of Caleis, & to shippe at Sandwichh, wh*er*-as lay redy in þe hauen iij^{c} sailes 16 to abyde his comyng.

[*End of the MS.*]

[K]

[*Extracts from the unique Lambeth* MS. 84.]

I.

[*How Havelok's son, Curan, became King of Denmark and England.*]

[1]How Kyng Edelf maried Argentyl to a knave of his Kechyn.

ANd Kyng Edelf, þat was vncle to þe damoyseH Argentil, bethought him how he myght with some tresoun have þe lande fro hire þat was his Nece, for euermore; and, false forsworne ayenst his othe, thouht how he myght disceyue þe damoyseH; And so he maried here to a knaue of his kechyn þat men callyd Curan. And this Curan becam þe worthiest man of body þat ony man wist in ony lande; for he was þe lengest man & highest of aH þe Kynges householde, or in ony oþer place þat men knew þat tyme. And Kyng Edelfe supposed to haue maryed hire shamfully & vnworthily, for enchesoun þat he thought to haue alle here lande, as he had & heelde before þat tyme, but he was disceyued; ffor this Curan was Hauelokes sone, þat was Kyng of Kirkeland in Denmark, as ye shul here. ¶ Hauelok,[2] þat was Kyng of Kirkelonde in Denmark, spousyd þe Kyngis doughtir of þis londe, whiche was ryght eyre of þis lande, þat men callyd Gildeburghe, & he begat on hire this forseide Curan, whiche was his eyre. And whan Hauelok vnderstode þat he shulde deye, he betoke his sone Curan to a lorde of his londe to kepe, þat he louyd & trustid moche vnto; and þat this lorde shulde mary his sone Curan to some worthi gentylwoman, whan he were come to age, & to make kym Kyng of his landis. This lorde graun̄tyd hym þat he woolde so do, & toke þe childe with hym, & kepte hym. ¶ But aftyrward, this lorde bethouhte hym how he myght put this childe Curan from his enerytaunce, and þat alle the lordis of Denmark dred hym, & many of them had hym in gret fauour; and therupon, he leete crowne hym-selfe Kyng of aH Denmark, and toke homage &

[1] *leaf* 48.

[2] Marginal rubric: How Curan, þat was Hauelokis sone, kyng of Denmark, weddid þe Kyngis douhetir of Ingelond.

feaute of aH þe lordis & peple of Denmark. And anon he betoke
Curan, þat was riht eneritour to þe crowne of Denmark, vnto a
fissher, prevely, þat no man vndirstode, & gaue þe fissher gret good,
& also chargyd hym, on payne of deethe, þat he shulde take þe 4
childe Curan with hym, & priuely drowne hym in þe see, so þat
he may neuer se nor here more of hym. The fissher seyde it
shulde be doon, & toke þe childe priueli with hym. And whan he
was in þe brode see, & purposid to doon this deede, he had gret pite 8
& compassioun vpon this young childe, and thouht it were gret pite
to drowne so faire a childe; & so he withdrew his euil purpose, &
saued þe childis lyfe, & toke þe younge childe with hym, [1]and
forsoke þe lande, & dwellyd in another countre with þe childe, for 12
drede off þe Kyng þat vsurped þe lande. And this man kept tys[2]
childe tyl he was wox moche, and of a resonable age; and alwey
þe childe callyd hym 'fadyr,' wenyng to hym þat he had so be;
tyl vpon a tyme, tis[2] fissher callid þe childe vnto hym, and tolde 16
hym how he was nat his fadyr, but seide þat Hauelok, whiche was
Kyng of Denmark, was his fadyr; & whan he shulde dye, he
prayde a lorde of his londe to kepe his sone Curan; "& whan ye
were come to natural age, to make yow Kyng of þe lande, as 20
rightful enerytour. And he toke yow to me, & gaue me gret good,
& also charged me, vp payne of deede, þat I shulde drowne yow in
þe see. and I fulfillyd nad his commaundment, but sparid youre
lyf, & kept yow hidyr-to with tho goodis þat he gaue me; & perfor 24
I durste not abide in þat londe, but fledde with yow in-to this
countre; for he regneth nów for kyng of Denmarke, & vsurpeth þe
crowne. And perfor I counseile yow to drawe to som pryncis
courte, þat ye may haue eyde & helpe to enerite youre londe ayen." 28
¶ Than this young Ientylman thankid this fissher of his gret
charite, & toke his leue, & cam to þe Kyngis courte of Ingelond,
and was a sqwiler in þe kechyn: þe whiche kynge þat regnyd tho
in Ingelonde was Edelf, whiche vsurpyd þe lande wrongfully, from 32
his owne cosyn, whiche was kyng Adelbrightis doughtir, & riht
eneritur, þat men callyd ArgentyH. ¶ And þis Kyng Edelf
thouhte to mary her shamfully & vnworthely, for enchesoun to
haue her londe from her; & so he maryed her to Curan, þat was 36
sqwiler of his kechyn. ¶ And than Curan toke his wife ArgentiH,
& went in-to Denmarke, and as God woolde, whiche helpith aH
good men in ther right, conueyed Curan & his wife to þe howse of

[1] *leaf* 48, *back*. Lambeth MS. 84. [2] *sic* MS.

a worthi knyhte of Denmarke, þe whiche lovyd wel þe fadyr of þe seide Curan. And whan this Curan was come thedyr, þe knyhte was glad to holde hym, because þis Curan was so hye a man of stature,
4 & wel made w*ith*-alle; & þe knyght comau*n*did his serwau*n*tis to make hym & his wife goode chere; for they semyd onest foke. And aftyr, whan þe nyght was come, þei were asyngned where þei shulde lye. And in þe dede tyme of þe nyght, whan alle folkis
8 were a-bedde, & be lyklyode a-slepe, there was a gret lyght in þ*er*e chambre, whiche oon of þe knyghtis seruauntis aspied, & preuely went vnto þe chambre to wete what yt ment. & whan he come thedyr, he sye a wonder grete stre[1]me of lyhte com from þe mannys
12 side, & also a-noþ*er* from þe woma*n*nys side, þei beyng fast aslepe, þ*at* alle þe chambyr was lyght þ*er*e-w*ith*. And þis man yede softly vnto his maistyr þe knyht, & tolde hym what he sye. & þe knyht rose hym vp & yede thedyr, & fonde yt sothe as his man had seide.
16 & þe knyht maruelyd sore what it shulde mene, & yede a-yen to his bed, & musid sore ther-on. ¶ And on þe morw þe knyht arose, & sent for this man Curan; and anon þe knyht axyd hym what man he was; who was his fadyr; & where he was born. Than Curan seyde:
20 "syrre, I wot nevyr where I was born, nor who was my fadyr, but be þe seyng of a man þ*at* was a fissher, whiche kept me vp of yowthe; & I knew none oþ*er* but þ*at* he was my fadyr. & whan I was growen moche, & vndirstode resou*n*, he seide to me that he
24 was not my fadyr, but seyde þ*at* þe Kynge of Denmark was my fadir, þ*at* men callyd Hauelok, & Gildeburgh*e* my modyr, whiche was þe Kyngis douhtir of Ingelond. & whan my fadyr shulde dye, he betoke me to kepe to a lorde of his, & prayde hym þ*at* he shulde
28 make me kyng, whan I come to lawful age. & that lorde betoke me to a man þ*at* was a fissher, & gaue hy*m* gret good, & also chargyd hem, vp payne of dethe, þ*at* he shulde drowne me in þe see; but þe man, of pite, cowde not fynde it in his herte." Thanne seyde
32 þe knyht: "if it be thus, I shal knowe be sertayne fetures & tokenys þ*at* is on youre body, þe whiche þ*at* I & othyr knyhtis were comau*n*did to se & take hede of, when ye were ryht you*n*ge." Than Curan stripte hym nakyd; & anon þe knyht sye þe markis
36 on his body þ*at* he knew ful wel. And than þe knyht knelyd dou*n* & did hym worship, & seide, 'forsothe he was þe sone of his wurshipful lorde Hauelok, & rihtful ayre of Denmarke.' And in alle þe hast, þe knyght wrote vnto dyuerse lordis of þ*at* lande,

[1] *leaf* 49.

seynge, *þat* 'Curan, þe sone of Haueloke, & rihtful eyre, was fou*n*de, & was w*ith* hym, in his place.' ¶ And whan þe lordys herde this, & vndirstode þe trowthe, anon thei assemblyd a gret power, & cam thedyr, & did homage & fewte vnto hym. and aftyr 4 *þat*, thei yede & gaue batayle vnto þe Kyng *þat* vsurpyd, whom þe seyde Curan slew, his own hondis. And aftyr *þat*, thei crownyd hym Kyng of Denmarke, & so he enyoyed his enheritau*n*ce. ¶ And in þe nexte yere folwyng, this seid Curan cam in-to 8 Ingelonde, & conqueryd his wives lande, and slowe Kyng Edelfe in þe xx. yere of his regne. In whois tyme deyde Seint Ethelburga, þe first abbes of Berkyng, In þe yere of oure Lorde v^c^lxviij. And this Edelf was þe last kyng of þe trew Brytou*n*s. 12

Anno d*omi*ni v^c^lxx: Regned Curan, *þat* was [1]Hauelokis son, Kyng of Denmark, whiche reynyd be his wives titel, & not be his owne. Capitulu*m* lxxvij.

Aftyr Kyng Edelf, *þat* was þe laste kyng of þe trewe Brytou*n*s, 16 Regned Curan In þe yere of oure Lorde. v^c^lxx. & þis Curan was Hauelokis sone, Kyng of Denmark, *þat* was a Dane; & he regned be his wivis title, & nat be his owne; & he was a good man, & wel rewlyd þe lande. And he ne regned but 20 iij. yeris, for þe Saxons & þe Danys slewe hym; & *þat* was gret hurte to alle Britayne; [2]& so he deyde w*ith*oute yssu; & þe Britou*n*s bare his body to Stonehenge, & *þe*re entered hym w*ith* moche solempnite. 24

II.

[*The Quarrel between Richard II & his uncle, the Duke of Gloster.*]

[3]In þe xx^ti^ yer Kyng Rychard heelde a grete feste at Westmenstre. At whiche feste arryued þe Sowdyours *þat* had kepte a tou*n*e callyd Breste, & satte at dyner in þe halle, whiche tou*n*ne Kyng Rycharde had delyu*er*yd by appoyntemente to þe Duke of 28 Brytayne, wherof bygan moche trouble & sorwe, whiche dured vnto Kyng Richardys dethe. And aftyr dyner þe Duke of Gloucetre, his vncle, S*ir* Thomas of Woodstoke, sayde to þe Kyng: "Syre! haue ye not seen tho felawes *þat* sate at dyner in youre halle?" 32 and þe Kyng demaunded who they were: and he sayde, "they been

[1] *leaf* 49, *back*. [2] Rubric in margin: This kyng deyde w*ith*oute yssu.
[3] Slip of vellum between leaf 181 and 182, written on one side only. At the top of leaf 182 is "John Stoughton is a littel wantton."

yo*ur* folke þ*at* haue seruyd yow, & ben come from Breste, & now wote not what to doo, & haue ben euyl payde." Thenne þe Kyng sayde þ*at* they shal be payde. Then seyde þe Duke in a grete
4 furye: "Syre! ye oughte fyrste to put yo*ur* body in deuore to gete a tou*n*ne or a Castel be feet of warre vpon yo*ur* enemyes, er ye shulde selle or delyu*er* ony townes þ*at* yo*ur* predecessours, Kynges of Englond, haue goten & conqueryd." To þe whiche þe Kyng
8 answeryd ryght angrely: "how saye ye that?" Thenne þe Duke sayd it ageyn. Then þe Kyng byganne to wex wrothe, & sayde: "wene ye þ*at* I be a marchau*n*t or a foole, to selle my londe? by Saint Joh*an* Baptist, nay! but trouthe it is, þ*at* oure Cosyn of
12 Brytayne hathe rendryd & payde to vs þe somme þ*at* my predecessours hadde lente vppon þe sayde tou*n*ne of Breste; and sith he haue payed, it is reasoune þat this tou*n*ne be delyu*er*yd to hym ageyne." Thus beganne þe wrathe bytwene þe Kyng & his vncle.
16 And aftyrward, at Arondele, was a Cou*n*seylle of certeyne lordes, as þe Duke of Gloucetre, þe Archebisshop of Canterbury, þe Erles of Arondele, Warwyk & Marchalle, & o*þer*, for to refourme þe rewle aboute þe Kyng; whyche lordes promysed eche to abyde by o*þer*,
20 & so departed. And anone aftyr, þe Erle Marchal, whiche was Captayne of Calays, bewrayed, & lete þe King haue knowleche of all þ*er*e cou*n*selle.

III.

[*The Deposition of Richard II & Election of Henry IV. The Prophecy that Richard II should be destroyd by a Toad.*]

[1] Than in the begynnyng of þe xxiij^{ti} yer, the lordys of þe
24 reavme, w*ith* þe Comou*n*s assent, chose this worthy lorde, Syr Herry Bolyngbrook, Erle of Derby, Duke of Herforde & Duke of Lancastre be ryht lyne & herytage, and for his myhtful manhood, þ*at* þe peple fonde in hym before al othyr, they chose hym, &
28 made hym Kyng of Engelond amonges hem, And put asyde Richarde, Erle of Cambrygge, whiche was sone to Edmu*n*de Langeley, Duke of York. And this sayde Richarde, Erle of Cambrygge, had weddyd Anne, þe douh*e*tyr & Ayre of Roger
32 Mortymer, Erle of Marche & of Wulster, whiche was proclamyd, in þe ix. yer of þe regne of Kyng Richarde, heyre apparau*n*t to þe Crowne of Engelond aftyr Kyng Richarde. For þe sayde Roger was sone & Ayre to Edmu*n*de Mortym*er*, and to Philyppe,

[1] *leaf* 185, *one-third down.* Lambeth MS. 84.

douhetyr & Ayre of S*ir* Lyonel, þe .iij. sone of Kyng Edward þe .iij.; And thus was þe Ayre Ieneral put asyde. [1]Also ther was, yn Kyng Richardys courte, a worshipful clerke þat was an Astronomier, whiche knewe & vndyrstode be his cou*n*nyng þat Kyng Richarde 4 shulde be slayne & destroyed be a Toode. And vpon a tyme, he warnyd þe Kyng therof, & bad hym 'be ware of Todys; for a Toode shulde destroye hym;' and than þe Kyng thouhte & mervayled in his mynde, how þat shulde be. And vpon a tyme he ordeyned 8 & made a ryal feest in Cristmasse, & comau*n*dyd al his lordys to come thedyr. And they cam thedyr, eu*er*y lorde in þe gayest desgysyng þat they coude devyse. And among hem alle, S*ir* Herry, Erle of Derby, cam in a Gou*n*ne broyderyd [2]al abowte w*ith* Toodys. 12 & whan Kyng Richard syh*e* yt, he remembryd þe p*ro*pheci of Toodys þat his clerke tolde hym, þat he shulde be destroyed by. And eu*er* aftyr he had this Herry, Erle of Derby, yn Ielwsy & mystruste, supposyng þat yt shulde be he þat shulde destroy hym; 16 & fayne þe Kyng woolde an had hym destroyed; but at þe last he exiled hym for x yer.

IV.

[*The Murder and Burial of King Richard II. His Vision and his Treasure.*]

[3] ¶ In þe same yere, Syr Barnarde Brokeis, Sir Iohn̄ Selly, Syr Iohn̄ Mawdelyn, & Syr Will*i*am Ferby, were takyn & sette in 20 þe Toure, & aftyr, by iugement, were hanged & by-hedyd, & ther hedys sette on London Brigge. ¶ And whan Kyng Herry sawe þat these lordys thus had rysen, & assemblyd grete peple to haue put hy*m* to dethe, & for to restore Kyng Richard ageyne to 24 his crowne & to his Reame, he thoughte teschue suche peryls.[4] ¶ And a-none he co*m*mau*n*ded S*ir* Pyers of Exston, þat he shulde goo streyte to Pounfreyte, & delyu*er* þe worlde of Kyng Rychard. ¶ And so he departed fro þe Kyng, and wente to þe Castel of 28 Pountfrete, where-as Kyng Richard was in prisoune, þe whiche was sette at table for to dyne. ¶ And anon aftyr, S*ir* Pyers cam in-to þe chambre where þe Kyng was; and he broughte viij. men w*ith* hym, & eche man an axe in his honde. ¶ And whan 32 þe Kyng sawe S*ir* Pyeers w*ith* his felausshippe entre in-to þe chambre defensably arayed, he shoof þe table from hym, and

[1] Side rubric: A p*ro*phesi of Kyng Richards dethe. [2] *leaf* 185, *back*.
[3] *leaf* 186. [4] Side rubric: How kynge Richard deyde.

sprange in-to þe myddys of them, & raughte an axe out of one theyr hondes, and sette hymself valyauntly at defence. ¶ And hym-self defendyng, he slewe foure of þe eyghte. And whanne þe
4 sayde Peers sawe þe Kyng so defende hy*m*, he was soore abasshed & gretly aferde, and sterte vpon þe place where-as Kyng Richard was wonte to sytte. & as Kyng Richard foughte & defendyd hym-self goynge bacwarde, the sayde Syr Peers smote hym on þe
8 hede w*ith* his axe, þ*at* he fylle to grou*n*de. ¶ Than cryed Kyng Richard "God, mercy!" & thenne he gaue hym a-noþ*er* stroke on þe hede, & soo he deyde. ¶ And thus was this noble Kyng slayne and murthred. And whan þe Kyng was deede, þe knyghte
12 þ*at* had thus slayne hy*m*, sette hym dow*n* be þe deede bodye of Kyng Richard, & byganne to wepe, saynge: "Allas! what thyng haue we doone? we haue putte to dethe hym þ*at* hath been oure Kyng & souerayne lorde, two & twenty yere! Now haue I lost
16 myn honoure! I shal neu*er* come in place, but I shal be reproched, for I haue doone ayenst myn honour." ¶ After this, moche peeple in Englonde, & other cou*n*trees also, wolde not beleue þ*at* Kyng Richard was deede, but sayde þ*at* he was alyue
20 many yerys aftyr. ¶ Wherefor Kyng Herry, whan he wist verryly þ*at* he was deede, he leete cere hym in þe best man*er*, & w*ith* dyuers spices and baumes, & in a fayre cheste, closyd alle in lynyn clothe, saaf his visage, whiche was lefte opyn, þ*at* men myht see
24 & know his p*er*sone from alle othir men. ¶ And thus he was broughte thurgh*e* London to Powlus; & his body was leyd on a Charyotte cou*er*yd w*ith* black, and iiij. baners, whereof ij. were of þe armes of Saint George, & ij. of þe armys of Seint Edwarde;
28 & þ*er*e were an C. men clothed in blak, eche beryng a torche; ¶ And þe Cyte of London had thyrtty me*n* in whyte, eche beryng also a torche; and þe visage of þe dede body was leyde opyn, þ*at* eu*er*y man myght see and knowe þ*at* it was his body, & þ*at* he
32 was soo deede; for many men beleuyed it not. ¶ And from Powlus he was had to Westmenster, & þ*er*e he hadde his hole masse, & diryge also. ¶ And fro thens he was caryed to þe Frerys of Langley, & þere he was buryed: on whois sowle God
36 haue mercy! Amen! ¶ The comyn oppynyon of Englysshmen is, þ*at* Kyng Richard deyde not [1]aftyr þe man*er* a-foresayde, but þ*at* he deyde & was famynyd, & lakkyd bothe mete and drynke, & yet he was dayle seruyd þ*er*eof lyke a Kyng, but he myht not towche

[1] *leaf* 186, *back*.

yt, but only see hyt, & þerefor his [hunger] was þe more. And on a tyme, as he lay on his bed of estaate, hym thouhte þere come a fayre womman vnto hym, and brought a kercher ful of white Rosys, & bestruyd all his bed therwith; & he fed hym of the Rosys, þat his 4 gret hungre was withdrawe; & whan he woke, hym thoughte his apyted was wel satysfyed, & þerby his lyf contynuyd a day or tweyne the lenger. And some sayeth thus, That whan he herde saye þat his lordys, þe Duke of Excetre, þe Duke of Surrey, þe 8 Erle of Salysbury, & þe oþer lordis were deede, he was so angry & so sorowful þat he swore þat he wolde neuer ete mete, & soo abode iiij. dayes withoute etyng, as they saye. And whan Kyng Herry vndirstode þat he wolde not ete, he sente to hym ij prelatys for to 12 comforte hym; And whan they were come, he confessyd hym to one of them, þe whiche gaue hym in penaunce, þat he shulde ete his mete. And whan he supposed to haue etyn, þe mete myght not goo dounne ne auale in-to his stomake, ffor þe conduytys of 16 his bodye were shronken to-geder. And than sayde þe noble Kynge Rychard, 'þat it was doon, & þat he must nedis deye.' But certys, wheþer he deyde this way or þat other, certaynly dede he is, & was buryed at Langley: God haue mercy on his soule! 20 Amen! And then was Kyng Herry peasbly King. Then he fonde in Kyng Richardes tresory nyne honderde thousande noblys, withoute Iewellys and vessellys whiche was as moche worthe, or more. And þere was founden in þe Tresorers kepynge of Englonde, 24 an honderde and fyfty thousand noblys, & Iewels & vessell as moche or more: and thus Kyng Herry had alle his goodys. Aboute this same tyme, þe Duke of Orleaunce sente an herode of armys with lettres vnto Kyng Herry, by which he chalengyd for 28 to fyght with hym withynne lystes at Burdeux, or in some oþer metely place, with an C gentylmen withoute reproche, ageynste as meny gentlemen withoute reproche. wherto þe [1] King answeryd ageyne by lettres worshipfully, rehersyng þat at suche tyme as 32 it shulde plese hym, he wolde come with suche nombre as it apperteyneth to a Kyng, and conquere his ryght; at whiche tyme he shulde be answeryd atte fulle; & so þe mater fynysshed.[1]

[1—1] This is in the margin.

V.

[*The Causes of the Battle of Shrewsbury*, A.D. 1403.]

[1] ¶ And than Syr Thomas Percy was Iugged to be dede, þat is to sey, drawe & hangyd, and his hede smytyn of, at Shrewesbury, & his hede to be set on London Brygge, for his fals tresone; 4 for he causyd þe gret devisioun betwene the Kyng and Syr Herry Percy; for þe Kyng woolde an had pees, & so woolde Syr Herry Percy ful fayne; But Syr Thomas Percy went betwene them, & bare fals talys, othyrwyse than they sayde or ment, & causyd that 8 batayle. Vnde *versus*: Praxedis taurius no*mine* campo Blewyk.

M. quet*uor* C. t*er* .I.[2] obit *cer*tamine Percy.

¶ Also anoþ*er* pr*in*cypal cause was: what tyme þ*at* Syr Herry Derby was exilyd be Kyng Richarde, he cam ayen out of Frau*n*ce, 12 & entryd vp in-to Engelond at Rauensport in Yorkshyre; & þ*er*e cam ayenst hy*m*, to put hy*m* of, Syr Herry Percy, othyrwise callyd Syr Herry Hote-spour. but Syr Herry Derby was sworyn þ*er*e to hy*m* & to othyr lordys, þ*at* he shulde make no chalange vnto þe 16 Crowne, but only vnto his enerytau*n*se, þe Dukedom of Lancastre; & vppon þ*at* othe they suffryd hy*m* to go fourthe. And than aftyr þ*at*, Syr Herry Derby toke vppon hy*m* þe Crowne. and whan they vndyrstode þ*at*, Syr Herry Hotspur cam to þe Kyng to 20 Westmenstyr, and seyde: "Syr, this was not couienau*n*t nor promise." "What seyest thow, horsson?" q*uo*d the Kyng; & stert to hy*m*, & gaue hym a gret buffet. "Wel," q*uo*d Syr Herry Hotspur, "this shal be þe shrewdest bofet þ*at* eu*er* thow yovyst." 24 & streyte he toke his horse, and rode home into his cou*n*tre; & here-vpon began the batel of Srewesbury.

VI.

[*King Henry V: his Riot in his Youth: his Change when made King.*]

[3] [A]ftyr the dethe of Kyng Herry the Fourthe, Regnyd his sone Herry of Monmothe, whiche was born at Monmothe in 28 Walyes, whiche was Herry the Fyfte aftyr þe conquest. And he began to Regne on þe xxj^{ti}. day of Marche, In þe yer of our lorde

[1] *on leaf* 187.

[2] ? for 1403, July 23. Battle fought on St. Praxed's day, near a manor house named Berwick.—J. H. Wylie, who suggests '*ter* I,' thrice one, for the t .I. or ŧ .I. of the MS.

[3] *leaf* 191. Lambeth MS. 84.

M. CCCC xij; And in þe same yer he was crownyd Kyng of Englon[d] at Westmenster on the nynthe day of AprilH; and he was a worthy kyng, & a gracious man, & a worthy conquerour. ¶ And before he was Kyng, what tyme he regnyd Prince of Walyes, he 4 fylle & yntendyd gretly to ryot, and drew to wylde company; & dyuers Ientylmen and Ientylwommen folwyd his wylle & his desire at his commaundment; & lykewyse aH his meyne of his housolde was attendyng & plesyed with his gouernaunce, out-sept 8 iij. men of his howsolde, whiche were ful hevy and sory of his gouernaunce; and they counseylyd hym euer contrary, and fayne woolde an had hym to doon wele, & forsake ryot. and þerfor he hatyd them iij. most of al men in his house, vnto þe tyme þat his 12 fadyr was dede. And thanne he beganne to regne for Kyng, & he remembryd þe gret charge & wourship þat he shulde take vpon hym; And anon he comaundyd al his peple þat were attendaunt to his mysgouernaunce afore tyme, & al his housolde, to 16 come before hym. And whan they herde þat, they were ful glad, for they subposyd þat he woolde a promotyd them in-to gret offices, & þat they shulde a stonde in gret favyr & truste with hym, & neerest of counsel, as they were afore tyme. & trustyng here- 20 vpon, they were þe homlyer & bolder vnto hym, & nothyng dred hym; ynsomoche, þat whan they were come before hym, some of them wynkyd on hym, & some smylyd, & thus they made nyse semblaunte vnto hym, meny one of them. But for al þat, þe 24 Prynce kept his countynaunce ful sadly vnto them, And sayde to them: "Syrys, ye are þe peple þat I haue cherysyd & mayntynyd in Ryot & wylde gouernaunce; and here I geue yow aH in commaundment, & charge yow, þat from this day forward þat 28 ye forsake al mysgouernaunce, & lyve aftyr þe lawys of Almyhety God, & aftyr þe lawys of oure londe. And who þat doyth contrarye, I make feythful promys to God, þat he shal be trewly ponisid accordyng to þe lawe, without eny favour or grace." And 32 chargyd them, [on] payn of deth, þat they shulde neuer geve hym comforte nor counsel to falle to ryot no more; for he had takyn a charge on hym, þat alle his wittis & power were to lytyl, without þe helpe of God & good gouernaunce. And so he rewardyd 36 them richely with gold & syluer, & othyr Iuelys, and chargyd them alle to voyde his housolde, & lyve as good men, & neuer more to come in his presence, be-cause he woold haue noon occasioun nor remembraunce wherby he shulde falle to ryot ayen. And thus he 40

voydyd al his housolde, savyng tho iij. per[1]sonys *þat* he hatyd most, whiche were ful sory of his gou*er*nau*n*ce; & them he lovyd aftyrward best, for *þer*e good cou*n*sayle and good gou*er*nau*n*ce, &
4 made them aftyrward gret lordys; And thus was lefte in his housolde nomo but tho iij. men. And menyone of them *þat* were eydyng & consentyng to his wyldnes, fyl aftyrward to gret myschefe and sorw.

8 ¶ Than Kyng Herry sent to Dame Kateryn Swynfor, Cou*n*tesse of Herforde, whiche was tho a wel-gou*er*ned woman, & kept þe most worshipful housolde, & þe best rewlyd *þat* was w*ith*in þe londe; and to her he sent for me*n* *þat* were of good disposicyou*n*;
12 & she sent hym xij Ientylmen of sad gou*er*nau*n*ce. and so this gracious Kyng forsoke al wyldnes, and toke hy*m* to good gou*er*nau*n*ce, and kept streytly his lawys w*ith* ryghtwisnes & Iustise. For, in þe first yere of his regne, ther were ij knyhtis at
16 gret debate: þe tone was of Lankestyr-shire, & þe tothyr of York-shire; & they made them as stronge of peeple as they cowde, & scarmysshid togedyr; and men were slayne & hurte on bothe partyes. ¶ And whan þe Kyng herde therof, he sent for
20 them: & they cam to þe Kyng to Wyndelysore, as he was goyng to his dyneer. and whan the Kyng vndirstode that they were come, he com*m*au*n*dyd them to come before him; And than he axyd them, 'whois men they were.' and they seyde, his lege men.
24 "and whois men be tho *þat* ye haue a-reysyd up to fyhte for youre quarel?" and they seyde, 'his men.' "& what awtoryte or comau*n*deme*n*t had ye, to reyse vp my men or my peeple, to fyght & sle eche othyr for your quarel? yn this ye ar worthy to dye."
28 And they coude not askewse them, but besowhte þe Kyng of his grace. And than þe Kyng seyd, "be þe feith *þat* he owte to God & to Seint George, but yf they agreyd & accordyd, be *þat* tyme *þat* he had etyn his owystrys, they shulde be hangyd bothe two or
32 evyr he sopyt." And than they yede a-parte, & agreyd be themselfe, and cam in ayen whan þe Kyng had etyn his owistris. And than þe Kyng sayde: "Syrys, how stondyth yt w*ith* yow?" And than they knelyd downe, and seyde: "yf it plese your good
36 grace, we be agreyd & accordyd." And than the Kyng seyde, 'be the feythe *þat* he owte to God & to Seint George, *þat* & evyr they made eny more Insurreccioun or dethe of his lege peple, they, or ony othyr lordys w*ith*ynne his reawme, w*ith*owte his

[1] *leaf* 191, *back*.

commaundment, whatsomeeuer they were, they shulde dye, acordyng to þe lawe.' And so, aftyr þat, ther durst no lorde make no party nor stryf; and thus he beganne to kepe his lawis and Iustise, & therfor he was belouyd & bedred. 4

VII.

[*The Battle of Agincourt.*]

[1] ¶ Than þe morwe roos, þe day gan sprynge, & þe Kyng be good avyce leet araye his batayle & his weengys; & chargyd euery man to keepe hem hole to-gedrys, & preyde hem alle to been of good cheer. And whanne they were redy, he askyd what tyme of 8 þe day it was, & they sayde prime. Than seyde oure Kyng: "now is it good tyme, for alle Engelond prayeth for vs. And in remembraunce þat God dyed on þe Crosse for vs, let euery man make a crosse on þe erthe, & kys hyt, & in tokenyng þat we wole 12 radyr dye on this erthe than flee." ¶ And whan þe King of Fraunce sawe oure Kyng & his peeple fal doun to þe erthe, he axyd: "what meen they now?" & a Frenche knyht stode by, & seyde, "forsothe, Syre, they purpose hem this day to dey on þat 16 grounde, rathir than to flee." And than oure Kyng, with alle his peple, roos hym vp ayen; and than he seyde with an hye voyce, "In þe name of Almyhty God and of Seint George, Avaunt baneer! & Seint George, this day thyn helpe!" And therwith þe 20 Trumppetys blew vp. ¶ And than þe Frenche men come prykyng doun, as they woolde haue ovirryden alle oure meyne. But God & oure Archerys made hem sone to stomble. for oure archeris shot neuer oon arwe amys, but it persshid & brouht to grounde man or 24 hors; for they shottyn þat day for a waiour; And oure stakys made hem ouer-terve, eche on othyr, þat they lay on hepys. And oure Kyng, with his meyne & with men of armys, leyde on, for it behovyd hem to fyght þat day, his owne handys. & oure good 28 Archerys þat lakkyd [2] arwys, leyde on with stakys. And þat day þe Frenche men syhe Seint George in þe eyre ouer þe hoste of þe Englisshe men, fyghtyng ayenst þe Frenche men; and therfor they worship & holde of Seint George, in Engelond, more than in any 32 oþer londe. ¶ And thus Almyhti God & Seint George brouht oure enemyes to grounde, & yaf us þe victory þat day. And þere were slayne of Frensshe men þat day in þe feelde of Agyncort xj. M†., withoute prysonerys þat were takyn. And ther were noumbryd 36

[1] *leaf* 194. [2] *leaf* 194, *back*.

þat day of Frensshe men yn þe feelde, mo than Sixti score M†., And of Englisshe men but vij. M†; but God & Seint George *þat* day favt for vs. But þe Frensshe men *þat* were in þe Cyte of
4 Parys, had went *þat* oure Kyng had been ouer-throuhe a day before; for þe prekers of þe Frensshe men *þat* kept þe owte-wacche, met with some of oure Kyngis kartys, & ryfelyd them, & gat out oure Kyngis koronet, & bare it in-to Parys; & wenyng to them of
8 þe Cite *þat* oure Kyng had been ouerthrouhe, & bare this coronet abouht þe cyte in processioun for ioye. And aftyrward, whan they syhe þe Frensshemen come home sore woundyd, they marvayled sore, & askyd them 'what chere?' & they seyde, "No som to
12 mors": we be dede & ouerthrouhe. And than an hewge peeple of women & oþer folke yede thedyr to þe feelde *þere* þe batayle was, to beholde whiche party were ouerthrouhe; and they stode vpon an hylle besydys þe feelde *þere* þe batayle was. ¶ And whan þe
16 Englisshe hoste syhe this, they had wende *þat* tho peeple had been a-noþer host of Frensshe men. And anon com tydyngis to oure Kyng *þat* *þere* was a newe batayle of Frensshemen, al in aray, ordeyned redy to stele on hym. And anon oure Kyng leet krye
20 *þat* euery man shulde sle his prysoner *þat* he had take: & *þat* was a myghty losse to Engelond, & a gret sorw to Fraunce. and whan *þat* was doon, oure Kyng arayed his batayle ayen, redy to fihte with þe Frensshe men. ¶ And whan þe Frensshmen sawe *þat* oure
24 men kyllyd her prysonerys, than they withdrewe hem, & brak her batayle & here aray. And thus oure Kyng, as a worthy conquerour, had *þat* day þe victorye in þe feelde of Agyncourt in Pykkardye, thankyd be God!

28 And than oure Kyng retournyd ayen there þe batayle was, to se what peple were dede of Frensshe men, and also of Englisshe men, or yf ony were hurte *þat* myht be holpe. And *þere* were dede of Frensshe men in þe feelde: þe Duke of Barry, þe Duke
32 of Launsom, þe Duke of Braban, þe Erle of Navern, þe Chief Counstable of Fraunce, & viij. othir Erlys; & þe Archebisshop of Saunce; & of good Barouns .C. & mo; & of worthy knyhtis of gret alliaunce of cote armures, a M & v^{C}. ¶ And of Englisshe
36 men was dede *þat* day: þe good Duke of Yorke,[1] Ser Edmunde, & deyde withoute yssu. And aftyr hym, was made Duke of Yorke his broderys sone, Richarde, *þat* [2]was sone to Richard, Erle of Caumbrygge, *þat* was behedyd at Southamptone, as aftyrward ye

[1] Rubric in margin: 'there was slayne þe Duke of Yorke.' [2] *leaf* 195.

shul here more opynly. And also there was dede, þe Erle of Suffolke; & of al o*þer* of Englisshe me*n*, were dede nat passyng xxvj. bodyes, thankyd be God! And this batayle was on a Friday, whiche was Crispines & Crispamanes day, in þe monthe of Octobre. 4

versus: an Mil C quatuor Synk D*omi*ni dato.
henrici t*er*no Regis quin iure pat*er*no.
harflet fest Maurik deuicta q*ue* p*re*lia.
crispinu*m* Agenco*ur*t nome*n*, vbi Cristus ei dedit omen. 8

VIII.

[*The Siege of Rouen. Every eldest Son a King on St. Dennis' Eve.*]

[1] ¶ And yn þ*at* tyme þ*er*e was a custom in þe Cite of Rone, & also in þe Subarbys þ*er*e-of, that on Seint Denys evyn to make a kyng in eu*er*y house. And so þe grete heerys of þe subarbis cam to þe seyde Kyng Herry, & besouht hy*m* to take noon displesure 12 of þ*er*e customable vsage. and þe Kyng askyd them what it was. And they answeryd & seyde 'yt was þe vsage of Roon to make, in eu*er*y hous therof, þe eldest sone a kyng on þ*at* nyht.' And anon þe Kyng grau*n*tyd them ther askyng, so þ*at* it were nat doon in 16 despyte of hym. And at Nyhte ther cam woorde to þe Kyng, þ*at* þ*er*e were neu*er* seen so many kyngis to-gedyr in oon place. And anon þe Kyng comau*n*dyd them to be brouht afore hy*m*. And than spake an olde Frenche knyht, and seyde: "I trowe now is þe 20 tyme come þ*at* Rone shalbe won, aftyr þe profecye." And when þe Kyng herd þe knyht thus sey, he askyd hym, 'what was þe profecie.' And þe knyht seyde, 'yf he woold p*ar*don hym, he woolde tel hym þe profecie þ*er*of.' And tho þe Kyng p*ar*donid 24 hym. ¶ "Syr," q*uo*d þe knyht, "this tou*n* of Roon shall neu*er* be wonne, tyl ther come a Kyng þ*at* shulde be boryn of a woman, And in a Nonnys habyte, & .xxx. kynggis at his retynew, to ley seege ther-to." And there-w*ith* þe Kyng seyde: "In verbo tuo 28 relaxabo rethe." And anon he comau*n*dyd everyche of þe kyngis to be set in dyu*er*s garisons ayenst þe Tou*n*. And on þe next day was þe Tou*n* of Roon yolde vp vnto oure Kyng, as ye shul here.

IX.

[*King Henry VI's youth, and the quarrel with the Flemings.*]

[2] a Nd yn þe yer of our Lorde, M† CCCC & xxiij, On þe last 32 day of August, Herry of Wyndelysore, þe sone of Herry þe Fyfthe,

[1] *leaf* 198, *back*. Rubric in margin: 'how xxx^ti kyngis leyde seege to Roon.' [2] *leaf* 201.

began to Reyne, when he was but ix monthis of age. ¶ And as
some men sey, on *þat* day of his byrthe, there sat a stronger w*ith*
þe p*ar*sou*n* of Monmothe, *þat* p*ro*phesied at dyner, seyng on this
4 wyse: "In these xxiiij. ourys passyd, othyr w*ith*-yn xxiiij. ourys
to come, is born, or shalbe born, a new Kyng of Engelond, *þe*
whiche shal begynne his reyne w*ith*ynne *þe* first yer of his byrthe."
¶ Than seyde *þe* tothyr: "*þat* is *þe* Erle of Marche." he seyde
8 ayen: "nay, nat so." than seyde *þe* tothyr, "what troyst thou *þat*
*þe*re shal fal here-aftyr?" he seyde: "In *þe* fyrst vij yer of his
Reyne, *þe*re shalbe gret abou*n*dau*n*ce of al man*er* of ffrutys."
"And what in *þe* next vij yerys?" he seyde: "*þe*re shalbe thre
12 wyse me*n* *þat* shulbe able to gou*er*ne eny reme." And in *þe* vj.
yer aftyr, on *þe* vj day of A Nouembre, Herry *þe* vj^te^ was
crownyd at Westmenster, of Herry Chychile, Archebisshop of
Cau*n*tirbury, at whois Coronaciou*n* *þe* sone of *þe* Duke of
16 Hostryche, w*ith* many o*þer*, were made knyhtis. ¶ And in *þe*
x^the^ yer of his reyne he was crownyd ayen at Parys in Frau*n*ce, of
his vncle *þe* Cardinall of Wynchestre. And in *þe* yer aftyr *þat*, on
þe xx^ti^ day of Maij, on a Weddenysday, fro *þe* oure of None to iij.
20 on *þe* clok at aftyrnoon, ther aperyd a Blasyng sterre in *þe* firma-
ment, toward *þe* est, fast be *þe* Mone.

And in *þe* yer folwyng, the Dewke of Burgoyne began to meve
werre ayenst Engelond, & wolde an had Caleys. And thedyr was
24 sent in bassetre, *þe* Duke of Exetyr, w*ith* o*þer* lordys; & as he cam
homward ayen, his hors dou*n*gyd in *þe* tou*n*ne of Poperyng; and
þe Flemyggis rysyn vp, & woolde nat suffyr hy*m* to passe tyl his
men were fayne to bere awey his hors dou*n*ge, & make clene *þe*
28 stretys. ¶ And whan *þe* Duke was come ayen in-to Engelond, he
enformyd *þe* Kyng & his lordys *þe*rof; and they were sore amevyd
therw*ith*. And anon S*ir* Humfray, Duke of Gloucestre, & S*ir*
Thomas Bewfourde, Duke of Exetyr, his brothyr, w*ith* o*þer* lordys,
32 made a gret power, and yede ayen in-to Flaundrys, & destroyed
moche peple, and brent meny tou*n*nys, & dyd moche harme; & *þe*
Duke of Burgoyne fled w*ith* his peple. And *þe* Duke of Exetyr
yede & brent vp Popryng & meny mo tou*n*nys *þe*re abouhte, & dyd
36 moche harme, ynsomoche *þat* they brent *þe* whete & corne *þat*
grewe in *þe* feelde: & *þat* was an evyl deede, ffor, sen *þat* tyme
hydyrward, our whete & corn haue be brent in Engelond, yn on
place or in othyr, as it growyth in *þe* feelde, be *þe* hande of God;
40 whiche brennyng, men callyth 'Ablastid or seynte.' ¶ And at *þe*

last, þe Duke of Burgoyne was fayne to mede þe Duke of Gloucestre & oure lordis, & gave them a myty thyng of good to turne ayen & seese ther warre, & do no more harme. & than þey turny[d] ayen in-to Engelond. And in despyte of þe Flemynges, an Englisshe man made this Englishe, yn Baladdys:

(1)

[1] o ff stryvys new, & fraudulent falsnesse,
Who-so lyst to seek out þe cheef occasioun,
Late hym resorte, & his wey dresse
In-to Flaundrys, streyght to the Blak Lyoun, 9
Whiche hathe compassed, be fals collusioun,—
Lyk in his standard as betyn is the signe,—
That meved his countre of presumpcioun,
Ageyn Ingelond frowardly to malygne. 13

(2)

Fyrst to remembre, the deede berythe wytnesse,
Of his fadyr mowrdred be tresoun,
How Herry the Fyfthe, of knyghtly gentylnesse,
Had of his dethe manly compassioun, 17
Leete digge hym vp, stank for corrupcioun,
Of a prynce a mercyable sygne.
But thou ageynward, be fals decepcioun,
Madest Flaundrys ageyn Ingelond to malygne. 21

(3)

Thou madist an oothe, be gret avisynesse,
Vppon the sacrament at Amyas, in that toun,
Ay to be trewe, voyde of dobylnesse.
But vndyr the courteyne of fals collusioun, 25
Thou gat at Araas an absolucioun,
Thy feyned feythe vp falsly to resygne,
Causyng Flaundrys, to ther confusioun,
Ageyn Ingelond prowdly to malyngne. 29

(4)

The pees purposyd at Araas in soothnesse,
Whan our embassatourys, of hool affeccioun,
Cam goodly thedyr, dyd ther bysinesse,
To haue concluded a parfyt vnyoun 33

[1] *leaf* 201, *back.*

Twyxt to reavmus, for ful conclusioun,
  Thou, shewyng there a face ful benyg[n]e,
Vndyr a veyle of fals decepcioun,
  Record of Flaundrys, whiche falsly dothe malygne. 4

(5)

What hast thou wonne with al thy bysinesse
  And alle thy tentys to Caleys caryed doun,
Thyn ordynauncys, whiche cost gret rychesse,
  Bastyle, and cartys of fagot gret foysoun, 8
Of thy gounnys the dredful noyse and soun?
  Peyse al to-gedyr, with many anothyr sygne,
Thy cowardly flyght, cokeney of a chaumpyoun,
  Whyche darst not fyght, and canst so wel malygne. 12

X.

[*The Battles of St. Alban's I and II, of Blore Heath, Ludlow, Northampton, Wakefield, and Wigmore.*]

[1] They dyd moche harme, & many a man was slayne; & they woolde neuer sese, tyl þe drawbrygge was set on fyre betwene hem. And aftyrward þere captayn was take in a gardyn in Kent, & þere
16 he was slayne; & aftyr þat, his body was quarteryd; & his hede smytyn of, & set on Londen Brygge. ¶ And in þe xxiiij. yer of his regne was þe first batel of Seint Albonys; & þere Kyng Herry was shotte in þe nekke with an Arrwe. And ayenst hym cam
20 Rycherde Plantagynet, Duke of Yorke, & Richard Nevel, Erle of Salisbury, & his sone Richard Nevel, Erle of Warwyk. And þere was slayne of þe Kingis party, Sir Edmunde, Duke of Somyrset, þe Erle of Northombyrland, & Lord Clyfford; & Humfray, Duke
24 of Bokyngham, was sore hurte, whom they caryed with hem to Londen.

And in þe xxxvij yer was þe batel at Bloorhethe, & of Ludlowe; & þere was slayne be þe Erle of Salisbury, Lord Avdele, & xiiij.
28 knyghtes new made; & þe Baroun of Dudle was take & led with hem. ¶ And in þe .xxxviij. yer was þe batayle of Northamptoun; where cam on þe ton party, Edward þe Erle of Marche, þe eldest sone of þe Duke of Yorke, & þe Duke of Northfolke, & Richard

[1] *leaf* 202. It follows the Ballad.

Nevyle, Erle of Warwyk. And þere was slayne of þe Kyngis party be them: Sir Humfray, Duke of Bokyngham, & Sir Iohn̄ Talbot, Erle of S[h]rewisbury, & Vicount Bemounde; & þere was take Kyng Herry, & brouht with them to Londen. 4

And in þe same yer was þe batayle of Wakefeelde, whiche was on þe ton party, þe Duke of Somyrset, þe Erle of Northumbirlond, Lord Clifford, & Sir John Nevyl of Westmerland, which̄ was þe Erles sone of Westmerland. And þere was slayne be them: 8 Richard, Duke of Yorke, Edmunde, Erle of Rutlond, his sone; & Richarde Nevyle, Erle of Salysbury, was take þere, & behedyd at Pounfret. ¶ And in þe same yer was þe ij^de batayle of Seint Albonis: & þere com in on þe ton party: Kyng Herry, þe Duke of 12 Northfolke, þe Erle of Warwyk, Lord Facounbryge, & Vicound Bowser. And ayenst them cam Queen Margeryt, & Prince Edward her sone, [L]ord Wellis, Lord [C]lyfford, & ouerthrewe þe tothyr party, & toke awey King Herry from̄ them; and, be the commaund- 16 ment of þe young Prince, þere was behedyd þere, Lord Bonvylde, & Thomas Kyrel, knyht of Kent; & they led with hem in-to þe Northe, Lord Mountegew, [a]nd toke hym to [þ]e Mayre of [Y]orke to kepe. 20

And in þe same yer was þe bateyle of Wygmore, be Edward, Erle of Marche; wher fled, Sir Herry Bewforde, Duke of Exestyr, & Iamys Ormond, Erle of Wylshyre, & Iasper, Erle of Penbrook; & his fadyr, Owen Tedder, was takyn, & behedyd at Herforde; 24 and ther was takyn þe Baroun of Burforde; & pardounde of his lyfe. An[d] aftyr this, Edward, Erle of Marche, with þe lordys on his party, yede to Londen; and on þe iiij. day of Marche he toke vpon hym þe Regimen, with þe wylle of þe lordys & þe comouns 28 bothe.

XI.

[*K. Edward IV* (1461); *the Battle of Barnet* (14 *April*, 1471); *and the Death of Henry VI* (20 *June*, 1471).]

[1]a Nd aftyr this, In þe yer of our Lord Mt. CCCC lx, And in þe regne of Kyng Herry .xxxix.; Edward, Erle of Marche, with þe lordys þat were on his party, yede to Londen; and on̄ þe .iiij. 32 day of Marche he took vpon hym þe Regimen, with þe wylle of þe lordys & þe commouns also. ¶ And aftyr þat, Kyng Edward toke

[1] *leaf* 202, *back.*

his lordys, & yede Northeward; and on Palmisson evyn was Tau*n*tou*n* feelde, callyd York feelde. And *þer*e was on Kyng Edwardys party, þe Duke of Northfolke, þe Erle of Warwyk, Lord
4 Acrys of þe southe, Lord Faucou*n*brygge, & many o*þer* lordys & knyhtis moo. And ayenst hy*m* cam Prynce Edward, Kyng Herryes sone, þe Duke of Somyrset, þe Erle of Northumbyrlond, whiche was slayne *þer*e, & many o*þer* lordis & knyht*es* also. And
8 King Herry, w*ith* Queen Mergeret, lay in York; & þey toke þe P*r*ince her sone, & be mydnyght they were fledde to Berewyk; & they yaf *þat* tou*n* to þe Scottis, to haue socour & helpe of them, whiche tou*n* was Englisshe beforn. ¶ And thus Kyng Edwarde, þe
12 sone of Richard Plantagenet, Duke of York, ou*er*cam his enemyes, & put them to flyght, & returnyd ayen to Londen, & *þer*e he was crownyd at Westmes*ter*, ryghtful Kyng of Engelond & of Frau*n*ce, Castylle, & Legyou*n*. ¶ And sone aftyr, he weddyd Dame Elysa-
16 bet̄h, þe Erle Ryu*er*s dou̅htyr, on whom he begat, Elysabet̄h, Marie, Cicile, Edwarde P*r*ince, Margarete, Richard, Duke of York & of Northfolke, Anne, George.

And aftyr this, Herry, *þat* was Kyng, was take in Yorkshire,
20 in þe Abbey of Furnes; & put in þe Toure of Londen. ¶ And aftyr *þat*, *þer*e aperyd in þe ffirmame*n*t a gret sterre, *þat* yaf out vij stremys, whiche synified gret sorw, & mysche[f] *þat* fylle aftyrward; & also ther wer sene in þe Temys at Londen, many whyrlepolys, &
24 ano*þer* tyme a whale, *þat* signyfyed not good. For aftyrward fylle gret devisyou*n* betwene þe Kyng & his lordys; & þey kept a gret batayle on Estyr day, whiche is callyd 'Barnet Feeld.' & *þer*e was slayne Richard Nevyle, Erle of Warwik, & Markys Montegew, his
28 brothir; & þe Erle of Oxynford fled. And from thens þe Kyng yede to Tewkysbery; & *þer*e was slayn, Edward, þe sone of Kyng Herry; & Queen Margarete, his modyr, was take, whiche were come out of Frau*n*ce. And thus Kyng Edwarde ou*er*cam a̅ll his enemyes,
32 thankyd be God! And in alle þese batayles, was þe sone ayenst þe fadyr, and brother aye[n]st brother. ¶ And ano*n* aftyr, deyde Kyng Herry in þe Toure of Londen; & is beryed at Chercheshey. And he fou*n*dyd þe Coleges of Etou*n* & of Cambrygg*e*, callyd þe
36 'newe Colege': on whois soule, God haue m*er*cy! Amen!

And aftyr this, Kyng Edward yed ou*er* beyon the se into Frau*n*ce, & chalengyd Gascoyne & Gyen. And þe Kyng of Frau*n*ce was fayne to desyre trewys w*ith* hy*m*, & agreyd to pay yerly to
40 oure Kyng, X M̅t. li. for Gascoyne & Gyen: & he payd it long

aft*er*. And in þ*at* Iorney our Kyng lost many a ma*n* þ*at* fylle to þe lust of wome*n*, & wer brent be the*m*; & þ*er*e me*m*brys rottyd away, & þey dyed. ¶ And aftyr þ*at*, ther fylle a gret dissese in Engelond callyd þe 'styche,' þ*at* moche peeple deyde sodeynly 4 þ*er*of. And also anoþ*er* dissese reyned aftyr þ*at*, callyd þe 'fflyx,' þ*at* neue*r* was seen in Engelond before; & peple deyde hogely therof iij yer togedyr, i*n* on place or oþ*er*. And aftyr þ*at*, ther bred a Raven on Charyng Crosse at Londen; & neue*r* was seen 8 noone brede þ*er*e before. & aftyr þ*at*, cam a gret dethe of Pestilence, þ*at* lastyd iij. yer; & peple dyed myhtely in eu*er*y p[l]ace, man, woma*n* & chylde: on whois soulys, God haue m*er*cy! Amen! [*end.*] 12

APPENDIX TO H.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE BATTLE ABBEY ROLL OF 371 NAMES OF NORMAN KNIGHTS. [See p. 535–537].

[*Harl. MS.* 53, *collated with Lambeth* 6.]

	Abvile	BaywaH (29)[1]	Bruce (58)	Colvile (86)
	Achard	Beauchamp	Budler	Comyn
	Akeny	Beaumeis	Buket	Corbet
4	Amondevile	Beler	Burdet	Cornor
	Anney	Belet	Burle	Costentyn
	Arcy	Berard	BurneH	Cosyn
	Arvile	Berevile	BusseH	CoudreH
8	Ascher[1]	Bereward	Bussey	Courtheuse
	Asprevile	Bernevile	Butevile	Crecy
	Aubeny	Berry	Butteler	CrieH
	Aubray	Beygnard[3]	Butvileyn (68)	Cunly
12	Audeny	Bigot		Curecy
	Audevile	Birset	Camois	Curly
	AueneH	Bleis	Candrey	Curteis
	Auerenges	BloundeH	Cannevile	Curteneis[4]
16	Ayelard (16)	Bluet	Cardevile	Curthose
		Boner	Carevile	Curty (102)
	Bagot	Bontvile	Chalenges	
	Banaster	Boynet	Chalurs	Dalamare
20	Bardulf	Brachet	Chambreleyn	Dans*ter*vile
	Baret	Bracy	ChameH	Darcy
	Barevile	Brassard	CharneH	DariH
	Barry	Bratet	Chastelleyn	Despenser
24	Bars	Bret	Chaucer *	Deynecourt
	Baskervile	Breuse	Chaundos	DrutaH
	Basset	Brian	Chene[1]	DucreH
	Bastard	Bricourt	Cheyne	Duket
28	Baucan	Britou*n*	Clare	Dulapenne
	Baynard[2] (28)	Brok (57)	ClareH (85)	Duredent (113)

[1] *om.* L. [2] Barnard L. [3] Boigmard L. [4] Carteneis L.

Escot (114)
Eurons

Ferebrace
Ferrer
Ferrers
Feschamp*e*
Fetepace
Fitz[1] Brian
Fitz[1] Garin
Fitz[1] Geffray
Fitz[1] Herbert
Fitz[1] Hu
Fitz[1] Piers
Fitz[1] Symond
Fitz[1] Vise
Fitz[1] Water
Foleyn
Foliambe[2]
Folvile
Formentyn
Fossard
Freseꝼ
Fresvile
Freynes
Frisou*n*
Frivile
Furnyvaꝼ
Fyneux (141)

Gamager
Gantlou
Gaugy
Gaunt
Gauter
Gerard
Giffard
Gorg*e* (149)

Gorger (150)
Gorunvile[3]
Gower
Grace
G*r*auntsou*n*[2]
Graynvile
Greis
Grenevile
Gunter
Gurnay (159)

Harecourt
Hachet
Haket
Hamelyn
Hanet
Hansard
Hanvile
Hasard
Hautevile
Hay
Heiroun
Hercy
Heris
Hubert
Hurfer
Huscharles

Iardyn (176)

Keynes
Kirlecot (178)

Lacy
La Heuse
Lambert
Ledet
Leoun (183)

Lescey (184)
Leverer
Lincot
Lonetot
Longchamp*e*
Longevile
Loveꝼ
Lucy
Lunar
Luncy
Lyard
Lynet
Lysle (196)

Maignard[4]
Malemayn
Malet
Malynoler
Mamelbarin[2]
Mansey
Manus (*or* Manns)
Manyn[2]
Marcimas
Mareis
Marteꝼ
Massy
Matroners
Maunceꝼ
Maundevile
Maureward
Meisy[5]
Meyne
Meyniꝼ
Miler
Mire
Mongom*e*r*y*
Moreꝼ (219)

Moreus[6] (220)
Morley
Morteyn
Mortymer 4
Morvile
Motoun[2]
Moubray
Mounfichet 8
Mountanasy
Mountegu
Mounteny
Mulet 12
Murdak
Musard (233)

Neomarch 16
Nepount
Nevile
Neyrount
Niuelent (238) 20
Nu*n*champe

Ofvile
Oreꝼ[7] 24
Orivaꝼ
Orrewar (243)

Pachet 28
Palet
Pameꝼ
Panely
Pantulf 32
Parles
Passamere
Passaua*u*nt
Peisoun[8] 36
Penire (*or* Pemre) (253)

[1] Filz L. [2] *om.* L. [3] Gonurvile L. [4] Maynard L.
[5] Mersy L. [6] Morens ? L. [7] Torell L. [8] Tyson L.

Percy (254)
Perly
PevéreH
4 Phanecourt
Picard
Pigot
Piket
8 Pilet[1]
PineH
Pipard
Piroun[2]
12 Pleisy
Plevien
Poer
Pounchet
16 Pountfract
Prers[2]
Punegis
PurceH
20 Pus
[Putnell][3]
Putrell (274)

24 Quatremars
Quincy (276)

Raynes
28 Renger
Richemou*n*t
RideH
RocheH
32 Roos
Rosyn (283)

Rosynis[2] (284)
Roter
Rusak
RusseH (287)

SaintbreneH
Saintclus
Sainteler
Sainterois
Saintgorge[2]
Saint*h*elyn
Saint*I*ohn
Saintleger
Saintmore
Saintmoris
Saintnoyre
Saintomer
Saint*q*uintyn
Sancey (301)
Sanctclou
Sandervile
Santemareis[4]
Saucer
Saunzaner
Saunzire
Savage
Say
Saylard
Scutevile
Sechevile
Semery
Setvaus[5]
Seygnes (315)

Soldeny (316)
Somervile
Sonevile
SouppiH (*or* SoupeiH)
SpigurneH
Spynevile
Sunely
SurdevaH
Swyward[6] (324)

Tabot
Tailepas
Taillois
Tallebot
Tanet
Taryn
Tenere
Tibot
Tiptot
TireH (334)
TorchappeH
ToreH
Toret
Torevile
Tracy
TrameH
Trauers[2]
Trevet
Truan
Truret
Trusbut
TrusseH (346)

Tuchet (347)
Tuny
Tupet[7]
Turbevile
[Tyson, *see* Peisoun]

Valeus[8] (351)
Vauesour
VeeH
Veer
Veisyn
Venour
Verly
Vernoun
Vescy
Vilers
Vmfra*m*vile

WadeH (362)
Warenne
Wasteneis
Welby
Widvile
Wildbef
Wishard
Wivile

Ynogre

Zoochh[9] (371)

[1] Pelet L. [2] *om.* L. [3] *only in* L. [4] Saintrioris ? L.
[5] Setvans ? L. [6] Swyand L. [7] Tapet L. [8] Valens ? L.
[9] [?] *om.* L.

PR 1119 A2 no.131

Early English Text Society
[Publications]
Original series. no. 131,136

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH